



---

**KM-C2520**

**KM-C3225**

**KM-C3232**

**SERVICE  
MANUAL**

Published in April 2008  
842FZ117  
2FZSM067  
Rev. 7

## **CAUTION**

RISK OF EXPLOSION IF BATTERY IS REPLACED BY AN INCORRECT TYPE. DISPOSE OF USED BATTERIES ACCORDING TO THE INSTRUCTIONS.

It may be illegal to dispose of this battery into the municipal waste stream. Check with your local solid waste officials for details in your area for proper disposal.

## **ATTENTION**

IL Y A UN RISQUE D'EXPLOSION SI LA BATTERIE EST REMPLACÉE PAR UN MODÈLE DE TYPE INCORRECT. METTRE AU REBUT LES BATTERIES UTILISÉES SELON LES INSTRUCTIONS DONNÉES.

Il peut être illégal de jeter les batteries dans des eaux d'égout municipales. Vérifiez avec les fonctionnaires municipaux de votre région pour les détails concernant des déchets solides et une mise au rebut appropriée.

## Revision history

Revision	Date	Replaced pages	Remarks
1	April 21, 2006	1-5-25	-
2	June 8, 2006	1-2-5, 1-2-9	-
3	August 11, 2006	Overall revised	-
4	February 7, 2007	CONTENTS, 1-1-3, 1-1-4, 1-2-1, 1-2-2, 1-2-5, 1-2-7 to 1-2-9, 1-2-12 to 1-2-20, 1-3-4, 1-3-5, 1-3-9, 1-3-18, 1-3-45, 1-3-53 to 1-3-56, 1-3-63, 1-3-89, 1-4-1, 1-4-3 to 1-4-9, 1-4-11, 1-4-14, 1-4-19, 1-4-20, 1-4-36, 1-4-37, 1-4-42, 1-4-46, 1-4-47, 1-4-49, 1-4-50, 1-4-57, 1-5-11, 1-5-18, 1-5-21, 1-5-26 to 1-5-40, 2-1-1, 2-1-3, 2-1-4, 2-1-6, 2-1-8, 2-1-11 to 2-1-13, 2-1-18, 2-2-2, 2-2-4, 2-2-6, 2-3-3, 2-3-4, 2-3-8, 2-3-9, 2-3-11, 2-4-3, 2-4-4, 2-4-8	-
5	April 25, 2007	CONTENTS, 1-3-3 to 1-3-6, 1-3-11, 1-3-16 to 1-3-22, 1-3-33 to 1-3-43, 1-3-47, 1-3-51, 1-3-57, 1-3-58, 1-3-61, 1-3-62, 1-3-65, 1-3-83, 1-3-86, 1-3-91 to 1-3-93, 1-4-3 to 1-4-9, 1-4-36, 1-4-39 to 1-4-62, 2-3-6, 2-3-18, 2-3-19, 2-4-2 to 2-4-14	-
6	July 18, 2007	1-2-12, 1-2-15, 1-3-95, 1-3-100, 1-4-22	-
7	April 25, 2008	CONTENTS, 1-5-2, 1-5-27	-

This page is intentionally left blank.

---


# Safety precautions


---


This booklet provides safety warnings and precautions for our service personnel to ensure the safety of their customers, their machines as well as themselves during maintenance activities. Service personnel are advised to read this booklet carefully to familiarize themselves with the warnings and precautions described here before engaging in maintenance activities.

## Safety warnings and precautions


Various symbols are used to protect our service personnel and customers from physical danger and to prevent damage to their property. These symbols are described below:


 **DANGER:** High risk of serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.


 **WARNING:** Serious bodily injury or death may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.


 **CAUTION:** Bodily injury or damage to property may result from insufficient attention to or incorrect compliance with warning messages using this symbol.

### Symbols


The triangle () symbol indicates a warning including danger and caution. The specific point of attention is shown inside the symbol.


 General warning.

 Warning of risk of electric shock.


 Warning of high temperature.


 indicates a prohibited action. The specific prohibition is shown inside the symbol.


 General prohibited action.

 Disassembly prohibited.

 indicates that action is required. The specific action required is shown inside the symbol.



 General action required.

 Remove the power plug from the wall outlet.









 Always ground the copier.

# 1. Installation Precautions

## WARNING















- Do not use a power supply with a voltage other than that specified. Avoid multiple connections to one outlet: they may cause fire or electric shock. When using an extension cable, always check that it is adequate for the rated current. .... 
- Connect the ground wire to a suitable grounding point. Not grounding the copier may cause fire or electric shock. Connecting the earth wire to an object not approved for the purpose may cause explosion or electric shock. Never connect the ground cable to any of the following: gas pipes, lightning rods, ground cables for telephone lines and water pipes or faucets not approved by the proper authorities. .... 

## CAUTION:

- Do not place the copier on an infirm or angled surface: the copier may tip over, causing injury. .... 
- Do not install the copier in a humid or dusty place. This may cause fire or electric shock. .... 
- Do not install the copier near a radiator, heater, other heat source or near flammable material.  
  
This may cause fire. .... 
- Allow sufficient space around the copier to allow the ventilation grills to keep the machine as cool as possible. Insufficient ventilation may cause heat buildup and poor copying performance. .... 
- Always handle the machine by the correct locations when moving it. .... 
- Always use anti-toppling and locking devices on copiers so equipped. Failure to do this may cause the copier to move unexpectedly or topple, leading to injury. .... 
- Avoid inhaling toner or developer excessively. Protect the eyes. If toner or developer is accidentally ingested, drink a lot of water to dilute it in the stomach and obtain medical attention immediately. If it gets into the eyes, rinse immediately with copious amounts of water and obtain medical attention. .... 
- Advise customers that they must always follow the safety warnings and precautions in the copier's instruction handbook. .... 

## 2. Precautions for Maintenance

### WARNING

- Always remove the power plug from the wall outlet before starting machine disassembly. .... 
  - Always follow the procedures for maintenance described in the service manual and other related brochures. .... 
  - Under no circumstances attempt to bypass or disable safety features including safety mechanisms and protective circuits. .... 
  - Always use parts having the correct specifications. .... 
  - Always use the thermostat or thermal fuse specified in the service manual or other related brochure when replacing them. Using a piece of wire, for example, could lead to fire or other serious accident. .... 
  - When the service manual or other serious brochure specifies a distance or gap for installation of a part, always use the correct scale and measure carefully. .... 
  - Always check that the copier is correctly connected to an outlet with a ground connection. .... 
  - Check that the power cable covering is free of damage. Check that the power plug is dust-free. If it is dirty, clean it to remove the risk of fire or electric shock. .... 
  - Never attempt to disassemble the optical unit in machines using lasers. Leaking laser light may damage eyesight. .... 
  - Handle the charger sections with care. They are charged to high potentials and may cause electric shock if handled improperly. .... 
- ### CAUTION
- Wear safe clothing. If wearing loose clothing or accessories such as ties, make sure they are safely secured so they will not be caught in rotating sections. .... 
  - Use utmost caution when working on a powered machine. Keep away from chains and belts. .... 
  - Handle the fixing section with care to avoid burns as it can be extremely hot. .... 
  - Check that the fixing unit thermistor, heat and press rollers are clean. Dirt on them can cause abnormally high temperatures. .... 



• Do not remove the ozone filter, if any, from the copier except for routine replacement. ....



• Do not pull on the AC power cord or connector wires on high-voltage components when removing them; always hold the plug itself. ....



• Do not route the power cable where it may be stood on or trapped. If necessary, protect it with a cable cover or other appropriate item. ....



• Treat the ends of the wire carefully when installing a new charger wire to avoid electric leaks. ....



• Remove toner completely from electronic components. ....



• Run wire harnesses carefully so that wires will not be trapped or damaged. ....



• After maintenance, always check that all the parts, screws, connectors and wires that were removed, have been refitted correctly. Special attention should be paid to any forgotten connector, trapped wire and missing screws. ....



• Check that all the caution labels that should be present on the machine according to the instruction handbook are clean and not peeling. Replace with new ones if necessary. ....



• Handle greases and solvents with care by following the instructions below: .....



· Use only a small amount of solvent at a time, being careful not to spill. Wipe spills off completely.

· Ventilate the room well while using grease or solvents.

· Allow applied solvents to evaporate completely before refitting the covers or turning the power switch on.

· Always wash hands afterwards.

• Never dispose of toner or toner bottles in fire. Toner may cause sparks when exposed directly to fire in a furnace, etc. ....



• Should smoke be seen coming from the copier, remove the power plug from the wall outlet immediately. ....



### 3. Miscellaneous

#### WARNING

• Never attempt to heat the drum or expose it to any organic solvents such as alcohol, other than the specified refiner; it may generate toxic gas. ....



This page is intentionally left blank.

# CONTENTS

<b>1-1 Specifications</b>	
1-1-1 Specifications .....	1-1-1
1-1-2 Parts names .....	1-1-4
(1) Body .....	1-1-4
(2) Operation panel .....	1-1-5
1-1-3 Machine cross section .....	1-1-6
<b>1-2 Installation</b>	
1-2-1 Installation environment .....	1-2-1
1-2-2 Unpacking and installation .....	1-2-2
(1) Installation procedure .....	1-2-2
(2) Setting initial copy modes .....	1-2-11
1-2-3 Installing the key counter (option) .....	1-2-12
1-2-4 Installing the memory (option) .....	1-2-16
1-2-5 Installing the hard disk (option) .....	1-2-17
1-2-6 Installing the network interface card (option) .....	1-2-18
1-2-7 Installing the serial interface board (option) .....	1-2-19
<b>1-3 Maintenance Mode</b>	
1-3-1 Maintenance mode .....	1-3-1
(1) Executing a maintenance item .....	1-3-1
(2) Maintenance mode item list .....	1-3-2
(3) Contents of maintenance mode items .....	1-3-7
1-3-2 Service mode .....	1-3-95
(1) Executing a service item .....	1-3-95
1-3-3 Copier management .....	1-3-101
(1) Using the copier management mode .....	1-3-101
(2) Job accounting .....	1-3-102
(3) Default settings for copying .....	1-3-104
(4) Machine default .....	1-3-106
(5) Printer settings .....	1-3-109
(6) Scanner default settings .....	1-3-114
(7) Fax default setting .....	1-3-115
(8) Setting MP tray .....	1-3-116
(9) Registering non-standard sizes for originals .....	1-3-116
(10) User adjustment .....	1-3-117
(11) Setting document management defaults .....	1-3-119
(12) Hard disk management .....	1-3-119
(13) Printing reports .....	1-3-119
(14) Checking total copy count .....	1-3-119
(15) Language .....	1-3-120
<b>1-4 Troubleshooting</b>	
1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection .....	1-4-1
(1) Paper misfeed indication .....	1-4-1
(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions .....	1-4-2
(3) Paper misfeeds .....	1-4-10
1-4-2 Self-diagnosis .....	1-4-21
(1) Self-diagnostic function .....	1-4-21
(2) Self diagnostic codes .....	1-4-23
1-4-3 Image formation problems .....	1-4-49
(1) No image appears (entirely white) .....	1-4-50
(2) No image appears (entirely black) .....	1-4-50
(3) Dirty on the back side .....	1-4-51
(4) Image is too light .....	1-4-51
(5) The background is colored .....	1-4-51
(6) Paper jams .....	1-4-52
(7) Toner drops on the paper conveying path .....	1-4-52
(8) Abnormal noise is heard .....	1-4-52
(9) One side of the copy image is darker than the other .....	1-4-53

(10) Dots appear on the image.....	1-4-53
(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.....	1-4-53
(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.....	1-4-53
(13) Paper creases.....	1-4-54
(14) Offset occurs.....	1-4-54
(15) Image is partly missing.....	1-4-54
(16) Fusing is poor.....	1-4-55
(17) Image is out of focus.....	1-4-55
(18) Colors are printed offset to each other.....	1-4-55
(19) Image center does not align with the original center.....	1-4-55
1-4-4 Electric problems.....	1-4-56
1-4-5 Mechanical problems.....	1-4-60

## 1-5 Assembly and Disassembly

1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly.....	1-5-1
(1) Precautions.....	1-5-1
(2) Drum.....	1-5-1
(3) Toner.....	1-5-1
(4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera Mita toner container.....	1-5-2
1-5-2 Paper feed section.....	1-5-3
(1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.....	1-5-3
(2) Detaching and refitting the MP unit.....	1-5-5
(3) Detaching and refitting the MP forwarding, MP paper feed and MP separation pulleys.....	1-5-7
1-5-3 Optical section.....	1-5-9
(1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp.....	1-5-9
(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires.....	1-5-12
(3) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference).....	1-5-16
(4) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit.....	1-5-18
(5) Manual color registration adjustment.....	1-5-23
1-5-4 Image formation section.....	1-5-25
(1) Detaching and refitting the image formation holder.....	1-5-25
(2) Detaching and refitting the developing unit.....	1-5-26
(3) Detaching and refitting the drum unit.....	1-5-27
(4) Detaching and refitting the charger roller unit.....	1-5-27
1-5-5 Transfer section.....	1-5-28
(1) Detaching and refitting the transfer belt unit.....	1-5-28
(2) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller.....	1-5-29
1-5-6 Fuser section.....	1-5-31
(1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit.....	1-5-31
1-5-7 Other.....	1-5-32
(1) Detaching and refitting the engine PWB.....	1-5-32
(2) Detaching and refitting the conveying drive unit.....	1-5-36
(3) Detaching and refitting the registration clutch.....	1-5-37
(4) Detaching and refitting the right filter and rear filter.....	1-5-38
(5) Detaching and refitting the LSU cleaning clutch.....	1-5-39

## 1-6 Requirements on PWB Replacement

1-6-1 Upgrading the firmware.....	1-6-1
1-6-2 Remarks on main PWB replacement.....	1-6-2
1-6-3 Remarks on scanner PWB replacement.....	1-6-2
1-6-4 Remarks on printer PWB replacement.....	1-6-2

## 2-1 Mechanical construction

2-1-1 Paper feed section.....	2-1-1
(1) Cassette paper feed section.....	2-1-1
(2) MP tray paper feed section.....	2-1-3
2-1-2 Drum section.....	2-1-5
(1) Drum section.....	2-1-5
2-1-3 Developing section.....	2-1-7
(1) Developing section.....	2-1-7
2-1-4 Optical section.....	2-1-9
(1) Image scanner section.....	2-1-9
(2) Laser scanner section.....	2-1-11

2-1-5	Transfer/separation section .....	2-1-12
	(1) Primary transfer section .....	2-1-12
	(2) Secondary transfer/separation section .....	2-1-13
2-1-6	Fuser section .....	2-1-14
	(1) Fuser section .....	2-1-14
2-1-7	Eject/feedshift section .....	2-1-16
	(1) Eject/feedshift section .....	2-1-16
2-1-8	Duplex section .....	2-1-17
	(1) Duplex section .....	2-1-17
<b>2-2 Electrical Parts Layout</b>		
2-2-1	Electrical parts layout .....	2-2-1
	(1) PWBs .....	2-2-1
	(2) Switches and sensors .....	2-2-3
	(3) Motors .....	2-2-5
	(4) Others .....	2-2-7
<b>2-3 Operation of the PWBs</b>		
2-3-1	Power source PWB .....	2-3-1
2-3-2	Engine PWB .....	2-3-5
<b>2-4 Appendixes</b>		
	Maintenance parts list .....	2-4-1
	Maintenance kits .....	2-4-2
	Periodic maintenance procedures .....	2-4-3
	Chart of image adjustment procedures .....	2-4-7
	Wiring diagram No.1 .....	2-4-9
	Wiring diagram No.2 .....	2-4-10
	Wiring diagram No.3 .....	2-4-11
	Wiring diagram No.4 .....	2-4-12
	Wiring diagram No.5 .....	2-4-13
	Wiring diagram No.6 .....	2-4-14
<b>INSTALLATION GUIDE</b>		
DOCUMENT PROCESSOR		
PAPER FEEDER		
3000 SHEETS PAPER FEEDER		
DOCUMENT FINISHER		
3000 SHEETS DOCUMENT FINISHER		
CENTER-FOLDING UNIT		
MAILBOX		
HOLE PUNCH UNIT		
JOB SEPARATOR		
FACSIMILE SYSTEM		
Data Security Kit (D)		
UG-31		

This page is intentionally left blank.

## 1-1-1 Specifications

Type .....	Desktop
Copying system .....	Dry static transfer copy system (Laser), Tandem drum system
Originals.....	Sheets, books and three-dimensional objects Maximum size: A3/11" x 17"
Original feed system .....	Fixed
Copy paper .....	Weight Cassette: 60 - 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> MP tray: 60 - 220 g/m <sup>2</sup> Types Cassette: Plain, Rough, Vellum, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, High Quality, Custom 1 - 8 MP tray: Plain, Transparency, Rough, Vellum, Labels, Recycled, Preprinted, Bond, Cardstock, Color (Colour), Prepunched, Letterhead, Thick paper, Envelope, Coated, High Quality, Custom 1 - 8
Copy sizes .....	Cassette Maximum: A3/11" x 17" Minimum: A5R/5 1/2" x 8 1/2" MP tray Maximum: A3/11" x 17" Minimum: A6R/5 1/2" x 8 1/2" During duplex copying Maximum: A3/11" x 17" Minimum: A5R/5 1/2" x 8 1/2"
Magnification ratios .....	Manual mode: 25 - 400%, 1% increments Auto copy mode: Fixed ratios
Copying speed .....	At 100% magnification in memory copy mode: 25/20 ppm model A3/11" x 17": 13 sheets/min. (monochrome); 10 sheets/min. (full color) B4/8 1/2" x 14": 13 sheets/min. (monochrome); 10 sheets/min. (full color) A4/11" x 8 1/2": 25 sheets/min. (monochrome); 20 sheets/min. (full color) A4R/8 1/2" x 11": 17 sheets/min. (monochrome); 14 sheets/min. (full color) B5: 25 sheets/min. (monochrome); 20 sheets/min. (full color) B5R: 17 sheets/min. (monochrome); 14 sheets/min. (full color)  32/25 ppm model A3/11" x 17": 16 sheets/min. (monochrome); 13 sheets/min. (full color); B4/8 1/2" x 14": 16 sheets/min. (monochrome); 13 sheets/min. (full color) A4/11" x 8 1/2": 32 sheets/min. (monochrome); 25 sheets/min. (full color) A4R/8 1/2" x 11": 22 sheets/min. (monochrome); 17 sheets/min. (full color) B5 size: 32 sheets/min. (monochrome); 25 sheets/min. (full color) B5R size: 22 sheets/min. (monochrome); 17 sheets/min. (full color)  32/32 ppm model A3/11" x 17": 16 sheets/min. (monochrome); 16 sheets/min. (full color) B4/8 1/2" x 14": 16 sheets/min. (monochrome); 16 sheets/min. (full color) A4/11" x 8 1/2": 32 sheets/min. (monochrome); 32 sheets/min. (full color) A4R/8 1/2" x 11": 22 sheets/min. (monochrome); 22 sheets/min. (full color) B5: 32 sheets/min. (monochrome); 32 sheets/min. (full color) B5R: 22 sheets/min. (monochrome); 22 sheets/min. (full color)
First copy time .....	7.9 s or less/5.9 s or less [Color-single color/Monochrome] (A4/11" x 8 1/2", 100% magnification)
Warm-up time .....	45 s or less Recovery from low power mode: 30 s or less Recovery from sleep mode: 45 s or less (room temperature 22 °C/71.6 °F, 60% RH)

Paper feed system .....	Automatic feed (two cassettes) Capacity: Cassette 1: 500 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 11" x 8 1/2"/A4 or smaller), 250 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 8 1/2" x 14"/B4 or larger) Cassette 2: 500 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) Manual feed Capacity: MP tray: 100 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 11" x 8 1/2"/A4 or smaller), 50 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> , 8 1/2" x 14"/B4 or larger)
Paper eject system .....	Output tray: 250 sheets (80 g/m <sup>2</sup> ) Eject tray (optional job separator): 150 sheets
Multiple copying .....	1 - 999 sheets
Photoconductor.....	a-Si (drum diameter 30 mm)
Recording system .....	Semiconductor laser
Charging system.....	Charging roller
Developing system .....	Hybrid developing Developer: 2-component Toner replenishing: Automatic from a toner container
Transfer system .....	Primary: Transfer belt Secondary: Transfer roller
Separation system .....	Separation electrode
Fusing system.....	Melt fusing (Fuser belt) Heat source: Halogen heaters Fuser heater 1 600W, Fuser heater 2 400 W, Fuser heater 3 600 W Abnormally high temperature protection devices: thermostats
Charge erasing system.....	Exposure by cleaning lamp
Cleaning system .....	Blade and roller
Scanning system .....	Flat bed scanning by CCD image sensor
Resolution.....	600 x 600 dpi
Light source .....	Inert gas lamp
Bitmap memory.....	768 MB (standard for copying/for scanner) 256 MB (standard for printing)
Image storage memory.....	40 GB (standard)
Dimensions .....	605 (W) x 660 (D) x 745 (H) mm 23 13/16" (W) x 26" (D) x 29 5/16" (H)

- a: 605 mm/23 13/16"
- b: 660 mm/26"
- c: 745 mm/29 5/16"

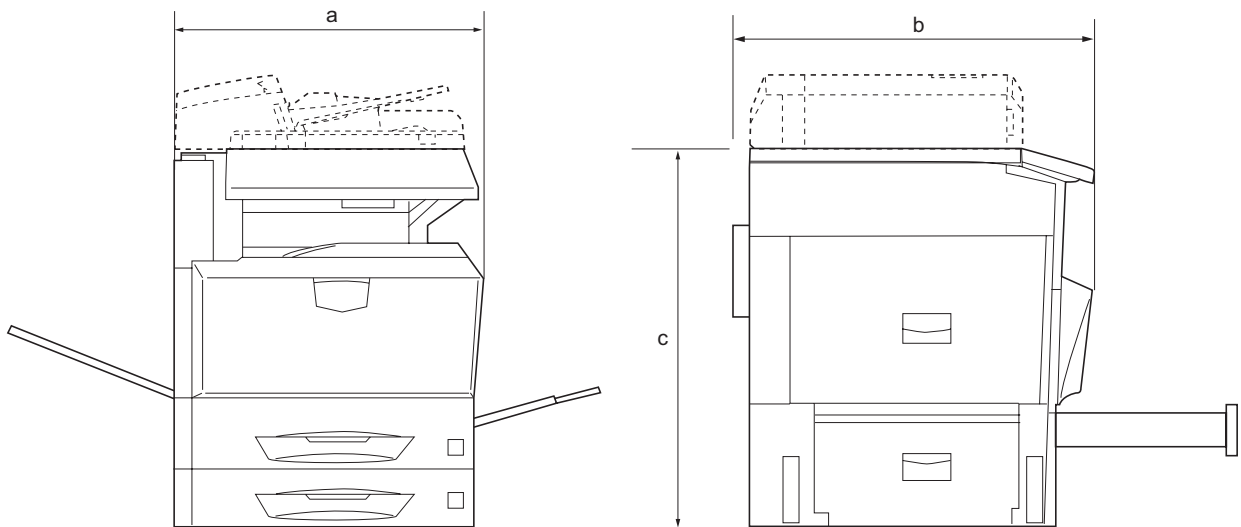


Figure 1-1-1



Weight.....	98 kg/215.6 lbs (excluding toner containers and waste toner box)
Floor requirements.....	889 mm (W) x 660 (D) mm 35" (W) x 26" (D) (when using MP tray)
Functions .....	Duplex mode, split mode, offset mode, combine mode, margin mode, centering originals, border erase, poster, page numbering, cover mode, booklet, memo mode, batch scanning, sharpness adjust, background exposure adjust, proof copy, repeat copy, OHP backing sheet mode, EcoPrint, inverted copying, mirror copying, image repeat copy, color balance adjust, hue adjust, one touch image adjust, Color/B&W selection, single color copy, programmed copying, job build, shared data box, synergy print box, output management, job accounting, language setting
Power source.....	120 V AC, 60 Hz, 12.0 A/220 - 240 V AC, 50 Hz, 7.2 A
Power consumption .....	1440 W
Options .....	DP, paper feeder, 3000-sheet paper feeder, document finisher, 3000-sheet document finisher, centerfold unit, mailbox, punch unit, job separator, key counter, fax kit, security kit and PDF Upgrade Kit

### Printer functions

CPU .....	PowerPC 750FL/600 MHz (25/20 ppm model and 32/25 ppm model) PowerPC 750GL/800 MHz (32/32 ppm model)
Printing speed.....	Same as copying speed
First Print Time.....	7.9 s or less/5.9 s or less [Color/Monochrome]
Resolution.....	600 dpi (2/4 bit)
Applicable OS .....	Windows 95 OSR2, Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows NT 4.0 Service Pack 5 or later, Windows 2000 Service Pack 2 or later, Windows Me, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Apple Macintosh OS 9.x/OS X 10.x
Interface.....	Parallel port interface: 1 IEEE1284 Network interface: 1 USB: 1 Hi-Speed USB Network interface cards (option): 1 Serial interface (option): 1
PDL.....	PRESCRIBE
Standard memory .....	256 MB
Optional memory .....	Max. 1024 MB
Options .....	Hard disk, additional memory, network interface card, serial interface

### Scanner functions

Hardware .....	IBM PC/AT Compatible
Applicable OS .....	Windows 95 OSR2, Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows NT 4.0 Service Pack 5 or later, Windows 2000 Service Pack 2 or later, Windows Me, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003
Operating Environment.....	CPU Pentium 133 MHz or higher RAM 64 MB or greater
Recommended Environment .....	CPU Celeron 266 MHz or higher RAM 64 MB or greater HDD 300 MB or greater CD-ROM 1 drive
Ethernet .....	10BASE-T/100BASE-TX
Network Protocol .....	TCP/IP
Communications Protocols .....	Proprietary (image transferring, setting via utility), SMTP (e-mail sending), HTTP (setting via web)

NOTE: These specifications are subject to change without notice.

1-1-2 Parts names

(1) Body

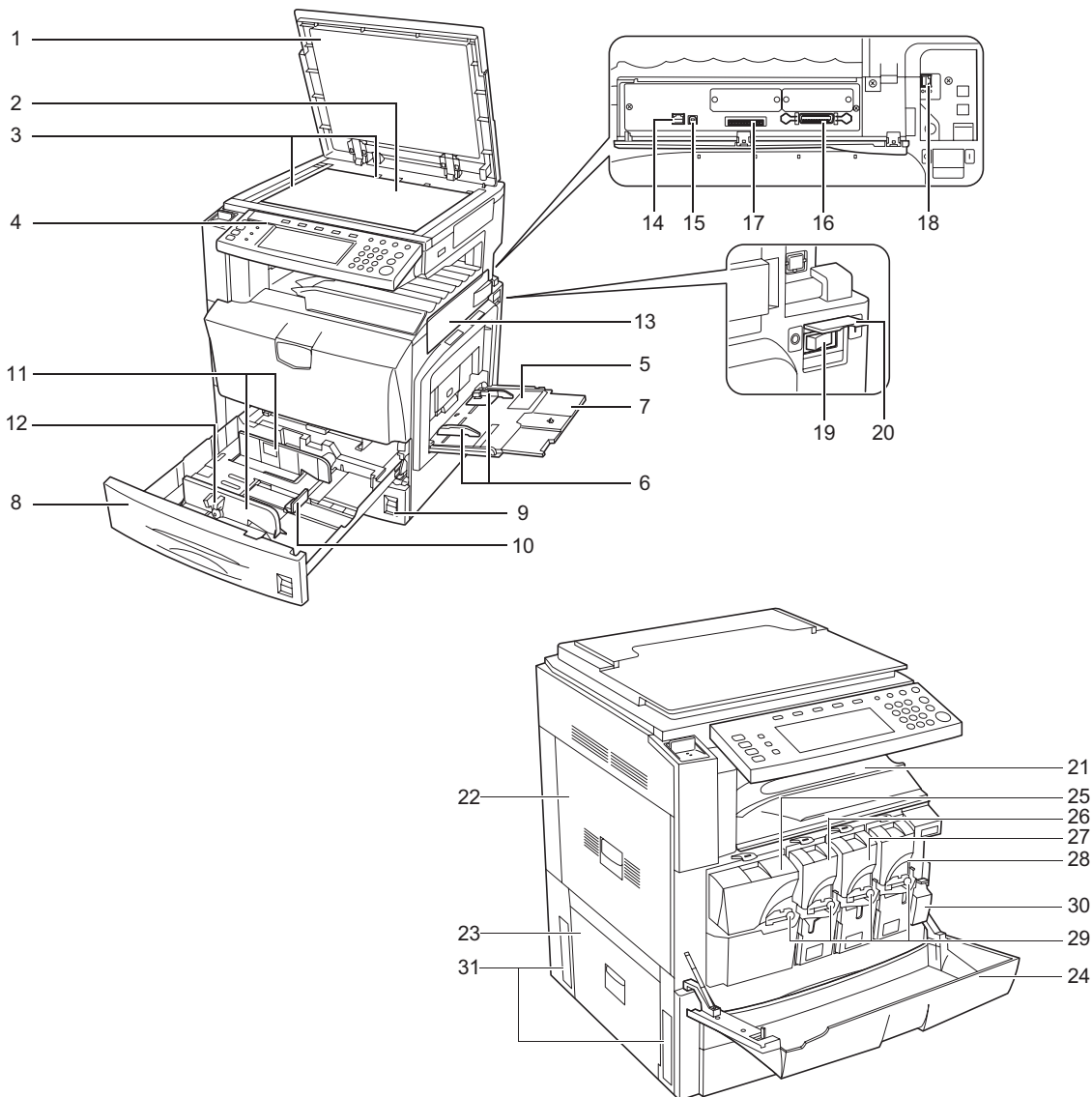
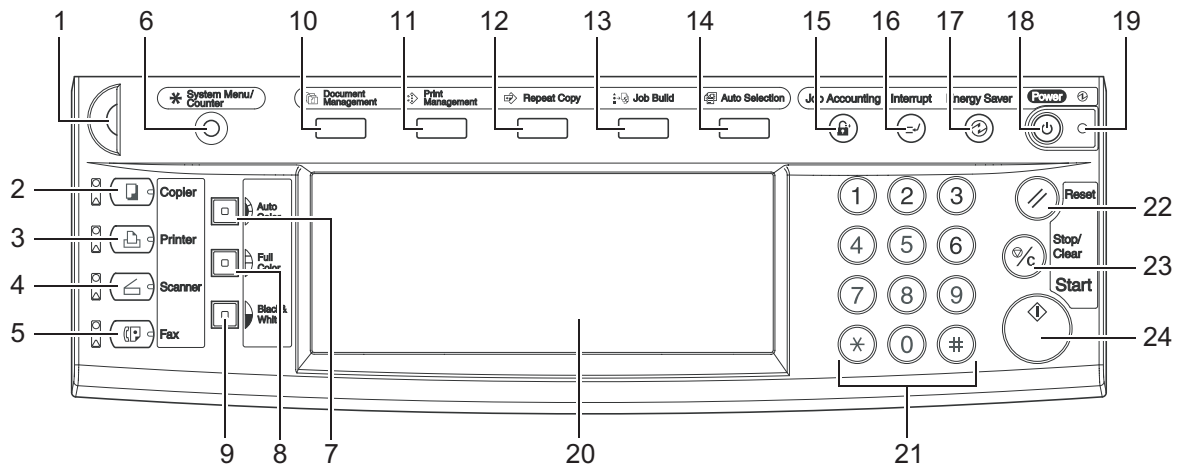


Figure 1-1-2

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Original Platen (Option)               | 17. Memory Card (CompactFlash) Slot       |
| 2. Contact glass                          | 18. Network Interface Connector (Scanner) |
| 3. Original Size Indicator Plates         | 19. Main Power Switch                     |
| 4. Operation Panel                        | 20. Main Power Switch Cover               |
| 5. MP Tray (multi-purpose tray)           | 21. Output Tray                           |
| 6. Sliders                                | 22. Left Cover 1                          |
| 7. MP Tray Extension                      | 23. Left Cover 2                          |
| 8. Cassette 1                             | 24. Front Cover                           |
| 9. Cassette 2                             | 25. Toner Container (Black)               |
| 10. Paper Length Guide                    | 26. Toner Container (Yellow)              |
| 11. Paper Width Guides                    | 27. Toner Container (Cyan)                |
| 12. Paper Width Adjusting Tab             | 28. Toner Container (Magenta)             |
| 13. Interface Cover                       | 29. Toner Container Lock Lever            |
| 14. Network Interface Connector (Printer) | 30. Waste Toner Box                       |
| 15. USB Interface Connector               | 31. Carrying Handles                      |
| 16. Parallel Port Interface Connector     |   |

**(2) Operation panel****Figure 1-1-3**

- |                                       |                                  |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. Brightness Adjustment Dial         | 13. Job Build Key/Indicator      |
| 2. Copier Key (Indicator/Lamp)        | 14. Auto Selection Key/Indicator |
| 3. Printer Key (Indicator/Lamp)       | 15. Job Accounting Key           |
| 4. Scanner Key (Indicator/Lamp)       | 16. Interrupt Key/Indicator      |
| 5. Fax Key (Indicator/Lamp)           | 17. Energy Saver Key/Indicator   |
| 6. System Menu/Counter Key            | 18. Power Key/Indicator          |
| 7. Auto Color Key                     | 19. Main Power Indicator         |
| 8. Full-Color Key                     | 20. Touch Panel                  |
| 9. Black&White Key                    | 21. Numeric Keys                 |
| 10. Document Management Key/Indicator | 22. Reset Key                    |
| 11. Print Management Key/Indicator    | 23. Stop/Clear Key               |
| 12. Repeat Copy Key/Indicator         | 24. Start Key/Indicator          |

1-1-3 Machine cross section

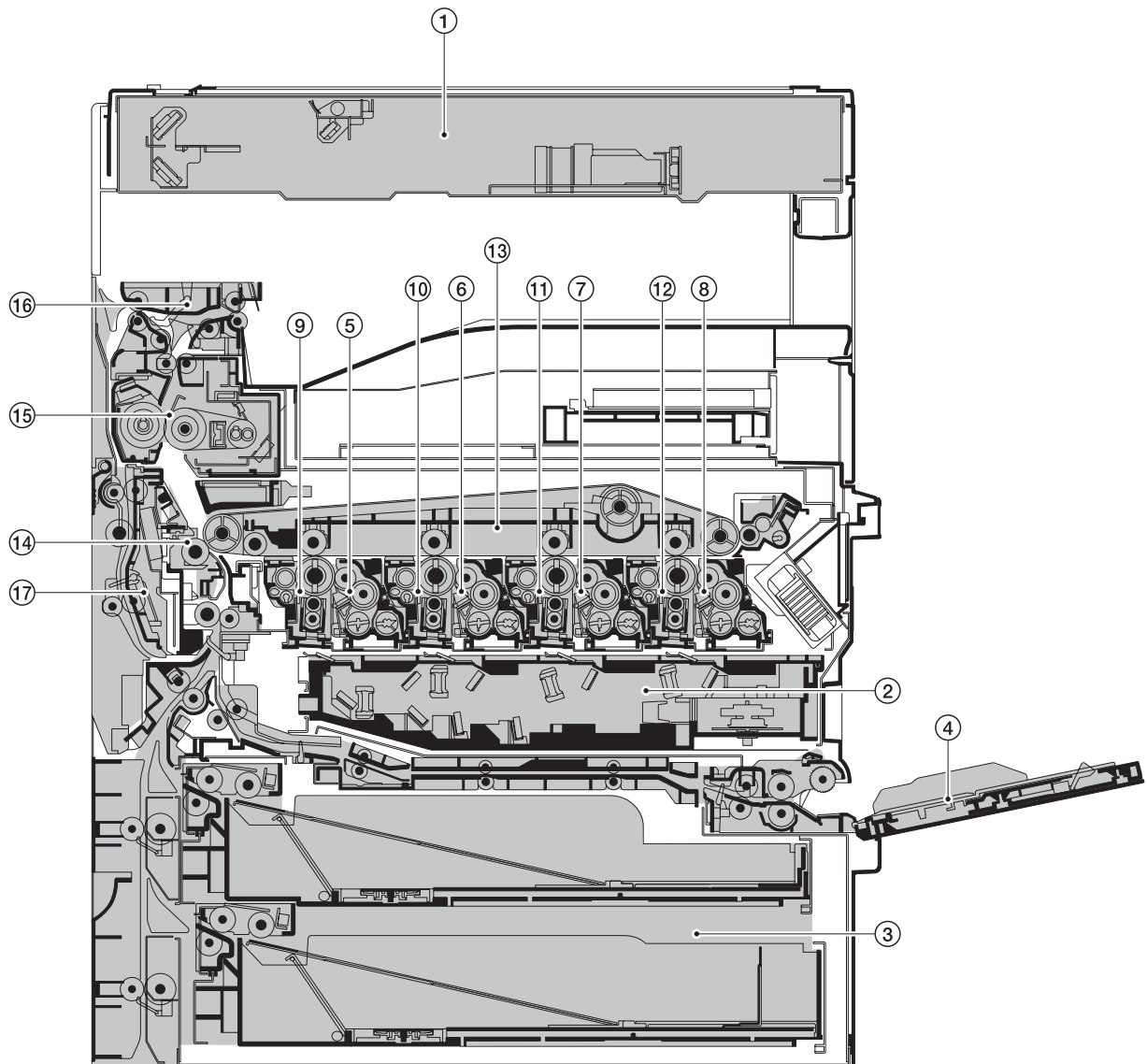


Figure 1-1-4 Machine cross section

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 1. Image scanner section        | 10. Drum section (Yellow)                 |
| 2. Laser scanner section        | 11. Drum section (Cyan)                   |
| 3. Cassette paper feed section  | 12. Drum section (Magenta)                |
| 4. MP tray paper feed section   | 13. Primary transfer section              |
| 5. Developing section (Black)   | 14. Secondary transfer/separation section |
| 6. Developing section (Yellow)  | 15. Fuser section                         |
| 7. Developing section (Cyan)    | 16. Eject/feedshift section               |
| 8. Developing section (Magenta) | 17. Duplex section                        |
| 9. Drum section (Black)         |   |

### 1-2-1 Installation environment

1. Temperature: 10 to 32.5°C/50 to 90.5°F
2. Humidity: 15 to 80%
3. Power supply: 120 V AC, 12.0 A/220 to 240 V AC, 7.2 A
4. Power source frequency: 50 Hz  $\pm 2\%$ /60 Hz  $\pm 2\%$
5. Installation location
  - Avoid direct sunlight or bright lighting. Ensure that the photoconductor will not be exposed to direct sunlight or other strong light when removing paper jams.
  - Avoid extremes of temperature and humidity, abrupt ambient temperature changes, and hot or cold air directed onto the machine.
  - Avoid dust and vibration.
  - Choose a surface capable of supporting the weight of the machine.
  - Place the machine on a level surface (maximum allowance inclination: 1°).
  - Avoid air-borne substances that may adversely affect the machine or degrade the photoconductor, such as mercury, acidic or alkaline vapors, inorganic gasses, NO<sub>x</sub>, SO<sub>x</sub> gases and chlorine-based organic solvents.
  - Select a room with good ventilation.
6. Allow sufficient access for proper operation and maintenance of the machine.
  - Machine front: 1000 mm/39 3/8"
  - Machine rear: 100 mm/3 15/16"
  - Machine right: 300 mm/11 13/16"
  - Machine left: 500 mm/19 11/16"

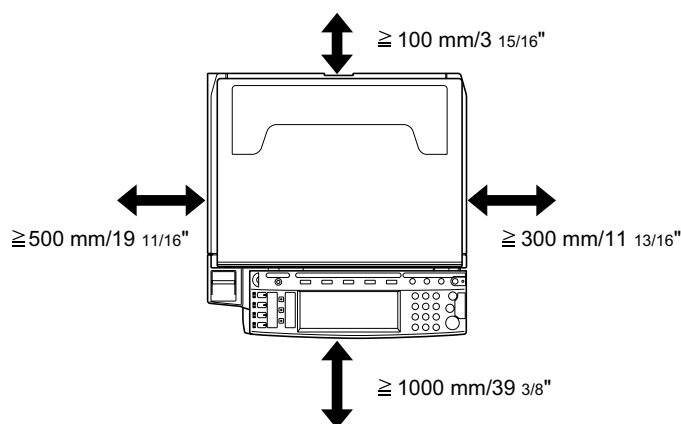
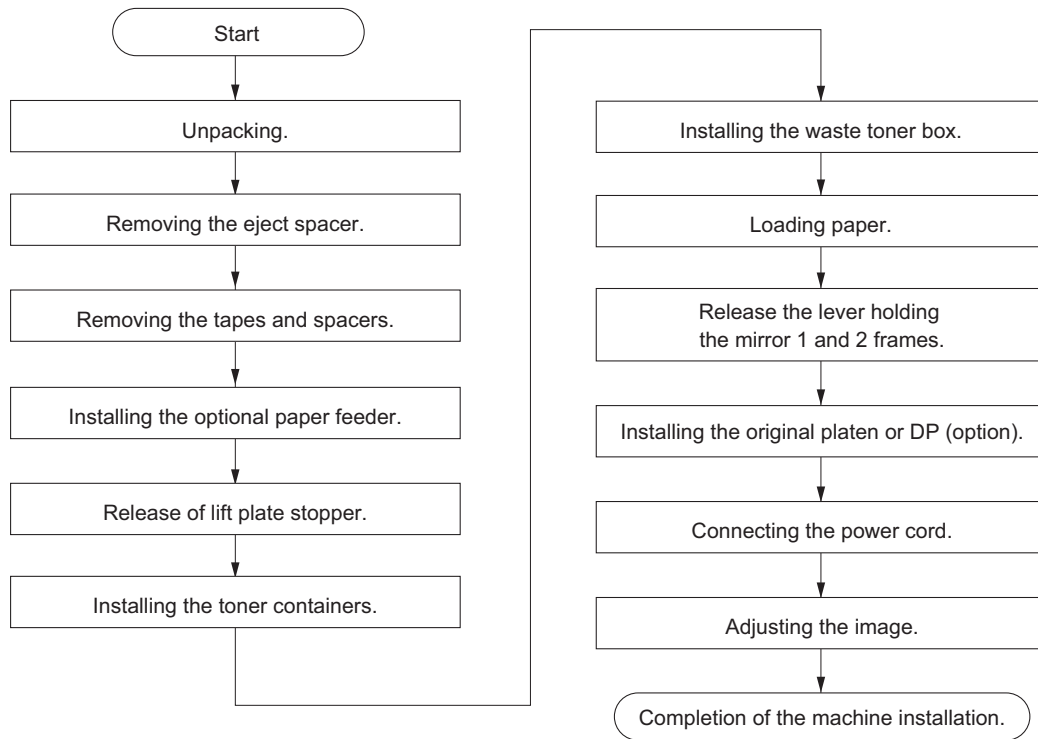


Figure 1-2-1 Installation dimensions

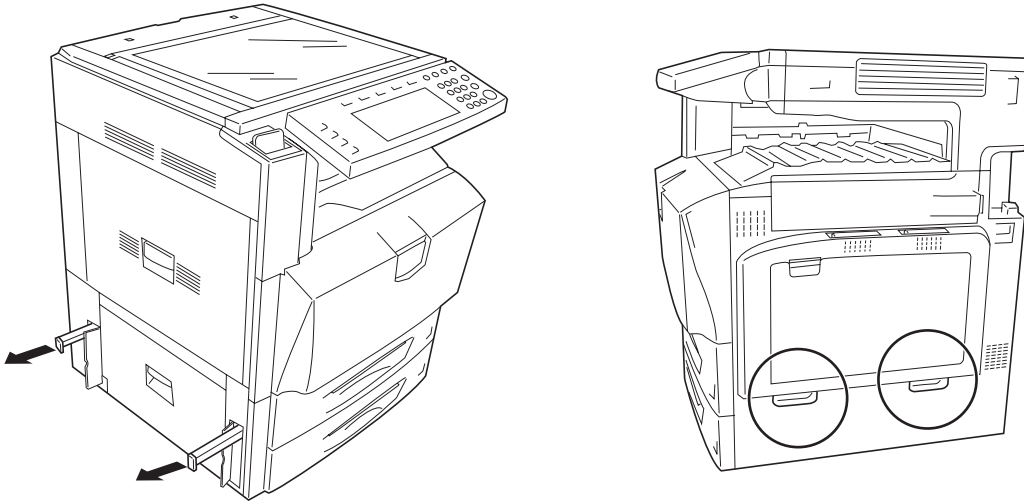
## 1-2-2 Unpacking and installation

### (1) Installation procedure



**Moving the machine**

When moving the machine, pull out two carrying handles on the left side, and move with carrying handles and the having hand two place of the right side.



**Figure 1-2-2**

Unpacking.

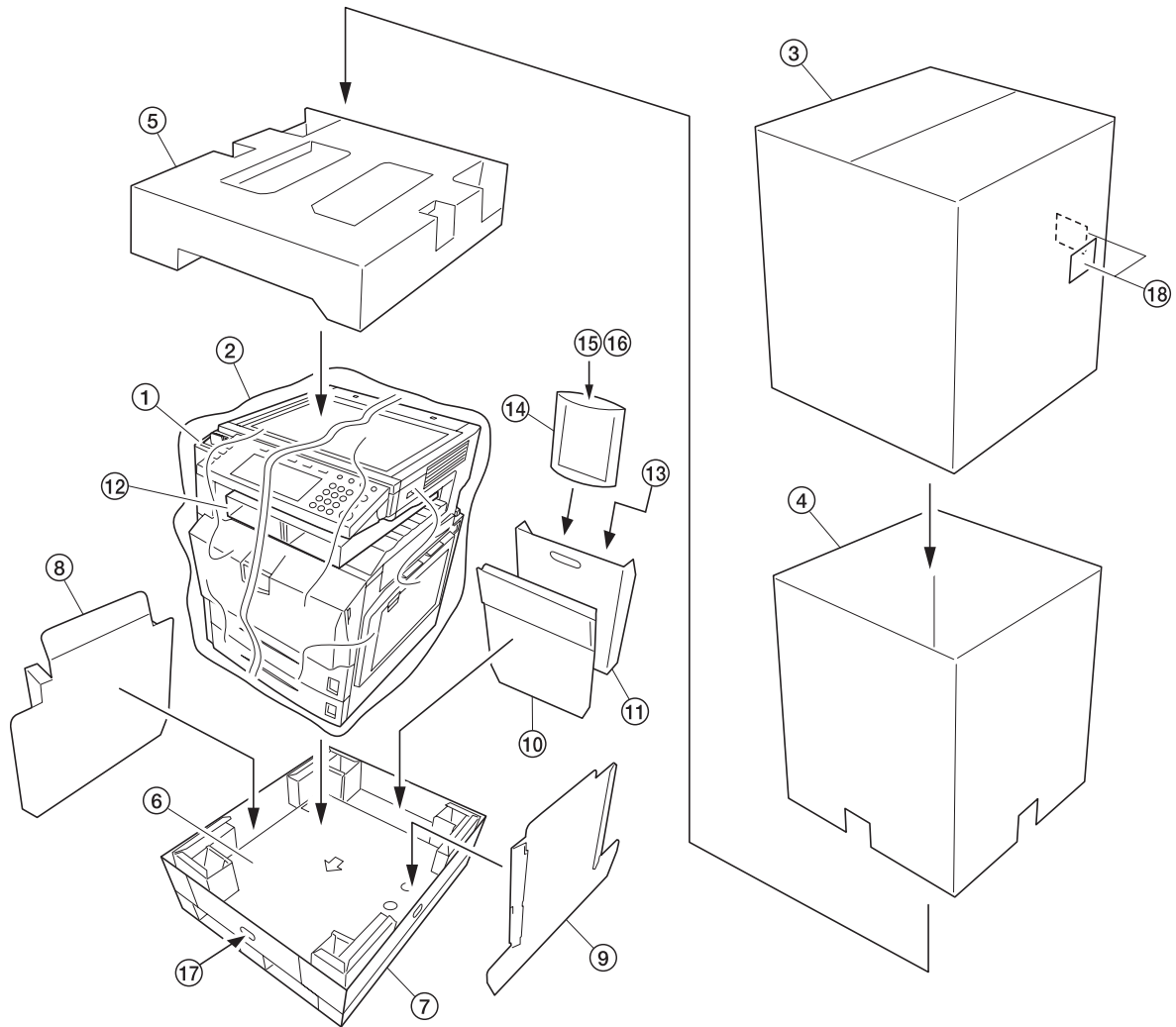


Figure 1-2-3 Unpacking

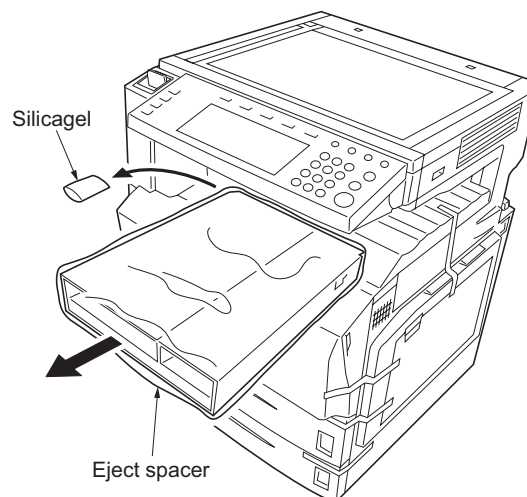
- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. Machine       | 10. Rear pad        |
| 2. Machine cover | 11. Manual case     |
| 3. Outer case    | 12. Eject spacer    |
| 4. Inner frame   | 13. Power code      |
| 5. Top pad       | 14. Plastic bag     |
| 6. Bottom pad    | 15. Operation guide |
| 7. Skid          | 16. M3 x 8 screws   |
| 8. Left pad      | 17. Hinge joints    |
| 9. Right pad     | 18. Barcode labels  |

Place the machine on a level surface.



### Removing the eject spacer.

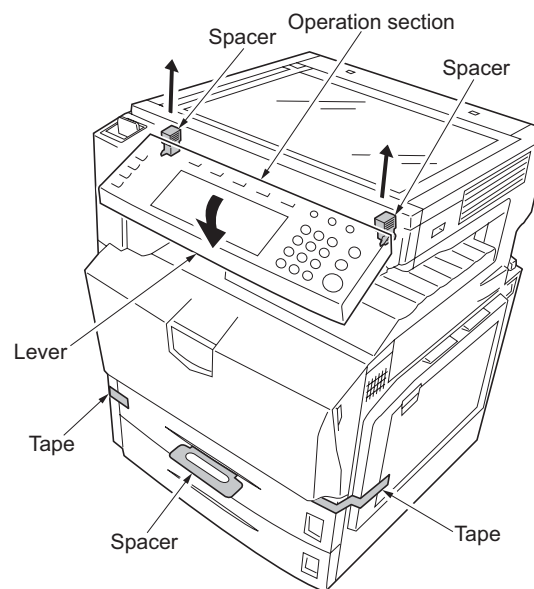
1. Remove the eject spacer and silicagel from the eject section.



**Figure 1-2-4**

### Removing the tapes and spacers.

1. Remove two tapes.
2. Remove the spacer from cassette 1.
3. Pull the lever and operation section is lowered.
4. Remove two spacers.  
Remove waste textile on the operation panel, if any.



**Figure 1-2-5**

### Installing the optional paper feeder.

1. Install the optional paper feeder as necessary.
2. Verify levelness at the four corners of the contact glass using a level gauge, and adjust the level bolts at the bottom of the machine to optimize levelness.

Release of lift plate stopper.

1. Pull cassette 1 and 2 out.  
Remove the lift plate stopper from each cassette and attach it to the storage location.  
When moving the machine, attach the lift plate in original position.

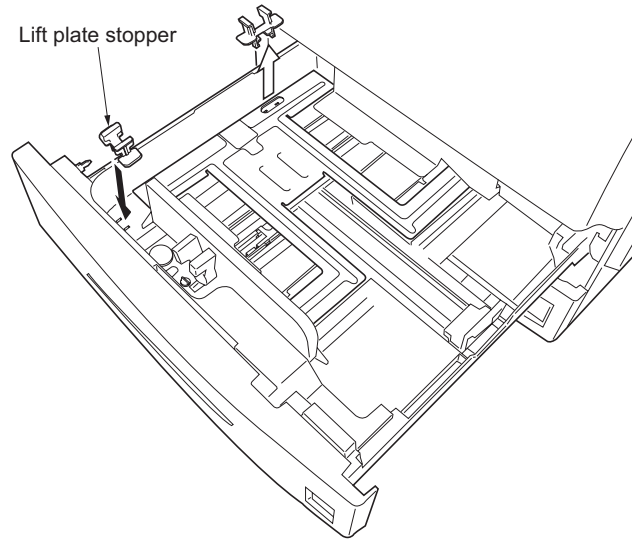


Figure 1-2-6

2. Gently push cassette 1 and 2 back in.

Installing the toner containers.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Hold the toner container with the toner container lock lever positioned on the top, and tap the top side ten times or more while keeping the container horizontal.

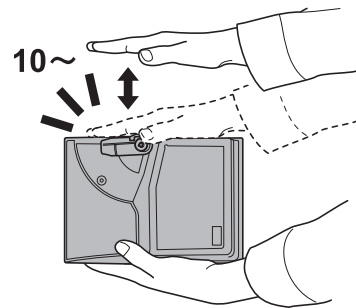


Figure 1-2-7

3. Holding the toner container in both hands, hold vertically and shake up and down at least ten times to distribute the toner evenly. **IMPORTANT:** Do not install the toner container before shaking it sufficiently. This may cause errors due to insufficient toner replenishment.

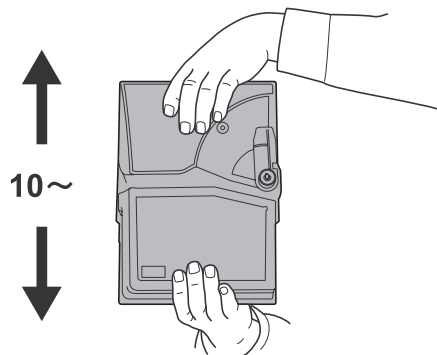
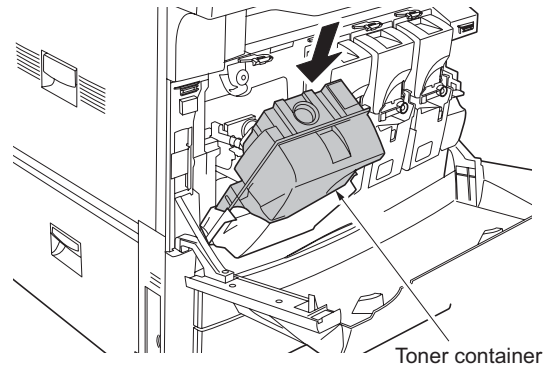


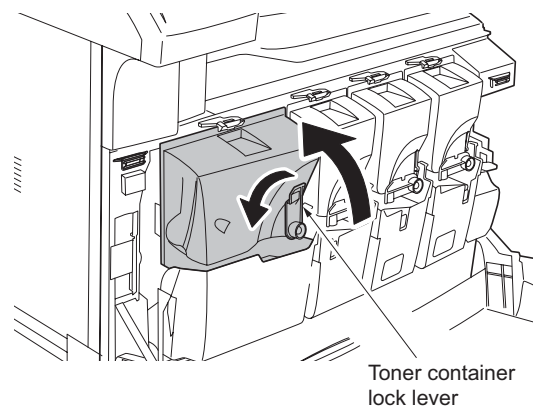
Figure 1-2-8

4. Install the toner containers.



**Figure 1-2-9**

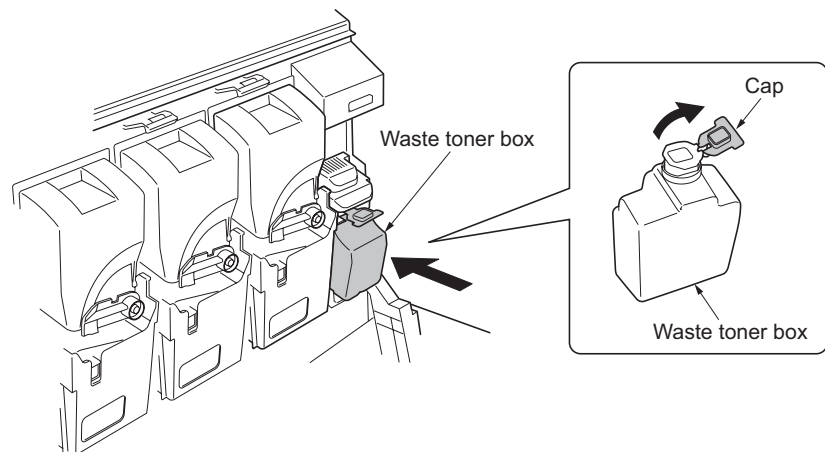
5. Press in the toner container upper portion.
6. Turn the toner container lock lever to the left to replenish.



**Figure 1-2-10**

Installing the waste toner box.

1. Open the cap and install the waste toner box.
2. Close the front cover.



**Figure 1-2-11**

Loading paper.

1. Pull the cassette out.
2. Adjust the paper length guide to fit the paper size.
3. Holding the paper width adjusting tab both ends, move the paper width guide to fit the paper.
4. When loading paper smaller than 11 x 8 1/2" or A4 into cassette 1, raise the support lever as shown in the figure.

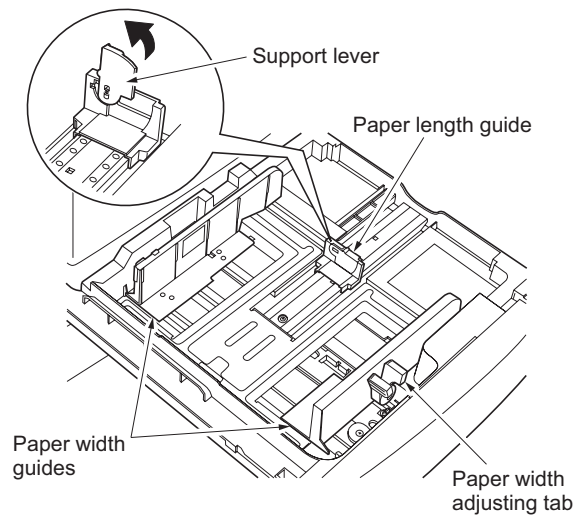


Figure 1-2-12

5. Align the paper flush against the left side of the cassette.  
**IMPORTANT:** Verify that the paper is pressed snugly against the vertical and horizontal size guides. If a gap is present, reset the width guides or length guide. Before loading the paper, be sure that it is not curled or folded. Ensure that the loaded paper does not exceed the level indicated.

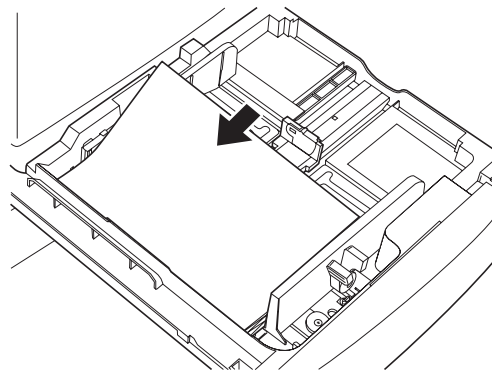


Figure 1-2-13

6. Insert the appropriate paper size card in the slot to indicate the size of the loaded paper.
7. Gently push the cassette back in.

Release the lever holding the mirror 1 and 2 frames.

1. Turn the lever of the machine rear side with the tool to release the lever holding the mirror 1 and 2 frames.

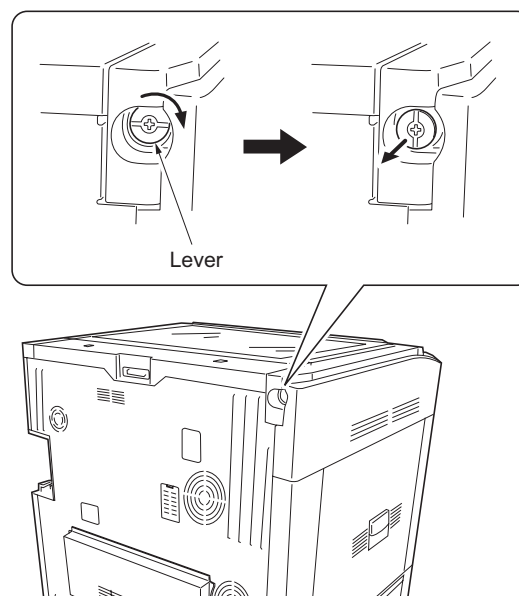


Figure 1-2-14

Installing the original platen or DP (option).

1. Install optional original platen or DP.

Connecting the power cord.

1. Connect the power cord to the power cord connector on lower left of the machine.
2. Connect the power plug to the wall outlet.

Adjusting the image.

1. Open the main power switch cover and turn the main power switch on.
2. **Output status report**  
Enter the maintenance mode by entering 10871087 using the numeric keys.  
Use the numeric keys to enter 000 and press the start key.  
Select [MAINTENANCE].  
Press the start key. A status report is output.
3. **Printing half-toned color test patterns**  
Load the cassette with a sheet of A3 or 11" x 17" paper.  
Enter 089 using the numeric keys and press the start key.  
Select [GRAY] on the touch panel and press the interrupt key.  
Press the Full-Color key and select [Mono color] at Color func.(Colour func.) screen.  
Select [Cyan], [Magenta] or [Yellow].  
Press the start key. The gray test pattern of cyan/magenta/yellow is output.  
Press the Black&White key.  
Press the start key. The gray test pattern of black is output.
4. Enter 001 using the numeric keys to exit the maintenance mode.  
If horizontal white streaks are noticeable on the gray images described in line with the paper feeding direction with the width of approximately 20 mm, proceed to the drum refreshing.  
If horizontal white streaks are not noticeable, proceed to step 6.
5. **Performing drum refreshing**  
Press the System Menu/Counter key and select [User Adjustment].  
Select [Drum Refresh] and press [On] to begin drum refreshing.  
When drum refreshing is complete, output a gray image pattern in step 3 and check the horizontal white stripe image in step 4. If an image quality problem is noticed, perform drum refreshing again. When no problem is noticed, proceed to step 6.
6. **Performing color registration (see page 1-3-117)**  
Press the System Menu/Counter key and select [User Adjustment].  
Select [Color Regist (Colour Regist)] and press [PRT Chart].  
Select [Input Reg. value] and enter the values for magenta/cyan/yellow.  
Select Completed and perform color registration.
7. **Adjusting the halftone automatically (maintenance item U410)**  
Enter the maintenance mode by entering 10871087 using the numeric keys.  
Enter 410 using the numeric keys and press the start key.  
Select [Continuous Adjustment] to print a test pattern.  
Use the test pattern printed as the original and press the start key to adjust automatically.  
Place about 20 sheets of blank papers on a test pattern.  
Select [Next Adjustment] to output a test pattern.  
Use the test pattern printed as the original and press the start key to adjust automatically.  
Place about 20 sheets of blank papers on a test pattern.  
Select [End (Fixed)] to set the data.
8. Enter 001 using the numeric keys to exit the maintenance mode.  
When image quality is unsatisfiable after test copying, execute Color Calibration (see page 1-3-117) under User Adjustment, then retry U410-Adjusting the halftone automatically.

Completion of the machine installation.

**(2) Setting initial copy modes**

Factory settings are as follows:

Maintenance item No.	Contents	Factory setting
U253	Switching between double and single counts	DOUBLE COUNT (A3/LEDGER)
U254	Turning auto start function ON/OFF	ON
U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	After ejection
U263	Setting the paper ejection	Face down ejection
U264	Setting the display order of the date	Month/Day/Year (inch) Day/Month/Year (metric)
U276	Setting the copy count mode	MODE0
U277	Setting auto application change time	30
U284	Setting 2 color copy mode	OFF
U285	Setting service status page	ON
U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	ON
U327	Setting the cassette heater ON/OFF	OFF
U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	Simplex copy
U344	Setting the low-power mode	ENERGY STAR (120 V) GEEA (220-240 V)

### 1-2-3 Installing the key counter (option)

**Key counter installation requires the following parts:**

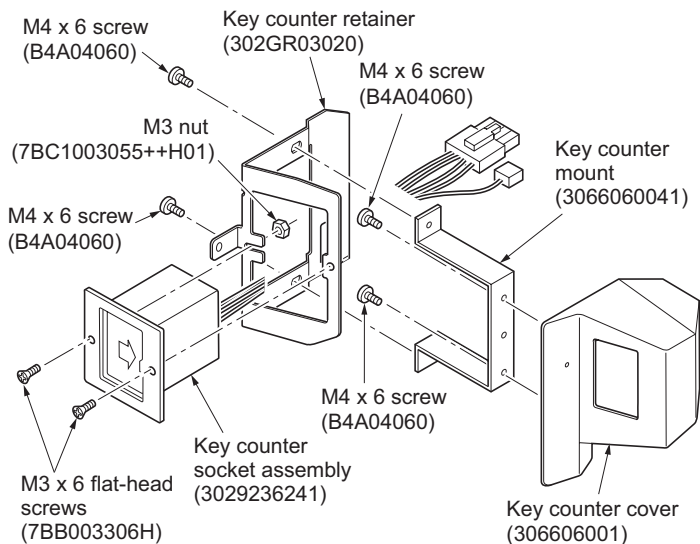
- Key counter (P/N 82142540)
- Key counter set (P/N 302A369708)
- Key counter mount (P/N 302FZ03010)
- One (1) M4 × 8 tap-tight S screw (P/N B1A54080)

**Supplied parts of key counter set:**

- Key counter socket assembly (P/N 3029236241)
- Key counter cover (P/N 3066060011)
- Key counter mount (P/N 3066060041)
- Key counter retainer (P/N 302GR03020)
- Key counter cover retainer (P/N 302GR03010)
- One (1) M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw (P/N 5MBTPB3008PW++R)
- Two (2) M4 × 10 tap-tight P screws (P/N 5MBTPB4010PW++R)
- Two (2) M4 × 10 tap-tight S screws (P/N 5MBTPB4010TW++R)
- Two (2) M3 × 6 bronze flat-head screws (P/N 7BB003306H)
- One (1) M4 × 20 tap-tight S screw (P/N 7BB100420H)
- One (1) M3 bronze nut (P/N 7BC1003055++H01)
- One (1) M3 × 8 bronze binding screw (P/N B1B03080)
- One (1) M4 × 30 tap-tight S screw (P/N B1B54300)
- Four (4) M4 × 6 chrome TP screws (P/N B4A04060)
- Two (2) M4 × 10 chrome TP screws (P/N B4A04100)

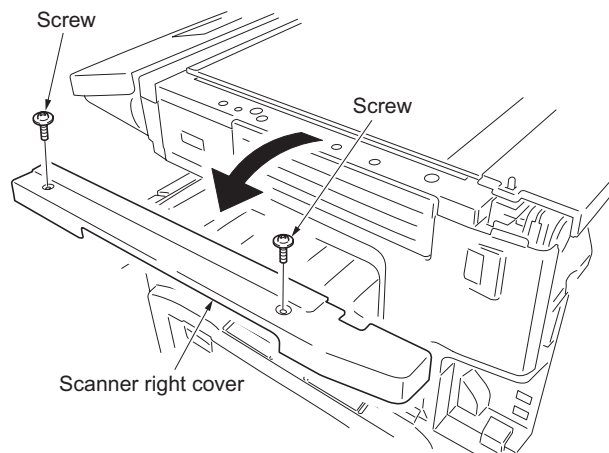
**Procedure**

1. Turn the main power switch off and disconnect the power cord plug from the AC outlet.
2. Fit the key counter socket assembly to the key counter retainer using the two screws and nut.
3. Fit the key counter mount to the key counter cover using the two screws, and attach the key counter retainer to the mount using the two screws.



**Figure 1-2-15**

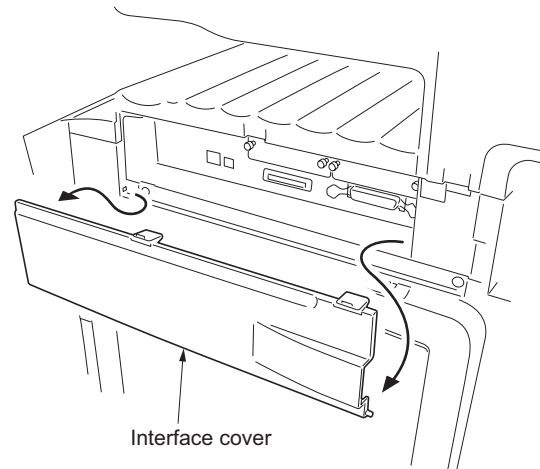
4. Remove the two screws and then remove the scanner right cover.



**Figure 1-2-16**

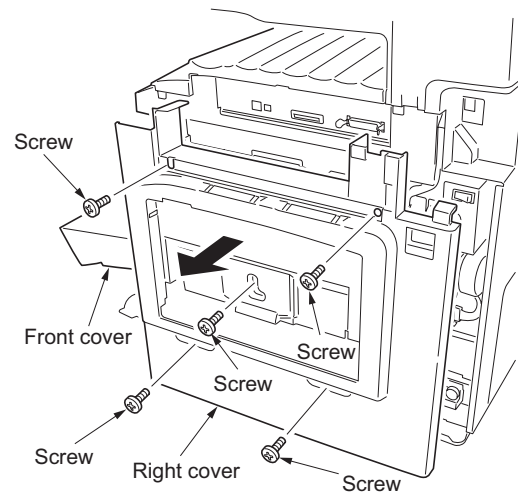


5. Remove the inserted parts and then remove the interface cover.



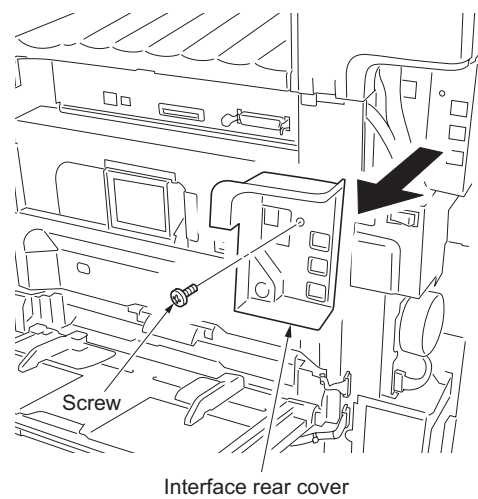
**Figure 1-2-17**

6. Open the front cover.
7. Remove five screws and remove the right cover.



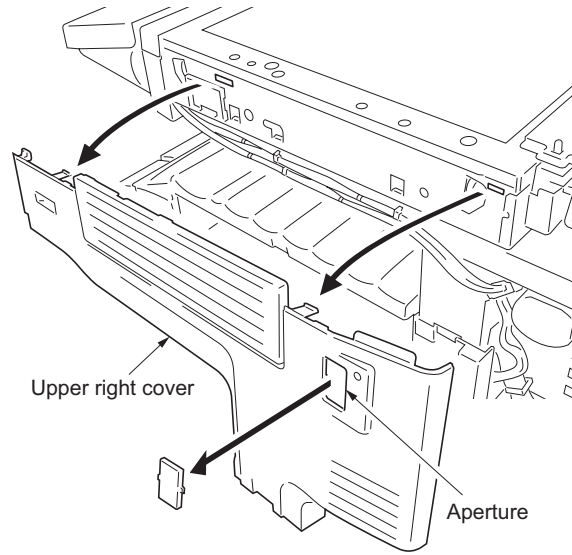
**Figure 1-2-18**

8. Remove one screw and then remove the interface rear cover.



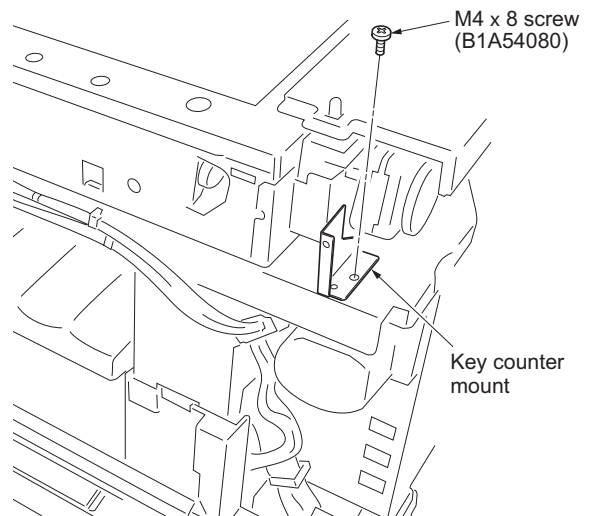
**Figure 1-2-19**

- 9. Remove the upper right cover.
- 10. Cut out the aperture plate on the upper right cover using nippers.



**Figure 1-2-20**

- 11. Attach the key counter mount to the rear upper frame using the M4 x 8 screw.



**Figure 1-2-21**

12. Remove the machine's signal cable from three wire saddles (A).
13. Fasten the machine's signal cable to the wire saddle (B).
14. Pass the connector (machine's signal cable) through the aperture in the upper right cover.
15. Refit the upper right cover.
16. Refit the right cover.
17. Refit the interface cover.

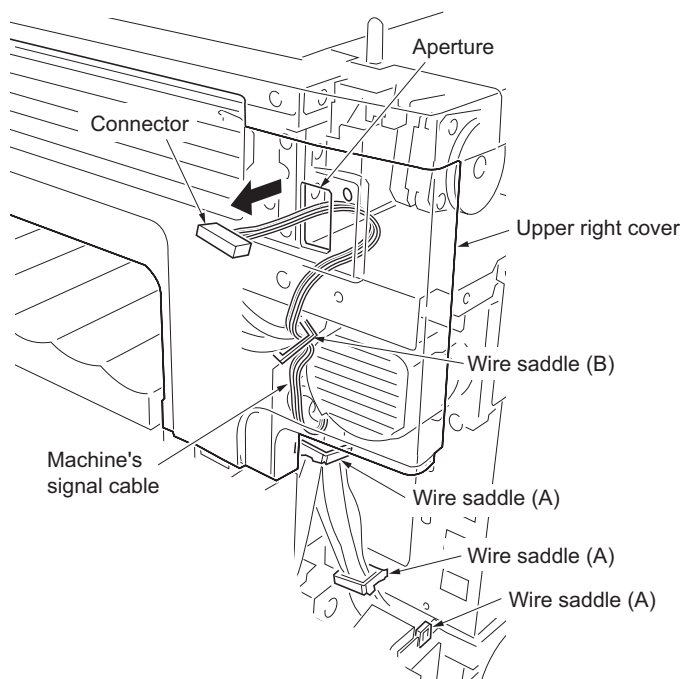


Figure 1-2-22

18. Pass the connector (key counter signal cable) through the aperture in the key counter cover retainer.
19. Connect the connector (key counter signal cable) to the connector (machine's signal cable).
20. Seat the projection of the key counter cover retainer in the aperture in the upper right cover.
21. Fit the key counter with the key counter socket assembly inserted to the key counter cover retainer on the machine using the screw.
22. Insert the key counter into the key counter socket assembly.

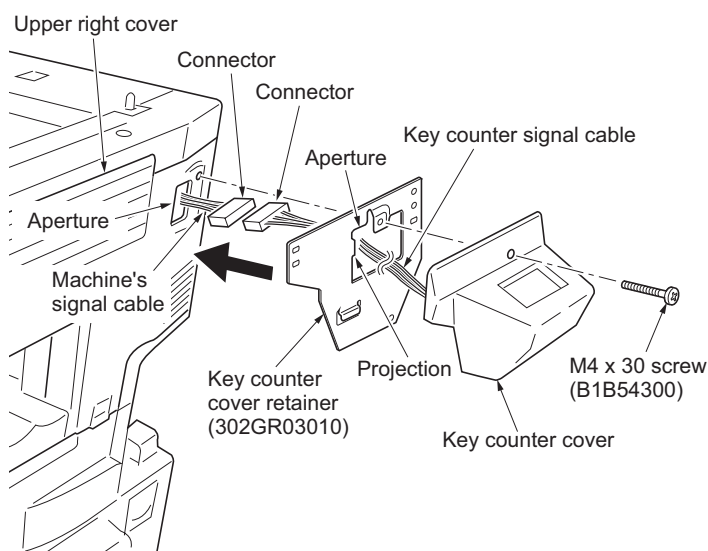


Figure 1-2-23

23. Turn the main power switch on and enter the maintenance mode.
24. Run maintenance item U204 and select "KEY-COUNTER".
25. Exit the maintenance mode.
26. Check that the message requesting the key counter to be inserted is displayed on the touch panel when the key counter is pulled out.
27. Check that the counter counts up as copies are made.

### 1-2-4 Installing the memory (option)

#### Procedure

1. Turn the main power switch off and disconnect the power cord plug from the AC outlet.
2. Open the interface cover.
3. Remove the CF cover.
4. Remove the two screws and then remove the printer PWB.  
Remove the PWB carefully not to allow its bottom come in contact with the three protrusions on the interface cover.

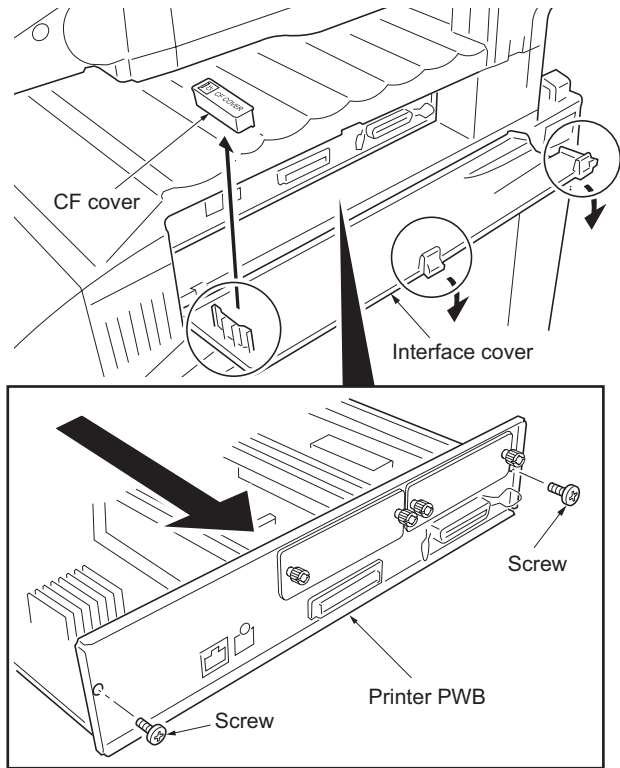


Figure 1-2-24

5. Open the clips on both ends of the memory socket.
6. Insert the memory into the memory socket, so that the notches on the memory align with the corresponding protrusions in the memory socket.
7. Close the clips of the memory socket to secure the memory.
8. Refit and secure the printer PWB using two screws.  
Refit the PWB carefully not to allow its bottom come in contact with the three protrusions on the interface cover.
9. Refit the CF cover.
10. Close the interface cover.

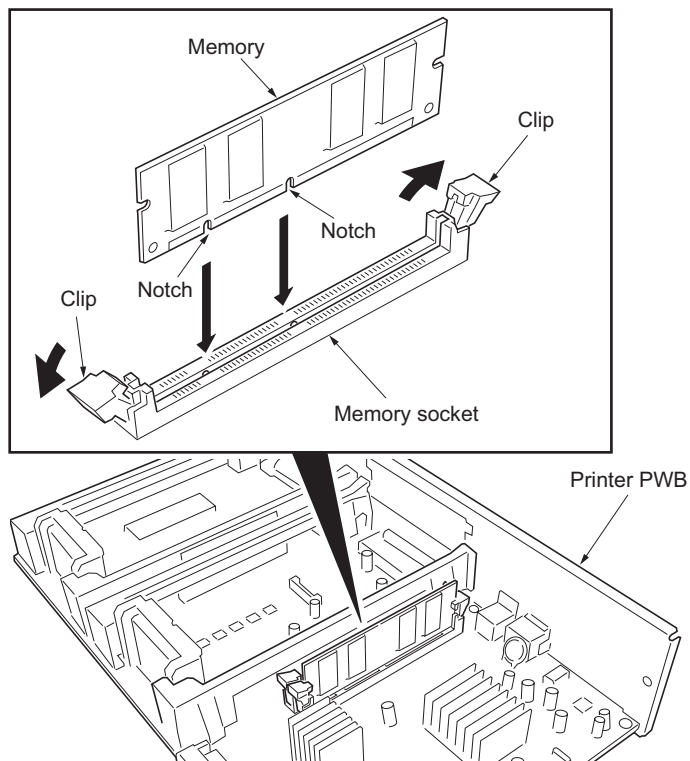


Figure 1-2-25

### 1-2-5 Installing the hard disk (option)

#### Procedure

1. Turn the main power switch off and disconnect the power cord plug from the AC outlet.
2. Open the interface cover.
3. Remove the two screws and then remove the slot cover of slot (HDD).
4. Insert the hard disk into the slot (HDD). Secure the hard disk using the two screws.
5. Close the interface cover.
6. Connect the power cord to the AC outlet plug and turn the main power switch on.
7. Format the hard disk. (See the operation guide.)

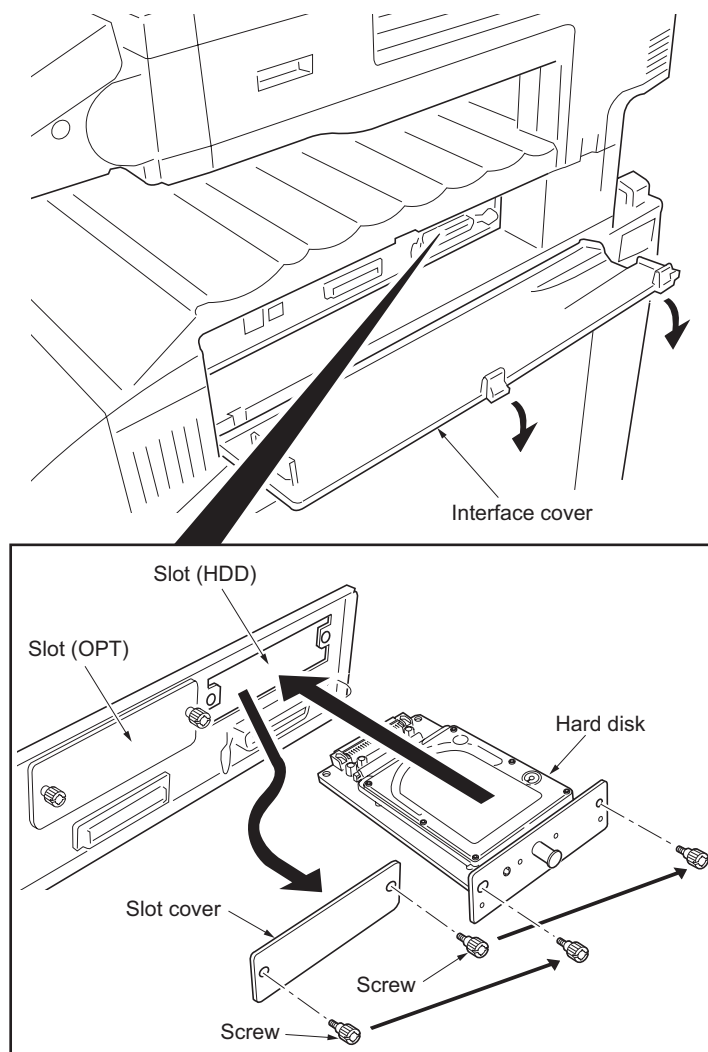
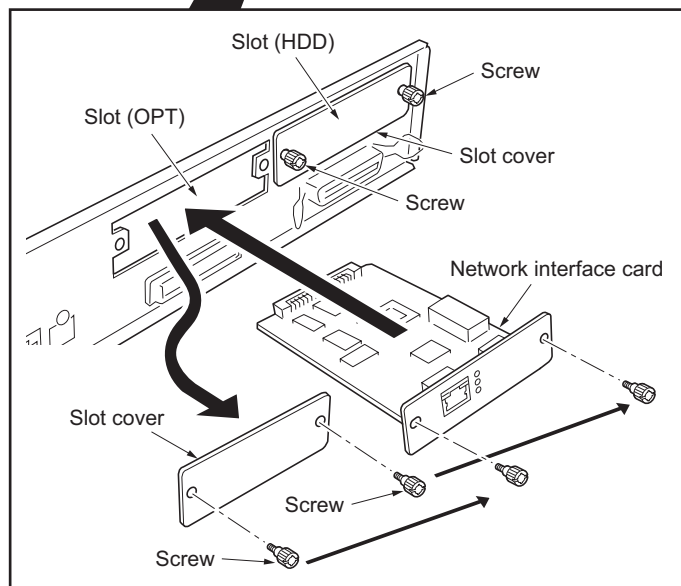
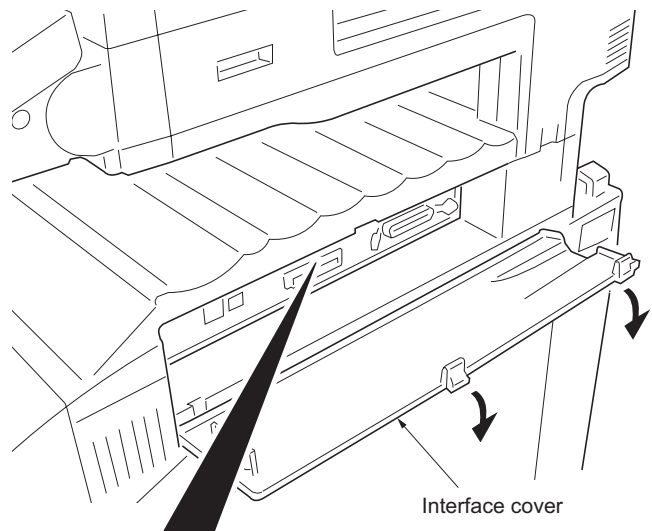


Figure 1-2-26

### 1-2-6 Installing the network interface card (option)

#### Procedure

1. Turn the main power switch off and disconnect the power cord plug from the AC outlet.
2. Open the interface cover.
3. Remove the two screws and then remove the slot cover of slot (OPT).
4. Insert the network interface card into the slot (OPT).  
Secure the network interface card using the two screws.
5. Connect the network cable.  
Configure the network interface card. (See the operation guide.)



## 1-2-7 Installing the serial interface board (option)

### Procedure

1. Turn the main power switch off and disconnect the power cord plug from the AC outlet.
2. Open the interface cover.
3. Remove the CF cover.
4. Remove the two screws and then remove the printer PWB.  
Remove the PWB carefully not to allow its bottom come in contact with the three protrusions on the interface cover.
5. Remove the two screws and then remove the slot cover of slot (OPT).

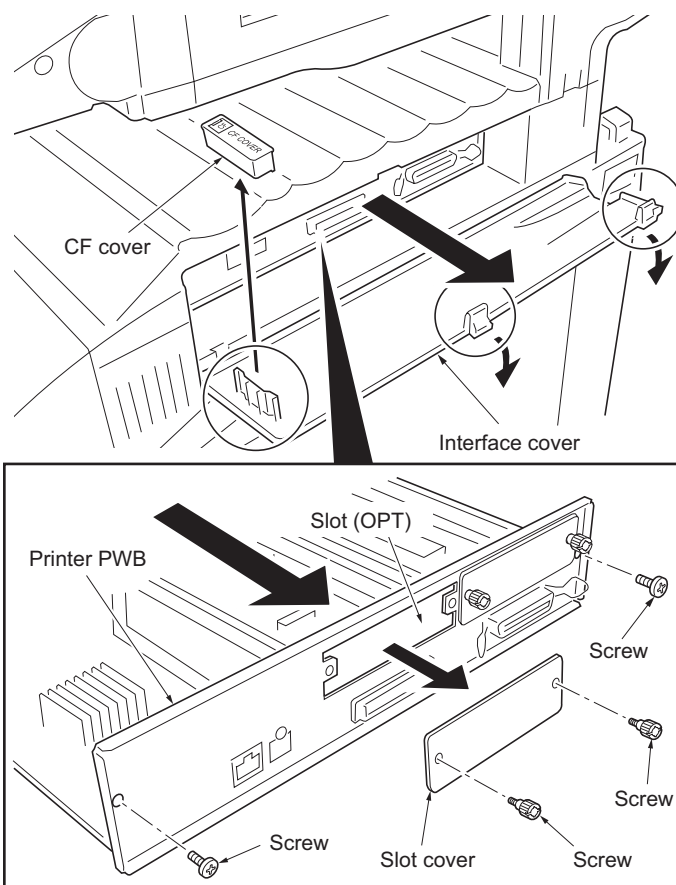


Figure 1-2-28

6. Insert the serial interface board into the slot (OPT).
7. Connect the cable's connector (A) to the serial interface board's connector.
8. Connect the cable's connector (B) to the printer PWB's connector (YC9).

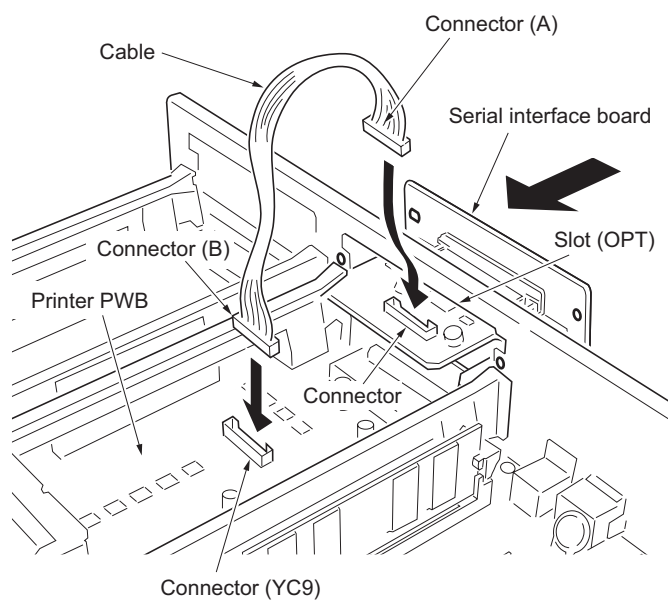


Figure 1-2-29

9. Secure the serial interface board using the two screws.
10. Refit and secure the printer PWB using the two screws.  
Refit the PWB carefully not to allow its bottom come in contact with the three protrusions on the interface cover.
11. Connect the serial interface cable.
12. Refit the CF cover.
13. Close the interface cover.

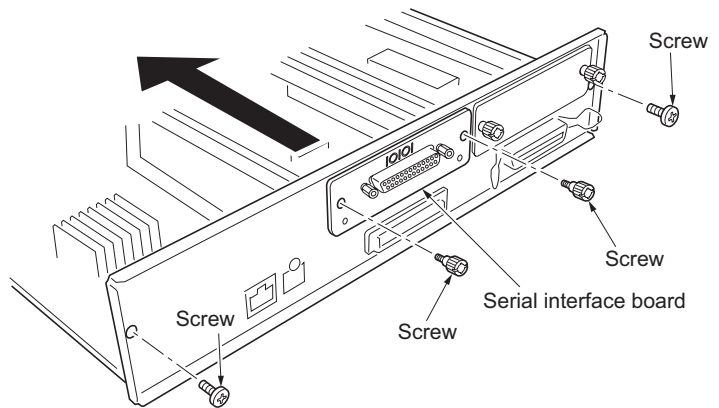


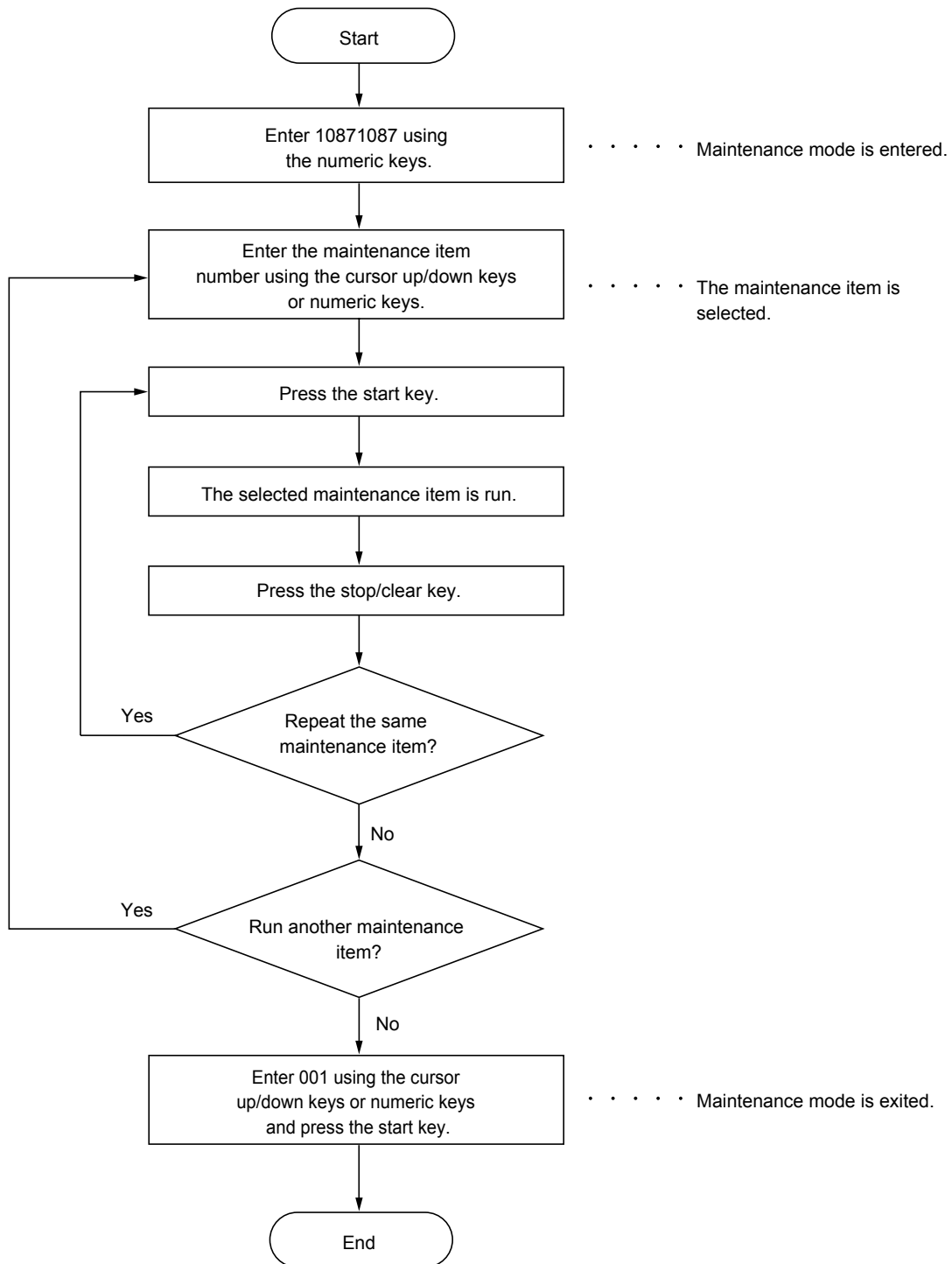
Figure 1-2-30



### 1-3-1 Maintenance mode

The machine is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

#### (1) Executing a maintenance item



## (2) Maintenance mode item list

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
General	U000	Printing out an own-status report	-
	U001	Exiting the maintenance mode	-
	U002	Setting the factory default data	-
	U003	Setting the service telephone number	*****1, *2
	U004	Displaying the machine number	-
	U019	Displaying the ROM version	-
Initialization	U020	Initializing all data	-
	U021	Memory initializing	-
	U024	HDD formatting	-
Drive, paper feed and paper conveying system	U030	Checking the operation of the motors	-
	U031	Checking switches for paper conveying	-
	U032	Checking the operation of the clutches	-
	U033	Checking the operation of the solenoids	-
	U034	Adjusting the print start timing Leading edge registration adjustment Center line adjustment	0/0/0/0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup> 0/0/0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U035	Setting the printing area for folio paper Length/Width	330/210 <sup>*1</sup>
	U037	Checking the operation of the fan motors	-
	U051	Adjusting the deflection in the paper	0/0/0/0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U053	Setting the adjustment of the motor speed Set MOTOR 1 Set MOTOR 2 Set MOTOR 3	0/0/0/0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup> 0/0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup> 0/0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup>
U059	Setting fan mode	MODE1 <sup>*1</sup>	
Optical	U061	Checking the operation of the exposure lamp	-
	U063	Adjusting the shading position	0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U065	Adjusting the scanner magnification	0/0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U066	Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration	0/0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U067	Adjusting the scanner center line	0/0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U068	Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP	0/0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U070	Adjusting the DP magnification	0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U071	Adjusting the DP scanning timing	0/0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U072	Adjusting the DP center line	0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U073	Checking the scanner operation	-
	U076	Executing DP automatic adjustment	-
	U080	Setting the economy mode	75/75 <sup>*1</sup>
	U087	Setting DP reading position modification operation	200/200/200 <sup>*1</sup>
	U089	Outputting the MIP-PG pattern	-
	U093	Adjusting the exposure density gradient TEXT MIXED OTHER FAX TEXT FAX PHOTO	0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup> 0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup> 0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup> 0/0 <sup>*1</sup> 0/0 <sup>*1</sup>
U099	Adjusting original size detection	105/105/105 <sup>*1</sup> 60/60/60 <sup>*1</sup> 150/240 <sup>*1</sup>	

\*Initial setting for executing U020, \*1: The item initialized for executing U020, \*2: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*	
High voltage	U100	Adjusting main high voltage Adjust MC AC Bias AC Auto Adjustment Adjust DC2 Low Temp. Setting (Drum)	158/158/158/158 <sup>*1</sup> ON <sup>*1</sup> 0/0/0/0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup> 1 <sup>*1</sup>	
	U101	Setting the voltage for the primary transfer	95/75/0/5/10/25 <sup>*1</sup>	
	U106	Setting the voltage for the secondary transfer Light/Normal 1 Full Front Normal2/3 Full Front Light/Normal 1 Full Back Normal 2/3 Full Back Heavy 1 - 3 OHP Bias	174/162/109 <sup>*1</sup> 174/162/124 <sup>*1</sup> 224/174/102 <sup>*1</sup> 224/174/112 <sup>*1</sup> 117/71/71 <sup>*1</sup> 155/58 <sup>*1</sup> 189/189/34/34 <sup>*1</sup>	
	U107	Setting the transfer cleaning voltage Transfer belt cleaning voltage (printing) Transfer belt cleaning voltage (between paper) Transfer belt cleaning voltage (between paper)	90/90/90 <sup>*1</sup> 55/55/55 <sup>*1</sup> 170/110 <sup>*1</sup>	
	U108	Setting separation shift bias Set Output Value Set Timing	85/60/52/60/8/26 <sup>*1</sup> -88/0/110 <sup>*1</sup>	
	U109	Checking the drum type	-	
	U110	Checking the drum count	-	
	U111	Checking the drum drive time	-	
	U117	Checking the drum number	-	
	U118	Displaying the drum history	-	
	U119	Setting the drum	-	
	U122	Checking the transfer belt unit number	-	
	U123	Displaying the transfer belt unit history	-	
	U127	Checking the transfer count	-	
	U128	Setting transfer high-voltage timing	-54/-54/10 <sup>*1</sup>	
	Developing	U131	Adjusting the toner sensor control voltage	116/116/116/116 <sup>*1</sup>
		U132	Replenishing toner forcibly	-
U135		Checking toner motor operation	-	
U139		Displaying the temperature and humidity outside the machine	-	
U140		Displaying developing bias	-	
U147		Setting for toner applying operation Transition Time Set Operation Mode Upper Limit Sleeve Cleaning Interval Settings for developing the toner layer in accordance with coverage ratio Toner layer width	70 <sup>*1</sup> MODE1/1.0/1.0/1.0/1.0 <sup>*1</sup> 5.0 <sup>*1</sup> 60 <sup>*1</sup> Standard Control <sup>*1</sup> 10/20 <sup>*1</sup>	
U148		Setting drum refresh mode	TABLE3 <sup>*1</sup>	
U155		Displaying the toner sensor output	-	
U156		Setting the toner replenishment level Supply Level EMPTY LEVEL	502/502/502/502 <sup>*1</sup> 101/101/101/101 <sup>*1</sup>	
U157		Checking the developing drive time	-	
U158		Checking the developing count	-	

\*Initial setting for executing U020, \*1: The item initialized for executing U020, \*2: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
Fuser and cleaning	U161	Setting the fuser control temperature	160/170/170/170/0/150 <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U163	Resetting the fuser problem data	-
	U167	Checking/clearing the fuser count	-
	U199	Displaying fuser heater temperature	-
Operation panel and support equipment	U200	Turning all LEDs on	-
	U201	Initializing the touch panel	-
	U202	Setting the KMAS host monitoring system	-
	U203	Operating the DP separately	-
	U204	Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter	OFF <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U206	Setting the presence or absence of the coin vender	-
	U207	Checking the operation panel keys	-
	U208	Setting the paper size for the paper feeder	11 x 8.5 (Inch)/A4 (Metric) <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U234	Setting punch destination	NOTING <sup>*1</sup>
	U237	Setting finisher stack quantity	0/0 <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U240	Checking the operation of the finisher	-
	U241	Checking the operation of the switches of the finisher	-
	U243	Checking the operation of the DP motors	-
	U244	Checking the DP switches	-
	U245	Checking messages	-
	U246	Setting the paper ejection device 3000 FINISHER BOOKLET FOLDER	0/0/0/0/0/0 <sup>*1,*2</sup> 0/0/0/0/0/0/0 <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U247	Setting the paper feed device	-
Mode setting	U250	Change the maintenance count pre-set	-
	U251	Checking/clearing the maintenance count	-
	U252	Setting the destination	INCH <sup>*1</sup>
	U253	Switching between double and single counts	DOUBLE COUNT (A3/LEDGER) <sup>*1</sup>
	U254	Turning auto start function ON/OFF	ON <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U260	Selecting the timing for copy counting	EJECT <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U263	Setting the paper ejection	NORMAL <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U264	Setting the display order of the date	Month/Day/Year (Inch) <sup>*1,*2</sup> Day/Month/Year (Metric) <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U265	Setting OEM purchaser code	0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U276	Setting the copy count mode	MODE0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U277	Setting auto application change time	30 <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U284	Setting 2 color copy mode	OFF <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U285	Setting service status page	ON <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U325	Setting the bias between pages	
	U326	Setting the black line cleaning indication	ON <sup>*1</sup>
	U327	Setting the cassette heater ON/OFF	OFF <sup>*1</sup>
	U332	Setting the size conversion factor	1.0/1.0/1.0 <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U341	Specific paper feed location setting for printing function	-
	U343	Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode	OFF <sup>*1,*2</sup>
	U344	Setting the low-power mode	ENERGY STAR (120 V) <sup>*1,*2</sup> GEEA (220-240 V) <sup>*1,*2</sup>
U345	Setting the value for maintenance due indication	-	

\*Initial setting for executing U020, \*1: The item initialized for executing U020, \*2: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
Image processing	U402	Adjusting margins of image printing	3.0/2.5/2.5/3.0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U403	Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the contact glass	2.0/2.0/2.0/2.0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U404	Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP	3.0/2.5/3.0/4.0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U407	Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing	2.0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U410	Adjusting the halftone automatically	-
	U411	Adjusting the scanner automatically	-
	U425	Setting the target	-
	U429	Setting the offset for the color balance TEXT+PHOTO PHOTO PRINT TEXT MAP	0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup> 0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup> 0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup> 0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup> 0/0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U432	Setting the center offset for the exposure FULL-COLOR MONOCOLOR	0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup> 0/0/0 <sup>*1</sup>
	U464	Setting the ID correction operation	ON/480/2/After Auto Clear Time/Print Speed Priority <sup>*1</sup>
	U465	Data reference for ID correction	-
	U467	Setting the color registration adjustment	ON/ON <sup>*1</sup>
	U468	Checking the color registration data	-
	U470	Setting the compression ratio Y_DATA Rate JPEG C_DATA Rate JPEG PDF_DATA Rate	85/30/40/50/80/95 <sup>*1</sup> 85/30/40/50/80/95 <sup>*1</sup> 15/25/60/15/25/60 <sup>*1</sup>
	U473	Adjusting laser power output Adjust LSU Laser Power Density Correction	48/48/48/48 <sup>*1</sup> ON <sup>*1</sup>
U474	Checking LSU cleaning operation	1000 <sup>*1</sup>	
Network scanner	U504	Initializing the scanner NIC	-
	U505	Setting data base assistant	ON <sup>*1</sup>
	U506	Setting the time out	10 <sup>*1</sup>
	U508	Setting the LDAP	OFF <sup>*1, *2</sup>
	U510	Setting the enterprise mode	OFF <sup>*1, *2</sup>
	U511	Setting scan To FTP	ON <sup>*1, *2</sup>
	U512	Setting scan To SMB	OFF <sup>*1, *2</sup>
Other	U901	Checking copy counts by paper feed locations	-
	U902	Checking/clearing finisher punch count	-
	U903	Checking/clearing the paper jam counts	-
	U904	Checking/clearing the call for service counts	-
	U905	Checking counts by optional devices	-
	U906	Resetting partial operation control	-
	U908	Checking the total counter value	-
	U910	Clearing the coverage data	-
	U911	Checking/clearing copy counts by paper sizes	-
	U917	Setting backup data reading/writing	-
	U920	Checking the copy counts	-

\*Initial setting for executing U020, \*1: The item initialized for executing U020, \*2: The item initialized for executing U021

Section	Item No.	Content of maintenance item	Initial setting*
Other	U925	Checking/clearing the system error counts	-
	U926	Rewriting FAX program	-
	U927	Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)	-
	U928	Checking machine life counts	-
	U930	Checking/clearing the charger roller count	-
	U972	Setting the type of high voltage unit	-
	U984	Checking the developing unit number	-
	U985	Displaying the developing unit history	-
	U989	HDD Scandisk	-
	U990	Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to light	-
	U991	Checking the scanner operation count	-
	U998	Printing from memory	-

\*Initial setting for executing U020, \*1: The item initialized for executing U020, \*2: The item initialized for executing U021

**(3) Contents of maintenance mode items**

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U000	<p><b>Printing out an own-status report</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Prints out a list of the current settings of all maintenance items, and occurrences of paper jams and service calls. Also, prints out a list of the toner coverage report (total toner coverage report, copy toner coverage report, printer toner coverage report, fax toner coverage report).</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the current setting of the maintenance items, or the occurrences of paper jams and service calls. Before initializing or replacing the backup RAM, print out a list of the current settings of the maintenance items so that you can reenter the same settings after initialization or replacement.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be output.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Output list</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAINTENANCE</td> <td>List of the current settings of the maintenance modes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>JAM</td> <td>List of the paper jam occurrences</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SERVICE CALL</td> <td>List of the service call occurrences</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TONER COVERAGE</td> <td>List of the toner coverage</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The interrupt copy mode is entered and a list is output. When A4/11" x 8 1/2" paper is available, a report of this size is output. If not, specify the paper feed location. When output is complete, the screen for selecting an item is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Output list	MAINTENANCE	List of the current settings of the maintenance modes	JAM	List of the paper jam occurrences	SERVICE CALL	List of the service call occurrences	TONER COVERAGE	List of the toner coverage
Display	Output list										
MAINTENANCE	List of the current settings of the maintenance modes										
JAM	List of the paper jam occurrences										
SERVICE CALL	List of the service call occurrences										
TONER COVERAGE	List of the toner coverage										
U001	<p><b>Exiting the maintenance mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Exits the maintenance mode and returns to the normal copy mode.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To exit the maintenance mode.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The normal copy mode is entered.</p>										
U002	<p><b>Setting the factory default data</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Restores the machine conditions to the factory default settings.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To move the mirror frame of the scanner to the position for transport (position in which the frame can be fixed).</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [MODE1(ALL)]</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The mirror frame of the scanner returns to the position for transport.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>										

Maintenance item No.	Description								
<p><b>U003</b></p>	<p><b>Setting the service telephone number</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the telephone number to be displayed when a service call code is detected.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To set (during initial set-up of the machine) the telephone number for contacting service.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Enter the telephone number (up to 15 digits) using the numeric keys. To enter symbols such as hyphens and parentheses, select as required from the symbols displayed on the touch panel as shown below. To move the cursor, press Left or Right in the bottom row.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>*</td> <td>#</td> </tr> <tr> <td>(</td> <td>)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>-</td> <td>(Space)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Left</td> <td>Right</td> </tr> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The telephone number is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	*	#	(	)	-	(Space)	Left	Right
*	#								
(	)								
-	(Space)								
Left	Right								
<p><b>U004</b></p>	<p><b>Displaying the machine number</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the machine number.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the machine number.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The currently machine number is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								



Maintenance item No.	Description																																		
<b>U019</b>	<p><b>Displaying the ROM version</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the part number for the ROM fitted to each PWB.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the part number or to decide, if the newest version of ROM is installed.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The ROM version is displayed.</li> <li>2. Change the screen using the * or # keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN</td> <td>Main PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ENGINE</td> <td>Engine PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SCANNER</td> <td>Scanner PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LANGUAGE (Standard)</td> <td>Standard language ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LANGUAGE (Option)</td> <td>Optional language ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MAIN BOOT</td> <td>Main PWB booting</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PRINTER</td> <td>Printer PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NETWORK SCANNER</td> <td>Network scanner PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DP</td> <td>Optional DP drive PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER</td> <td>Optional 3000-sheet document finisher main PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ENGINE BOOT</td> <td>Engine PWB booting</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DICTIONARY</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER SADDLE</td> <td>Optional centerfold main PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER MAILBOX</td> <td>Optional mailbox main PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PF MAIN</td> <td>Optional paper feeder main PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER MIDDLE TRAY</td> <td>Optional intermediate tray main PWB ROM IC</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN	Main PWB ROM IC	ENGINE	Engine PWB ROM IC	SCANNER	Scanner PWB ROM IC	LANGUAGE (Standard)	Standard language ROM IC	LANGUAGE (Option)	Optional language ROM IC	MAIN BOOT	Main PWB booting	PRINTER	Printer PWB ROM IC	NETWORK SCANNER	Network scanner PWB ROM IC	DP	Optional DP drive PWB ROM IC	FINISHER	Optional 3000-sheet document finisher main PWB ROM IC	ENGINE BOOT	Engine PWB booting	DICTIONARY	-	FINISHER SADDLE	Optional centerfold main PWB ROM IC	FINISHER MAILBOX	Optional mailbox main PWB ROM IC	PF MAIN	Optional paper feeder main PWB ROM IC	FINISHER MIDDLE TRAY	Optional intermediate tray main PWB ROM IC
Display	Description																																		
MAIN	Main PWB ROM IC																																		
ENGINE	Engine PWB ROM IC																																		
SCANNER	Scanner PWB ROM IC																																		
LANGUAGE (Standard)	Standard language ROM IC																																		
LANGUAGE (Option)	Optional language ROM IC																																		
MAIN BOOT	Main PWB booting																																		
PRINTER	Printer PWB ROM IC																																		
NETWORK SCANNER	Network scanner PWB ROM IC																																		
DP	Optional DP drive PWB ROM IC																																		
FINISHER	Optional 3000-sheet document finisher main PWB ROM IC																																		
ENGINE BOOT	Engine PWB booting																																		
DICTIONARY	-																																		
FINISHER SADDLE	Optional centerfold main PWB ROM IC																																		
FINISHER MAILBOX	Optional mailbox main PWB ROM IC																																		
PF MAIN	Optional paper feeder main PWB ROM IC																																		
FINISHER MIDDLE TRAY	Optional intermediate tray main PWB ROM IC																																		
<b>U020</b>	<p><b>Initializing all data</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Initializes the backup memory on the scanner PWB, DP main PWB and engine PWB in order to return to the factory default settings. Refer to *1 of the maintenance mode item list about the item initialized. Reset each intialized mode based on an own-status report U000 printed at installing the machine.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be executed as required.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [INCH].</li> <li>3. Press the start key. All data in the backup memory is initialized and the default setting for the inch specifications is registered.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>																																		

Maintenance item No.	Description																
<p><b>U021</b></p>	<p><b>Memory initializing</b>  <b>Description</b>                      Initializes all settings, except those pertinent to the type of machine, namely each counter, service call history and mode setting. Also initializes backup RAM according to region specification selected in maintenance item U252 Setting the destination.                      Refer to *2 of the maintenance mode item list about the item initialized.  <b>Purpose</b>                      To return the machine settings to their factory default.  <b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [EXECUTE].</li> <li>3. Press the start key. All data except that pertinent to the type of machine is initialized and the default setting for each destination is registered.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>																
<p><b>U024</b></p>	<p><b>HDD formatting</b>  <b>Description</b>                      Formats the HDD backup data areas for network scanner and department administration.  <b>Purpose</b>                      To initialize the HDD when installing or replacing the HDD after shipping.  <b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [EXECUTE].</li> <li>3. Press the start key to initialize the hard disk.                      Initialization results is displayed when initializing is completed.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>																
<p><b>U030</b></p>	<p><b>Checking the operation of the motors</b>  <b>Description</b>                      Drives each motor.  <b>Description</b>                      To check the operation of each motor.  <b>Supplement</b>                      Do not drive the motor while the toner containers are not installed.  <b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the motor to be operated. The operation starts.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Motor</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Conveying Motor</td> <td>Paper feed/developing MOTOR BK (PF/DEVM-BK), MP motor (MPM), drum motors M/C/Y/BK (DRM-M/C/Y/BK) and middle transfer motor (MTRM) are turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Color Dev Motor</td> <td>Developing motor CMY (DEVM-CMY) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Fixing Motor</td> <td>Fuser motor (FUM) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Eject Motor (Normal)</td> <td>Eject motor (EM) is turned on clockwise.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Eject Motor (Reverse)</td> <td>Eject motor (EM) is turned on counterwise.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Option Eject Motor</td> <td>Job eject motor (JBEM) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Duplex Motor</td> <td>Duplex motor (DUM) is turned on.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>3. To stop operation, an item is selected again or press the stop/clear key.  <b>Completion</b>                      Press the stop/clear key after operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Motor	Conveying Motor	Paper feed/developing MOTOR BK (PF/DEVM-BK), MP motor (MPM), drum motors M/C/Y/BK (DRM-M/C/Y/BK) and middle transfer motor (MTRM) are turned on.	Color Dev Motor	Developing motor CMY (DEVM-CMY) is turned on.	Fixing Motor	Fuser motor (FUM) is turned on.	Eject Motor (Normal)	Eject motor (EM) is turned on clockwise.	Eject Motor (Reverse)	Eject motor (EM) is turned on counterwise.	Option Eject Motor	Job eject motor (JBEM) is turned on.	Duplex Motor	Duplex motor (DUM) is turned on.
Display	Motor																
Conveying Motor	Paper feed/developing MOTOR BK (PF/DEVM-BK), MP motor (MPM), drum motors M/C/Y/BK (DRM-M/C/Y/BK) and middle transfer motor (MTRM) are turned on.																
Color Dev Motor	Developing motor CMY (DEVM-CMY) is turned on.																
Fixing Motor	Fuser motor (FUM) is turned on.																
Eject Motor (Normal)	Eject motor (EM) is turned on clockwise.																
Eject Motor (Reverse)	Eject motor (EM) is turned on counterwise.																
Option Eject Motor	Job eject motor (JBEM) is turned on.																
Duplex Motor	Duplex motor (DUM) is turned on.																

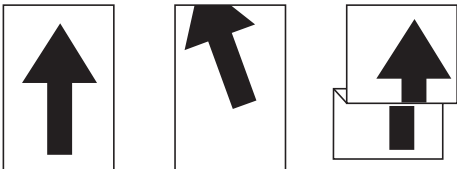
Maintenance item No.	Description																												
U031	<p><b>Checking switches for paper conveying</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the ON/OFF status of each paper detection switch on the paper conveying path.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of the switches for paper conveying.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. A list of switches, the on-off status of which can be checked, are displayed.</li> <li>2. Turn each switch on and off manually to check the status.</li> </ol> <p>When the on-status of a switch is detected, that switch is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Sensor</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MPF_UNIT</td> <td>MP tray switch (MPTSW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MPF_FEED1</td> <td>MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MPF_FEED2</td> <td>MP paper conveying switch (MPPCSW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FEED 1</td> <td>Feed switch 1 (FSW1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FEED 2</td> <td>Feed switch 2 (FSW2)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FEED 3</td> <td>Feed switch 3 (FSW3)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>REGIST</td> <td>Registration switch (RSW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BELT</td> <td>Jam detection sensor (JDS)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EXIT</td> <td>Eject switch (ESW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DUPLEX 1</td> <td>Feedshift switch (FSSW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DUPLEX 2</td> <td>Duplex jam detection switch (DUJDSW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OVERFLOW</td> <td>Paper full sensor (PFS)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>JOB SEP</td> <td>Job eject switch (JBESW)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Sensor	MPF_UNIT	MP tray switch (MPTSW)	MPF_FEED1	MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW)	MPF_FEED2	MP paper conveying switch (MPPCSW)	FEED 1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1)	FEED 2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2)	FEED 3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3)	REGIST	Registration switch (RSW)	BELT	Jam detection sensor (JDS)	EXIT	Eject switch (ESW)	DUPLEX 1	Feedshift switch (FSSW)	DUPLEX 2	Duplex jam detection switch (DUJDSW)	OVERFLOW	Paper full sensor (PFS)	JOB SEP	Job eject switch (JBESW)
Display	Sensor																												
MPF_UNIT	MP tray switch (MPTSW)																												
MPF_FEED1	MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW)																												
MPF_FEED2	MP paper conveying switch (MPPCSW)																												
FEED 1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1)																												
FEED 2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2)																												
FEED 3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3)																												
REGIST	Registration switch (RSW)																												
BELT	Jam detection sensor (JDS)																												
EXIT	Eject switch (ESW)																												
DUPLEX 1	Feedshift switch (FSSW)																												
DUPLEX 2	Duplex jam detection switch (DUJDSW)																												
OVERFLOW	Paper full sensor (PFS)																												
JOB SEP	Job eject switch (JBESW)																												
U032	<p><b>Checking the operation of the clutches</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns each clutch ON.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of each clutch.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the clutch to be operated. The selected clutch turns on for 1 s.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Clutch</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1st Feed</td> <td>Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>2nd Feed</td> <td>Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MPT Feed</td> <td>MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Conveying</td> <td>Paper conveying clutch (PCCL)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MPT Convey</td> <td>MP paper conveying clutch (MPPCCL)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Regist</td> <td>Registration clutch (RCL)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the interrupt key. Drum motors, paper feed/developing motor BK, middle transfer motor and MP motor are turned on. To stop driving motors, press the interrupt key again.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Clutch	1st Feed	Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1)	2nd Feed	Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2)	MPT Feed	MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)	Conveying	Paper conveying clutch (PCCL)	MPT Convey	MP paper conveying clutch (MPPCCL)	Regist	Registration clutch (RCL)														
Display	Clutch																												
1st Feed	Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1)																												
2nd Feed	Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2)																												
MPT Feed	MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)																												
Conveying	Paper conveying clutch (PCCL)																												
MPT Convey	MP paper conveying clutch (MPPCCL)																												
Regist	Registration clutch (RCL)																												

Maintenance item No.	Description								
<p><b>U033</b></p>	<p><b>Checking the operation of the solenoids</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Applies current to each solenoid in order to check its ON status.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of each solenoid.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the solenoid to be operated. The selected solenoid turns on for 1.5 s.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Solenoid</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Branch Inner Tray</td> <td>Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Eject Branch Solenoid</td> <td>Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MPT Pick up Solenoid</td> <td>MP solenoid (MPSOL)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Solenoid	Branch Inner Tray	Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)	Eject Branch Solenoid	Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)	MPT Pick up Solenoid	MP solenoid (MPSOL)
Display	Solenoid								
Branch Inner Tray	Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)								
Eject Branch Solenoid	Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)								
MPT Pick up Solenoid	MP solenoid (MPSOL)								

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																			
U034	<p><b>Adjusting the print start timing</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the leading edge registration or center line.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original. Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Timing</td> <td>Leading edge registration adjustment</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Center Adjust</td> <td>Center line adjustment</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Adjustment: leading edge registration adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MPT (Large)</td> <td>Paper feed from MP tray</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MPT (Small)</td> <td>Paper feed from MP tray</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MPT Half (Large)</td> <td>Paper feed from MP tray</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MPT Half (Small)</td> <td>Paper feed from MP tray</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cassette (Large)</td> <td>Paper feed from cassette</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cassette (Small)</td> <td>Paper feed from cassette</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Duplex (Large)</td> <td>Duplex mode (second)</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Duplex (Small)</td> <td>Duplex mode (second)</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Large size: 218 mm or more in width of paper.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the interrupt key.</li> <li>3. Press the start key to output a test pattern.</li> <li>4. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys. For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value.</li> </ol> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>Leading edge registration</p> <p>Correct image      Output example 1      Output example 2</p> </div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-1</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Remark</b> When changing the setting value of [Large] each item is modified, equal to amount of the value which is changed adds also the value of [Small] each item and is pulled.</p> <p><b>Caution</b> Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <pre> graph LR     U034[U034] --&gt; U066[U066 (P.1-3-20)]     U066 --&gt; U071[U071 (P.1-3-24)]   </pre>	Display	Description	Timing	Leading edge registration adjustment	Center Adjust	Center line adjustment	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	MPT (Large)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm	MPT (Small)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm	MPT Half (Large)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm	MPT Half (Small)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm	Cassette (Large)	Paper feed from cassette	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm	Cassette (Small)	Paper feed from cassette	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm	Duplex (Large)	Duplex mode (second)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm	Duplex (Small)	Duplex mode (second)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Display	Description																																																			
Timing	Leading edge registration adjustment																																																			
Center Adjust	Center line adjustment																																																			
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step																																																
MPT (Large)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																																
MPT (Small)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																																
MPT Half (Large)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																																
MPT Half (Small)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																																
Cassette (Large)	Paper feed from cassette	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																																
Cassette (Small)	Paper feed from cassette	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																																
Duplex (Large)	Duplex mode (second)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																																
Duplex (Small)	Duplex mode (second)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																																

Maintenance item No.	Description																																			
<p><b>U034</b></p>	<p><b>Adjustment: center line adjustment</b></p> <p>1. Select the item.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Default setting</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Center (MPT)</td> <td>Paper feed from MP tray</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Center (Feed 1)</td> <td>Paper feed from cassette 1</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Center (Feed 2)</td> <td>Paper feed from cassette 2</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Center (Feed 3)</td> <td>Paper feed from optional cassette 3</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Center (Feed 4)</td> <td>Paper feed from optional cassette 4</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Center (Duplex)</td> <td>Duplex mode (second)</td> <td>-3.0 to 3.0</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>2. Press the interrupt key.                      3. Press the start key to output a test pattern.                      4. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.                      For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>Center line of printing</p> <p>Correct image      Output example 1      Output example 2</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-2</b></p> <p>5. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Caution</b>                      Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <pre>                     graph LR                     U034 --&gt; U067["U067 (P.1-3-21)"]                     U067 --&gt; U072["U072 (P.1-3-25)"]                     </pre> </div> <p><b>Completion</b>                      Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	Center (MPT)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm	Center (Feed 1)	Paper feed from cassette 1	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm	Center (Feed 2)	Paper feed from cassette 2	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm	Center (Feed 3)	Paper feed from optional cassette 3	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm	Center (Feed 4)	Paper feed from optional cassette 4	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm	Center (Duplex)	Duplex mode (second)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step																																
Center (MPT)	Paper feed from MP tray	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																
Center (Feed 1)	Paper feed from cassette 1	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																
Center (Feed 2)	Paper feed from cassette 2	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																
Center (Feed 3)	Paper feed from optional cassette 3	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																
Center (Feed 4)	Paper feed from optional cassette 4	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																
Center (Duplex)	Duplex mode (second)	-3.0 to 3.0	0	0.1 mm																																
<p><b>U035</b></p>	<p><b>Setting the printing area for folio paper</b></p> <p><b>Description</b>                      Changes the printing area for copying on folio paper.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b>                      To prevent cropped images on the trailing edge or left/right side of copy paper by setting the actual printing area for folio paper.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>3. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>LENGTH DATA</td> <td>Length</td> <td>330 to 356 (mm)</td> <td>330</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH DATA</td> <td>Width</td> <td>200 to 220 (mm)</td> <td>210</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Completion</b>                      Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Setting	Setting range	Default setting	LENGTH DATA	Length	330 to 356 (mm)	330	WIDTH DATA	Width	200 to 220 (mm)	210																							
Display	Setting	Setting range	Default setting																																	
LENGTH DATA	Length	330 to 356 (mm)	330																																	
WIDTH DATA	Width	200 to 220 (mm)	210																																	

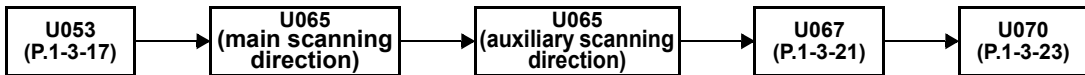
Maintenance item No.	Description																		
U037	<p><b>Checking the operation of the fan motors</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Drives the fan motors.</p> <p><b>Description</b> To check the operation of the fan motors.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to operate. The selected item starts driving the fan motor. Do not drive the paper conveying fan motors 1 to 4 for more than 10 s.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ALL</td> <td>Fuser fan motor (FUFM), developing cooling fan motor 1/2/3 (DEVCFM1/2/3), rear cooling fan motor (RCFM), transfer fan motor 1/2 (TRFM1/2), power source fan motor (PSFM) and paper conveying fan motor 1/2/3/4 (PCFM1/2/3/4) are turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Fixing Cooling Fan</td> <td>Fuser fan motor (FUFM) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Developing Cooling Fan1,2</td> <td>Developing cooling fan motor 2/3 (DEVCFM2/3) are turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LSU Rear Cooling Fan</td> <td>Rear cooling fan motor (RCFM) and developing cooling fan motor 1 (DEVCFM1) are turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Conveying Cooling Fan 1,2</td> <td>Transfer fan motor 1 (TRFM1) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mid Transfer Cool Fan 1,2</td> <td>Transfer fan motor 2 (TRFM2) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Power Source Cooling Fan</td> <td>Power source fan motor (PSFM) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Conveying Fan</td> <td>Paper conveying fan motor 1/2/3/4 (PCFM1/2/3/4) are turned on.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. To stop operation, an item is selected again or press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key when the motor stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Operation	ALL	Fuser fan motor (FUFM), developing cooling fan motor 1/2/3 (DEVCFM1/2/3), rear cooling fan motor (RCFM), transfer fan motor 1/2 (TRFM1/2), power source fan motor (PSFM) and paper conveying fan motor 1/2/3/4 (PCFM1/2/3/4) are turned on.	Fixing Cooling Fan	Fuser fan motor (FUFM) is turned on.	Developing Cooling Fan1,2	Developing cooling fan motor 2/3 (DEVCFM2/3) are turned on.	LSU Rear Cooling Fan	Rear cooling fan motor (RCFM) and developing cooling fan motor 1 (DEVCFM1) are turned on.	Conveying Cooling Fan 1,2	Transfer fan motor 1 (TRFM1) is turned on.	Mid Transfer Cool Fan 1,2	Transfer fan motor 2 (TRFM2) is turned on.	Power Source Cooling Fan	Power source fan motor (PSFM) is turned on.	Conveying Fan	Paper conveying fan motor 1/2/3/4 (PCFM1/2/3/4) are turned on.
Display	Operation																		
ALL	Fuser fan motor (FUFM), developing cooling fan motor 1/2/3 (DEVCFM1/2/3), rear cooling fan motor (RCFM), transfer fan motor 1/2 (TRFM1/2), power source fan motor (PSFM) and paper conveying fan motor 1/2/3/4 (PCFM1/2/3/4) are turned on.																		
Fixing Cooling Fan	Fuser fan motor (FUFM) is turned on.																		
Developing Cooling Fan1,2	Developing cooling fan motor 2/3 (DEVCFM2/3) are turned on.																		
LSU Rear Cooling Fan	Rear cooling fan motor (RCFM) and developing cooling fan motor 1 (DEVCFM1) are turned on.																		
Conveying Cooling Fan 1,2	Transfer fan motor 1 (TRFM1) is turned on.																		
Mid Transfer Cool Fan 1,2	Transfer fan motor 2 (TRFM2) is turned on.																		
Power Source Cooling Fan	Power source fan motor (PSFM) is turned on.																		
Conveying Fan	Paper conveying fan motor 1/2/3/4 (PCFM1/2/3/4) are turned on.																		


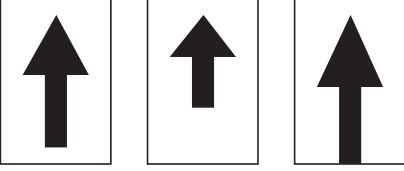
Maintenance item No.	Description																																													
<p><b>U051</b></p> <p><b>Adjusting the deflection in the paper</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the deflection in the paper at the registration roller.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if the leading edge of the copy image is missing or varies randomly, or if the copy paper is Z-folded.</p> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item.</li> </ol>	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MPT (Large)</td> <td>Paper feed from MP tray</td> <td>-30 to 20</td> <td>0</td> <td>1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MPT (Small)</td> <td>Paper feed from MP tray</td> <td>-30 to 20</td> <td>0</td> <td>1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MPT Half (Large)</td> <td>Paper feed from MP tray</td> <td>-30 to 20</td> <td>0</td> <td>1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MPT Half (Small)</td> <td>Paper feed from MP tray</td> <td>-30 to 20</td> <td>0</td> <td>1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cassette (Large)</td> <td>Paper feed from cassette</td> <td>-30 to 20</td> <td>0</td> <td>1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cassette (Small)</td> <td>Paper feed from cassette</td> <td>-30 to 20</td> <td>0</td> <td>1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Duplex (Large)</td> <td>Duplex mode (second)</td> <td>-30 to 20</td> <td>0</td> <td>1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Duplex (Small)</td> <td>Duplex mode (second)</td> <td>-30 to 20</td> <td>0</td> <td>1 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Large size: 218 mm or more in width of paper.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the interrupt key.</li> <li>4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</li> <li>5. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys. For output example 1, increase the value. For output example 2, decrease the value. The greater the value, the larger the deflection; the smaller the value, the smaller the deflection.</li> </ol> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Original                  Copy example 1                  Copy example 2</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-3</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Remark</b> When changing the setting value of [Large] each item is modified, equal to amount of the value which is changed adds also the value of [Small] each item and is pulled.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	MPT (Large)	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0	1 mm	MPT (Small)	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0	1 mm	MPT Half (Large)	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0	1 mm	MPT Half (Small)	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0	1 mm	Cassette (Large)	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	0	1 mm	Cassette (Small)	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	0	1 mm	Duplex (Large)	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	0	1 mm	Duplex (Small)	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	0	1 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																																										
MPT (Large)	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0	1 mm																																										
MPT (Small)	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0	1 mm																																										
MPT Half (Large)	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0	1 mm																																										
MPT Half (Small)	Paper feed from MP tray	-30 to 20	0	1 mm																																										
Cassette (Large)	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	0	1 mm																																										
Cassette (Small)	Paper feed from cassette	-30 to 20	0	1 mm																																										
Duplex (Large)	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	0	1 mm																																										
Duplex (Small)	Duplex mode (second)	-30 to 20	0	1 mm																																										

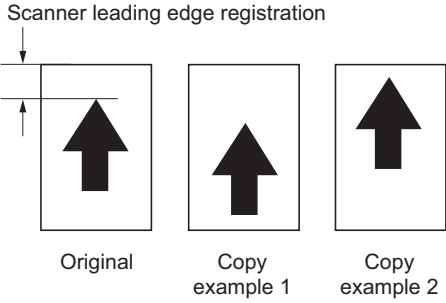
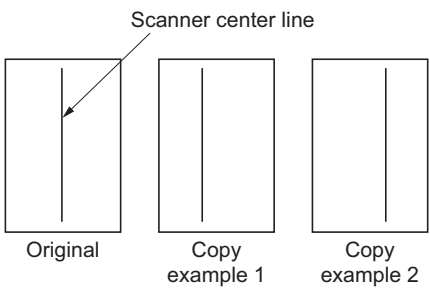


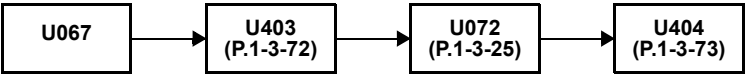
Maintenance item No.	Description																																																																																												
U053	<p><b>Setting the adjustment of the motor speed</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Performs fine adjustment of the speeds of the motors. After adjustment, run the maintenance item U001 to exit the maintenance mode. And then turn the main power switch off, then on again.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Basically, the setting need not be changed. Modify settings by interlock setting only if faulty images occur.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be adjusted.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Set MOTOR 1</td> <td>Adjustment of drum motor BK/C/M/Y speeds</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set MOTOR 2</td> <td>Adjustment of paper feed/developing motor BK, developing motor CMY, middle transfer motor and polygon motor speeds</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set MOTOR 3</td> <td>Adjustment of MP motor, fuser motor, eject motor, duplex motor and job eject motor speeds</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: [Set MOTOR 1]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be adjusted.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Drum K (Full)</td> <td>Drum motor BK speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Drum K (Half)</td> <td>Drum motor BK speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Drum C (Full)</td> <td>Drum motor C speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Drum C (Half)</td> <td>Drum motor C speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Drum M (Full)</td> <td>Drum motor M speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Drum M (Half)</td> <td>Drum motor M speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Drum Y (Full)</td> <td>Drum motor Y speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Drum Y (Half)</td> <td>Drum motor Y speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: [Set MOTOR 2]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be adjusted.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Dev K (Convey)</td> <td>Paper feed/developing motor BK speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dev MCY</td> <td>Developing motor CMY speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TC Motor (Full)</td> <td>Middle transfer motor speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TC Motor (Half)</td> <td>Middle transfer motor speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>POLYGON (Full)</td> <td>Polygon motor speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: [Set MOTOR 3]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be adjusted.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MPF</td> <td>MP motor speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Fixing Motor</td> <td>Fuser motor speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Eject Motor</td> <td>Eject motor speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Duplex Motor</td> <td>Duplex motor speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OPT Eject</td> <td>Job eject motor speed adjustment</td> <td>-500 to 500</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	Set MOTOR 1	Adjustment of drum motor BK/C/M/Y speeds	Set MOTOR 2	Adjustment of paper feed/developing motor BK, developing motor CMY, middle transfer motor and polygon motor speeds	Set MOTOR 3	Adjustment of MP motor, fuser motor, eject motor, duplex motor and job eject motor speeds	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Drum K (Full)	Drum motor BK speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	Drum K (Half)	Drum motor BK speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	Drum C (Full)	Drum motor C speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	Drum C (Half)	Drum motor C speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	Drum M (Full)	Drum motor M speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	Drum M (Half)	Drum motor M speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	Drum Y (Full)	Drum motor Y speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	Drum Y (Half)	Drum motor Y speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Dev K (Convey)	Paper feed/developing motor BK speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	Dev MCY	Developing motor CMY speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	TC Motor (Full)	Middle transfer motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	TC Motor (Half)	Middle transfer motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	POLYGON (Full)	Polygon motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	MPF	MP motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	Fixing Motor	Fuser motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	Eject Motor	Eject motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	Duplex Motor	Duplex motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0	OPT Eject	Job eject motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0
Display	Description																																																																																												
Set MOTOR 1	Adjustment of drum motor BK/C/M/Y speeds																																																																																												
Set MOTOR 2	Adjustment of paper feed/developing motor BK, developing motor CMY, middle transfer motor and polygon motor speeds																																																																																												
Set MOTOR 3	Adjustment of MP motor, fuser motor, eject motor, duplex motor and job eject motor speeds																																																																																												
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																																																																										
Drum K (Full)	Drum motor BK speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
Drum K (Half)	Drum motor BK speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
Drum C (Full)	Drum motor C speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
Drum C (Half)	Drum motor C speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
Drum M (Full)	Drum motor M speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
Drum M (Half)	Drum motor M speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
Drum Y (Full)	Drum motor Y speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
Drum Y (Half)	Drum motor Y speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																																																																										
Dev K (Convey)	Paper feed/developing motor BK speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
Dev MCY	Developing motor CMY speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
TC Motor (Full)	Middle transfer motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
TC Motor (Half)	Middle transfer motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
POLYGON (Full)	Polygon motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																																																																										
MPF	MP motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
Fixing Motor	Fuser motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
Eject Motor	Eject motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
Duplex Motor	Duplex motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										
OPT Eject	Job eject motor speed adjustment	-500 to 500	0																																																																																										

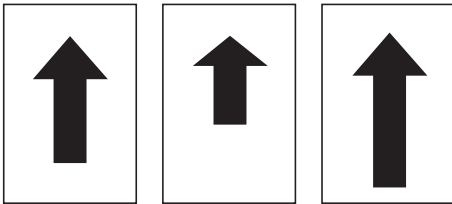
Maintenance item No.	Description																				
<p><b>U053</b></p>	<p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the interrupt key.</li> <li>2. Press the start key to output an A3/11" x 17" VTC pattern.</li> </ol> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div> <p style="text-align: right;">Correct values for an A3/11" x 17" output are:  A = 350 ± 0.5mm  B = 250 ± 0.5 mm</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-4</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.  A: Middle transfer motor speed adjustment  Increasing the setting makes the image longer in the auxiliary scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image shorter in the auxiliary scanning direction.  B: Polygon motor speed adjustment  Increasing the setting makes the image longer in the main scanning direction, and decreasing it makes the image shorter in the main scanning direction.</li> <li>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b>  Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																				
<p><b>U059</b></p>	<p><b>Setting fan mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b>  Specifies mode for paper conveying fans 1 to 4 during conveying paper.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b>  Changing settings are not required.  Change mode to MODE2 if paper crease occurs when simplex-printing using A4/11 x 8.5 size paper or when printing using B4 size paper.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the mode.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Set Operation Mode</td> <td>Sets operation mode of paper conveying fans 1 to 4.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set Timing</td> <td>Sets timings to activate paper conveying fans 1 to 4.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: Operation mode</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the mode.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Do not drive paper conveying fans 1 to 4.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MODE1</td> <td>Drives paper conveying fans 1 to 4 when A3/11 x 17 size paper is used or when the second side of A4/11 x 8.5 size paper is printed during duplex-printing.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MODE2</td> <td>Drives paper conveying fans 1 to 4 only when A4/11 x 8.5, A3/11 x 17 and B4 size paper is used.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: MODE1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Timing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Timing for paper conveying fans</td> <td>-800 to 800 (ms)</td> <td>600 (ms)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>A larger value advances the operating timing, and a smaller value slows it.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b>  Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Set Operation Mode	Sets operation mode of paper conveying fans 1 to 4.	Set Timing	Sets timings to activate paper conveying fans 1 to 4.	Display	Description	OFF	Do not drive paper conveying fans 1 to 4.	MODE1	Drives paper conveying fans 1 to 4 when A3/11 x 17 size paper is used or when the second side of A4/11 x 8.5 size paper is printed during duplex-printing.	MODE2	Drives paper conveying fans 1 to 4 only when A4/11 x 8.5, A3/11 x 17 and B4 size paper is used.	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Timing for paper conveying fans	-800 to 800 (ms)	600 (ms)
Display	Description																				
Set Operation Mode	Sets operation mode of paper conveying fans 1 to 4.																				
Set Timing	Sets timings to activate paper conveying fans 1 to 4.																				
Display	Description																				
OFF	Do not drive paper conveying fans 1 to 4.																				
MODE1	Drives paper conveying fans 1 to 4 when A3/11 x 17 size paper is used or when the second side of A4/11 x 8.5 size paper is printed during duplex-printing.																				
MODE2	Drives paper conveying fans 1 to 4 only when A4/11 x 8.5, A3/11 x 17 and B4 size paper is used.																				
Description	Setting range	Default setting																			
Timing for paper conveying fans	-800 to 800 (ms)	600 (ms)																			

Maintenance item No.	Description															
U061	<p><b>Checking the operation of the exposure lamp</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Lights the exposure lamp.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check whether the exposure lamp are turned ON.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The exposure lamp lights.</li> <li>3. To turn the exposure lamp off, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>															
U063	<p><b>Adjusting the shading position</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Changes the shading position of the scanner.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Used when the white line continue to appear longitudinally on the image after the shading plate is cleaned. This is due to flaws or stains inside the shading plate. To prevent this problem, the shading position should be changed so that shading is possible without being affected by the flaws or stains.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Shading position</td> <td>0 to 24</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.09 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Increasing the value moves the shading position toward the machine left, and decreasing it moves the position toward the machine right.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in the interrupt copying mode.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	Shading position	0 to 24	0	0.09 mm							
Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step													
Shading position	0 to 24	0	0.09 mm													
U065	<p><b>Adjusting the scanner magnification</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the magnification of the original scanning.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if the magnification in the main scanning direction is incorrect. Make the adjustment if the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction is incorrect.</p> <p><b>Caution</b> Adjust the magnification of the scanner in the following order.</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <pre> graph LR     U053["U053 (P.1-3-17)"] --&gt; U065_M["U065 (main scanning direction)"]     U065_M --&gt; U065_A["U065 (auxiliary scanning direction)"]     U065_A --&gt; U067["U067 (P.1-3-21)"]     U067 --&gt; U070["U070 (P.1-3-23)"] </pre> </div> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN SCAN ADJ</td> <td>Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction</td> <td>-15 to 15</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 %</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SUB SCAN ADJ</td> <td>Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction</td> <td>-25 to 25</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 %</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	MAIN SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction	-15 to 15	0	0.1 %	SUB SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
MAIN SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the main scanning direction	-15 to 15	0	0.1 %												
SUB SCAN ADJ	Scanner magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %												

Maintenance item No.	Description															
<p><b>U065</b></p>	<p><b>Adjustment: main scanning direction</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the interrupt key.</li> <li>2. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</li> <li>3. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</li> </ol> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Original      Copy example 1      Copy example 2</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-5</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Adjustment: auxiliary scanning direction</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the interrupt key.</li> <li>2. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</li> <li>3. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</li> </ol> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Original      Copy example 1      Copy example 2</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-6</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>															
<p><b>U066</b></p>	<p><b>Adjusting the scanner leading edge registration</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the scanner leading edge registration of the original scanning.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original.</p> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ADJUST DATA</td> <td>Scanner leading edge registration</td> <td>-60 to 60</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.09 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ADJUST DATA2</td> <td>Scanner leading edge registration (second)</td> <td>-60 to 60</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.09 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA	Scanner leading edge registration	-60 to 60	0	0.09 mm	ADJUST DATA2	Scanner leading edge registration (second)	-60 to 60	0	0.09 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
ADJUST DATA	Scanner leading edge registration	-60 to 60	0	0.09 mm												
ADJUST DATA2	Scanner leading edge registration (second)	-60 to 60	0	0.09 mm												

Maintenance item No.	Description															
<p><b>U066</b></p>	<p>3. Press the interrupt key.                      4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.                      5. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.                      For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-7</b></p> <p>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Caution</b>                      Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <pre>                     graph LR                     U066[U066] --&gt; U403[U403 (P.1-3-72)]                     U403 --&gt; U071[U071 (P.1-3-24)]                     U071 --&gt; U404[U404 (P.1-3-73)]                     </pre> <p><b>Completion</b>                      Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>															
<p><b>U067</b></p>	<p><b>Adjusting the scanner center line</b>  <b>Description</b>                      Adjusts the scanner center line of the original scanning.  <b>Purpose</b>                      Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the center lines of the copy image and original.  <b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ADJUST DATA</td> <td>Scanner center line</td> <td>-70 to 70</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.08 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ADJUST DATA2</td> <td>Scanner center line (second)</td> <td>-40 to 40</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.08 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the interrupt key.</li> <li>4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</li> <li>5. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.                      For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</li> </ol>  <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-8</b></p> <p>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA	Scanner center line	-70 to 70	0	0.08 mm	ADJUST DATA2	Scanner center line (second)	-40 to 40	0	0.08 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step												
ADJUST DATA	Scanner center line	-70 to 70	0	0.08 mm												
ADJUST DATA2	Scanner center line (second)	-40 to 40	0	0.08 mm												

Maintenance item No.	Description															
<p><b>U067</b></p>	<p><b>Caution</b> Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <pre> graph LR     U067 --&gt; U403["U403 (P.1-3-72)"]     U403 --&gt; U072["U072 (P.1-3-25)"]     U072 --&gt; U404["U404 (P.1-3-73)"]             </pre> </div> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>															
<p><b>U068</b></p>	<p><b>Adjusting the scanning position for originals from the DP</b> <b>Description</b> Adjusts the position for scanning originals from the document processor. Performs the test copy at the four scanning positions after adjusting.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Used when the image fogging occurs because the scanning position is not proper when the document processor is used. Run U071 to adjust the timing of DP leading edge when the scanning position is changed.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ADJUST DATA</td> <td>Starting position adjustment for scanning originals</td> <td>-40 to 32</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.09 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TEST POSITION</td> <td>Scanning position for the test copy originals</td> <td>0 to 3</td> <td>0</td> <td>-</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select [ADJUST DATA].</li> <li>Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys. When the setting value is increased, the scanning position moves to the left and it moves to the right when the setting value is decreased.</li> <li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>Select [TEST POSITION].</li> <li>Select the Scanning position using the cursor up/down keys.</li> <li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>Set the original (the one which density is known) in the document processor and press the interrupt key. The screen for the test copy mode is displayed.</li> <li>Press the start key. Test copy is executed.</li> <li>Perform the test copy at each scanning position with the setting value from 0 to 3 and check that no black line appears and the image is normally scanned.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA	Starting position adjustment for scanning originals	-40 to 32	0	0.09 mm	TEST POSITION	Scanning position for the test copy originals	0 to 3	0	-
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step												
ADJUST DATA	Starting position adjustment for scanning originals	-40 to 32	0	0.09 mm												
TEST POSITION	Scanning position for the test copy originals	0 to 3	0	-												

Maintenance item No.	Description								
U070	<p><b>Adjusting the DP magnification</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the DP original scanning speed.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if the magnification is incorrect in the auxiliary scanning direction when the optional DP is used.</p> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Original conveying motor speed</td> <td>-25 to 25</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.1 %</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the interrupt key.</li> <li>3. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</li> <li>4. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</li> </ol> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Original                      Copy example 1                      Copy example 2</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-9</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Caution</b> Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <pre> graph LR     U070[U070] --&gt; U071[U071 (P.1-3-24)]     U071 --&gt; U404[U404 (P.1-3-73)]   </pre> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Original conveying motor speed	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step						
Original conveying motor speed	-25 to 25	0	0.1 %						

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
<p><b>U071</b></p>	<p><b>Adjusting the DP scanning timing</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the DP original scanning timing.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading or trailing edges of the original and the copy image when the optional DP is used.</p> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ADJUST DATA1</td> <td>DP leading edge registration</td> <td>-32 to 32</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.19 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ADJUST DATA2</td> <td>DP trailing edge registration</td> <td>-32 to 32</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.19 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the interrupt key.</li> <li>4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</li> <li>5. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys. For copy example 1, increase the value of exp.1. For copy example 2, decrease the value of exp.1.</li> </ol> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>Original      Copy example 1      Copy example 2</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-10</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Caution</b> Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;"> <table style="border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">U071</td> <td style="border: none; padding: 0 10px;">→</td> <td style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">U404 (P.1-3-73)</td> </tr> </table> </div> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	ADJUST DATA1	DP leading edge registration	-32 to 32	0	0.19 mm	ADJUST DATA2	DP trailing edge registration	-32 to 32	0	0.19 mm	U071	→	U404 (P.1-3-73)
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step															
ADJUST DATA1	DP leading edge registration	-32 to 32	0	0.19 mm															
ADJUST DATA2	DP trailing edge registration	-32 to 32	0	0.19 mm															
U071	→	U404 (P.1-3-73)																	



Maintenance item No.	Description																							
U072	<p><b>Adjusting the DP center line</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the scanning start position for the DP original.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the centers of the original and the copy image when the optional DP is used.</p> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DATA(simplesx)</td> <td>DP center line (simplesx mode)</td> <td>-78 to 78</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.17 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DATA(duplex 1)</td> <td>DP center line (duplex mode)</td> <td>-78 to 78</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.17 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DATA(duplex 2)</td> <td>DP center line (duplex mode)</td> <td>-78 to 78</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.17 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the interrupt key.</li> <li>4. Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</li> <li>5. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys. For copy example 1, increase the value. For copy example 2, decrease the value.</li> </ol> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>Reference</p> <p>Original      Copy example 1      Copy example 2</p> </div> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Caution</b> Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <table border="1"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">U072</td> <td style="text-align: center;">→</td> <td style="padding: 5px;">U404 (P.1-3-73)</td> </tr> </table> </div> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	DATA(simplesx)	DP center line (simplesx mode)	-78 to 78	0	0.17 mm	DATA(duplex 1)	DP center line (duplex mode)	-78 to 78	0	0.17 mm	DATA(duplex 2)	DP center line (duplex mode)	-78 to 78	0	0.17 mm	U072	→	U404 (P.1-3-73)
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																				
DATA(simplesx)	DP center line (simplesx mode)	-78 to 78	0	0.17 mm																				
DATA(duplex 1)	DP center line (duplex mode)	-78 to 78	0	0.17 mm																				
DATA(duplex 2)	DP center line (duplex mode)	-78 to 78	0	0.17 mm																				
U072	→	U404 (P.1-3-73)																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																			
<b>U073</b>	<p><b>Checking the scanner operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Simulates the scanner operation under the arbitrary conditions.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the scanner operation.</p> <p><b>Implementation</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be operated.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SCANNER MOT</td> <td>Scanner operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HOME POSITION</td> <td>Home position operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DP READING</td> <td>DP scanning position operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DUST CHECK</td> <td>Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: Scanning size</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [SCANNER MOT] at the screen for selecting an item.</li> <li>2. Press the start key.</li> <li>3. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Operating conditions</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting range</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SIZE</td> <td>Original size</td> <td>See below.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LAMP</td> <td>On and off of the exposure lamp</td> <td>0 (off) or 1 (on)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Original sizes for each setting in SIZE.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Paper size</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Paper size</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>5000</td> <td>A4</td> <td>5000</td> <td>A5R</td> </tr> <tr> <td>4300</td> <td>B5</td> <td>7800</td> <td>Folio</td> </tr> <tr> <td>5100</td> <td>11" x 8 1/2"</td> <td>10200</td> <td>11" x 17"</td> </tr> <tr> <td>10000</td> <td>A3</td> <td>9000</td> <td>11" x 15"</td> </tr> <tr> <td>8600</td> <td>B4</td> <td>8400</td> <td>8 1/2" x 14"</td> </tr> <tr> <td>7100</td> <td>A4R</td> <td>6600</td> <td>8 1/2" x 11"</td> </tr> <tr> <td>6100</td> <td>B5R</td> <td>5100</td> <td>5 1/2" x 8 1/2"</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the start key. The setting is set. Scanning starts under the selected conditions.</li> <li>5. To stop operation, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key with the scanning operation stopped. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	SCANNER MOT	Scanner operation	HOME POSITION	Home position operation	DP READING	DP scanning position operation	DUST CHECK	Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on	Display	Operating conditions	Setting range	SIZE	Original size	See below.	LAMP	On and off of the exposure lamp	0 (off) or 1 (on)	Setting	Paper size	Setting	Paper size	5000	A4	5000	A5R	4300	B5	7800	Folio	5100	11" x 8 1/2"	10200	11" x 17"	10000	A3	9000	11" x 15"	8600	B4	8400	8 1/2" x 14"	7100	A4R	6600	8 1/2" x 11"	6100	B5R	5100	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"
Display	Description																																																			
SCANNER MOT	Scanner operation																																																			
HOME POSITION	Home position operation																																																			
DP READING	DP scanning position operation																																																			
DUST CHECK	Dust adhesion check operation with lamp on																																																			
Display	Operating conditions	Setting range																																																		
SIZE	Original size	See below.																																																		
LAMP	On and off of the exposure lamp	0 (off) or 1 (on)																																																		
Setting	Paper size	Setting	Paper size																																																	
5000	A4	5000	A5R																																																	
4300	B5	7800	Folio																																																	
5100	11" x 8 1/2"	10200	11" x 17"																																																	
10000	A3	9000	11" x 15"																																																	
8600	B4	8400	8 1/2" x 14"																																																	
7100	A4R	6600	8 1/2" x 11"																																																	
6100	B5R	5100	5 1/2" x 8 1/2"																																																	

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U076	<p><b>Executing DP automatic adjustment</b></p> <p><b>Description</b>            Uses a specified original and automatically adjusts the following items in the DP scanning section.            Adjusting the DP magnification (U070)            Adjusting the DP scanning timing (U071)            Adjusting the DP center line (U072)            When you run this maintenance mode, the preset values of U070, U071 and U072 will also be updated.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b>            To perform automatic adjustment of various items in the DP scanning section.</p> <p><b>Remarks</b>            Cut a trail edge of a specified original (part number: 2AC68241) as shown in a figure.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>128±1mm 60±1mm Cut with the edge of black belt.</p> </div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-12</b></p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Set a specified original (part number: 2A068021) in the DP.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. Auto adjustment starts. When adjustment is complete, each adjusted value is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CONVEY SPEED</td> <td>DP magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LEAD EDGE ADJ</td> <td>DP leading edge registration</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TRAIL EDGE ADJ</td> <td>DP trailing edge registration</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DP CENTER</td> <td>DP original center line</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	CONVEY SPEED	DP magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction	LEAD EDGE ADJ	DP leading edge registration	TRAIL EDGE ADJ	DP trailing edge registration	DP CENTER	DP original center line
Display	Description										
CONVEY SPEED	DP magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction										
LEAD EDGE ADJ	DP leading edge registration										
TRAIL EDGE ADJ	DP trailing edge registration										
DP CENTER	DP original center line										

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
<b>U076</b>	<p>If a problem occurs during auto adjustment, DATA: XX (XX is replaced by an error code) is displayed and operation stops. Should this happen, determine the details of the problem and either repeat the procedure from the beginning, or adjust the remaining items manually by running the corresponding maintenance items.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;">Code</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">61</td> <td>Sub scan magnification is above the <math>\pm 2.5\%</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">62</td> <td>Leading timing is above <math>\pm 3.2\text{mm}</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">63</td> <td>Trailing timing is above <math>\pm 3.2\text{mm}</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">64</td> <td>The gap of sub scan direction is above <math>\pm 1.5\text{mm}</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">65</td> <td>The gap of the center line is above <math>\pm 3.2\text{mm}</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">67</td> <td>The gap of main scanning direction is above <math>\pm 1.5\text{mm}</math></td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">68</td> <td>The leading black edge of the adjustment original is not detected.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">69</td> <td>The trailing black edge of the adjustment original is not detected.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">6a</td> <td>The right edge black edge of the adjustment original is not detected.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">6b</td> <td>The left edge black edge of the adjustment original is not detected.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">6f</td> <td>Timeout occurred when reading out from memory.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b>                      Press the stop/clear key after auto adjustment is complete. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.                      If press the stop/clear key during auto adjustment, adjustment stops and no settings are changed.</p>	Code	Description	61	Sub scan magnification is above the $\pm 2.5\%$	62	Leading timing is above $\pm 3.2\text{mm}$	63	Trailing timing is above $\pm 3.2\text{mm}$	64	The gap of sub scan direction is above $\pm 1.5\text{mm}$	65	The gap of the center line is above $\pm 3.2\text{mm}$	67	The gap of main scanning direction is above $\pm 1.5\text{mm}$	68	The leading black edge of the adjustment original is not detected.	69	The trailing black edge of the adjustment original is not detected.	6a	The right edge black edge of the adjustment original is not detected.	6b	The left edge black edge of the adjustment original is not detected.	6f	Timeout occurred when reading out from memory.
Code	Description																								
61	Sub scan magnification is above the $\pm 2.5\%$																								
62	Leading timing is above $\pm 3.2\text{mm}$																								
63	Trailing timing is above $\pm 3.2\text{mm}$																								
64	The gap of sub scan direction is above $\pm 1.5\text{mm}$																								
65	The gap of the center line is above $\pm 3.2\text{mm}$																								
67	The gap of main scanning direction is above $\pm 1.5\text{mm}$																								
68	The leading black edge of the adjustment original is not detected.																								
69	The trailing black edge of the adjustment original is not detected.																								
6a	The right edge black edge of the adjustment original is not detected.																								
6b	The left edge black edge of the adjustment original is not detected.																								
6f	Timeout occurred when reading out from memory.																								
<b>U080</b>	<p><b>Setting the economy mode</b>  <b>Description</b>                      Sets the level in the economy mode.  <b>Purpose</b>                      Set according to the preference of the user.  <b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>3. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">ADJUST DATA</td> <td>For full-color mode</td> <td style="text-align: center;">50 to 100</td> <td style="text-align: center;">75</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">ADJUST DATA2</td> <td>For monochrome and single color mode</td> <td style="text-align: center;">50 to 100</td> <td style="text-align: center;">75</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Supplement</b>                      While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in the interrupt copying mode.  <b>Completion</b>                      Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	ADJUST DATA	For full-color mode	50 to 100	75	ADJUST DATA2	For monochrome and single color mode	50 to 100	75												
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																						
ADJUST DATA	For full-color mode	50 to 100	75																						
ADJUST DATA2	For monochrome and single color mode	50 to 100	75																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																						
U087	<p><b>Setting DP reading position modification operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the black line inspection at the time of reading the original from the DP.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> When using optional DP, to solve the problem when black lines occurs due to the dust with respect to original reading position.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CCD</td> <td>Setting of standard data when dust is detected.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BLACK LINE</td> <td>Initialization of original reading position.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: standard data when dust is detected</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CCD R</td> <td>Lowest density of the R regard as the dust.</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CCD G</td> <td>Lowest density of the G regard as the dust.</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CCD B</td> <td>Lowest density of the B regard as the dust.</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>200</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Initialization of original reading position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select CLEAR.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is cleared.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	CCD	Setting of standard data when dust is detected.	BLACK LINE	Initialization of original reading position.	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	CCD R	Lowest density of the R regard as the dust.	0 to 255	200	CCD G	Lowest density of the G regard as the dust.	0 to 255	200	CCD B	Lowest density of the B regard as the dust.	0 to 255	200
Display	Description																						
CCD	Setting of standard data when dust is detected.																						
BLACK LINE	Initialization of original reading position.																						
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																				
CCD R	Lowest density of the R regard as the dust.	0 to 255	200																				
CCD G	Lowest density of the G regard as the dust.	0 to 255	200																				
CCD B	Lowest density of the B regard as the dust.	0 to 255	200																				
U089	<p><b>Outputting the MIP-PG pattern</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Selects and outputs the MIP-PG pattern created by the machine.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check machine status other than scanner when adjusting image printing, using MIP-PG pattern output (without scanning).</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the MIP-PG pattern to be output.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>256GRADATION</td> <td>256-gradation PG</td> </tr> <tr> <td>COLOR BELT</td> <td>Four color belts PG</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GRAY</td> <td>Gray PG</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WHITE</td> <td>Blank paper PG</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GRADATION GRAY</td> <td>5-gradation gray PG</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the interrupt key. When outputting gray PG of cyan/magenta/yellow, press Full-Color key and select the color on the Color func.(Colour func.) screen.</li> <li>4. Load the cassette with a sheet of A3 or 11" x 17" paper.</li> <li>5. Press the start key. A MIP-PG pattern is output.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	256GRADATION	256-gradation PG	COLOR BELT	Four color belts PG	GRAY	Gray PG	WHITE	Blank paper PG	GRADATION GRAY	5-gradation gray PG										
Display	Description																						
256GRADATION	256-gradation PG																						
COLOR BELT	Four color belts PG																						
GRAY	Gray PG																						
WHITE	Blank paper PG																						
GRADATION GRAY	5-gradation gray PG																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																																								
<b>U093</b>	<p><b>Adjusting the exposure density gradient</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Changes the exposure density gradient in the manual density mode, depending on respective image quality modes.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To set how the image density is altered by a change of one step in the manual density adjustment for respective image quality modes. Also used to make copy images darker or lighter.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the image quality mode. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>TEXT</td> <td>Density in the text mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MIXED</td> <td>Density in the text and photo mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OTHER</td> <td>Density in modes other than the text mode or the text and photo mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FAX TEXT</td> <td>Density in the text in fax mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FAX PHOTO</td> <td>Density in the photo in fax mode</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: Gradient in the text mode</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>TEXT F/C DARK</td> <td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 to 3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TEXT F/C LIGHT</td> <td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 to 3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TEXT MONO DARK</td> <td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 to 3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TEXT MONO LIGHT</td> <td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 to 3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Gradient in the text and photo mode</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MIXED F/C DARK</td> <td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 to 3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MIXED F/C LIGHT</td> <td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 to 3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MIXED MONO DARK</td> <td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 to 3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MIXED MONO LIGHT</td> <td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 to 3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Gradient in other modes</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>OTHER F/C DARK</td> <td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 to 3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OTHER F/C LIGHT</td> <td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 to 3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OTHER MONO DARK</td> <td>Change in density when manual density is set dark</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 to 3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OTHER MONO LIGHT</td> <td>Change in density when manual density is set light</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0 to 3</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	TEXT	Density in the text mode	MIXED	Density in the text and photo mode	OTHER	Density in modes other than the text mode or the text and photo mode	FAX TEXT	Density in the text in fax mode	FAX PHOTO	Density in the photo in fax mode	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	TEXT F/C DARK	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	TEXT F/C LIGHT	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0	TEXT MONO DARK	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	TEXT MONO LIGHT	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	MIXED F/C DARK	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	MIXED F/C LIGHT	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0	MIXED MONO DARK	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	MIXED MONO LIGHT	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	OTHER F/C DARK	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	OTHER F/C LIGHT	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0	OTHER MONO DARK	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0	OTHER MONO LIGHT	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0
Display	Description																																																																								
TEXT	Density in the text mode																																																																								
MIXED	Density in the text and photo mode																																																																								
OTHER	Density in modes other than the text mode or the text and photo mode																																																																								
FAX TEXT	Density in the text in fax mode																																																																								
FAX PHOTO	Density in the photo in fax mode																																																																								
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																																						
TEXT F/C DARK	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																																																																						
TEXT F/C LIGHT	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																																																																						
TEXT MONO DARK	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																																																																						
TEXT MONO LIGHT	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																																																																						
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																																						
MIXED F/C DARK	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																																																																						
MIXED F/C LIGHT	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																																																																						
MIXED MONO DARK	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																																																																						
MIXED MONO LIGHT	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																																																																						
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																																						
OTHER F/C DARK	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																																																																						
OTHER F/C LIGHT	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																																																																						
OTHER MONO DARK	Change in density when manual density is set dark	0 to 3	0																																																																						
OTHER MONO LIGHT	Change in density when manual density is set light	0 to 3	0																																																																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U093	<p><b>Setting: Gradient in the text in fax mode</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FAX TEXT DARK</td> <td>Gradient for darker setting</td> <td>0 to 4</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FAX TEXT LIGHT</td> <td>Gradient for lighter setting</td> <td>0 to 9</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Gradient in the photo in fax mode</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FAX PHOTO DARK</td> <td>Gradient for darker setting</td> <td>0 to 6</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FAX PHOTO LIGHT</td> <td>Gradient for lighter setting</td> <td>0 to 6</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in the interrupt copying mode.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	FAX TEXT DARK	Gradient for darker setting	0 to 4	0	FAX TEXT LIGHT	Gradient for lighter setting	0 to 9	0	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	FAX PHOTO DARK	Gradient for darker setting	0 to 6	0	FAX PHOTO LIGHT	Gradient for lighter setting	0 to 6	0
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																						
FAX TEXT DARK	Gradient for darker setting	0 to 4	0																						
FAX TEXT LIGHT	Gradient for lighter setting	0 to 9	0																						
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																						
FAX PHOTO DARK	Gradient for darker setting	0 to 6	0																						
FAX PHOTO LIGHT	Gradient for lighter setting	0 to 6	0																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																						
<p><b>U099</b></p> <p><b>Adjusting original size detection</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Checks the operation of the original size detection sensor and sets the sensing threshold value.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To adjust the sensitiveness of the sensor and size judgement time if the original size detection sensor malfunctions frequently due to incident light or the like.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select an item and press the start key. The screen for executing each item is displayed.</li> </ol>	<table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DATA</td> <td>Displaying detection sensor transmission data</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B/W LEVEL</td> <td>B/W LEVEL Setting detection sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method to display the data for the sensor</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The detection sensor transmission data is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ORIGINAL AREA R</td> <td>Detected original width size (R)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ORIGINAL AREA G</td> <td>Detected original width size (G)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ORIGINAL AREA B</td> <td>Detected original width size (B)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ORIGINAL AREA</td> <td>Detected original width size</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SIZE SW L</td> <td>Displays the original detection switch ON/OFF</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select an item to be set.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ORIGINAL R</td> <td>Original threshold value (R)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>105</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ORIGINAL G</td> <td>Original threshold value (G)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>105</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ORIGINAL B</td> <td>Original threshold value (B)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>105</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LIGHT SOURCE R</td> <td>Light source threshold value (R)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>60</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LIGHT SOURCE G</td> <td>Light source threshold value (G)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>60</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LIGHT SOURCE B</td> <td>Light source threshold value (B)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>60</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WAIT TIME</td> <td>Stand-by time after original size lamp turns on</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>150</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A4R AREA</td> <td>Original size detection position display (mm)</td> <td>220/240</td> <td>240</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method to set the original size judgment time</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Adjust the preset value using the * or # keys. A larger value increases the original size judgment time, and a smaller value decreases it.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>3. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	DATA	Displaying detection sensor transmission data	B/W LEVEL	B/W LEVEL Setting detection sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time	Display	Description	ORIGINAL AREA R	Detected original width size (R)	ORIGINAL AREA G	Detected original width size (G)	ORIGINAL AREA B	Detected original width size (B)	ORIGINAL AREA	Detected original width size	SIZE SW L	Displays the original detection switch ON/OFF	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	ORIGINAL R	Original threshold value (R)	0 to 255	105	ORIGINAL G	Original threshold value (G)	0 to 255	105	ORIGINAL B	Original threshold value (B)	0 to 255	105	LIGHT SOURCE R	Light source threshold value (R)	0 to 255	60	LIGHT SOURCE G	Light source threshold value (G)	0 to 255	60	LIGHT SOURCE B	Light source threshold value (B)	0 to 255	60	WAIT TIME	Stand-by time after original size lamp turns on	0 to 255	150	A4R AREA	Original size detection position display (mm)	220/240	240
Display	Description																																																						
DATA	Displaying detection sensor transmission data																																																						
B/W LEVEL	B/W LEVEL Setting detection sensor threshold value Setting original size judgment time																																																						
Display	Description																																																						
ORIGINAL AREA R	Detected original width size (R)																																																						
ORIGINAL AREA G	Detected original width size (G)																																																						
ORIGINAL AREA B	Detected original width size (B)																																																						
ORIGINAL AREA	Detected original width size																																																						
SIZE SW L	Displays the original detection switch ON/OFF																																																						
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																				
ORIGINAL R	Original threshold value (R)	0 to 255	105																																																				
ORIGINAL G	Original threshold value (G)	0 to 255	105																																																				
ORIGINAL B	Original threshold value (B)	0 to 255	105																																																				
LIGHT SOURCE R	Light source threshold value (R)	0 to 255	60																																																				
LIGHT SOURCE G	Light source threshold value (G)	0 to 255	60																																																				
LIGHT SOURCE B	Light source threshold value (B)	0 to 255	60																																																				
WAIT TIME	Stand-by time after original size lamp turns on	0 to 255	150																																																				
A4R AREA	Original size detection position display (mm)	220/240	240																																																				



Maintenance item No.	Description																																																								
U100	<p><b>Adjusting main high voltage</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Controls the charger roller voltage to optimize the surface potential.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting value to adjust the image if an image failure (background blur, etc.) occurs.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select an item and press the start key. The screen for executing each item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Adjust MC AC Bias</td> <td>Main charger AC bias for each color</td> </tr> <tr> <td>AC Auto Adjustment</td> <td>Setting the AC bias auto adjustment</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set DC1</td> <td>Main charger DC bias for each color</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Adjust DC2</td> <td>Additional surface potential</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Low Temp. Setting (Drum)</td> <td>Pre-charge time at power supply ON</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: Main charger AC bias</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys. The values set vary depending on environments.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Reference value</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MC AC Bias (K)</td> <td>Main charger AC bias (black)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>158</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MC AC Bias (C)</td> <td>Main charger AC bias (cyan)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>158</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MC AC Bias (M)</td> <td>Main charger AC bias (magenta)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>158</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MC AC Bias (Y)</td> <td>Main charger AC bias (yellow)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>158</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: AC bias auto adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Turns auto adjustment ON</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Turns auto adjustment OFF</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Displaying: Main charger DC bias</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The current setting is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Bias1 K (Full)</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (black)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias1 K (Half)</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (black)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias1 C (Full)</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (cyan)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias1 C (Half)</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (cyan)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias1 M (Full)</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (magenta)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias1 M (Half)</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (magenta)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias1 Y (Full)</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (yellow)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias1 Y (Half)</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (yellow)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	Adjust MC AC Bias	Main charger AC bias for each color	AC Auto Adjustment	Setting the AC bias auto adjustment	Set DC1	Main charger DC bias for each color	Adjust DC2	Additional surface potential	Low Temp. Setting (Drum)	Pre-charge time at power supply ON	Display	Description	Setting range	Reference value	MC AC Bias (K)	Main charger AC bias (black)	0 to 255	158	MC AC Bias (C)	Main charger AC bias (cyan)	0 to 255	158	MC AC Bias (M)	Main charger AC bias (magenta)	0 to 255	158	MC AC Bias (Y)	Main charger AC bias (yellow)	0 to 255	158	Display	Description	ON	Turns auto adjustment ON	OFF	Turns auto adjustment OFF	Display	Description	Bias1 K (Full)	Main charger DC bias (black)	Bias1 K (Half)	Main charger DC bias (black)	Bias1 C (Full)	Main charger DC bias (cyan)	Bias1 C (Half)	Main charger DC bias (cyan)	Bias1 M (Full)	Main charger DC bias (magenta)	Bias1 M (Half)	Main charger DC bias (magenta)	Bias1 Y (Full)	Main charger DC bias (yellow)	Bias1 Y (Half)	Main charger DC bias (yellow)
Display	Description																																																								
Adjust MC AC Bias	Main charger AC bias for each color																																																								
AC Auto Adjustment	Setting the AC bias auto adjustment																																																								
Set DC1	Main charger DC bias for each color																																																								
Adjust DC2	Additional surface potential																																																								
Low Temp. Setting (Drum)	Pre-charge time at power supply ON																																																								
Display	Description	Setting range	Reference value																																																						
MC AC Bias (K)	Main charger AC bias (black)	0 to 255	158																																																						
MC AC Bias (C)	Main charger AC bias (cyan)	0 to 255	158																																																						
MC AC Bias (M)	Main charger AC bias (magenta)	0 to 255	158																																																						
MC AC Bias (Y)	Main charger AC bias (yellow)	0 to 255	158																																																						
Display	Description																																																								
ON	Turns auto adjustment ON																																																								
OFF	Turns auto adjustment OFF																																																								
Display	Description																																																								
Bias1 K (Full)	Main charger DC bias (black)																																																								
Bias1 K (Half)	Main charger DC bias (black)																																																								
Bias1 C (Full)	Main charger DC bias (cyan)																																																								
Bias1 C (Half)	Main charger DC bias (cyan)																																																								
Bias1 M (Full)	Main charger DC bias (magenta)																																																								
Bias1 M (Half)	Main charger DC bias (magenta)																																																								
Bias1 Y (Full)	Main charger DC bias (yellow)																																																								
Bias1 Y (Half)	Main charger DC bias (yellow)																																																								

Maintenance item No.	Description																																										
<b>U100</b>	<p><b>Setting: Additional surface potential</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the item to be set.</li> <li>Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Bias2K Full</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (black)</td> <td>-128 to 127</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias2K Half</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (cyan)</td> <td>-128 to 127</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias2C Full</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (magenta)</td> <td>-128 to 127</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias2C Half</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (yellow)</td> <td>-128 to 127</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias2M Full</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (black)</td> <td>-128 to 127</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias2M Half</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (cyan)</td> <td>-128 to 127</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias2Y Full</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (magenta)</td> <td>-128 to 127</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias2Y Half</td> <td>Main charger DC bias (yellow)</td> <td>-128 to 127</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Pre-charge time</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Pre-charge time at power supply ON</td> <td>0 to 6</td> <td>1</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in the interrupt copying mode.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Bias2K Full	Main charger DC bias (black)	-128 to 127	0	Bias2K Half	Main charger DC bias (cyan)	-128 to 127	0	Bias2C Full	Main charger DC bias (magenta)	-128 to 127	0	Bias2C Half	Main charger DC bias (yellow)	-128 to 127	0	Bias2M Full	Main charger DC bias (black)	-128 to 127	0	Bias2M Half	Main charger DC bias (cyan)	-128 to 127	0	Bias2Y Full	Main charger DC bias (magenta)	-128 to 127	0	Bias2Y Half	Main charger DC bias (yellow)	-128 to 127	0	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Pre-charge time at power supply ON	0 to 6	1
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																								
Bias2K Full	Main charger DC bias (black)	-128 to 127	0																																								
Bias2K Half	Main charger DC bias (cyan)	-128 to 127	0																																								
Bias2C Full	Main charger DC bias (magenta)	-128 to 127	0																																								
Bias2C Half	Main charger DC bias (yellow)	-128 to 127	0																																								
Bias2M Full	Main charger DC bias (black)	-128 to 127	0																																								
Bias2M Half	Main charger DC bias (cyan)	-128 to 127	0																																								
Bias2Y Full	Main charger DC bias (magenta)	-128 to 127	0																																								
Bias2Y Half	Main charger DC bias (yellow)	-128 to 127	0																																								
Description	Setting range	Default setting																																									
Pre-charge time at power supply ON	0 to 6	1																																									
<b>U101</b>	<p><b>Setting the voltage for the primary transfer</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the control voltage for the primary transfer.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting when any density problems, such as too dark or light, occur.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key.</li> <li>Select the item to be set.</li> <li>Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Normal (Full M)</td> <td>Primary transfer positive voltage for magenta (full speed)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>115/95*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Normal (Half M)</td> <td>Primary transfer positive voltage for magenta (half speed)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>80/75*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Surround Correct</td> <td>Environmental correction ON/OFF setting</td> <td>0 (on)/1 (off)</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Add Color (C)</td> <td>Addition value (cyan)</td> <td>-127 to 127</td> <td>0/5*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Add Color (Y)</td> <td>Addition value (yellow)</td> <td>-127 to 127</td> <td>0/10*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Add Color (K)</td> <td>Addition value (black)</td> <td>-127 to 127</td> <td>0/25*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*: Old and new transfer belt unit</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in the interrupt copying mode.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Normal (Full M)	Primary transfer positive voltage for magenta (full speed)	0 to 255	115/95*	Normal (Half M)	Primary transfer positive voltage for magenta (half speed)	0 to 255	80/75*	Surround Correct	Environmental correction ON/OFF setting	0 (on)/1 (off)	0	Add Color (C)	Addition value (cyan)	-127 to 127	0/5*	Add Color (Y)	Addition value (yellow)	-127 to 127	0/10*	Add Color (K)	Addition value (black)	-127 to 127	0/25*														
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																								
Normal (Full M)	Primary transfer positive voltage for magenta (full speed)	0 to 255	115/95*																																								
Normal (Half M)	Primary transfer positive voltage for magenta (half speed)	0 to 255	80/75*																																								
Surround Correct	Environmental correction ON/OFF setting	0 (on)/1 (off)	0																																								
Add Color (C)	Addition value (cyan)	-127 to 127	0/5*																																								
Add Color (Y)	Addition value (yellow)	-127 to 127	0/10*																																								
Add Color (K)	Addition value (black)	-127 to 127	0/25*																																								

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																																
U106	<p><b>Setting the voltage for the secondary transfer</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the control voltage for the secondary transfer depending on each paper type.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting when any density problems, such as too dark or light, occur.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set. The screen for executing each item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Light/Normal 1 Full Front</td> <td>Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 64 g/m<sup>2</sup> and 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 75 g/m<sup>2</sup></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Normal2/3 Full Front</td> <td>Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side on paper with thickness 75 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Light/Normal 1 Full Back</td> <td>Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 64 g/m<sup>2</sup> and 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 75 g/m<sup>2</sup></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Normal 2/3 Full Back</td> <td>Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side on paper with thickness 75 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Heavy 1 - 3</td> <td>Control voltage for the transfer bias on paper with thickness 105 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup></td> </tr> <tr> <td>OHP</td> <td>Control voltage for the transfer bias for transparencies</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Bias</td> <td>Transfer bias value</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: [Light/Normal 1 Full Front]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Width&lt;160</td> <td>Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>225/174*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>160&lt;=Width&lt;220</td> <td>Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>240/162*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>220&lt;=Width</td> <td>Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>160/109*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*: Old and new transfer high voltage PWB. (Refer to the maintenance mode U972 on P.1-3-93.)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: [Normal2/3 Full Front]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Width&lt;160</td> <td>Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>225/174*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>160&lt;=Width&lt;220</td> <td>Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>240/162*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>220&lt;=Width</td> <td>Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>170/124*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*: Old and new transfer high voltage PWB. (Refer to the maintenance mode U972 on P.1-3-93.)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: [Light/Normal 1 Full Back]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Width&lt;160</td> <td>Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>225/224*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>160&lt;=Width&lt;220</td> <td>Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>240/174*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>220&lt;=Width</td> <td>Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>140/102*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*: Old and new transfer high voltage PWB. (Refer to the maintenance mode U972 on P.1-3-93.)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	Light/Normal 1 Full Front	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 64 g/m <sup>2</sup> and 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 75 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Normal2/3 Full Front	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side on paper with thickness 75 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Light/Normal 1 Full Back	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 64 g/m <sup>2</sup> and 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 75 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Normal 2/3 Full Back	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side on paper with thickness 75 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>	Heavy 1 - 3	Control voltage for the transfer bias on paper with thickness 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup>	OHP	Control voltage for the transfer bias for transparencies	Bias	Transfer bias value	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	225/174*	160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	240/162*	220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	160/109*	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	225/174*	160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	240/162*	220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	170/124*	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	225/224*	160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	240/174*	220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	140/102*
Display	Description																																																																
Light/Normal 1 Full Front	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 64 g/m <sup>2</sup> and 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 75 g/m <sup>2</sup>																																																																
Normal2/3 Full Front	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the first side on paper with thickness 75 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>																																																																
Light/Normal 1 Full Back	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 64 g/m <sup>2</sup> and 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 75 g/m <sup>2</sup>																																																																
Normal 2/3 Full Back	Control voltage for the transfer bias for the second side on paper with thickness 75 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>																																																																
Heavy 1 - 3	Control voltage for the transfer bias on paper with thickness 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup>																																																																
OHP	Control voltage for the transfer bias for transparencies																																																																
Bias	Transfer bias value																																																																
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																														
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	225/174*																																																														
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	240/162*																																																														
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	160/109*																																																														
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																														
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	225/174*																																																														
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	240/162*																																																														
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	170/124*																																																														
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																														
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	225/224*																																																														
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	240/174*																																																														
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	140/102*																																																														

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																																
U106	<p><b>Setting: [Normal 2/3 Full Back]</b></p> <p>1. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Width&lt;160</td> <td>Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>255/224*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>160&lt;=Width&lt;220</td> <td>Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>240/174*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>220&lt;=Width</td> <td>Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>170/112*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*: Old and new transfer high voltage PWB. (Refer to the maintenance mode U972 on P.1-3-93.)</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Setting: [Heavy 1 - 3]</b></p> <p>1. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Width&lt;160</td> <td>Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>170/117*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>160&lt;=Width&lt;220</td> <td>Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>100/71*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>220&lt;=Width</td> <td>Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>100/71*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*: Old and new transfer high voltage PWB. (Refer to the maintenance mode U972 on P.1-3-93.)</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Setting: [OHP]</b></p> <p>1. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Width&lt;220</td> <td>Small and medium sizes (under 220 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>230/155*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>220&lt;=Width</td> <td>Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>80/58*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*: Old and new transfer high voltage PWB. (Refer to the maintenance mode U972 on P.1-3-93.)</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Setting: [Bias]</b></p> <p>1. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Reverse (Full)</td> <td>Transfer bias when plain paper is used</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>189</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Reverse (Half)</td> <td>Transfer bias when thick paper is used</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>189</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cleaning (Full)</td> <td>Cleaning control value when plain paper is used</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>33/34*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cleaning (Half)</td> <td>Cleaning control value when thick paper is used</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>33/34*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*: Old and new transfer high voltage PWB. (Refer to the maintenance mode U972 on P.1-3-93.)</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Supplement</b></p> <p>While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in the interrupt copying mode.</p> <p><b>Completion</b></p> <p>Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	255/224*	160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	240/174*	220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	170/112*	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	170/117*	160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	100/71*	220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	100/71*	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Width<220	Small and medium sizes (under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	230/155*	220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	80/58*	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Reverse (Full)	Transfer bias when plain paper is used	0 to 255	189	Reverse (Half)	Transfer bias when thick paper is used	0 to 255	189	Cleaning (Full)	Cleaning control value when plain paper is used	0 to 255	33/34*	Cleaning (Half)	Cleaning control value when thick paper is used	0 to 255	33/34*
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																														
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	255/224*																																																														
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	240/174*																																																														
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	170/112*																																																														
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																														
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	170/117*																																																														
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (more than 160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	100/71*																																																														
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	100/71*																																																														
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																														
Width<220	Small and medium sizes (under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	230/155*																																																														
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	80/58*																																																														
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																														
Reverse (Full)	Transfer bias when plain paper is used	0 to 255	189																																																														
Reverse (Half)	Transfer bias when thick paper is used	0 to 255	189																																																														
Cleaning (Full)	Cleaning control value when plain paper is used	0 to 255	33/34*																																																														
Cleaning (Half)	Cleaning control value when thick paper is used	0 to 255	33/34*																																																														

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																				
U107	<p><b>Setting the transfer cleaning voltage</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the cleaning control voltage for transfer belt unit.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Change settings if an offset has occurred due to the failure of cleaning the transfer belt.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Belt Clean A (F)</td> <td>Transfer belt cleaning voltage (printing)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Belt Clean A (H)</td> <td>Transfer belt cleaning voltage (using thick paper)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Belt Clean B (H)</td> <td>Transfer belt cleaning voltage (paper interval)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: Transfer belt cleaning voltage (printing)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Width&lt;160</td> <td>Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>64/90*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>160&lt;=Width&lt;220</td> <td>Medium sizes (160 to under 220 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>64/90*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>220&lt;=Width</td> <td>Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>54/90*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*: Old and new transfer belt unit</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Transfer belt cleaning voltage (using thick paper)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Width&lt;160</td> <td>Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>51/55*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>160&lt;=Width&lt;220</td> <td>Medium sizes (160 to under 220 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>51/55*</td> </tr> <tr> <td>220&lt;=Width</td> <td>Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>51/55*</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>*: Old and new transfer belt unit</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Transfer belt cleaning voltage (paper interval)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Belt Clean B (F)</td> <td>Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>170</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Belt Clean B (H)</td> <td>Medium sizes (160 to 220 mm wide)</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>110</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in the interrupt copying mode.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Belt Clean A (F)	Transfer belt cleaning voltage (printing)	Belt Clean A (H)	Transfer belt cleaning voltage (using thick paper)	Belt Clean B (H)	Transfer belt cleaning voltage (paper interval)	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	64/90*	160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	64/90*	220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	54/90*	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	51/55*	160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	51/55*	220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	51/55*	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Belt Clean B (F)	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	170	Belt Clean B (H)	Medium sizes (160 to 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	110
Display	Description																																																				
Belt Clean A (F)	Transfer belt cleaning voltage (printing)																																																				
Belt Clean A (H)	Transfer belt cleaning voltage (using thick paper)																																																				
Belt Clean B (H)	Transfer belt cleaning voltage (paper interval)																																																				
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																		
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	64/90*																																																		
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	64/90*																																																		
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	54/90*																																																		
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																		
Width<160	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	51/55*																																																		
160<=Width<220	Medium sizes (160 to under 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	51/55*																																																		
220<=Width	Large sizes (more than 220mm wide)	0 to 255	51/55*																																																		
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																		
Belt Clean B (F)	Small sizes (under 160 mm wide)	0 to 255	170																																																		
Belt Clean B (H)	Medium sizes (160 to 220 mm wide)	0 to 255	110																																																		

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																		
<b>U108</b>	<p><b>Setting separation shift bias</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts output of separation shift bias and ON/OFF timing.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To set when the separated malfunction of the paper occurs.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set. The screen for executing each item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Set Output Value</td> <td>The paper of the paper thick or the separation shift bias output adjustment with type</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set Timing</td> <td>ON/OFF timing adjustment with paper position</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: [Set Output Value]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down key.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Light Full 1st</td> <td>Separation shift bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 64 g/m<sup>2</sup></td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>85</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Light Full 2nd</td> <td>Separation shift bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 64 g/m<sup>2</sup></td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>60</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Normal Full 1st</td> <td>Separation shift bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup></td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>52</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Normal Full 2nd</td> <td>Separation shift bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup></td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>60</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Normal Lead edge</td> <td>Separation shift bias for the leading edge on paper with thickness 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup></td> <td>-127 to 127</td> <td>8</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Heavy/OHP</td> <td>Separation shift bias for transparencies with thickness 105 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 220 g/m<sup>2</sup></td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>26</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: [Set Timing]</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down key.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON Timing Lead</td> <td>Separation shift bias ON timing at leading edge of paper</td> <td>-200 to 200</td> <td>-88</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ON Timing Center</td> <td>Separation shift bias ON timing at center of paper</td> <td>-200 to 200</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF Timing</td> <td>Separation shift bias OFF timing</td> <td>-200 to 200</td> <td>110</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Set Output Value	The paper of the paper thick or the separation shift bias output adjustment with type	Set Timing	ON/OFF timing adjustment with paper position	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Light Full 1st	Separation shift bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 64 g/m <sup>2</sup>	0 to 255	85	Light Full 2nd	Separation shift bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 64 g/m <sup>2</sup>	0 to 255	60	Normal Full 1st	Separation shift bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>	0 to 255	52	Normal Full 2nd	Separation shift bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>	0 to 255	60	Normal Lead edge	Separation shift bias for the leading edge on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>	-127 to 127	8	Heavy/OHP	Separation shift bias for transparencies with thickness 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup>	0 to 255	26	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	ON Timing Lead	Separation shift bias ON timing at leading edge of paper	-200 to 200	-88	ON Timing Center	Separation shift bias ON timing at center of paper	-200 to 200	0	OFF Timing	Separation shift bias OFF timing	-200 to 200	110
Display	Description																																																		
Set Output Value	The paper of the paper thick or the separation shift bias output adjustment with type																																																		
Set Timing	ON/OFF timing adjustment with paper position																																																		
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																
Light Full 1st	Separation shift bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 64 g/m <sup>2</sup>	0 to 255	85																																																
Light Full 2nd	Separation shift bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 64 g/m <sup>2</sup>	0 to 255	60																																																
Normal Full 1st	Separation shift bias for the first side on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>	0 to 255	52																																																
Normal Full 2nd	Separation shift bias for the second side on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>	0 to 255	60																																																
Normal Lead edge	Separation shift bias for the leading edge on paper with thickness 60 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m <sup>2</sup>	-127 to 127	8																																																
Heavy/OHP	Separation shift bias for transparencies with thickness 105 g/m <sup>2</sup> to 220 g/m <sup>2</sup>	0 to 255	26																																																
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																
ON Timing Lead	Separation shift bias ON timing at leading edge of paper	-200 to 200	-88																																																
ON Timing Center	Separation shift bias ON timing at center of paper	-200 to 200	0																																																
OFF Timing	Separation shift bias OFF timing	-200 to 200	110																																																

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
<b>U109</b>	<p><b>Checking the drum type</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the drum sensitivity data.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the drum sensitivity data.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item. The drum sensitivity data is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BLACK (Dark)</td> <td>Drum sensitivity data for black (dark potential)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CYAN (Dark)</td> <td>Drum sensitivity data for cyan (dark potential)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MAGENTA (Dark)</td> <td>Drum sensitivity data for magenta (dark potential)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>YELLOW (Dark)</td> <td>Drum sensitivity data for yellow (dark potential)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BLACK (Light)</td> <td>Drum sensitivity data for black (light potential)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CYAN (Light)</td> <td>Drum sensitivity data for cyan (light potential)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MAGENTA (Light)</td> <td>Drum sensitivity data for magenta (light potential)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>YELLOW (Light)</td> <td>Drum sensitivity data for yellow (light potential)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	BLACK (Dark)	Drum sensitivity data for black (dark potential)	CYAN (Dark)	Drum sensitivity data for cyan (dark potential)	MAGENTA (Dark)	Drum sensitivity data for magenta (dark potential)	YELLOW (Dark)	Drum sensitivity data for yellow (dark potential)	BLACK (Light)	Drum sensitivity data for black (light potential)	CYAN (Light)	Drum sensitivity data for cyan (light potential)	MAGENTA (Light)	Drum sensitivity data for magenta (light potential)	YELLOW (Light)	Drum sensitivity data for yellow (light potential)
Display	Description																		
BLACK (Dark)	Drum sensitivity data for black (dark potential)																		
CYAN (Dark)	Drum sensitivity data for cyan (dark potential)																		
MAGENTA (Dark)	Drum sensitivity data for magenta (dark potential)																		
YELLOW (Dark)	Drum sensitivity data for yellow (dark potential)																		
BLACK (Light)	Drum sensitivity data for black (light potential)																		
CYAN (Light)	Drum sensitivity data for cyan (light potential)																		
MAGENTA (Light)	Drum sensitivity data for magenta (light potential)																		
YELLOW (Light)	Drum sensitivity data for yellow (light potential)																		
<b>U110</b>	<p><b>Checking the drum count</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the drum counts for checking.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the drum status.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The current drum counts of each color is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																		
<b>U111</b>	<p><b>Checking the drum drive time</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the drum drive time for checking a figure, which is used as a reference when correcting the high voltage based on time.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the drum status.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The drum drive time of each color is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																		
<b>U117</b>	<p><b>Checking the drum number</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the drum number for each color.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the drum number.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. Each drum number is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																		

Maintenance item No.	Description
U118	<p><b>Displaying the drum history</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the past record of machine number and the drum counter for each color.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the count value of machine number and the drum counter.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the color to check. The machine ID and last five drum counts are displayed according to the color selected.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U119	<p><b>Setting the drum</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets drum sensitivity.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To set the drum after replacing the drum unit and laser scanner unit.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. Drum setup is commenced and the main charger target current is displayed for each color.</li> <li>2. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>
U122	<p><b>Checking the transfer belt unit number</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the number of the transfer belt unit for checking.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the number of the transfer belt.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The current number of the transfer belt is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U123	<p><b>Displaying the transfer belt unit history</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the past record of machine number and the transfer belt unit counter.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the count value of machine number and the transfer counter.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. 5 occurrences of the historical records of the machine number and transfer belt unit counter are displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>



Maintenance item No.	Description																
U127	<p><b>Checking the transfer count</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the counts of the transfer counter for checking.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the count after replacement of the transfer unit.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The current counts of the transfer counter is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																
U128	<p><b>Setting transfer high-voltage timing</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the ON/OFF timing of transfer high-voltage output.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Basically, the setting need not be changed. If any problem such as faulty images or dirt on the back surface occurs, change the setting.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to set.</li> <li>3. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Trans ON Timing1</td> <td>Transfer ON timing adjustment value (first side)</td> <td>-200 to 200</td> <td>-54</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Trans ON Timing2</td> <td>Transfer ON timing adjustment value (second side)</td> <td>-200 to 200</td> <td>-54</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Trans OFF Timing</td> <td>Transfer OFF timing adjustment value</td> <td>-200 to 200</td> <td>10</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Trans ON Timing1	Transfer ON timing adjustment value (first side)	-200 to 200	-54	Trans ON Timing2	Transfer ON timing adjustment value (second side)	-200 to 200	-54	Trans OFF Timing	Transfer OFF timing adjustment value	-200 to 200	10
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting														
Trans ON Timing1	Transfer ON timing adjustment value (first side)	-200 to 200	-54														
Trans ON Timing2	Transfer ON timing adjustment value (second side)	-200 to 200	-54														
Trans OFF Timing	Transfer OFF timing adjustment value	-200 to 200	10														

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																				
U131	<p><b>Adjusting the toner sensor control voltage</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the toner sensor control voltage.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> If control values are not correctly retrievable due to the EEPROM of the developing unit failure, etc., use manual adjustment and obtain a temporary control value.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set or displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Manual Adjustment</td> <td>Toner sensor control voltage manual adjustment</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Auto Adjustment</td> <td>Toner sensor control voltage auto adjustment</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set Operation Mode</td> <td>Switching the manual adjustment and auto adjustment</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: manual adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CONTROL BK</td> <td>Black toner control voltage</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>116</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CONTROL C</td> <td>Cyan toner control voltage</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>116</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CONTROL M</td> <td>Magenta toner control voltage</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>116</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CONTROL Y</td> <td>Yellow toner control voltage</td> <td>0 to 255</td> <td>116</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Displaying: auto adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The current setting is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Default (K)</td> <td>Reference value for toner control voltage (black)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Default (C)</td> <td>Reference value for toner control voltage (cyan)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Default (M)</td> <td>Reference value for toner control voltage (magenta)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Default (Y)</td> <td>Reference value for toner control voltage (yellow)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Control (K)</td> <td>Toner control voltage after correction (black)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Control (C)</td> <td>Toner control voltage after correction (cyan)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Control (M)</td> <td>Toner control voltage after correction (magenta)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Control (Y)</td> <td>Toner control voltage after correction (yellow)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Manual Adjustment</td> <td>Toner sensor control voltage manual adjustment</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Auto Adjustment</td> <td>Toner sensor control voltage auto adjustment</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: Automatic adjustment</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Manual Adjustment	Toner sensor control voltage manual adjustment	Auto Adjustment	Toner sensor control voltage auto adjustment	Set Operation Mode	Switching the manual adjustment and auto adjustment	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	CONTROL BK	Black toner control voltage	0 to 255	116	CONTROL C	Cyan toner control voltage	0 to 255	116	CONTROL M	Magenta toner control voltage	0 to 255	116	CONTROL Y	Yellow toner control voltage	0 to 255	116	Display	Description	Default (K)	Reference value for toner control voltage (black)	Default (C)	Reference value for toner control voltage (cyan)	Default (M)	Reference value for toner control voltage (magenta)	Default (Y)	Reference value for toner control voltage (yellow)	Control (K)	Toner control voltage after correction (black)	Control (C)	Toner control voltage after correction (cyan)	Control (M)	Toner control voltage after correction (magenta)	Control (Y)	Toner control voltage after correction (yellow)	Display	Description	Manual Adjustment	Toner sensor control voltage manual adjustment	Auto Adjustment	Toner sensor control voltage auto adjustment
Display	Description																																																				
Manual Adjustment	Toner sensor control voltage manual adjustment																																																				
Auto Adjustment	Toner sensor control voltage auto adjustment																																																				
Set Operation Mode	Switching the manual adjustment and auto adjustment																																																				
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																		
CONTROL BK	Black toner control voltage	0 to 255	116																																																		
CONTROL C	Cyan toner control voltage	0 to 255	116																																																		
CONTROL M	Magenta toner control voltage	0 to 255	116																																																		
CONTROL Y	Yellow toner control voltage	0 to 255	116																																																		
Display	Description																																																				
Default (K)	Reference value for toner control voltage (black)																																																				
Default (C)	Reference value for toner control voltage (cyan)																																																				
Default (M)	Reference value for toner control voltage (magenta)																																																				
Default (Y)	Reference value for toner control voltage (yellow)																																																				
Control (K)	Toner control voltage after correction (black)																																																				
Control (C)	Toner control voltage after correction (cyan)																																																				
Control (M)	Toner control voltage after correction (magenta)																																																				
Control (Y)	Toner control voltage after correction (yellow)																																																				
Display	Description																																																				
Manual Adjustment	Toner sensor control voltage manual adjustment																																																				
Auto Adjustment	Toner sensor control voltage auto adjustment																																																				

Maintenance item No.	Description												
U132	<p><b>Replenishing toner forcibly</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Replenishes toner forcibly until the toner sensor output value reaches the toner feed start level.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Used when the toner empty is detected frequently.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. Operation starts, and the current data is displayed. Toner is replenished until the toner sensor output value reaches the toner feed start level.</li> <li>3. To stop operation, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>												
U135	<p><b>Checking toner motor operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Drives toner motors.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of toner motors.</p> <p><b>Remarks</b> When driving the toner motors long time or several times, developing section becomes the toner full and is locked.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [MOTOR]. The operation starts.</li> <li>3. To stop the operation, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key after operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>												
U139	<p><b>Displaying the temperature and humidity outside the machine</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the detected temperature and humidity outside the machine.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the temperature and humidity outside the machine.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The detected temperature (°C/°F) and humidity (%) outside the machine are displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>External Temperature Value</td> <td>External temperature (°C)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>External Humidity Value</td> <td>External humidity (%)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Internal Temp1 (LSU)</td> <td>Internal temperature around the laser scanner unit (°C)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Internal Temp2 (Transfer)</td> <td>Internal temperature around the transfer section (°C)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Internal Temp3 (Develop)</td> <td>Internal temperature around the developing section (°C)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	External Temperature Value	External temperature (°C)	External Humidity Value	External humidity (%)	Internal Temp1 (LSU)	Internal temperature around the laser scanner unit (°C)	Internal Temp2 (Transfer)	Internal temperature around the transfer section (°C)	Internal Temp3 (Develop)	Internal temperature around the developing section (°C)
Display	Description												
External Temperature Value	External temperature (°C)												
External Humidity Value	External humidity (%)												
Internal Temp1 (LSU)	Internal temperature around the laser scanner unit (°C)												
Internal Temp2 (Transfer)	Internal temperature around the transfer section (°C)												
Internal Temp3 (Develop)	Internal temperature around the developing section (°C)												
U140	<p><b>Displaying developing bias</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays various developing bias value.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the developing bias value.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be displayed. The current setting value is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>												

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																		
U147	<p><b>Setting for toner applying operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the mode for removing charged toner in the developing unit (T7 control: Toner applying operation).</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Changing settings are not required. However, when the documents with lower print density (e.g. less than 2%) should customarily printed in a great volume, mode must be changed. If the charged toner stays inside the developing unit, density decreases.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Transition Time</td> <td>Duration of toner applying</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set Operation Mode</td> <td>Settings for toner applying operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Upper Limit</td> <td>Upper limit printing ratio of toner applying quantity with each mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Sleeve Cleaning Interval</td> <td>Toner collection operational interval on developing sleeve after the toner applying operation (T7 control)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set Drum Cleaning Mode</td> <td>Settings for developing the toner layer in accordance with coverage ratio</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set Minimum Value</td> <td>Toner layer width when [Set Drum Cleaning Mode] is selected</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting for duration of toner applying</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Duration of toner applying</td> <td>0 to 255 (s)</td> <td>70</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting for toner applying operation</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Do not applying the toner operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MODE1</td> <td>Normal mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MODE2</td> <td>Toner consumption mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MODE3</td> <td>Normal mode (setting value is changed possibility)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting; MODE1</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting for MODE3</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using * key or # key.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Black</td> <td>The magnification ratio which is multiplied in the toner applying quantity (black)</td> <td>0 to 5.0</td> <td>1.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cyan</td> <td>The magnification ratio which is multiplied in the toner applying quantity (cyan)</td> <td>0 to 5.0</td> <td>1.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Magenta</td> <td>The magnification ratio which is multiplied in the toner applying quantity (magenta)</td> <td>0 to 5.0</td> <td>1.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Yellow</td> <td>The magnification ratio which is multiplied in the toner applying quantity (yellow)</td> <td>0 to 5.0</td> <td>1.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	Transition Time	Duration of toner applying	Set Operation Mode	Settings for toner applying operation	Upper Limit	Upper limit printing ratio of toner applying quantity with each mode	Sleeve Cleaning Interval	Toner collection operational interval on developing sleeve after the toner applying operation (T7 control)	Set Drum Cleaning Mode	Settings for developing the toner layer in accordance with coverage ratio	Set Minimum Value	Toner layer width when [Set Drum Cleaning Mode] is selected	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Duration of toner applying	0 to 255 (s)	70	Display	Description	OFF	Do not applying the toner operation	MODE1	Normal mode	MODE2	Toner consumption mode	MODE3	Normal mode (setting value is changed possibility)	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Black	The magnification ratio which is multiplied in the toner applying quantity (black)	0 to 5.0	1.0	Cyan	The magnification ratio which is multiplied in the toner applying quantity (cyan)	0 to 5.0	1.0	Magenta	The magnification ratio which is multiplied in the toner applying quantity (magenta)	0 to 5.0	1.0	Yellow	The magnification ratio which is multiplied in the toner applying quantity (yellow)	0 to 5.0	1.0
Display	Description																																																		
Transition Time	Duration of toner applying																																																		
Set Operation Mode	Settings for toner applying operation																																																		
Upper Limit	Upper limit printing ratio of toner applying quantity with each mode																																																		
Sleeve Cleaning Interval	Toner collection operational interval on developing sleeve after the toner applying operation (T7 control)																																																		
Set Drum Cleaning Mode	Settings for developing the toner layer in accordance with coverage ratio																																																		
Set Minimum Value	Toner layer width when [Set Drum Cleaning Mode] is selected																																																		
Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																	
Duration of toner applying	0 to 255 (s)	70																																																	
Display	Description																																																		
OFF	Do not applying the toner operation																																																		
MODE1	Normal mode																																																		
MODE2	Toner consumption mode																																																		
MODE3	Normal mode (setting value is changed possibility)																																																		
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																
Black	The magnification ratio which is multiplied in the toner applying quantity (black)	0 to 5.0	1.0																																																
Cyan	The magnification ratio which is multiplied in the toner applying quantity (cyan)	0 to 5.0	1.0																																																
Magenta	The magnification ratio which is multiplied in the toner applying quantity (magenta)	0 to 5.0	1.0																																																
Yellow	The magnification ratio which is multiplied in the toner applying quantity (yellow)	0 to 5.0	1.0																																																

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U147	<p><b>Setting: upper limit printing ratio of toner applying quantity</b></p> <p>1. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Upper limit printing ratio of toner applying quantity with each mode</td> <td>0 to 10 (%)</td> <td>5 (%)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Setting: toner collection operational interval</b></p> <p>1. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Toner collection operational interval on developing sleeve after the toner applying operation (T7 control)</td> <td>10 to 300 (s)</td> <td>60 (s)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Settings for developing the toner layer in accordance with coverage ratio</b></p> <p>Modify settings only if faulty images, such as smear, occurs in a high humid environment.</p> <p>1. Select the item to be set.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Standard Control</td> <td>Constitutes a toner layer if the print coverage is less than 2%. (excludes the maximum paper width A3/A4)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Change Control</td> <td>Apply toner regardless of the current print coverage.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting; Standard Control</p> <p>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</p> <p><b>Setting: toner layer width when [Set Drum Cleaning Mode] is selected</b></p> <p>1. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Toner layer width</td> <td>0 to 30 (mm)</td> <td>Standard Control: 10 (mm) Change Control: 20 (mm)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Completion</b></p> <p>Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Upper limit printing ratio of toner applying quantity with each mode	0 to 10 (%)	5 (%)	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Toner collection operational interval on developing sleeve after the toner applying operation (T7 control)	10 to 300 (s)	60 (s)	Display	Description	Standard Control	Constitutes a toner layer if the print coverage is less than 2%. (excludes the maximum paper width A3/A4)	Change Control	Apply toner regardless of the current print coverage.	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Toner layer width	0 to 30 (mm)	Standard Control: 10 (mm) Change Control: 20 (mm)
Description	Setting range	Default setting																							
Upper limit printing ratio of toner applying quantity with each mode	0 to 10 (%)	5 (%)																							
Description	Setting range	Default setting																							
Toner collection operational interval on developing sleeve after the toner applying operation (T7 control)	10 to 300 (s)	60 (s)																							
Display	Description																								
Standard Control	Constitutes a toner layer if the print coverage is less than 2%. (excludes the maximum paper width A3/A4)																								
Change Control	Apply toner regardless of the current print coverage.																								
Description	Setting range	Default setting																							
Toner layer width	0 to 30 (mm)	Standard Control: 10 (mm) Change Control: 20 (mm)																							
U148	<p><b>Setting drum refresh mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b></p> <p>Selects the mode used in drum refreshing</p> <p><b>Purpose</b></p> <p>Change settings when drum refreshing is too frequently executed.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <p>1. Press the start key.</p> <p>2. Select the item to be set.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Drum refreshing is not performed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TABLE1</td> <td>Occurrence of drum refreshing is small.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TABLE2</td> <td>Occurrence of drum refreshing is medium.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TABLE3</td> <td>Normal drum refreshing mode</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: TABLE3</p> <p>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</p> <p><b>Completion</b></p> <p>Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	OFF	Drum refreshing is not performed.	TABLE1	Occurrence of drum refreshing is small.	TABLE2	Occurrence of drum refreshing is medium.	TABLE3	Normal drum refreshing mode														
Display	Description																								
OFF	Drum refreshing is not performed.																								
TABLE1	Occurrence of drum refreshing is small.																								
TABLE2	Occurrence of drum refreshing is medium.																								
TABLE3	Normal drum refreshing mode																								

Maintenance item No.	Description																								
<p><b>U155</b></p>	<p><b>Displaying the toner sensor output</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the toner sensor output value.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the output value for each color when any image problems occur.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Overflow</td> <td>Waste toner overflow sensor</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Toner Sensor</td> <td>Control voltage value and replenishment level of toner sensor each color</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Displaying: waste toner overflow sensor</b> Select [Overflow]. The current setting is displayed.</p> <p><b>Displaying: toner sensor</b> Select [Toner Sensor]. The current setting is displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>INPUT BK</td> <td>Toner sensor BK output value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>INPUT C</td> <td>Toner sensor C output value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>INPUT M</td> <td>Toner sensor M output value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>INPUT Y</td> <td>Toner sensor Y output value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TARGET BK</td> <td>Toner replenishment level (black)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TARGET C</td> <td>Toner replenishment level (cyan)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TARGET M</td> <td>Toner replenishment level (magenta)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TARGET Y</td> <td>Toner replenishment level (yellow)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Overflow	Waste toner overflow sensor	Toner Sensor	Control voltage value and replenishment level of toner sensor each color	Display	Description	INPUT BK	Toner sensor BK output value	INPUT C	Toner sensor C output value	INPUT M	Toner sensor M output value	INPUT Y	Toner sensor Y output value	TARGET BK	Toner replenishment level (black)	TARGET C	Toner replenishment level (cyan)	TARGET M	Toner replenishment level (magenta)	TARGET Y	Toner replenishment level (yellow)
Display	Description																								
Overflow	Waste toner overflow sensor																								
Toner Sensor	Control voltage value and replenishment level of toner sensor each color																								
Display	Description																								
INPUT BK	Toner sensor BK output value																								
INPUT C	Toner sensor C output value																								
INPUT M	Toner sensor M output value																								
INPUT Y	Toner sensor Y output value																								
TARGET BK	Toner replenishment level (black)																								
TARGET C	Toner replenishment level (cyan)																								
TARGET M	Toner replenishment level (magenta)																								
TARGET Y	Toner replenishment level (yellow)																								

Maintenance item No.	Description																																														
U156	<p><b>Setting the toner replenishment level</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the toner replenishment level for each color.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change settings according to the original image.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Supply Level</td> <td>Setting the toner replenishment level</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EMPTY LEVEL</td> <td>Setting the toner empty level</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: Setting the toner replenishment level</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Supply Level (K)</td> <td>Toner replenishment level (black)</td> <td>0 to 900</td> <td>502</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Supply Level (C)</td> <td>Toner replenishment level (cyan)</td> <td>0 to 900</td> <td>502</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Supply Level (M)</td> <td>Toner replenishment level (magenta)</td> <td>0 to 900</td> <td>502</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Supply Level (Y)</td> <td>Toner replenishment level (yellow)</td> <td>0 to 900</td> <td>502</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Method: Setting the toner empty level</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Empty Level (K)</td> <td>Toner empty level (black)</td> <td>0 to 521</td> <td>101</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Empty Level (C)</td> <td>Toner empty level (cyan)</td> <td>0 to 521</td> <td>101</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Empty Level (Y)</td> <td>Toner empty level (magenta)</td> <td>0 to 521</td> <td>101</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Empty Level (M)</td> <td>Toner empty level (yellow)</td> <td>0 to 521</td> <td>101</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Supply Level	Setting the toner replenishment level	EMPTY LEVEL	Setting the toner empty level	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Supply Level (K)	Toner replenishment level (black)	0 to 900	502	Supply Level (C)	Toner replenishment level (cyan)	0 to 900	502	Supply Level (M)	Toner replenishment level (magenta)	0 to 900	502	Supply Level (Y)	Toner replenishment level (yellow)	0 to 900	502	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Empty Level (K)	Toner empty level (black)	0 to 521	101	Empty Level (C)	Toner empty level (cyan)	0 to 521	101	Empty Level (Y)	Toner empty level (magenta)	0 to 521	101	Empty Level (M)	Toner empty level (yellow)	0 to 521	101
Display	Description																																														
Supply Level	Setting the toner replenishment level																																														
EMPTY LEVEL	Setting the toner empty level																																														
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																												
Supply Level (K)	Toner replenishment level (black)	0 to 900	502																																												
Supply Level (C)	Toner replenishment level (cyan)	0 to 900	502																																												
Supply Level (M)	Toner replenishment level (magenta)	0 to 900	502																																												
Supply Level (Y)	Toner replenishment level (yellow)	0 to 900	502																																												
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																												
Empty Level (K)	Toner empty level (black)	0 to 521	101																																												
Empty Level (C)	Toner empty level (cyan)	0 to 521	101																																												
Empty Level (Y)	Toner empty level (magenta)	0 to 521	101																																												
Empty Level (M)	Toner empty level (yellow)	0 to 521	101																																												

Maintenance item No.	Description																												
U157	<p><b>Checking the developing drive time</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the developing drive time for checking a figure, which is used as a reference when correcting the toner control.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the developing drive time after replacing the developing unit.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The developing drive time of each color is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																												
U158	<p><b>Checking the developing count</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the developing count for checking.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the developing count after replacement of the developing unit.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The current developing counts are displayed for each color.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																												
U161	<p><b>Setting the fuser control temperature</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Changes the fuser control temperature.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Normally no change is necessary. However, can be used to prevent curling or creasing of paper, or solve a fuser problem on thick paper.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>3. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Ready Temp.</td> <td>Standby temperature control</td> <td>50 to 200</td> <td>160</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Stable (Driving)</td> <td>Stabilized temperature during operation</td> <td>130 to 200</td> <td>170</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Stable (Stop)</td> <td>Stabilized temperature under suspension</td> <td>130 to 200</td> <td>170</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Temp. Print Full</td> <td>Temperature control during printing</td> <td>130 to 200</td> <td>170</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Shift Print Dup</td> <td>Temperature control during duplex-printing</td> <td>-100 to 100</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>P. Roller Temp.</td> <td>Press roller control temperature</td> <td>130 to 200</td> <td>150</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Supplement</b> While this maintenance item is being executed, the copy of whole surface black can be outputted in the interrupt copying mode.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Ready Temp.	Standby temperature control	50 to 200	160	Stable (Driving)	Stabilized temperature during operation	130 to 200	170	Stable (Stop)	Stabilized temperature under suspension	130 to 200	170	Temp. Print Full	Temperature control during printing	130 to 200	170	Shift Print Dup	Temperature control during duplex-printing	-100 to 100	0	P. Roller Temp.	Press roller control temperature	130 to 200	150
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																										
Ready Temp.	Standby temperature control	50 to 200	160																										
Stable (Driving)	Stabilized temperature during operation	130 to 200	170																										
Stable (Stop)	Stabilized temperature under suspension	130 to 200	170																										
Temp. Print Full	Temperature control during printing	130 to 200	170																										
Shift Print Dup	Temperature control during duplex-printing	-100 to 100	0																										
P. Roller Temp.	Press roller control temperature	130 to 200	150																										
U163	<p><b>Resetting the fuser problem data</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Resets the detection of a service call code indicating a problem in the fuser section.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To prevent accidents due to an abnormally high fuser temperature.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [EXECUTE].</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The detection of a service call code is cleared.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>																												



Maintenance item No.	Description								
U167	<p><b>Checking/clearing the fuser count</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays and clears the fuser count for checking.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check or clear the fuser count after replacement of the fuser unit.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The fuser count is displayed.</p> <p><b>Clearing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the reset key.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The count is cleared. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								
U199	<p><b>Displaying fuser heater temperature</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the detected fuser temperature.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the fuser temperature.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The current setting is displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>HEAT ROLLER EDGE TEMP</td> <td>Heat roller edge temperature (°C)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HEAT ROLLER CENTER TEMP</td> <td>Heat roller center temperature (°C)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PRESS ROLLER CENTER TEMP</td> <td>Press roller center temperature (°C)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance mode No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	HEAT ROLLER EDGE TEMP	Heat roller edge temperature (°C)	HEAT ROLLER CENTER TEMP	Heat roller center temperature (°C)	PRESS ROLLER CENTER TEMP	Press roller center temperature (°C)
Display	Description								
HEAT ROLLER EDGE TEMP	Heat roller edge temperature (°C)								
HEAT ROLLER CENTER TEMP	Heat roller center temperature (°C)								
PRESS ROLLER CENTER TEMP	Press roller center temperature (°C)								
U200	<p><b>Turning all LEDs on</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns all the LEDs on the operation panel on.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check if all the LEDs on the operation panel light.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. All the LEDs on the operation panel light. Press the stop/clear key or wait for 10 s. The LEDs turns off, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								
U201	<p><b>Initializing the touch panel</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Automatically correct the positions of the X- and Y-axes of the touch panel.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To automatically correct the display positions on the touch panel after it is replaced.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The + key displayed at the upper left of the touch panel flashes.</li> <li>2. Press on the center of the + key. The + key on lower right flashes.</li> <li>3. Press the center of the flashing +.</li> </ol> <p>Initialization of the touch panel is complete, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance mode No. is displayed.</p>								
U202	<p><b>Setting the KMAS host monitoring system</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Initializes or operates the KMAS host monitoring system. This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.</p>								

Maintenance item No.	Description										
<b>U203</b>	<p><b>Operating the DP separately</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Simulates the original conveying operation separately in the optional DP.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the DP operation.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Place an original in the DP if running this simulation with paper.</li> <li>3. Select the item to be operated. The operation starts.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ADP</td> <td>With paper, single-sided original</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RADP</td> <td>With paper, double-sided original</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ADP (NON P)</td> <td>Without paper, single-sided original (continuous operation)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RADP (NON P)</td> <td>Without paper, double-sided original (continuous operation)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. To stop continuous operation, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key when the operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ADP	With paper, single-sided original	RADP	With paper, double-sided original	ADP (NON P)	Without paper, single-sided original (continuous operation)	RADP (NON P)	Without paper, double-sided original (continuous operation)
Display	Description										
ADP	With paper, single-sided original										
RADP	With paper, double-sided original										
ADP (NON P)	Without paper, single-sided original (continuous operation)										
RADP (NON P)	Without paper, double-sided original (continuous operation)										
<b>U204</b>	<p><b>Setting the presence or absence of a key card or key counter</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the presence or absence of the optional key card or key counter.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To run this maintenance item if a key card or key counter is installed.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the optional counter to be installed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>KEY-CARD</td> <td>The key card is installed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>KEY-COUNTER</td> <td>The key counter is installed.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	KEY-CARD	The key card is installed.	KEY-COUNTER	The key counter is installed.				
Display	Description										
KEY-CARD	The key card is installed.										
KEY-COUNTER	The key counter is installed.										
<b>U206</b>	<p><b>Setting the presence or absence of the coin vender</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the presence or absence of the optional coin vender. Also sets the details for coin vender operation, such as mode and unit price. This is an optional device which is currently supported only by Japanese specification machines, so no setting is necessary.</p>										
<b>U207</b>	<p><b>Checking the operation panel keys</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Checks operation of the operation panel keys.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check operation of all the keys and LEDs on the operation panel.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The screen for executing is displayed.</li> <li>2. COUNT1 is displayed and the leftmost LED on the operation panel lights.</li> <li>3. As the keys lined up in the same line as the lit indicator are pressed in the order from the top to the bottom, the figure shown on the touch panel increases in increments of 1. When all the keys in that line are pressed and if there are any LEDs corresponding to the keys in the line on the immediate right, the top LED in that line will light.</li> <li>4. When all the keys on the operation panel have been pressed, all the LEDs light for up to 10 seconds.</li> <li>5. When the LEDs go off, press the start key. All the LEDs light for 10 seconds again.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>										

Maintenance item No.	Description										
U208	<p><b>Setting the paper size for the paper feeder</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the size of paper used in optional 3000-sheet paper feeder.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting when installing the optional 3000-sheet paper feeder or the size of paper used in the paper feeder is changed.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the paper size (A4, B5 or 11 x 8.5). Initial setting: 11 x 8.5 (Inch specifications) A4 (Metric specifications)</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>										
U234	<p><b>Setting punch destination</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the destination of optional punch unit of 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be set when installing a different punch unit from the destination of the machine.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the destination.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>NOTHING</td> <td>With no punch unit</td> </tr> <tr> <td>JAPAN METRIC</td> <td>Metric (Japan) specifications</td> </tr> <tr> <td>INCH</td> <td>Inch (North America) specifications</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EUROPE METRIC</td> <td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: NOTHING</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	NOTHING	With no punch unit	JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications
Display	Description										
NOTHING	With no punch unit										
JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications										
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications										
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications										

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
U237	<p><b>Setting finisher stack quantity</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the number of sheets of each stack on the main tray and on the internal tray in optional 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting when a stack malfunction has occurred.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MAIN TRAY</td> <td>Number of sheets of stack on the main tray</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MIDDLE TRAY</td> <td>Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for sort copying or staple copying</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting the number of sheets of stack on the main tray</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>3000 sheets</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>1500 sheets</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: 0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting the number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for sort copying or staple copying</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>0</td> <td>For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 50 sheets</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1</td> <td>For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 30 sheets</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: 0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MAIN TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray	MIDDLE TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for sort copying or staple copying	Display	Description	0	3000 sheets	1	1500 sheets	Display	Description	0	For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 50 sheets	1	For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 30 sheets
Display	Description																		
MAIN TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the main tray																		
MIDDLE TRAY	Number of sheets of stack on the internal tray for sort copying or staple copying																		
Display	Description																		
0	3000 sheets																		
1	1500 sheets																		
Display	Description																		
0	For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 50 sheets																		
1	For sort copying: 30 sheets, for staple copying: 30 sheets																		

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																				
U240	<p><b>Checking the operation of the finisher</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns each motor and solenoid of optional 3000-sheet document finisher ON.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of each motor and solenoid of the document finisher.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be checked.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FINISHER MOTOR</td> <td>Checking the motor of the document finisher</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FINISHER SOL</td> <td>Checking the solenoid of the document finisher</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MAIL BOX</td> <td>Checking the motor and solenoid of the mailbox</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET</td> <td>Checking the motor of the centerfold unit</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: Checking the motor of the document finisher</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be operated.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Motor</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CAR MT M</td> <td>Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at middle speed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CAR MT L</td> <td>Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at low speed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CNV MT H</td> <td>Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at high speed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CNV MT M</td> <td>Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at middle speed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CNV MT L</td> <td>Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at low speed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EJE MT H</td> <td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at high speed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EJE MT M</td> <td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at middle speed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EJE MT L</td> <td>Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at low speed.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SUB P MT H</td> <td>Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on counterwise.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SUB P MT M</td> <td>Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on clockwise.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B UP MT</td> <td>Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B D MT</td> <td>Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WID A3 TEST</td> <td>Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WID LD TEST</td> <td>Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STPL FR MT</td> <td>Staple moving motor 1 (STMM1) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STPL S MT</td> <td>Staple moving motor 2 (STMM2) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STPL M MT</td> <td>Staple motor (STM) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TRAY MT</td> <td>Main tray motor (MTM) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH MT</td> <td>Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PUDDLE MT</td> <td>Paddle motor (PDM) is turned on.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. To stop motor driving, press the selected item again.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	FINISHER MOTOR	Checking the motor of the document finisher	FINISHER SOL	Checking the solenoid of the document finisher	MAIL BOX	Checking the motor and solenoid of the mailbox	BOOKLET	Checking the motor of the centerfold unit	Display	Motor	CAR MT M	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at middle speed.	CAR MT L	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at low speed.	CNV MT H	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at high speed.	CNV MT M	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at middle speed.	CNV MT L	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at low speed.	EJE MT H	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at high speed.	EJE MT M	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at middle speed.	EJE MT L	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at low speed.	SUB P MT H	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on counterwise.	SUB P MT M	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on clockwise.	B UP MT	Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) is turned on.	B D MT	Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) is turned on.	WID A3 TEST	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on.	WID LD TEST	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on.	STPL FR MT	Staple moving motor 1 (STMM1) is turned on.	STPL S MT	Staple moving motor 2 (STMM2) is turned on.	STPL M MT	Staple motor (STM) is turned on.	TRAY MT	Main tray motor (MTM) is turned on.	PUNCH MT	Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on.	PUDDLE MT	Paddle motor (PDM) is turned on.
Display	Description																																																				
FINISHER MOTOR	Checking the motor of the document finisher																																																				
FINISHER SOL	Checking the solenoid of the document finisher																																																				
MAIL BOX	Checking the motor and solenoid of the mailbox																																																				
BOOKLET	Checking the motor of the centerfold unit																																																				
Display	Motor																																																				
CAR MT M	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at middle speed.																																																				
CAR MT L	Paper entry motor (PEM) is turned on at low speed.																																																				
CNV MT H	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at high speed.																																																				
CNV MT M	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at middle speed.																																																				
CNV MT L	Paper conveying motor (PCM) is turned on at low speed.																																																				
EJE MT H	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at high speed.																																																				
EJE MT M	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at middle speed.																																																				
EJE MT L	Eject motor (EJM) is turned on at low speed.																																																				
SUB P MT H	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on counterwise.																																																				
SUB P MT M	Relief path motor (RPM) is turned on clockwise.																																																				
B UP MT	Paper conveying belt motor 1 (PCBM1) is turned on.																																																				
B D MT	Paper conveying belt motor 2 (PCBM2) is turned on.																																																				
WID A3 TEST	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on.																																																				
WID LD TEST	Side registration motor 1/2 (SRM1/2) are turned on.																																																				
STPL FR MT	Staple moving motor 1 (STMM1) is turned on.																																																				
STPL S MT	Staple moving motor 2 (STMM2) is turned on.																																																				
STPL M MT	Staple motor (STM) is turned on.																																																				
TRAY MT	Main tray motor (MTM) is turned on.																																																				
PUNCH MT	Punch motor (PUNM) is turned on.																																																				
PUDDLE MT	Paddle motor (PDM) is turned on.																																																				

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																												
U240	<p><b>Method: Checking the solenoid of the document finisher</b></p> <p>1. Select the item to be operated.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Solenoid</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>CARRY SOL</td><td>Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)</td></tr> <tr><td>REAR DOWN1</td><td>Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)</td></tr> <tr><td>REAR DOWN2</td><td>Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)</td></tr> <tr><td>SUBPATH SOL</td><td>Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)</td></tr> <tr><td>SUB T R SOL</td><td>Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)</td></tr> <tr><td>SUB T L SOL</td><td>Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)</td></tr> <tr><td>BOOKLET SOL</td><td>Centerfold feedshift solenoid (CFSSOL)</td></tr> <tr><td>PADDLE SOL</td><td>Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)</td></tr> <tr><td>HOLDOWN SOL</td><td>Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL)</td></tr> <tr><td>EJECT SOL</td><td>Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)</td></tr> <tr><td>PUNCH SOL</td><td>Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)</td></tr> <tr><td>MTRAY LOCK</td><td>Lock solenoid (LSOL)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>2. To stop solenoid driving, press the selected item again.</p> <p><b>Method: Checking the motor and solenoid of the mailbox</b></p> <p>1. Select the item to be operated.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Motors and solenoids</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>CAR MT</td><td>Mailbox drive motor (MBDM)</td></tr> <tr><td>BRANCH SOL2</td><td>Tray feedshift solenoid 1 (TFSSOL1)</td></tr> <tr><td>BRANCH SOL3</td><td>Tray feedshift solenoid 2 (TFSSOL2)</td></tr> <tr><td>BRANCH SOL4</td><td>Tray feedshift solenoid 3 (TFSSOL3)</td></tr> <tr><td>BRANCH SOL5</td><td>Tray feedshift solenoid 4 (TFSSOL4)</td></tr> <tr><td>BRANCH SOL6</td><td>Tray feedshift solenoid 5 (TFSSOL5)</td></tr> <tr><td>BRANCH SOL7</td><td>Tray feedshift solenoid 6 (TFSSOL6)</td></tr> <tr><td>CARRY SOL</td><td>Mail paper entry solenoid (MPESOL)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>2. To stop motor or solenoid driving, press the selected item again.</p> <p><b>Method: Checking the motor of the centerfold unit</b></p> <p>1. Select the item to be operated.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Motor</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>CONV MOTOR</td><td>Centerfold main motor (CMM)</td></tr> <tr><td>BLADE MOTOR</td><td>Blade motor (BLM)</td></tr> <tr><td>BNDL U MTR</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1)</td></tr> <tr><td>BNDL D MTR</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2)</td></tr> <tr><td>WID A3 TEST</td><td>Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)</td></tr> <tr><td>WID LD TEST</td><td>Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)</td></tr> <tr><td>STPL MOTOR</td><td>Centerfold staple motor (CSTM)</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>2. To stop motor driving, press the selected item again.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key with the operation stopped. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Solenoid	CARRY SOL	Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)	REAR DOWN1	Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)	REAR DOWN2	Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)	SUBPATH SOL	Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)	SUB T R SOL	Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)	SUB T L SOL	Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)	BOOKLET SOL	Centerfold feedshift solenoid (CFSSOL)	PADDLE SOL	Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)	HOLDOWN SOL	Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL)	EJECT SOL	Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)	PUNCH SOL	Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)	MTRAY LOCK	Lock solenoid (LSOL)	Display	Motors and solenoids	CAR MT	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM)	BRANCH SOL2	Tray feedshift solenoid 1 (TFSSOL1)	BRANCH SOL3	Tray feedshift solenoid 2 (TFSSOL2)	BRANCH SOL4	Tray feedshift solenoid 3 (TFSSOL3)	BRANCH SOL5	Tray feedshift solenoid 4 (TFSSOL4)	BRANCH SOL6	Tray feedshift solenoid 5 (TFSSOL5)	BRANCH SOL7	Tray feedshift solenoid 6 (TFSSOL6)	CARRY SOL	Mail paper entry solenoid (MPESOL)	Display	Motor	CONV MOTOR	Centerfold main motor (CMM)	BLADE MOTOR	Blade motor (BLM)	BNDL U MTR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1)	BNDL D MTR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2)	WID A3 TEST	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)	WID LD TEST	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)	STPL MOTOR	Centerfold staple motor (CSTM)
Display	Solenoid																																																												
CARRY SOL	Paper entry solenoid (PESOL)																																																												
REAR DOWN1	Trailing edge holder solenoid 1 (TEHSOL1)																																																												
REAR DOWN2	Trailing edge holder solenoid 2 (TEHSOL2)																																																												
SUBPATH SOL	Relief path solenoid (RPSOL)																																																												
SUB T R SOL	Feedshift solenoid 1 (FSSOL1)																																																												
SUB T L SOL	Feedshift solenoid 2 (FSSOL2)																																																												
BOOKLET SOL	Centerfold feedshift solenoid (CFSSOL)																																																												
PADDLE SOL	Paddle solenoid (PDSOL)																																																												
HOLDOWN SOL	Paper holder solenoid (PHSOL)																																																												
EJECT SOL	Pressure switching solenoid (PSWSOL)																																																												
PUNCH SOL	Punch pattern solenoid (PPSOL)																																																												
MTRAY LOCK	Lock solenoid (LSOL)																																																												
Display	Motors and solenoids																																																												
CAR MT	Mailbox drive motor (MBDM)																																																												
BRANCH SOL2	Tray feedshift solenoid 1 (TFSSOL1)																																																												
BRANCH SOL3	Tray feedshift solenoid 2 (TFSSOL2)																																																												
BRANCH SOL4	Tray feedshift solenoid 3 (TFSSOL3)																																																												
BRANCH SOL5	Tray feedshift solenoid 4 (TFSSOL4)																																																												
BRANCH SOL6	Tray feedshift solenoid 5 (TFSSOL5)																																																												
BRANCH SOL7	Tray feedshift solenoid 6 (TFSSOL6)																																																												
CARRY SOL	Mail paper entry solenoid (MPESOL)																																																												
Display	Motor																																																												
CONV MOTOR	Centerfold main motor (CMM)																																																												
BLADE MOTOR	Blade motor (BLM)																																																												
BNDL U MTR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1 (CPCBM1)																																																												
BNDL D MTR	Centerfold paper conveying belt motor 2 (CPCBM2)																																																												
WID A3 TEST	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)																																																												
WID LD TEST	Centerfold side registration motor 1/2 (CSRM1/2)																																																												
STPL MOTOR	Centerfold staple motor (CSTM)																																																												

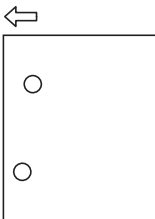
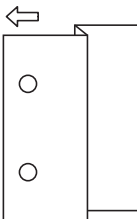
Maintenance item No.	Description																																																																
U241	<p><b>Checking the operation of the switches of the finisher</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the status of each switch of optional 3000-sheet document finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of each switch of the document finisher.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be checked.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FINISHER</td> <td>Checking the switch of the document finisher</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MAIL BOX</td> <td>Checking the switch of the mailbox</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET</td> <td>Checking the switch of the centerfold unit</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: Checking the switch of the document finisher</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn each switch on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch is detected, that switch is displayed in reverse.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Switches</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>FRONT COVER</td><td>Front cover switch (FCSW)</td></tr> <tr><td>TOP COVER</td><td>Top cover switch (TCSW)</td></tr> <tr><td>RIGHT COVER</td><td>Sub tray right switch (STRSW)</td></tr> <tr><td>SET</td><td>Joint switch (JSW)</td></tr> <tr><td>BOOKLET</td><td>Centerfold set switch (CSSW)</td></tr> <tr><td>PUNCH TANK</td><td>Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)</td></tr> <tr><td>TRAY L-LMT</td><td>Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)</td></tr> <tr><td>TRAY U-LMT</td><td>Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)</td></tr> <tr><td>TRAY MIDDLE</td><td>Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS)</td></tr> <tr><td>PAP H DOWN</td><td>Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS)</td></tr> <tr><td>LOAD DET</td><td>Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1,2 (MTPUSDS1,2)</td></tr> <tr><td>CARRY</td><td>Paper entry sensor (PES)</td></tr> <tr><td>EJECT1</td><td>Eject switch 1 (ESW1)</td></tr> <tr><td>EJECT2</td><td>Eject switch 2 (ESW2)</td></tr> <tr><td>EJECT3</td><td>Eject switch 3 (ESW3)</td></tr> <tr><td>STAPLE HP1</td><td>Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)</td></tr> <tr><td>STAPLE HP2</td><td>Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)</td></tr> <tr><td>MID CARRY1</td><td>Internal tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1)</td></tr> <tr><td>MID CARRY2</td><td>Internal tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2)</td></tr> <tr><td>BUNDLE DET1</td><td>Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1)</td></tr> <tr><td>BUNDLE DET2</td><td>Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2)</td></tr> <tr><td>BNDL UP HP</td><td>Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1)</td></tr> <tr><td>BNDL DW HP</td><td>Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2)</td></tr> <tr><td>WIDTH HP1</td><td>Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1)</td></tr> <tr><td>WIDTH HP2</td><td>Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2)</td></tr> <tr><td>BNDL INTERF</td><td>Paper conveying belt position detection sensor (PCBDS)</td></tr> <tr><td>VCARRY</td><td>Centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS)</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	FINISHER	Checking the switch of the document finisher	MAIL BOX	Checking the switch of the mailbox	BOOKLET	Checking the switch of the centerfold unit	Display	Switches	FRONT COVER	Front cover switch (FCSW)	TOP COVER	Top cover switch (TCSW)	RIGHT COVER	Sub tray right switch (STRSW)	SET	Joint switch (JSW)	BOOKLET	Centerfold set switch (CSSW)	PUNCH TANK	Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)	TRAY L-LMT	Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)	TRAY U-LMT	Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)	TRAY MIDDLE	Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS)	PAP H DOWN	Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS)	LOAD DET	Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1,2 (MTPUSDS1,2)	CARRY	Paper entry sensor (PES)	EJECT1	Eject switch 1 (ESW1)	EJECT2	Eject switch 2 (ESW2)	EJECT3	Eject switch 3 (ESW3)	STAPLE HP1	Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)	STAPLE HP2	Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)	MID CARRY1	Internal tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1)	MID CARRY2	Internal tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2)	BUNDLE DET1	Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1)	BUNDLE DET2	Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2)	BNDL UP HP	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1)	BNDL DW HP	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2)	WIDTH HP1	Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1)	WIDTH HP2	Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2)	BNDL INTERF	Paper conveying belt position detection sensor (PCBDS)	VCARRY	Centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS)
Display	Description																																																																
FINISHER	Checking the switch of the document finisher																																																																
MAIL BOX	Checking the switch of the mailbox																																																																
BOOKLET	Checking the switch of the centerfold unit																																																																
Display	Switches																																																																
FRONT COVER	Front cover switch (FCSW)																																																																
TOP COVER	Top cover switch (TCSW)																																																																
RIGHT COVER	Sub tray right switch (STRSW)																																																																
SET	Joint switch (JSW)																																																																
BOOKLET	Centerfold set switch (CSSW)																																																																
PUNCH TANK	Punch waste box sensor (PWBS)																																																																
TRAY L-LMT	Main tray lower limit detection sensor (MTLLDS)																																																																
TRAY U-LMT	Main tray upper limit detection sensor (MTULDS)																																																																
TRAY MIDDLE	Main tray middle position detection sensor (MTMPDS)																																																																
PAP H DOWN	Paper holder home position sensor (PHHPS)																																																																
LOAD DET	Main tray paper upper surface detection sensor 1,2 (MTPUSDS1,2)																																																																
CARRY	Paper entry sensor (PES)																																																																
EJECT1	Eject switch 1 (ESW1)																																																																
EJECT2	Eject switch 2 (ESW2)																																																																
EJECT3	Eject switch 3 (ESW3)																																																																
STAPLE HP1	Staple home position switch 1 (STHPSW1)																																																																
STAPLE HP2	Staple home position switch 2 (STHPSW2)																																																																
MID CARRY1	Internal tray paper entry sensor 1 (ITPES1)																																																																
MID CARRY2	Internal tray paper entry sensor 2 (ITPES2)																																																																
BUNDLE DET1	Paper detection sensor 1 (PDS1)																																																																
BUNDLE DET2	Paper detection sensor 2 (PDS2)																																																																
BNDL UP HP	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 (PCBHPS1)																																																																
BNDL DW HP	Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 (PCBHPS2)																																																																
WIDTH HP1	Side registration home position sensor 1 (SRHPS1)																																																																
WIDTH HP2	Side registration home position sensor 2 (SRHPS2)																																																																
BNDL INTERF	Paper conveying belt position detection sensor (PCBDS)																																																																
VCARRY	Centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS)																																																																

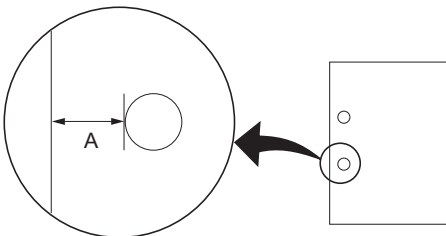
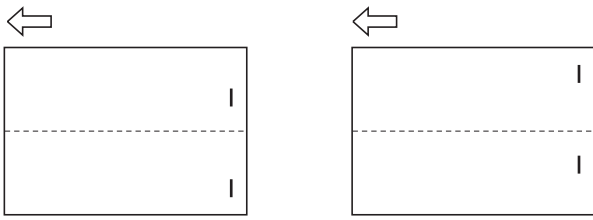
Maintenance item No.	Description																																												
<p><b>U241</b></p>	<p><b>Method: Checking the switch of the mailbox</b></p> <p>1. Turn each switch on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch is detected, that switch is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Switches</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CARRY</td> <td>Mail paper entry switch (MPESW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EJECT</td> <td>Tray eject sensor (TEJS)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>COVER</td> <td>Mailbox cover open/close switch (MBCOSW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW1</td> <td>Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW2</td> <td>Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW3</td> <td>Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW4</td> <td>Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW5</td> <td>Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW6</td> <td>Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OVER FLOW7</td> <td>Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: Checking the switch of the centerfold unit</b></p> <p>1. Turn each switch on and off manually to check the status. When the on-status of a switch is detected, that switch is displayed in reverse.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Switches</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BNDL UP HP</td> <td>Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BNDL DW HP</td> <td>Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BLADE HP</td> <td>Blade home position sensor (BLHPS)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH HP U</td> <td>Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH HP L</td> <td>Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CARRY</td> <td>Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PAPER DET</td> <td>Centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TRAY PAPDET</td> <td>Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EJECT</td> <td>Centerfold eject switch (CESW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TRAY DET</td> <td>Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Switches	CARRY	Mail paper entry switch (MPESW)	EJECT	Tray eject sensor (TEJS)	COVER	Mailbox cover open/close switch (MBCOSW)	OVER FLOW1	Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1)	OVER FLOW2	Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2)	OVER FLOW3	Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3)	OVER FLOW4	Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4)	OVER FLOW5	Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5)	OVER FLOW6	Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6)	OVER FLOW7	Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7)	Display	Switches	BNDL UP HP	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1)	BNDL DW HP	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2)	BLADE HP	Blade home position sensor (BLHPS)	WIDTH HP U	Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2)	WIDTH HP L	Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1)	CARRY	Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES)	PAPER DET	Centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS)	TRAY PAPDET	Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS)	EJECT	Centerfold eject switch (CESW)	TRAY DET	Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW)
Display	Switches																																												
CARRY	Mail paper entry switch (MPESW)																																												
EJECT	Tray eject sensor (TEJS)																																												
COVER	Mailbox cover open/close switch (MBCOSW)																																												
OVER FLOW1	Tray overflow switch 1 (TOFSW1)																																												
OVER FLOW2	Tray overflow switch 2 (TOFSW2)																																												
OVER FLOW3	Tray overflow switch 3 (TOFSW3)																																												
OVER FLOW4	Tray overflow switch 4 (TOFSW4)																																												
OVER FLOW5	Tray overflow switch 5 (TOFSW5)																																												
OVER FLOW6	Tray overflow switch 6 (TOFSW6)																																												
OVER FLOW7	Tray overflow switch 7 (TOFSW7)																																												
Display	Switches																																												
BNDL UP HP	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 1 (CPCBS1)																																												
BNDL DW HP	Centerfold paper conveying belt sensor 2 (CPCBS2)																																												
BLADE HP	Blade home position sensor (BLHPS)																																												
WIDTH HP U	Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2)																																												
WIDTH HP L	Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1)																																												
CARRY	Centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES)																																												
PAPER DET	Centerfold paper detection sensor (CPDS)																																												
TRAY PAPDET	Tray paper detection sensor (TPDS)																																												
EJECT	Centerfold eject switch (CESW)																																												
TRAY DET	Centerfold top cover switch (CTCSW)																																												

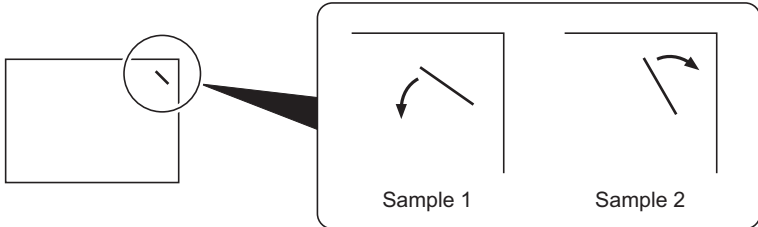


Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U243	<p><b>Checking the operation of the DP motors</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns the motors, solenoids or clutch in the document processor on.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of the document processor motors, solenoids and clutch.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be operated. The operation starts.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Motors, solenoids and clutch</th> <th>Operation</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>F MOT</td> <td>Original feed motor (OFM)</td> <td>In operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C MOT</td> <td>Original paper conveying motor (OCM)</td> <td>In operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FD CL</td> <td>Original feed clutch (OFCL)</td> <td>On for 0.5 s</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EJ SL</td> <td>Eject feedshift solenoid (EFSSOL)</td> <td>On for 0.5 s</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RJ SL</td> <td>Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL)</td> <td>On for 0.5 s</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FD SL</td> <td>Original feed solenoid (OFSOL)</td> <td>On and off</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RP SL</td> <td>Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL)</td> <td>On and off</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. To turn each motor off, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key when operation stops. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Motors, solenoids and clutch	Operation	F MOT	Original feed motor (OFM)	In operation	C MOT	Original paper conveying motor (OCM)	In operation	FD CL	Original feed clutch (OFCL)	On for 0.5 s	EJ SL	Eject feedshift solenoid (EFSSOL)	On for 0.5 s	RJ SL	Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL)	On for 0.5 s	FD SL	Original feed solenoid (OFSOL)	On and off	RP SL	Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL)	On and off
Display	Motors, solenoids and clutch	Operation																							
F MOT	Original feed motor (OFM)	In operation																							
C MOT	Original paper conveying motor (OCM)	In operation																							
FD CL	Original feed clutch (OFCL)	On for 0.5 s																							
EJ SL	Eject feedshift solenoid (EFSSOL)	On for 0.5 s																							
RJ SL	Switchback feedshift solenoid (SBFSSOL)	On for 0.5 s																							
FD SL	Original feed solenoid (OFSOL)	On and off																							
RP SL	Switchback pressure solenoid (SBPSOL)	On and off																							
U244	<p><b>Checking the DP switches</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the status of the respective switches in the document processor.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check if respective switches in the document processor operate correctly.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the type of switches (SW or VR) to be checked. The screen for executing each item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SW</td> <td>On/off switches</td> </tr> <tr> <td>VR</td> <td>Volume switch</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method for the on/off switches (SW)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Turn the respective switches on and off manually to check the status. If the on-status of a switch is detected, the corresponding switch is displayed in reverse.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SET SW</td> <td>Original set switch (OSSW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FEED SW</td> <td>Original feed switch (OFSW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>REV SW</td> <td>Original switchback switch (OSBSW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TMG SW</td> <td>DP timing switch (DPTSW)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SZ A SW</td> <td>Original size length switch (OSLSW)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Method for the volume switch (VR)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Move the original insertion guides to check the detection status of the original size width switch. The detected original document width is displayed to one place of decimals.</li> <li>2. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	SW	On/off switches	VR	Volume switch	Display	Description	SET SW	Original set switch (OSSW)	FEED SW	Original feed switch (OFSW)	REV SW	Original switchback switch (OSBSW)	TMG SW	DP timing switch (DPTSW)	SZ A SW	Original size length switch (OSLSW)						
Display	Description																								
SW	On/off switches																								
VR	Volume switch																								
Display	Description																								
SET SW	Original set switch (OSSW)																								
FEED SW	Original feed switch (OFSW)																								
REV SW	Original switchback switch (OSBSW)																								
TMG SW	DP timing switch (DPTSW)																								
SZ A SW	Original size length switch (OSLSW)																								

Maintenance item No.	Description
U245	<p><b>Checking messages</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays a list of messages on the touch panel of the operation panel.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the messages to be displayed.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"><li>1. Press the start key.</li><li>2. Select the item to be displayed.</li><li>3. Change the screen using the cursor up/down keys to display each message one at a time. When a message number is entered with the numeric keys and then the start key is pressed, the message corresponding the specified number is displayed.</li></ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																												
U246	<p><b>Setting the paper ejection device</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Provides various settings for the optional finisher, if furnished.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b></p> <p><b>Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode</b> Adjust if skewed paper conveying occurs or if the copy paper is Z-folded in punch mode.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of paper stop timing in the punch mode</b> To adjust this item when the position of a punch hole is different from the specified one.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of front/rear side registration home position of internal tray</b> Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the internal tray adjuster guides to paper.</p> <p><b>Adjusting of front and back/slanted stapling home position</b> Adjusts the stapling position in the staple mode if the position is not proper. Provides adjustment of slanted stapling.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of upper/lower side registration home position of centerfold unit</b> Provides optimization when paper jam occurs due to an inferior fitting of the centerfold adjuster guides to paper.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of booklet stapling position</b> Adjusts the booklet stapling position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper.</p> <p><b>Adjustment of center folding position</b> Adjusts the center folding position in the stitching mode if the position is not proper.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to set. The screen for setting each item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>3000 FINISHER</td> <td>Adjustment of 3000-sheets finisher</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET FOLDER</td> <td>Adjustment of centerfold unit</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: 3000-sheets finisher</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to set.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PUNCH REG ADJ</td> <td>Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH POS ADJ</td> <td>Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH F HP ADJ</td> <td>Adjustment of front side registration home position</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH R HP ADJ</td> <td>Adjustment of rear side registration home position</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE HP ADJ</td> <td>Adjustment of front and back stapling home position</td> </tr> <tr> <td>T-STAPLE HP ADJ</td> <td>Adjustment of slanted stapling home position</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: adjustment of registration stop timing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [PUNCH REG ADJ].</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Adjustment of registration stop timing</td> <td>-20 to 20</td> <td>0</td> <td>1 ms</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If skewed paper conveying occurs (sample 1), increase the preset value. If the copy paper is Z-folded (sample 2), decrease the preset value.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Sample 1</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>Sample 2</p> </div> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-13</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	3000 FINISHER	Adjustment of 3000-sheets finisher	BOOKLET FOLDER	Adjustment of centerfold unit	Display	Description	PUNCH REG ADJ	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode	PUNCH POS ADJ	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode	WIDTH F HP ADJ	Adjustment of front side registration home position	WIDTH R HP ADJ	Adjustment of rear side registration home position	STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	T-STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of registration stop timing	-20 to 20	0	1 ms
Display	Description																												
3000 FINISHER	Adjustment of 3000-sheets finisher																												
BOOKLET FOLDER	Adjustment of centerfold unit																												
Display	Description																												
PUNCH REG ADJ	Adjustment of registration stop timing in punch mode																												
PUNCH POS ADJ	Adjustment of the paper stop timing in punch mode																												
WIDTH F HP ADJ	Adjustment of front side registration home position																												
WIDTH R HP ADJ	Adjustment of rear side registration home position																												
STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position																												
T-STAPLE HP ADJ	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position																												
Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of registration stop timing	-20 to 20	0	1 ms																										

Maintenance item No.	Description																												
<p><b>U246</b></p>	<p><b>Setting: adjustment of the paper stop timing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [PUNCH POS ADJ].</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Adjustment of the paper stop timing</td> <td>-10 to 10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.24 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If the distance of the position of a punch hole is smaller than the specified value A, increase the preset value. If the distance is larger than the value A, decrease the preset value.</p>  <p style="text-align: right;">Preset value A: 5.5 ± 2 mm (inch) 9.5 ± 2 mm (metric)</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-14</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: adjustment of front/rear side registration home position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [WIDTH F HP ADJ] or [WIDTH R HP ADJ].</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Adjustment of front side registration home position</td> <td>-10 to 10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.24 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Adjustment of rear side registration home position</td> <td>-10 to 10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.24 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> <li>5. Enter maintenance mode U240 and select FINISHER MOTOR, then WID A3 TEST. The width guides of the internal tray will move to A3-size position.</li> <li>6. Pull the internal tray, insert paper between the guides and check that paper is abut the guides.</li> <li>7. Repeat the above adjustment until paper is properly in position.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: adjustment of front and back stapling home position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [STAPLE HP ADJ].</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Adjustment of front and back stapling home position</td> <td>-10 to 10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.24 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When staple positions are off toward the front side of the machine (sample 1), increase the preset value. When staple positions are off toward the rear side of the machine (sample 2), decrease the preset value.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-15</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol>	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of the paper stop timing	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of front side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm	Adjustment of rear side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm
Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of the paper stop timing	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm																										
Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of front side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm																										
Adjustment of rear side registration home position	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm																										
Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step																										
Adjustment of front and back stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm																										

Maintenance item No.	Description																																						
U246	<p><b>Setting: adjustment of slanted stapling home position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [T-STAPLE HP ADJ].</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Adjustment of slanted stapling home position</td> <td>-10 to 10</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.8°</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>To increase the angle for slanted stapling (sample 1), decrease the preset value. To decrease the angle for slanted stapling (sample 2), increase the preset value.</p>  <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-16</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Method: centerfold unit</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to set.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>WIDTH U HP ADJ</td> <td>Adjustment of upper side registration home position</td> </tr> <tr> <td>WIDTH L HP ADJ</td> <td>Adjustment of lower side registration home position</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE POS ADJ1</td> <td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/8.5 x 11 size</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE POS ADJ2</td> <td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/8.5 x 14 size</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE POS ADJ3</td> <td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/11 x 17 size</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET POS ADJ1</td> <td>Adjustment of center folding position for A4/8.5 x 11 size</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET POS ADJ2</td> <td>Adjustment of center folding position for B4/8.5 x 14 size</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BOOKLET POS ADJ3</td> <td>Adjustment of center folding position for A3/11 x 17 size</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: adjustment of upper/lower side registration home position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [WIDTH U HP ADJ] or [WIDTH L HP ADJ].</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Adjustment of upper side registration home position</td> <td>-20 to 20</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.24 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Adjustment of lower side registration home position</td> <td>-46 to 46</td> <td>0</td> <td>0.24 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> <li>5. Enter maintenance mode U240 and select [BOOKLET], then [WID A3 TEST]. The width guides of the centerfold unit will move to A3-size position.</li> <li>6. Pull the centerfold unit, insert paper between the guides and check that paper is about the guides.</li> <li>7. Repeat the above adjustment until paper is properly in position.</li> </ol>	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of slanted stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.8°	Display	Description	WIDTH U HP ADJ	Adjustment of upper side registration home position	WIDTH L HP ADJ	Adjustment of lower side registration home position	STAPLE POS ADJ1	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/8.5 x 11 size	STAPLE POS ADJ2	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/8.5 x 14 size	STAPLE POS ADJ3	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/11 x 17 size	BOOKLET POS ADJ1	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/8.5 x 11 size	BOOKLET POS ADJ2	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/8.5 x 14 size	BOOKLET POS ADJ3	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/11 x 17 size	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of upper side registration home position	-20 to 20	0	0.24 mm	Adjustment of lower side registration home position	-46 to 46	0	0.24 mm
Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step																																				
Adjustment of slanted stapling home position	-10 to 10	0	0.8°																																				
Display	Description																																						
WIDTH U HP ADJ	Adjustment of upper side registration home position																																						
WIDTH L HP ADJ	Adjustment of lower side registration home position																																						
STAPLE POS ADJ1	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/8.5 x 11 size																																						
STAPLE POS ADJ2	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/8.5 x 14 size																																						
STAPLE POS ADJ3	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/11 x 17 size																																						
BOOKLET POS ADJ1	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/8.5 x 11 size																																						
BOOKLET POS ADJ2	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/8.5 x 14 size																																						
BOOKLET POS ADJ3	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/11 x 17 size																																						
Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step																																				
Adjustment of upper side registration home position	-20 to 20	0	0.24 mm																																				
Adjustment of lower side registration home position	-46 to 46	0	0.24 mm																																				

Maintenance item No.	Description																																
U246	<p><b>Setting: adjustment of booklet stapling position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [STAPLE POS ADJ1], [STAPLE POS ADJ2] or [STAPLE POS ADJ3].</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Default setting</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/8.5 x 11</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-10 to 10</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0.24 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/8.5 x 14</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-10 to 10</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0.24 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/11 x 17</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-10 to 10</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0.24 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When staples are placed too far right (sample 1), decrease the preset value. When staples are placed too far left (sample 2), increase the preset value. Reference value: within <math>\pm 2</math> mm</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-17</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: adjustment of center folding position</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [STAPLE POS ADJ1], [STAPLE POS ADJ2] or [STAPLE POS ADJ3].</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Default setting</th> <th style="text-align: center;">Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Adjustment of center folding position for A4/8.5 x 11 size</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-10 to 10</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0.24 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Adjustment of center folding position for B4/8.5 x 14 size</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-10 to 10</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0.24 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Adjustment of center folding position for A3/11 x 17 size</td> <td style="text-align: center;">-10 to 10</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0</td> <td style="text-align: center;">0.24 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When the centerfold position too far right (sample 1), increase the preset value. When the centerfold position too far left (sample 2), decrease the setting value. Reference value: within <math>\pm 3</math> mm</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-18</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> <li>4. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/8.5 x 11	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/8.5 x 14	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm	Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/11 x 17	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step	Adjustment of center folding position for A4/8.5 x 11 size	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm	Adjustment of center folding position for B4/8.5 x 14 size	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm	Adjustment of center folding position for A3/11 x 17 size	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm
Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step																														
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A4/8.5 x 11	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm																														
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for B4/8.5 x 14	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm																														
Adjustment of booklet stapling position for A3/11 x 17	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm																														
Description	Setting range	Default setting	Change in value per step																														
Adjustment of center folding position for A4/8.5 x 11 size	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm																														
Adjustment of center folding position for B4/8.5 x 14 size	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm																														
Adjustment of center folding position for A3/11 x 17 size	-10 to 10	0	0.24 mm																														

Maintenance item No.	Description																				
<b>U247</b>	<p><b>Setting the paper feed device</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns on motor and clutches of optional 3000-sheet paper feeder or paper feeder.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the operation of motor and clutches of paper feed device.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The value varies depending to the option furnished. 3000-sheet paper feeder.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Motor and clutches</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>LCF FEED</td> <td>Paper feeder conveying motor (PFCM)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CLUTCH B</td> <td>Paper feeder conveying clutch (PFCCL)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CLUTCH P1</td> <td>Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CLUTCH P2</td> <td>Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Paper feeder</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Motor and clutches</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>DESK FEED</td> <td>Paper feeder drive motor (PFDM)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CLUTCH FEED</td> <td>Paper feeder feed clutch (PFFCL)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CLUTCH U</td> <td>Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CLUTCH L</td> <td>Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Select the item to be operated. When selecting the motor, the operation starts. To stop the operation, select the item again. When selecting the clutch, each clutch is turned on for 1 s.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Motor and clutches	LCF FEED	Paper feeder conveying motor (PFCM)	CLUTCH B	Paper feeder conveying clutch (PFCCL)	CLUTCH P1	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)	CLUTCH P2	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)	Display	Motor and clutches	DESK FEED	Paper feeder drive motor (PFDM)	CLUTCH FEED	Paper feeder feed clutch (PFFCL)	CLUTCH U	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)	CLUTCH L	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)
Display	Motor and clutches																				
LCF FEED	Paper feeder conveying motor (PFCM)																				
CLUTCH B	Paper feeder conveying clutch (PFCCL)																				
CLUTCH P1	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)																				
CLUTCH P2	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)																				
Display	Motor and clutches																				
DESK FEED	Paper feeder drive motor (PFDM)																				
CLUTCH FEED	Paper feeder feed clutch (PFFCL)																				
CLUTCH U	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1)																				
CLUTCH L	Paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2)																				
<b>U250</b>	<p><b>Change the maintenance count pre-set</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Changes preset values for maintenance cycle and automatic grayscale adjustment.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Provides changing the time when the message to acknowledge to conduct maintenance and automatic grayscale adjustment is periodically displayed.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key. The current pre-set value is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Maintenance Count A</td> <td>Preset values for maintenance cycle (Color and monochrome development)</td> <td>0 to 9999999</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Maintenance Count B</td> <td>Preset values for maintenance cycle (Color development only)</td> <td>0 to 9999999</td> </tr> <tr> <td>COUNT (GRAY ADJUST)</td> <td>Preset values for automatic grayscale adjustment</td> <td>0 to 100000</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Clearing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be cleared.</li> <li>2. Press the reset key.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting value is cleared, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be changed.</li> <li>2. Enter the setting value using the numeric keys.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting value is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Maintenance Count A	Preset values for maintenance cycle (Color and monochrome development)	0 to 9999999	Maintenance Count B	Preset values for maintenance cycle (Color development only)	0 to 9999999	COUNT (GRAY ADJUST)	Preset values for automatic grayscale adjustment	0 to 100000								
Display	Description	Setting range																			
Maintenance Count A	Preset values for maintenance cycle (Color and monochrome development)	0 to 9999999																			
Maintenance Count B	Preset values for maintenance cycle (Color development only)	0 to 9999999																			
COUNT (GRAY ADJUST)	Preset values for automatic grayscale adjustment	0 to 100000																			

Maintenance item No.	Description																																								
U251	<p><b>Checking/clearing the maintenance count</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays and clears or changes the maintenance count and automatic grayscale adjustment count.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To verify the maintenance counter count and automatic grayscale count. Also to clear the count during maintenance service.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The maintenance count is displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Maintenance Count A</td> <td>Maintenance count (Color and monochrome development)</td> <td>0 to 9999999</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Maintenance Count B</td> <td>Maintenance count (Color development only)</td> <td>0 to 9999999</td> </tr> <tr> <td>COUNT (GRAY ADJUST)</td> <td>Automatic grayscale adjustment count</td> <td>0 to 100000</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Clearing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the item to be cleared.</li> <li>Press the reset key.</li> <li>Press the start key. The count is cleared, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the item to be changed.</li> <li>Enter the count using the numeric keys.</li> <li>Press the start key. The count is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Maintenance Count A	Maintenance count (Color and monochrome development)	0 to 9999999	Maintenance Count B	Maintenance count (Color development only)	0 to 9999999	COUNT (GRAY ADJUST)	Automatic grayscale adjustment count	0 to 100000																												
Display	Description	Setting range																																							
Maintenance Count A	Maintenance count (Color and monochrome development)	0 to 9999999																																							
Maintenance Count B	Maintenance count (Color development only)	0 to 9999999																																							
COUNT (GRAY ADJUST)	Automatic grayscale adjustment count	0 to 100000																																							
U252	<p><b>Setting the destination</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Switches the operations and screens of the machine according to the destination.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be executed after initializing the backup RAM by running maintenance item U020, in order to return the setting to the value before replacement or initialization.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key.</li> <li>Select the destination.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>JAPAN METRIC</td> <td>Metric (Japan) specifications</td> </tr> <tr> <td>INCH</td> <td>Inch (North America) specifications</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EUROPE METRIC</td> <td>Metric (Europe) specifications</td> </tr> <tr> <td>ASIA PACIFIC</td> <td>Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key.</li> <li>Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> The specified initial settings are provided according to the destinations in the maintenance items below. To change the initial settings in those items, be sure to run maintenance item U021 after changing the destination.</p> <p><b>Initial setting according to the destinations</b></p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Maintenance No.</th> <th>Title</th> <th>Japan spec.</th> <th>Inch spec.</th> <th>Europe/Asia Pacific spec.</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>208</td> <td>Setting the paper size for the paper feeder</td> <td>A4</td> <td>11 x 8.5</td> <td>A4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>253</td> <td>Switching between double and single counts</td> <td>Single count</td> <td>Double count (A3/LEDGER)</td> <td>Double count (A3/LEDGER)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>264</td> <td>Setting the display order of the date</td> <td>Year/Month/Day</td> <td>Month/Day/Year</td> <td>Day/Month/Year</td> </tr> <tr> <td>276</td> <td>Setting the copy count mode</td> <td>MODE 1</td> <td>MODE 0</td> <td>MODE 0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>344</td> <td>Setting the low-power mode</td> <td>ENERGY STAR</td> <td>ENERGY STAR</td> <td>GEEA</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications	INCH	Inch (North America) specifications	EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications	ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications	Maintenance No.	Title	Japan spec.	Inch spec.	Europe/Asia Pacific spec.	208	Setting the paper size for the paper feeder	A4	11 x 8.5	A4	253	Switching between double and single counts	Single count	Double count (A3/LEDGER)	Double count (A3/LEDGER)	264	Setting the display order of the date	Year/Month/Day	Month/Day/Year	Day/Month/Year	276	Setting the copy count mode	MODE 1	MODE 0	MODE 0	344	Setting the low-power mode	ENERGY STAR	ENERGY STAR	GEEA
Display	Description																																								
JAPAN METRIC	Metric (Japan) specifications																																								
INCH	Inch (North America) specifications																																								
EUROPE METRIC	Metric (Europe) specifications																																								
ASIA PACIFIC	Metric (Asia Pacific) specifications																																								
Maintenance No.	Title	Japan spec.	Inch spec.	Europe/Asia Pacific spec.																																					
208	Setting the paper size for the paper feeder	A4	11 x 8.5	A4																																					
253	Switching between double and single counts	Single count	Double count (A3/LEDGER)	Double count (A3/LEDGER)																																					
264	Setting the display order of the date	Year/Month/Day	Month/Day/Year	Day/Month/Year																																					
276	Setting the copy count mode	MODE 1	MODE 0	MODE 0																																					
344	Setting the low-power mode	ENERGY STAR	ENERGY STAR	GEEA																																					



Maintenance item No.	Description																								
U253	<p><b>Switching between double and single counts</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Switches the count system for the total counter and other counters for every color mode.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Used to select, according to the preference of the user (copy service provider), if A3/11" x 17" paper is to be counted as one sheet (single count) or two sheets (double count).</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. Indication differs depending upon the setting of U276 (Setting the copy count mode). MODE0.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Full-color</td> <td>Count system of full color mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B/W</td> <td>Count system of monochrome mode</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>MODE1.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Full-color</td> <td>Count system of full color mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Mono Color</td> <td>Count system of mono-color mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B/W</td> <td>Count system of monochrome mode</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select the mode. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</li> <li>Select double or single count.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SINGLE COUNT</td> <td>Single count for all size paper</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)</td> <td>Double count for A3/LEDGER size or larger</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DOUBLE COUNT(B4)</td> <td>Double count for B4 size or larger</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DOUBLE COUNT(FOLIO/LEGAL)</td> <td>Double count for FOLIO/LEGAL size or larger</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Full-color	Count system of full color mode	B/W	Count system of monochrome mode	Display	Description	Full-color	Count system of full color mode	Mono Color	Count system of mono-color mode	B/W	Count system of monochrome mode	Display	Description	SINGLE COUNT	Single count for all size paper	DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)	Double count for A3/LEDGER size or larger	DOUBLE COUNT(B4)	Double count for B4 size or larger	DOUBLE COUNT(FOLIO/LEGAL)	Double count for FOLIO/LEGAL size or larger
Display	Description																								
Full-color	Count system of full color mode																								
B/W	Count system of monochrome mode																								
Display	Description																								
Full-color	Count system of full color mode																								
Mono Color	Count system of mono-color mode																								
B/W	Count system of monochrome mode																								
Display	Description																								
SINGLE COUNT	Single count for all size paper																								
DOUBLE COUNT(A3/LEDGER)	Double count for A3/LEDGER size or larger																								
DOUBLE COUNT(B4)	Double count for B4 size or larger																								
DOUBLE COUNT(FOLIO/LEGAL)	Double count for FOLIO/LEGAL size or larger																								
U254	<p><b>Turning auto start function ON/OFF</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Selects if the auto start function is turned on.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Normally no change is necessary. According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key.</li> <li>Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Auto start function on</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Auto start function off</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Auto start function on	OFF	Auto start function off																		
Display	Description																								
ON	Auto start function on																								
OFF	Auto start function off																								

Maintenance item No.	Description								
<p><b>U260</b></p>	<p><b>Selecting the timing for copy counting</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Changes the copy count timing for the total counter and other counters.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be set according to user (copy service provider) request. If a paper jam occurs frequently in the optional finisher when the number of copies is counted at the time of paper ejection, copies are provided without copy counts. The copy service provider cannot charge for such copying. To prevent this, the copy timing should be made earlier. If a paper jam occurs frequently in the paper conveying or fuser sections when the number of copies is counted before the paper reaches those sections, copying is charged without a copy being made. To prevent this, the copy timing should be made later.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the copy count timing.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FEED</td> <td>When secondary paper feed starts</td> </tr> <tr> <td>EJECT</td> <td>When the paper is ejected</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: EJECT</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FEED	When secondary paper feed starts	EJECT	When the paper is ejected		
Display	Description								
FEED	When secondary paper feed starts								
EJECT	When the paper is ejected								
<p><b>U263</b></p>	<p><b>Setting the paper ejection</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets whether the copies will be ejected in the same or opposite order as the originals.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Set according to the preference of the user.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the ejection order.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FACE-DOWN (NOMAL)</td> <td>Face down ejection</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FACE-UP (SPEED)</td> <td>Face up ejection with bitmap copy</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FACE-UP (MEMORY)</td> <td>Face up ejection with memory copy</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: FACE-DOWN (NORMAL)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FACE-DOWN (NOMAL)	Face down ejection	FACE-UP (SPEED)	Face up ejection with bitmap copy	FACE-UP (MEMORY)	Face up ejection with memory copy
Display	Description								
FACE-DOWN (NOMAL)	Face down ejection								
FACE-UP (SPEED)	Face up ejection with bitmap copy								
FACE-UP (MEMORY)	Face up ejection with memory copy								

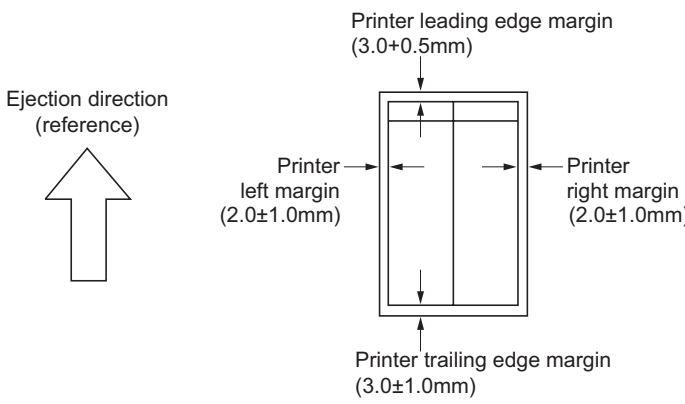
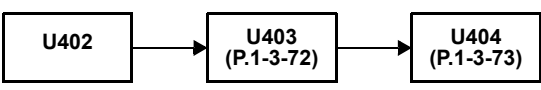
Maintenance item No.	Description								
<b>U264</b>	<p><b>Setting the display order of the date</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Selects year, month and day as the order of that appears on lists, etc.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Set according to the user preference.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the desired order.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>YEAR-MONTH-DAY</td> <td>Year/Month/Day</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MONTH-DAY-YEAR</td> <td>Month/Day/Year</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DAY-MONTH-YEAR</td> <td>Day/Month/Year</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: MONTH-DAY-YEAR (for the inch specifications) DAY-MONTH-YEAR (for the metric specifications)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	YEAR-MONTH-DAY	Year/Month/Day	MONTH-DAY-YEAR	Month/Day/Year	DAY-MONTH-YEAR	Day/Month/Year
Display	Description								
YEAR-MONTH-DAY	Year/Month/Day								
MONTH-DAY-YEAR	Month/Day/Year								
DAY-MONTH-YEAR	Day/Month/Year								
<b>U265</b>	<p><b>Setting OEM purchaser code</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the OEM purchaser code.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Sets the code when replacing the engine PWB and the main PWB. Or sets the data after executing U020 (Initializing all data).</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Adjust the preset value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								
<b>U276</b>	<p><b>Setting the copy count mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the count mode of mono-color mode.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the charging counter which counts up in mono color printing.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the mode.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>MODE 0</td> <td>This lets the full color counter count up in mono color.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MODE 1</td> <td>This lets the mono color counter count up in mono color.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: MODE 0</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	MODE 0	This lets the full color counter count up in mono color.	MODE 1	This lets the mono color counter count up in mono color.		
Display	Description								
MODE 0	This lets the full color counter count up in mono color.								
MODE 1	This lets the mono color counter count up in mono color.								

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U277	<p><b>Setting auto application change time</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the time that passes until the machine starts automatically printing after completing copying or operation when the machine is used as a printer.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Switching time</td> <td>30 to 270 (s)</td> <td>30 (s)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>The setting can be changed by 30 s per step.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Switching time	30 to 270 (s)	30 (s)
Description	Setting range	Default setting					
Switching time	30 to 270 (s)	30 (s)					
U284	<p><b>Setting 2 color copy mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets whether to use 2 color copy mode.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>2 color copy mode ON</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>2 color copy mode OFF</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	2 color copy mode ON	OFF	2 color copy mode OFF
Display	Description						
ON	2 color copy mode ON						
OFF	2 color copy mode OFF						
U285	<p><b>Setting service status page</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Determines displaying the toner coverage report on reporting.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Displays the toner coverage</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Not to display the toner coverage</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Displays the toner coverage	OFF	Not to display the toner coverage
Display	Description						
ON	Displays the toner coverage						
OFF	Not to display the toner coverage						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																																				
U325	<p><b>Setting the bias between pages</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Determines the distance between two pages when printing pages of high print coverage.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting when pages are not printed continuously due to an intermittent toner replenishing that may happen when attempting to print a highly dense document.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>By proactively detecting the print coverage for the first page, the printing speed is automatically adjusted so that an optimal print coverage is obtained from the second and onward.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Does not automatically adjust the distance between pages, regardless of print density.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <p>Setting: ON</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Print coverage ratio</th> <th colspan="2">25/20 ppm model</th> <th colspan="2">32/25 ppm model</th> <th colspan="2">32/32 ppm model</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Delayed time</th> <th>Print speed</th> <th>Delayed time</th> <th>Print speed</th> <th>Delayed time</th> <th>Print speed</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Over 20 % to below 30 %</td> <td>0 ms</td> <td>20 ppm</td> <td>0 ms</td> <td>25 ppm</td> <td>400 ms</td> <td>26.4 ppm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Over 30 % to below 40 %</td> <td>500 ms</td> <td>17.1 ppm</td> <td>500 ms</td> <td>20.7 ppm</td> <td>1000 ms</td> <td>20.9 ppm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Over 40 % to below 50 %</td> <td>1000 ms</td> <td>15 ppm</td> <td>1600 ms</td> <td>15 ppm</td> <td>2100 ms</td> <td>15.1 ppm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Over 50 % to below 60 %</td> <td>2000 ms</td> <td>12 ppm</td> <td>2300 ms</td> <td>12.8 ppm</td> <td>2800 ms</td> <td>12.8 ppm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Over 60 % to below 70 %</td> <td>3000 ms</td> <td>10 ppm</td> <td>3000 ms</td> <td>11.1 ppm</td> <td>3500 ms</td> <td>11.2 ppm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Over 70 % to below 80 %</td> <td>4000 ms</td> <td>8.6 ppm</td> <td>4000 ms</td> <td>9.4 ppm</td> <td>4500 ms</td> <td>9.4 ppm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Over 80 %</td> <td>6000 ms</td> <td>6.7 ppm</td> <td>6500 ms</td> <td>6.7 ppm</td> <td>7000 ms</td> <td>6.8 ppm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	By proactively detecting the print coverage for the first page, the printing speed is automatically adjusted so that an optimal print coverage is obtained from the second and onward.	OFF	Does not automatically adjust the distance between pages, regardless of print density.	Print coverage ratio	25/20 ppm model		32/25 ppm model		32/32 ppm model		Delayed time	Print speed	Delayed time	Print speed	Delayed time	Print speed	Over 20 % to below 30 %	0 ms	20 ppm	0 ms	25 ppm	400 ms	26.4 ppm	Over 30 % to below 40 %	500 ms	17.1 ppm	500 ms	20.7 ppm	1000 ms	20.9 ppm	Over 40 % to below 50 %	1000 ms	15 ppm	1600 ms	15 ppm	2100 ms	15.1 ppm	Over 50 % to below 60 %	2000 ms	12 ppm	2300 ms	12.8 ppm	2800 ms	12.8 ppm	Over 60 % to below 70 %	3000 ms	10 ppm	3000 ms	11.1 ppm	3500 ms	11.2 ppm	Over 70 % to below 80 %	4000 ms	8.6 ppm	4000 ms	9.4 ppm	4500 ms	9.4 ppm	Over 80 %	6000 ms	6.7 ppm	6500 ms	6.7 ppm	7000 ms	6.8 ppm
Display	Description																																																																				
ON	By proactively detecting the print coverage for the first page, the printing speed is automatically adjusted so that an optimal print coverage is obtained from the second and onward.																																																																				
OFF	Does not automatically adjust the distance between pages, regardless of print density.																																																																				
Print coverage ratio	25/20 ppm model		32/25 ppm model		32/32 ppm model																																																																
	Delayed time	Print speed	Delayed time	Print speed	Delayed time	Print speed																																																															
Over 20 % to below 30 %	0 ms	20 ppm	0 ms	25 ppm	400 ms	26.4 ppm																																																															
Over 30 % to below 40 %	500 ms	17.1 ppm	500 ms	20.7 ppm	1000 ms	20.9 ppm																																																															
Over 40 % to below 50 %	1000 ms	15 ppm	1600 ms	15 ppm	2100 ms	15.1 ppm																																																															
Over 50 % to below 60 %	2000 ms	12 ppm	2300 ms	12.8 ppm	2800 ms	12.8 ppm																																																															
Over 60 % to below 70 %	3000 ms	10 ppm	3000 ms	11.1 ppm	3500 ms	11.2 ppm																																																															
Over 70 % to below 80 %	4000 ms	8.6 ppm	4000 ms	9.4 ppm	4500 ms	9.4 ppm																																																															
Over 80 %	6000 ms	6.7 ppm	6500 ms	6.7 ppm	7000 ms	6.8 ppm																																																															
U326	<p><b>Setting the black line cleaning indication</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets whether to display the cleaning guidance when detecting the black line.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Displays the cleaning guidance in order to make the call for service with the black line decrease by the rubbish on the contact glass when scanning from the DP.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Displays the cleaning guidance</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Not to display the cleaning guidance</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON Setting count value is displayed only if the setting is ON.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Displays the cleaning guidance	OFF	Not to display the cleaning guidance																																																														
Display	Description																																																																				
ON	Displays the cleaning guidance																																																																				
OFF	Not to display the cleaning guidance																																																																				

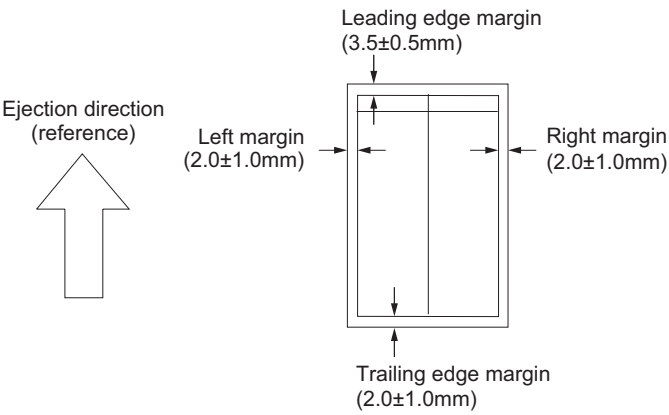
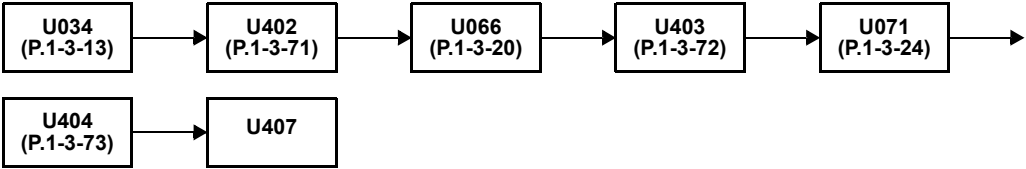
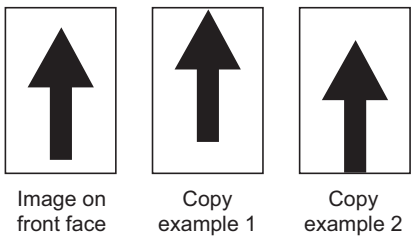
Maintenance item No.	Description																
<p><b>U327</b></p>	<p><b>Setting the cassette heater ON/OFF</b>  <b>Description</b>                      Sets ON/OFF of the cassette heater.  <b>Purpose</b>                      To change the setting when dew condensation on the drum is heavy.  <b>Setting</b>                      1. Press the start key.                      2. Select ON or OFF.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Cassette heater ON</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Cassette heater OFF</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF                      3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.  <b>Completion</b>                      Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Cassette heater ON	OFF	Cassette heater OFF										
Display	Description																
ON	Cassette heater ON																
OFF	Cassette heater OFF																
<p><b>U332</b></p>	<p><b>Setting the size conversion factor</b>  <b>Description</b>                      Sets the coefficient of nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/11" x 8 1/2" size. The coefficient set here is used to convert the black ratio in relation to the A4/11" x 8 1/2" size and to display the result in user simulation.  <b>Purpose</b>                      To set the coefficient for converting the black ratio for nonstandard sizes in relation to the A4/11" x 8 1/2" size for copying printing and fax respectively.  <b>Setting</b>                      1. Press the start key.                      2. Select copying (COPY), printing (PRT) or fax (FAX).                      3. Change the setting using the cursor up/down keys.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COPY</td> <td>Size parameter for copying</td> <td>0.1 to 3.0</td> <td>1.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PRT</td> <td>Size parameter for printing</td> <td>0.1 to 3.0</td> <td>1.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FAX</td> <td>Size parameter for fax</td> <td>0.1 to 3.0</td> <td>1.0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>4. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.  <b>Completion</b>                      Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	COPY	Size parameter for copying	0.1 to 3.0	1.0	PRT	Size parameter for printing	0.1 to 3.0	1.0	FAX	Size parameter for fax	0.1 to 3.0	1.0
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting														
COPY	Size parameter for copying	0.1 to 3.0	1.0														
PRT	Size parameter for printing	0.1 to 3.0	1.0														
FAX	Size parameter for fax	0.1 to 3.0	1.0														
<p><b>U341</b></p>	<p><b>Specific paper feed location setting for printing function</b>  <b>Description</b>                      Sets a paper feed location specified for printer output (only if a printer kit is installed).  <b>Purpose</b>                      To use a paper feed location only for printer output.                      A paper feed location specified for printer output cannot be used for copy output.  <b>Method</b>                      1. Press the start key.                      2. Select the paper feed location for the printer.                      Two or more cassette can be selected.                      Selection is canceled when the selected item is pressed again.                      3. Press the start key. The setting is set.  <b>Completion</b>                      Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																

Maintenance item No.	Description																									
U343	<p><b>Switching between duplex/simplex copy mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Switches the initial setting between duplex and simplex copy.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be set according to frequency of use: set to the more frequently used mode.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the copy mode.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Duplex copy</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Simplex copy</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Duplex copy	OFF	Simplex copy																			
Display	Description																									
ON	Duplex copy																									
OFF	Simplex copy																									
U344	<p><b>Setting the low-power mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Changes the control for low-power mode.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> According to user request, selects which has priority, the recovery time from low-power or energy saver.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select control mode.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ENERGY STAR</td> <td>The fuser control temperature is as low-power mode control temperature and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GEEA</td> <td>The fuser control temperature is as low-power mode control temperature and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ENERGY STAR (120 V specifications)/GEEA (220-240 V specifications)</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ENERGY STAR	The fuser control temperature is as low-power mode control temperature and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.	GEEA	The fuser control temperature is as low-power mode control temperature and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.																			
Display	Description																									
ENERGY STAR	The fuser control temperature is as low-power mode control temperature and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.																									
GEEA	The fuser control temperature is as low-power mode control temperature and forced stabilization is performed 30 seconds after exiting preheat.																									
U345	<p><b>Setting the value for maintenance due indication</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets when to display a message notifying that the time for maintenance is about to be reached, by setting the number of copies that can be made before the current maintenance cycle ends. When the difference between the number of copies of the maintenance cycle and that of the maintenance count reaches the set value, the message is displayed. This maintenance mode is effective for only Japanese specification.</p>																									
U402	<p><b>Adjusting margins of image printing</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts margins for image printing.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect.</p> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>LEAD</td> <td>Printer leading edge margin</td> <td>0 to 10.0</td> <td>3.0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>A</td> <td>Printer left margin</td> <td>0 to 10.0</td> <td>2.5</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C</td> <td>Printer right margin</td> <td>0 to 10.0</td> <td>2.5</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TRAIL</td> <td>Printer trailing edge margin</td> <td>0 to 10.0</td> <td>3.0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	LEAD	Printer leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm	A	Printer left margin	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.1 mm	C	Printer right margin	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.1 mm	TRAIL	Printer trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																						
LEAD	Printer leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm																						
A	Printer left margin	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.1 mm																						
C	Printer right margin	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.1 mm																						
TRAIL	Printer trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.1 mm																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																									
<p><b>U402</b></p>	<p>3. Press the interrupt key.                      4. Press the start key to output a test pattern.                      5. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.                      Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <p>The diagram shows a rectangular area representing a scanned page. To its left is a large upward-pointing arrow labeled 'Ejection direction (reference)'. Four arrows point to the margins of the page: 'Printer leading edge margin (3.0+0.5mm)' at the top, 'Printer trailing edge margin (3.0±1.0mm)' at the bottom, 'Printer left margin (2.0±1.0mm)' on the left, and 'Printer right margin (2.0±1.0mm)' on the right.</p> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-19</b></p> <p>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Caution</b>                      Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  <pre>                     graph LR                     U402[U402] --&gt; U403[U403 (P.1-3-72)]                     U403 --&gt; U404[U404 (P.1-3-73)]                     </pre> </div> <p><b>Completion</b>                      Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>																									
<p><b>U403</b></p>	<p><b>Adjusting margins for scanning an original on the contact glass</b></p> <p><b>Description</b>                      Adjusts margins for scanning the original on the contact glass.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b>                      Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect.</p> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>A MARGIN</td> <td>Scanner left margin</td> <td>0 to 10.0</td> <td>2.0</td> <td>0.5 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B MARGIN</td> <td>Scanner leading edge margin</td> <td>0 to 10.0</td> <td>2.0</td> <td>0.5 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C MARGIN</td> <td>Scanner right margin</td> <td>0 to 10.0</td> <td>2.0</td> <td>0.5 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>D MARGIN</td> <td>Scanner trailing edge margin</td> <td>0 to 10.0</td> <td>2.0</td> <td>0.5 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the interrupt key.</li> <li>4. Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	A MARGIN	Scanner left margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm	B MARGIN	Scanner leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm	C MARGIN	Scanner right margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm	D MARGIN	Scanner trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																						
A MARGIN	Scanner left margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						
B MARGIN	Scanner leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						
C MARGIN	Scanner right margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						
D MARGIN	Scanner trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.0	0.5 mm																						



Maintenance item No.	Description																									
<b>U403</b>	<p>5. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys. Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>Figure 1-3-20</b></p> <p>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Caution</b> Check the copy image after the adjustment. If the image is still incorrect, perform the following adjustments in maintenance mode.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The indication for selecting a maintenance item No. appears.</p>																									
<b>U404</b>	<p><b>Adjusting margins for scanning an original from the DP</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts margins for scanning the original from the DP.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if margins are incorrect when the optional DP is used.</p> <p><b>Caution</b> Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> </div> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key.</li> <li>Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>A MARGIN</td> <td>Left margin</td> <td>0 to 10.0</td> <td>3.0</td> <td>0.5 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>B MARGIN</td> <td>Leading edge margin</td> <td>0 to 10.0</td> <td>2.5</td> <td>0.5 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C MARGIN</td> <td>Right margin</td> <td>0 to 10.0</td> <td>3.0</td> <td>0.5 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>D MARGIN</td> <td>Trailing edge margin</td> <td>0 to 10.0</td> <td>4.0</td> <td>0.5 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the interrupt key.</li> <li>Place an original on the DP and press the start key to make a test copy.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	A MARGIN	Left margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm	B MARGIN	Leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm	C MARGIN	Right margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm	D MARGIN	Trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm
Display	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step																						
A MARGIN	Left margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm																						
B MARGIN	Leading edge margin	0 to 10.0	2.5	0.5 mm																						
C MARGIN	Right margin	0 to 10.0	3.0	0.5 mm																						
D MARGIN	Trailing edge margin	0 to 10.0	4.0	0.5 mm																						

Maintenance item No.	Description								
<p><b>U404</b></p>	<p>5. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys. Increasing the value makes the margin wider, and decreasing it makes the margin narrower.</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-21</b></p> <p>6. Press the start key. The value is set.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								
<p><b>U407</b></p>	<p><b>Adjusting the leading edge registration for memory image printing</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the leading edge registration during memory copying.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Make the adjustment if there is a regular error between the leading edges of the copy image and original during memory copying.</p> <p><b>Caution</b> Before making this adjustment, ensure that the following adjustments have been made in maintenance mode</p> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <p><b>Adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> <th>Change in value per step</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Leading edge registration for memory image printing</td> <td>-2.0 to 2.0</td> <td>2.0</td> <td>0.1 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the interrupt key.</li> <li>Place an original and press the start key to make a test copy.</li> <li>Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys. For copy example 1, decrease the value. For copy example 2, increase the value.</li> </ol> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-22</b></p> <p>5. Press the start key. The value is set.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step	Leading edge registration for memory image printing	-2.0 to 2.0	2.0	0.1 mm
Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Change in value per step						
Leading edge registration for memory image printing	-2.0 to 2.0	2.0	0.1 mm						

Maintenance item No.	Description
U407	<p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U410	<p><b>Adjusting the halftone automatically</b> <b>Description</b> Carries out processing for the data acquisition that is required in order to perform either automatic adjustment of the halftone or the ID correction operation. <b>Purpose</b> Performed when the quality of reproduced halftones has dropped. <b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select [Continuous Adjustment]. A test pattern on A4/11" x 8 1/2" paper is outputted.</li> <li>3. Place the output test pattern as the original.</li> <li>4. Press the start key. Adjustment is made (first time).</li> <li>5. Select [Next Adjustment] to output a test pattern. Place the output test pattern as the original.</li> <li>6. Press the start key. Adjustment is made (second time).</li> <li>7. Select [End (Fixed)] to set the data.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U411	<p><b>Adjusting the scanner automatically</b> <b>Description</b> Carries out the automatic adjustment of scanner-related settings (gain adjustment, automatic adjustment of the input start position, shading offset adjustment, <math>\gamma</math> adjustment, matrix adjustment) as well as the adjustment of the color differential and MTF. <b>Purpose</b> To perform automatic adjustment on the scanner after replacing the scanner PWB. <b>Supplement</b> This maintenance item is executed after executing U425 (Setting the target). <b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Set the original to be used for adjustment (P/N: 302FZ56990) on the contact glass.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The item is adjusted. Do not turn the main power switch off or open/close the cover (turning the cover switch ON/OFF) before automatic adjustment is complete.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																						
<p><b>U425</b></p>	<p><b>Setting the target</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> The value that is indicated on the back of the chart (P/N: 302FZ56990) to be used for adjustment should be entered.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Performs data input in order to correct for differences in originals during automatic adjustment.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>N8.75</td> <td>Input the N8.75 Lab value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>N4.75</td> <td>Input the N4.75 Lab value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>N1.25</td> <td>Input the N1.25 Lab value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CYAN</td> <td>Input the cyan Lab value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MAGENTA</td> <td>Input the magenta Lab value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>YELLOW</td> <td>Input the yellow Lab value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RED</td> <td>Input the red Lab value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>GREEN</td> <td>Input the green Lab value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BLUE</td> <td>Input the blue Lab value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BLACK LINE</td> <td>Input black streak distance value of main scanning and auxiliary scanning</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: Lab value</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Use cursor up/down keys to enter values shown on the back side of the test document (P/N: 302FZ56990).</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: black streak distance value</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Use cursor up/down keys to enter the distance value from edge A to the black streak on the test document (P/N: 302FZ56990) in MAIN SCAN ADJ.</li> <li>2. Use cursor up/down keys to enter the distance value from edge B to the black streak on the test document (P/N: 302FZ56990) in SUB SCAN ADJ.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <div> <p>The diagram shows a test document with a 'DIGITAL COLOR CHART' at the top. The chart includes several vertical color bars: yellow, magenta, cyan, black, red, green, and blue. Below these are grayscale patches labeled 'N8.75', 'N1.25', and 'N4.75'. On the left side, there are two sets of horizontal lines. An arrow labeled 'MAIN SCAN ADJ' points to the left edge of the chart area. An arrow labeled 'SUB SCAN ADJ' points to the top edge of the chart area.</p> </div> <p><b>Figure 1-3-23</b></p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	N8.75	Input the N8.75 Lab value	N4.75	Input the N4.75 Lab value	N1.25	Input the N1.25 Lab value	CYAN	Input the cyan Lab value	MAGENTA	Input the magenta Lab value	YELLOW	Input the yellow Lab value	RED	Input the red Lab value	GREEN	Input the green Lab value	BLUE	Input the blue Lab value	BLACK LINE	Input black streak distance value of main scanning and auxiliary scanning
Display	Description																						
N8.75	Input the N8.75 Lab value																						
N4.75	Input the N4.75 Lab value																						
N1.25	Input the N1.25 Lab value																						
CYAN	Input the cyan Lab value																						
MAGENTA	Input the magenta Lab value																						
YELLOW	Input the yellow Lab value																						
RED	Input the red Lab value																						
GREEN	Input the green Lab value																						
BLUE	Input the blue Lab value																						
BLACK LINE	Input black streak distance value of main scanning and auxiliary scanning																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																
U429	<p><b>Setting the offset for the color balance</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays and changes the density for each color during copying in the various image quality modes.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the balance for each color.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the image quality mode. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>TEXT+PHOTO</td> <td>Density of each color in the text &amp; photo mode.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PHOTO</td> <td>Density of each color in the photo mode.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PRINT</td> <td>Density of each color in the printed photo mode.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TEXT</td> <td>Density of each color in the text mode.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MAP</td> <td>Density of each color in the map modes.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CYAN</td> <td>Value of the cyan setting</td> <td>-5 to 5</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MAGENTA</td> <td>Value of the magenta setting</td> <td>-5 to 5</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>YELLOW</td> <td>Value of the yellow setting</td> <td>-5 to 5</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>BLACK</td> <td>Value of the black setting</td> <td>-5 to 5</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Increasing the value darkens the density and decreasing it lightens the density.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in the interrupt copying mode.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	TEXT+PHOTO	Density of each color in the text & photo mode.	PHOTO	Density of each color in the photo mode.	PRINT	Density of each color in the printed photo mode.	TEXT	Density of each color in the text mode.	MAP	Density of each color in the map modes.	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	CYAN	Value of the cyan setting	-5 to 5	0	MAGENTA	Value of the magenta setting	-5 to 5	0	YELLOW	Value of the yellow setting	-5 to 5	0	BLACK	Value of the black setting	-5 to 5	0
Display	Description																																
TEXT+PHOTO	Density of each color in the text & photo mode.																																
PHOTO	Density of each color in the photo mode.																																
PRINT	Density of each color in the printed photo mode.																																
TEXT	Density of each color in the text mode.																																
MAP	Density of each color in the map modes.																																
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																														
CYAN	Value of the cyan setting	-5 to 5	0																														
MAGENTA	Value of the magenta setting	-5 to 5	0																														
YELLOW	Value of the yellow setting	-5 to 5	0																														
BLACK	Value of the black setting	-5 to 5	0																														

Maintenance item No.	Description																						
<p><b>U432</b></p>	<p><b>Setting the center offset for the exposure</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the offset value for the setting data for exposure centering adjustment under user simulation. For example, if the value for the exposure centering adjustment is set to -1 and you change the offset value to +2, image processing is performed as though the exposure centering adjustment setting is +1.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Set according to the preference of the user.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>FULL-COLOR</td> <td>Exposure offset setting for the full-color mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td>MONOCOLOR</td> <td>Exposure offset setting for the monochrome mode</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select image quality mode.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Text</td> <td>Offset value for the text mode</td> <td>-3 to 3</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Text + Photo</td> <td>Offset value for the text &amp; photo mode</td> <td>-3 to 3</td> <td>0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Other</td> <td>Offset value for other modes</td> <td>-3 to 3</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>If the setting value is increased to increase the exposure centering adjustment value, images is darker. If the setting value is decreased to decrease the exposure centering adjustment value, images is lighter.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> While this maintenance item is being executed, copying from an original is available in the interrupt copying mode.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	FULL-COLOR	Exposure offset setting for the full-color mode	MONOCOLOR	Exposure offset setting for the monochrome mode	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	Text	Offset value for the text mode	-3 to 3	0	Text + Photo	Offset value for the text & photo mode	-3 to 3	0	Other	Offset value for other modes	-3 to 3	0
Display	Description																						
FULL-COLOR	Exposure offset setting for the full-color mode																						
MONOCOLOR	Exposure offset setting for the monochrome mode																						
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																				
Text	Offset value for the text mode	-3 to 3	0																				
Text + Photo	Offset value for the text & photo mode	-3 to 3	0																				
Other	Offset value for other modes	-3 to 3	0																				

Maintenance item No.	Description																																										
U464	<p><b>Setting the ID correction operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Turns ID correction on or off. Also, this determines the duration of ID correction and the timing of ID correction during printing.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To restrict ID correction when poor image quality is generated.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Permission</td> <td>Setting to allow ID correction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set Time Interval</td> <td>Setting the interval time of correction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Change Timing During Print</td> <td>Setting the correction timing during printing</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set Calibration Timing</td> <td>Timing for calibration</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Set Mode at Color Print</td> <td>Timing for calibration in color printing</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: ID correction ON/OFF</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Turns ID correction ON</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Turns ID correction OFF</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Interval time of correction</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Setting the interval time of ID correction</td> <td>0 to 9999 (s)</td> <td>480</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Correction timing during printing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Setting the ID correction timing during printing</td> <td>0 to 10</td> <td>2</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Timing for calibration</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Right After Finish Print</td> <td>Performs ID calibration as soon as printing has finished.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>After Auto Clear Time</td> <td>Performs ID calibration after printing has finished and the auto clear time has timed out.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: After Auto Clear Time</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Timing for calibration in color printing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Print Speed Priority</td> <td>Performs ID calibration for the period predetermined by [Change Timing During Print].</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Image Quality Priority</td> <td>Performs ID calibration when the period the black developing unit is operated accumulates four minutes and printing has finished.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: Print Speed Priority</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set, and The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Permission	Setting to allow ID correction	Set Time Interval	Setting the interval time of correction	Change Timing During Print	Setting the correction timing during printing	Set Calibration Timing	Timing for calibration	Set Mode at Color Print	Timing for calibration in color printing	Display	Description	ON	Turns ID correction ON	OFF	Turns ID correction OFF	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Setting the interval time of ID correction	0 to 9999 (s)	480	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Setting the ID correction timing during printing	0 to 10	2	Display	Description	Right After Finish Print	Performs ID calibration as soon as printing has finished.	After Auto Clear Time	Performs ID calibration after printing has finished and the auto clear time has timed out.	Display	Description	Print Speed Priority	Performs ID calibration for the period predetermined by [Change Timing During Print].	Image Quality Priority	Performs ID calibration when the period the black developing unit is operated accumulates four minutes and printing has finished.
Display	Description																																										
Permission	Setting to allow ID correction																																										
Set Time Interval	Setting the interval time of correction																																										
Change Timing During Print	Setting the correction timing during printing																																										
Set Calibration Timing	Timing for calibration																																										
Set Mode at Color Print	Timing for calibration in color printing																																										
Display	Description																																										
ON	Turns ID correction ON																																										
OFF	Turns ID correction OFF																																										
Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																									
Setting the interval time of ID correction	0 to 9999 (s)	480																																									
Description	Setting range	Initial setting																																									
Setting the ID correction timing during printing	0 to 10	2																																									
Display	Description																																										
Right After Finish Print	Performs ID calibration as soon as printing has finished.																																										
After Auto Clear Time	Performs ID calibration after printing has finished and the auto clear time has timed out.																																										
Display	Description																																										
Print Speed Priority	Performs ID calibration for the period predetermined by [Change Timing During Print].																																										
Image Quality Priority	Performs ID calibration when the period the black developing unit is operated accumulates four minutes and printing has finished.																																										

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
<b>U465</b>	<p><b>Data reference for ID correction</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> References the data related to ID correction.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the corresponding data.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>1. Select the item to be reference. The current setting is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>TCONT</td> <td>Developing bias control value after ID correction</td> </tr> <tr> <td>XYZ (K)</td> <td>Data of grayscale variance (Black)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>XYZ (C)</td> <td>Data of grayscale variance (cyan)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>XYZ (M)</td> <td>Data of grayscale variance (magenta)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>XYZ (Y)</td> <td>Data of grayscale variance (yellow)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	TCONT	Developing bias control value after ID correction	XYZ (K)	Data of grayscale variance (Black)	XYZ (C)	Data of grayscale variance (cyan)	XYZ (M)	Data of grayscale variance (magenta)	XYZ (Y)	Data of grayscale variance (yellow)						
Display	Description																		
TCONT	Developing bias control value after ID correction																		
XYZ (K)	Data of grayscale variance (Black)																		
XYZ (C)	Data of grayscale variance (cyan)																		
XYZ (M)	Data of grayscale variance (magenta)																		
XYZ (Y)	Data of grayscale variance (yellow)																		
<b>U467</b>	<p><b>Setting the color registration adjustment</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the color registration adjustment and transfer belt speed correction.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> If color variance is uneven due to a sensor failure, etc., turn this off and temporarily make a manual adjustment.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Color Regist Adjustment</td> <td>Setting the color registration correction operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Transfer Belt Speed Adj.</td> <td>Setting the transfer belt speed correction operation</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: color registration correction</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Enables the color registration correction operation.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Disables the color registration correction operation.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: transfer belt speed correction</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Enables the transfer belt speed correction operation.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Disables the transfer belt speed correction operation.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Color Regist Adjustment	Setting the color registration correction operation	Transfer Belt Speed Adj.	Setting the transfer belt speed correction operation	Display	Description	ON	Enables the color registration correction operation.	OFF	Disables the color registration correction operation.	Display	Description	ON	Enables the transfer belt speed correction operation.	OFF	Disables the transfer belt speed correction operation.
Display	Description																		
Color Regist Adjustment	Setting the color registration correction operation																		
Transfer Belt Speed Adj.	Setting the transfer belt speed correction operation																		
Display	Description																		
ON	Enables the color registration correction operation.																		
OFF	Disables the color registration correction operation.																		
Display	Description																		
ON	Enables the transfer belt speed correction operation.																		
OFF	Disables the transfer belt speed correction operation.																		



Maintenance item No.	Description								
U468	<p><b>Checking the color registration data</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the color registration correction data and transfer belt speed correction data.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the corresponding data.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to check.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Auto Adjustment</td> <td>Display the auto color registration adjustment value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Manual Adjustment</td> <td>Display the manual color registration adjustment value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Speed Adjustment</td> <td>Display the transfer speed adjustment value</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: auto adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the color to check. The current setting is displayed.</li> <li>2. Press the stop/clear key to return to the screen for selecting an item.</li> </ol> <p><b>Method: manual adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the color to check. The current setting is displayed.</li> <li>2. Press the stop/clear key to return to the screen for selecting an item.</li> </ol> <p><b>Method: speed adjustment</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The current setting is displayed.</li> <li>2. Press the stop/clear key to return to the screen for selecting an item.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Auto Adjustment	Display the auto color registration adjustment value	Manual Adjustment	Display the manual color registration adjustment value	Speed Adjustment	Display the transfer speed adjustment value
Display	Description								
Auto Adjustment	Display the auto color registration adjustment value								
Manual Adjustment	Display the manual color registration adjustment value								
Speed Adjustment	Display the transfer speed adjustment value								

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																																							
<b>U470</b>	<p><b>Setting the compression ratio</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the compression ratio coefficient for each compression level based on the quantum chart for JPEG brightness and color differential.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting in accordance with the image that the user is copying. For example, in order to soften the coarseness of the image when making copies at over 200% magnification, change the level of compression by raising the value. Lowering the value will increase the compression and thereby lower the image quality; Raising the value will increase image quality but lower the image processing speed.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set. The setting screen for the selected item is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Y_DATA Rate</td> <td>JPEG compression ratio (brightness)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C_DATA Rate</td> <td>JPEG compression ratio (color differential)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PDF_DATA Rate</td> <td>PDF compression ratio (brightness and color differential) with optional UG-31 installed</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Setting: JPEG compression ratio (brightness)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Initial setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COPY</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>85</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NW SCAN(1)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>30</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NW SCAN(2)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>40</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NW SCAN(3)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NW SCAN(4)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>80</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NW SCAN(5)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>95</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: JPEG compression ratio (color differential)</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Initial setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COPY</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>85</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NW SCAN(1)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>30</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NW SCAN(2)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>40</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NW SCAN(3)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>50</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NW SCAN(4)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>80</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NW SCAN(5)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>95</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: PDF compression ratio (brightness and color differential) with optional UG-31 installed</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Setting range</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Initial setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Y(1)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>15</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Y(2)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>25</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Y(3)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>60</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C(1)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>15</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C(2)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>25</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C(3)</td> <td>1 to 100</td> <td>60</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Y_DATA Rate	JPEG compression ratio (brightness)	C_DATA Rate	JPEG compression ratio (color differential)	PDF_DATA Rate	PDF compression ratio (brightness and color differential) with optional UG-31 installed	Display	Setting range	Initial setting	COPY	1 to 100	85	NW SCAN(1)	1 to 100	30	NW SCAN(2)	1 to 100	40	NW SCAN(3)	1 to 100	50	NW SCAN(4)	1 to 100	80	NW SCAN(5)	1 to 100	95	Display	Setting range	Initial setting	COPY	1 to 100	85	NW SCAN(1)	1 to 100	30	NW SCAN(2)	1 to 100	40	NW SCAN(3)	1 to 100	50	NW SCAN(4)	1 to 100	80	NW SCAN(5)	1 to 100	95	Display	Setting range	Initial setting	Y(1)	1 to 100	15	Y(2)	1 to 100	25	Y(3)	1 to 100	60	C(1)	1 to 100	15	C(2)	1 to 100	25	C(3)	1 to 100	60
Display	Description																																																																							
Y_DATA Rate	JPEG compression ratio (brightness)																																																																							
C_DATA Rate	JPEG compression ratio (color differential)																																																																							
PDF_DATA Rate	PDF compression ratio (brightness and color differential) with optional UG-31 installed																																																																							
Display	Setting range	Initial setting																																																																						
COPY	1 to 100	85																																																																						
NW SCAN(1)	1 to 100	30																																																																						
NW SCAN(2)	1 to 100	40																																																																						
NW SCAN(3)	1 to 100	50																																																																						
NW SCAN(4)	1 to 100	80																																																																						
NW SCAN(5)	1 to 100	95																																																																						
Display	Setting range	Initial setting																																																																						
COPY	1 to 100	85																																																																						
NW SCAN(1)	1 to 100	30																																																																						
NW SCAN(2)	1 to 100	40																																																																						
NW SCAN(3)	1 to 100	50																																																																						
NW SCAN(4)	1 to 100	80																																																																						
NW SCAN(5)	1 to 100	95																																																																						
Display	Setting range	Initial setting																																																																						
Y(1)	1 to 100	15																																																																						
Y(2)	1 to 100	25																																																																						
Y(3)	1 to 100	60																																																																						
C(1)	1 to 100	15																																																																						
C(2)	1 to 100	25																																																																						
C(3)	1 to 100	60																																																																						

Maintenance item No.	Description																																																						
U473	<p><b>Adjusting laser power output</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Adjusts the laser output power for each color. Also, this is used to toggle exposure density correction and enter exposure density correction values.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Enter the exposure density correction data after replacing the laser scanner unit. Also performed when the quality of dots, lines or low density has dropped.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set or checked.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Set Sensitivity</td> <td>Indication of drum sensitivity correction value of each every color</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Adjust LSU Laser Power</td> <td>LSU laser output value of each every color</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Density Correction</td> <td>The setting whether or not correct the sensitivity</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Input Density Adjust Value</td> <td>Exposure density correction value</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: drum sensitivity correction value</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The current setting is displayed.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>K (Full)</td> <td>Black drum sensitivity correction value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>K (Half)</td> <td>Black drum sensitivity correction value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C (Full)</td> <td>Cyan drum sensitivity correction value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>C (Half)</td> <td>Cyan drum sensitivity correction value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>M (Full)</td> <td>Magenta drum sensitivity correction value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>M (Half)</td> <td>Magenta drum sensitivity correction value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Y (Full)</td> <td>Yellow drum sensitivity correction value</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Y (Half)</td> <td>Yellow drum sensitivity correction value</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the stop/clear key to return to the screen for selecting an item.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: LSU laser output value</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>2. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Default setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>LSU LD Power (K)</td> <td>Laser output value (black)</td> <td>-128 to 127</td> <td>48</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LSU LD Power (C)</td> <td>Laser output value (cyan)</td> <td>-128 to 127</td> <td>48</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LSU LD Power (M)</td> <td>Laser output value (magenta)</td> <td>-128 to 127</td> <td>48</td> </tr> <tr> <td>LSU LD Power (Y)</td> <td>Laser output value (yellow)</td> <td>-128 to 127</td> <td>48</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: correct the sensitivity</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Correct the sensitivity</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Do not correct the sensitivity</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: exposure density correction value</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select the color and data.</li> <li>2. Enter the setting value on the sheet supplied with LSU using the cursor up/down key.</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Supplement</b> When selecting [Adjust Laser Power Output] or [Input Density Adjust Value], copying from an original is available in the interrupt copying mode.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Set Sensitivity	Indication of drum sensitivity correction value of each every color	Adjust LSU Laser Power	LSU laser output value of each every color	Density Correction	The setting whether or not correct the sensitivity	Input Density Adjust Value	Exposure density correction value	Display	Description	K (Full)	Black drum sensitivity correction value	K (Half)	Black drum sensitivity correction value	C (Full)	Cyan drum sensitivity correction value	C (Half)	Cyan drum sensitivity correction value	M (Full)	Magenta drum sensitivity correction value	M (Half)	Magenta drum sensitivity correction value	Y (Full)	Yellow drum sensitivity correction value	Y (Half)	Yellow drum sensitivity correction value	Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting	LSU LD Power (K)	Laser output value (black)	-128 to 127	48	LSU LD Power (C)	Laser output value (cyan)	-128 to 127	48	LSU LD Power (M)	Laser output value (magenta)	-128 to 127	48	LSU LD Power (Y)	Laser output value (yellow)	-128 to 127	48	Display	Description	ON	Correct the sensitivity	OFF	Do not correct the sensitivity
Display	Description																																																						
Set Sensitivity	Indication of drum sensitivity correction value of each every color																																																						
Adjust LSU Laser Power	LSU laser output value of each every color																																																						
Density Correction	The setting whether or not correct the sensitivity																																																						
Input Density Adjust Value	Exposure density correction value																																																						
Display	Description																																																						
K (Full)	Black drum sensitivity correction value																																																						
K (Half)	Black drum sensitivity correction value																																																						
C (Full)	Cyan drum sensitivity correction value																																																						
C (Half)	Cyan drum sensitivity correction value																																																						
M (Full)	Magenta drum sensitivity correction value																																																						
M (Half)	Magenta drum sensitivity correction value																																																						
Y (Full)	Yellow drum sensitivity correction value																																																						
Y (Half)	Yellow drum sensitivity correction value																																																						
Display	Description	Setting range	Default setting																																																				
LSU LD Power (K)	Laser output value (black)	-128 to 127	48																																																				
LSU LD Power (C)	Laser output value (cyan)	-128 to 127	48																																																				
LSU LD Power (M)	Laser output value (magenta)	-128 to 127	48																																																				
LSU LD Power (Y)	Laser output value (yellow)	-128 to 127	48																																																				
Display	Description																																																						
ON	Correct the sensitivity																																																						
OFF	Do not correct the sensitivity																																																						

Maintenance item No.	Description												
<p><b>U474</b></p>	<p><b>Checking LSU cleaning operation</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Provides cleaning LSU by means of the LSU cleaning clutch and LSU cleaning solenoid. Also, the cleaning cycle can be adjusted.</p> <p><b>Start</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Cleaning Operation</td> <td>Executing the cleaning operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cleaning Cycle</td> <td>Setting the cleaning cycle</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: Cleaning operation</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [Cleaning Operation]. The LSU cleaning clutch and solenoid drive a blade which in turn wipes clean the LSU slit glass.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting: Cleaning cycle</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [Cleaning Cycle].</li> <li>2. Change the setting value using * key or # key.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 50%;">Description</th> <th style="width: 20%;">Setting range</th> <th style="width: 30%;">Initial setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Cleaning cycle</td> <td>0 to 5000</td> <td>1000</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>The setting can be changed by 1000 per step.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Cleaning Operation	Executing the cleaning operation	Cleaning Cycle	Setting the cleaning cycle	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Cleaning cycle	0 to 5000	1000
Display	Description												
Cleaning Operation	Executing the cleaning operation												
Cleaning Cycle	Setting the cleaning cycle												
Description	Setting range	Initial setting											
Cleaning cycle	0 to 5000	1000											
<p><b>U504</b></p>	<p><b>Initializing the scanner NIC</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Initializing the scanner NIC to its factory default.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To return to a setup at the time of factory shipments.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [EXECUTE].</li> <li>3. Press the start key. All data in the scanner NIC is initialized.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>												
<p><b>U505</b></p>	<p><b>Setting data base assistant</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets whether or not the database linkage setting is enabled.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="width: 30%;">Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Database linkage setting is enabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Database linkage setting is disabled.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Database linkage setting is enabled.	OFF	Database linkage setting is disabled.						
Display	Description												
ON	Database linkage setting is enabled.												
OFF	Database linkage setting is disabled.												

Maintenance item No.	Description						
U506	<p><b>Setting the time out</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the communication timeout time for connection to a computer.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the preset value if a communication error occurs after connection to a computer continues for a long time. By delaying the error detection timing, the error may be cleared. If the error is not cleared after the preset value is changed, however, return the preset value to the initial value.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Change the value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> <th>Initial setting</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Timeout time</td> <td>10 to 120 (s)</td> <td>10</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>The setting can be changed by 10 s per step.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Description	Setting range	Initial setting	Timeout time	10 to 120 (s)	10
Description	Setting range	Initial setting					
Timeout time	10 to 120 (s)	10					
U508	<p><b>Setting the LDAP</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Enables or disables an LDAP server.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting to ON when use of an LDAP server is requested.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>LDAP server is enabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>LDAP server is disabled.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	LDAP server is enabled.	OFF	LDAP server is disabled.
Display	Description						
ON	LDAP server is enabled.						
OFF	LDAP server is disabled.						
U510	<p><b>Setting the enterprise mode</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets whether or not the enterprise mode setting is enabled. This maintenance mode is effective for only 120 V specifications.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> According to user request, changes the setting.</p> <p><b>Supplement</b> It is not possible to turn setting simultaneously with U511 (Setting scan To FTP) to ON.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select ON or OFF.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Enterprise mode setting is enabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Enterprise mode setting is disabled.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Turn the main power switch off.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Enterprise mode setting is enabled.	OFF	Enterprise mode setting is disabled.
Display	Description						
ON	Enterprise mode setting is enabled.						
OFF	Enterprise mode setting is disabled.						

Maintenance item No.	Description														
<p><b>U511</b></p>	<p><b>Setting scan To FTP</b>  <b>Description</b>  Sets whether or not scan to FTP setting is enabled.  This maintenance mode is effective for only 120 V specifications.  <b>Purpose</b>  According to user request, changes the setting.  <b>Supplement</b>  It is not possible to turn setting simultaneously with U510 (Setting the enterprise mode) to ON.  <b>Setting</b>  1. Press the start key.  2. Select ON or OFF.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Scan to FTP setting is enabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Scan to FTP setting is disabled.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: ON  3. Press the start key. The setting is set.  <b>Completion</b>  Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Scan to FTP setting is enabled.	OFF	Scan to FTP setting is disabled.								
Display	Description														
ON	Scan to FTP setting is enabled.														
OFF	Scan to FTP setting is disabled.														
<p><b>U512</b></p>	<p><b>Setting scan To SMB</b>  <b>Description</b>  Sets whether or not scan to SMB setting is enabled.  This maintenance mode is effective for only 120 V specifications.  <b>Purpose</b>  According to user request, changes the setting.  <b>Supplement</b>  It is not possible to turn setting simultaneously with U510 (Setting the enterprise mode) to ON.  <b>Setting</b>  1. Press the start key.  2. Select ON or OFF.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ON</td> <td>Scan to SMB setting is enabled.</td> </tr> <tr> <td>OFF</td> <td>Scan to SMB setting is disabled.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Initial setting: OFF  3. Press the start key. The setting is set.  <b>Completion</b>  Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ON	Scan to SMB setting is enabled.	OFF	Scan to SMB setting is disabled.								
Display	Description														
ON	Scan to SMB setting is enabled.														
OFF	Scan to SMB setting is disabled.														
<p><b>U901</b></p>	<p><b>Checking copy counts by paper feed locations</b>  <b>Description</b>  Displays copy counts by paper feed locations.  <b>Purpose</b>  To check the time to replace consumable parts.  <b>Method</b>  1. Press the start key. The counts by paper feed locations are displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>BYPASS</td> <td>MP tray</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CASSETTE 1</td> <td>Cassette 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CASSETTE 2</td> <td>Cassette 2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CASSETTE 3</td> <td>Cassette 3 (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder or paper feeder)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CASSETTE 4</td> <td>Cassette 4 (optional paper feeder)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>DUPLEX</td> <td>Duplex unit</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When an optional paper feed device is not installed, the corresponding count is not displayed.  <b>Completion</b>  Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	BYPASS	MP tray	CASSETTE 1	Cassette 1	CASSETTE 2	Cassette 2	CASSETTE 3	Cassette 3 (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder or paper feeder)	CASSETTE 4	Cassette 4 (optional paper feeder)	DUPLEX	Duplex unit
Display	Description														
BYPASS	MP tray														
CASSETTE 1	Cassette 1														
CASSETTE 2	Cassette 2														
CASSETTE 3	Cassette 3 (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder or paper feeder)														
CASSETTE 4	Cassette 4 (optional paper feeder)														
DUPLEX	Duplex unit														

Maintenance item No.	Description									
U902	<p><b>Checking/clearing finisher punch count</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Sets the punch limit and displays and clears the punch-hole scrap count when optional 3000-sheet finisher is installed.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Sets the punch limit to notify the user of the time to collect punch-hole scrap. Also, used to manually clear the punch-hole scrap count if a message requiring collection of punch-hole scrap is shown on the touch panel after collection. If punch-hole scrap is collected with the machine power turned off, the punch-hole scrap count is not cleared and consequently this problem occurs.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item.</li> <li>3. Change the value using the numeric keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>PUNCH LIMIT</td> <td>Punch limit (maximum number of punching times)</td> <td>0 to 9999000</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH COUNT</td> <td>Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)</td> <td>0 to 9999999</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the start key. The value is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Clearing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the reset key.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The count is cleared, and the screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	Setting range	PUNCH LIMIT	Punch limit (maximum number of punching times)	0 to 9999000	PUNCH COUNT	Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)	0 to 9999999
Display	Description	Setting range								
PUNCH LIMIT	Punch limit (maximum number of punching times)	0 to 9999000								
PUNCH COUNT	Punch-hole scrap count (current number of punching times)	0 to 9999999								
U903	<p><b>Checking/clearing the paper jam counts</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays or clears the jam counts by jam locations.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the paper jam status. Also to clear the jam counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p><b>Start</b> Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COUNT</td> <td>Displays/clears the jam counts</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TOTAL COUNT</td> <td>Displays the total jam counts</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: Displays/clears the jam counts</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [COUNT]. The count of jam code by type is displayed.</li> <li>2. Change the screen using the * or # keys. Press the reset key and then press the start key. The all count is cleared. The individual counter cannot be cleared. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Method: Displays the total jam counts</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [TOTAL COUNT] at the screen for selecting an item. The total number of jam code by type is displayed.</li> <li>2. Change the screen using the * or # keys. The total number of jam count cannot be cleared. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	COUNT	Displays/clears the jam counts	TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total jam counts			
Display	Description									
COUNT	Displays/clears the jam counts									
TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total jam counts									

Maintenance item No.	Description																		
<p><b>U904</b></p>	<p><b>Checking/clearing the call for service counts</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays or clears the service call code counts by types.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the service call code status by types. Also to clear the service call code counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p><b>Start</b> Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COUNT</td> <td>Displays/clears the call for service counts</td> </tr> <tr> <td>TOTAL COUNT</td> <td>Displays the total call for service counts</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Method: Displays/clears the call for service counts</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select [COUNT]. The count of call for service by type is displayed.</li> <li>Change the screen using the * or # keys. Press the reset key and then press the start key. The all count is cleared. The individual counter cannot be cleared. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Method: Displays the total call for service counts</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select [TOTAL COUNT] at the screen for selecting an item. The total number of call for service by type is displayed.</li> <li>Change the screen using the * or # keys. The total number of call for service count cannot be cleared. To return to the screen for selecting an item, press the stop/clear key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	COUNT	Displays/clears the call for service counts	TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total call for service counts												
Display	Description																		
COUNT	Displays/clears the call for service counts																		
TOTAL COUNT	Displays the total call for service counts																		
<p><b>U905</b></p>	<p><b>Checking counts by optional devices</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the counts of optional DP or finisher.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the use of optional DP and finisher.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the start key.</li> <li>Select the device, the count of which is to be checked. The count of the selected device is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>DP</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>ADP</td> <td>Number of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td> </tr> <tr> <td>RADP</td> <td>Number of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>FINISHER (3000-sheet document finisher or document finisher)</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>CP CNT</td> <td>Number of copies that has passed</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STAPLE</td> <td>Frequency the stapler has been activated</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PUNCH</td> <td>Frequency the punch has been activated</td> </tr> <tr> <td>STACK</td> <td>Frequency the stacker has been activated</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SADDLE</td> <td>Frequency the center holding has been activated</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>When installing the document finisher, value of CP CNT and STAPLE are displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	ADP	Number of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP	RADP	Number of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP	Display	Description	CP CNT	Number of copies that has passed	STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated	PUNCH	Frequency the punch has been activated	STACK	Frequency the stacker has been activated	SADDLE	Frequency the center holding has been activated
Display	Description																		
ADP	Number of single-sided originals that has passed through the DP																		
RADP	Number of double-sided originals that has passed through the DP																		
Display	Description																		
CP CNT	Number of copies that has passed																		
STAPLE	Frequency the stapler has been activated																		
PUNCH	Frequency the punch has been activated																		
STACK	Frequency the stacker has been activated																		
SADDLE	Frequency the center holding has been activated																		



Maintenance item No.	Description
U906	<p><b>Resetting partial operation control</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Resets the service call code for partial operation control.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To be reset after partial operation is performed due to problems in the cassettes or other sections, and the related parts are serviced.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [EXECUTE].</li> <li>3. Press the start key to reset partial operation control [EXECUTE] display flashes during resetting.</li> <li>4. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>
U908	<p><b>Checking the total counter value</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the total counter value.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the total counter value.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The screen for total count value is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U910	<p><b>Clearing the coverage data</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Clears the accumulated data for the coverage per A4 size paper in all colors (C/M/Y/BK).</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To clear data as required at times such as during maintenance service.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [EXECUTE].</li> <li>3. Press the start key. The coverage data is cleared. When clearing is complete, the machine automatically returns to the same status as when the main power switch is turned on.</li> </ol>
U911	<p><b>Checking/clearing copy counts by paper sizes</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays and clears the paper feed counts by paper sizes.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check or clear the counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The screen for the paper feed counts by paper size is displayed.</p> <p><b>Clearing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the reset key.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. All counts are cleared. To clear the count individually, select the paper size and press the start key.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

Maintenance item No.	Description																																				
<b>U917</b>	<p><b>Setting backup data reading/writing</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Stores backup data from the fax control PWB (when an optional fax kit is installed) into CompactFlash or reads the data from CompactFlash.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To store and write data when replacing the PWB.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch.</li> <li>2. Open the interface cover.</li> <li>3. Remove the CF cover.</li> <li>4. Insert Compact Flash in the CF cover.</li> <li>5. Insert Compact Flash in a notch hole of the machine.</li> <li>6. Turn the main power switch on.</li> <li>7. Enter the maintenance item.</li> <li>8. Press the start key.</li> <li>9. Select the item.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;">Display</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>SRAM -&gt; CF : FAX BACKUP</td> <td>Writing the backup data of fax control PWB</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CF -&gt; SRAM : FAX BACKUP</td> <td>Reading the backup data of fax control PWB</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SRAM -&gt; CF : FAX DIAL INFO</td> <td>Writing the backup data of fax dial information</td> </tr> <tr> <td>CF -&gt; SRAM : FAX DIAL INFO</td> <td>Reading the backup data of fax dial information</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10. Press the start key. Reading or writing is executed, and the screen displays the result.</li> </ol> <p>If the operation was successful: EXECUTE 0100 CHECK SUM **** CODE 0000</p> <p>If the operation failed: EXECUTE 0100 CHECK SUM **** CODE XXXX</p> <p>Where XXX is the error code indicating the reason for the failure. See Error Codes for Operation U917 and U926 below.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>11. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch.</li> <li>12. Remove the Compact Flash from the machine.</li> </ol> <p><b>Error Codes for Operation U917 and U926</b></p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: center;">Code</th> <th style="text-align: left;">Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0102</td> <td>Detects call for service on fax control PWB.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0103</td> <td>Detects call for service on engine PWB.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0104</td> <td>Communication error.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0105</td> <td>Detects call for service on main PWB.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">01FF</td> <td>CF error.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0202</td> <td>No CF card.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0203</td> <td>No data in CF card.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0204</td> <td>CF data is incompatible.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0205</td> <td>Bad CF data (Checksum error)</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0206</td> <td>CF read error.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0207</td> <td>CF write error.</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;">0212</td> <td>Fax control PWB flash memory error.</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Display	Description	SRAM -> CF : FAX BACKUP	Writing the backup data of fax control PWB	CF -> SRAM : FAX BACKUP	Reading the backup data of fax control PWB	SRAM -> CF : FAX DIAL INFO	Writing the backup data of fax dial information	CF -> SRAM : FAX DIAL INFO	Reading the backup data of fax dial information	Code	Description	0102	Detects call for service on fax control PWB.	0103	Detects call for service on engine PWB.	0104	Communication error.	0105	Detects call for service on main PWB.	01FF	CF error.	0202	No CF card.	0203	No data in CF card.	0204	CF data is incompatible.	0205	Bad CF data (Checksum error)	0206	CF read error.	0207	CF write error.	0212	Fax control PWB flash memory error.
Display	Description																																				
SRAM -> CF : FAX BACKUP	Writing the backup data of fax control PWB																																				
CF -> SRAM : FAX BACKUP	Reading the backup data of fax control PWB																																				
SRAM -> CF : FAX DIAL INFO	Writing the backup data of fax dial information																																				
CF -> SRAM : FAX DIAL INFO	Reading the backup data of fax dial information																																				
Code	Description																																				
0102	Detects call for service on fax control PWB.																																				
0103	Detects call for service on engine PWB.																																				
0104	Communication error.																																				
0105	Detects call for service on main PWB.																																				
01FF	CF error.																																				
0202	No CF card.																																				
0203	No data in CF card.																																				
0204	CF data is incompatible.																																				
0205	Bad CF data (Checksum error)																																				
0206	CF read error.																																				
0207	CF write error.																																				
0212	Fax control PWB flash memory error.																																				

Maintenance item No.	Description
U920	<p><b>Checking the copy counts</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Checks the copy counts.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the copy counts.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The current counts of full color copy counter, single color copy counter, monochrome copy counter, color printer counter, monochrome printer counter and monochrome fax counter are displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U925	<p><b>Checking/clearing the system error counts</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays and clears the count value of system error.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the system error status by types. Also to clear the service call code counts after replacing consumable parts.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The count for system error detection by type is displayed.</p> <p><b>Clearing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the reset key.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. All counts are cleared.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance No. item is displayed.</p>
U926	<p><b>Rewriting FAX program</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Downloads the fax program and fax fonts when installing an optional fax kit.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To run when upgrading the fax program and fax fonts.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch.</li> <li>2. Open the interface cover.</li> <li>3. Remove the CF cover.</li> <li>4. Insert Compact Flash in the CF cover.</li> <li>5. Insert Compact Flash in a notch hole of the machine.</li> <li>6. Turn the main power switch on.</li> <li>7. Enter the maintenance item.</li> <li>8. Press the start key.</li> <li>9. Select [FAX PROGRAM/FONT] and press the start key. Downloading of the fax program starts and the result shown below is displayed.</li> </ol> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">If the operation was successful: EXECUTE 0100 CHECK SUM **** CODE 0000</p> <p style="margin-left: 40px;">If the operation failed: EXECUTE 0100 CHECK SUM **** CODE XXXX Where XXX is the error code indicating the reason for the failure.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10. Then, downloading of the fax fonts starts and the result shown below is displayed.</li> </ol>

Maintenance item No.	Description
U926	<p>If the operation was successful: EXECUTE 0100 CHECK SUM **** CODE 0000</p> <p>If the operation failed: EXECUTE 0100 CHECK SUM **** CODE XXXX Where XXX is the error code indicating the reason for the failure. See Error Codes for Operation U917 and U926 on P.1-3-90.</p> <p>11. Press the power key on the operation panel, and after verifying the power indicator has gone off, switch off the main power switch. 12. Remove the Compact Flash from the machine.</p>
U927	<p><b>Clearing the all copy counts and machine life counts (one time only)</b> <b>Description</b> Resets all of the counts back to zero. <b>Supplement</b> The total account counter and the machine life counter can be cleared only once if all count values are 1000 or less. <b>Method</b> 1. Press the start key. 2. Press [EXECUTE]. 3. Press the start key. All copy counts and machine life counts are cleared. CANNOT EXECUTE is displayed if the count cannot be cleared. <b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U928	<p><b>Checking machine life counts</b> <b>Description</b> Displays the machine life counts. <b>Purpose</b> To check the machine life counts. <b>Method</b> Press the start key. The current machine life counts is displayed. <b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>
U930	<p><b>Checking/clearing the charger roller count</b> <b>Description</b> Displays the counts of the charger roller counter for checking or clearing. <b>Purpose</b> To check the count after replacement of the charger roller unit. To clear the counter value when replacing the charger roller unit. <b>Method</b> Press the start key. The current counts of the charger roller count for each color is displayed. <b>Clearing</b> 1. Press the reset key. 2. Press the start key. All counts are cleared. <b>Setting</b> 1. Enter seven-digit value using the numeric keys. 2. Press the start key. The value is set. <b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>

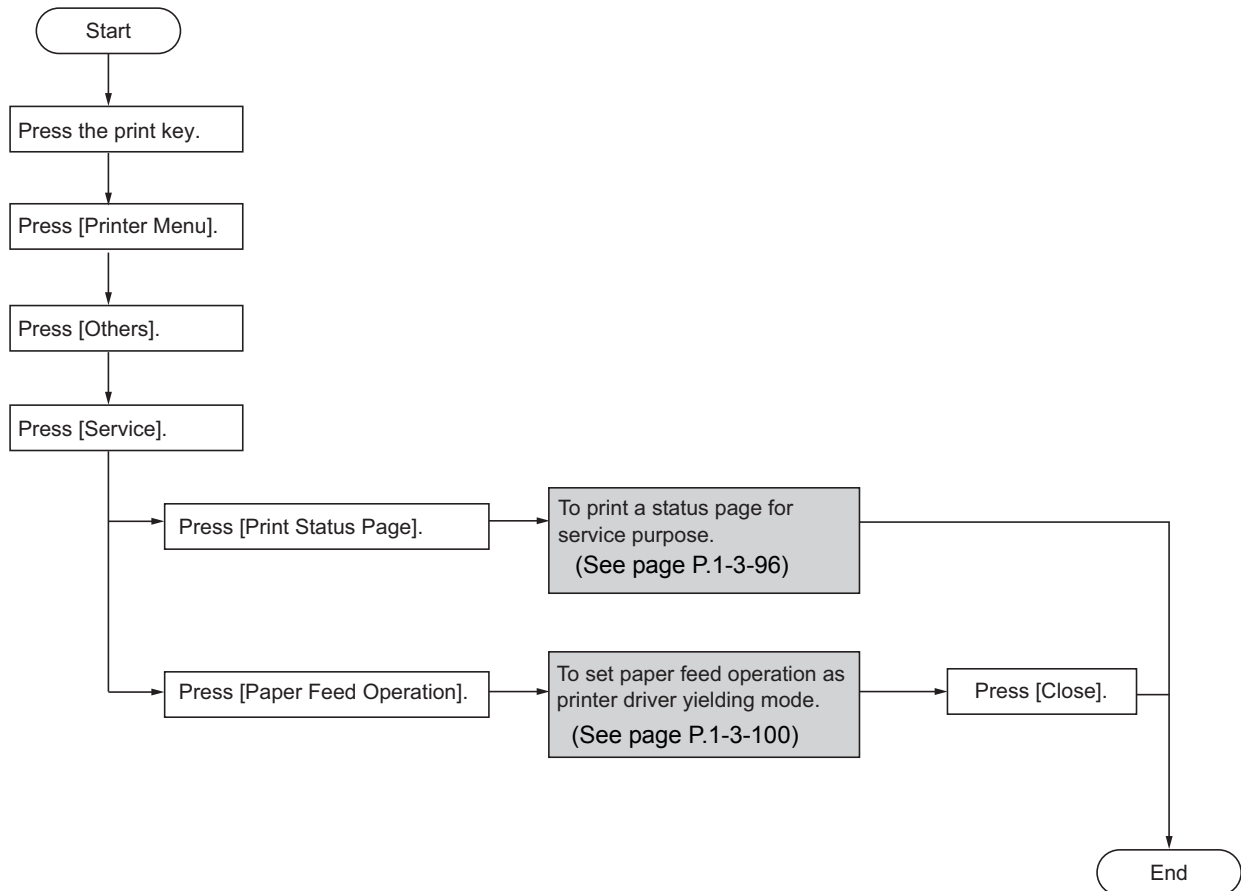
Maintenance item No.	Description						
U972	<p><b>Setting the type of high voltage unit</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Identifies transfer high voltage PWB 2 to be old or new</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To change the setting when replacing the transfer high voltage PWB 2.</p> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Select the item to be set.</li> <li>3. Change the setting value using the cursor up/down keys.</li> </ol> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> <th>Setting range</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>2nd Transfer HV</td> <td>Identifies transfer high voltage PWB 2</td> <td>A (old)/B (new)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Press the start key. The setting is set.</li> <li>5. Turn the main power switch off and on.</li> </ol>	Display	Description	Setting range	2nd Transfer HV	Identifies transfer high voltage PWB 2	A (old)/B (new)
Display	Description	Setting range					
2nd Transfer HV	Identifies transfer high voltage PWB 2	A (old)/B (new)					
U984	<p><b>Checking the developing unit number</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the developing unit number.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the developing unit number.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The developing unit number for each color is displayed.</p> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U985	<p><b>Displaying the developing unit history</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Indicates the past record of machine number and the developing counter.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the machine number and the developing counter.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. The history of a machine number and a developing counter for each color is displayed by five cases.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						
U989	<p><b>HDD Scandisk</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Restores data in the hard disk by scanning the disk.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> If power is turned off while accessing to the hard disk is performed, the control information in the hard disk drive may be damaged. Use this mode to restore the data.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Press [EXECUTE].</li> <li>3. Press the start key. When scanning of the disk is complete, the execution result is displayed.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>						

Maintenance item No.	Description								
<p><b>U990</b></p>	<p><b>Checking/clearing the time for the exposure lamp to light</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays, clears or changes the accumulated time for the exposure lamp to light.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check duration of use of the exposure lamp. Also to clear the accumulated time for the lamp after replacement.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The accumulated time of illumination for the exposure lamp is displayed in minutes.</p> <p><b>Clearing</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the reset key.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The accumulated time is cleared.</li> </ol> <p><b>Setting</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Enter a seven-digit accumulated time using the numeric keys.</li> <li>2. Press the start key. The time is set.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								
<p><b>U991</b></p>	<p><b>Checking the scanner operation count</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Displays the scanner operation count.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To check the status of use of the scanner.</p> <p><b>Method</b> Press the start key. The screen for selecting an item is displayed.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Display</th> <th>Description</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>COPY SCAN COUNT</td> <td>Counts of scanner operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>FAX SCAN COUNT</td> <td>Counts of fax operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>NT SCAN COUNT</td> <td>Counts of network scanner operation</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance No. item is displayed.</p>	Display	Description	COPY SCAN COUNT	Counts of scanner operation	FAX SCAN COUNT	Counts of fax operation	NT SCAN COUNT	Counts of network scanner operation
Display	Description								
COPY SCAN COUNT	Counts of scanner operation								
FAX SCAN COUNT	Counts of fax operation								
NT SCAN COUNT	Counts of network scanner operation								
<p><b>U998</b></p>	<p><b>Printing from memory</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Prints the data stored in memory.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> Executes as necessary.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Press the start key.</li> <li>2. Enter the address (8-digit hexadecimal number) using the numeric keys and symbols A to F keys displayed on the touch panel.</li> <li>3. Press the interrupt key to output the list.</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b> Press the stop/clear key. The screen for selecting a maintenance item No. is displayed.</p>								

### 1-3-2 Service mode

The machine is equipped with a maintenance function which can be used to maintain and service the machine.

#### (1) Executing a service item



Service items	Description
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">                     Print Status Page                 </div>	<p><b>Printing a status page for service purpose</b></p> <p><b>Description</b> Prints a status page for service purpose. The status page includes various printing settings and service cumulative.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b> To acquire the current printing environmental parameters and cumulative information.</p> <p><b>Procedure</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [Print Status Page].</li> <li>2. Press [Printing].</li> <li>3. Processing is displayed and five pages will be printed. (The second page includes service information.)</li> </ol>
<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; margin-top: 10px;"> <div>Main PWB firmware version</div> <div>Firmware release date</div> </div> <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> <div>Service information (Refer to next page)</div> </div>	
<p><b>Figure 1-3-24 Status page</b></p>	



Service items	Description
	<p><b>Service information</b></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px;"> <p><b>Service information</b></p> <p>[XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX] [XX/XX]</p> <p>Printed Page(s) 9690</p> <p>①</p> <p>②</p> <p>③</p> <p>/P00/S00/U00/N00/D50:DM0301.DAN:0002001001210052</p> <p>④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦</p> <p>⑧</p> <p>/0020/0020/1061/0811/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/ 0/</p> <p>⑨</p> <p>⑩</p> <p>⑪</p>   <p>⑫ /1011/1001/0000/0000/0100/1000/0000/0000/</p> <p>/RS2/[0003-0003]/81/30/50/01</p> <p>⑬</p> <p>⑭</p> <p>⑮</p> <p>⑯</p> <p>⑰</p> <p>⑱</p>   <p>⑲ 00.00.00.00.00.00</p> <p>⑳ A:1234567890123456</p>   <p>㉑ /20A11080/1020B200/20001080/81000000/00000000/10101010/10101010/</p>   <p>㉒ SPD1:0203040508090A0B0C0D0F101112131415161718191A1B1C1D1E1F202122235E</p> <p>㉓ SPD1:0203040508090A0B0C0D0F101112131415161718191A1B1C1D1E1F202122235E</p>   <p>㉔ SN:SPL9200010</p> </div>

Service items		Description	
		<b>Detail of service information</b>	
No.	Items	Description	
1	Boot ROM information	[Boot ROM version]	
2	Software jumper switch information (hexadecimal) [First byte/second byte (displayed in OEM mode only)]	First byte bit 0 = 1: (Fixed) bit 1 = 0: Overseas, 1: Domestic (Japan) bit 2, 3 (Not used) bit 4 = 0: Kyocera, 1: OEM bit 5 = 0: For Europe, 1: For US bit 6 = 0: Non MICR mode, 1: MICR mode bit 7 (Not used) Second byte: Displayed in OEM mode only	
3	Total page counter	-	
4	Parallel I/O information	-	
5	Serial information	00: Normal bit0: Framing error	bit1: Overrun error bit2: Parity error
6	USB information	00: Not connected 01: Full-Speed 02: Hi-Speed	
7	NVRAM error (displayed only when any error has occurred)	01: ID error 02: Version error	03: Checksum error 04: NVRAM crush error
8	NVRAM download	00: Normal (none downloaded) bit0: Font data bit1: Host data bit2: Macro data bit3: Program data bit4: Operation panel message data download (file name displayed) bit5: OEM data bit6: Web template data (version displayed) bit7: Error occurred	
9	Printable area setting	/Top offset/Left offset/Page length/Page width	
10	Left offset for each paper source	/MP tray/Cassette 1/Cassette 2/Optional cassette 3/Optional cassette 4/ Duplex/ (1/600 inches unit)	
11	Top offset for each paper source	/MP tray/Cassette 1/Cassette 2/Optional cassette 3/Optional cassette 4/ (1/600 inches unit)	
12	Partial operational control information	bit0: MP tray bit1: Cassette 1 bit2: Cassette 2 bit3: Optional cassette 3 bit4: Optional cassette 4 bit5 to 6: Not used bit7: Duplex bit8 to 19: Not used bit20: Optional finisher bit21 to 27: Not used bit28: Optional job separator bit29 to 31: Not used	Device status 0: Not installed 1: Enabled 2: Partial operational controlled

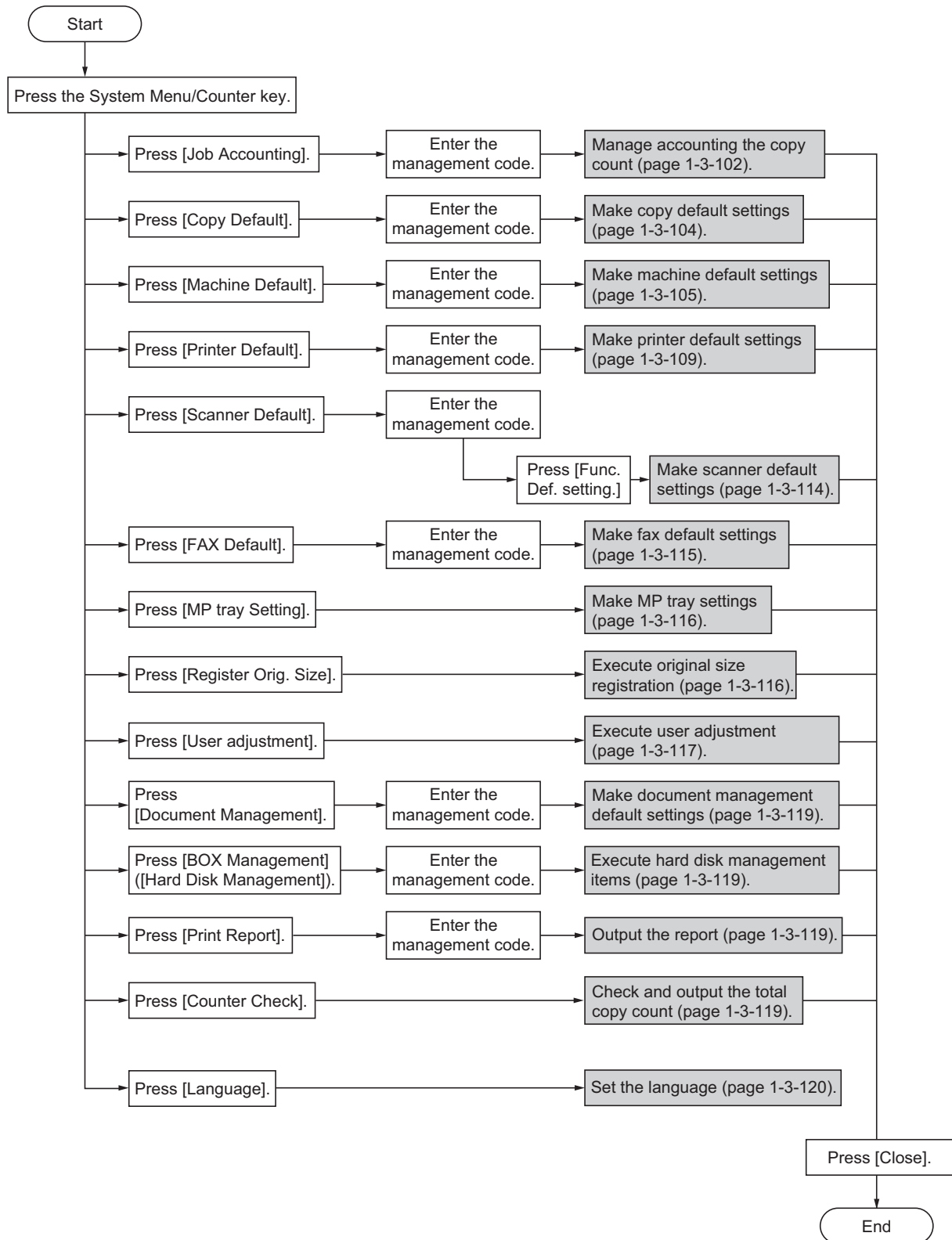
Service items	Description																					
<b>No.</b>	<b>Items</b>	<b>Description</b>																				
13	Serial interface information	RS2: RS-232C RS4: RS-422A																				
14	Optional device information	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>1st 2 bytes</td> <td>2nd 2 bytes</td> </tr> <tr> <td>bit0: MP tray</td> <td>bit0: Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>bit1 to 2: Cassette 1 to 2</td> <td>bit1: Output tray</td> </tr> <tr> <td>bit3 to 4: Optional cassette 3 to 4</td> <td>bit2 to 3: Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>bit5 to 6: Not used</td> <td>bit4: Optional finisher</td> </tr> <tr> <td>bit7: Duplex</td> <td>bit5 to 11: Reserved</td> </tr> <tr> <td>bit8: Reserved</td> <td>bit12: Optional job separator</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>bit13 to 15: Reserved</td> </tr> </table>	1st 2 bytes	2nd 2 bytes	bit0: MP tray	bit0: Reserved	bit1 to 2: Cassette 1 to 2	bit1: Output tray	bit3 to 4: Optional cassette 3 to 4	bit2 to 3: Reserved	bit5 to 6: Not used	bit4: Optional finisher	bit7: Duplex	bit5 to 11: Reserved	bit8: Reserved	bit12: Optional job separator		bit13 to 15: Reserved				
1st 2 bytes	2nd 2 bytes																					
bit0: MP tray	bit0: Reserved																					
bit1 to 2: Cassette 1 to 2	bit1: Output tray																					
bit3 to 4: Optional cassette 3 to 4	bit2 to 3: Reserved																					
bit5 to 6: Not used	bit4: Optional finisher																					
bit7: Duplex	bit5 to 11: Reserved																					
bit8: Reserved	bit12: Optional job separator																					
	bit13 to 15: Reserved																					
15	Operation panel message language	PMSG command setting (decimal)																				
16	Current temperature	0 to 80 °C/32 to 176 °F (in 1 °C/1.8 °F increment, "-" = Temperature/humidity sensor is abnormal.)																				
17	Current humidity	5 to 100% RH (in 1% increment)																				
18	Number of rebooting for vertical distortion check	-																				
19	MAC address	-																				
20	Fixed asset number	(maximum 16 characters)																				
21	Media type attributes	Media type setting value from 1 to 28 (paper weight) (unused media type are always 0x00.)																				
22	Memory SPD information (slot 1)	2 to 6 bytes, 8 to 36 bytes, 94 to 95 bytes (total 32 bytes)																				
23	Memory SPD information (slot 2)	2 to 6 bytes, 8 to 36 bytes, 94 to 95 bytes (total 32 bytes)																				
24	Machine serial number	-																				
<p>NOTE:</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Code conversion</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td>A</td><td>B</td><td>C</td><td>D</td><td>E</td><td>F</td><td>G</td><td>H</td><td>I</td><td>J</td> </tr> <tr> <td>0</td><td>1</td><td>2</td><td>3</td><td>4</td><td>5</td><td>6</td><td>7</td><td>8</td><td>9</td> </tr> </table>			A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J													
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9													

Service items	Description				
<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;">                     Paper Feed Operation                 </div>	<p><b>Setting the paper feed operation (printer driver yielding mode)</b></p> <p><b>Description</b></p> <p>In printer driver yielding mode, the printer driver settings override the paper feed operation mode in the machine.</p> <p>The machine feeds paper from the paper source (a cassette or the MP tray) which was commanded by the printer driver, and if the paper source is empty, the machine will prompt loading paper by displaying a message. The machine will attempt to feed paper assuming it is of maximum paper size, namely, Ledger, when the MP tray is selected as the paper source. If the sizes of the physical paper and the commanded paper do not match, paper jam will result at duplex printing.</p> <p><b>Purpose</b></p> <p>The driver settings may be optimized depending on the user preferences.</p> <p><b>Method</b></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Select [Paper Feed Operation].</li> <li>2. Select the mode.</li> </ol> <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tbody> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Plain</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">Printer driver yielding mode</td> </tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 2px;">Special</td> <td style="padding: 2px;">Paper feed operation mode in the machine (default)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. Press [Close].</li> </ol> <p><b>Completion</b></p>	Plain	Printer driver yielding mode	Special	Paper feed operation mode in the machine (default)
Plain	Printer driver yielding mode				
Special	Paper feed operation mode in the machine (default)				

### 1-3-3 Copier management

In addition to a maintenance function for service, the copier is equipped with a management function which can be operated by users (mainly by the copier administrator). In this copier management mode, settings such as default settings can be changed.

#### (1) Using the copier management mode



**(2) Job accounting****New account**

Creates new accounts by entering an account ID code (of up to eight digits), account name, and restrictions on usage as desired.

1. Press [Management Edit].
2. Press [Register].
3. Select [Account ID] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
4. Enter the department ID code from 0 to 99999999 using the numeric keys.
5. Press [Close].
6. Select [Name to Display] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
7. Enter the department name and press [End].
8. Press [Next].
9. Specify restrictions on copying and press [Registr.].

**Deleting accounts**

Delete the department accounts registered.

1. Press [Management Edit].
2. Select the department ID code to delete and press [Delete].
3. Check the ID code to delete and press [Yes].

**Editing department information**

Changes the name and ID code registered for the department.

1. Press [Management Edit].
2. Select the department ID code to modify and press [Mgt. Inf. Correction].
3. Select [Account ID] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
4. Press [Clear].
5. Enter the new ID code (up to eight digits) using the numeric keys.
6. Press [Close].
7. Select [Name to Display] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
8. Press [AllDel.].
9. Enter the new department name and press [End].
10. Press [Close].

**Changing restrictions on usage**

Changes the restriction on usage per individual department.

To restrict the number of copies, printouts or scanned images using Job Accounting, switch Job Accounting to [On] as the default for Copy Job Accounting, Printer Job Accounting and Scanner Job Accounting.

1. Press [Management Edit].
2. Select the department ID code to modify and press [Limit in use].
3. Select the usage restriction and press [Close].

**Management total**

Calculate the total usage count for all departments and print the total in the form of Job Accounting reports. The total usage count can be reset as necessary.

1. Press [Management Total].
2. The total usage count is displayed.
3. Press [Print Report] and choose the report type to print this information as a management report. Press [Report by Function] to count a list of reports by function. Press [Report by Size] in Total Count by Size, 1-5 of the Job Accounting default settings for a list of reports by paper size.
4. To reset the usage count, press [Counter clear].
5. Press [Yes].

**Copy count per department**

Tracks the copy count per individual department. The copy count per department can be reset as necessary.

1. Press [Each Mgt. Total].
2. Select the ID-code of the department and press [Total].
3. The usage count for the selected department is displayed.
4. To reset the usage count, press [Counter clear].
5. Press [Yes].

**Activating and deactivating job accounting**

Turn job accounting on or off.

1. Select [On] or [Off].
2. Press [Close].
3. Press [End].

**Copy job accounting**

Activate or deactivate Job Accounting for copy jobs.

1. Press [Job Acctng Def. Set.].
2. Select [Copy Job Accounting] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Select [On] or [Off].
4. Press [Close].

**Printer job accounting**

Activate or deactivate Job Accounting when the device is used as a printer.

1. Press [Job Acctng Def. Set.].
2. Select [Print. Job Accounting] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Select [On] or [Off].
4. Press [Close].

**Printer error report**

Specify whether an error report is printed in case that the user attempts to print using the incorrect department code.

This item is not shown when Printer Job Accounting is set to [Off].

1. Press [Job Acctng Def. Set.].
2. Select [Printer error report] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Select [On] or [Off].
4. Press [Close].

**Printing from unregistered sources (printer)**

Authorize or prohibit printing from computers with printer drivers that do not support Job Accounting.

This item is not shown when Printer Job Accounting is set to [Off].

1. Press [Job Acctng Def. Set.].
2. Select [Other Mgt. reg. (print)] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Select [On] or [Off].
4. Press [Close].

**Copy/printer output management**

Select whether copying and printing are managed together or separately.

1. Press [Job Acctng Def. Set.].
2. Select [Copy/Printer output mgt] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Select [All] or [Each].
4. Press [Close].

**Scanner job accounting**

Activate or deactivate Job Accounting when the device is used for scanning.

1. Press [Job Acctng Def. Set.].
2. Select [Scanner Job Accounting] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Select [On] or [Off].
4. Press [Close].

**Fax job accounting**

Activate or deactivate job accounting when the optional fax function is used.

This setting is displayed when the optional fax kit is installed.

1. Press [Job Acctng Def. Set.].
2. Select [Fax Job Accounting] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Select [On] or [Off].
4. Press [Close].

**Response to unauthorized requests**

Specify the actions when users attempt to copy in excess of the specified copy limitation.

1. Press [Job Acctng Def. Set.].
2. Select [Excess of Limit Setting] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press [Stop job immediately], [Stop after job done] or [Only warning].
4. Press [Close].

**Default counter limit value**

Specify the default of usage limitation when registering a new department.

1. Press [Job Acctng Def. Set.].
2. Select [Def. Val. of coun. Limit] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Enter the number of pages from 1 to 999,999 using the numeric keys.
4. Press [Close].

**Total count by size, 1-5**

Registers specific paper sizes and types of paper to check the copy count.

1. Press [Job Acctng Def. Set.].
2. Select [Total size 1-5] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press [On].
4. Press [Select Size].
5. Select a paper size and press [Close].
6. To specify a paper type, press [Select Paper Type].
7. Select the paper type and press [Close].
8. Press [Close].

**(3) Default settings for copying****Exposure Mode**

Set the exposure mode for default settings mode.

1. Select [Exposure Mode] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Manual] or [Auto].

**Exposure steps**

Change the exposure adjustment step amount.

1. Select [Exposure Steps] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [1 step] or [0.5 step].

**Original image quality**

Set the original image quality for default settings mode.

1. Select [Original Image Quality] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Text+Photo], [Photo], [Print], [Text] or [Map].

**Color mode setting**

Set the color mode for default settings mode.

1. Select [Auto Color/Full-Color/B&W] ([Auto Colour/full col./B&W]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Auto color] ([Auto colour]), [Full color] ([Full colour]), or [Black&White] ([Black white]).

**Setting auto color detection**

Adjust the color and black&white detection level for auto color copy mode.

1. Select [Auto Color Correction] ([Auto colour Correction]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press the cursor left/right keys to adjust the value.

**Setting EcoPrint**

Set EcoPrint for default settings mode.

1. Select [EcoPrint] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Off] or [On].

**Correct fine black lines**

Set Fine Black Line correction to reduce the black lines that may occur when copying using the optional document processor.

When suppressing black streaks, select [On (Low)].

Select [On (High)] only when the black streaks are not suppressed with the Low setting.

1. Select [Correct. fine black line] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Off], [On (Low)] or [On (High)].

**Select paper**

In default settings mode, set the paper selection method for when an original is set.

1. Select [Select Paper] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [APS] or [Default cassette].

**Setting auto paper selection**

Set the paper selection method for Auto Paper Selection mode when changing the zoom ratio.

1. Select [APS Setting] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Most Suit Size] or [Same as Orig. Size].

**Paper type (auto color paper)**

Select Automatic Paper Selection mode for color copying to limit the paper types.

1. Select [Pap. Type (Auto col. pap.)] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Off] or [On].

If [On] is selected, select the paper type.

Plain/Rough/Vellum/Recycled/Preprinted/Bond/Color (Colour)/Prepunched/Letterhead/High Quality/Custom 1 - 8

**Paper type (auto BW paper)**

Select Automatic Paper Selection mode for black and white copying to limit the paper types.

1. Select [Paper Type (Auto BW Paper)] ([Paper Type (Auto B&W pap.)]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Off] or [On].

If [On] is selected, select the paper type.

Plain/Rough/Vellum/Recycled/Preprinted/Bond/Color (Colour)/Prepunched/Letterhead/High Quality/Custom 1 - 8

**Selecting default cassette**

Automatically selects the default cassette (1 - 4).

The MP tray may not be set as the default cassette.

[3rd paper] and [4th paper] are shown when the optional paper feeder or 3000 sheet paper feeder have been installed.

1. Select [Default cassette] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select the cassette to use as the default.

**Specifying cassette for cover paper**

Specify the paper source cassette (1 - 4) or MP tray which is loaded with cover paper.

[3rd paper] and [4th paper] are shown when the optional paper feeder or 3000 sheet paper feeder have been installed.

1. Select [Cassette for cover paper] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select the paper source containing the cover paper.



**Setting auto % priority**

Specify whether to set auto zoom when the paper in the selected cassette is different from the size of the original.

1. Select [Auto % Priority Setting] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Off] or [On].

**Adjusting auto exposure**

Adjusts the overall lightness or darkness when copying in auto exposure mode.

1. Select [Density Adjustment (Auto)] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [Lighter] or [Darker] to adjust the density.

**Adjusting manual exposure**

Adjusts the overall lightness or darkness when copying in manual exposure mode.

1. Select [Density Adjust. (Manual)] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [Lighter] or [Darker] to adjust the density.

**Selecting default zoom**

Set the reduce/enlarge setting in default settings mode.

1. Select [Reduce/Enlarge] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Auto %] or [100%].

**Selecting sorting and offsetting output**

Set sorting and offsetting output options in default settings mode.

1. Select [Sort/Offset] ([Sort/Group]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Under [Sort], select [Off] ([Sort:Off]) or [On] ([Sort:on]).
3. Under [Offset], select [Off] or [On] ([1 set] or [Output each page]).

**Selecting auto rotation**

Set auto rotation in default settings mode.

1. Select [Auto Rotation] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Rotate] or [No Rotate].

**Setting margin defaults**

Sets margin the width default values.

1. Select [Default margin width] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press the cursor up/down or left/right keys to set the margin width.  
Setting Range  
Inch models: 0 - 3/4" (1/8" increments)  
Metric models: 0 - 18 mm (1 mm increments)

**Erasing borders**

Set the border erase default values.

1. Select [Default erase width] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [+] or [-] to set the [Border] (outer edges) and [Center] ([Centre]) (middle) border widths.  
Setting Range  
Inch models: 0 - 2" (1/8" increments)  
Metric models: 0 - 50 mm (1 mm increments)

**Selecting maximum number of copies**

Limits the number of sets that can be specified for a single copy.

1. Select [Preset limit] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Use the numeric keys to specify the preset limit value. Set to between 1 - 999 sets.

**Enabling repeat copy**

Disable repeat copy or configure repeat copy in default settings mode.

This setting is not displayed when the optional security kit is installed.

1. Select [Repeat Copy] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Under [Function], select [Off] or [On].
3. Under [Default], select [Off] or [On].

**Showing the register key**

Sets whether to show or hide [Shortcut] ([Register]) used to register/delete register keys.

1. Select [Display register key] ([Display "Register" key]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Off] or [On].

**Customize (basic screen)**

Rearrange the basic screen layout for maximum ease of use.

1. Select [Customize (Basic Screen)] ([Customize (Main function)]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Move the item using the cursor up/down keys, [Move Ahead] or [Move Behind] ([Move Backward]).

**Customize (user choice)**

Rearrange the screen to easily access frequently used functions.

1. Select [Customize (User Choice)] ([Customize (Add function)]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Under [Addition Mode], press the cursor up/down keys to select the function to change. Under [Register Mode], press the cursor up/down keys to select the function that is to be added and press [←] to move the function.

**(4) Machine default****Enabling auto cassette switching**

Use auto cassette switching to automatically switch the paper source to another cassette loaded with the same size and orientation paper when the current cassette runs out of paper.

1. Select [Auto cassette switching] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Under [Function], select [Off] or [On].
3. Under [Paper Type], select [All types of paper] or [Feed same paper type].

**Specifying the paper size**

Specify the paper sizes for Cassettes 1 - 4.

[3rd cassette] and [4th cassette] are shown when the optional paper feeder is installed.

1. Select [Paper size (1st cassette - 4th cassette)] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Auto Detection] or [Standard sizes].  
If [Auto Detection] is selected, choose the unit type.  
If [Standard sizes] is selected, choose the paper type.

**Specifying the paper type**

Specify the paper type for Cassettes 1 - 4.

3rd cassette and 4th cassette are shown when the optional paper feeder or 3000 sheet paper feeder have been installed.

1. Select [Paper type (1st cassette - 4th cassette)] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select the paper type.  
Plain/Vellum/Rough/Recycled/Preprinted/Bond/  
Color (Colour)/Prepunched/Letterhead/High Quality/Custom 1 - 8

**Registering MP tray paper size**

Up to 4 custom paper sizes can be pre-registered for use with the MP tray.

1. Select [Store Paper Size for MPT] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select the number to register from [Paper size (User reg. 1 - 4)] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press [On].  
Press [+] or [-] to set the [Height].  
Setting range  
Inch models: 3 7/8 - 11 5/8" (1/8" increments)  
Metric models: 98 - 297 mm (1 mm increments)  
Metric models only  
Enter the size directly using the numeric keys by pressing [#-Keys].
4. Press [+] or [-] to set the [Width].  
Setting range  
Inch models: 5 7/8 - 17" (1/8" increments)  
Metric models: 148 - 432 mm (1 mm increments)  
Metric models only  
Enter the size directly using the numeric keys by pressing [#-Keys].

5. To specify a paper type, press [Select Paper Type]. Select the paper type and press [Close].  
Plain/Transparency/Rough/Vellum/Labels/Recycled/Preprinted/Bond/Cardstock/Color (Colour)/Prepunched/Letterhead/Thick paper/Envelope/Coated/High Quality/Custom 1 - 8
6. Press [Close].

**Enabling quick access to MP tray settings**

Set whether to show the [MP tray Settings] screen when the MP tray is selected from the [Basic] screen.

1. Select [Check MP tray sizing] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Off] or [On].

**Setting paper type properties (paper weight)**

Set the weight (paper thickness) for each type of paper.

1. Select [Paper Type (paper weight)] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select the paper type to set the weight using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #]
3. Select the weight and press [Close].  
Light (Thin) - 64 g/m<sup>2</sup> or less/Normal 1 - from 60 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 75 g/m<sup>2</sup> or less/Normal 2 - from 76 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 90 g/m<sup>2</sup> or less/Normal 3 - from 91 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 105 g/m<sup>2</sup> or less/Heavy 1 - from 106 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 135 g/m<sup>2</sup> or less/Heavy 2 - from 136 g/m<sup>2</sup> to 170 g/m<sup>2</sup> or less/Heavy 3 - 171 g/m<sup>2</sup> or more/Extra Heavy - OHP transparencies
4. Press [Close].

**Setting paper type properties (duplex mode)**

Specify whether to allow duplex printing for each of custom paper types 1 - 8.

1. Select [Select paper type (2 sided)] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select the paper type to adjust from [Custom 1] - [Custom 8] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Select [Off] or [On] and press [Close]

**Setting handling for special paper types**

When printing on prepunched, preprinted, or letterhead paper, use this setting to change the direction of the finished output.

1. Select [Special paper action mode] ([Specif. paper action mode]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Adj. Print Direction] or [Speed Priority].

**Auto detect originals**

Specify the paper size to select when an original with a similar size is automatically detected.

This setting is displayed only for metric models.

1. Select [Org. Auto Detect Setting] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select the paper size to specify using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. For [Cardstock/A6], select [Cardstock] or [A6] and press [Close].  
For [B4/Folio], select [B4] or [Folio] and press [Close].  
For 11 x 15", select [On] or [Off] and press [Close].

**Orientation of original document**

Set the original orientation in default settings mode.

1. Select [Orig. Set Direction] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Top Edge] ([Back Edge]) or [Left Top Edge] ([Left top corner]).

**Setting sleep timer timeout**

Set the time until Auto Sleep mode is activated when [On] is selected in Activating Auto Sleep.

1. Select [Sleep mode changing time] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [+] or [-] to set the time until Auto Sleep mode is activated.  
Setting range: 1 - 240 minutes (1 minute increments)

**Setting low-power timer timeout**

Set the time until Auto Low-Power mode is activated.

1. Select [Low power mode chng. time] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [+] or [-] to set the time until Auto Low-Power mode is activated.  
Setting range: 1 - 240 minutes (1 minute increments)

**Setting auto clear timeout time**

Set the time until Auto Clear is activated after the last operation when [On] is selected in Activating Auto Clear.

1. Select [Auto Clear Time Setting] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [+] or [-] to set the time until Auto Clear is activated.  
Setting range: 10 - 270 minutes (10 minute increments)

**Selecting output destination**

Set the default copy output destination.

This setting is displayed when the optional job separator, document finisher or 3000 sheet document finisher is installed.

1. Select [Select Copy output mode] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select the output destination.  
Top tray/Job separator/Finisher tray/Tray A/Tray B/Tray C/Tray 1/Tray 2/Tray 3/Tray 4/Tray 5/Tray 6/Tray 7

**Selecting FAX output mode**

Set the default output destination for printing originals or reports received by fax.

This setting is displayed when the fax kit and optional job separator, document finisher or 3000 sheet document finisher is installed.

1. Select [Select FAX output mode] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select the output destination.  
Top tray/Job separator/Finisher tray/Tray B/Tray 1/Tray 2/Tray 3/Tray 4/Tray 5/Tray 6/Tray 7

**Select the main mode**

Specify the screen to be first shown after power-on.

This setting is displayed when the optional fax kit is installed.

1. Select [Select the main mode] ([Select main mode]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Copy Mode] or [Fax Mode].

**Setting notification sounds**

Set the notification sounds made by the machine during operation.

1. Select [Notify (Touch tone)], [Notify (Finish)], [Notify (Ready)] or [Notify (Attention)] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Off] or [On].

**Silent mode**

Configures the machine to operate more quietly.

1. Select [Silent Mode] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Off] or [On].

**Adjusting date/time**

Set the current date and time.

Before setting the date and time, perform the following Setting Time Difference.

1. Select [Date/Time] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [+] or [-] to set each of [Year], [Month], [Day], and [Time].  
To enable daylight savings time, set [Summertime] to [On].

### Setting time difference

Set the time difference.

Set the time difference before Adjusting Date/Time.

1. Select [Time difference] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [+] or [-] to set the time difference.

### Changing management code

Change the machine's management code.

The default setting is 2500 for the 25/20 ppm model and 3200 for the 32/25 and 32/32 ppm models.

If the optional security kit has been installed, the default setting is 25002500 for the 25/20 ppm model and 32003200 for the 32/25 and 32/32 ppm models.

1. Select [Management code change] ([Change MGMT code with #]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Use the numeric keys to enter the new management code between 0000 - 9999. If the optional security kit has been installed, the management code is 8 digits long.

### Activating auto sleep

In Auto Sleep mode, the machine automatically switches to Sleep mode if left idle for a preset period.

If Auto Sleep mode interferes with normal operation, set to disable Auto Sleep mode. Before disabling Auto Sleep mode, it is first recommended to try extending the time until Auto Sleep mode is activated (sleep mode change time).

1. Select [Auto sleep] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Off] or [On].

### Activating auto clear

Auto Clear automatically releases various specified setting and returns to default settings mode after a specified period of time since the last device operation.

1. Select [Auto Clear] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Off] or [On].

### High density print

Set priority between printing speed and image quality when continuously printing high density originals.

1. Select [High Density Print] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Fast Mode], [Quality Mode] or [High Qual. Mode].

### Prioritizing copying over printing

Prioritize copy jobs over printer jobs in the job output queue.

1. Select [Copy Job Priority] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Off] or [On].

### Erasing hard disk contents

When the optional security kit is installed, select the hard disk overwrite method.

This setting is available when optional security kit is installed.

1. Select [Hard Disk Overwrite] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [3-time Overwrite] or [Once Overwrite].

### Setting hard disk encryption key

When the optional security kit is installed, you can specify an encryption key.

This setting is available when optional security kit is installed.

1. Select [HDD Encryption Key] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [Change #] for [Encryption Key].
3. Enter a 16 character encryption key and press [End].
4. To confirm the entry, press [Change #] under [Confirm Encryption Key], enter the same key again, and press [End].
5. Press [Close].
6. Press [Yes]. The hard disk data is overwritten and the specified encryption key is enabled.

## (5) Printer settings

### Print Status Page

Print a status page to check details such as current settings, available memory, and installed optional equipment.

1. Press [Print Status Page].
2. Press [Printing].
3. The status page is printed.

### Parallel interface mode configuration

For normal usage, leave the default setting as [Auto]. Use a parallel interface cable compliant with the IEEE1284 specification.

1. Press [Interface].
2. Press [Parallel] and press [Change #].
3. Select the desired mode.  
Auto/Normal/High Speed/Nibble (High)
4. Press [Close].

### Serial interface mode configuration

Configure the baud rate (communication speed), data bit, stop bit, parity, and protocol to be used by the serial interface.

1. Press [Interface].
2. Press [Serial].
3. Select [Baud Rate] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
4. Select [1200], [2400], [4800], [9600], [19200], [38400], [57600] or [115200].
5. Press [Close].
6. Refer to steps 3 - 5 to configure data bit, stop bit, parity and protocol.  
Data bit: Select [7] or [8].  
Stop bit: Select [1] or [2].  
Parity: Select [None], [Odd], [Even] or [Ignore].  
Protocol: Select [DTR (positive) &XOn/Xoff], [DTR (positive)], [DTR (negative)], [XOn/Xoff] or [ETX/ACK].
7. Press [Close].

### TCP/IP settings

To connect to a Windows network via TCP/IP, set to [On]. Continue to set DHCP, BOOTP, IP address, subnet mask address, and gateway address.

1. Press [Interface].
2. Press [Network].  
To set the optional network interface, press [Option].
3. Select [TCP/IP] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
4. Press [On].
5. Select [DHCP] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
6. Press [On] or [Off] and press [Close].
7. Select [BOOTP] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
8. Press [On] or [Off] and press [Close].
9. Select [IP Address] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].

10. Enter the IP address using the numeric keys. Input the address for the 3 digits displayed in reverse black and white and press the [#] key.
11. Input the address for the next 3 digits displayed in reverse black and white and press the [#] key.  
To correct an address entry, press the [#] key to select the 3 digit address you would like to correct and reenter the address using the numeric keys.
12. After inputting the rest of the address in the same manner, press [Close].
13. Refer to steps 9 - 12 to set subnet mask address and gateway address.
14. Press [Close].

### Netware setting

To connect via the Netware protocol, set to [On] and set frame mode.

1. Press [Interface].
2. Press [Network].  
To set the optional network interface, press [Option].
3. Select [NetWare] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
4. Select [On] or [Off].  
When [On] is selected, select the frame type.  
Auto/802.3/Ethernet II/802.2/802.3SNAP
5. Press [Close].

### Ethertalk setting

Set EtherTalk to [On] to connect this device to an Apple Macintosh computer.

1. Press [Interface].
2. Press [Network].  
To set the optional network interface, press [Option].
3. Select [EtherTalk] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
4. Select [On] or [Off].
5. Press [Close].

### Network status page

The network status page can be printed when printing the status page. Use the network status page to verify the network interface firmware version, network address and network protocol information.

1. Press [Interface].
2. Press [Network].  
To set the optional network interface, press [Option].
3. Select [Network Status Page] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
4. Select [On] or [Off].
5. Press [Close].

**Emulation mode selection**

Change the emulation mode.

1. Press [Emulation].
2. Press the interface to be configured.
3. Select the desired emulation.  
PCL6/KPDL/KPDL (Auto) /KC-GL  
For [KPDL (Auto)], select KPDL (Auto) alternate emulation.  
For [KPDL] or [KPDL (Auto)], configure the KPDL error printing setting.  
For [KC-GL], configure the pen and printing environment settings.
4. Press [Close].

**Selecting alternate emulation**

When [KPDL (Auto)] emulation is selected, KPDL or alternate emulation is set automatically depending on the print data.

1. Refer to steps 1 to 3 of Emulation Mode Selection to select [KPDL (Auto)].
2. Press [Alt. Emulation].
3. Press [PCL6] or [KC-GL].
4. Press [Close].

**Print KPDL errors**

When printing in KPDL emulation mode, prints details of any errors that occur.

1. Refer to steps 1 to 3 of Emulation Mode Selection to select [KPDL] or [KPDL (Auto)].
2. Press [Print KPDL errors].
3. Select [On] or [Off].
4. Press [Close].

**Pen and print environment setting**

Specify 8 different pen thicknesses, pen color and page sizes when KC-GL emulation is selected.

1. Refer to steps 1 to 3 of Emulation Mode Selection to select [KC-GL].
2. Press [Pen Adjust].
3. Select the pen to configure using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
4. Press [+] or [-] to set the pen thickness (in dots).  
Setting range: 1 - 99 dots
5. Press desired pen color.  
Black/Blue/Red/Magenta/Green/Cyan/Yellow/White
6. Press [Close].
7. Press [Close].
8. Press [Page Set].
9. Press the button corresponding to the desired size.  
A2/A1/A0/B3/B2/B1/B0/SPSZ  
[SPSZ] is the size specified by the prescribed SPSZ command.
10. Press [Close].

**Font selection**

Select the default font.

1. Press [Font].
2. Press [Font selection].
3. Press the interface to be configured.
4. Select the Font ID using the cursor up/down keys.  
I: Internal Font  
SO: Soft font (downloaded)  
MO: Font stored on memory card  
HO: Font stored on RAM disk or hard disk
5. Press [Close].

**Font size setting**

Set the default font size.

When the default font is set to Courier or Letter Gothic, the text pitch setting is shown instead of this menu.

1. Refer to steps 1 - 3 of Font Selection to select the interface.
2. Press [Detail].
3. Press [+] or [-] to set the font size.  
Set between 4.00 - 999.75 points in 0.25 point increments.
4. Press [Close].

**Courier/letter gothic font character pitch setting**

Set the character pitch for Courier or Letter Gothic fonts.

1. Refer to steps 1 - 3 of Font Selection to select the interface.
2. Press [Detail].
3. Press [+] or [-] to set the pitch size.  
Set between 0.44 - 99.99 pitch in 0.01 pitch increments.
4. Press [Close].

**Courier/letter gothic font thickness setting**

Select the Courier/Letter Gothic font Thickness.

1. Refer to steps 1 - 3 of Font Selection to select the interface.
2. Press [Internal] or [Dark] in the [Courier] area.
3. Press [Internal] or [Dark] in the [Letter Gothic] area.
4. Press [Close].

**Code set selection**

When emulation is set to PCL6 and the internal font is selected as the default font, select the character code set. The available code sets depend on which font is currently selected.

1. Press [Font].
2. Press [Code Set].
3. Press the interface to be configured.
4. Select the Code Set using the cursor up/down keys.
5. Press [Close].

**Print list of fonts**

Print a list of fonts for use as a quick guide during font selection.

1. Press [Font].
2. Press [Internal].  
If optional fonts other than internal fonts are installed to the device, [Option] may also be selected.
3. Press [Printing].
4. The status page is printed.

**Copy quantity**

Set number of pages to print from 1 - 999.

1. Press [Page Set].
2. Select [Copies] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press [+] or [-] to set the number of copies.
4. Press [Close].

**Print orientation setting**

Set printing direction to [Portrait] or [Landscape]. Orientation can be separately configured for each interface.

1. Press [Page Set].
2. Select [Orientation] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press the interface to be configured.
4. Press [Portrait] or [Landscape].
5. Press [Close].

**Setting page protect mode**

When a [Print Overrun Press GO error occurs], Page Protect Mode is forced to [On]. When this error occurs, follow the steps below to reset to [Auto].

1. Press [Page Set].
2. Select [Page Protect] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press [Auto].
4. Press [Close].

**LF (line feed) action**

Set the action to be performed by the device when a line feed code (text code 0AH) is received.

1. Press [Page Set].
2. Select [LF Action] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press the interface to be configured.
4. Select [LF only], [CR and LF] or [Ignore LF].
5. Press [Close].

**CR (carriage return) action**

Set the action to be performed by the device when a carriage return code (text code 0DH) is received.

1. Press [Page Set].
2. Select [CR Action] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press the interface to be configured.
4. Select [CR only] [CR and LF] or [Ignore CR].
5. Press [Close].

**Tone mode setting**

Select from normal mode and fine mode.

1. Press [Print Quality].
2. Press [Change #].
3. Press [Normal] or [Fine].
4. Press [Close].

**Setting color mode**

Set whether to print status reports in color or in black and white.

1. Press [Color Mode] ([Colour Mode]).
2. Press [Color] ([Colour]) or [Black&White] ([Black White]).
3. Press [Close].

**MP tray mode specification**

Set the paper handling method for the MP Tray.

1. Press [Paper Handling].
2. Select [Multipurpose tray mode] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press [Cassette] or [First].
4. Press [Close].

**Feed select**

Sets Feed Select. If a paper feed source is not specified at the application (print driver), paper is fed from the paper source configured here. In addition to the paper cassettes and MP tray, you can set the optional paper feeder or 3000 sheet paper feeder as the paper source.

1. Press [Paper Handling].
2. Select [Feed Select] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press the desired Feed Select key.
4. Press [Close].

**Duplex print mode configuration**

Set the bind direction for the finished output for duplex mode.

1. Press [Paper Handling].
2. Select [Duplex Mode] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press [Off], [Short edge bind] or [Long edge bind].
4. Press [Close].

**Paper output select**

Set the output destination for printed paper. If the optional document finisher or 3000 sheet document finisher, or mailbox is installed, you can specify each tray.

1. Press [Paper Handling].
2. Select [Paper Output] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press the desired output destination key.  
Top tray/Job separator/Finisher tray/Tray A/Tray B/  
Tray C/Tray 1/Tray 2/Tray 3/Tray 4/Tray 5/Tray 6/  
Tray 7
4. Press [Close].

**Shared A4/letter size feed select**

Sets whether to detect A4 and Letter size paper.

1. Press [Paper Handling].
2. Select [Override A4/LT] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press [On] or [Off].
4. Press [Close].

**Memory card format (initialization)**

Before using a new memory card, the card must first be formatted.

Format the memory card at the device.

1. Press [Memory Card].
2. Press [Format].
3. Press [Yes].
4. Memory card formatting begins.

**Writing data**

Print data received from a computer onto the memory card.

Written data is automatically assigned a name (partition name).

1. Press [Memory Card].
2. Press [Write Data].
3. Send data from a computer.
4. When done receiving data from the computer, Page remaining is displayed.
5. Press [GO].

**Reading data**

Read data, program data, fonts, or macro data saved to a memory card.

1. Press [Memory Card].
2. In the [Read] area, press [Data], [Program], [Font] or [Macro].
3. Select the item to be read using the cursor up/down keys and press [Enter].
4. Data is read from the memory card.

**Deleting data**

Delete data, program data, fonts, macro data or option languages saved to a memory card.

1. Press [Memory Card].
2. In the [Delete] area, press [Data], [Program], [Font], [Macro] or [Language].
3. Select the item to delete using the cursor up/down keys and press [Delete].
4. Data is deleted from the memory card.

**Print list of partitions**

Print the memory card contents (data names, data size, etc.) as a partition list.

1. Press [Memory Card].
2. Press [List of Partitions].
3. Press [Printing].
4. The partition list is printed.

**RAM disk operation**

Before using the RAM disk function, set RAM disk to [On] from the RAM disk configuration item and set the RAM disk size. After RAM disk configuration is complete, perform the following operations.

- Write Data
- Print List of Partitions
- Read Data (data, programs)
- Deleting Data (data, fonts, programs, or macros)

The RAM disk function is not available when a hard disk is installed.

All of its contents are erased when this device is reset or switched off.

The RAM disk is created from a portion of this device's memory available for use by users. Therefore, depending on RAM disk configuration, print speed may be reduced or printing problems may arise due to insufficient memory.

RAM disk usage steps are the same as the memory card usage steps.

**RAM disk setting**

To use the RAM disk function, set it to [On] (enabled).

1. Press [RAM DISK Mode].
2. Press [On].
3. Press [Close].
4. Press [Yes].
5. This device restarts.



**RAM disk size setting**

Specify the amount of memory from this device total memory to allocate to the RAM disk. Enabling this function allows the use of electronic sorting and decreasing total printing time.

Set the RAM Disk data size after setting RAM Disk mode to [On].

1. Press [RAM DISK Mode].
2. Press [RAM Disk Size].
3. Press [+] or [-] to set the RAM Disk size.  
The maximum size that can be allocated is the amount of total memory minus 36 MB.
4. Press [Close].
5. If the memory size has been changed, press [Yes].
6. This device restarts.

**Hard disk operation**

The following hard disk operations become available after installing the optional hard disk.

- Write Data
  - Print List of Partitions
  - Read Data (data, programs)
  - Delete Data (data, fonts, programs, or macros)
  - Hard Disk Format (Initialization)
- Hard disk usage steps are the same as the memory card usage steps.

**Hard disk format (initialization)**

Hard disk formatting (initialization) must be performed when the hard disk is first installed to the printer.

1. Press [Hard Disk].
2. Press [Format].
3. Press [Yes].
4. Hard disk formatting begins.

**Form feed timeout**

After receiving the last data from the computer, and if no response is received from the computer indicating the data transmission has ended, this device will wait a predetermined time before printing the last page. After this predetermined time, the page will be fed automatically.

Set the form feed timeout to '0' to prevent form feed until [GO] is pressed manually.

1. Press [Others].
2. Select [Form Feed Time Out] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press [+] or [-] to set the form feed wait time.
4. Press [Close].

**Setting resource protect mode**

When this device's emulation switches from PCL 6 to another emulation type, all downloaded fonts and macros are lost. Set the Resource Protect Mode to Protect or Permanent to protect the PCL environment and preserve those resources for use when again returning to PCL 6 emulation.

1. Press [Others].
2. Select [Resource Protect] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press [Off], [Permanent] or [Permanent/Temporary].
4. Press [Close].

**Auto continue**

When an error occurs, automatically continues printing from the next received data after the specified period of time.

Auto continue can continue printing after the following errors.

- [Print Overrun Press GO.]
- [Memory overflow Press GO.]

Also, specify the time delay before Auto continue.

1. Press [Others].
2. Select [Auto Continue] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Press [On] or [Off].  
If [On] is pressed, press [+] or [-] to set the Auto Continue delay time.
4. Press [Close].

**Setting stapling error detection**

Set whether to show an error message during stapling when the staple supply is exhausted.

1. Press [Others].
2. Select [Finishing Error] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Select [Staple Mode] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
4. Press [On] or [Off].
5. Press [Close].

**Setting duplex mode printing error detection**

For duplex mode printing, set whether to detect the paper size and type and show an error message for paper that does not support duplex printing.

1. Press [Others].
2. Select [Finishing Error] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
3. Select [Proces. Duplex Print] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
4. Press [On] or [Off].
5. Press [Close].

**Service settings**

Use to print a service status page for reference during maintenance or service.

1. Press [Others].
2. Press [Service].
3. Press [Print Status Page].
4. Press [Printing].
5. The service status page begins.

**Printer reset (reboot)**

Reset the printer function only without switching off (O position) the main power switch.

1. Press [Others].
2. Press [Printer Reset].
3. Press [Yes].
4. The printer board reboots.

**Dump received data**

Print a hexadecimal output of received data for program or file debugging.

1. Press [Others].
2. Press [Print HEX-DUMP].
3. Press [Yes]. Processing is displayed, followed by Page remaining.
4. Send data to this device while it is in this state.
5. The dump page is printed.
6. Press [GO].

**(6) Scanner default settings****Original Density**

Set the image quality for default settings mode.

1. Select [Original density] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Text+Photo], [Photo], [Text] or [OCR].

**Density adjustment (auto)**

Adjusts the overall dark/light balance when density adjustment is set to [Auto].

1. Select [Density Adjustment (Auto)] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [Lighter] or [Darker] to adjust the density.

**Density adjustment. (manual)**

Adjusts the overall dark/light balance when density adjustment is set to [Manual].

1. Select [Density Adjust. (Manual)] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [Lighter] or [Darker] to adjust the density.

**File type**

Configure the file type for default settings mode.

1. Select [File Type] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select the file type.

**PDF/JPEG quality**

Configure the image quality for [PDF] or [JPEG] file types for default settings mode.

1. Select [PDF/JPEG Quality] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [Low] or [High] to adjust image quality.

**High compression PDF quality**

Configure the image quality for [HiComp. PDF Color] file type for default settings mode.

1. Select [High Comp. PDF Quality] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press the cursor left/right keys to adjust image quality.

**Color output type**

Configure the color output type.

1. Select [Color Output Type] ([Colour Output Type]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [RGB] or [sRGB].

**Scan resolution**

Set the scan resolution for default settings mode.

1. Select [Scan Resolution] ([Scanning Resolution]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [200dpi], [300dpi], [400dpi] or [600dpi].

**Batch scanning**

Configure batch scanning for default settings mode.

1. Select [Batch Scanning] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [On] or [Off].

**One page per file**

Configure One Page Per File for default settings mode.

1. Select [One Page Per File] ([Output Each Page]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [On] or [Off].

**File name**

Set the scanner image filename for default settings mode.

1. Select [File Name] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [Change].
3. Enter the filename and press [End].

**Auto center**

Configure Auto Center for default settings mode.

1. Select [Auto Center] ([Image shift]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [On] or [Off].

**Continuous scanning**

Use the same settings from a previously completed transmission for the next transmission.

1. Select [Continuous Sending] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [On] or [Off].

**File name input**

File Name Input configure the machine to display the file-name input box without displaying the auto/manual selection screen.

1. Select [File Name Input] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Manual] or [Auto/Manual].

**Skip sender (user) select**

Set [Selec. of senders (users)] to set the sender (user) to User No. 001 and skip the sender (user) selection step.

1. Select [Selec. of senders (users)] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [On] or [Off].

**Enter E-mail address**

When sending E-mail, specify whether to directly enter the mail address when selecting recipients.

1. Select [Input E-mail Address] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [On] or [Off].

**Color mode setting**

Set the color mode for default settings mode.

1. Select [Color setting] ([Colour setting]) using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Press [Auto color key] ([Auto col. key]), [Full-Color key] ([Full col. key]) or [B&W key].

**B&W setting**

Set the B&W mode for default settings mode.

1. Select [B&W setting] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
2. Select [Black&white] or [Gray scale].

**(7) Fax default setting**

This setting is shown only when the optional FAX kit has been installed. For details, refer to the FAX Kit service manual.

## (8) Setting MP tray

### Specifying the paper size to the MP tray

#### Auto detect

The paper size is automatically detected.

1. Press [Auto Detection].
2. Select [Centimeter] ([Centimetre]) or [Inch].

#### Other standard sizes

Specify special standard sizes.

1. Press [Others Standard] and press [Select size].
2. Select the paper size.
3. Press [Close].

#### Input size

Specify the required paper size.

1. Press [Input size].
2. Press [+] and [-] to set the [Y] (height) size.  
Metric models only  
Enter the size directly using the numeric keys by pressing [#-Keys].  
Setting range  
Inch models: 3 7/8 - 11 5/8" (1/8" increments)  
Metric models: 98 - 297 mm (1 mm increments)
3. Press [+] and [-] to set the [X] (width) size.  
Metric models only  
Enter the size directly using the numeric keys by pressing [#-Keys].  
Setting range  
Inch models: 5 7/8 - 17" (1/8" increments)  
Metric models: 148 - 432 mm (1 mm increments)

#### Custom size

Store frequently used paper sizes (1 - 4) as custom sizes.

1. Press [Others Standard] and press [Select size].
2. Select the paper size from [Custom Size] ([Use regist]).

### Specifying the paper type to the MP tray

1. Press [Select Paper Type].
2. Select the paper type.  
Plain/Transparency/Rough/Vellum/Labels/Recycled/Preprinted/Bond/Cardstock/Color (Colour) /  
Prepunched/Letterhead/Thick paper/Envelope/  
Coated/High Quality/Custom 1 - 8
3. Press [Close].

## (9) Registering non-standard sizes for originals

Pre-register 4 types of non-standard original sizes.

1. Select the number to register from [Original Size (custom 1 - 4)] and press [Change #].
2. Press [Set].
3. Press [+] or [-] to set the Y (height) size.  
Setting range  
Inch models: 2 - 11 5/8" (1/8" increments)  
Metric models: 50 - 297 mm (1 mm increments)
4. Press [+] or [-] to set the Y (height) size.  
Setting range  
Inch models: 2 - 17" (1/8" increments)  
Metric models: 50 - 432 mm (1 mm increments)
5. Press [Close].

## (10) User adjustment

### Color calibration

Using this function enables printing in the most appropriate color by adjusting hue and color drift in detail. Use auto gray adjust when the color is not enhanced even after performing color calibration. If the hue and color are not enhanced, use color registration.

1. Press [Color Calibrat.] ([Colour Calibrat.]).
2. Press [On].
3. Color calibration begins. The process takes approx. 45 seconds.
4. Press [Close].

### Auto gray adjust

Use this function to correct color settings when the color of a finished copy does not match the original. Perform color calibration before using auto gray adjust. Use auto gray adjust when the color is not enhanced even after performing color calibration.

To perform auto gray adjust, verify that either 11 x 8 1/2" or A4 paper is loaded into a cassette.

1. Press [Auto gray adjust] ([Auto Grey Adjust]).
2. Use numeric keys to enter the 4 digit management code.

The default setting is 2500 for the 25/20 ppm model and 3200 for the 32/25 and 32/32 ppm models.

If the optional security kit has been installed, the default setting is 25002500 for the 25/20 ppm model and 32003200 for the 32/25 and 32/32 ppm models.

3. Press [On].
4. A color pattern is printed.  
Check that one Magenta color box appears at the top right of the color pattern.
5. Place the printed side down on the platen with the three black boxes aligned to the top.
6. Press [Start].
7. The color pattern is read and adjustment begins.
8. The second color pattern is output.
9. Repeat Steps 5 - 7.

The number of magenta boxes at the top right of the color pattern represents the color pattern number. Do not mistake the first and second color patterns.

10. Press [Close].

### Color registration

Use this function to correct the color position of each of cyan, magenta and yellow to resolve color drift.

Normal registration and detailed settings are available for Color Registration. Color drift can be largely corrected through normal registration. However, if it is not resolved or to perform more detailed settings, use the detailed settings.

To perform color registration, verify that either 11 x 8 1/2" or A4 paper is loaded into a cassette.

### Normal registration

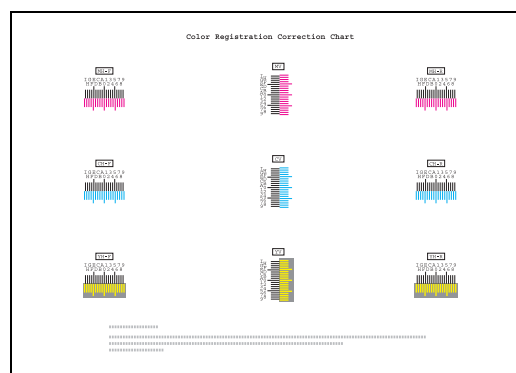
Cancels regular color variances.

1. Press [Color Regist.] ([Colour Regist.]).
2. Use numeric keys to enter the 4 digit management code.

The default setting is 2500 for the 25/20 ppm model and 3200 for the 32/25 and 32/32 ppm models.

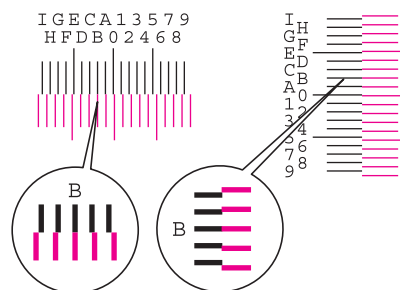
If the optional security kit has been installed, the default setting is 25002500 for the 25/20 ppm model and 32003200 for the 32/25 and 32/32 ppm models.

3. Press [PRT Chart].
4. A chart is printed. On the chart, for each of M (magenta), C (cyan) and Y (yellow), 3 chart types are printed: H-F, V, H-R.



5. Find the location on each chart where 2 lines most closely overlap each other. If this is the 0 position, registration for that color is not required.

For the illustration, B is the appropriate value.



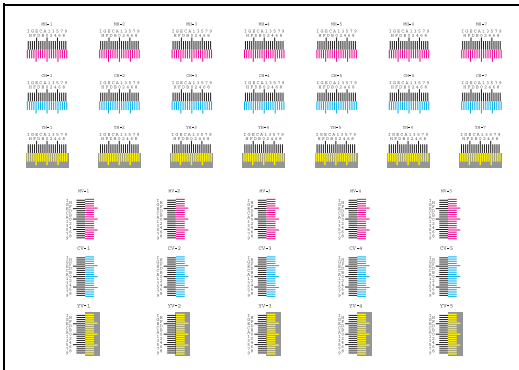
6. Press [Input Reg. value].
7. Press [+] or [-] to enter the values for H-F, V, and H-R from the chart for M (magenta).  
Press [+] to increase the value from 0 to 9. To decrease, press [-].  
By pressing [-], the value changes from 0 to alphabetic letters, going from A to I. To move in the reverse direction, press [+].

8. Press [Next] to continue entering the values for C (cyan) and Y (yellow). Press [Back] to return to the previous screen and reenter the values.
9. Press [Completed.].
10. Color registration begins.
11. Press [Close].

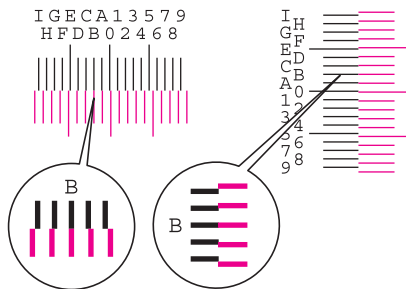
**Detailed settings**

Perform more detailed correction.

1. Press [Color Regist.] ([Colour Regist.]).
2. Use numeric keys to enter the 4 digit management code.  
The default setting is 2500 for the 25/20 ppm model and 3200 for the 32/25 and 32/32 ppm models. If the optional security kit has been installed, the default setting is 25002500 for the 25/20 ppm model and 32003200 for the 32/25 and 32/32 ppm models.
3. Press [Configuration].
4. Press [PrintChart (Details)].
5. A chart is printed. On the chart, for each of M (magenta), C (cyan) and Y (yellow), charts for H-1 to 7 (upper) and V-1 to 5 (lower) are printed.



6. Find the location on each chart where 2 lines most closely match. If this is the 0 position, registration for that color is not required. For the illustration, B is the appropriate value.



From the V-1 to 5 chart, read only the value for V-3 (the middle value).

7. Press [InputValue (Details)].

8. Press [+] or [-] to enter the value for H-1 from the chart for each of M (magenta), C (cyan) and Y (yellow). Press [+] to increase the value from 0 to 9. To decrease, press [-]. By pressing [-], the value changes from 0 to alphabetic letters, going from A to I. To move in the reverse direction, press [+].
9. Press [Next] to continue entering the values for H-2 to H-7, and V-3. Press [Back] to return to the previous screen and reenter the values.
10. Press [Completed.].
11. Color registration begins.
12. Press [Close].

**Drum refresh**

Refresh the drum when printed images are blurred or white spots appear on the image.

1. Press [Drum refresh].
2. Press [On].
3. Drum refresh begins. The process takes approx. 100 seconds.
4. Press [Close].

**Developer refresh**

When the printing is too light or incomplete, even though there is enough toner, refresh the developer.

1. Press [Developer refresh].
2. Use numeric keys to enter the 4 digit management code.  
The default setting is 2500 for the 25/20 ppm model and 3200 for the 32/25 and 32/32 ppm models. If the optional security kit has been installed, the default setting is 25002500 for the 25/20 ppm model and 32003200 for the 32/25 and 32/32 ppm models.
3. Press [On].
4. Developer refresh begins. The process takes approx. 140 seconds. Waiting time may be longer when the toner is refilled during developer refresh.
5. Press [Close].

**Laser scanner cleaning**

If the white or color streaks appear on images, perform Laser Scanner Cleaning.

1. Press [Laser Scan Cleaning].
2. Press [On].
3. Laser scanner cleaning begins. The process takes approx. 10 seconds.
4. Press [Close].

**(11) Setting document management defaults****Print document list**

Print the Document list for the Shared Data Box and Synergy Print Box.

Before list printing, verify that either 11 x 8 1/2" or A4 paper is loaded into a cassette.

1. From [Shared Data Box] or [Synergy Print Box], press [Print the list] for the box for which you would like to print the list.
2. Printing of the list begins.

**Resetting a document box**

Delete at once all documents stored in the Shared Data Box or Synergy Print Box.

1. From [Shared Data Box] or [Synergy Print Box], press [Reset Box] for the box you would like to reset.
2. Press [Yes].
3. All documents in the box are deleted.

**Setting box names and box passwords**

Set the box name and box password for each Synergy Print Box. When a box password is set, the password must be entered to print or delete documents stored in the Synergy Print Box.

1. Press [Box Editing].
2. Select the box to configure. Directly press the box key or use the numeric keys to input the box number and press [Enter].
3. Select [Box Name] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
4. Enter the box name and press [End].
5. Select [Password] using the cursor up/down keys and press [Change #].
6. Use the numeric keys to enter the password and press [Close]  
Set the box password in 8 digits or less.  
To skip setting a password, press [Clear] and press [Close], leaving the fields blank.
7. Press [Close].
8. To set another box, repeat steps 2 - 7.
9. Press [Cancel] ([Job cancel]).

**Deleting all documents in box**

Delete all documents in each Synergy Print Box.

1. Press [Box Editing].
2. Select the box to delete all documents. Directly press the box key or use the numeric keys to input the box number and press [Enter].
3. Press [Reset Box].
4. Press [Yes].
5. All documents in the box are deleted.
6. Press [Close].
7. Press [Cancel] ([Job cancel]).

**Specifying period to store documents**

Set to delete documents from a Synergy Print Box after storing them for a predefined period.

1. Press [Document save term] ([Document saving]).
2. Press [Set save period].  
Specify the period store the documents using [+] or [-] key.  
Setting range: 1 - 7 days.  
To indefinitely store the documents, press [No time limit].
3. Press [Close].

**(12) Hard disk management**

Verify available hard disk space and delete invalid data from the Hard Disk Management screen.

1. To verify available hard disk space or total capacity, press [On] below Check Hard Disk Capacity (on the left side of the screen).  
To delete invalid data, press [On] below Delete invalid data (on the right side of the screen).

**(13) Printing reports**

Print the following reports from the operation panel.

- Copy Status Report
- Machine Status Report
- Toner Coverage Report

The toner coverage report includes for each paper size details about the number of sheets printed and black coverage ratio. Print the following 4 report types.

- Total toner coverage report
- Copy toner coverage report
- Printer toner coverage report
- Fax toner coverage report

Before printing reports, verify that either 11 x 8 1/2" or A4 paper is loaded into a cassette.

1. Press the key for the report you would like to print.
2. Report printing begins.

**(14) Checking total copy count**

Check the total copy count from the operation panel.

Check the following values.

- Number of copies for each color mode, number of prints, number of faxes, and total of all of these
  - Number of original pages scanned for copy mode, scanner mode, and fax send mode, and total of all of these
- Also, print this information as a counter report.

Before printing reports, verify that either 11 x 8 1/2" or A4 paper is loaded into a cassette.

1. The counts are displayed on the touch panel.
2. To print a counter report, press [Print Report].

**(15) Language**

Select the language displayed on the touch panel.

1. Select the key for the language you would like to set.  
Inch models: English/French/Spanish/Japanese/  
Portuguese  
Metric models: English/German/French/Spanish/  
Italian
2. The touch panel display will change to that language.



## 1-4-1 Paper misfeed detection

### (1) Paper misfeed indication

When a paper misfeed occurs, the machine immediately stops copying and displays the jam location on the operation panel.

Paper misfeed counts sorted by the detection condition can be checked in maintenance item U903.

To remove paper jammed in the machine, open the left cover, paper conveying unit, fuser cover, pull the cassette out or pull the MP conveying unit out.

To remove original jammed in optional DP, open the DP original cover or switchback unit.

To remove the jammed paper in optional 3000-sheet document finisher or document finisher, detach the finisher from the machine.

Paper misfeed detection can be reset by opening and closing the respective covers to turn safety switch off and on.

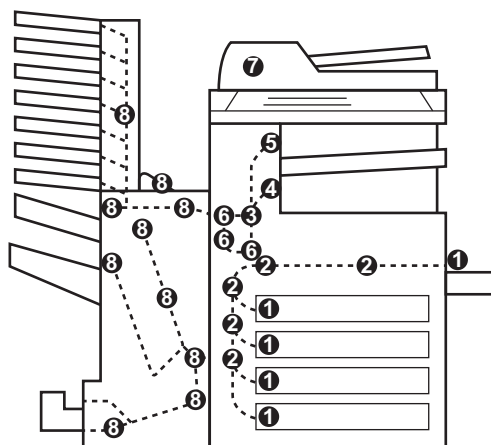


Figure 1-4-1

- (1) Misfeed in the paper feed section
- (2) Misfeed in the paper conveying section
- (3) Misfeed in the fuser section
- (4) Misfeed in the eject section
- (5) Misfeed in the feedshift section
- (6) Misfeed in the duplex section
- (7) Misfeed in optional DP
- (8) Misfeed in optional document finisher

(2) Paper misfeed detection conditions

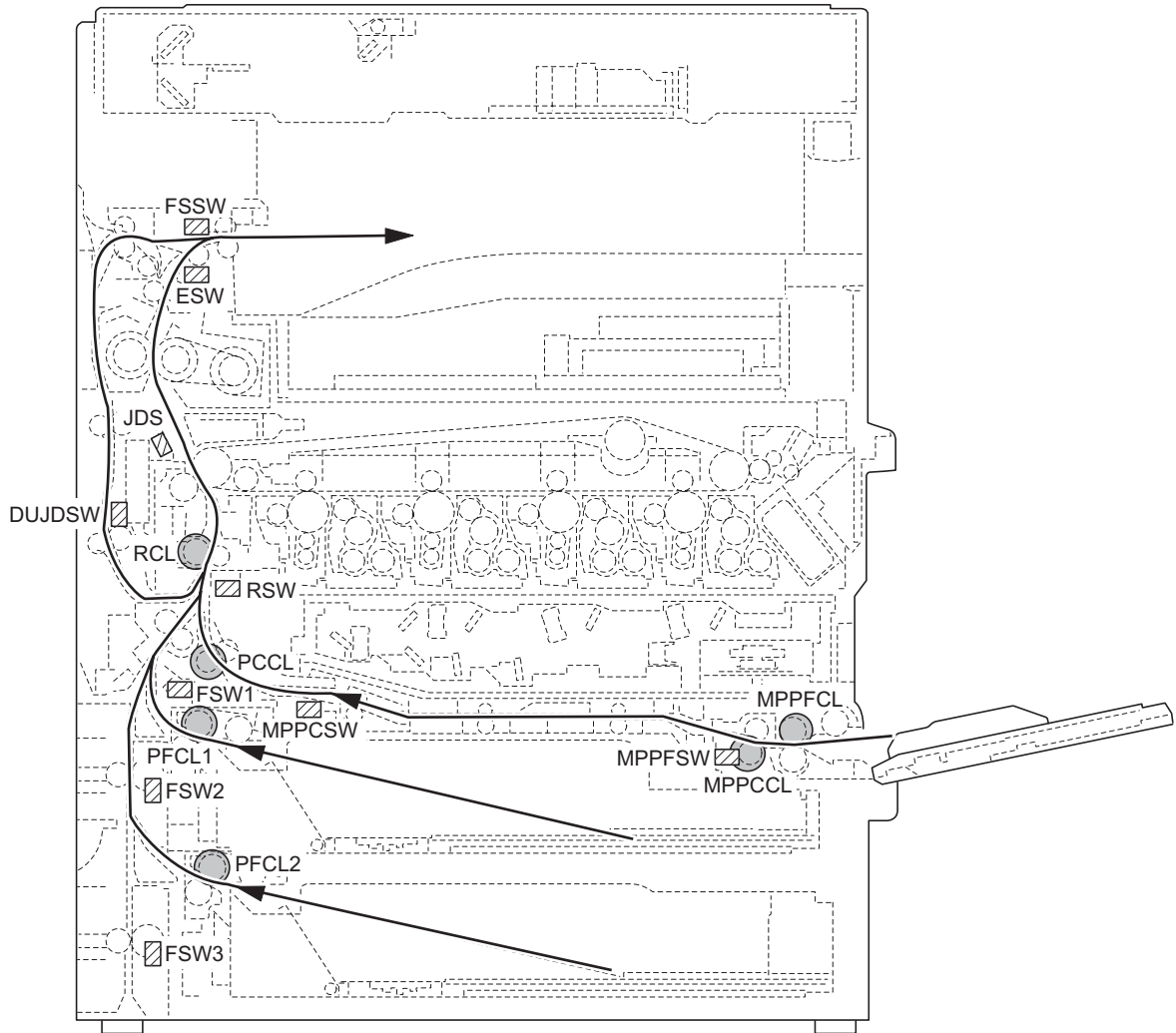


Figure 1-4-2

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time
Paper feed section	10 No paper feed from cassette 1	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	1690 ms
	11 No paper feed from cassette 2	Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	1776 ms
	12 No paper feed from optional cassette 3	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time (paper feed from optional paper feeder).	1828 ms
		Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 (PFPFCL1) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper feeder).	2393 ms
	13 No paper feed from optional cassette 4	The paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) does not turn on within the specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFPFCL2) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time (paper feed from optional paper feeder).	1828 ms
	14 No paper feed from MP tray	The MP feed switch (MPPFSW) does not turn on within the specified time of the MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL) turning on; the clutch is then successively turned off for 1 s and turned back on, but the switch again fails to turn on within the specified time.	1519 ms
	15 Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 1	Paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) does not turn on within specified time of paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2) turning on (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper).	963 ms
	16 Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 2	Paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) does not turn on within specified time of the paper path sensor 3 (PPSENS3) turning on (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper).	1029 ms
	17 Jam in paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section 3	Paper path sensor 1 (PPSENS1) does not turn on within specified time of the paper path sensor 2 (PPSENS2) turning on (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper).	631 ms
	18 Misfeed in vertical paper conveying section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning on.	1388 ms
		Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on.	1026 ms
		Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn on within specified time of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on.	2105 ms
		Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning off.	1026 ms
		Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning off.	2105 ms

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time
Paper feed section	18 Misfeed in vertical paper conveying section	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of feed switch 2 (FSW2) turning on.	1026 ms
		Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of feed switch 3 (FSW3) turning on.	1118 ms
	19 Misfeed in paper feeder paper conveying section	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn on within specified time of paper feeder feed switch (PFFSW) turning on.	1842 ms
	21 Misfeed in MP tray vertical paper conveying section	The MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW) does not turn off within specified time from start of paper feed.	1519 ms
		The MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	Paper length +1973 ms
	22 Multiple sheets in cassette 1 paper feed section	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time from start of paper feed.	1690 ms
		Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	Paper length +1644 ms
	23 Multiple sheets in cassette 2 paper feed section	Feed switch 1 (FSW1) does not turn off within specified time from start of paper feed.	1776 ms
		Feed switch 2 (FSW2) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	Paper length +1644 ms
	24 Multiple sheets in optional cassette 3 paper feed section	Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from optional paper feeder).	3960 ms
		Feed switch 3 (FSW3) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on (paper feed from optional 3000-sheet paper feeder).	1867 ms
	25 Multiple sheets in optional cassette 4 paper feed section	The paper feeder feed switch 1 (PFFSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	3960 ms
	26 Multiple sheets in MP tray paper feed section	The MP paper conveying switch (MPPCSW) does not turn on within specified time of MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW) turning on.	3460 ms
		The MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	3460 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of MP paper conveying switch (MPPCSW) turning on.	2750 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW) turning on.	2750 ms

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time
Paper conveying section	04 Cover open	Cover is open during paper conveying.	-
	05 Memory read ready time-out	Secondary paper feed does not start even if 45 s elapse after the registration switch (RSW) is turned on and primary paper feed is complete.	40 s
	30 Paper jam on the registration/transfer section	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of feed switch 1 (FSW1) turning off.	1486 ms
	31 Misfeed round the transfer belt	The jam detection sensor (JDS) does not turn on within specified time of the registration clutch (RCL) turning on.	961 ms
Fuser section	40 Misfeed in fuser section (MP tray)	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn on within specified time of the jam detection sensor (JDS) turning on.	697 ms
	41 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 1)	The feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the jam detection sensor (JDS) turning on.	710 ms
	42 Misfeed in fuser section (cassette 2)		
	43 Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 3)		
	44 Misfeed in fuser section (optional cassette 4)		
	45 Misfeed in fuser section (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)		
	46 Misfeed in fuser section (duplex section)		
Eject section	50 Misfeed in eject section	The eject switch (ESW) does not turn off within specified time of the jam detection sensor (JDS) turning off.	2453 ms
	51 Misfeed in job separator eject section	The job eject switch (JBESW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	1434 ms
		The job eject switch (JBESW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.	1105 ms
Feedshift section	52 Misfeed in feedshift section	During paper switchback operation, the feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn on within specified time of the eject switch (ESW) turning on.	1809 ms
		During paper switchback operation, the feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the eject switch (ESW) turning off.	822 ms
		During paper switchback operation, the feedshift switch (FSSW) does not turn off within specified time of the registration switch (RSW) turning off (eject to optional job separator or finisher).	2046 ms

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time
Duplex section	60 Duplex paper conveying section 1	The duplex jam detection switch (DUJDSW) does not turn on within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning on.	3006 ms
		The duplex jam detection switch (DUJDSW) does not turn off within specified time of the feedshift switch (FSSW) turning off.	3006 ms
	61 Duplex paper conveying section 2	The registration switch (RSW) does not turn on within specified time of the duplex jam detection switch (DUJDSW) turning on.	1427 ms
		The registration switch (RSW) does not turn off within specified time of the duplex jam detection switch (DUJDSW) turning off.	1427 ms
Optional DP	70 No original feed	In the single-sided or double-sided original mode, primary original feed does not start.	-
	71 An original jam in the original feed/conveying section	During the secondary original feed in the single-sided original mode, the DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn on within specified time.	1740 ms
	72 An original jam in the original feed/conveying section 2	During the secondary original feed in the single-sided original mode, the original feed switch (OFSW) or original switchback switch (OSBSW) does not turn off within specified time.	5956 ms
		During original switchback operation in the double-sided original mode, the original feed switch (OFSW) or original switchback switch (OSBSW) does not turn off within specified time.	4318 ms
	73 An original jam in the original conveying section	During the secondary original feed in the single-sided or double-sided original mode, the DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn off within specified time.	3784 ms
	74 An original jam in the original registration section	The original switchback switch (OSBSW) does not turn on within specified time.	2045 ms
	75 An original jam in the original registration section	In the single-sided original mode, the DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn on within specified time.	1740 ms
		In the double-sided original mode, the DP timing switch (DPTSW) does not turn on within specified time.	907 ms
		In the single-sided original mode, the original feed switch (OFSW) does not turn off within specified time.	5956 ms
		In the double-sided original mode, the original switchback switch (OSBSW) does not turn off within specified time.	4318 ms
76 An original jam in the original feed/conveying section	During the secondary original feed in the single-sided original mode, the original switchback switch (OSBSW) does not turn on within specified time.	2774 ms	
78 DP cover open	DP cover is open.	-	
Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder	09 Paper feeder sequence error	Sequence error is occurred between the machine and paper feeder.	-
Optional finisher	80 Jam between the finisher and machine	Paper ejection is not output from the machine to the document finisher within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	15 s

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time
Optional finisher	81 Paper entry sensor non arrival jam	(3000-sheet document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned off even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1592 ms
		The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1592 ms
		The paper entry sensor (PES) does not turn off within specified time of its turning on.	3500 ms
		(Document finisher) The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	2539 ms
82 Jam in stapler		(3000-sheet document finisher) The home position is not detected within the specified time when driving the staple motor.	600 ms
		(Document finisher) The staple home position sensor (STSPS) is not turned on within the specified time when driving the staple motor (STM).	1000 ms
83 Exit sensor stay jam		(3000-sheet document finisher) Eject switch 1 (ESW1) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	1404 ms
		(Document finisher) In the straight mode, the exit sensor (EXS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	1680 ms
		(Document finisher) In the offset or staple mode, the exit sensor (EXS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	5375 ms
84 Jam in eject section of right sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)		Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned off even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1828 ms
		Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the machine eject signal was received.	1828 ms
		Eject switch 2 (ESW2) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	3500 ms
85 Jam in eject section of left sub tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)		Eject switch 3 (ESW3) does not turn off within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	2157 ms
		Eject switch 3 (ESW3) does not turn on within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	2157 ms
		Eject switch 3 (ESW3) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	3500 ms

Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time
Optional finisher	87 Jam in eject section of internal tray 2 (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Internal tray entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) does not turn on within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	4059 ms
		Internal tray entry sensor 2 (ITPES2) does not turn off within specified time of the paper entry sensor (PES) turning off.	1371 ms
	88 Jam in eject section of main tray (3000-sheet document finisher only)	Eject switch 1 (ESW1) is not turned on within specified time.	1324 ms
	89 Jam in centerfold unit (3000-sheet document finisher only)	The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) does not turn off within specified time of centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) turning on.	1370 ms
		The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) does not turn on within specified time of centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) turning on.	1370 ms
		The centerfold paper entry sensor (CPES) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
		The centerfold eject switch (CESW) is not turned on within specified time.	4800 ms
		The centerfold eject switch (CESW) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	8200 ms
		Centerfold side registration sensor 1 (CSRS1) is not turned on within specified time.	600 ms
		Centerfold side registration sensor 2 (CSRS2) is not turned on within specified time.	600 ms
		The home position is not detected within the specified time after driving the centerfold staple motor (CSTM).	1000 ms
		The centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) is not turned off within specified time.	5302 ms
		The centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) is not turned on within specified time.	5302 ms
		The centerfold paper conveying sensor (CPCS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	2313 ms
	90 Jam in mailbox (3000-sheet document finisher only)	The mail paper entry switch (MPESW) is not turned on within specified time.	1539 ms
		The mail paper entry switch (MPESW) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	3500 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) does not turn on within specified time of mail paper entry switch (MPESW) turning on.	3065 ms 1736 ms
		The tray eject sensor (TEJS) is not turned off within specified time of its turning on.	3500 ms



Section	Jam code	Conditions	Specified time
Optional finisher	91 Finisher cover open	(3000-sheet document finisher) The front cover, top cover or right sub tray is opened when starting the finisher operation. The centerfold unit top cover is opened when starting the centerfold operation. The mailbox cover is opened when starting the operation.	-
		(Document finisher) The finisher cover becomes open during paper is running. Paper is remaining in paths at power on.	-
	92 Exit sensor non-arrival jam (document finisher only)	In the straight mode, the exit sensor (EXS) is not turned on even if a specified time has elapsed after the paper entry sensor (PES) was turned on.	1770 ms
	93 Reverse sensor jam (document finisher only)	The reverse sensor (REVS) does not turn on within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning on.	1036 ms
		The reverse sensor (REVS) is not turned on within specified time.	435 ms
		The reverse sensor (REVS) does not turn off within specified time of paper entry sensor (PES) turning off.	601 ms
		The reverse sensor (REVS) is not turned off within specified time its turning on.	Depends on paper size
	94 Paper entry sensor stay/remaining jam (document finisher only)	The paper entry sensor (PES) is not turned off within specified time its turning on.	Depends on paper size
	95 Paper conveying sensor jam (document finisher only)	The paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn on within specified time of reverse sensor (REVS) turning on.	753 ms
		The paper conveying sensor (PCS) does not turn off within specified time of reverse sensor (REVS) turning off.	1004 ms

**(3) Paper misfeeds**

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(1) A paper jam in the paper feed, conveying, duplex or eject section is indicated as soon as the power switch is turned on.	A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around feed switches, MP paper feed switch, MP paper conveying switch, registration switch, duplex jam detection switch, eject switch, feedshift switch.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, MP paper feed switch, MP paper conveying switch, registration switch, duplex jam detection switch, eject switch, feedshift switch
(2) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 1). Jam code 10	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of cassette 1 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
(3) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from cassette 2). Jam code 11	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of cassette 2 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 2 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 2.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see page 1-4-57).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(4) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from optional cassette 3). Jam code 12	Optional paper feeder	
	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of optional cassette 3 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
	Optional 3000-sheet paper feeder	
	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if the clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select following clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Paper feeder paper feed clutch 1/2, paper feeder paper conveying clutch
	Electrical problem with clutch.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(5) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from optional cassette 4). Jam code 13	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper feed pulley, forwarding pulley and separation pulley of optional cassette 4 are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken paper feeder feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective paper feeder feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-8 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if YC2-7 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when the paper feeder feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper feeder feed switch.
	Check if paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).	

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(6) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (no paper feed from MP tray). Jam code 14	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the MP paper feed pulley, MP forwarding pulley and MP separation pulley are deformed.	Check visually and replace any deformed pulleys.
	Broken MP paper feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective MP paper feed switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn MP paper feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Check if clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U032 and select MP paper feed clutch/MP paper conveying clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with MP paper feed clutch/MP paper conveying clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
	Defective MP solenoid.	Run maintenance item U033 and select MP solenoid on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(7) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 15	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 3.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-12 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if CN6-11 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when paper path sensor 3 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 3.
	Check if paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(8) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 16	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 2.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-9 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if CN6-8 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when paper path sensor 2 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 2.
	Check if paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(9) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in 3000-sheet paper feeder horizontal paper conveying section). Jam code 17	Check if the paper side guides are deformed.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper path sensor 1.	With 5 V DC present at CN6-6 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if CN6-5 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when paper path sensor 1 is turned on and off. If it does, replace paper path sensor 1.
	Check if paper feeder paper conveying clutch malfunctions.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper conveying clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper conveying clutch.	Check (see service manual of 3000-sheet paper feeder).
(10) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 18	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1/2/3, registration switch
	Defective paper conveying clutch.	Run maintenance item U032 and select paper conveying clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper conveying clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
(11) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (jam in optional paper feeder vertical paper conveying section). Jam code 19	Broken feed switch 3 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(12) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in MP tray). Jam code 21	Broken MP paper feed switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective MP paper feed switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn MP paper feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective paper conveying clutch.	Run maintenance item U032 and select paper conveying clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper conveying clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-57).

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(13) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in cassette 1). Jam code 22	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 1.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective clutch.	Run maintenance item U032 and select paper conveying clutch/ paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper conveying clutch/ paper feed clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
(14) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in cassette 2). Jam code 23	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 1/2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective paper feed clutch 2.	Run maintenance item U032 and select paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
(15) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in optional cassette 3). Jam code 24	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feed switch 3.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn feed switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective paper feeder paper feed clutch 1.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 1 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 1.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.
(16) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in optional cassette 4). Jam code 25	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective paper feeder feed switch.	With 5 V DC present at YC2-8 on the paper feeder main PWB, check if YC2-7 on the paper feeder main PWB remains low when the paper feeder feed switch is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper feeder feed switch.
	Defective paper feeder paper feed clutch 2.	Run maintenance item U247 and select paper feeder paper feed clutch 2 on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper feeder paper feed clutch 2.	Check (see service manual of paper feeder).
	Defective feed pulleys or feed rollers.	Check visually and replace.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(17) A paper jam in the paper feed section is indicated during copying (multiple sheets in MP tray). Jam code 26	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. MP paper feed switch, MP paper conveying switch, registration switch
	Defective paper conveying clutch.	Run maintenance item U032 and select paper conveying clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with paper conveying clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
(18) A paper jam in the paper conveying section is indicated during copying (jam in registration/transfer section). Jam code 30	Broken feed switch 1 actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch 1, registration switch
	The contact between the right and left registration rollers is not correct.	Check visually and replace.
	Defective registration clutch.	Run maintenance item U032 and select registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
(19) A paper jam in the paper conveying section is indicated during copying (jam round the transfer belt). Jam code 31	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feed switch, registration switch, jam detection switch
	Defective registration clutch.	Run maintenance item U032 and select registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
(20) A paper jam in the fuser section is indicated during copying (jam in fuser section). Jam code 40 to 46	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Jam detection switch, eject switch, feedshift switch
(21) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (jam in eject section). Jam code 50	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective eject switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the eject switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes/check procedures</b>	<b>Corrective measures</b>
(22) A paper jam in the eject section is indicated during copying (jam in optional job separator eject section). Jam code 51	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch, job eject switch
(23) A paper jam in the feedshift section is indicated during copying (jam in feedshift section). Jam code 52	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective feedshift switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the feedshift switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(24) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (jam in duplex paper conveying section 1). Jam code 60	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Feedshift switch, duplex jam detection switch
(25) A paper jam in the duplex section is indicated during copying (jam in duplex paper conveying section 2). Jam code 61	Broken switch actuator.	Check visually and replace switch.
	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Registration switch, duplex jam detection switch
	Defective registration clutch.	Run maintenance item U032 and select registration clutch on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
	Electrical problem with registration clutch.	Check (see page 1-4-57).
(26) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (no original feed). Jam code 70	Defective original feed switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original feed switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Defective original feed motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select original feed motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary.
(27) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original feed/conveying section 1). Jam code 71	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. DP timing switch, original feed switch, original switchback switch
	Defective pulleys or rollers.	Check visually and replace. DP feed pulley, DP separation pulley DP registration roller, DP registration pulley Lower conveying roller, reading pulley
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor



<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes/check procedures</b>	<b>Corrective measures</b>
(28) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original feed/conveying section 2). Jam code 72	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. DP timing switch, original feed switch, original switchback switch
	Defective pulleys or rollers.	Check visually and replace. DP feed pulley, DP separation pulley DP registration roller, DP registration pulley Lower conveying roller, reading pulley
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor
(29) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (a jam in the original conveying section). Jam code 73	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. DP timing switch, original feed switch, original switchback switch
	Defective pulleys or rollers.	Check visually and replace. DP feed pulley, DP separation pulley DP registration roller, DP registration pulley Lower conveying roller, reading pulley
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor
(30) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original registration section). Jam code 74	Defective original switchback switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the original switchback switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(31) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original registration section). Jam code 75	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. DP timing switch, original feed switch, original switchback switch
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor
(32) An original jams in optional DP is indicated during copying (jam in the original feed/registration section). Jam code 76	Defective switch.	Run maintenance item U244 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Original feed switch, original switchback switch
	Defective motor.	Run maintenance item U243 and select the following motor on the touch panel to be turned on and off. Check the status and remedy if necessary. Original feed motor, original conveying motor
(33) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (jam between finisher and machine). Jam code 80	Defective paper entry sensor.	(3000-sheet document finisher) Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper entry sensor on and off manually. Replace the sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
		(Document finisher) With 5 V DC present at CN14-1 and CN14-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-2 and CN14-4 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(34) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (paper jam during paper insertion to the finisher). Jam code 81	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	(3000-sheet document finisher) Run maintenance item U241 and turn the paper entry sensor on and off manually. Replace the sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.  (Document finisher) With 5 V DC present at CN14-1 and CN14-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-2 and CN14-4 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(35) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (finisher stapler jam). Jam code 82	Defective staple home position sensor.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the staple home position sensor on and off manually. Replace the sensor if indication of the corresponding sensor on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(36) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (eject sensor stay jam). Jam code 83	3000-sheet document finisher	
	Defective eject switch 1.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
	Document finisher	
	Defective eject sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN5-4 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN5-6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the eject sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the eject sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the exit roller and exit pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the exit guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.	
(37) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (right sub tray eject jam). Jam code 84	Defective eject switch 2.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(38) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (left sub tray eject jam). Jam code 85	Defective eject switch 3.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 3 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(39) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (internal tray paper entry sensor 2 jam). Jam code 87	Defective internal tray paper entry sensor 2.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn internal tray paper entry sensor 2 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(40) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (main tray eject jam). Jam code 88	Defective eject switch 1.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn eject switch 1 on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(41) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (centerfold unit jam). Jam code 89	Defective sensor/switch.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Centerfold paper entry sensor, centerfold eject switch, centerfold paper conveying sensor
(42) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (mailbox jam). Jam code 90	Defective sensor/switch.	Run maintenance item U241 and turn the following switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse. Mail paper entry switch, tray eject sensor
(43) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (eject sensor non-arrival jam). Jam code 92	Defective eject sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN5-4 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN5-6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the exit sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the exit sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the exit roller and exit pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the exit guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(44) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (reverse sensor jam). Jam code 93	Defective reverse sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN14-5 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-7 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the reverse sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the reverse sensor.
	Check if the reverse motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the reverse roller and reverse pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the reverse guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(45) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (paper entry sensor stay jam). Jam code 94	Extremely curled paper.	Change the paper.
	Defective paper entry sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN14-1 and CN14-3 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN14-2 and CN14-4 on the main PCB remains low or high when the paper entry sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper entry sensor.
	Check if the paper entry guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
(46) A paper jam in optional document finisher is indicated during copying (paper conveying sensor jam). Jam code 95	Defective paper conveying sensor.	With 5 V DC present at CN4-4 on the finisher main PWB, check if CN4-6 on the finisher main PWB remains low or high when the paper conveying sensor is turned on and off. If it does, replace the paper conveying sensor.
	Check if the paper conveying motor malfunctions.	Check.
	Check if the paper conveying roller and paper conveying pulley contact each other.	Check and remedy.
	Check if the paper conveying guide is deformed.	Check and remedy.
	Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

## 1-4-2 Self-diagnosis

### (1) Self-diagnostic function

This unit is equipped with a self-diagnostic function. When a problem is detected, copying is disabled and the problem displayed as a code consisting of C followed by a number, indicating the nature of the problem. A message is also displayed requesting the user to call for service.

After removing the problem, the self-diagnostic function can be reset by turning cover switch off and back on.



Figure 1-4-3

### List of system errors

When an unexpected error is detected for some reason, a system error will be indicated. (When 0800 error is detected, JAM05 is indicated.) After a system error is indicated, the error can be cleared by turning the power switch off and then on. If the error is detected continuously, however, perform the operation shown in Table 1-4-1. If a system error occurs frequently, a fault may have occurred. Check the details of the C call to take proper measures.

System error	Contents	Operation
0250	Network scanner PWB communication problem	System error → Normal service call processing
0410	DP communication problem (optional DP)	System error → Service call → Partial operation control
0420	Paper feeder communication error (optional paper feeder)	System error → Service call → Partial operation control
0440	Document finisher communication problem (optional document finisher)	System error → Service call → Partial operation control
0610	Bitmap problem	System error → Normal service call processing
0630	DMA problem	System error → Normal service call processing
0640	Hard disk drive problem	System error → Service call → Partial operation control
0800	Secondary feed time-out	Repetition of JAM05 → System error → JAM05
3100	Scanner carriage problem	System error → Normal service call processing
4100	BD initialization problem	System error → Normal service call processing
4200	BD steady-state problem	System error → Normal service call processing

Table 1-4-1

**Partial operation control**

If one of the following service codes is detected, partial operation control will be activated. Take actions to clear the cause of the trouble and perform maintenance item U906 to reset partial operation control.

Code	Contents
C0840	Faults of RTC
C1010	Lift motor 1 error
C1020	Lift motor 2 error
C1030	Paper feeder lift motor 1 error (optional paper feeder)
C1040	Paper feeder lift motor 2 error (optional paper feeder)
C1100	Paper feeder lift motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)
C1110	Paper feeder lift motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)
C1120	Paper feeder left lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)
C1130	Paper feeder right lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)
C9060	EEPROM problem (optional DP)

**Measures against the service codes detecting fuser problems**

If one of the following service codes is detected, take actions to clear the cause of the trouble and perform maintenance item U163 to reset the service code.

Code	Contents
C6000	Fuser heater 1/2 break
C6010	Abnormally high fuser thermistor temperature
C6020	Abnormally high fuser thermistor 1/3 temperature
C6030	Fuser thermistor 1/3 break error
C6050	Abnormally low fuser thermistor 3 temperature
C6100	Fuser heater 3 break
C6120	Abnormally high fuser thermistor 2 temperature
C6130	Fuser thermistor 2 break error
C6400	Zero-cross signal error

## (2) Self diagnostic codes

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0030	<b>Fax control PWB system problem (optional fax)</b> Processing with the fax software was disabled due to a hardware or software problem.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0070	<b>Abnormal detection of fax control PWB incompatibility (optional fax)</b> In the initial communication with the fax control PWB, any normal communication command is not transmitted.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0100	<b>Main PWB backup memory device problem</b> Writing or erasing has not completed even after a certain time.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0110	<b>Backup memory data problem</b> Data in the specified area of the backup memory does not match the specified values.	Problem with the backup memory data.	Run maintenance item U020 to initialize the backup memory data (see page 1-3-9).
C0150	<b>Backup memory device problem (Engine PWB)</b> An error occurs in backup data read or write for the engine PWB. An error occurs in control area deletion.	Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
		Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C0160	<b>Backup memory data problem (Engine PWB)</b> Data for backup data check is changed at the check after startup.	Problem with the backup memory data.	Run maintenance item U020 to initialize the backup memory data (see page 1-3-9).
C0170	<b>Copy counts problem</b> A checksum error is detected in the main and sub backup memories for the copy counters.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0180	<b>Backup memory data problem</b> Backup data on the main PWB has broken.	Data damage of EEPROM.	Contact the Service Administrative Division if the problem occurs frequently.
C0210	<b>CPU communication problem</b> There is no reply after 3 retries at communication.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of the engine PWB and main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or main PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C0220	<b>Communication problem between the scanner PWB and main PWB</b> There is no reply after 6 retries at communication.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the scanner PWB and the connector on the main PWB. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the scanner PWB or main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0240	<b>Printer PWB communication problem</b> The printer PWB does not respond 120 s after the power is turned on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC21 on the engine PWB and the connector YC7 on the printer PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		DIMM or DDR installed incorrectly.	Check the connection of DIMM or DDR. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the printer PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C0250	<b>Network scanner PWB communication problem</b> The response to the alive command to the network scanner transmitted once to 30 s does not come on the contrary three consecutive times or more. The response to the communication command transmitted to the network scanner does not return 75 s or more. (This code indicates only scanner function display.)	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC4 on the main PWB and the connector YC1 on the network scanner PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the scanner network PWB or main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0280	<b>Communication problem between the fax control PWB and main PWB</b> After main PWB status change signal turns on 1 minute, when it does not receive key required command from the fax control PWB, one time it resets the FAX. After that, while main PWB status change signal turns on furthermore 1 minute, when it does not receive key required command from the fax control PWB. When FAX_READY signal continues fake for 6 s, one time it resets the FAX. After that, when FAX_READY fake continues fake for 6 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the main PWB and the connector on the fax control PWB, connection of connector YC1 on the fax control PWB and the connector on the fax relay PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB or main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0410	<b>DP communication problem (optional DP)</b> There is no reply after 10 retries at communication or a communication error occurs.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC17 on the scanner PWB and the connector YC1 on the DP drive PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the DP drive PWB or scanner PWB and check for correct operation.
C0420	<b>Paper feeder communication error (optional paper feeder)</b> A communication error from paper feeder is detected 10 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC33 on the engine PWB and the connector YC1 on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the paper feeder main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.



Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C0440	<b>Document finisher communication problem (optional document finisher)</b> A communication error from document finisher is detected 10 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC33 on the engine PWB and the connector on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C0610	<b>Bitmap problem</b> The DIMM on the main PWB does not operate correctly.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		DDR on the main PWB installed incorrectly.	Check the connection. Repair or replace if necessary.
C0630	<b>DMA problem</b> DMA transmission of compressed, decompressed, rotated, relocated or blanked-out image data does not complete within the specified period of time.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		DDR on the main PWB installed incorrectly.	Check the connection. Repair or replace if necessary.
C0640	<b>Hard disk drive problem</b> The hard disk cannot be accessed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC11 on the main PWB and the connector on the hard disk, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective hard disk.	Run U024 (HDD formatting) without turning the power off to initialize the hard disk (see page 1-3-10). Replace the hard disk drive and check for correct operation if the problem is still detected after initialization.
		Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
C0820	<b>Fax control PWB CG ROM checksum error (optional fax)</b> A checksum error occurred with the CG ROM data of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0830	<b>Fax control PWB flash program area checksum error (optional fax)</b> A checksum error occurred with the program of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
C0840	<b>Faults of RTC</b> The time is judged to go back based on the comparison of the RTC time and the current time or five years or more have passed.	Defective main PWB.	Replace the main PWB and check for correct operation.
		The battery is disconnected from the main PWB.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.
C0860	<b>Fax control PWB software switch checksum error (optional fax)</b> A checksum error occurred with the software switch value of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C0870</b>	<b>Fax control PWB to main PWB high capacity data transfer problem</b> High-capacity data transfer between the fax control PWB and the scanner MIP PWB was not normally performed even if the data transfer was retried 10 times.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the main PWB and the connector on the fax control PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB or main PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C0880</b>	<b>Program archive problem (optional fax)</b> When power is turned on, the compressed program in the Flash ROM on the fax control PWB was not successfully decompressed.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
<b>C0890</b>	<b>Fax control PWB CG FONT archive problem (optional fax)</b> When power is turned on, the compressed CG font in the Flash ROM on the fax control PWB was not successfully decompressed.	Defective fax software.	Install the fax software.
		Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
<b>C0920</b>	<b>Fax file system error</b> The backup data is not retained for file system abnormality of flash memory of the fax control PWB.	Defective fax control PWB.	Replace the fax control PWB and verify the operation.
<b>C1010</b>	<b>Lift motor 1 error</b> When cassette 1 is inserted, lift limit switch 1 does not turn on within 12 s of lift motor 1 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lift motor 1 and the connector YC25 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of lift motor 1.	Replace lift motor 1.
		Defective lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace lift motor 1.
		Defective lift switch 1.	Check if YC9-12 on the feed PWB goes low when lift switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace lift switch 1.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lift switch 1 and the connector YC9 on the feed PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1020	<b>Lift motor 2 error</b> When cassette 2 is inserted, lift limit switch 2 does not turn on within 12 s of lift motor 2 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lift motor 2 and the connector YC25 on the engine PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of lift motor 2.	Replace lift motor 2.
		Defective lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace lift motor 2.
		Defective lift switch 2.	Check if YC9-6 on the feed PWB goes low when lift switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace lift switch 2.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector of lift switch 2 and the connector YC9 on the feed PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the feed PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C1030	<b>Paper feeder lift motor 1 error (optional paper feeder)</b> When optional cassette 3 is inserted, paper feeder lift switch 1 does not turn on within 12 s of paper feeder lift motor 1 turning on. The lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected above 500 ms during driving the motor. However, the first 1 s after paper feeder lift motor 1 is turned on is excluded from detection.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of paper feeder lift motor 1.	Replace paper feeder lift motor 1.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 1.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 1.	Check if YC1-5 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 1.
C1040	<b>Paper feeder lift motor 2 error (optional paper feeder)</b> When optional cassette 4 is inserted, paper feeder lift switch 2 does not turn on within 12 s of paper feeder lift motor 2 turning on. The lift overcurrent protective monitor signal is detected above 500 ms during driving the motor. However, the first 1 s after paper feeder lift motor 2 is turned on is excluded from detection.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken gears or couplings of paper feeder lift motor 2.	Replace paper feeder lift motor 2.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 2.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 2.	Check if YC1-7 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 2.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1100	<b>Paper feeder lift motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Paper feeder lift motor 1 does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
C1110	<b>Paper feeder lift motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> A motor over-current signal is detected continuously for 1 s or longer.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Paper feeder lift motor 2 does not rotate correctly (the motor is overloaded).	Check the gears and remedy if necessary.
C1120	<b>Paper feeder left lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> Paper feeder switch 1 does not turn on within 30 s of paper feeder lift motor 2 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 1.	Check if YC5-4 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 1 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 1.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 2.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 2.
		The paper feeder left lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.
C1130	<b>Paper feeder right lift position problem (optional 3000-sheet paper feeder)</b> Paper feeder switch 2 does not turn on within 30 s of paper feeder lift motor 1 turning on.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper feeder lift switch 2.	Check if YC5-7 on the paper feeder main PWB goes low when paper feeder lift switch 2 is turned off. If not, replace paper feeder lift switch 2.
		Defective paper feeder lift motor 1.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace paper feeder lift motor 1.
		The paper feeder right lift does not rise properly.	Check the gears and belts, and remedy if necessary.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C1900	<b>Paper feeder EEPROM error (optional paper feeder)</b> When writing the data, the write data and the read data is not continuously in agreement three times.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
		Defective paper feeder.	Replace the paper feeder with another unit and check the operation. If the operation is normal, replace or repair optional paper feeder.
C1950	<b>Transfer belt unit EEPROM error</b> Read and write data does not match.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC28 on the engine PWB and the connector on the transfer belt unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective transfer belt speed detection PWB (inner transfer belt unit).	Replace the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-28).
C2101	<b>Paper feed/developing motor BK error</b> After the motor drive ON signal is output and 1 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feed/developing motor BK, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC8-27 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-32).
		Defective paper feed/developing motor BK.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the paper feed/developing motor BK operates when YC8-27 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the paper feed/developing motor BK.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C2102</b>	<b>Developing motor CMY error</b> After the motor drive ON signal is output and 1 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC26 on the engine PWB and the connector on the developing motor CMY, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC26-13 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-32).
		Defective developing motor CMY.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the developing motor CMY operates when YC26-13 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the developing motor CMY.
<b>C2201</b>	<b>Drum motor BK error</b> After the motor drive ON signal is output and 1 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC1 on the motor relay PWB and the connector on the drum motor BK, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor BK.	Replace the drum motor BK.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor relay PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C2202</b>	<b>Drum motor C error</b> After the motor drive ON signal is output and 1 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC1 on the motor relay PWB and the connector on the drum motor C, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor C.	Replace the drum motor C.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor relay PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C2203	<b>Drum motor M error</b> After the motor drive ON signal is output and 1 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC1 on the motor relay PWB and the connector on the drum motor M, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor M.	Replace the drum motor M.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor relay PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2204	<b>Drum motor Y error</b> After the motor drive ON signal is output and 1 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC1 on the motor relay PWB and the connector on the drum motor Y, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum motor Y.	Replace the drum motor Y.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the motor relay PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C2300	<b>Fuser motor error</b> After the motor drive ON signal is output and 1 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC27 on the engine PWB and the connector on the fuser motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC27-A10 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-32).
		Defective fuser motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the fuser motor operates when YC27-A10 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the fuser motor.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C2400</b>	<b>Eject motor error</b> After the motor drive ON signal is output and 1 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC27 on the engine PWB and the connector on the eject motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC27-B4 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-32).
		Defective eject motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the eject motor operates when YC27-B4 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the eject motor.
<b>C2500</b>	<b>MP motor error</b> After the motor drive ON signal is output and 1 s elapses, the rated speed reach signal is not input continuously for 2 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC26 on the engine PWB and the connector on the MP motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if YC26-5 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-32).
		Defective MP motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the MP motor operates when YC26-5 (remote signal) on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the MP motor.
<b>C2600</b>	<b>Paper feeder paper conveying motor error (optional paper feeder)</b> The lock signal of the motor is detected above 450 ms.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the engine PWB and the connector on the paper feeder main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the paper feeder main PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective paper feeder paper conveying motor.	Replace the paper feeder paper conveying motor.



Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C2810</b>	<b>Waste toner motor error</b> The rated speed achievement signal won't turn to L in 5 s since the motor is activated. The rated speed achievement signal turns to H every other 5 s after the machine is stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC30 on the engine PWB and the connector on the waste toner motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drive transmission system.	Check if the rollers and gears rotate smoothly. If not, grease the bushings and gears. Check for broken gears and replace if any.
		Defective waste toner motor.	Replace the waste toner motor.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
<b>C3100</b>	<b>Scanner carriage problem</b> The home position is not correct when the power is turned on or at the start of copying using the table.	Defective scanner PWB.	Replace the scanner PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective scanner home position switch.	Replace the scanner home position switch.
		Defective scanner motor.	Replace the scanner motor.
		Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC4 on the scanner PWB and the connector on the scanner home position switch, and the connection of connector YC9 on the scanner PWB and the connector on the scanner motor and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		The mirror frame, exposure lamp, or scanner wire is defective.	Check if the mirror flares and exposure lamp are on the rail. And check the scanner wire winds correctly.
<b>C3200</b>	<b>Exposure lamp problem</b> The exposure lamp is not turned on when starting the copy.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the scanner PWB and the connector on the inverter PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective scanner PWB.	Replace the scanner PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective CCD PWB.	Replace the CCD PWB and check for correct operation.
		Defective exposure lamp or inverter PWB.	Replace the exposure lamp or inverter PWB.
		Incorrect shading position.	Adjust the position of the contact glass (shading plate). If the problem still occurs, replace the scanner home position switch.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C3300	<b>Optical system (AGC) problem</b> After AGC, correct input is not obtained at CCD.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the scanner PWB and the connector on the inverter PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective exposure lamp.	Replace the exposure lamp or inverter PWB.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the SHD PWB or CCD PWB and check for correct operation.
C3500	<b>Communication error between scanner and SHD</b> An error code is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC3 on the scanner PWB and the connector YC4 on the SHD PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the SHD PWB or CCD PWB and check for correct operation.
C3900	<b>Backup memory read/write problem (scanner PWB)</b> Read and write data does not match.	Defective backup RAM or scanner PWB.	Replace the scanner PWB and check for correct operation.
C3910	<b>Backup memory data problem (scanner PWB)</b> Data in the specified area of the backup memory does not match the specified values.	Problem with the backup memory data.	Run maintenance item U020 to initialize the backup memory data.
		Defective scanner PWB.	If the C3910 is displayed after initializing the backup memory, replace the scanner PWB and check for correct operation.
C4000	<b>Polygon motor synchronization problem</b> The rated speed achievement signal won't turn to L in 20 s since the polygon motor is activated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC16 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-18).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C4010	<b>Polygon motor steady-state problem</b> The rated speed achievement signal turns to H every other 5 s after the polygon motor is stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC16 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective polygon motor.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-18).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C4100	<b>BD initialization problem</b> When power is turned on, ASIC of engine PWB detects a BD error for 200 ms.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC16 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective APC PWB BK (inner laser scanner unit)	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-18).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C4200	<b>BD steady-state problem</b> ASIC of the engine PWB detects a BD error for 200 ms after the polygon motor rotation has been stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC16 on the engine PWB and laser scanner unit, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-18).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C5101	<b>Main high-voltage BK error</b> Abnormality of charger roller BK is detected when Vpp adjustment.	Installation defectiveness on charger roller unit BK.	Check the mounting state of the charger roller unit BK. If any problem is found, repair or replace the unit.
		Defective charger roller unit BK.	Replace the charger roller unit BK (see page 1-5-27).
C5102	<b>Main high-voltage C error</b> Abnormality of charger roller C is detected when Vpp adjustment.	Installation defectiveness on charger roller unit C.	Check the mounting state of the charger roller unit C. If any problem is found, repair or replace the unit.
		Defective charger roller unit C.	Replace the charger roller unit C (see page 1-5-27).
C5103	<b>Main high-voltage M error</b> Abnormality of charger roller M is detected when Vpp adjustment.	Installation defectiveness on charger roller unit M.	Check the mounting state of the charger roller unit M. If any problem is found, repair or replace the unit.
		Defective charger roller unit M.	Replace the charger roller unit M (see page 1-5-27).
C5104	<b>Main high-voltage Y error</b> Abnormality of charger roller Y is detected when Vpp adjustment.	Installation defectiveness on charger roller unit Y.	Check the mounting state of the charger roller unit Y. If any problem is found, repair or replace the unit.
		Defective charger roller unit Y.	Replace the charger roller unit Y (see page 1-5-27).
C5301	<b>Cleaning lamp BK break error</b> After the cleaning lamp BK ON signal is turned on, the cleaning lamp BK break signal is detected continuously 5 times for 10 ms.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC18 on the engine PWB and the connector on the drum unit BK, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective cleaning lamp BK.	Replace the drum unit BK (see page 1-5-27).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C5302	<b>Cleaning lamp C break error</b> After the cleaning lamp C ON signal is turned on, the cleaning lamp C break signal is detected continuously 5 times for 10 ms.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC17 on the engine PWB and the connector on the drum unit C, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective cleaning lamp C.	Replace the drum unit C (see page 1-5-27).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C5303	<b>Cleaning lamp M break error</b> After the cleaning lamp M ON signal is turned on, the cleaning lamp M break signal is detected continuously 5 times for 10 ms.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC17 on the engine PWB and the connector on the drum unit M, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective cleaning lamp M.	Replace the drum unit M (see page 1-5-27).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C5304	<b>Cleaning lamp Y break error</b> After the cleaning lamp Y ON signal is turned on, the cleaning lamp Y break signal is detected continuously 5 times for 10 ms.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC18 on the engine PWB and the connector on the drum unit Y, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective cleaning lamp Y.	Replace the drum unit Y (see page 1-5-27).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C6000	<b>Fuser heater 1/2 break</b> Fuser thermistor 1 detected less than 75 °C/167 °F for 30 s during warming up. Fuser thermistor 1 deduced 40 °C/104 °F or more for 5 s during warming up. Fuser thermistor 3 deduced less than 90 °C/194 °F for 30 s during warming up. Fuser thermistor 3 deduced less than 160 °C/320 °F for 90 s during warming up. Fuser thermistor 3 deduced less than 140 °C/284 °F for 5 s during stand-by.	Defective fuser heater 1/2.	Check for continuity across each heater. If none, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
		Defective fuser thermostat 1.	Check for continuity across thermostat. If none, remove the cause and replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1/2.	Measure the resistance. If it is $\infty \Omega$ , replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6010	<b>Abnormally high fuser thermistor temperature</b> The fuser Abnormally high signal is detected for 60 s or more.	Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6020	<b>Abnormally high fuser thermistor 1/3 temperature</b> The fuser temperature exceeds 240 °C/464 °F.	Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1/3.	Measure the resistance. If it is $\infty \Omega$ , replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
C6030	<b>Fuser thermistor 1/3 break error</b> Fuser thermistor 1 detected 40 °C/104 °F or less during warming up. 40 °C/104 °F or less is detected between 10 s of continuation during warming up. Fuser thermistor 3 detected 40 °C/104 °F or less during warming up.	Defective fuser heater 1/2.	Check for continuity across each heater. If none, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 1/3.	Measure the resistance. If it is $\infty \Omega$ , replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
C6050	<b>Abnormally low fuser thermistor 3 temperature</b> During copying, the temperature at the heat roller lower than 100 °C/212 °F is detected continuously for 1 s.	Defective fuser heater 1/2.	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
<b>C6100</b>	<b>Fuser heater 3 break</b> Fuser thermistor 2 detected less than 100 °C/212 °F for 120 s during driving. Fuser thermistor 2 deduced less than 150 °C/302 °F for 300 s during driving. Fuser thermistor 2 deduced less than 100 °C/212 °F for 5 s during driving.	Defective fuser heater 3.	Check for continuity across each heater. If none, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
		Defective fuser thermostat 2.	Check for continuity across thermostat. If none, remove the cause and replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
		Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 2.	Measure the resistance. If it is $\infty \Omega$ , replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C6120</b>	<b>Abnormally high fuser thermistor 2 temperature</b> The fuser temperature exceeds 190 °C/374 °F.	Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 2.	Measure the resistance. If it is $\infty \Omega$ , replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C6130</b>	<b>Fuser thermistor 2 break error</b> Fuser thermistor 2 detected less than 40 °C/104 °F during driving. When the difference of temperature of fuser thermistor 1 and 3 becomes 100 °C/212 °F or more.	Installation defectiveness on fuser thermistor 2.	Measure the resistance. If it is $\infty \Omega$ , replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
		Defective fuser heater 3.	Check for continuity across each heater. If none, replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
		Defective PWB.	Replace the power source PWB or engine PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C6400</b>	<b>Zero-cross signal error</b> While fuser heater ON/OFF control is performed, the zero-cross signal is not input within 3 s.	Defective PWB.	Replace the engine PWB or power source PWB and check for correct operation.
<b>C7000</b>	<b>Toner motor problem</b> The rated speed achievement signal won't turn to L in 5 s since the motor is activated. The rated speed achievement signal turns to H every other 5 s after the machine is stabilized.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC30 on the engine PWB and the connector on the toner motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Broken the gear.	Check visually and replace the gear if necessary.
		Defective toner motor M/C/Y/BK.	Run maintenance item U135 and check if the toner motor operates. If not, replace the toner motor.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
<b>C7101</b>	<b>Toner sensor BK problem</b> Sensor output value of 78 or less or 944 or more continued for 3 s.	Defective developing unit BK.	Replace the developing unit BK (see page 1-5-26).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
<b>C7102</b>	<b>Toner sensor C problem</b> Sensor output value of 78 or less or 944 or more continued for 3 s.	Defective developing unit C.	Replace the developing unit C (see page 1-5-26).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C7103	<b>Toner sensor M problem</b> Sensor output value of 78 or less or 944 or more continued for 3 s.	Defective developing unit M.	Replace the developing unit M (see page 1-5-26).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C7104	<b>Toner sensor Y problem</b> Sensor output value of 78 or less or 944 or more continued for 3 s.	Defective developing unit Y.	Replace the developing unit Y (see page 1-5-26).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C7200	<b>Broken internal thermistor wire</b> An abnormal value is detected in the input data to inner temperature sensor 1.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC16 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-18).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C7210	<b>Short-circuited internal thermistor</b> An abnormal value is detected in the input data to inner temperature sensor 1.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC16 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-18).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C7220	<b>Broken internal thermistor 2 wire</b> An abnormal value is detected in the input data to inner temperature sensor 2.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC28 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C7230	<b>Short-circuited internal thermistor 2</b> An abnormal value is detected in the input data to inner temperature sensor 2.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC28 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C7240	<b>Broken internal thermistor 3 wire</b> An abnormal value is detected in the input data to inner temperature sensor 3.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C7250	<b>Short-circuited internal thermistor 3</b> An abnormal value is detected in the input data to inner temperature sensor 3.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C7401	<b>Developing unit BK type mismatch problem</b> Absence of the developing unit BK is detected.	Developing unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the developing unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the developing unit is installed.	Install the correct developing unit.
C7402	<b>Developing unit C type mismatch problem</b> Absence of the developing unit C is detected.	Developing unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the developing unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the developing unit is installed.	Install the correct developing unit.
C7403	<b>Developing unit M type mismatch problem</b> Absence of the developing unit M is detected.	Developing unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the developing unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the developing unit is installed.	Install the correct developing unit.
C7404	<b>Developing unit Y type mismatch problem</b> Absence of the developing unit Y is detected.	Developing unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the developing unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the developing unit is installed.	Install the correct developing unit.
C7411	<b>Drum unit BK type mismatch problem</b> Absence of the drum unit BK is detected.	Drum unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the drum unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the drum unit is installed.	Install the correct drum unit.
C7412	<b>Drum unit C type mismatch problem</b> Absence of the drum unit C is detected.	Drum unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the drum unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the drum unit is installed.	Install the correct drum unit.
C7413	<b>Drum unit M type mismatch problem</b> Absence of the drum unit M is detected.	Drum unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the drum unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the drum unit is installed.	Install the correct drum unit.
C7414	<b>Drum unit Y type mismatch problem</b> Absence of the drum unit Y is detected.	Drum unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the drum unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the drum unit is installed.	Install the correct drum unit.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C7420	<b>Transfer belt unit type mismatch problem</b> Absence of the transfer belt unit is detected.	Transfer belt unit connector inserted incorrectly.	Reinsert the transfer belt unit connector if necessary.
		Different type of the transfer belt unit is installed.	Install the correct transfer belt unit.
C7800	<b>Broken external thermistor wire</b> An abnormal value is detected in the input data to the outer temperature sensor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC13 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C7810	<b>Short-circuited external thermistor</b> An abnormal value is detected in the input data to the outer temperature sensor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC13 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB and check for correct operation (see page 1-5-32).
C7901	<b>Drum BK EEPROM error</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC18 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum PWB BK.	Replace the drum unit BK (see page 1-5-27).
C7902	<b>Drum C EEPROM error</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC17 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum PWB C.	Replace the drum unit C (see page 1-5-27).
C7903	<b>Drum M EEPROM error</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC17 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum PWB M.	Replace the drum unit M (see page 1-5-27).
C7904	<b>Drum Y EEPROM error</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC18 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective drum PWB Y.	Replace the drum unit Y (see page 1-5-27).
C7911	<b>Developing unit BK EEPROM error</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC18 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective developing PWB BK.	Replace the developing unit BK (see page 1-5-26).



Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C7912	<b>Developing unit C EEPROM error</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC17 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective developing PWB C.	Replace the developing unit C (see page 1-5-26).
C7913	<b>Developing unit M EEPROM error</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC17 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective developing PWB M.	Replace the developing unit M (see page 1-5-26).
C7914	<b>Developing unit Y EEPROM error</b> Reading from or writing to EEPROM cannot be performed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC18 on the engine PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective developing PWB Y.	Replace the developing unit Y (see page 1-5-26).
C8020	<b>Punch motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The LOCK signal of the punch motor is detected for more than 500 ms while the punch motor is operating.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the punch PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective punch motor.	Replace the punch motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the punch PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8030	<b>Tray upper limit detection problem (optional document finisher)</b> When the tray elevation motor raises a tray, the ON status of the tray upper limit sensor is detected.	The tray upper limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective tray upper limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8050	<b>Paper conveying belt motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 does not turn off within 1.5 s. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 1 does not turn on within 2.5 s. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the internal tray PWB and the connector on paper conveying belt motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper conveying belt home position sensor 1.	Replace paper conveying belt home position sensor 1.
		Defective paper conveying belt motor 1.	Replace paper conveying belt motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8060	<b>Paper conveying belt motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 does not turn off within 1.5 s. Paper conveying belt home position sensor 2 does not turn on within 1.5 s.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the internal tray PWB and the connector on paper conveying belt motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective paper conveying belt home position sensor 2.	Replace paper conveying belt home position sensor 2.
		Defective paper conveying belt motor 2.	Replace paper conveying belt motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8070	<b>Internal tray communication error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Communication with the internal tray is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the finisher main PWB and the connector YC1 on the internal tray PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8140	<p><b>Main tray problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The main tray is not detected by the main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray paper upper surface detection sensor within 20s since the tray has started ascending. The main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray paper upper surface detection sensor is not detected to be turned off in 20 s after the main tray has descended. The main tray low limit detection sensor is not detected to be turned on in 20 s after the main tray has descended. During main tray ascent, the main tray upper limit detection sensor or the main tray paper upper surface detection sensor stays on for more than 2 s.</p>	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the finisher main PWB and the connector on the main tray motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective main tray motor.	Replace the main tray motor.
		Defective main tray upper limit detection sensor/main tray paper upper surface detection sensor/main tray lower limit detection sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<p><b>Tray elevation motor problem (optional document finisher)</b> The tray low limit sensor, paper retaining sensor or paper surface sensor cannot be detected to be on within 10 s since the tray elevation motor is activated.</p>	The tray elevation motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The tray elevation motor malfunctions.	Replace the tray elevation motor.
		The tray lower limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective tray lower limit sensor/push paper sensor/surface view sensor.	Replace the sensor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks		
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures	
C8170	<b>Side registration motor 1 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3 s passed. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the internal tray PWB and the connector on side registration motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.	
		Defective side registration motor 1.	Replace side registration motor 1.	
		Defective PWB.	Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.	
	<b>Adjustment motor problem (optional document finisher)</b> The registration home position sensor cannot be detected to be on or off within 125 ms since the registration motor is activated after registration has started. The registration home position sensor cannot be detected to be on within 710 ms since the registration motor is activated after registration has ceased.	The adjustment motor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.	
		Defective adjustment motor.	Replace adjustment motor.	
		The adjustment home position sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.	
		Defective adjustment home position sensor.	Replace the adjustment home position sensor.	
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.	
	C8180	<b>Side registration motor 2 problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3 s passed. Jam 88 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the internal tray PWB and the connector of side registration motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
			Defective side registration motor 2.	Replace side registration motor 2.
Defective PWB.			Replace the internal tray PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.	

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8210	<b>Stapler shift motor 1 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 1.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of stapler shift motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler shift motor 1.	Replace stapler shift motor 1.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
	<b>Stapler problem (optional document finisher)</b> When the stapler motor is driving, the ON status of the stapler home position sensor cannot be detected even if 1 s passed.	The stapler connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		The stapler is blocked with a staple.	Remove the stapler cartridge, and check the cartridge and the stapling section of the stapler.
		The stapler is broken.	Replace the stapler and check for correct operation.
Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.		
C8220	<b>Stapler shift motor 2 error (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> When operation returned to a home position is performed at the time of initial operation and a home position is not detected even if 3.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of stapler shift motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler shift motor 2.	Replace stapler shift motor 2.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8230	<b>Stapler motor problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Jam 82 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC10 on the finisher main PWB and the connector of stapler motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective stapler motor.	Replace the stapler motor.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8300	<b>Centerfold unit communication error (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Communication with the centerfold unit is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC22 on the finisher main PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold set switch.	Replace the centerfold set switch.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8310	<b>Centerfold side registration motor 1 problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold side registration motor 1, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold side registration motor 1.	Replace centerfold side registration motor 1.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8320	<b>Centerfold paper conveying belt motor problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 2.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC6, YC7 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2.	Replace centerfold paper conveying belt motor 1/2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8330	<b>Blade motor problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1.5 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC8 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the blade motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective blade motor.	Replace the blade motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8340	<b>Centerfold staple motor problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Jam89 is indicated.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC9 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the centerfold staple motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold staple motor.	Replace the centerfold staple motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8350	<b>Centerfold side registration motor 2 problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The home position is not detected when initial operation even if 1 s passed.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of centerfold side registration motor 2, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold side registration motor 2.	Replace centerfold side registration motor 2.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

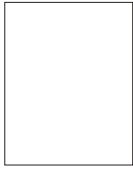
Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8360	<b>Centerfold main motor problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The motor lock signal is detected above 1 s during driving the centerfold main motor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC12 on the centerfold main PWB and the connector of the centerfold main motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold main motor.	Replace the centerfold main motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8440	<b>Sensor adjusting problem (optional document finisher)</b> The sensor cannot be adjusted within the specified range.	The paper entry sensor connector makes poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective paper entry sensor.	Replace the paper entry sensor and check for correct operation.
		The optical path of the paper entry sensor is blocked by foreign matter.	Remove the foreign matter.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8460	<b>EEPROM problem (optional document finisher)</b> Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Defective EEPROM or finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8500	<b>Mailbox communication error (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Communication with the mailbox is not possible although the connection is detected.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of the connector of the mailbox and the connector YC7 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8510	<b>Mailbox drive motor problem (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> The motor lock signal is detected above 500 ms during driving the mailbox drive motor.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC2 on the mailbox main PWB and the connector of the mailbox drive motor, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective mailbox drive motor.	Replace the mailbox drive motor.
		Defective PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB or finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8900	<b>Backup memory data problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the finisher main PWB and the connector of the machine, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective finisher main PWB.	Replace the finisher main PWB and check for correct operation.

Code	Contents	Remarks	
		Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
C8910	<b>Backup memory data problem (optional 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the punch PWB and the connector YC4 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective punch PWB.	Replace the punch PWB and check for correct operation.
C8920	<b>Backup memory data problem (optional mailbox of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the mailbox main PWB and the connector YC7 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective mailbox main PWB.	Replace the mailbox main PWB and check for correct operation.
C8930	<b>Backup memory data problem (optional centerfold unit of 3000-sheet document finisher)</b> Read and write data does not match 3 times in succession.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector on the centerfold main PWB and the connector YC5 on the finisher main PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective centerfold main PWB.	Replace the centerfold main PWB and check for correct operation.
C9060	<b>EEPROM problem (optional DP)</b> Read and write data does not match.	Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Check the connection of connector YC7 on the scanner PWB and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.
		Defective DP drive PWB.	Replace DP drive PWB and check for correct operation.
C9500			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C9510			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C9520			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C9530			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C9540			Contact the Service Administrative Division.
C9550			Contact the Service Administrative Division.



**1-4-3 Image formation problems**

(1) No image appears (entirely white).



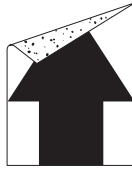
See page 1-4-50.

(2) No image appears (entirely black).



See page 1-4-50.

(3) Dirty on the back side.



See page 1-4-51.

(4) Image is too light.



See page 1-4-51.

(5) The background is colored.



See page 1-4-51.

(6) A white line appears longitudinally.



See page 1-4-52.

(7) A line appears longitudinally.



See page 1-4-52.

(8) A line appears laterally.



See page 1-4-52.

(9) One side of the copy image is darker than the other.



See page 1-4-53.

(10) Dots appear on the image.



See page 1-4-53.

(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.



See page 1-4-53.

(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.



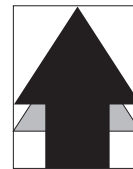
See page 1-4-53.

(13) Paper creases.



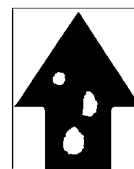
See page 1-4-54.

(14) Offset occurs.



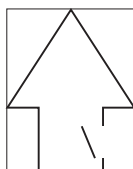
See page 1-4-54.

(15) Image is partly missing.



See page 1-4-54.

(16) Fusing is poor.



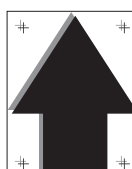
See page 1-4-55.

(17) Image is out of focus.



See page 1-4-55.

(18) Colors are printed offset to each other.




See page 1-4-55.

(19) Image center does not align with the original center.




See page 1-4-55.

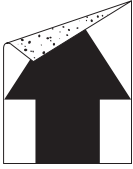
**(1) No image appears (entirely white).**

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective transfer bias output.	The connector terminals of the transfer high voltage PWB 1 make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-32).
		Defective transfer high voltage PWB 1.	Replace the transfer high voltage PWB 1.
		Defective transfer belt unit.	Replace the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-28).
	No LSU laser is output.	Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-18).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-32).
	Defective developing bias output.	The connector terminals of the main high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-32).
		Defective main high voltage PWB.	Replace the main high voltage PWB.
	Controls the drive of developing unit.		Replace the developing unit (see page 1-5-26).
Image synchronization signal failure.	Poor contact in the connector terminals between engine PWB and printer PWB.	Check the connection of connector YC21 on the engine PWB and the connector YC7 on the printer PWB, and the continuity across the connector terminals. Repair or replace if necessary.	


**(2) No image appears (entirely black).**

Copy example	Causes		Check procedures/corrective measures
	No main charging.	Defective drum unit.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-27).
		The connector terminals of the main high voltage PWB make poor contact.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-32).
		Defective main high voltage PWB.	Replace the main high voltage PWB.
	Exposure lamp fails to light.	Poor contact in the exposure lamp connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
		Defective inverter PWB.	Check if the exposure lamp lights when the terminal on the inverter PWB goes low while maintenance item U061 is run. If not, replace the inverter PWB.
		Defective scanner PWB.	Run maintenance item U061 and check if YC6-3 on the scanner PWB goes low. If not, replace the scanner PWB.
	The laser is activated simultaneously for all colors.	Defective laser scanner unit.	Replace the laser scanner unit (see page 1-5-18).

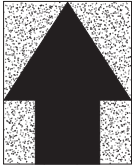
**(3) Dirty on the back side.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Faulty transfer belt cleaning.	Replace the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-28).
	Dirty paper conveying path.	Clean the paper conveying path.
	Dirty fuser belt or press roller (inner fuser unit).	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).


**(4) Image is too light.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures	
	Defective developing bias output.	Defective developing unit.	Run maintenance mode U089 to output four-color bar PG, check the output status of the four colors, and replace the developing unit for any faulty color (see page 1-3-29 and page 1-5-26).
		Defective main high voltage PWB.	Replace the main high voltage PWB.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-32).
	Dirty drum.		Perform the drum refresh operation (see page 1-3-118).
	Defective transfer bias output.	Defective transfer high voltage PWB 1.	Replace the transfer high voltage PWB 1.
		Defective transfer belt unit.	Replace the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-28).
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-32).
	Defective color calibration.		Perform the auto color adjustment (see page 1-3-117).
	Insufficient toner.		If the display shows the message requesting toner replenishment, replace the container.
	Defective agitation of toner container.		Shake the toner container up and down approximately ten times.
	Paper damp.		Check the paper storage conditions, replace the paper.

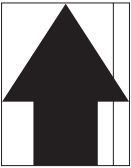
**(5) The background is colored.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures	
	Defective developing bias output.	Defective developing unit.	Run maintenance mode U089 to output four-color bar PG, check the output status of the four colors, and replace the developing unit for any faulty color (see page 1-3-29 and page 1-5-26).
		Defective main high voltage PWB.	Replace the main high voltage PWB.
		Defective engine PWB.	Replace the engine PWB (see page 1-5-32).
	Defective color calibration.		Perform the auto color adjustment (see page 1-3-117).

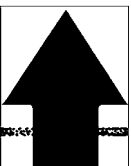
**(6) Paper jams.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Foreign matter in the developing unit.	Run maintenance mode U089 to output four-color bar PG, check the output status of the four colors, and replace the developing unit for any faulty color (see page 1-3-29 and page 1-5-26).
	Dirty transfer belt.	Clean the transfer belt. Replace the transfer belt unit if it is extremely dirty (see page 1-5-28).
	Dirty transfer roller.	Clean the transfer roller. Replace the transfer roller if it is extremely dirty (see page 1-5-29).
	Dirty shading plate.	Clean the shading plate.
	Dirty scanner mirror.	Clean the scanner mirror.
	Dirty LSU slit glasses.	Perform the laser scanner cleaning (see page 1-3-118).
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.


**(7) Toner drops on the paper conveying path.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
	Dirty slit glass.	Clean the slit glass.
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation (see page 1-3-118). If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-27).
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade of the drum unit.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-27).
	Dirty scanner mirror.	Clean the scanner mirror.
	Dirty lens of image scanner unit.	Clean lens of image scanner unit.
	Worn transfer belt.	Replace the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-28).
	Defective transfer roller.	Replace the transfer roller (see page 1-5-29).


**(8) Abnormal noise is heard.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Flawed drum.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-27).
	Dirty developing section.	Clean any part contaminated with toner or carrier in the developing section.
	Leaking separation electrode.	Clean the separation electrode.
	Poor contact of grounding terminal of drum unit.	Check the mounting state of the image formation holder. If any problem is found, repair it (see page 1-5-25).


**(9) One side of the copy image is darker than the other.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective exposure lamp.	Check if the exposure lamp light is distributed evenly to run maintenance item U061. If not, replace the exposure lamp (see page 1-3-19 and page 1-5-9).


**(10) Dots appear on the image.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation (see page 1-3-118). If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-27).
	Dirty contact glass.	Clean the contact glass.
	Deformed or worn cleaning blade of the drum unit.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-27).
	Flawed developing roller.	Replace the developing unit (see page 1-5-26).
	Dirty fuser belt or press roller (inner fuser unit).	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).

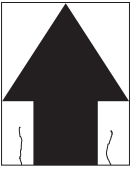
**(11) The leading edge of the image is consistently misaligned with the original.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Registration clutch operating incorrectly.	Check the installation of the registration clutch. If it operates incorrectly, replace it.
	Misadjusted the deflection in the paper.	Run maintenance mode U051 to readjust the deflection in the paper (see page 1-3-16).
	Misadjusted leading edge registration.	Run maintenance mode U034 to readjust the leading edge registration (see page 1-3-13).
	Misadjusted scanner leading edge registration.	Run maintenance mode U066 to readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-3-20).

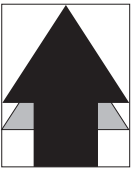
**(12) The leading edge of the image is sporadically misaligned with the original.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper feed clutch 1/2, paper conveying clutch, MP paper feed clutch, MP paper conveying clutch or registration clutch installed or operating incorrectly.	Check the installation position and operation of paper feed clutch 1/2, paper conveying clutch, MP paper feed clutch, MP paper conveying clutch and registration clutch. If any of them operates incorrectly, replace it.

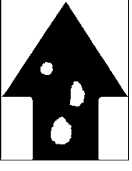
**(13) Paper creases.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper curled.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Dirty separation electrode.	Clean the separation electrode.

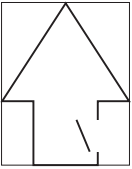
**(14) Offset occurs.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective cleaning blade of the drum unit.	Replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-27).
	Faulty transfer belt cleaning.	Run maintenance item U107 (see page 1-3-37). Replace the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-28).
	Defective fuser unit.	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.

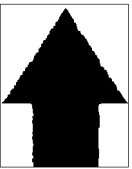
**(15) Image is partly missing.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Paper damp.	Check the paper storage conditions.
	Paper creased.	Change the paper.
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation (see page 1-3-118).
	Dirty or flawed drum.	Perform the drum refresh operation (see page 1-3-118). If the drum is flawed, replace the drum unit (see page 1-5-27).
	Dirty transfer belt.	Clean the transfer belt. Replace the transfer belt unit if it is extremely dirty (see page 1-5-28).
	Dirty transfer roller.	Clean the transfer roller. Replace the transfer roller if it is extremely dirty (see page 1-5-29).
	Dirt on the back surface of the contact glass and scanner mirror.	Clean the contact glass and scanner mirror.

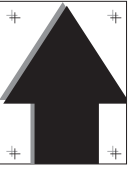
**(16) Fusing is poor.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Wrong types of paper.	Check if the paper meets specifications. Replace paper.
	Flawed fuser belt (inner fuser unit).	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
	Flawed fuser heater (inner fuser unit).	Replace the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).

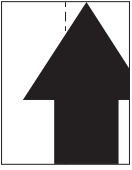
**(17) Image is out of focus.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective image scanning unit.	Replace the image scanning unit (see page 1-5-16).
	Drum condensation.	Perform the drum refresh operation (see page 1-3-118).

**(18) Colors are printed offset to each other.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Defective calibration.	Perform the color calibration (see page 1-3-117).
	Slip the mirror position of laser scanner unit.	Perform the color registration (see page 1-3-117). When the problem is not cleared, perform the manual color registration adjustment (see page 1-5-23).

**(19) Image center does not align with the original center.**

Copy example	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
	Misadjusted image center line.	Run maintenance item U034 to readjust the center line of image printing (see page 1-3-14).
	Misadjusted scanner center line.	Run maintenance item U067 to readjust the scanner leading edge registration (see page 1-3-21).
	Original is not placed correctly.	Place the original correctly.
	The paper is not loaded correctly.	Load the paper correctly.

### 1-4-4 Electric problems

Troubleshooting to each failure must be in the order of the numbered symptoms.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(1) The machine does not operate when the main power switch is turned on.	1. The power cord is not plugged in properly.	Check the contact between the power plug and the outlet.
	2. No electricity at the power outlet.	Measure the input voltage.
	3. Broken power cord.	Check for continuity. If none, replace the cord.
	4. Defective main power switch.	Check for continuity across the contacts. If none, replace the main power switch.
	5. Defective power source PWB.	With AC present, check for 24 V DC at YC8-1 on the power source PWB, 5 V DC at YC8-3, 9-1 and 3.3 V DC at YC8-6, 9-4. If none, replace the power source PWB.
(2) Duplex motor does not operate.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Broken the gear.	Check visually and replace the gear if necessary.
	3. Defective duplex motor.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the duplex motor operates. If not, replace the duplex motor.
	4. Defective feed PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the duplex motor operates. If not, replace the feed PWB.
	5. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U030 and check if the duplex motor operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(3) Transfer fan motor 1/2, developing cooling fan motor 1/2/3, printer cooling fan motor, rear cooling fan motor, fuser fan motor, power source fan motor or paper conveying fan motor 1/2/3/4 does not operate.	1. Broken fan motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the fan motor.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective fan motor.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if the fan motor operates when the following terminals on the PWB goes low. If not, replace the corresponding fan motor. Transfer fan motor 1/2: YC28-B4 or YC28-B6 on the engine PWB Developing cooling fan motor 1/2/3: YC30-B7, YC30-B9 or YC37-2 on the engine PWB Printer cooling fan motor: YC30-B13 on the engine PWB Rear cooling fan motor: YC34-B12 on the engine PWB Fuser fan motor: YC27-A3 on the engine PWB Paper conveying fan motor 1/2/3/4: YC10-7 on the engine PWB
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. Transfer fan motor 1/2: YC28-B4 or YC28-B6 on the engine PWB Developing cooling fan motor 1/2/3: YC30-B7, YC30-B9 or YC37-2 on the engine PWB Printer cooling fan motor: YC30-B13 on the engine PWB Rear cooling fan motor: YC34-B12 on the engine PWB Fuser fan motor: YC27-A3 on the engine PWB Paper conveying fan motor 1/2/3/4: YC10-7 on the engine PWB
	5. Defective power source PWB.	Run maintenance item U037 and check if following terminals on the power source PWB goes low. If not, replace the power source PWB. Power source fan motor: YC14-1 on the power source PWB



<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes</b>	<b>Check procedures/corrective measures</b>
(4) The high voltage fan motor does not operate.	1. Broken fan motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the fan motor.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
(5) Paper feed clutch 1/2, MP paper feed clutch, MP paper conveying clutch, paper conveying clutch or registration clutch does not operate.	1. Broken clutch coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the clutch.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective feed PWB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if following terminals on the feed PWB goes low. If not, replace the feed PWB. Paper feed clutch 1/2: YC13-1, 14-1 on the feed PWB Paper conveying clutch: YC11-1 on the feed PWB
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U032 and check if following terminals on the engine PWB goes low. If not, replace the engine PWB. MP paper feed clutch: YC24-B8 on the engine PWB MP paper conveying clutch: YC24-B10 on the engine PWB Registration clutch: YC8-20 on the engine PWB
(6) The scanner motor does not operate.	1. Broken fan motor coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the fan motor.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
(7) The LSU cleaning solenoid does not operate.	1. Broken LSU cleaning solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the MP solenoid.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective feed PWB.	Run maintenance item U474 and check if the LSU cleaning solenoid operates. If not, replace the feed PWB.
	4. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U474 and check if the LSU cleaning solenoid operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(8) The MP solenoid does not operate.	1. Broken MP solenoid coil.	Check for continuity across the coil. If none, replace the MP solenoid.
	2. Poor contact in the connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective engine PWB.	Run maintenance item U033 and check if the MP solenoid operates. If not, replace the engine PWB.
(9) Main charging is not performed.	1. Defective drum unit.	(See page 1-4-50.)
	2. The connector terminals of main high voltage PWB make poor contact.	
	3. Defective engine PWB.	
	4. Defective main high voltage PWB.	

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(10) Defective developing bias output.	1. The connector terminals of main high voltage PWB make poor contact.	(See page 1-4-50.)
	2. Defective engine PWB.	
	3. Defective main high voltage PWB.	
(11) Defective transfer bias output.	1. The connector terminals of transfer high voltage PWB 1 make poor contact.	(See page 1-4-50.)
	2. Defective engine PWB.	
	3. Defective transfer high voltage PWB 1.	
	4. Defective transfer belt unit.	
(12) The original size is not detected correctly.	1. Original is not placed correctly.	Check the original and correct if necessary.
	2. Poor contact in the original detection switch or original size detection sensor connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	3. Defective original detection switch.	If the level of YC2-5 on the engine PWB does not go low when the original detection switch is turned on and off, replace the original detection switch.
	4. Defective original size detection sensor.	Check if sensor operates correctly. If not, replace it.
(13) The touch panel keys do not work.	1. Poor contact in the touch panel connector terminals.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective touch panel or left operation PWB.	If any keys do not work after running the maintenance item U201 to initialize the touch panel, replace the touch panel or operation unit PWB.
(14) The message requesting paper to be loaded is shown when paper is present on the cassette or MP tray.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of paper detection switch 1/2 or MP paper set switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective paper detection switch 1/2 or MP paper set switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not change when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Paper detection switch 1: YC9-7 on the feed PWB Paper detection switch 2: YC9-1 on the feed PWB MP paper set detection switch: YC24-A11 on the engine PWB
	3. Defective paper stoppers.	Remove the MP tray unit and check if the paper stoppers are damaged. Replace if necessary.

Problem	Causes	Check procedures/corrective measures
(15) The size of paper on the cassette or MP tray is not displayed correctly.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of paper length size switch 1/2, paper width size switch 1/2, MP paper length size switch or MP paper width size switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective paper length size switch 1/2, paper width size switch 1/2, MP paper length size switch or MP paper width size switch.	If the level of following terminal on PWB does not change when the switch is turned on and off, replace the switch. Paper length size switch 1: YC5-4 on the feed PWB Paper width size switch 1: YC4-6, 7, 8 on the feed PWB Paper length size switch 2: YC5-2 on the feed PWB Paper width size switch 2: YC4-2, 3, 4 on the feed PWB MP paper length size switch: YC24-A8 on the engine PWB MP paper width size switch: YC24-A2, A3, A4 on the engine PWB
(16) A paper jam in the paper feed, paper conveying fuser, duplex or eject section is indicated when the main power switch is turned on.	1. A piece of paper torn from copy paper is caught around feed switch 1/2/3, transfer detection sensor, duplex jam detection switch, jam detection sensor, eject switch or paper full sensor.	Check visually and remove it, if any.
	2. Defective feed switch 1/2/3, transfer detection sensor, duplex jam detection switch, jam detection sensor, eject switch or paper full sensor.	Run maintenance item U031 and turn each switch on and off manually. Replace the switch if indication of the corresponding switch on the touch panel is not displayed in reverse.
(17) The message requesting cover to be closed is displayed when the front cover or left cover 1/2 is closed.	1. Poor contact in the connector terminals of front cover switch, left cover 1 switch or left cover 2 switch.	Reinsert the connector. Also check for continuity within the connector cable. If none, remedy or replace the cable.
	2. Defective front cover switch, left cover 1 switch or left cover 2 switch.	Check for continuity across each switch. If there is no continuity when the switch is on, replace it.
(18) Others.	1. Wiring is broken, shorted or makes poor contact.	Check for continuity. If none, repair.

**1-4-5 Mechanical problems**

<b>Problem</b>	<b>Causes/check procedures</b>	<b>Corrective measures</b>
(1) No primary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the following pulleys are dirty with paper powder: forwarding pulleys: forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley, separation pulley, MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley and MP separation pulley	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Check if the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley or separation pulley is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-3).
	Check if the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley or MP separation pulley is deformed.	Replace the pulley if it is deformed (see page 1-5-7).
	Electrical problem with the MP solenoid.	See page 1-4-57.
	Electrical problem with the following electromagnetic clutches: paper feed clutch 1/2, paper conveying clutch, MP paper feed clutch and MP paper conveying clutch	See page 1-4-57.
(2) No secondary paper feed.	Check if the surfaces of the right and left registration rollers are dirty with paper powder.	Clean with isopropyl alcohol.
	Electrical problem with the registration clutch.	See page 1-4-57.
(3) Skewed paper feed.	Width guide in a cassette installed incorrectly.	Check the width guide visually and correct or replace if necessary.
	Deformed width guide in a cassette.	Check visually and replace any deformed guide.
	Check if a pressure spring along the paper conveying path is deformed or out of place.	Repair or replace.
	Sliders of MP tray installed incorrectly.	Check the sliders visually and correct or replace if necessary.
	Deformed sliders of MP tray.	Check visually and replace any deformed slider.
(4) The scanner does not travel.	Check if the scanner wire is loose.	Reinstall the scanner wire (see page 1-5-12).
	The scanner motor malfunctions.	See page 1-4-57.
(5) Multiple sheets of paper are fed at one time.	Paper is extremely curled.	Change the paper.
	Paper is loaded incorrectly.	Load the paper correctly.
	Check if the separation pulley is worn.	Replace the separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-3).
	Check if the MP separation pulley is worn.	Replace the MP separation pulley if it is worn (see page 1-5-7).
	Check if the spring which pressurizes the separation pulley or the MP separation pulley is damaged or not in position.	Repair or replace.
(6) Paper jams.	Check if the paper is excessively curled.	Change the paper.
	Deformed guides along the paper conveying path.	Check visually and replace any deformed guides.
	Check if the contact between the right and left registration rollers is correct.	Check visually and remedy if necessary.

Problem	Causes/check procedures	Corrective measures
(7) Toner drops on the paper conveying path.	Check if the developing unit is extremely dirty.	Clean the developing unit.
(8) Abnormal noise is heard.	Check if the pulleys, rollers and gears operate smoothly.	Grease the bearings and gears.
	Electrical problem with the following electro-magnetic clutches: paper feed clutch 1/2, paper conveying clutch, MP paper feed clutch and MP paper conveying clutch	Correct.

This page is intentionally left blank.

## **1-5-1 Precautions for assembly and disassembly**

### **(1) Precautions**

Before starting disassembly, press the Power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the Power lamp is off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.

Turning off the main power switch before pressing the Power key to off may cause damage to the equipped hard disk.

When the fax kit is installed, be sure to disconnect the modular code before starting disassembly.

When handling PWBs (printed wiring boards), do not touch parts with bare hands.

The PWBs are susceptible to static charge.

Do not touch any PWB containing ICs with bare hands or any object prone to static charge.

When removing the hook of the connector, be sure to release the hook.

Take care not to get the cables caught.

### **(2) Drum**

Note the following when handling or storing the drum.

When removing the drum unit, never expose the drum surface to strong direct light.

Keep the drum at an ambient temperature between -20°C/-4°F and 40°C/104°F and at a relative humidity not higher than 90% RH. Avoid abrupt changes in temperature and humidity.

Avoid exposure to any substance which is harmful to or may affect the quality of the drum.

Do not touch the drum surface with any object. Should it be touched by hands or stained with oil, clean it.

### **(3) Toner**

Store the toner container in a cool, dark place.

Avoid direct light and high humidity.

#### (4) How to tell a genuine Kyocera Mita toner container

As a means of brand protection, the Kyocera Mita toner container utilizes an optical security technology to enable visual validation. A validation viewer is required to accomplish this.

Hold the validation viewer over the left side part of the brand protection seal on the toner container. Through each window of the validation viewer, the left side part of the seal should be seen as follows:

A black-colored band when seen through the left side window

A shiny or gold-colored band when seen through the right side window

The above will reveal that the toner container is a genuine Kyocera Mita branded toner container, otherwise, it is a counterfeit.

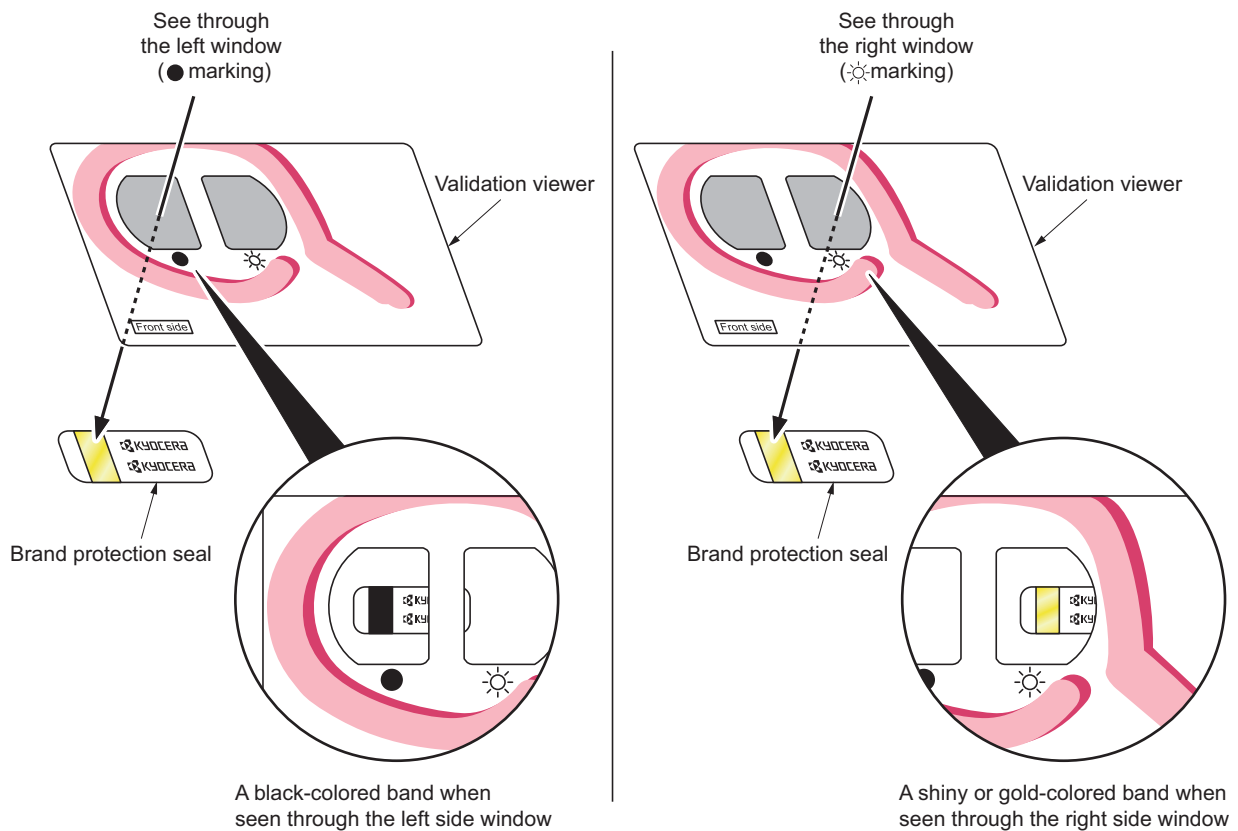


Figure 1-5-1

The brand protection seal has an incision as shown below to prohibit reuse.

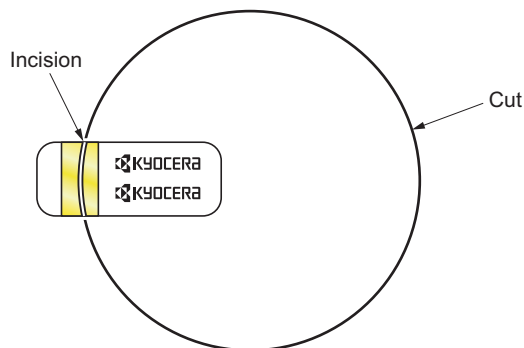


Figure 1-5-2



## 1-5-2 Paper feed section

### (1) Detaching and refitting the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys

Follow the procedure below to clean or replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.

#### Procedure

##### Removing the primary paper feed unit

1. Remove the cassettes.
2. Remove the screw and remove the primary paper feed unit.

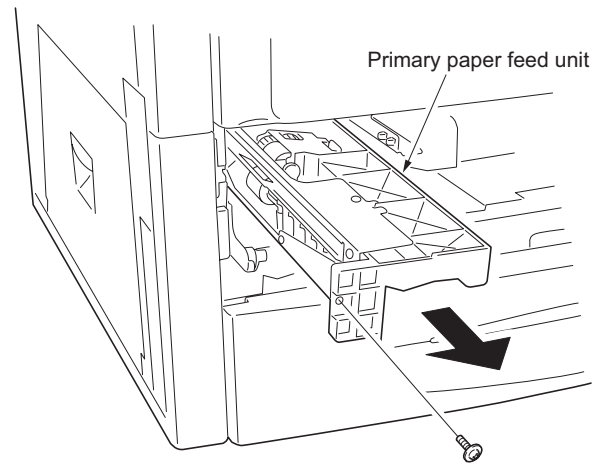


Figure 1-5-3

##### Removing the forwarding pulley

3. Remove the stopper and spring from the primary paper feed unit.
4. Raise the forwarding pulley retainer in the direction the arrow, and remove from the primary paper feed unit.

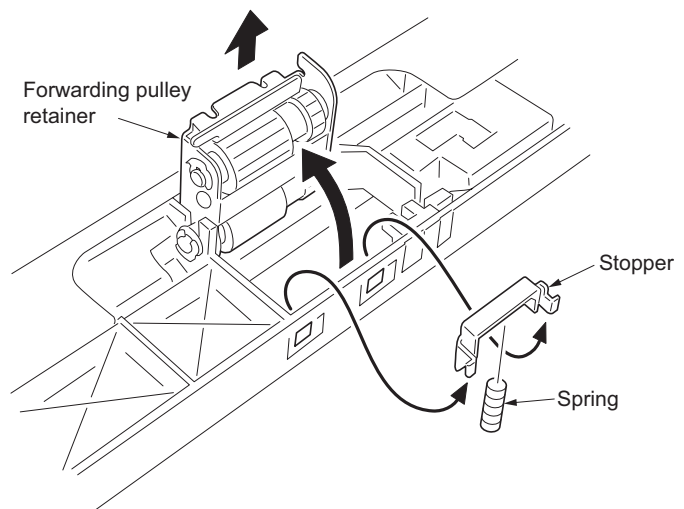


Figure 1-5-4

5. Remove the stop ring from the forwarding pulley retainer.
6. Remove the forwarding pulley from the forwarding shaft.

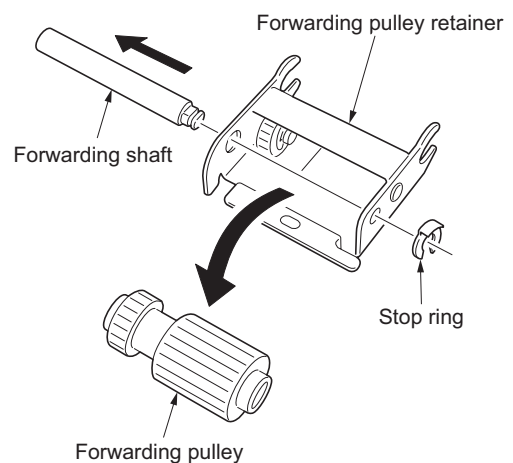
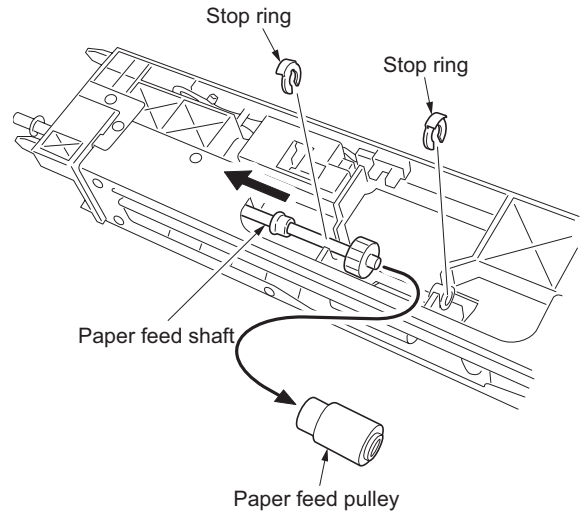


Figure 1-5-5

**Removing the paper feed pulley**

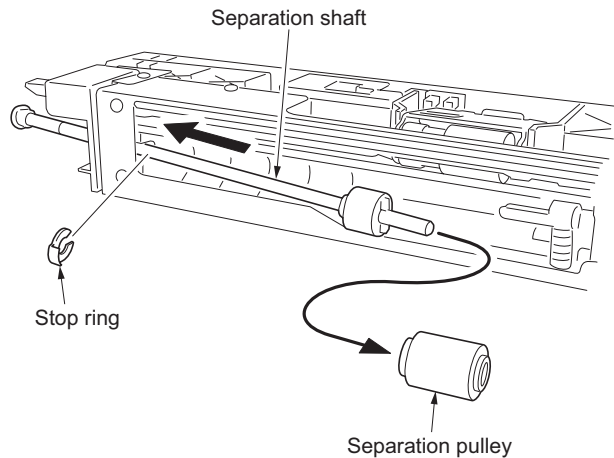
7. Remove two stop rings from the primary paper feed unit.
8. Pull the paper feed shaft in the direction of the arrow and remove the paper feed pulley.



**Figure 1-5-6**

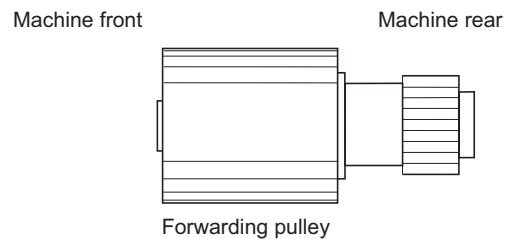
**Removing the separation pulley**

9. Remove the stop ring from the primary paper feed unit.
10. Pull the separation shaft in the direction of the arrow and remove the separation pulley.



**Figure 1-5-7**

11. Clean or replace the forwarding, paper feed and separation pulleys.
12. Install the separation and paper feed pulleys to the primary paper feed unit.
13. Install the forwarding pulley to the forwarding pulley retainer.  
When refitting the forwarding pulley, orient it correctly as shown in Figure 1-5-8.
14. Refit the forwarding pulley retainer to the primary paper feed unit.
15. Refit the primary paper feed unit.



**Figure 1-5-8**

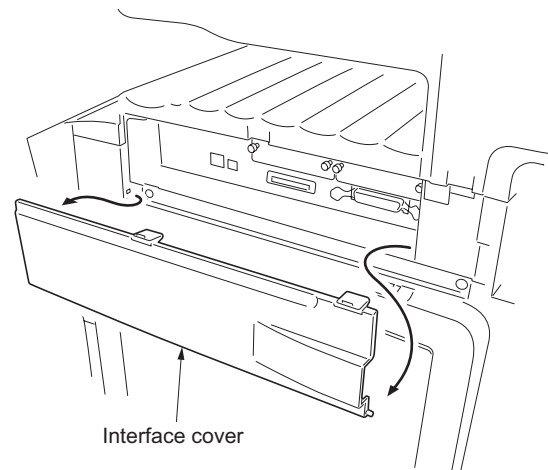
16. When the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley, separation pulley or the primary paper feed unit is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 to clear the jam counter (see page 1-3-87).

**(2) Detaching and refitting the MP unit**

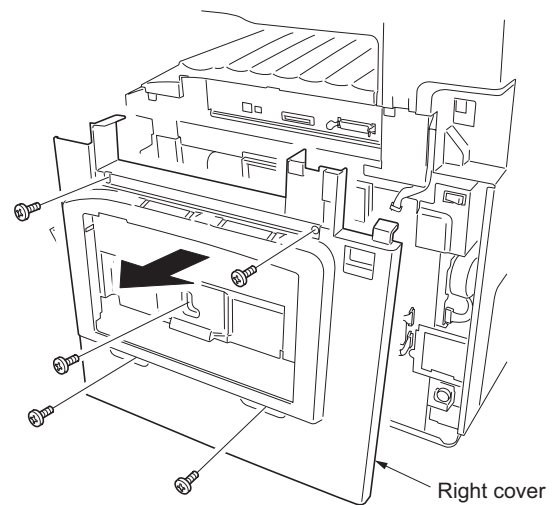
Follow the procedure below to replace the MP unit.

**Procedure**

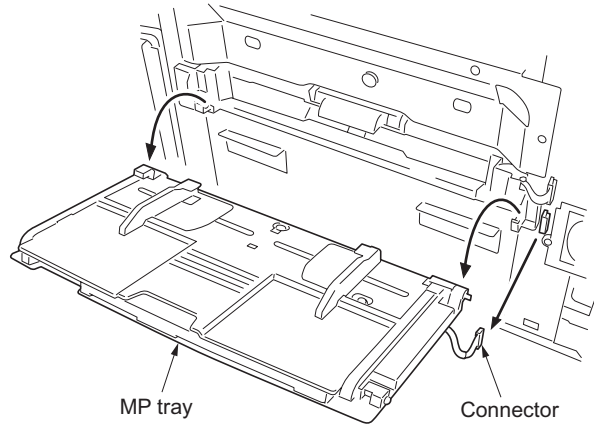
1. Remove the inserted parts and then remove the interface cover.

**Figure 1-5-9**

2. Open the front cover.
3. Remove five screws and remove the right cover.

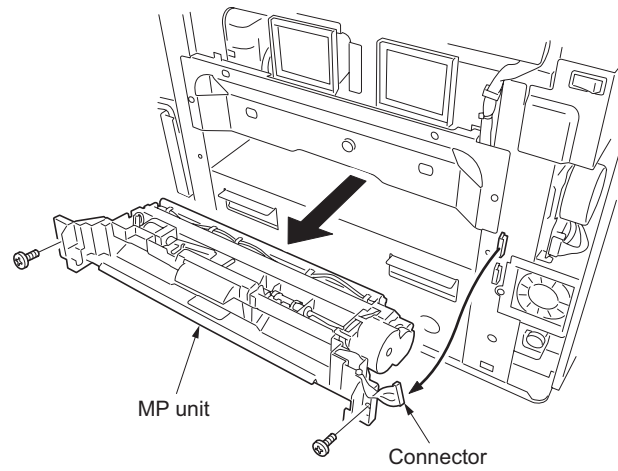
**Figure 1-5-10**

4. Remove one connector.
5. Remove the MP tray.



**Figure 1-5-11**

6. Remove two screws and one connector, and remove the MP unit.



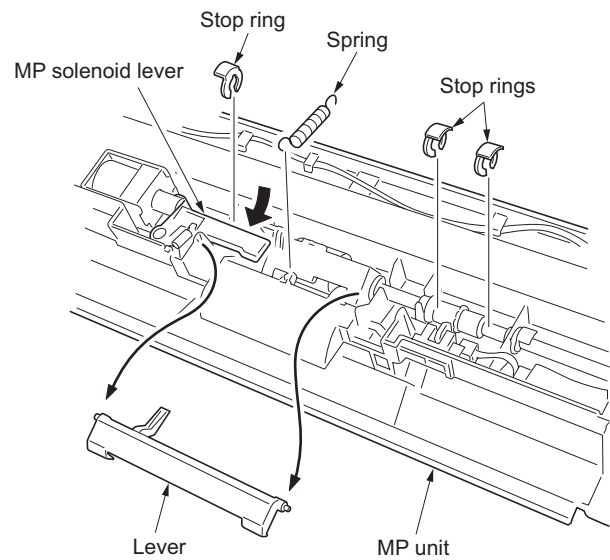
**Figure 1-5-12**

**(3) Detaching and refitting the MP forwarding, MP paper feed and MP separation pulleys**

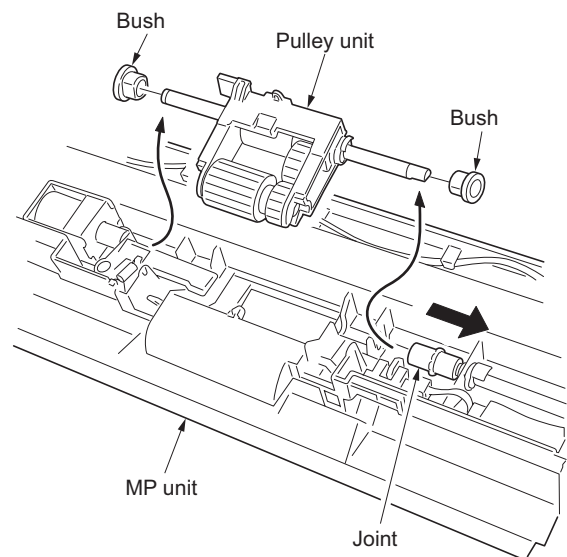
Follow the procedure below to clean or replace the MP forwarding, MP paper feed and MP separation pulleys.

**Procedure****Detaching the MP forwarding and MP feed pulleys**

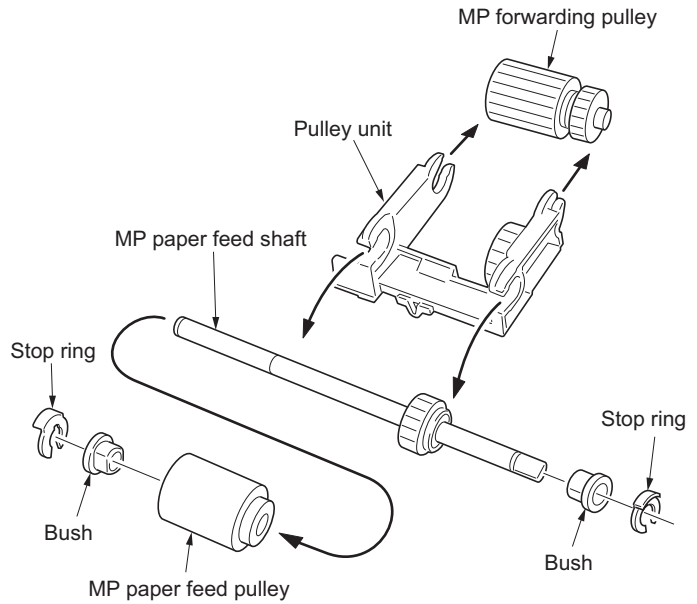
1. Remove the MP unit (see page 1-5-5).
2. Remove the lever and spring from the MP unit.
3. Release the MP solenoid lever in the direction of the arrow.
4. Remove three stop rings.

**Figure 1-5-13**

5. Slide the joint and remove two bushes. Remove the pulley unit from the MP unit.

**Figure 1-5-14**

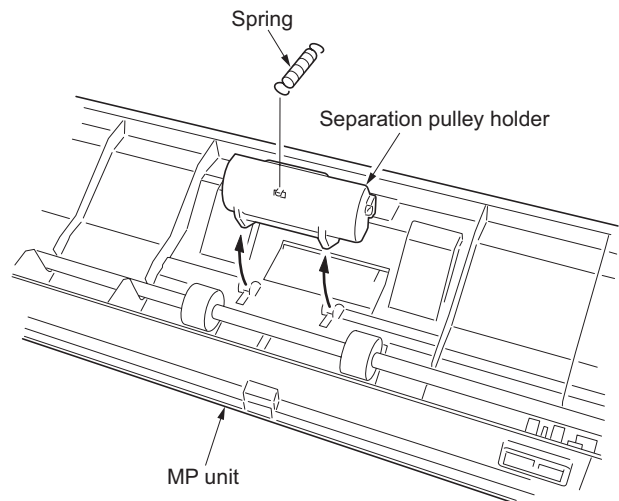
6. Remove the inserted parts and then remove the MP forwarding pulley from the pulley unit.
7. Remove two stop rings and bushes.
8. Remove the MP paper feed pulley from the MP paper feed shaft.



**Figure 1-5-15**

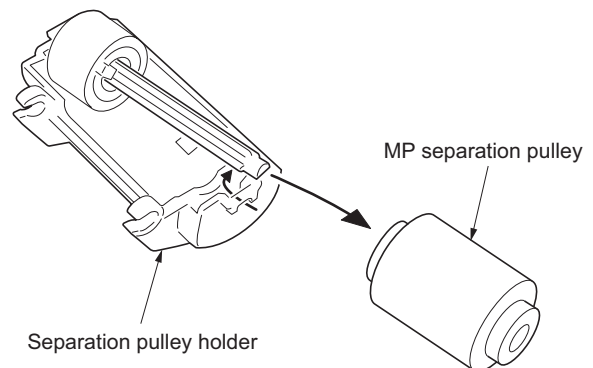
**Removing the MP separation pulley**

9. Turn the MP unit over and remove the spring.
10. Remove the separation pulley holder from the MP unit.



**Figure 1-5-16**

11. Remove the inserted parts and then remove the MP separation pulley from the separation pulley holder.
12. Clean or replace the MP forwarding, MP paper feed and MP separation pulleys.
13. Refit the MP separation pulley to the separation pulley holder.
14. Refit the MP forwarding and MP paper feed pulleys to the pulley unit.
15. Refit the separation pulley holder and pulley unit.
16. Refit the MP unit.



**Figure 1-5-17**

17. When the MP forwarding pulley, MP paper feed pulley or the MP separation pulley is replaced, perform maintenance mode U903 to clear the jam counter (see page 1-3-87).

### 1-5-3 Optical section

#### (1) Detaching and refitting the exposure lamp

Follow the procedure below to replace the exposure lamp.

##### Procedure

1. Remove the original platen or DP.
2. Remove fifteen screws and remove the rear cover.

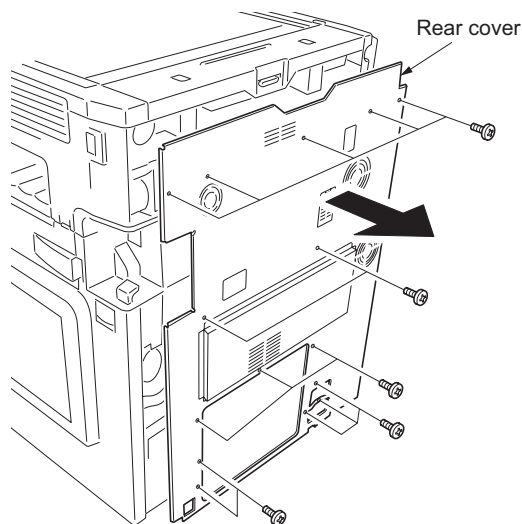


Figure 1-5-18

3. Open the front cover.
4. Turn the toner container lock lever for the toner container clockwise to release the lock.  
Lift the clip to open the toner container [black].
5. Remove the clip support.
6. Remove two screws and remove front left cover 1.

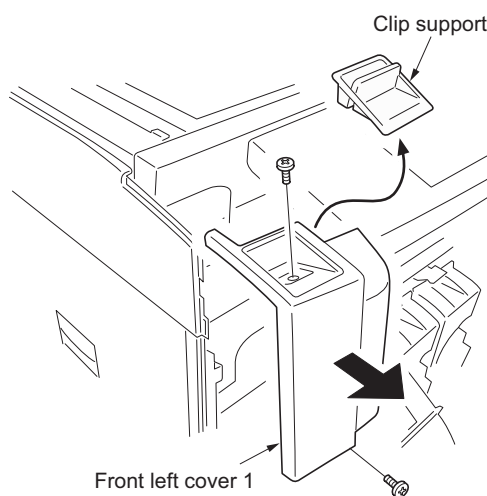


Figure 1-5-19

7. Remove the inserted parts and then remove the upper left cover.

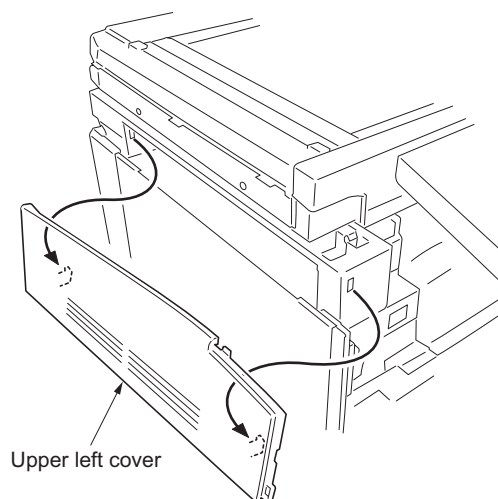
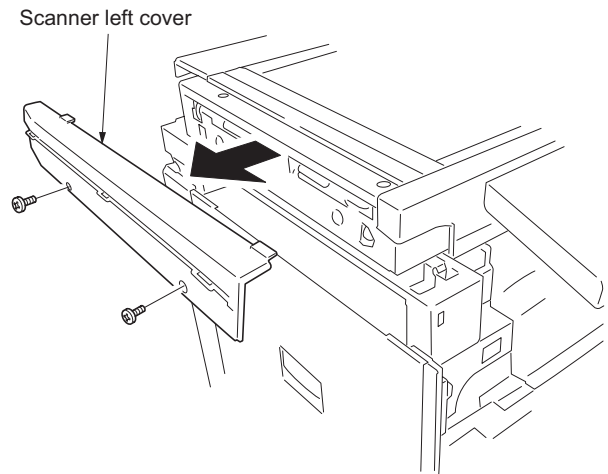


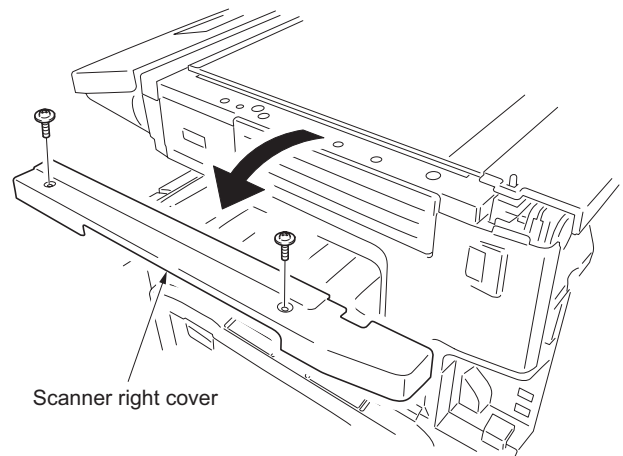
Figure 1-5-20

8. Remove two screws and remove the scanner left cover.



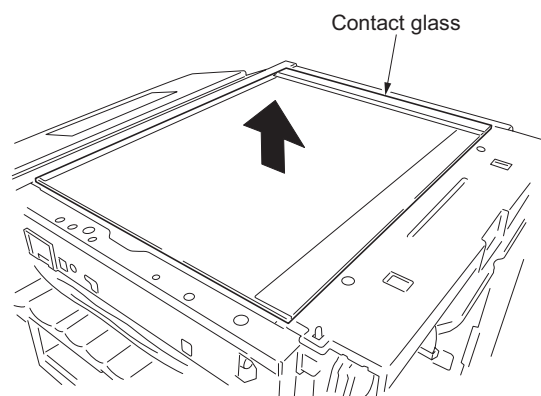
**Figure 1-5-21**

9. Remove two screws and remove the scanner right cover.



**Figure 1-5-22**

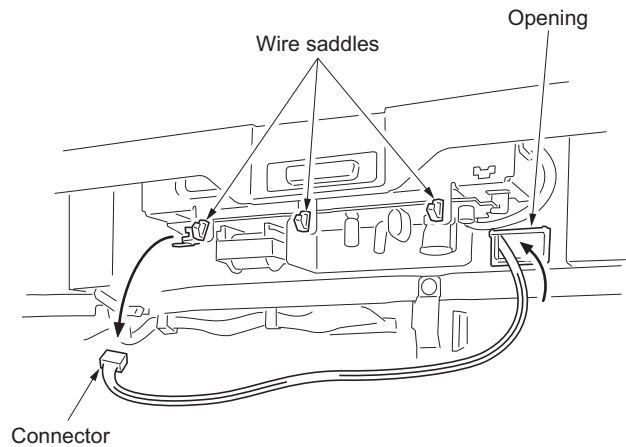
10. Remove the contact glass.



**Figure 1-5-23**

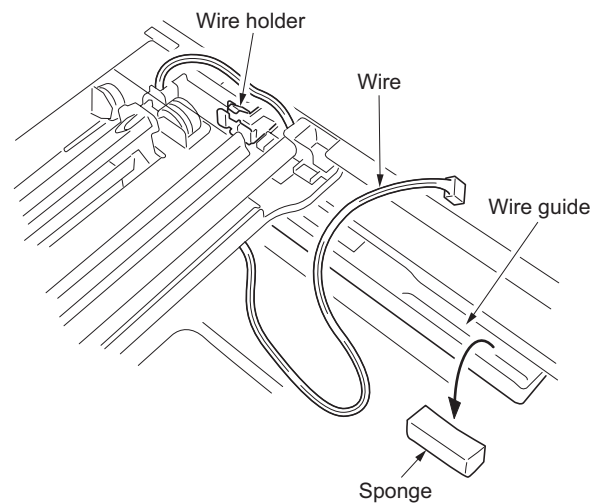


11. Remove one connector of the inverter PWB.
12. Release the wire from the wire saddle and pull the connector out from the opening on the rear of the scanner unit.



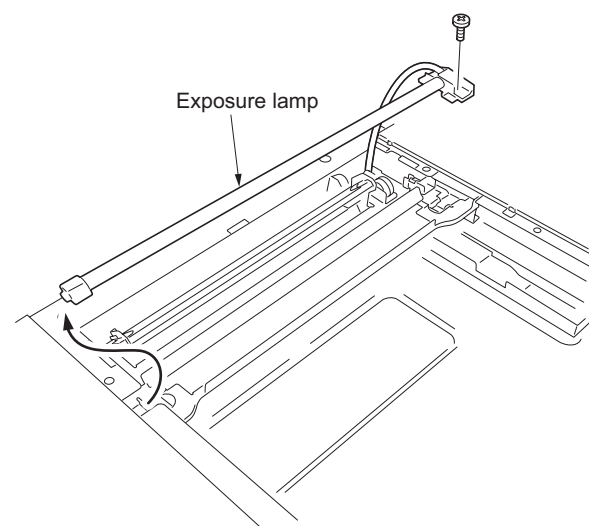
**Figure 1-5-24**

13. Remove the sponge from the wire guide and release the wire.
14. Move the mirror 1 frame to notch position and release the wire from the wire holder.



**Figure 1-5-25**

15. Remove one screw and remove the exposure lamp.
16. Replace the exposure lamp and then install the lamp.
17. Refit the contact glass, scanner right and left covers, upper left cover, front left cover 1, clip support and rear cover.



**Figure 1-5-26**

**(2) Detaching and refitting the scanner wires**

Take the following procedure when the scanner wires are broken or to be replaced.

**NOTE**

When fitting the wires, be sure to use those specified below.

Machine front: (P/N: 302GR17100), black

Machine rear: (P/N: 302GR17110), gray

**Fitting requires the following tools**

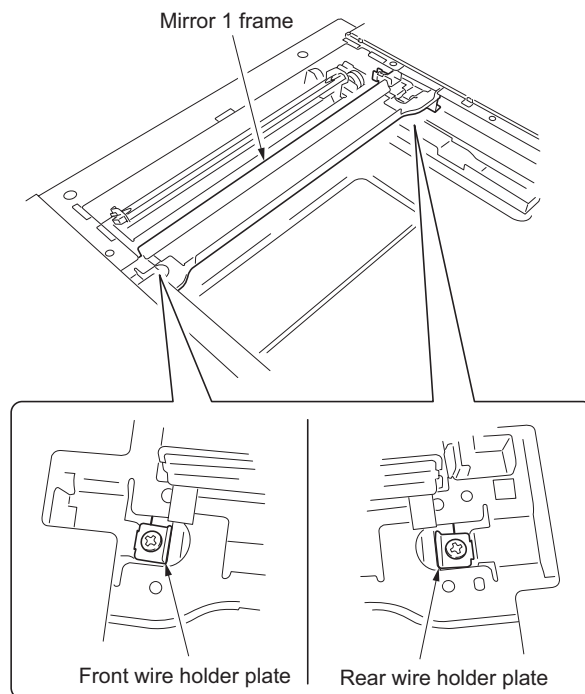
Two frame securing tools

Two scanner wire stoppers (P/N 3596811)

**Procedure**

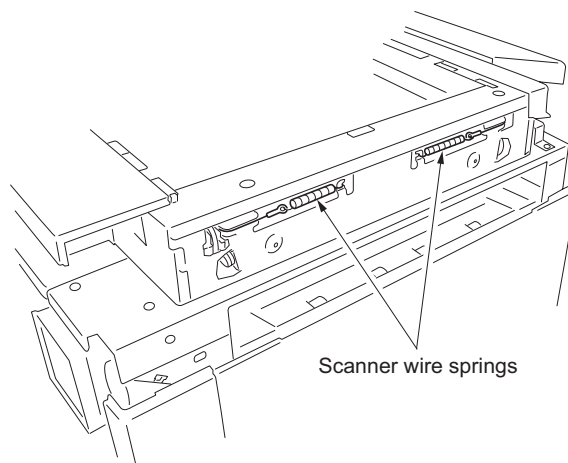
**Detaching the scanner wires**

1. Remove the exposure lamp (see page 1-5-9).
2. Remove each screw and then remove front and rear wire holder plates from mirror 1 frame.
3. Remove the mirror 1 frame.



**Figure 1-5-27**

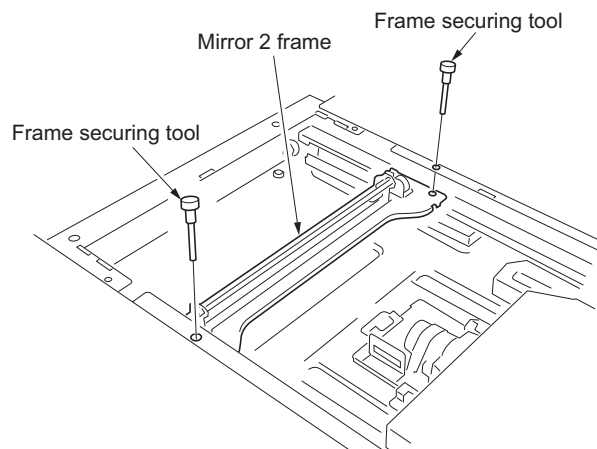
4. Remove the round terminals from the scanner wire springs on scanner unit left side.
5. Remove the scanner wire.



**Figure 1-5-28**

**Fitting the scanner wires**

6. Move the mirror 2 frame as shown in the figure and insert two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the machine center to fix the mirror 2 frame in position.

**Figure 1-5-29**

7. Hook the round terminals onto the catches inside of the scanner unit.(1)
8. Loop the scanner wires around the outer grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from below to above.(2)
9. Loop the scanner wire around the groove in the scanner wire pulley at the scanner unit right, winding from above to below.(3)
10. Wind the scanner wires around the scanner wire drum five turns from the rear toward the hole in the drum. (4)
11. Insert the locating ball on the scanner wire into the hole in the scanner wire drum.(5)
12. Wind the scanner wires three turns from the inner toward the hole in the drum. (6)
13. Install the scanner wire stoppers to the scanner wire drum to fix the wires. (7)
14. Loop the scanner wire around the groove in the scanner wire pulley at the scanner unit left, winding from below to above.(8)
15. Loop the scanner wires around the inner grooves in the pulleys on the mirror 2 frame, winding from below to above.(9)
16. Hook the scanner wires around the scanner wire guides at the machine left. (10)
17. Hook the round terminal onto the scanner wire spring.(11)

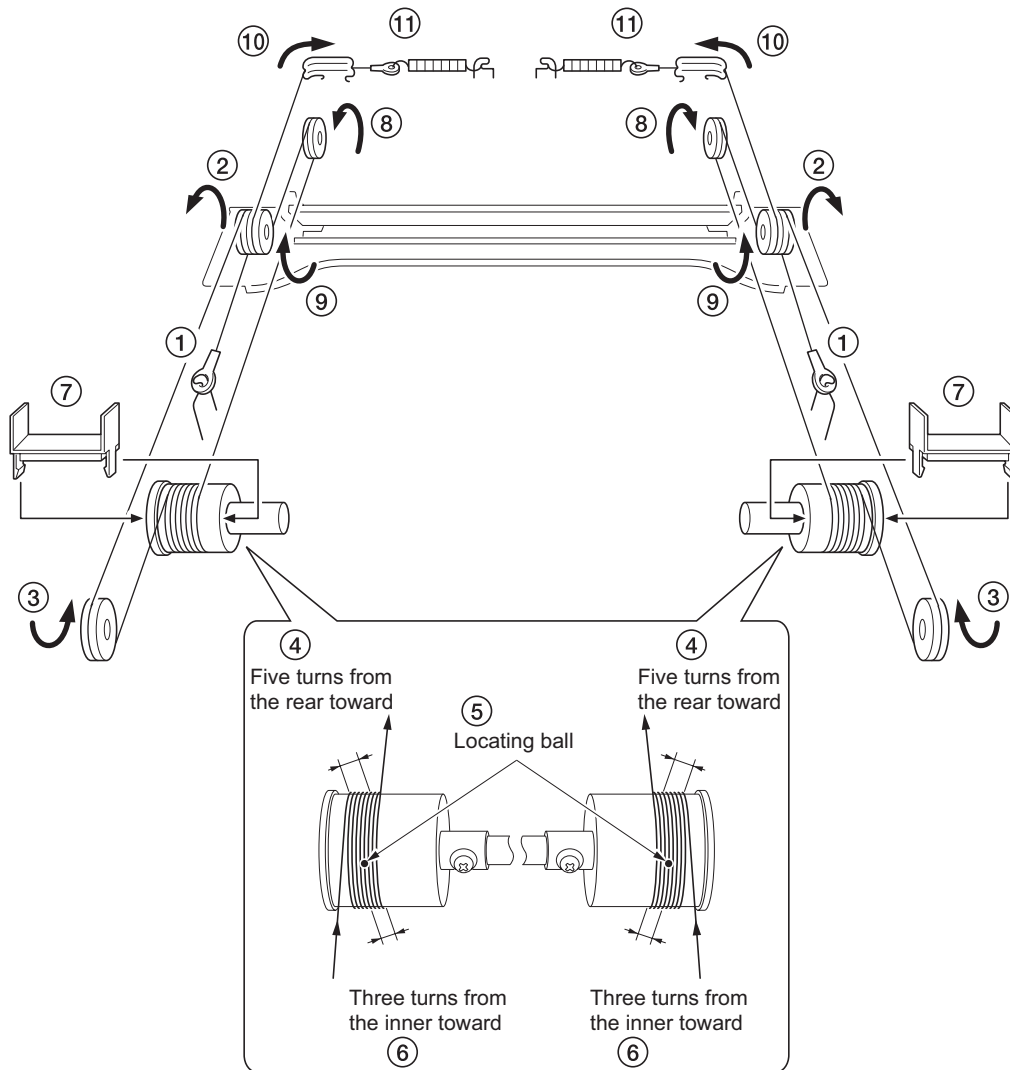
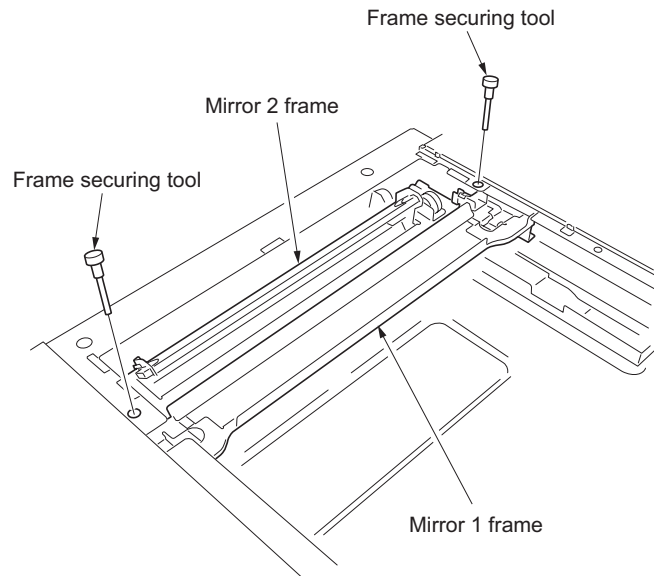


Figure 1-5-30

18. Remove the two scanner wire stoppers and frame securing tools.
19. Focusing on the locating ball of the wire drum, move aside the wires to inside.
20. Move the mirror 2 frame from side to side to correctly locate the wires in position.
21. Refit the mirror 1 frame.
22. Move the mirror 1 and 2 frames to the machine left, and insert the two frame securing tools into the positioning holes at the front and rear of the scanner unit to secure the frames in position.
23. Hold the wires and fix each front and rear wire holder plate to mirror 1 frame with the screw.
24. Remove the two frame securing tools.
25. Refit the exposure lamp.

**Figure 1-5-31**

**(3) Detaching and refitting the ISU (reference)**

Follow the procedure below to replace the ISU.

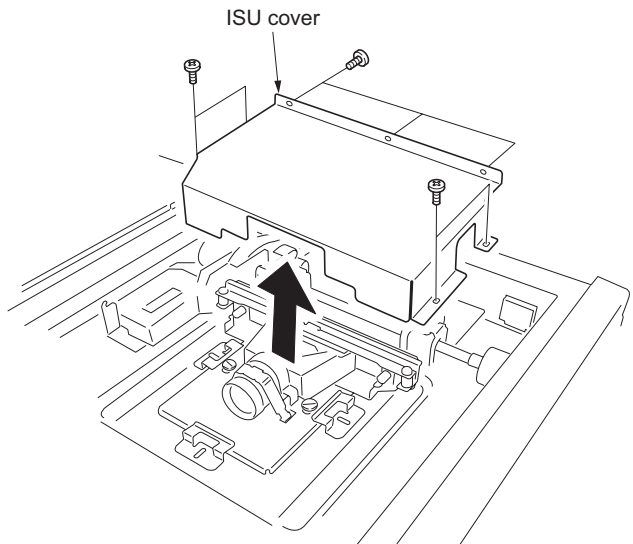
**Fitting requires the following tools**

Two positions pins (P/N 18568120)

**Procedure**

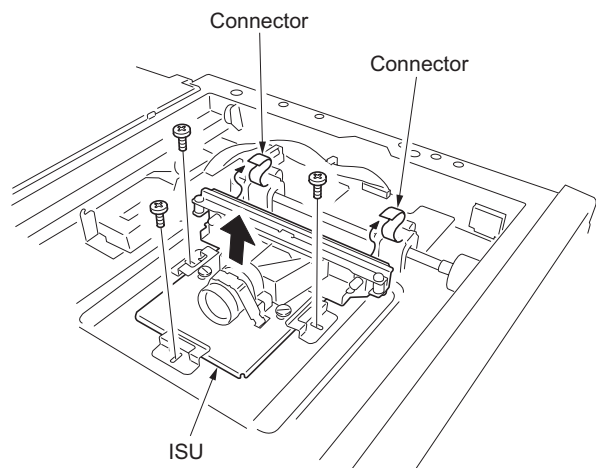
**Detaching the ISU**

1. Remove the contact glass (see page 1-5-9).
2. Remove seven screws and then remove the ISU cover.



**Figure 1-5-32**

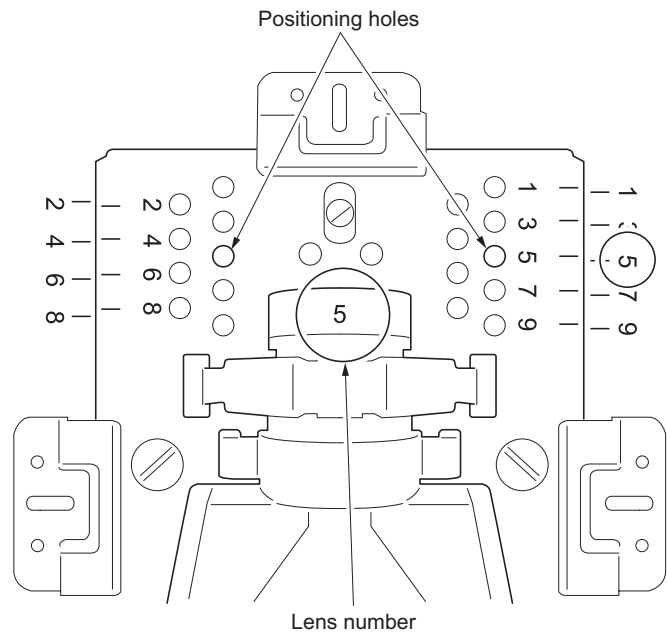
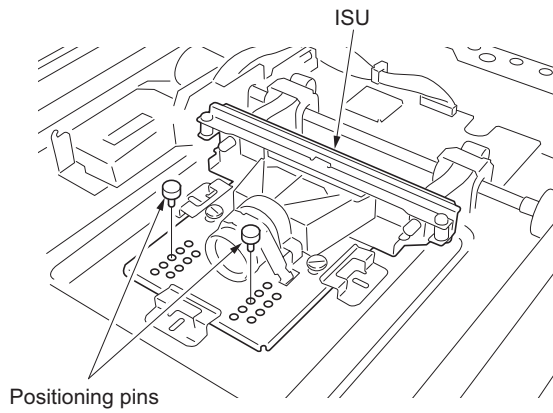
3. Remove three screws and two connectors, and then remove the ISU.
4. Replace the ISU.



**Figure 1-5-33**

**Refitting the ISU**

5. Adjust the position of ISU to the frame hole of number and the same number which are recorded in the lens of ISU and then insert two positioning pins.
- Example: When a lens number is 5, move ISU so that the positioning hole of 5 of the number stamped in the scanner unit suit and insert two pins.
6. Remove two positioning pins after fixing ISU with three screws.
  7. Refit two connectors and ISU cover.
  8. Refit the contact glass.

**Figure 1-5-34**

#### (4) Detaching and refitting the laser scanner unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the laser scanner unit.

##### Procedure

1. Remove fifteen screws and then remove the rear cover (see page 1-5-9).
2. Remove two straps and then remove left cover 2.

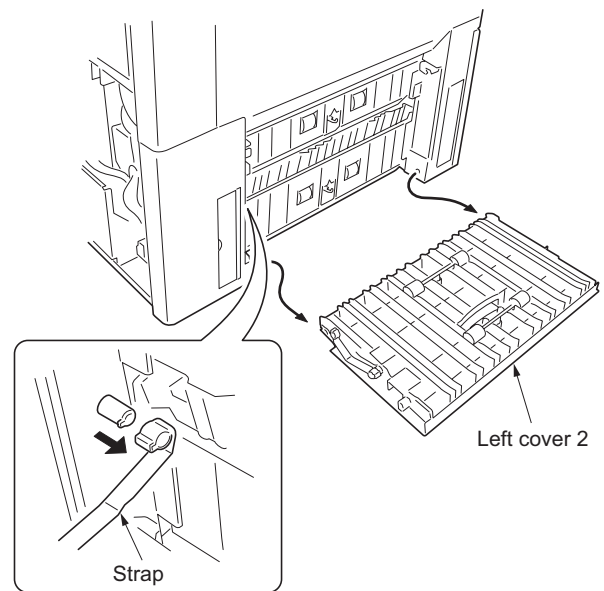


Figure 1-5-35

3. Remove cassette 1 and 2.
4. Remove two screws and inserted parts, and then remove front left cover 2.

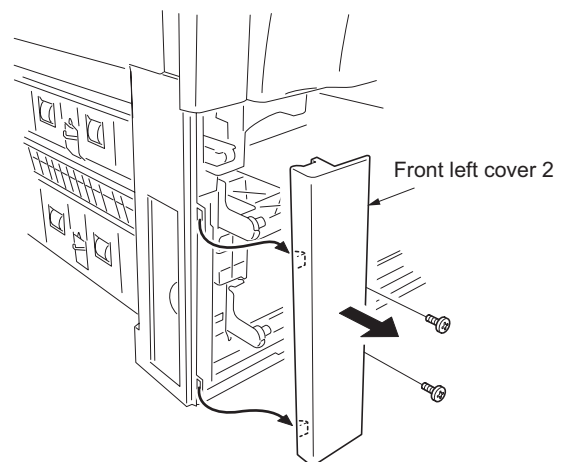


Figure 1-5-36

5. Remove two screws and then remove left lower cover 1.
6. Remove three screws and then remove the left lower cover 2.

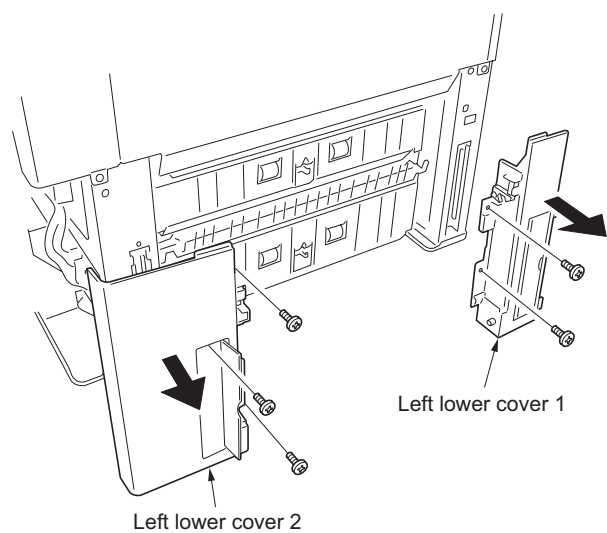
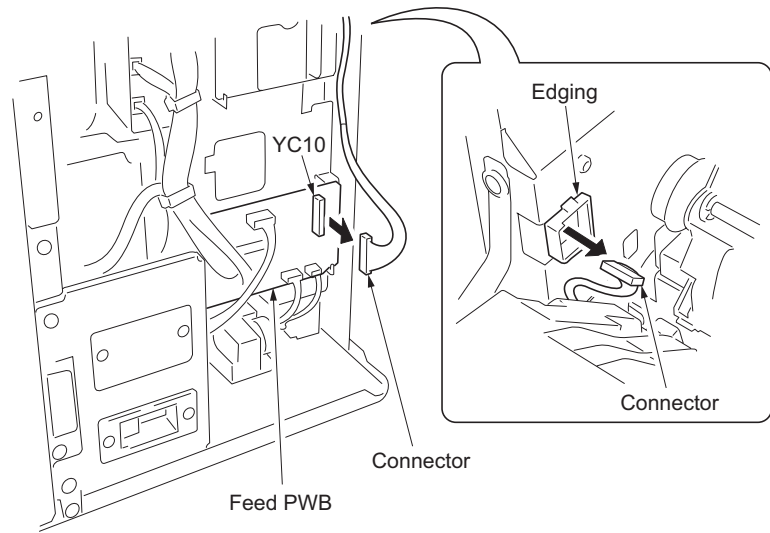


Figure 1-5-37

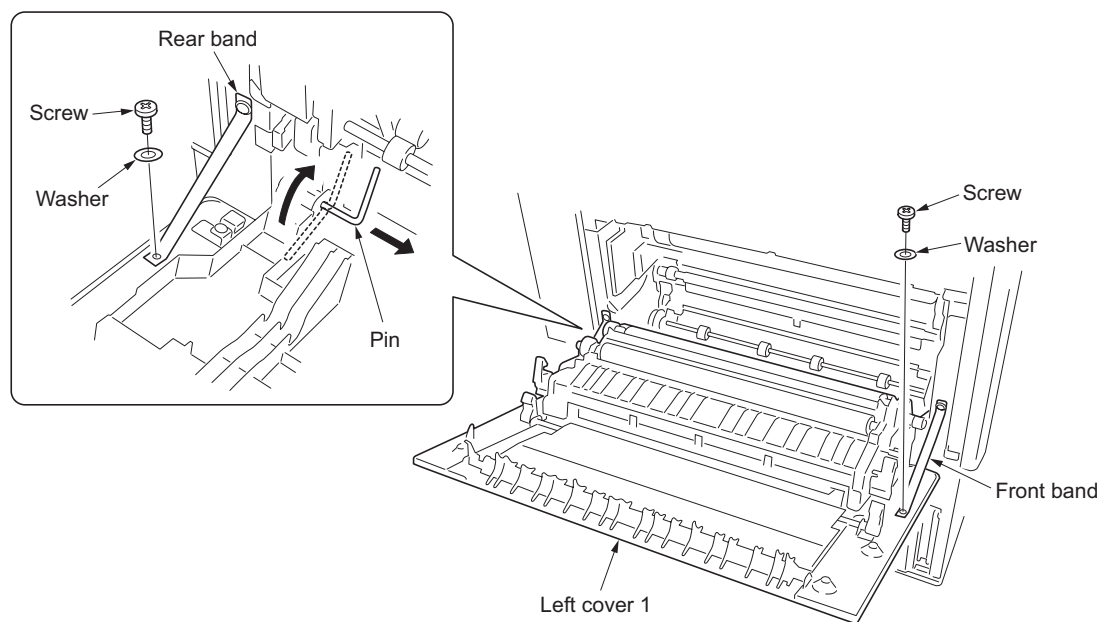


7. Open left cover 1 and paper conveying unit.
8. Remove the YC 10 connector of the feed PWB and pull the connector out on machine left through the edging of the machine rear frame.



**Figure 1-5-38**

9. Remove the screws and washers at the front and rear bands on left cover 1.
10. Raise the pin of L type of the left cover 1 rear and slide the pin to machine front.



**Figure 1-5-39**

11. Remove the spring at the rear side of the paper conveying unit.  
Remove the band by removing the stopper at the front of the paper conveying unit.  
Remove the paper conveying unit and left cover 1.

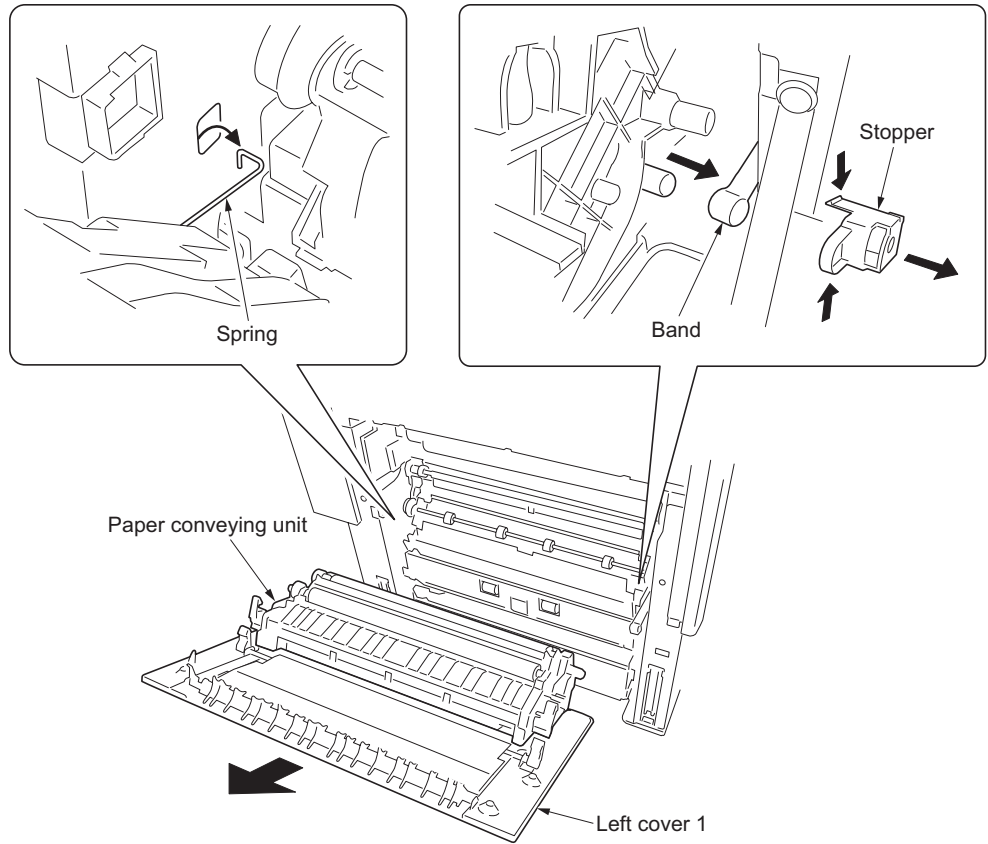


Figure 1-5-40

12. Remove the conveying guide and middle guide unit.

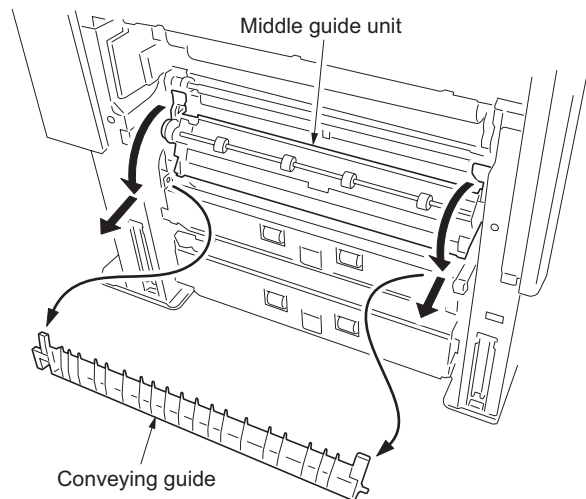
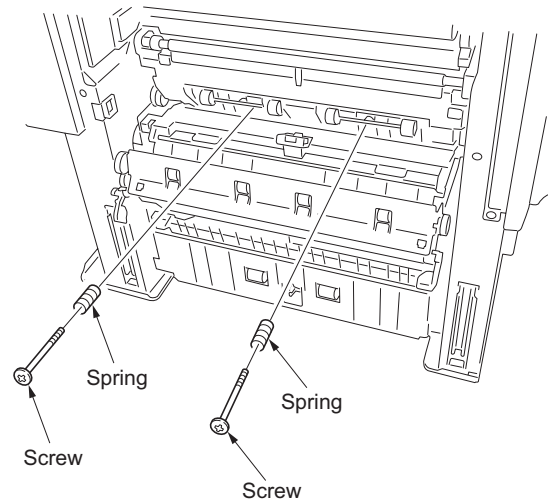


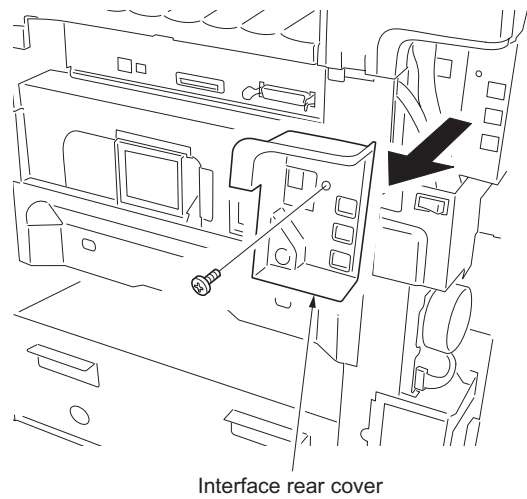
Figure 1-5-41

13. Remove two screws and springs holding the laser scanner unit.



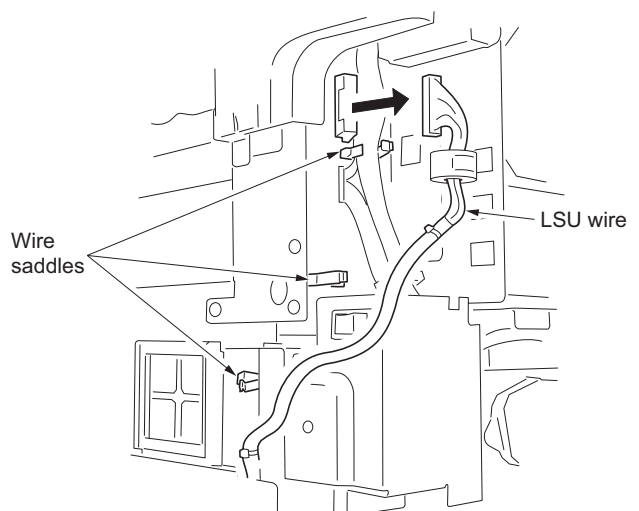
**Figure 1-5-42**

14. Remove the MP unit (see page 1-5-5).
15. Remove one screw and then remove the interface rear cover.



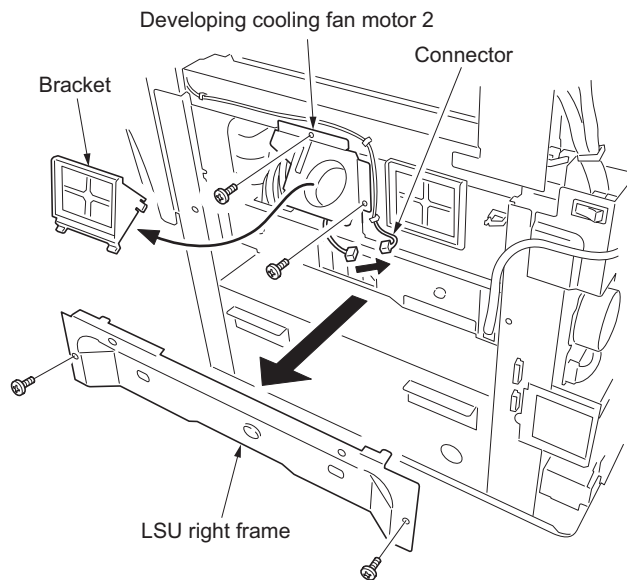
**Figure 1-5-43**

16. Remove the connector of the LSU wire and release the wire from the wire saddles.



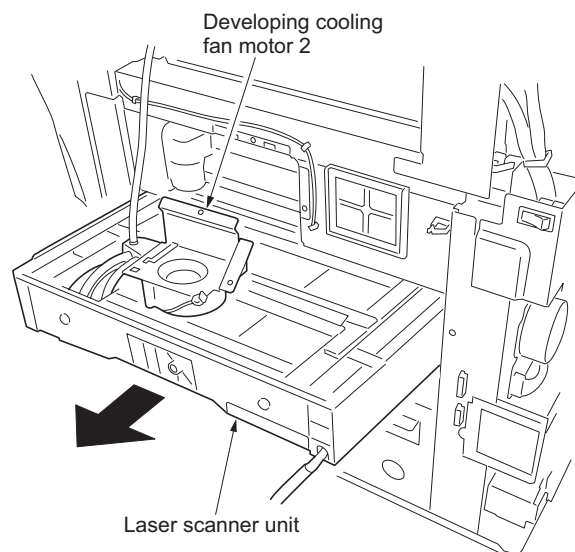
**Figure 1-5-44**

17. Remove two screws and then remove the LSU right frame.
18. Remove the bracket of developing cooling fan motor 2.  
Remove two screws and one connector.



**Figure 1-5-45**

19. Pull the laser scanner unit out from machine right with developing cooling fan 2.
20. Pull out five tubs and then remove developing cooling fan motor 2.
21. Replace the laser scanner unit and refit developing cooling fan motor 2.
22. Install the laser scanner unit.



**Figure 1-5-46**

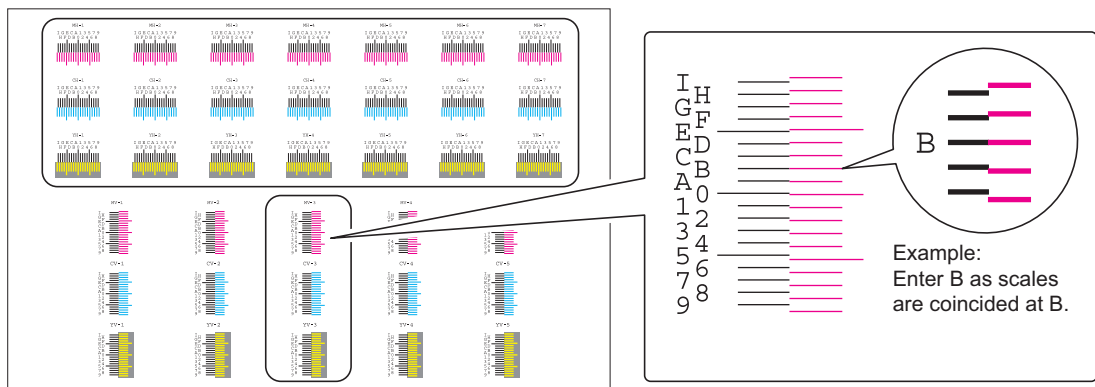
23. Refit the LSU right frame, interface rear cover and MP unit.
24. Refit two screws of the laser scanner unit.
25. Refit the middle guide unit and conveying guide.
26. Refit the paper conveying unit and left cover 1.
27. Connect the YC10 connector of the feed PWB.
28. Refit left lower cover 1/2, front left cover 2, left cover 2 and rear cover.
29. Perform maintenance mode U473 and enter the correction data (see page 1-3-83).
30. Perform maintenance mode U119 (drum setup) (see page 1-3-40).
31. Performs manual color registration adjustment (see page 1-5-23).

**(5) Manual color registration adjustment**

Follow the procedure below to replace the laser scanner unit.

**Procedure**

1. Press the system menu/counter key.
2. Press [User Adjustment]. Press [Color Calibrat.] ([Colour Calibrat.]). Press [On]. Color calibration begins.
3. Press [Color Regist.] ([Colour Regist.]). Press [Configuration]. Press [PrintChart (Details)]. A chart is printed.
4. Press [InputValue (Details)].  
Read figures at MH-1 to 7/CH-1 to 7/YH-1 to 7 and MV-3/CV-3/YV-3 of the reference chart and enter the figure marked at the scale which the BK fine line is in line with the M/C/Y fine lines, using the cursor up/down keys.
5. Press [Completed.] after all values have been entered. Color registration begins.



Reference chart

Figure 1-5-47

6. Press [Print Chart (Details)] to print a reference chart.
7. Verify that each scale is within the range of 1 to A. If they are within the range, proceed to step 8.  
If scales are out of range, repeat steps 4 through 7.

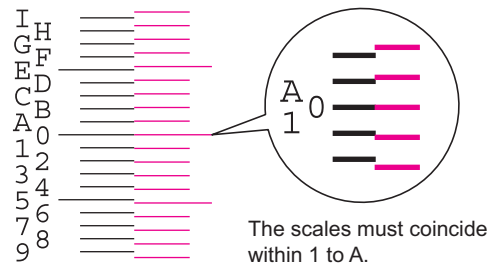
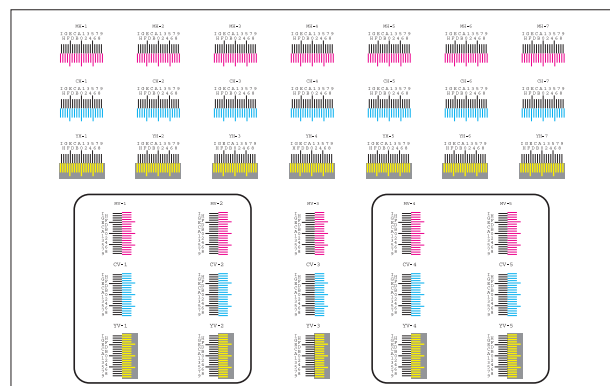


Figure 1-5-48

8. Verify that scales of MV-1,2,4,5/CV-1,2,4,5/YV-1,2,4,5 coincide within the range of 1 to A.  
If they are within the range, adjustment is complete.  
If they are out of range, proceed to step 9.

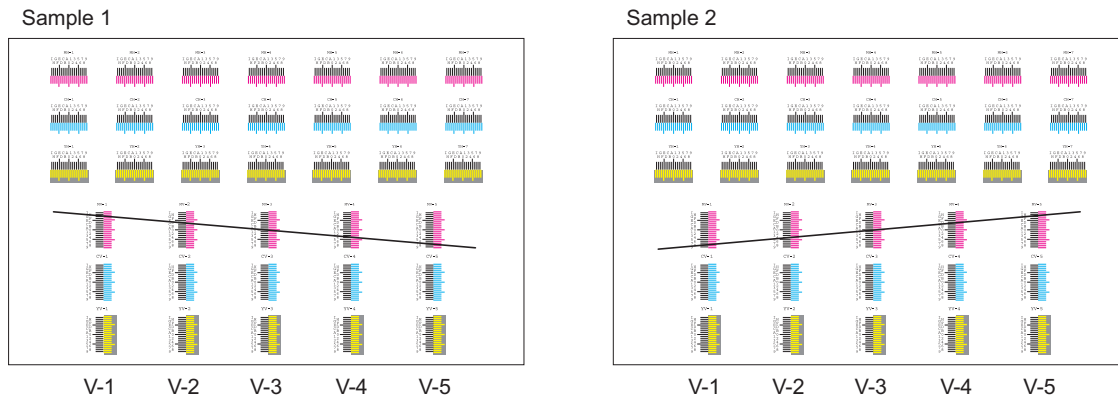


Reference chart

Figure 1-5-49

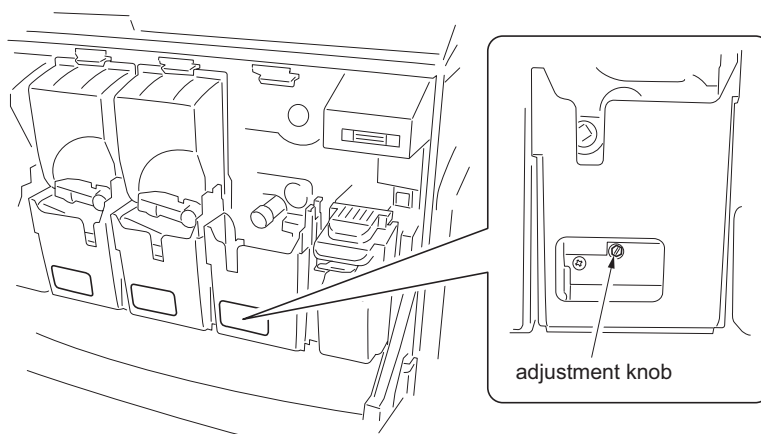
**If manual color registration has failed:**

9. If the balance between V-1 and V-5 is more than 2 scales (sample 1) or less than -2 scales (sample 2), perform the following steps:



**Figure 1-5-50**

10. Open the front cover and remove the toner container which corresponds to the color in adjustment.
11. Rotate the adjustment knob using a 5 mm hex wrench.
  - Direction of rotation
    - (V-1 - V-5)  $\geq$  2 scales (sample 1): rotate counterclockwise.
    - (V-1 - V-5)  $\leq$  -2 scales (sample 2): rotate clockwise.
  - Number of rotation
    - (V-1 - V-5) x 2 clicks
12. Refit the toner container and close the front cover.
13. Turn the main power switch off and on. Correction automatically starts.
14. Print a reference chart and verify the result.



**Figure 1-5-51**

## 1-5-4 Image formation section

### (1) Detaching and refitting the image formation holder

#### Procedure

1. Open the front cover.
2. Turn the toner container lock lever for the toner container clockwise to release the lock.
3. Lift the clip to open the toner container.
4. Remove four toner containers.
5. Hold down release lever and slowly pull out the waste toner box.

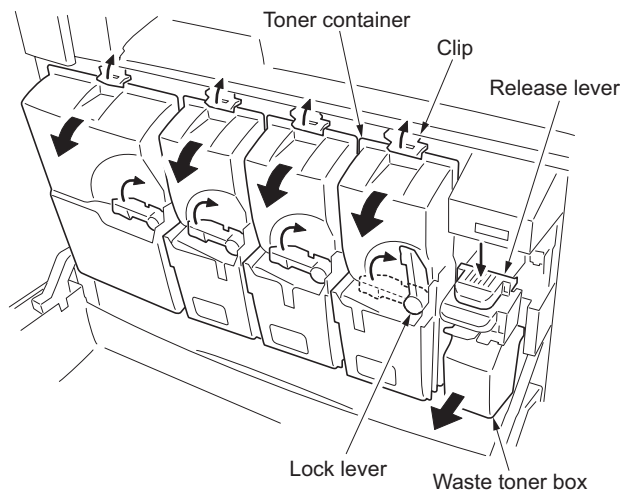


Figure 1-5-52

6. Remove the connector cover and remove one connector.

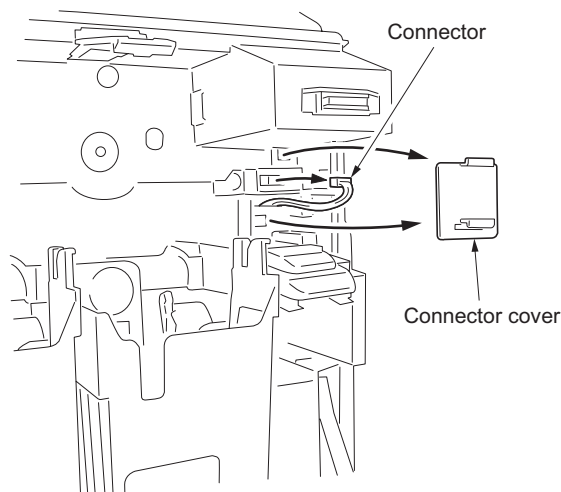


Figure 1-5-53

7. Remove five screws and push the left and right levers into the inner part, and then remove the image formation holder.

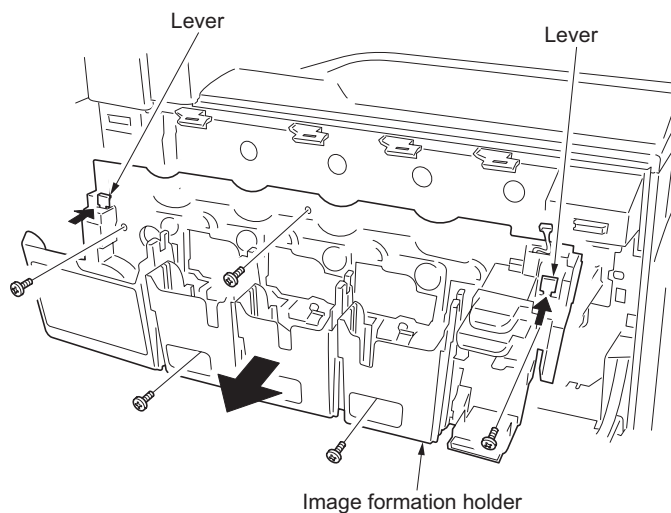


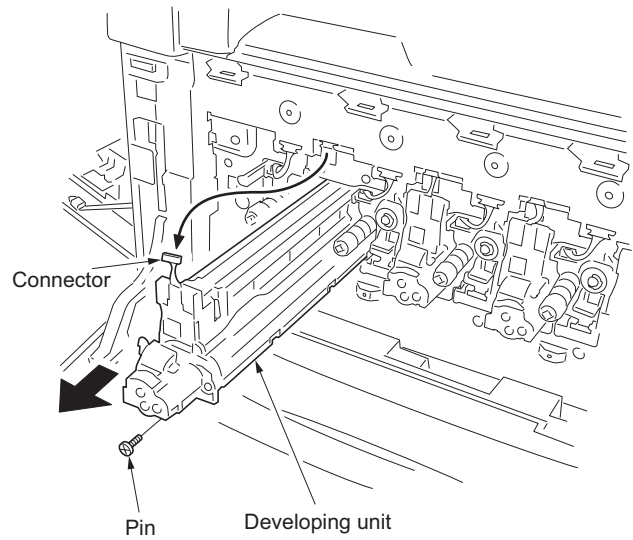
Figure 1-5-54

**(2) Detaching and refitting the developing unit**

Follow the procedure below to replace the developing unit.

**Procedure**

1. Remove the image formation holder (see page 1-5-25).
2. Remove each connector and pin, and then remove four developing units.



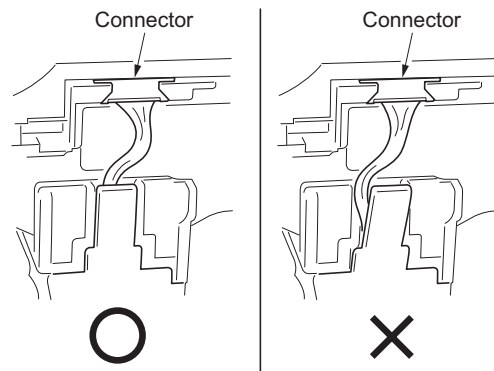
**Figure 1-5-55**

3. Remove the protective sheet from the new developing unit, and shake the developing unit right and left for more than five times.
4. Install all the developing units in the machine.

**Caution:**

When securing the developing unit, be sure to insert the unit all the way into the machine and fix it using the pin.

when connecting the connector of the developing unit, check that the wire is not inserted in housing as shown in a figure.



**Figure 1-5-56**



### (3) Detaching and refitting the drum unit

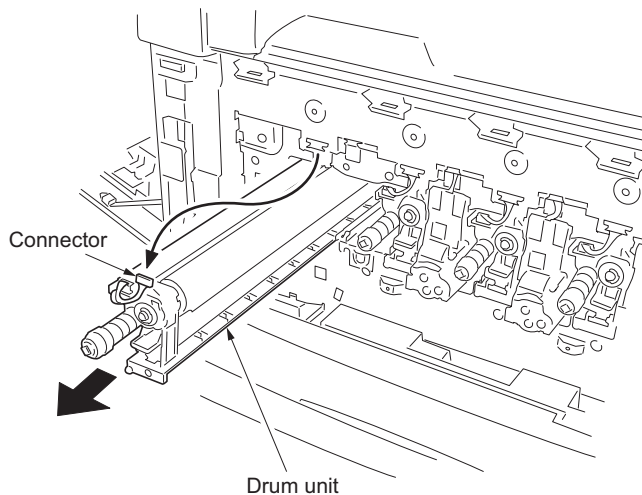
Follow the procedure below to replace the drum unit.

#### Caution

Avoid direct sunlight and strong light when detaching and refitting the drum unit.  
Never touch the drum surface.

#### Procedure

1. Remove the image formation holder (see page 1-5-25).
2. Remove the developing units (see page 1-5-26).
3. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
4. Pull out the transfer belt unit (see page 1-5-28).
5. Remove each connector and then remove four drum units.
6. Replace each drum unit and install the unit.
7. Perform maintenance mode U119 (drum setup) (see page 1-3-40).



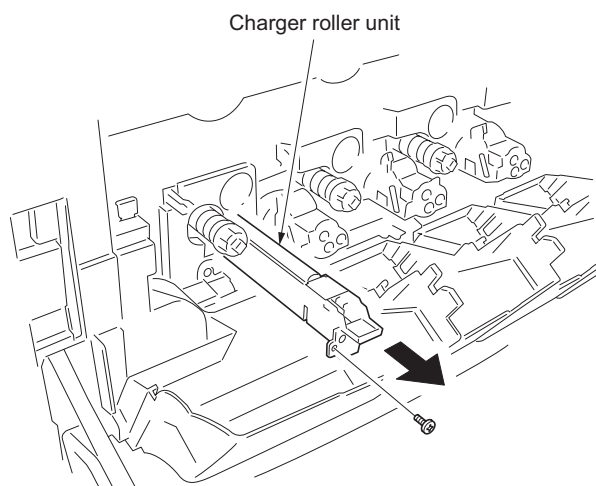
**Figure 1-5-57**

### (4) Detaching and refitting the charger roller unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the charger roller unit.

#### Procedure

1. Remove each toner container (see page 1-5-25)
2. Remove each screw and then remove the four charger roller units.
3. Replace each charger roller unit and install the unit.
4. Perform maintenance mode U930 to clear the counter value (see page 1-3-92).



**Figure 1-5-58**

### 1-5-5 Transfer section

#### (1) Detaching and refitting the transfer belt unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the transfer belt unit.

#### Procedure

1. Remove the fuser unit (see page 1-5-31).
2. Further open the paper conveying unit by removing the stopper at the front of the paper conveying unit.

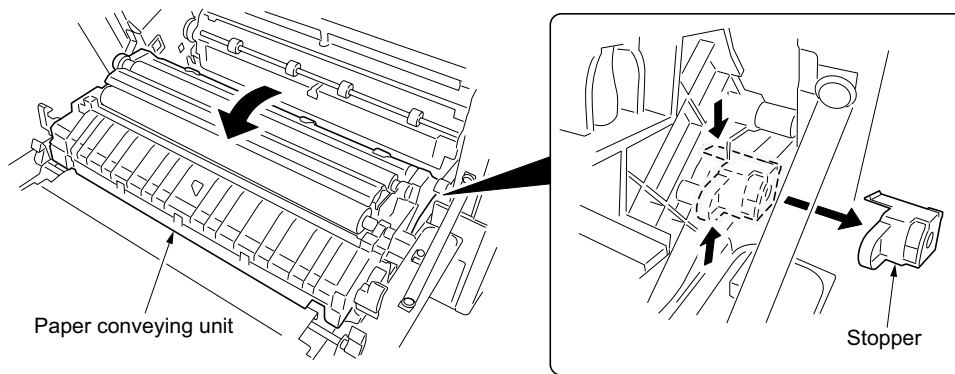


Figure 1-5-59

3. Remove one connector and then remove the transfer belt unit while raising the front and rear circular sections.
4. Replace the transfer belt unit and install it in the machine in a horizontal manner.

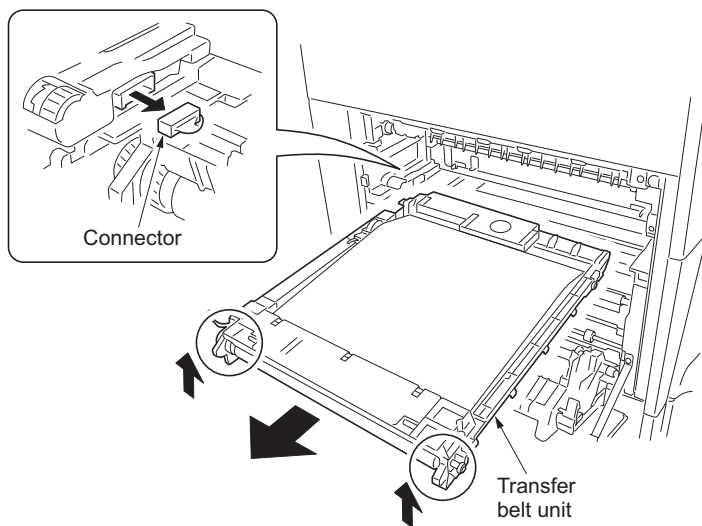


Figure 1-5-60

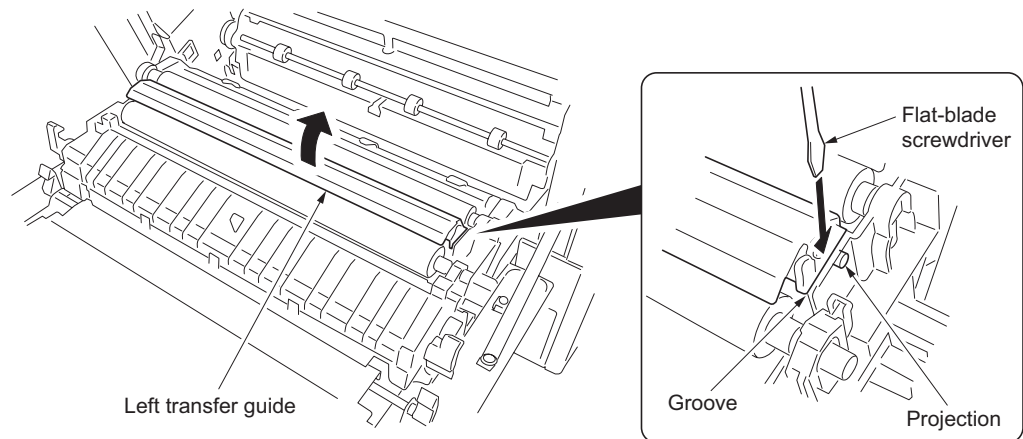
5. Perform maintenance mode U127 to clear the counter value (see page 1-3-41).

**(2) Detaching and refitting the transfer roller**

Follow the procedure below to replace the transfer roller.

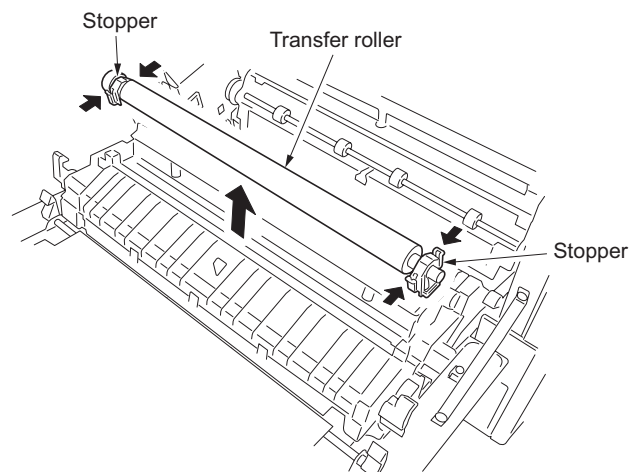
**Procedure**

1. Open left cover 1 and paper conveying unit.
2. Using a flat-blade screwdriver, remove the left transfer guide by prying the protrusion off the hole.



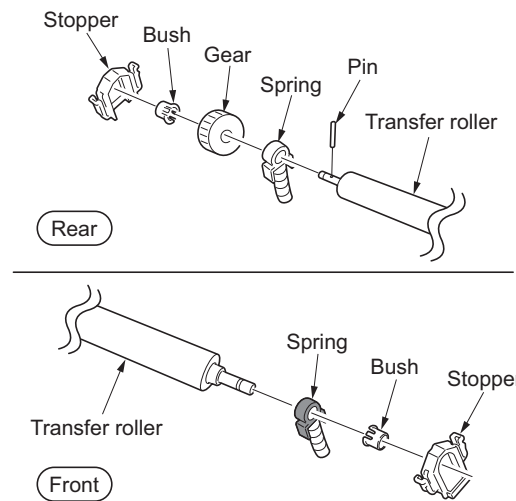
**Figure 1-5-61**

3. Remove the transfer roller while pressing down the stopper of both ends.



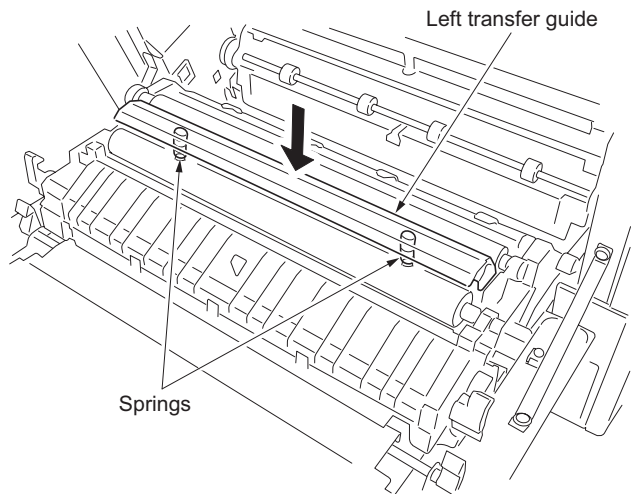
**Figure 1-5-62**

4. Remove the stopper, bush, gear, pin and white spring from the transfer roller rear. Remove the stopper, bush and black spring from the transfer roller front.
5. Replace the transfer roller and install the roller.



**Figure 1-5-63**

6. Push in the left transfer guide to refit the guide in position. After refitting, make sure that the two springs on the left transfer guide are caught with the protrusions on the paper conveying unit.



**Figure 1-5-64**

## 1-5-6 Fuser section

### (1) Detaching and refitting the fuser unit

Follow the procedure below to replace the fuser unit.

#### Procedure

1. Open left cover 1 and paper conveying unit.
2. Remove two screws and remove the fuser unit.
3. Replace the fuser unit and install the unit.
4. Perform maintenance mode U167 to clear the counter value (see page 1-3-49).

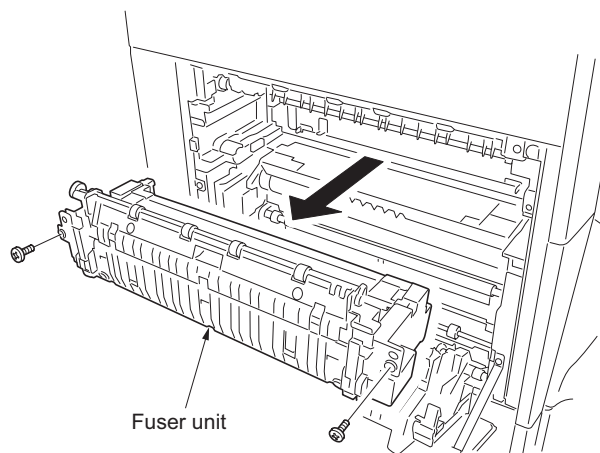


Figure 1-5-65

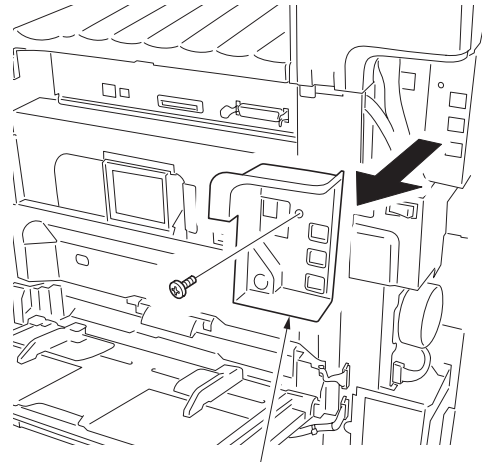
### 1-5-7 Other

#### (1) Detaching and refitting the engine PWB

Follow the procedure below to replace the engine PWB.

##### Procedure

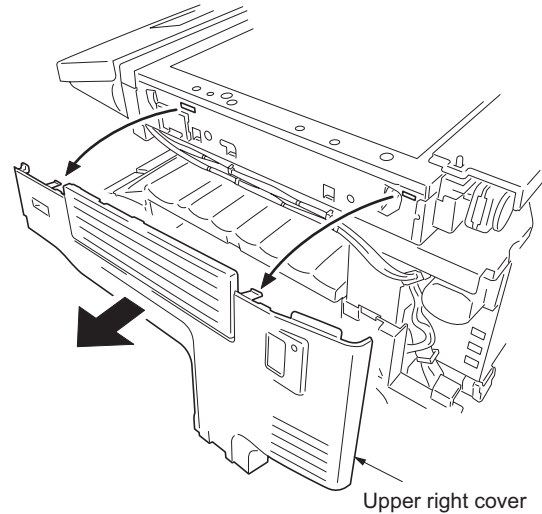
1. Remove the original platen or DP.
2. Remove the rear cover, front left cover 1, upper left cover, scanner left and right covers and contact glass (see page 1-5-9).
3. Remove the interface cover and right cover (see page 1-5-5).
4. Remove one screw and then remove the interface rear cover.



Interface rear cover

**Figure 1-5-66**

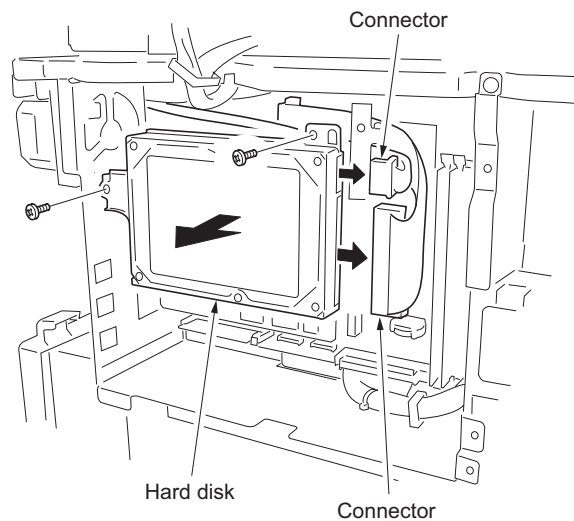
5. Remove the inserted parts and remove the upper right cover.



Upper right cover

**Figure 1-5-67**

6. Remove two screws and connectors, and then remove the hard disk.

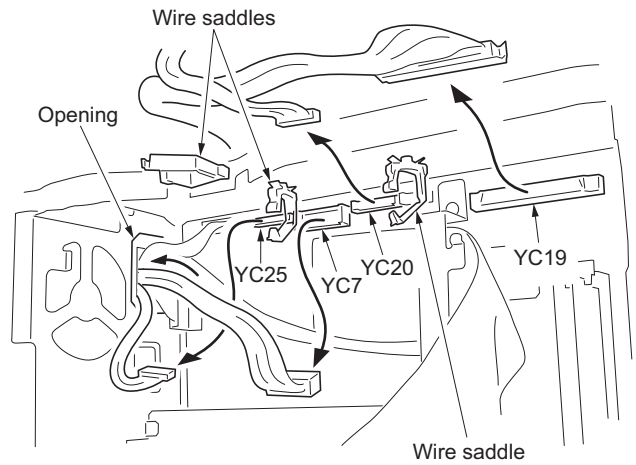


Hard disk

Connector

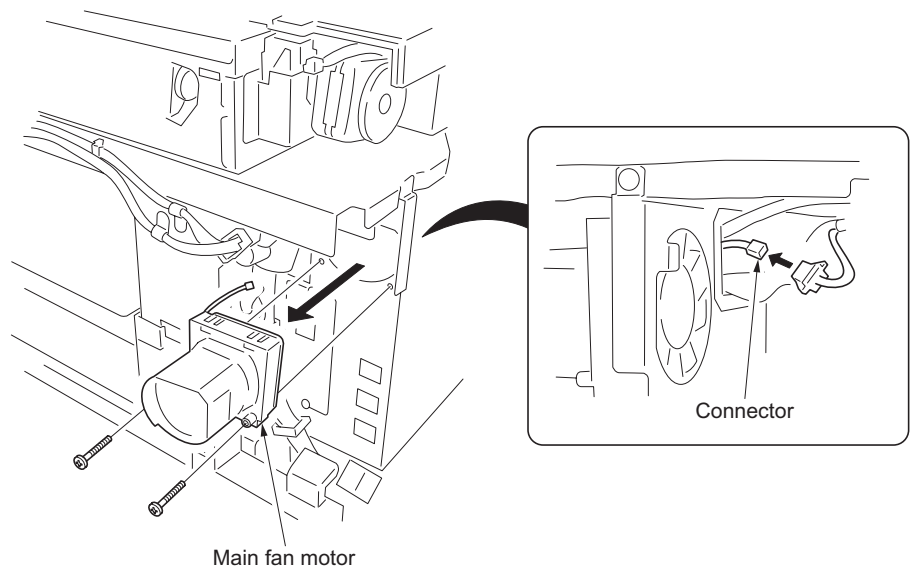
**Figure 1-5-68**

7. Remove YC19 and YC20 connectors of the main PWB, and release the wire from the wire saddle.
8. Remove YC7 and YC25 connectors of the main PWB, and then pull connectors out from the opening on the machine right.



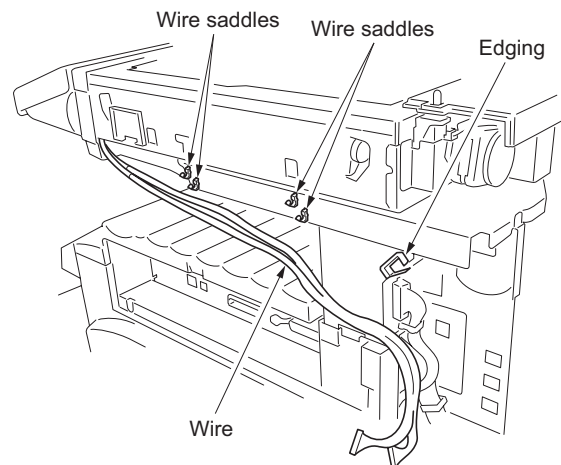
**Figure 1-5-69**

9. Remove the connector and two screws, and then remove the main fan motor.



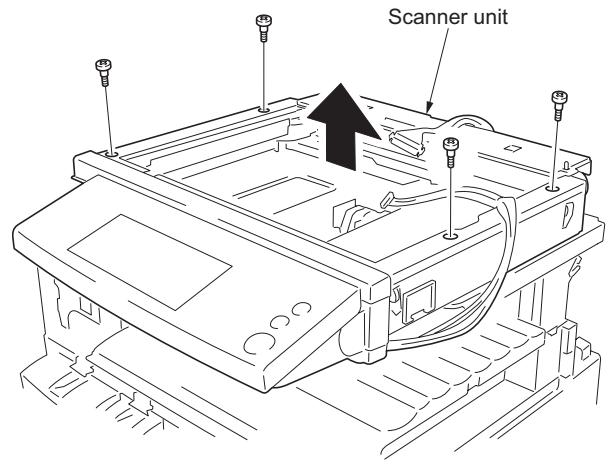
**Figure 1-5-70**

10. Release the wire from edging and wire saddles on the machine right.



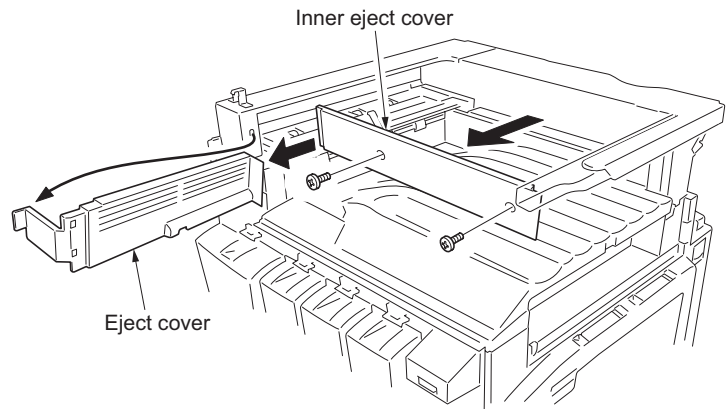
**Figure 1-5-71**

11. Remove four screws and remove the scanner unit.



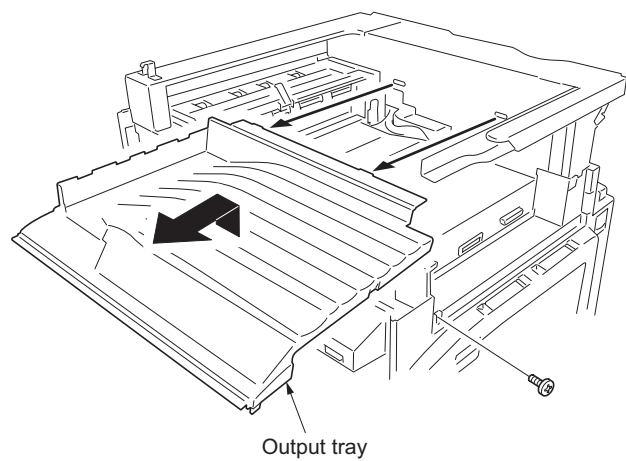
**Figure 1-5-72**

12. Remove the eject cover.
13. Remove two screws and remove the inner eject cover.



**Figure 1-5-73**

14. Remove one screw of the right cover.
15. Remove the inserted parts and remove the output tray.



**Figure 1-5-74**



16. Remove three screws and one connector and then remove the controller box cover.

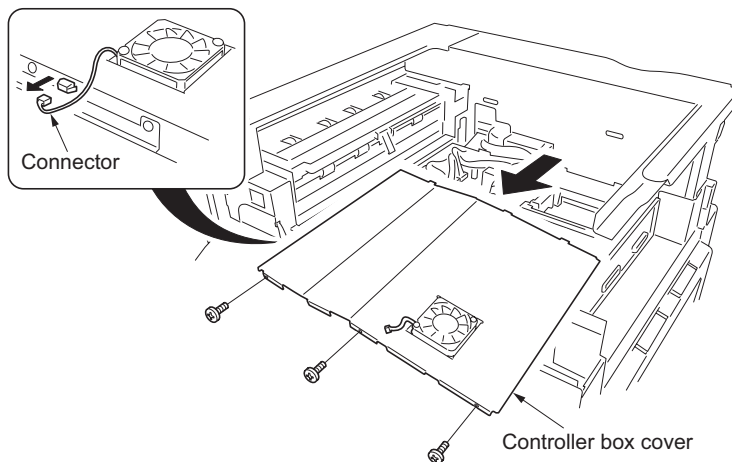


Figure 1-5-75

17. Remove two screws and remove the printer PWB.

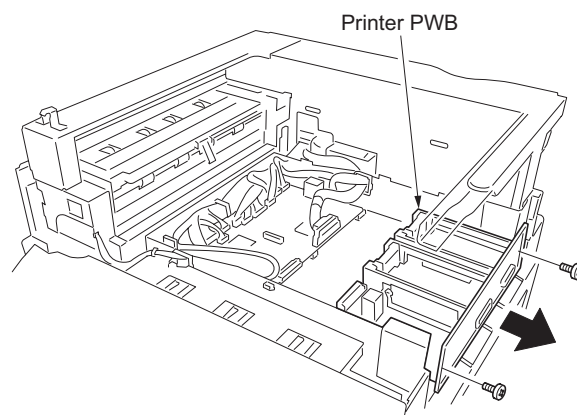


Figure 1-5-76

18. Remove all the connectors of the engine PWB.
19. Remove six screws and remove the engine PWB.
20. Remove EEPROM of the engine PWB and install EEPROM in the new engine PWB.
21. Install the new engine PWB and connect all connectors.
22. Refit the printer PWB and controller box cover.  
While refitting the controller box cover, press and hold the center of the cover.
23. Refit the output tray, inner eject cover and eject cover.
24. Refit the scanner unit and hard disk.
25. Refit the contact glass.
26. Refit the upper right cover, scanner right cover, interface rear cover, right cover and interface cover.
27. Refit the scanner left cover, upper left cover, front left cover 1 and rear cover.
28. Update the firmware to the latest version (see page 1-6-1).

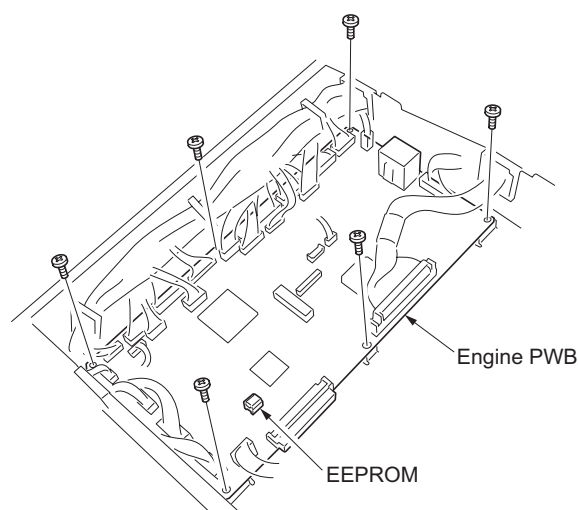


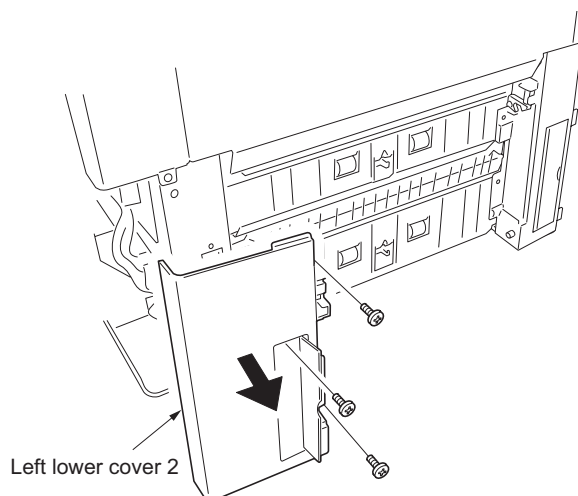
Figure 1-5-77

**(2) Detaching and refitting the conveying drive unit**

Follow the procedure below to replace the conveying drive unit.

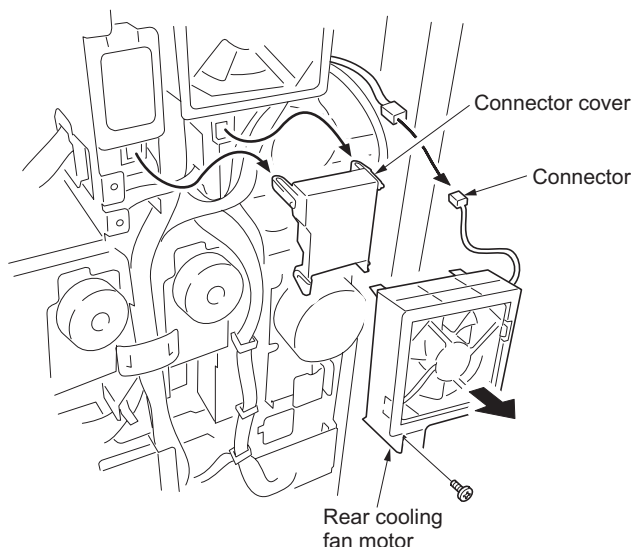
**Procedure**

1. Pull out cassette 1 and 2.
2. Remove fifteen screws and remove the rear cover (see page 1-5-9).
3. Remove two straps and remove left cover 2 (see page 1-5-18).
4. Remove three screws and remove left lower cover 2.



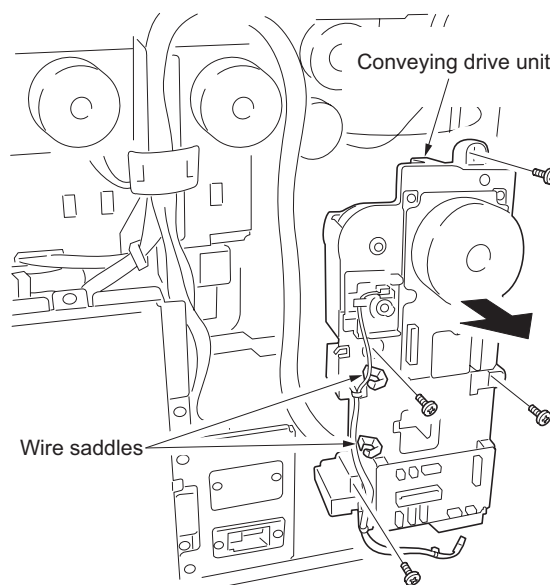
**Figure 1-5-78**

5. Remove the connector cover.
6. Remove the screw, connector and inserted parts, and then remove the rear cooling fan motor.



**Figure 1-5-79**

7. Release the wire from the wire saddles of the conveying drive unit and remove all of the connectors.
8. Remove four screws and remove the conveying drive unit.



**Figure 1-5-80**

9. Remove the paper feed/developing motor BK and feed PWB from the conveying drive unit.
10. Replace the conveying drive unit and refit the paper feed/developing motor BK and feed PWB.
11. Install the conveying drive unit.
12. Refit the rear cooling fan motor.
13. Refit left lower cover2, left cover 2, rear cover and cassette 1/2.

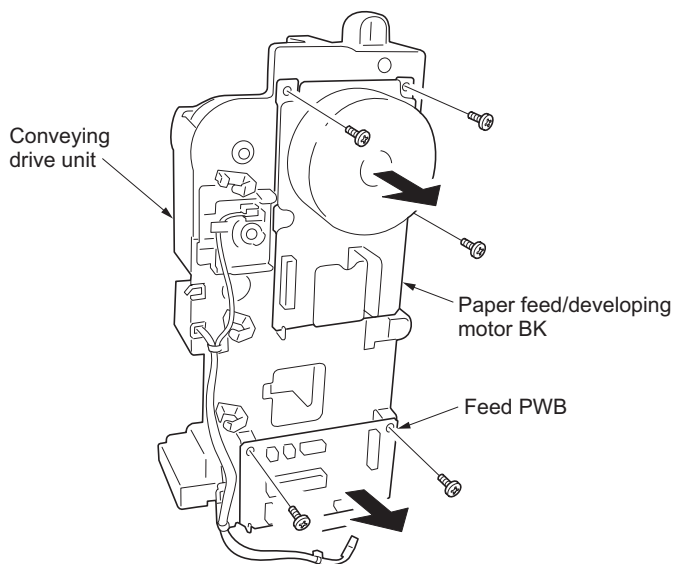


Figure 1-5-81

### (3) Detaching and refitting the registration clutch

Follow the procedure below to replace the registration clutch.

#### Procedure

1. Remove the conveying drive unit (see page 1-5-36).
2. Remove the stop ring and connector and then remove the registration clutch.
3. Replace the registration clutch and install the clutch.
4. Refit the conveying drive unit.

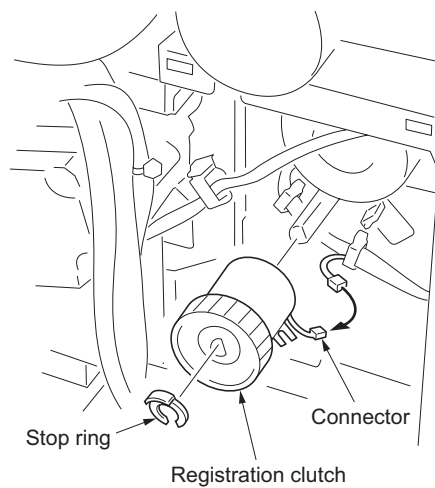


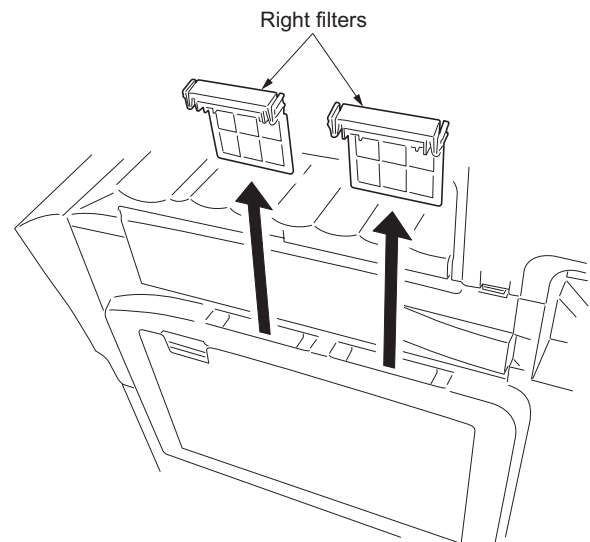
Figure 1-5-82

**(4) Detaching and refitting the right filter and rear filter**

Follow the procedure below to replace the right and rear filters.

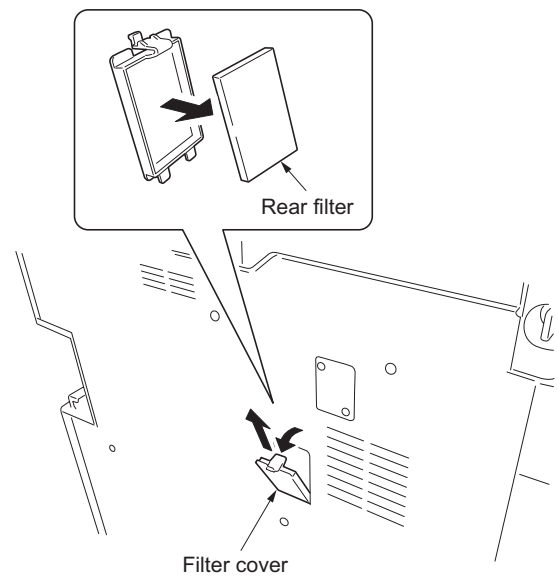
**Procedure**

1. Remove two right filters.
2. Replace two right filters and install the filters.



**Figure 1-5-83**

3. Remove the filter cover.
4. Remove the rear filter from the filter cover.
5. Replace the rear filter and install the filter.



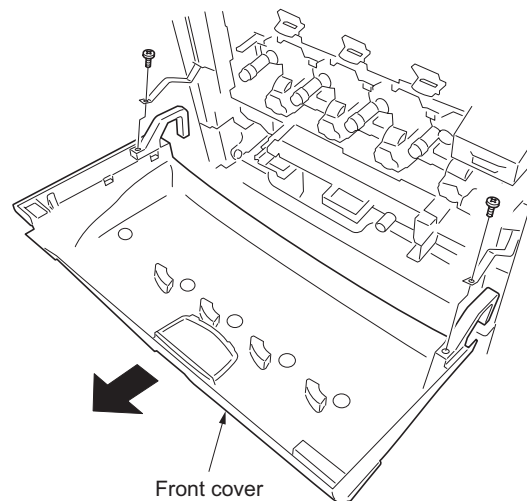
**Figure 1-5-84**

**(5) Detaching and refitting the LSU cleaning clutch**

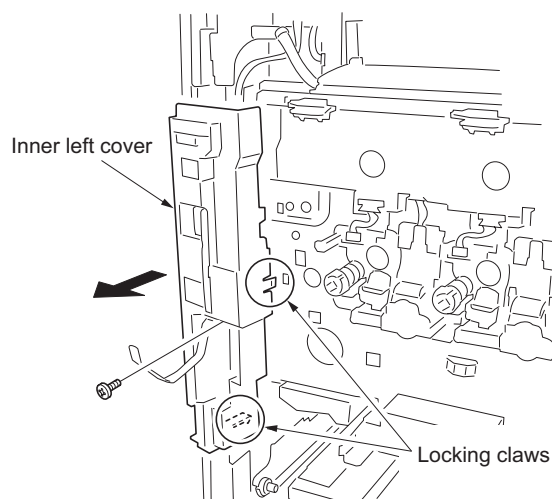
Follow the procedure below to replace the LSU cleaning clutch.

**Procedure**

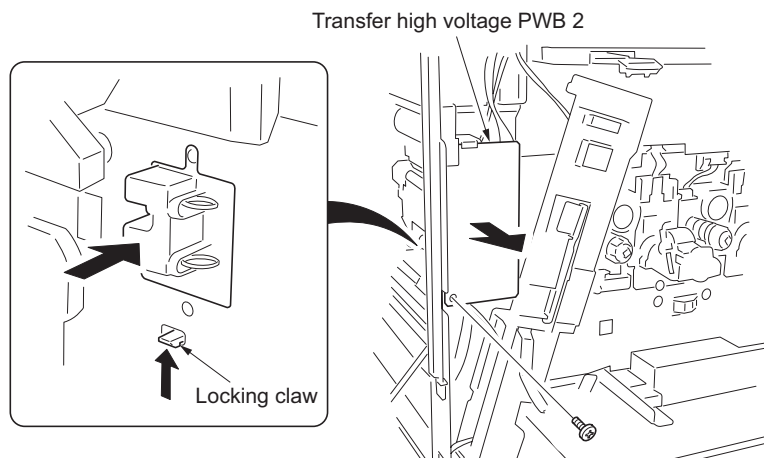
1. Remove the interface cover and right cover (see page 1-5-5).
2. Remove the rear cover and front left cover 1 (see page 1-5-9).
3. Remove the paper conveying unit, conveying guide and middle guide unit (see page 1-5-18).
4. Remove the image formation holder (see page 1-5-25).
5. Pull out cassette 1.
6. Remove two screws and remove the front cover.

**Figure 1-5-85**

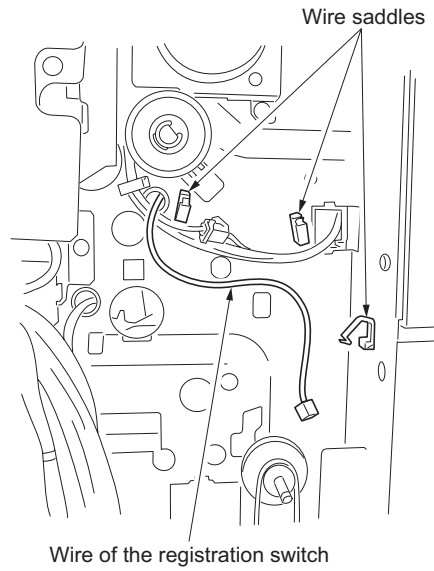
7. Remove the screw and two locking claws, and then remove the inner left cover. Leave the connectors kept plugged to the switches.

**Figure 1-5-86**

8. Remove the screw of transfer high voltage PWB 2. While unlatching and holding the locking claw upward, push the transfer high voltage PWB 2 outward.

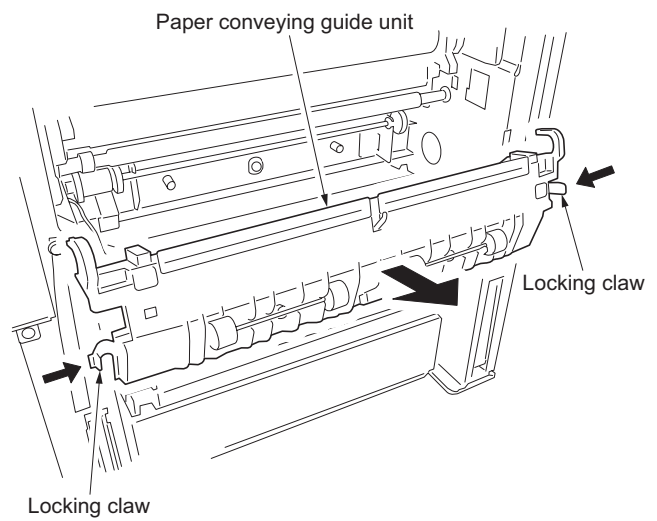
**Figure 1-5-87**

- 9. Remove the conveying drive unit (see page 1-5-36).
- 10. Release the wire of the registration switch from three wire saddles.



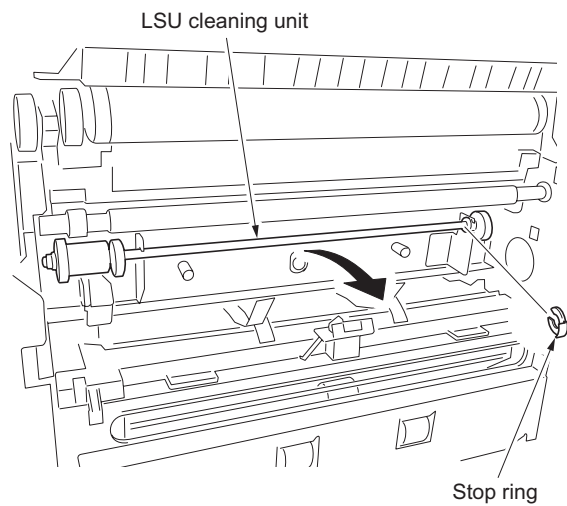
**Figure 1-5-88**

- 11. While pressing and holding the left and right locking claws inward, remove the paper conveying guide unit.



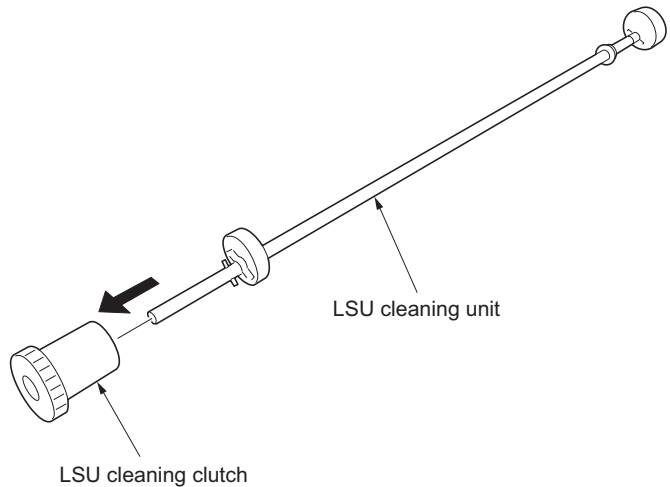
**Figure 1-5-89**

- 12. Remove the stop ring and remove the LSU cleaning unit.



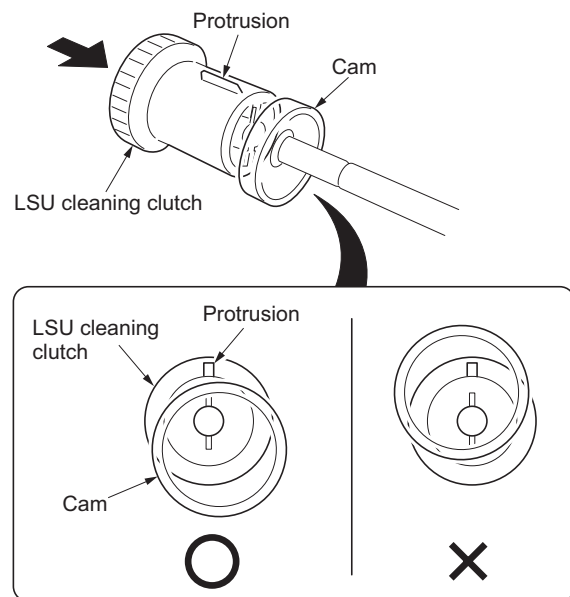
**Figure 1-5-90**

13. Remove the LSU cleaning clutch from the LSU cleaning unit.



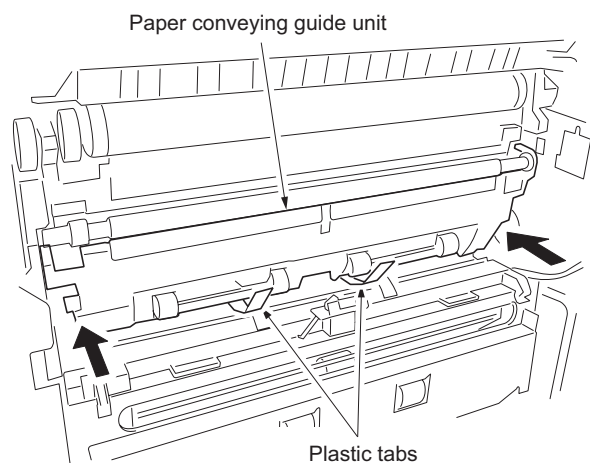
**Figure 1-5-91**

14. Replace the LSU cleaning clutch and install the clutch to LSU cleaning unit.  
 Note: When replacing the clutch, align the protrusion with cam as diagrammed.  
 15. Refit the LSU cleaning unit.



**Figure 1-5-92**

16. Refit the paper conveying guide unit.  
 Note: When installing the guide unit, use care not to tuck the plastic tabs under the guide unit.  
 17. Refit the conveying drive unit.  
 18. Refit the transfer high voltage PWB 2, inner left cover and front cover.  
 19. Refit cassette 1 and image formation holder.  
 20. Refit the middle guide unit, conveying guide and paper conveying unit.  
 21. Refit front left cover 1, rear cover, right cover and interface cover.



**Figure 1-5-93**

This page is intentionally left blank.



## 1-6-1 Upgrading the firmware

Follow the procedure below to upgrade the firmware on the main PWB and engine PWB.

Firmware upgrading requires the following tools:

Compact Flash (Products manufactured by SANDISK are recommended.)

### NOTE

Before writing data into a new Compact Flash memory, format it in advance using the machine.

Do not format a Compact Flash memory using a PC.

### Format procedure

1. Press the printer key.
2. Press [Printer Menu].
3. Press [Memory Card].
4. Press [Format] and then press [Yes].

### Procedure

1. Press the Power key on the operation panel to off. Make sure that the Power lamp is off before turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
2. Open the interface cover.
3. Remove the CF cover.

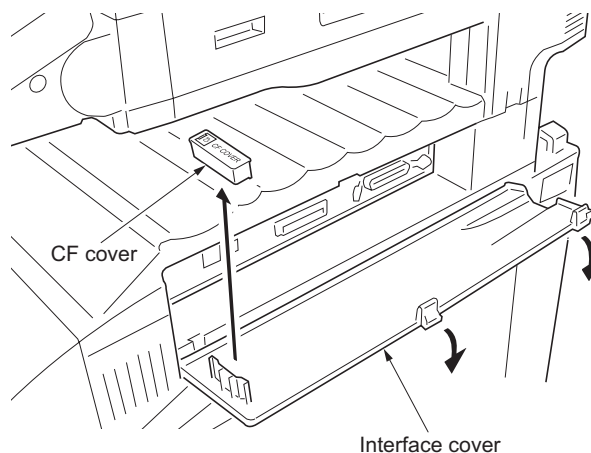


Figure 1-6-1

4. Insert Compact Flash in the CF cover.
5. While holding the CF cover, insert the Compact Flash into the memory card slot. Insert the Compact Flash memory with its front side facing up.
6. Insert the power plug and turn the main power switch on.
7. After the machine is stabilized, the firmware is upgraded.

### Caution

Never turn the main power switch off during upgrading.

8. [Completed] and check sum numbers are displayed on the touch panel when upgrading is complete.
9. Turning off the main power switch. And then unplug the power cable from the wall outlet.
10. Remove Compact Flash from the machine.
11. Remove the CF cover from the Compact Flash and attach it to the interface cover.
12. Close the interface cover.
13. Insert the power plug and turn the main power switch on.

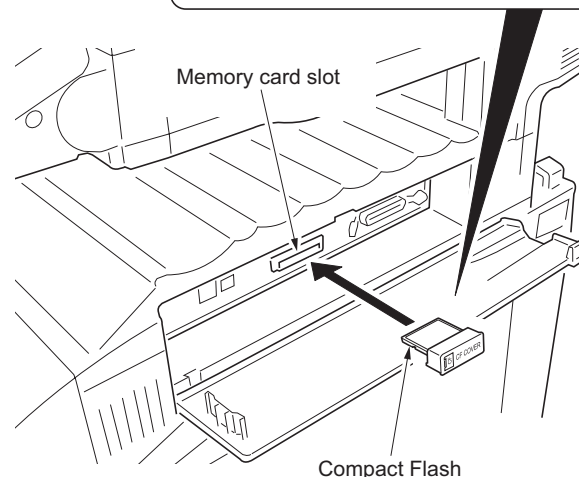
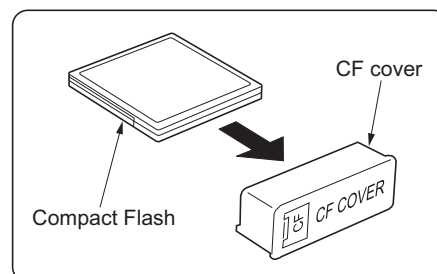


Figure 1-6-2

### 1-6-2 Remarks on main PWB replacement

When replacing the main PWB, remove the EEPROM, DIMM and DDR from the main PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new main PWB.

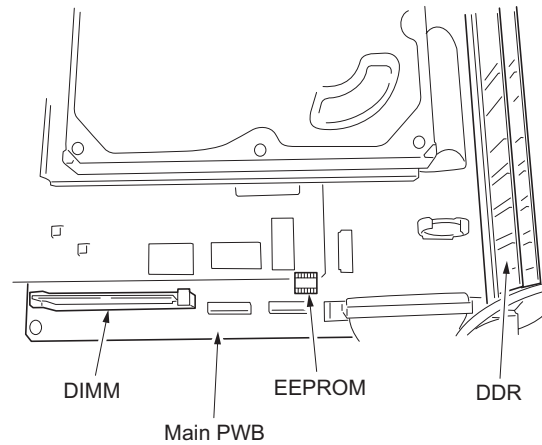


Figure 1-6-3

### 1-6-3 Remarks on scanner PWB replacement

When replacing the scanner PWB, remove the EEPROM from the scanner PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new scanner PWB.

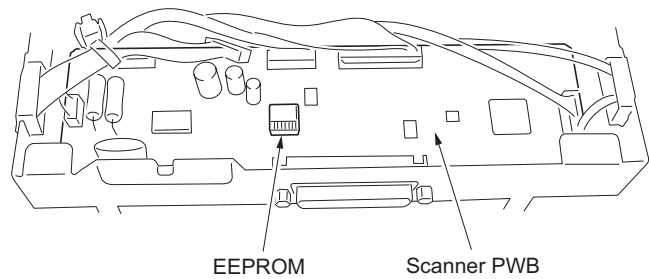


Figure 1-6-4

### 1-6-4 Remarks on printer PWB replacement

When replacing the printer PWB, remove the EEPROM, DIMM and DDR from the printer PWB that has been removed and then reattach it to the new printer PWB.

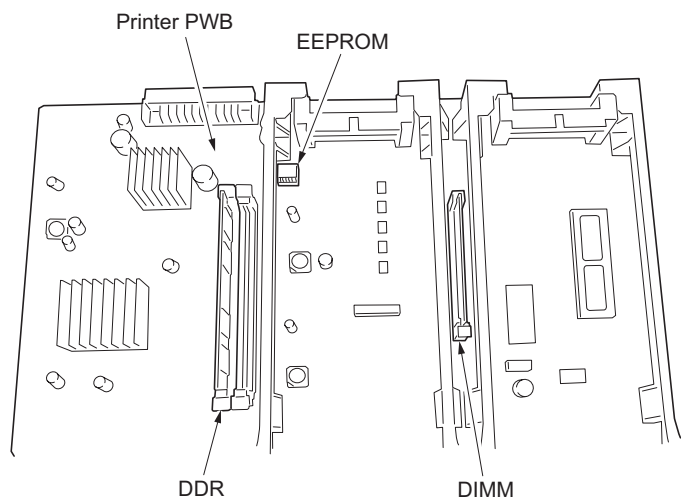


Figure 1-6-5

## 2-1-1 Paper feed section

### (1) Cassette paper feed section

Cassette paper feed section consists of the paper holder with the lift cassette operation plate activated by lift motor 1 and 2, and the pulleys, such as the forwarding pulley, the paper feed pulley and the separation pulley, for extracting and conveying the paper. Paper is fed out of the cassette by the rotation of the forwarding pulley, paper feed pulley and separation pulley.

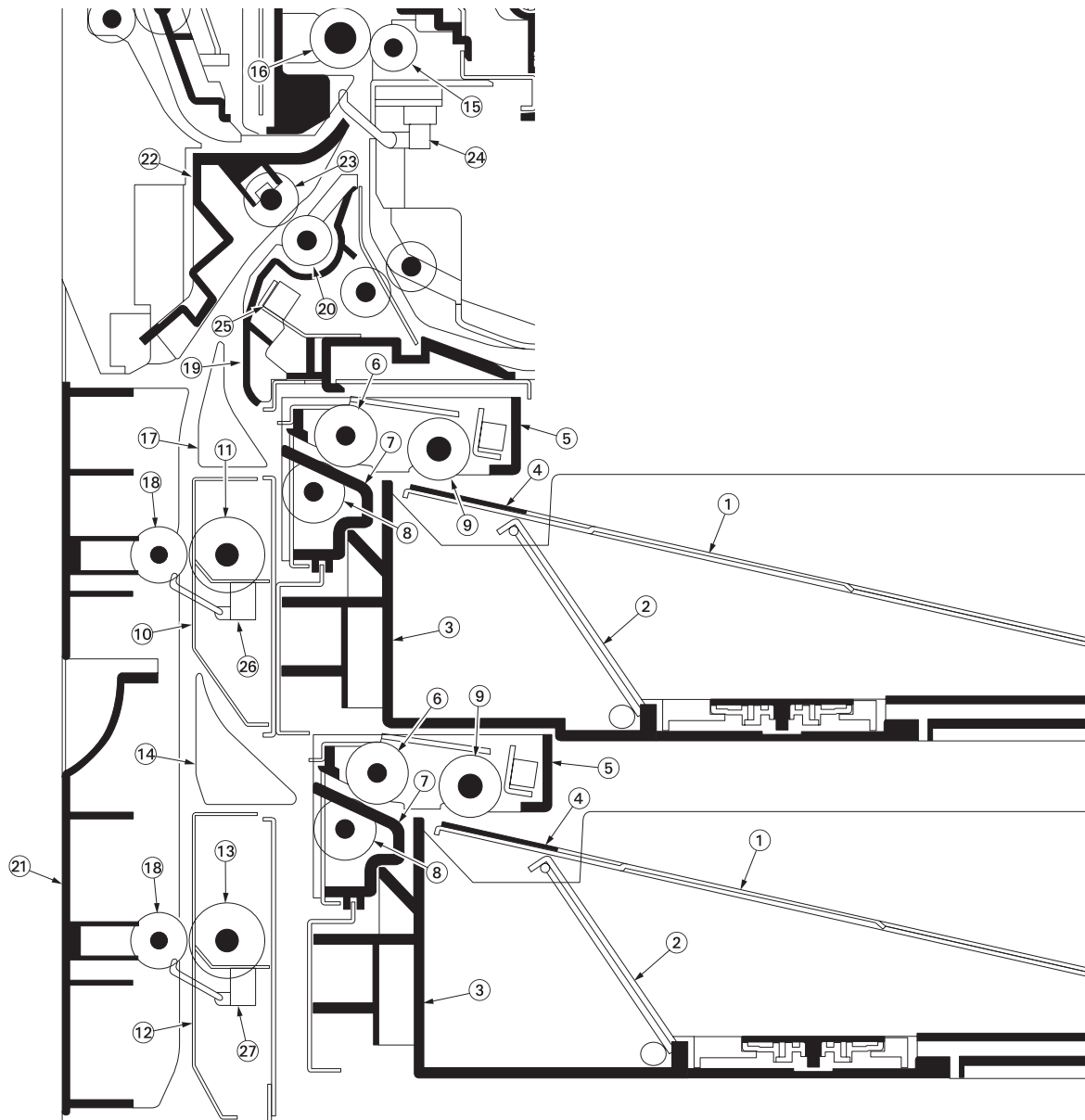


Figure 2-1-1 Cassette paper feed section

- |                                   |                            |                                |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (1) Cassette base                 | (10) Feed low 1st guide    | (19) Middle R guide            |
| (2) Lift cassette operation plate | (11) Feed low roller       | (20) Middle R roller           |
| (3) Cassette                      | (12) Feed low 2nd guide    | (21) Left cover 2              |
| (4) Cassette pad                  | (13) Feed low roller       | (22) Middle L guide            |
| (5) Paper feed upper housing      | (14) Feed UP 2nd guide     | (23) Middle pulley             |
| (6) Paper feed pulley             | (15) Registration R roller | (24) Registration switch (RSW) |
| (7) Paper feed lower housing      | (16) Registration roller   | (25) Feed switch 1 (FSW1)      |
| (8) Separation pulley             | (17) Feed UP 1st guide     | (26) Feed switch 2 (FSW2)      |
| (9) Forwarding pulley             | (18) Feed pulley           | (27) Feed switch 3 (FSW3)      |

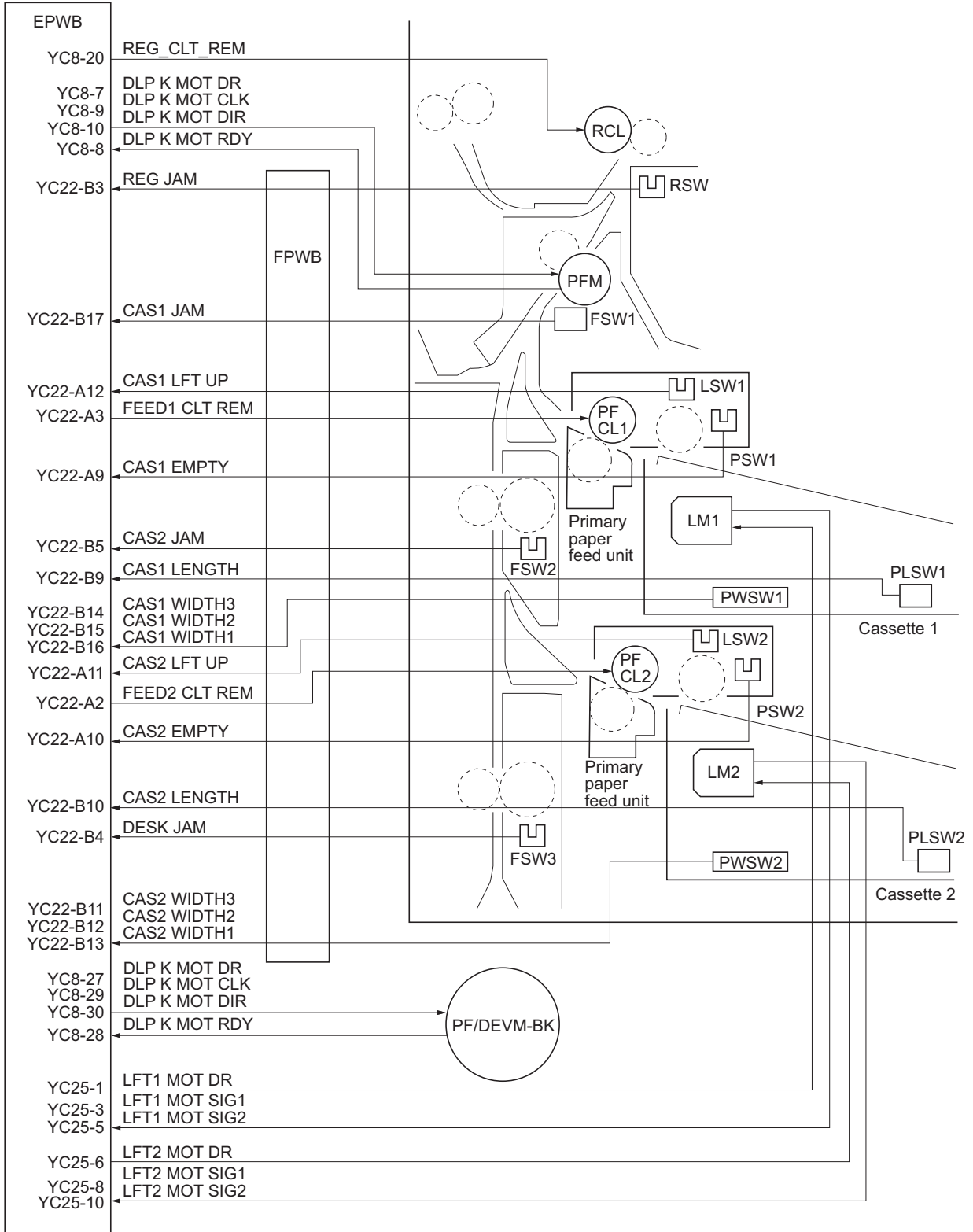
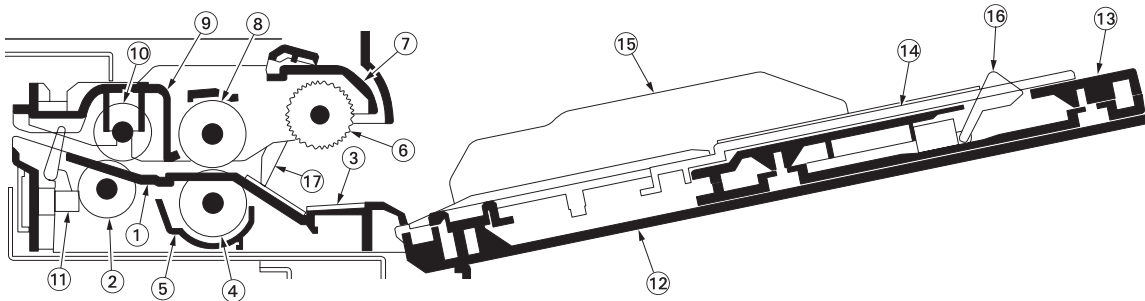


Figure 2-1-2 Cassette paper feed section block diagram

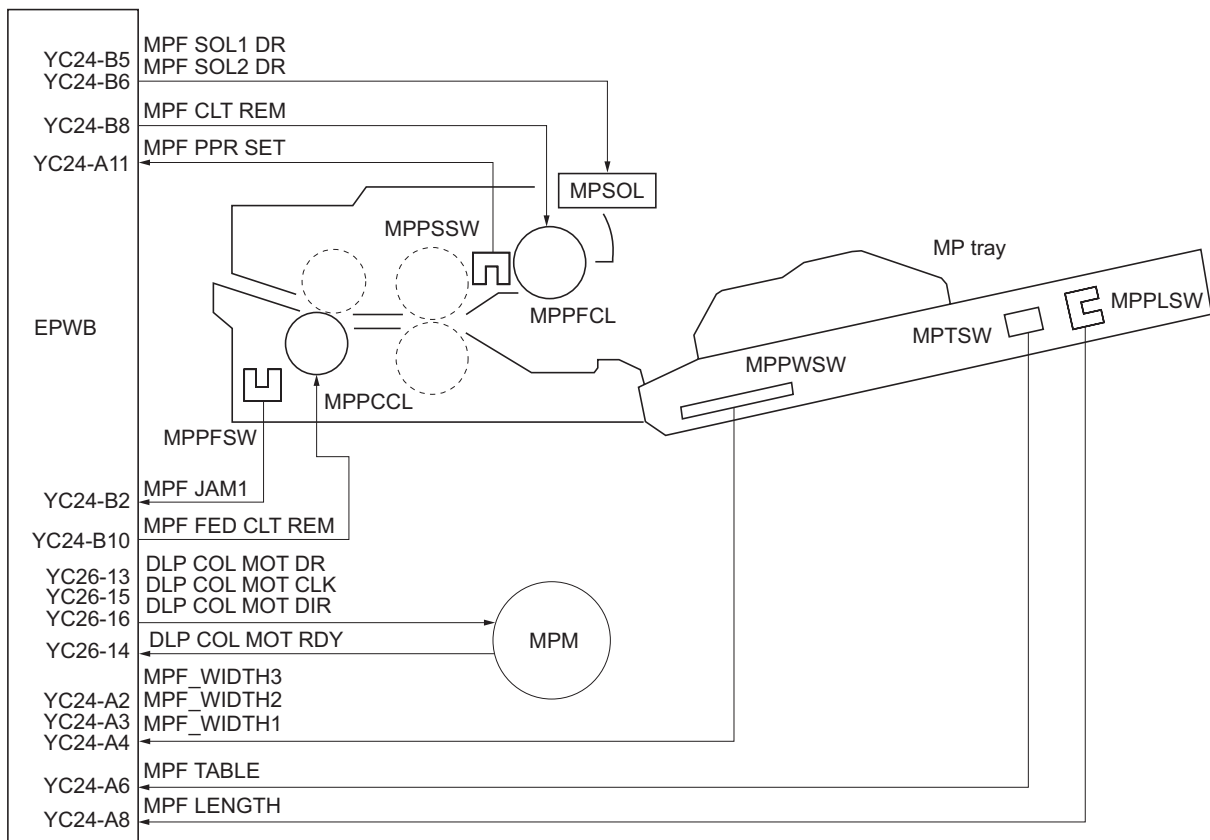
**(2) MP tray paper feed section**

Pressing the Start key activates the MP solenoid (MPSOL) to release the paper stopper, which in turn causes the MP forwarding pulley mounted on the MP support to descend. In turn, the MP forwarding pulley comes in contact with the paper placed on the MP tray is fed forward as the MP forward pulley rotates and forwarded to the MP feed pulley and the MP separation pulley. Also during paper feed, the MP separation pulley prevents multiple sheets from being fed at one time by the torque limiter.



**Figure 2-1-3 MP tray paper feed section (1)**

- |                            |   |
|----------------------------|---|
| (1) MPT lower guide        | (10) Middle pulley                        |
| (2) Middle roller          | (11) MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW)        |
| (3) Bypass friction plate  | (12) Bypass table A                       |
| (4) MP separate pulley     | (13) Bypass table B                       |
| (5) Separate pulley holder | (14) Bypass table C                       |
| (6) MP forwarding pulley   | (15) Slider                               |
| (7) MPT LF holder          | (16) MP paper length size switch (MPPLSW) |
| (8) MP feed pulley         | (17) Paper stopper                        |
| (9) MPT base               |   |



**Figure 2-1-4 MP tray paper feed section block diagram (1)**

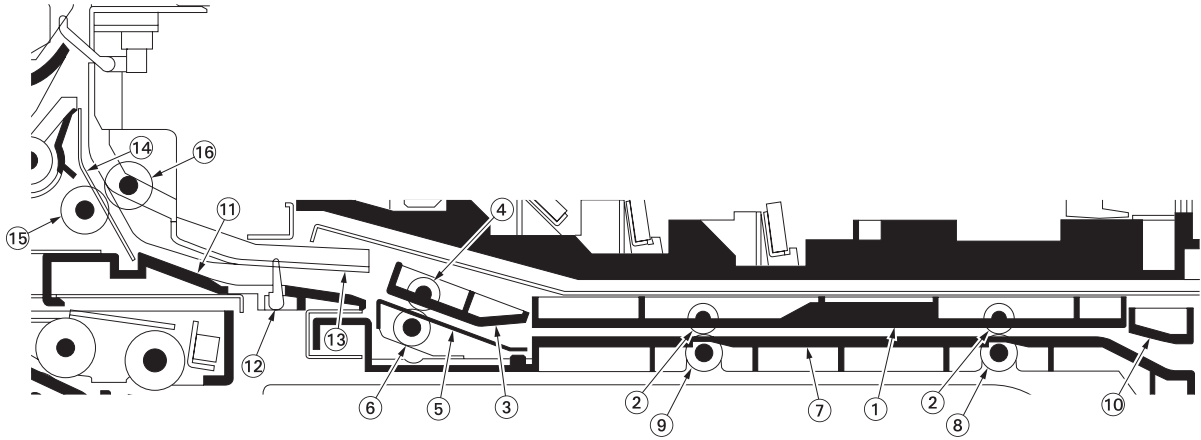


Figure 2-1-5 MP tray paper feed section (2)

- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| (1) MPT bypass cover   | (10) Bypass IN guide                    |
| (2) MPT bypass pulley  | (11) Middle low guide                   |
| (3) Bypass OUT cover   | (12) MP paper conveying switch (MPPCSW) |
| (4) Bypass OUT pulley  | (13) Feed R guide                       |
| (5) Bypass right guide | (14) Middle bypass guide                |
| (6) Bypass B roller    | (15) Middle bypass roller               |
| (7) MPT bypass base    | (16) Middle pulley                      |
| (8) Bypass C roller    |   |
| (9) Bypass A roller    |   |

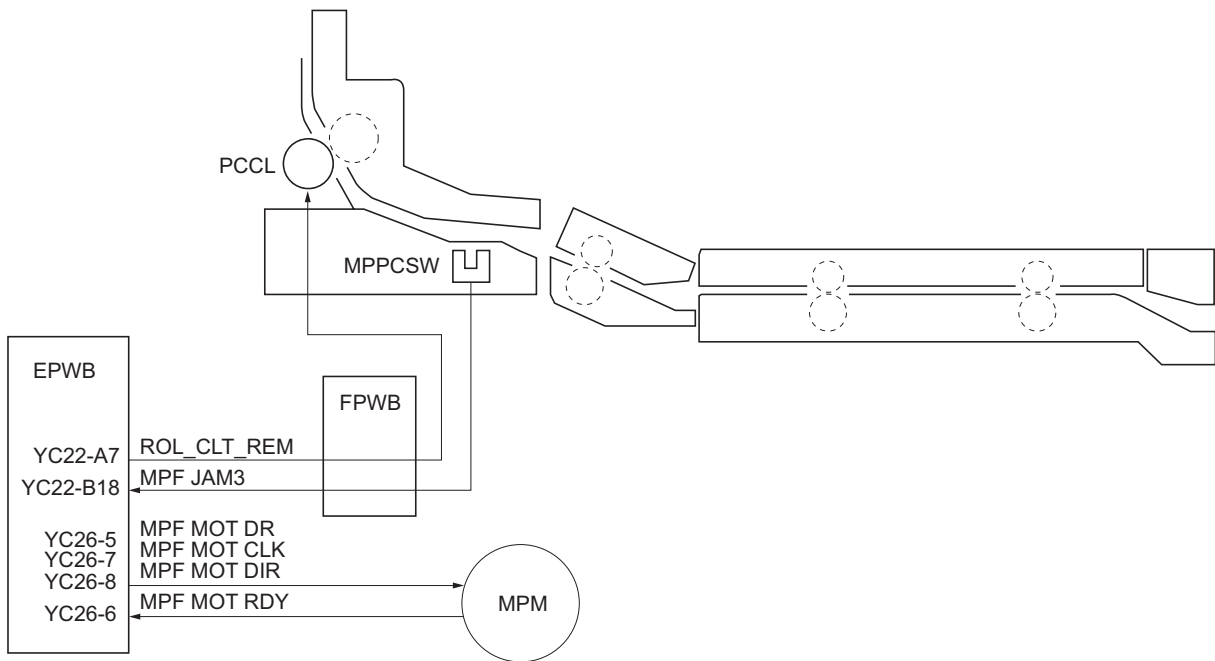
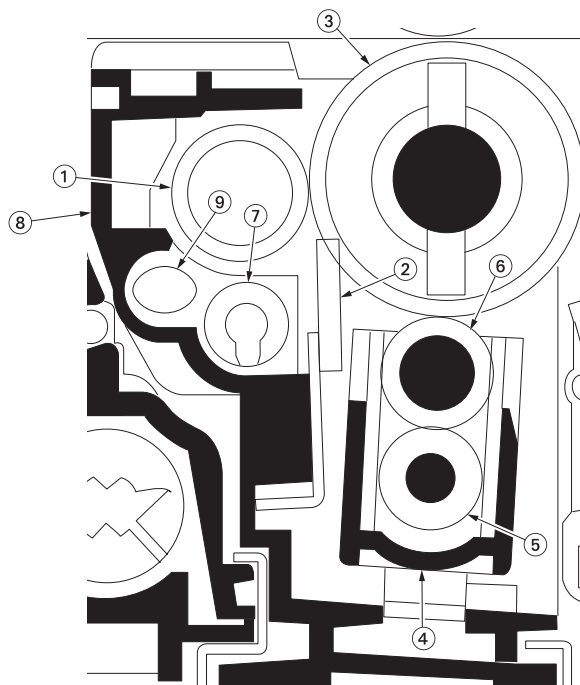


Figure 2-1-6 MP tray paper feed section block diagram (2)

## 2-1-2 Drum section

### (1) Drum section

The drum section consists of the charger roller unit, drum and cleaning section. The drum is electrically charged uniformly by means of a charger roller to form a latent image on the surface. The cleaning section consists of the cleaning blade and the cleaning roller which remove residual toner from the drum surface after transfer.



**Figure 2-1-7 Drum section**

- (1) Cleaning roller
- (2) Cleaning blade
- (3) Drum
- (4) Charger roller holder
- (5) Charger cleaning roller
- (6) Charger roller
- (7) Drum screw
- (8) Drum frame
- (9) Drum roller

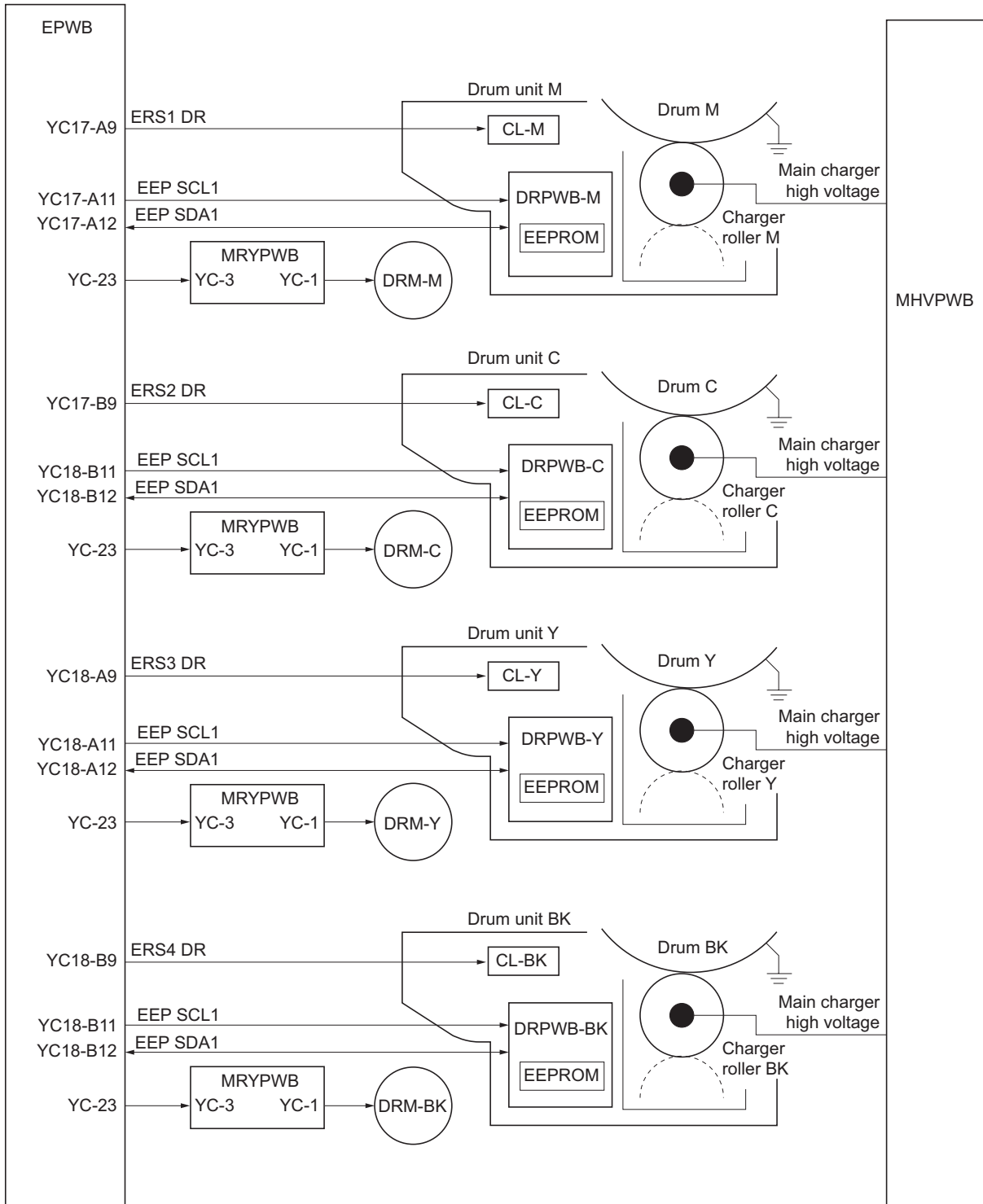


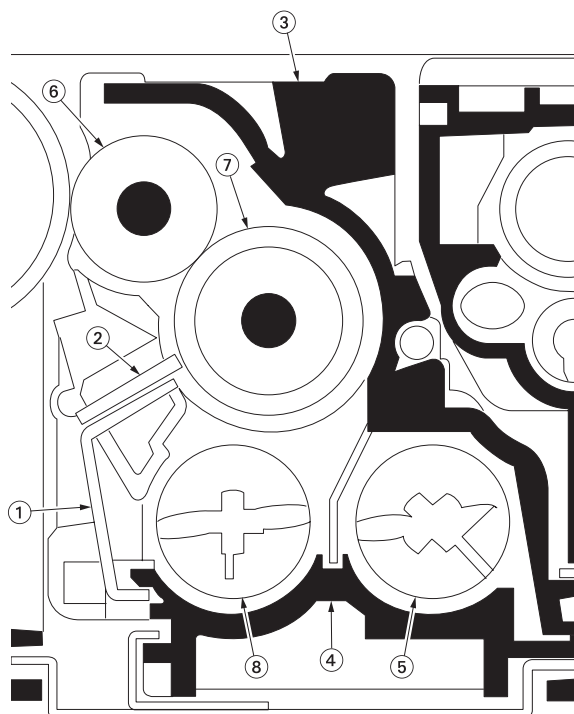
Figure 2-1-8 Drum section block diagram



## 2-1-3 Developing section

### (1) Developing section

The dual component developing system develops magnetic brushes (of developer) around the magnet roller. The toner moves onto the sleeve roller which is positioned parallel to the drum and generates a thin layer of toner. The sleeve roller is pressed against the drum with the DS pulley for developing static latent image.



**Figure 2-1-9 Developing section**

- (1) Case DLP stay
- (2) DLP blade
- (3) DLP case
- (4) DLP lid
- (5) DLP screw B
- (6) Sleeve roller
- (7) Magnet roller
- (8) DLP screw A

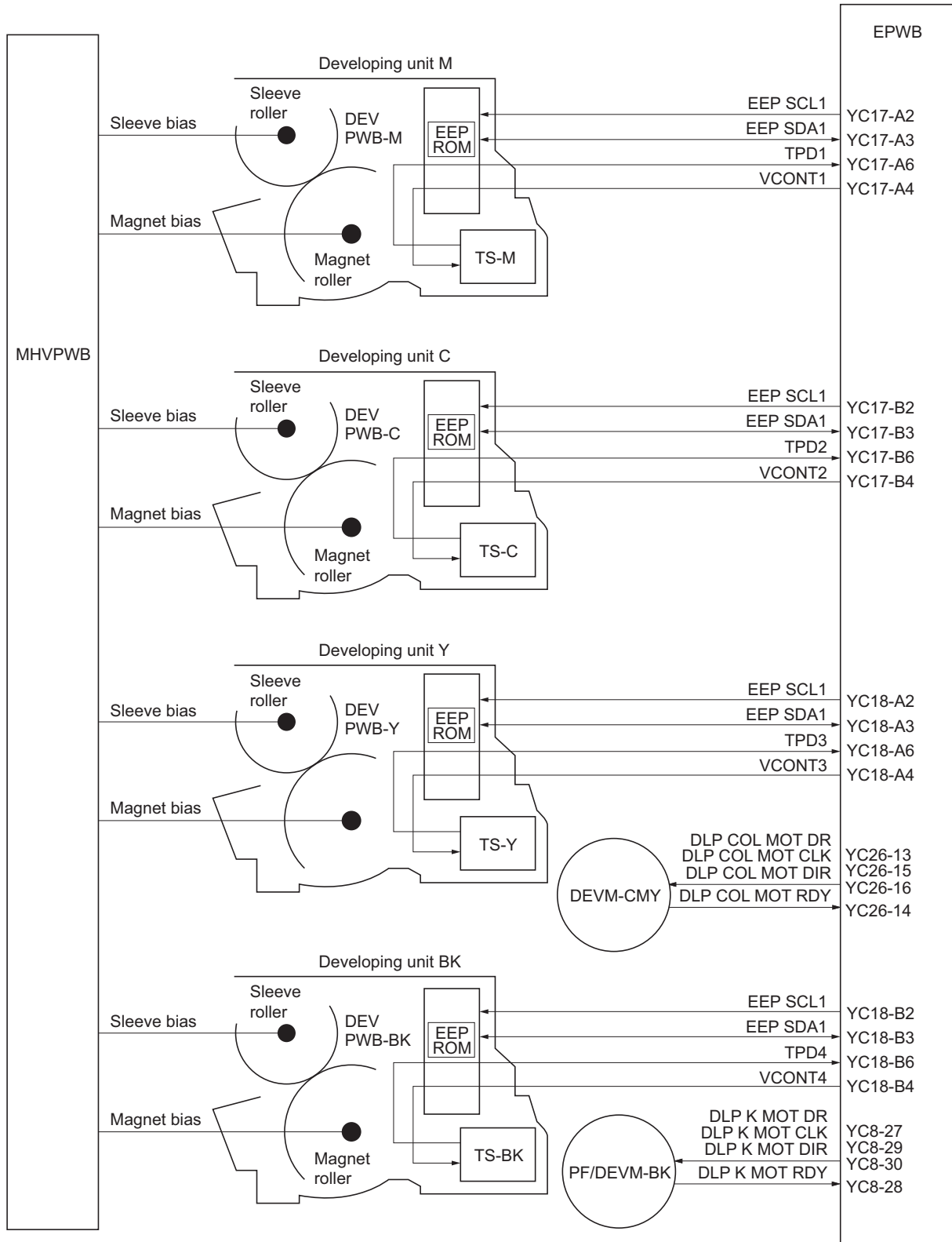


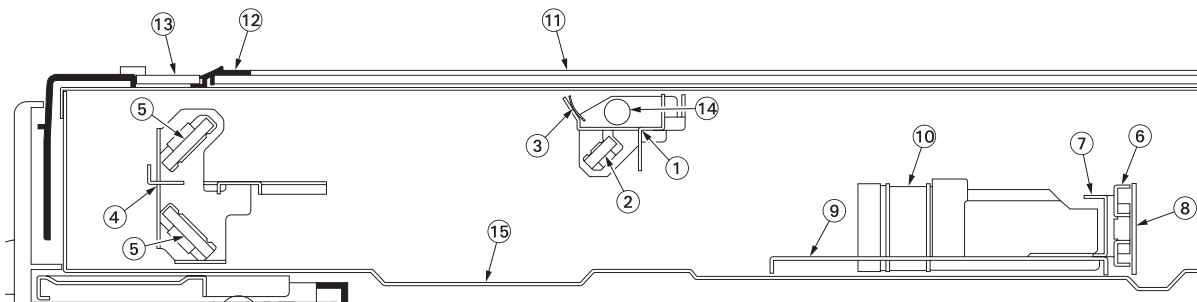
Figure 2-1-10 Developing section block diagram

## 2-1-4 Optical section

The optical section consists of the scanner, mirror frame and image scanner section for scanning and the laser scanner unit for printing.

### (1) Image scanner section

The original image is illuminated by the exposure lamp (EL) and scanned by the CCD in the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) via the three mirrors and lens, the reflected light being converted to an electrical signal. The mirror frame A and B travel to scan on the optical rails on the front and rear of the machine to scan from side to side. The speed of the mirror frame B is half the speed of the mirror frame A.



**Figure 2-1-11 Image scanner section**

- |                         |                                    |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (1) Mirror frame A      | (9) Lens mount                     |
| (2) Mirror A            | (10) ISU lens                      |
| (3) Scanner reflector   | (11) Contact glass                 |
| (4) Mirror frame B      | (12) Original size indicator plate |
| (5) Mirror B            | (13) Slit glass                    |
| (6) CCD mount           | (14) Exposure lamp (EL)            |
| (7) CCD adjusting plate | (15) Scanner frame                 |
| (8) CCD PWB (CCDPWB)    |                                    |

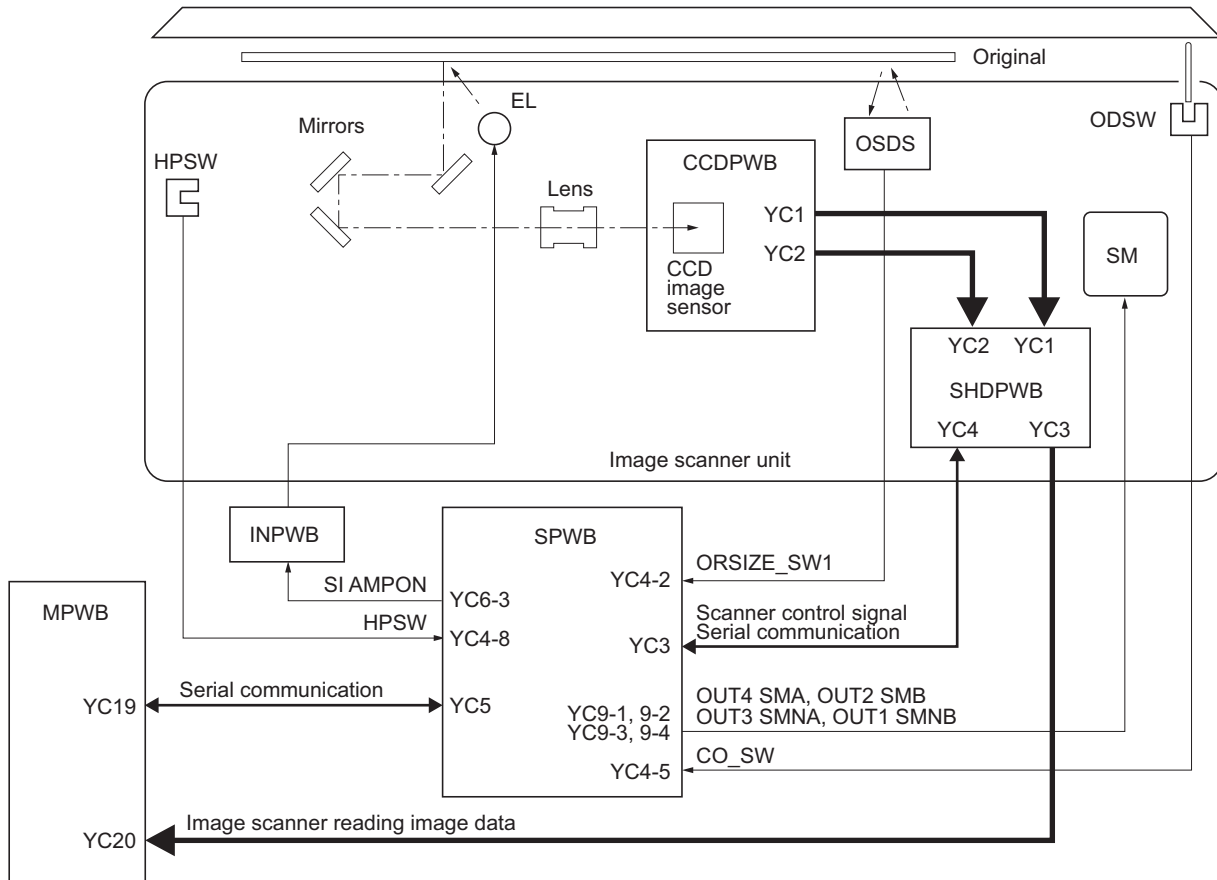
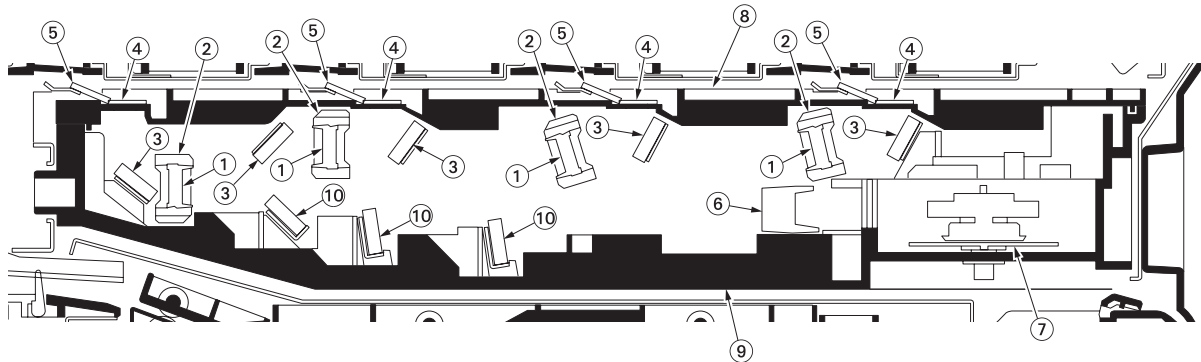


Figure 2-1-12 Image scanner section block diagram

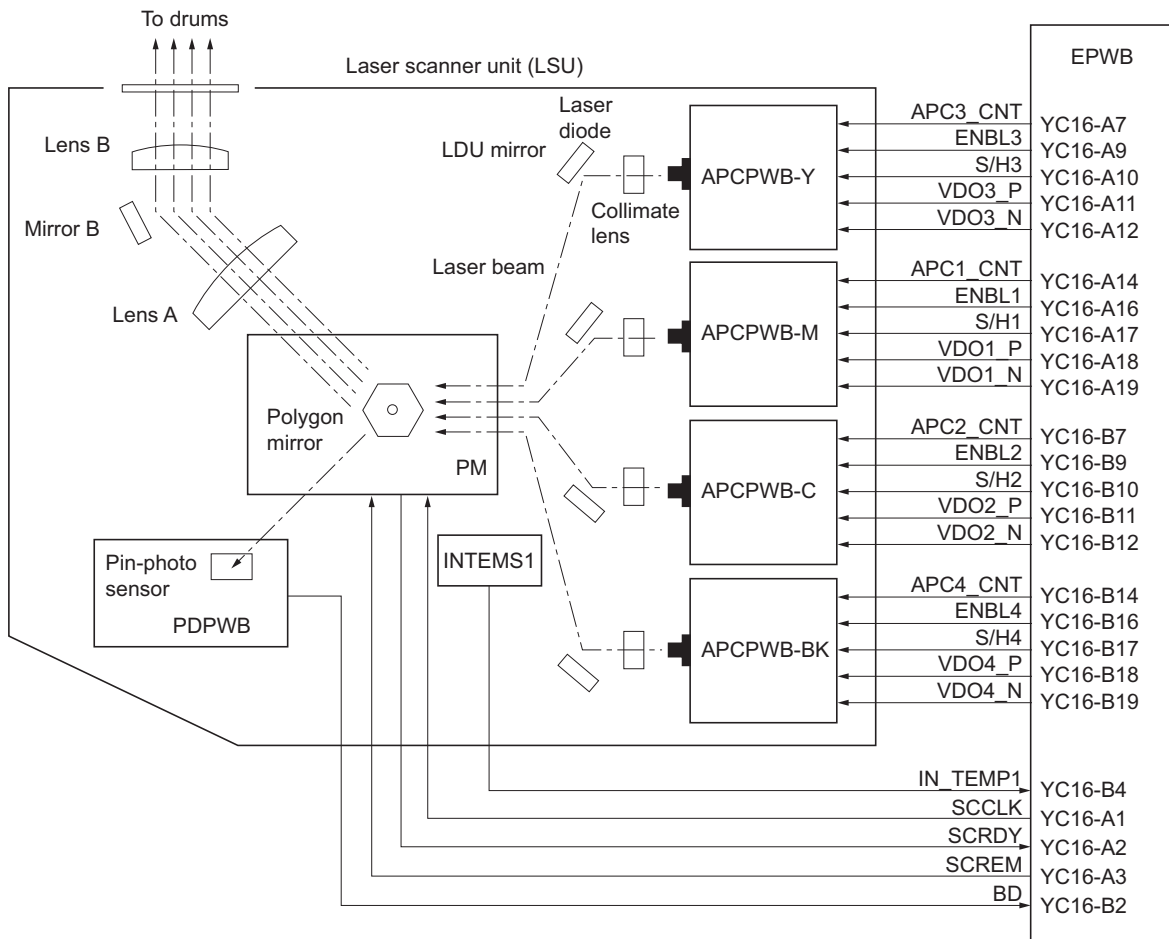
**(2) Laser scanner section**

The image data scanned by the CCD PWB (CCDPWB) is processed on the main PWB (MPWB) and transmitted from engine PWB (EPWB) as image printing data to the laser scanner unit (LSU). By repeatedly turning the laser on and off, the laser scanner unit forms a latent image on the drum surface.



**Figure 2-1-13 Laser scanner section**

- |                       |                        |
|-----------------------|------------------------|
| (1) Lens B            | (6) Lens A             |
| (2) Lens B stay       | (7) Polygon motor (PM) |
| (3) Mirror B          | (8) Scanner lid        |
| (4) Dust shield glass | (9) Scanner frame      |
| (5) LSU blade         | (10) Mirror A          |



**Figure 2-1-14 Laser scanner section block diagram**

### 2-1-5 Transfer/separation section

#### (1) Primary transfer section

There are four transfer (TC) rollers opposed to each color drum inside of transfer (TC) belt, toner on the drum is transferred to transfer belt by impressed bias voltage (minus). Remaining toner on the transfer (TC) belt is cleaned by fur brush.

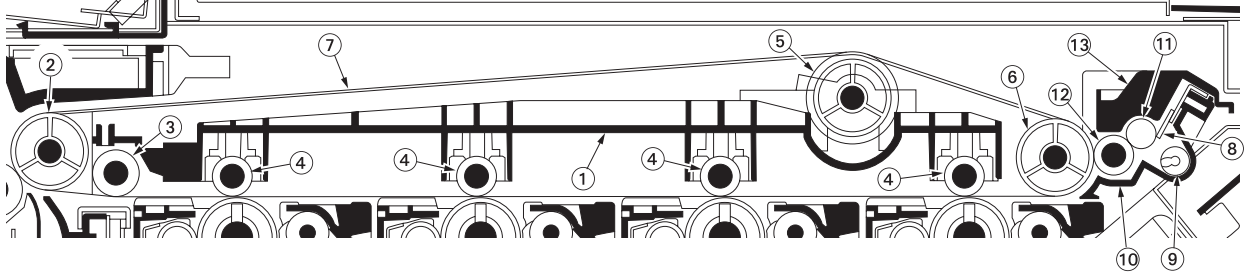


Figure 2-1-15 Primary transfer section

- |                           |                        |                    |
|---------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| (1) TC frame              | (6) Idle roller        | (11) Sweep roller  |
| (2) Drive roller          | (7) Transfer (TC) belt | (12) Fur brush     |
| (3) Backup roller         | (8) ICL blade          | (13) ICL top cover |
| (4) Transfer (TC) rollers | (9) ICL screw          |                    |
| (5) Tension roller        | (10) ICL frame         |                    |

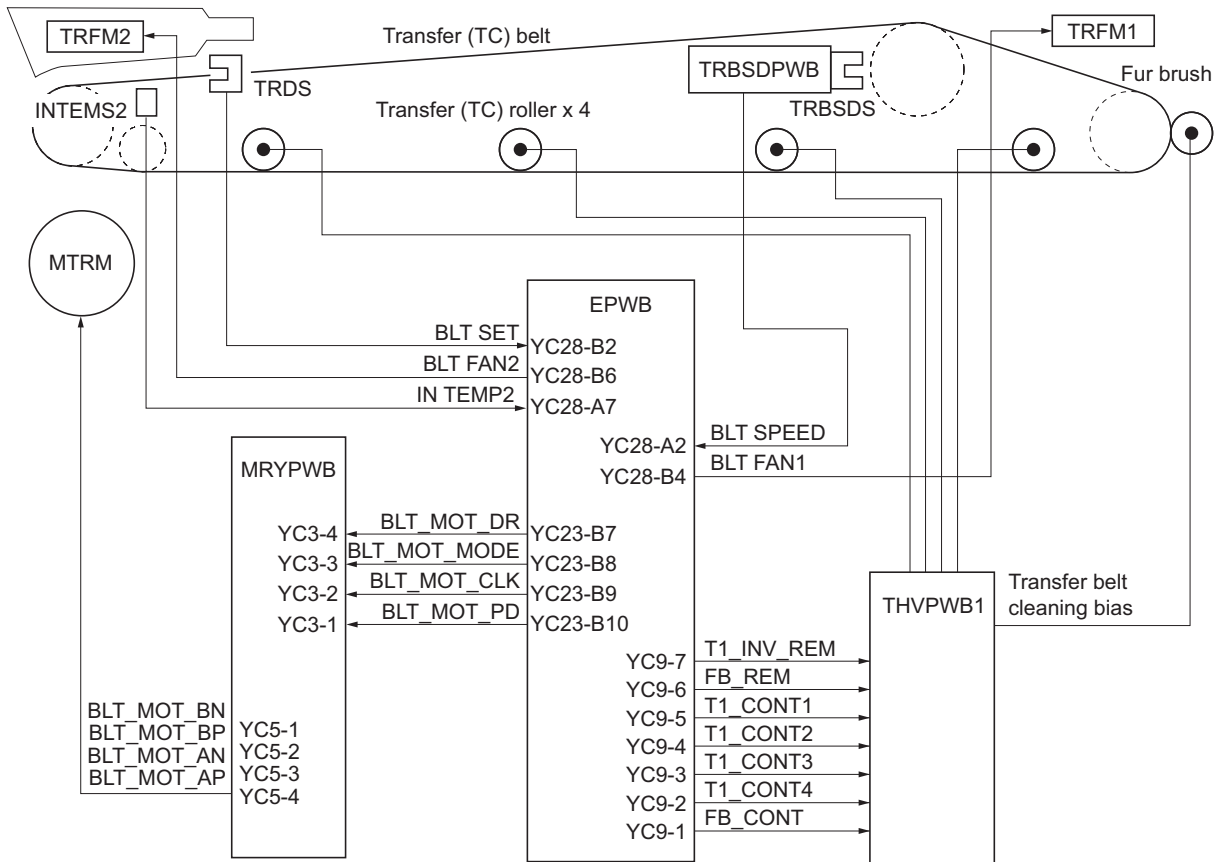
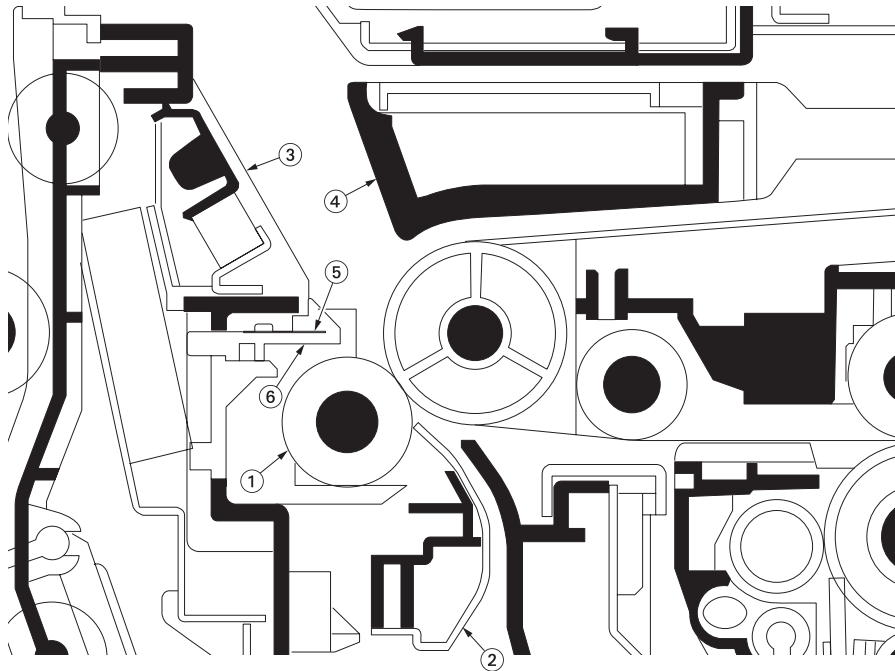


Figure 2-1-16 Primary transfer section block diagram

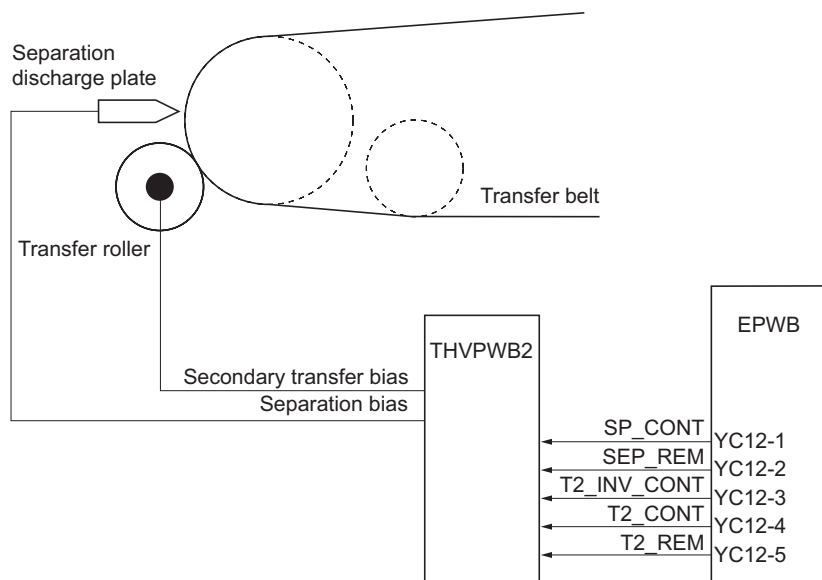
**(2) Secondary transfer/separation section**

The secondary transfer/separation section consists mainly of the transfer (TC) roller and separation discharge plate. A high voltage generated by the transfer high voltage PWB 2 (THVPWB2) is applied to the transfer (TC) roller for secondary transfer charging. Paper after secondary transfer is separated from the transfer (TC) roller by applying separation bias that is output from the transfer high voltage PWB 2 (THVPWB2) to the separation discharge plate.



**Figure 2-1-17 Secondary transfer/separation section**

- (1) Transfer roller
- (2) Left transfer guide
- (3) Conveying guide
- (4) Belt UP guide
- (5) Discharge holder
- (6) Separation discharge plate



**Figure 2-1-18 Secondary transfer /separation section block diagram**

## 2-1-6 Fuser section

### (1) Fuser section

The fuser section consists of the parts shown in figure below. When paper reaches the fuser section after the secondary transfer process, it passes between the press roller and melt belt. Pressure is applied by the fuser unit pressure springs so that the toner on the paper is melted, fused and fixed onto the paper. The melt belt is heated by fuser heaters 1 (FH1) or 2 (FH2) inside the heat roller. The press roller is heated by fuser heater 3 (FH3).

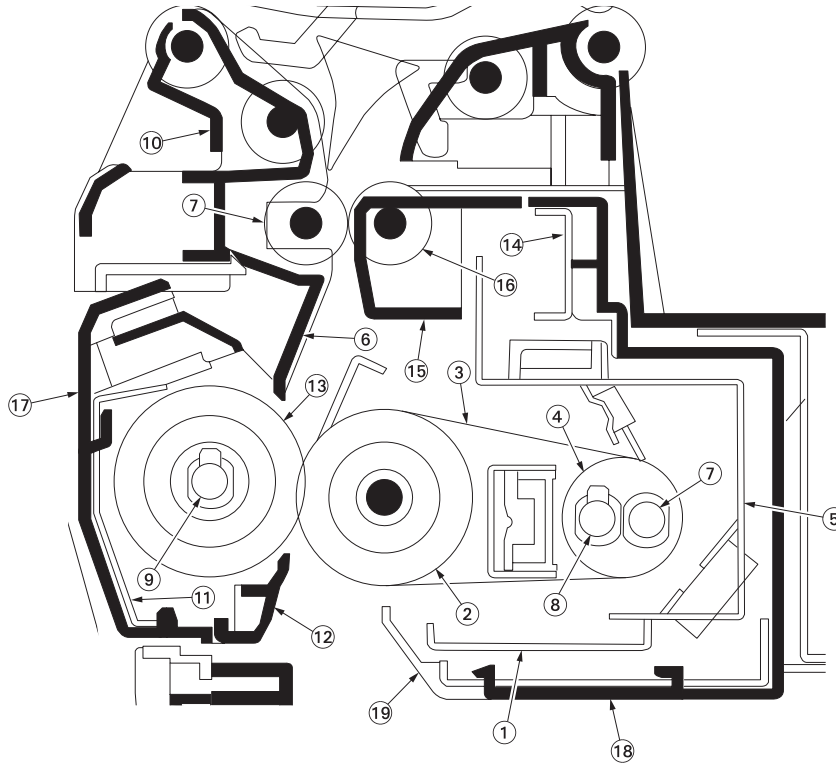


Figure 2-1-19 Fuser section

- |                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| (1) Belt unit frame      | (11) Press roller stay |
| (2) Fuser roller         | (12) Entrance holder   |
| (3) Melt belt            | (13) Press roller      |
| (4) Heat roller          | (14) Fuser unit stay   |
| (5) Belt unit stay       | (15) Exit pulley guide |
| (6) Exit L guide         | (16) Fuser exit pulley |
| (7) Fuser heater 1 (FH1) | (17) Fuser left cover  |
| (8) Fuser heater 2 (FH2) | (18) Fuser right cover |
| (9) Fuser heater 3 (FH3) | (19) Entrance UP guide |
| (10) Left guide cover    |                        |



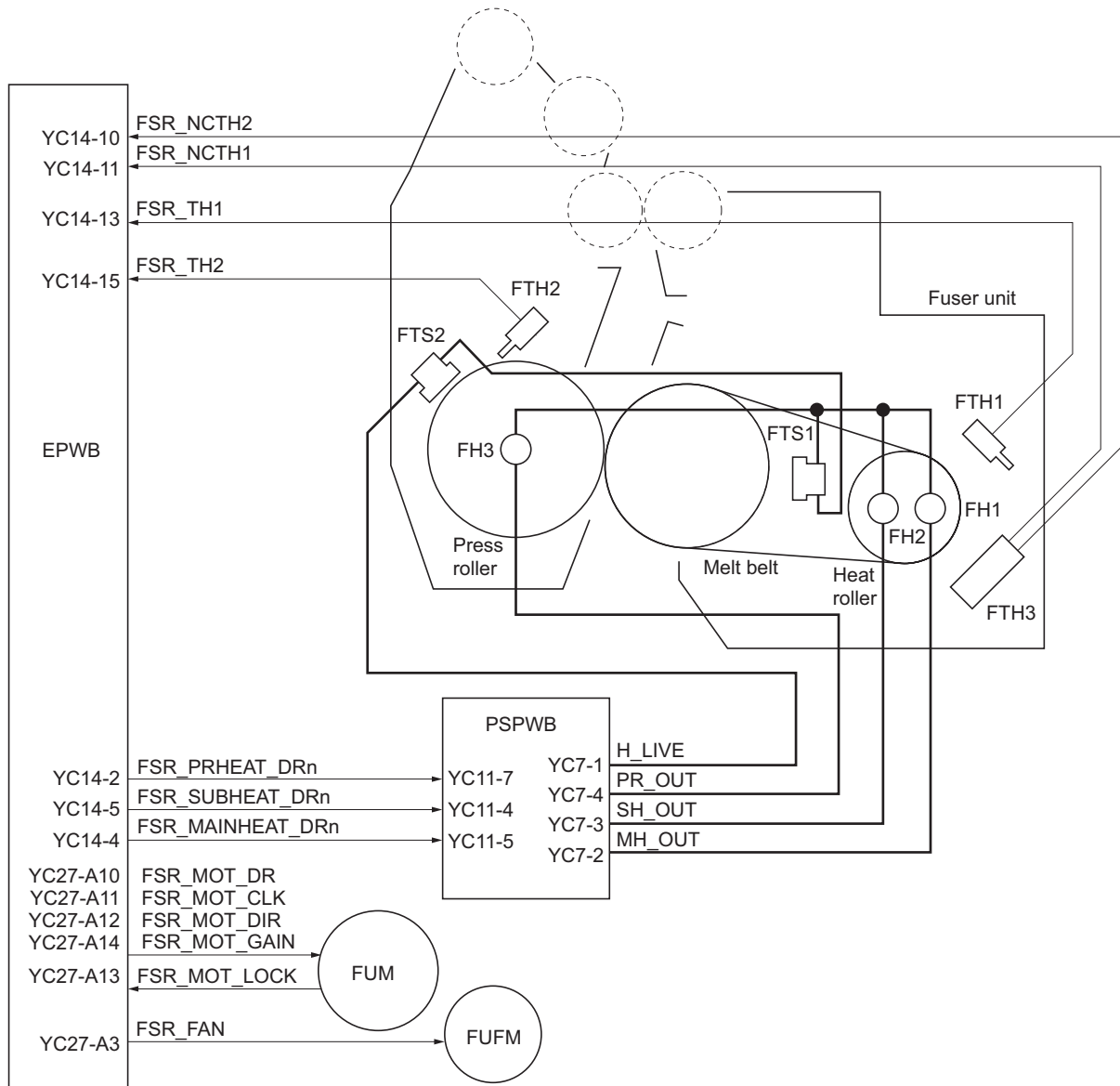


Figure 2-1-20 Fuser section block diagram

### 2-1-7 Eject/feedshift section

#### (1) Eject/feedshift section

The eject/feedshift sections switch the paper path based on the copy mode and eject paper or convey the paper to the duplex section. For duplex copy mode, the paper for which copying on the rear side has been completed is conveyed to the duplex section by the feedshift section operation. After the conveyed paper is inverted, it is fed again for front side copying.

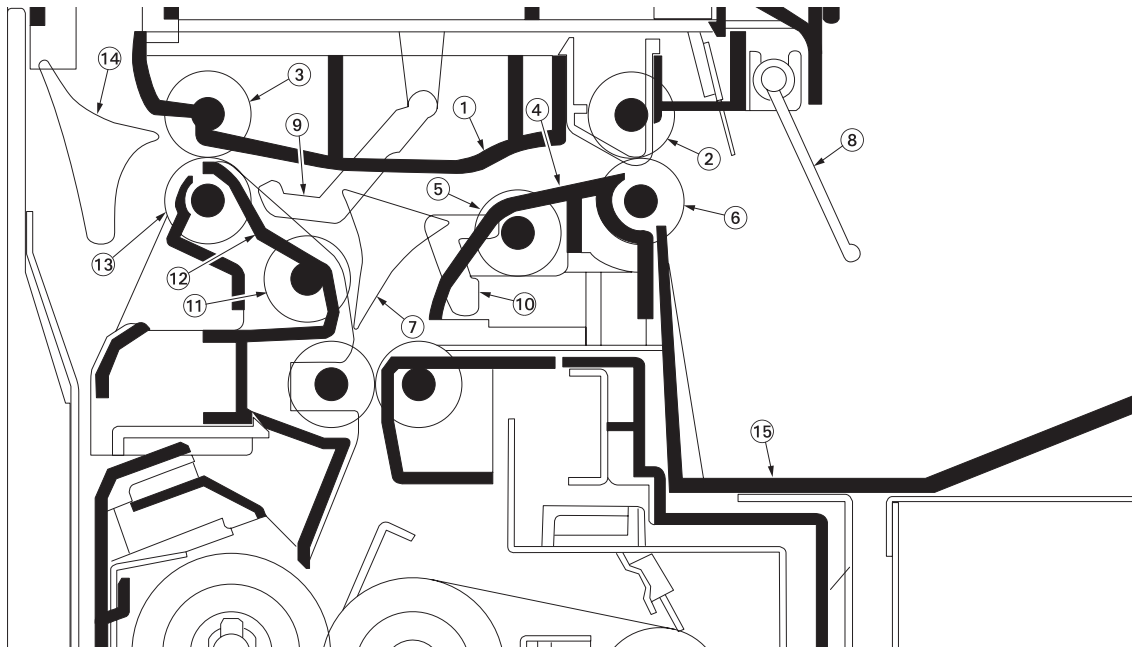


Figure 2-1-21 Eject/feedshift section

- |                      |                                       |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------|
| (1) Exit upper frame | (7) Change R guide                    | (12) Exit L guide   |
| (2) Middle pulley    | (8) Paper full detection sensor (PFS) | (13) FD roller      |
| (3) Middle pulley    | (9) Feedshift switch (FSSW)           | (14) Change L guide |
| (4) Exit lower frame | (10) Eject switch (ESW)               | (15) Output tray    |
| (5) Exit pulley      | (11) Fuser exit pulley                |                     |
| (6) Exit roller      |                                       |                     |

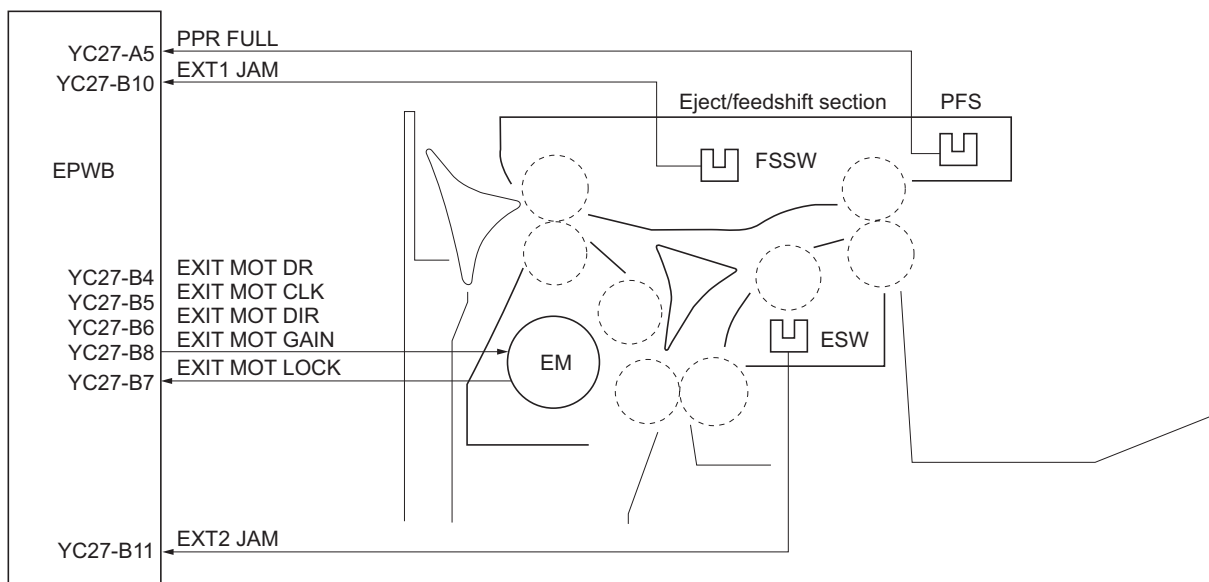
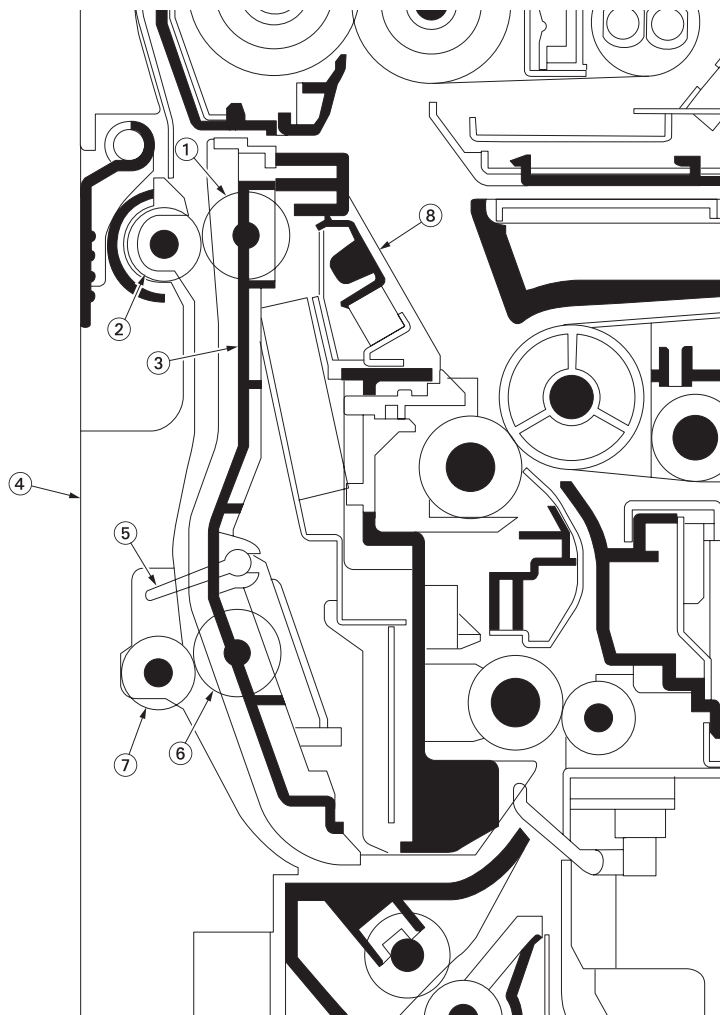


Figure 2-1-22 Eject/feedshift section block diagram

## 2-1-8 Duplex section

### (1) Duplex section

In duplex mode, after printing on to the reverse face of the paper, the paper is reversed in the feedshift section and conveyed to the duplex section. The paper is then conveyed to the paper feed section by the duplex B roller and duplex A roller.



**Figure 2-1-23 Duplex section**

- (1) Middle pulley
- (2) Duplex B roller
- (3) DU frame
- (4) Left cover 1
- (5) Duplex jam detection switch (DUJDSW)
- (6) Middle pulley
- (7) Duplex A roller
- (8) Conveying guide

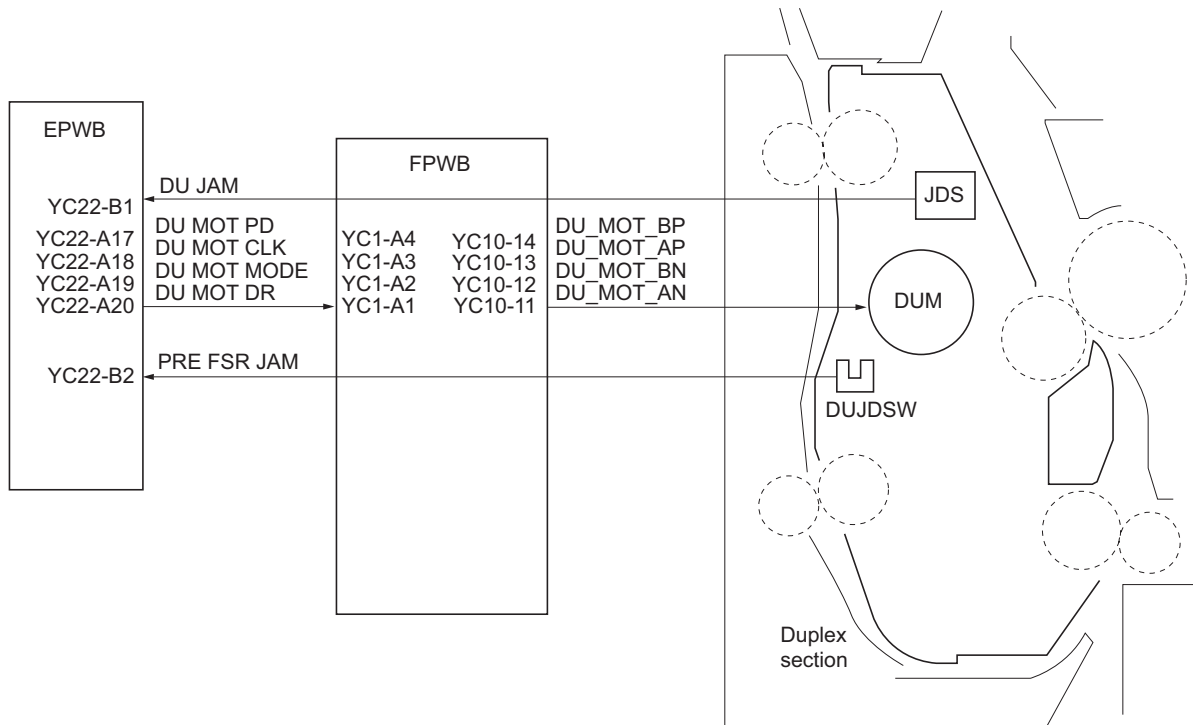
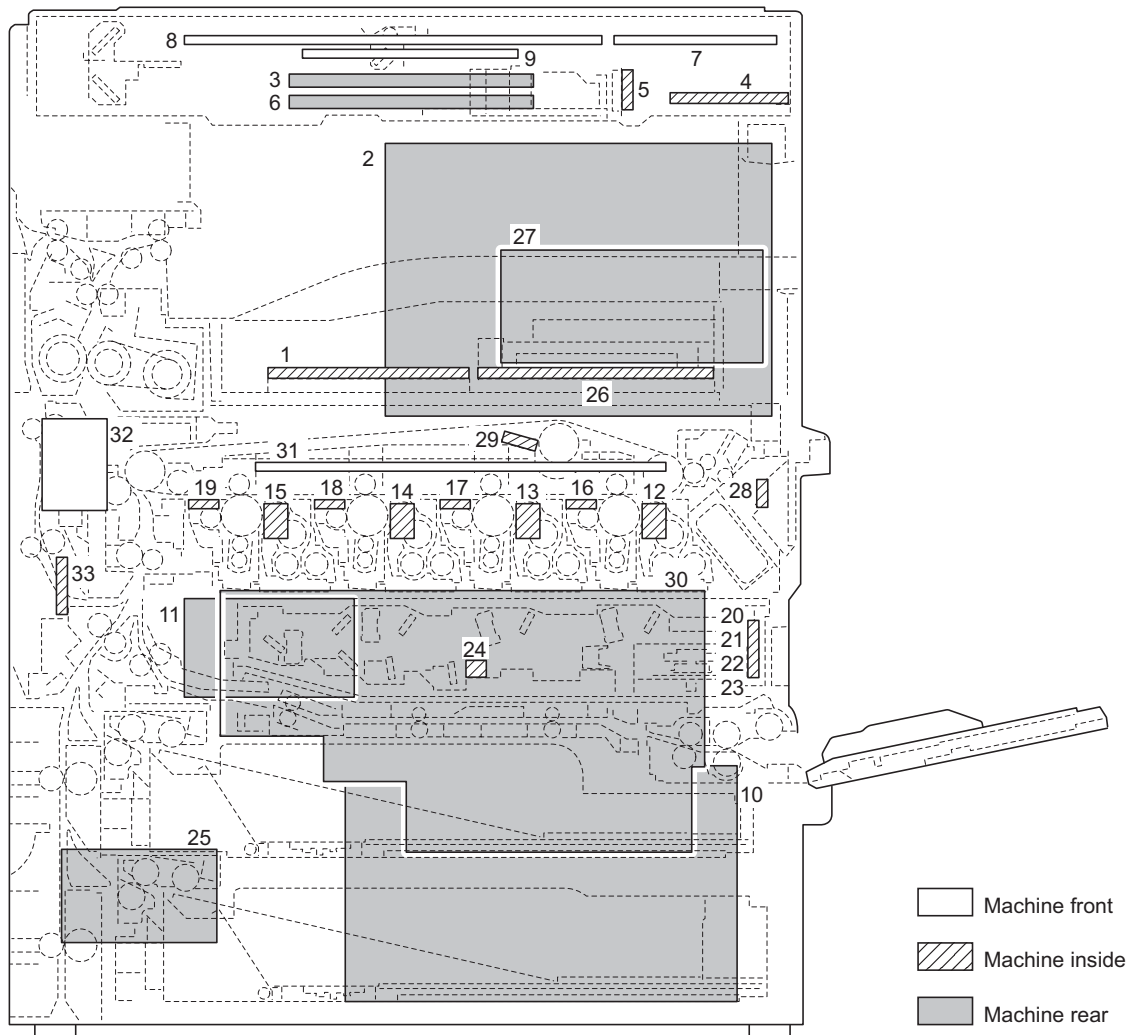


Figure 2-1-24 Duplex section block diagram

## 2-2-1 Electrical parts layout

### (1) PWBs



**Figure 2-2-1 PWBs**

- |                                   |   |
|-----------------------------------|---|
| 1. Engine PWB (EPWB)              | Controls the other PWBs, electrical components and optional devices.                            |
| 2. Main PWB (MPWB)                | Controls the image processing, operation panel and laser scanner unit.                          |
| 3. Scanner PWB (SPWB)             | Controls the scanner section.   |
| 4. SHD PWB (SHDPWB)               | Controls the shading correction and AGC of CCD.   |
| 5. CCD PWB (CCDPWB)               | Reads the image of originals.   |
| 6. Inverter PWB (INPWB)           | Controls the exposure lamp.   |
| 7. Right operation PWB (OPWB-R)   | Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs.  |
| 8. Left operation PWB (OPWB-L)    | Consists of the operation keys and display LEDs.  |
| 9. LCD PWB (LCDPWB)               | Controls touch panel and LCD indication.  |
| 10. Power source PWB (PSPWB)      | Generates 3.3 V DC, 5V DC and 24 V DC power source. Controls the fuser heater 1, 2 and 3.       |
| 11. Motor relay PWB (MRYPWB)      | Consists the wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and drum motors and middle transfer motor. |
| 12. Developing PWB M (DEVPWB-M)   | Consists of relay circuit and EEPROM. (Magenta developing unit)                                 |
| 13. Developing PWB C (DEVPWB-C)   | Consists of relay circuit and EEPROM. (Cyan developing unit)                                    |
| 14. Developing PWB Y (DEVPWB-Y)   | Consists of relay circuit and EEPROM. (Yellow developing unit)                                  |
| 15. Developing PWB BK (DEVPWB-BK) | Consists of relay circuit and EEPROM. (Black developing unit)                                   |
| 16. Drum PWB M (DRPWB-M)          | Drum individual information in EEPROM storage. (Magenta drum unit)                              |
| 17. Drum PWB C (DRPWB-C)          | Drum individual information in EEPROM storage. (Cyan drum unit)                                 |
| 18. Drum PWB Y (DRPWB-Y)          | Drum individual information in EEPROM storage. (Yellow drum unit)                               |

- 19. Drum PWB BK (DRPWB-BK) ..... Drum individual information in EEPROM storage. (Black drum unit)
- 20. APC PWB M (APCPWB-M) ..... Generates and controls the laser beam. (Magenta)
- 21. APC PWB C (APCPWB-C) ..... Generates and controls the laser beam. (Cyan)
- 22. APC PWB Y (APCPWB-Y) ..... Generates and controls the laser beam. (Yellow)
- 23. APC PWB BK (APCPWB-BK)..... Generates and controls the laser beam. (Black)
- 24. PD PWB (PDPWB) ..... Detects horizontal synchronizing timing of laser beam.
- 25. Feed PWB (FPWB)..... Consists the wiring relay circuit between engine PWB and each electrical component (paper feed section and etc.).
- 26. Printer PWB (PRNPWB) ..... Controls the printer functions.
- 27. Network scanner PWB (NWSPWB)..... Controls the network scanner functions.
- 28. Waste toner full detection PWB  
(WTFDPWB) ..... Detects the waste toner box being full.
- 29. Transfer belt speed detection PWB  
(TRBSDPW) ..... Detects the rotation speed of the transfer belt.
- 30. Main high voltage PWB (MHVPWB) ..... Generates high voltage for main charger high voltage and developing bias.
- 31. Transfer high voltage PWB 1 (THVPWB1) .. Generates high voltage for primary transfer bias and primary transfer cleaning bias.
- 32. Transfer high voltage PWB 2 (THVPWB2) .. Generates high voltage for secondary transfer bias and separation bias.
- 33. Fan PWB (FANPWB) ..... Controls paper conveying fan motors.

## (2) Switches and sensors

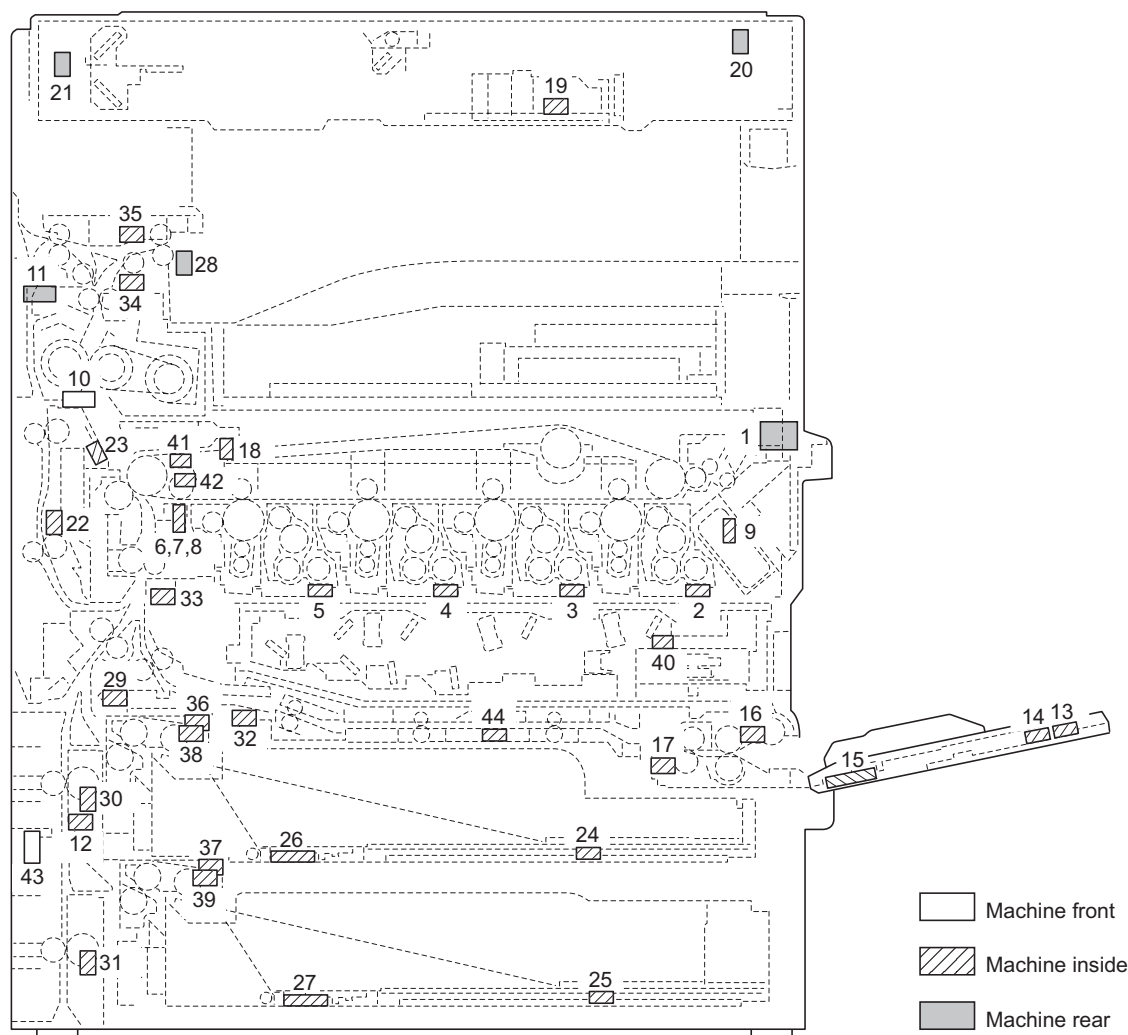


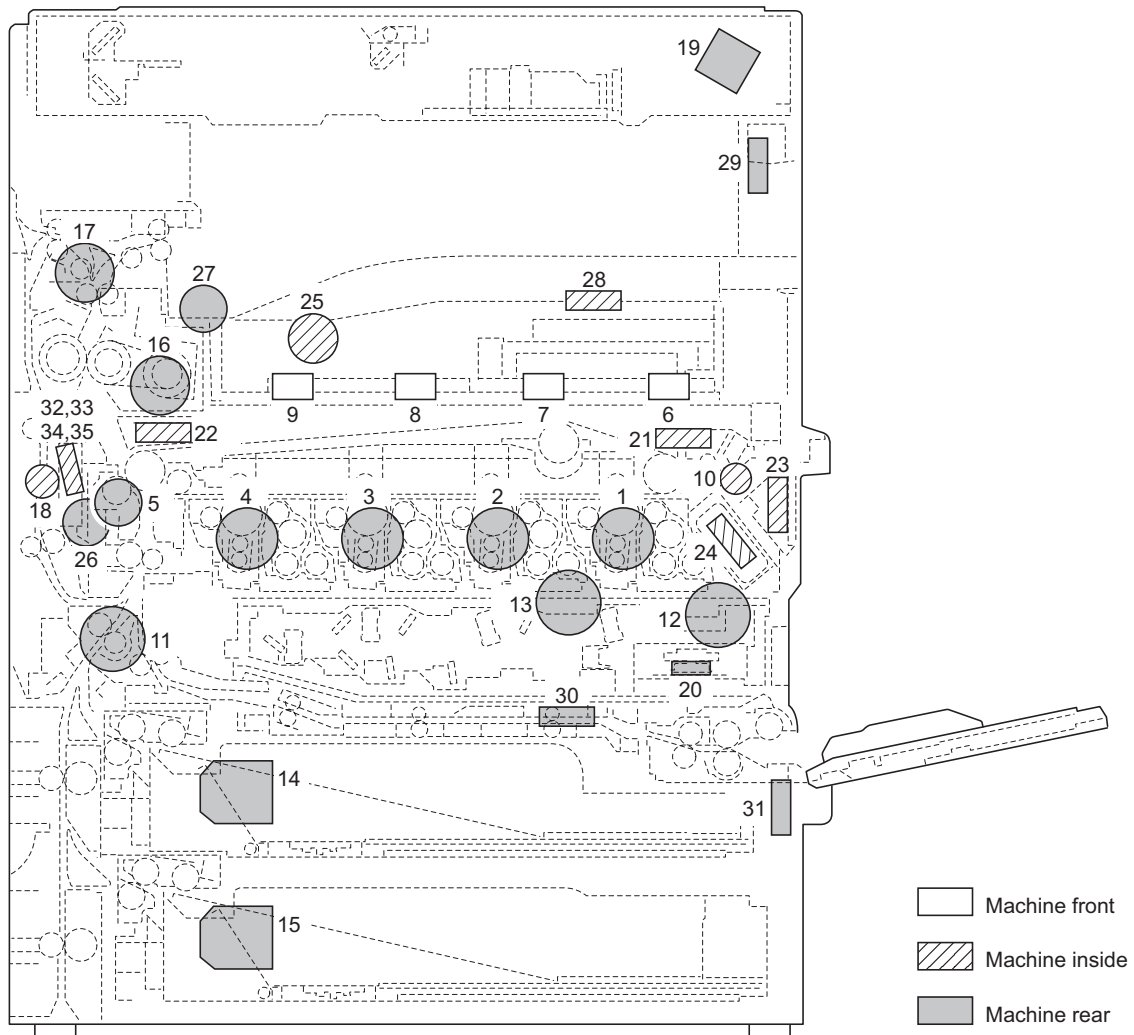
Figure 2-2-2 Switches and sensors

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Main power switch (MSW) .....                | Turns the AC power on and off.                              |
| 2. Toner sensor M (TS-M) .....                  | Detects the toner density in the developing unit (Magenta). |
| 3. Toner sensor C (TS-C).....                   | Detects the toner density in the developing unit (Cyan).    |
| 4. Toner sensor Y (TS-Y).....                   | Detects the toner density in the developing unit (Yellow).  |
| 5. Toner sensor BK (TS-BK) .....                | Detects the toner density in the developing unit (Black).   |
| 6. ID sensor 1 (IDS1) .....                     | Measures image density for color calibration.               |
| 7. ID sensor 2 (IDS2) .....                     | Measures image density for color registration.              |
| 8. ID sensor 3 (IDS3) .....                     | Measures image density for color registration.              |
| 9. Waste toner sensor (WTS).....                | Detects when the waste toner box is full.                   |
| 10. Front cover switch (FCSW).....              | Breaks the safety circuit when the front cover is opened.   |
| 11. Left cover 1 switch (LC1SW) .....           | Breaks the safety circuit when the left cover 1 is opened.  |
| 12. Left cover 2 switch (LC2SW) .....           | Breaks the safety circuit when the left cover 2 is opened.  |
| 13. MP tray switch (MPTSW).....                 | Detects the MP tray extension is extend.                    |
| 14. MP paper length size switch (MPPLSW) .....  | Detects the length of paper on the MP tray.                 |
| 15. MP paper width size switch (MPPWSW) .....   | Detects the width of paper on the MP tray.                  |
| 16. MP paper set switch (MPPSSW) .....          | Detects the presence of paper on the MP tray.               |
| 17. MP paper feed switch (MPPFSW) .....         | Detects a paper misfeed in the MP tray paper feed section.  |
| 18. Transfer detection sensor (TRDS) .....      | Detects positioning of transfer belt rotation.              |
| 19. Original size detection sensor (OSDS) ..... | Detects the size of the original.                           |
| 20. Original detection switch (ODSW) .....      | Detects the opening/closing of the original platen (or DP). |
| 21. Home position switch (HPSW).....            | Detects the optical system in the home position.            |
| 22. Duplex jam detection switch (DUJDSW).....   | Detects a paper misfeed in the duplex section.              |

- 23. Jam detection sensor (JDS)..... Detects a paper misfeed.
- 24. Paper length size switch 1 (PLSW1)..... Detects the length of paper in cassette 1.
- 25. Paper length size switch 2 (PLSW2)..... Detects the length of paper in cassette 2.
- 26. Paper width size switch 1 (PWSW1)..... Detects the width of paper in cassette 1.
- 27. Paper width size switch 2 (PWSW2)..... Detects the width of paper in cassette 2.
- 28. Paper full detection sensor (PFS)..... Detects whether the output tray is full.
- 29. Feed switch 1 (FSW1) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper cassette paper feed section.
- 30. Feed switch 2 (FSW2) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper cassette paper feed section.
- 31. Feed switch 3 (FSW3) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper cassette paper feed section.
- 32. MP paper conveying switch (MPPCSW)..... Detects a paper misfeed in the MP tray paper feed section.
- 33. Registration switch (RSW)..... Controls the secondary paper feed stop timing.
- 34. Eject switch (ESW) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper eject section.
- 35. Feedshift switch (FSSW) ..... Detects a paper misfeed in the paper eject section.
- 36. Lift switch 1 (LSW1)..... Detects cassette 1 cassette base reaching the upper limit.
- 37. Lift switch 2 (LSW2)..... Detects cassette 2 cassette base reaching the upper limit.
- 38. Paper switch 1 (PSW1)..... Detects the presence of paper in cassette 1.
- 39. Paper switch 2 (PSW2)..... Detects the presence of paper in cassette 2.
- 40. Inner temperature sensor 1 (INTEMS1)..... Detects the inside temperature.
- 41. Inner temperature sensor 2 (INTEMS2)..... Detects the drive roller temperature. (transfer section)
- 42. Inner temperature sensor 3 (INTEMS3)..... Detects the inside temperature.
- 43. Outer temperature sensor (OUTTEMS)..... Detects the outside temperature and humidity.
- 44. MP conveying unit detection switch  
(MPCDSW) ..... Detects the MP conveying unit.



**(3) Motors**



**Figure 2-2-3 Motors**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Drum motor M (DRM-M) .....                           | Drives the drum. (Magenta)  |
| 2. Drum motor C (DRM-C) .....                           | Drives the drum. (Cyan)   |
| 3. Drum motor Y (DRM-Y) .....                           | Drives the drum. (Yellow)   |
| 4. Drum motor BK (DRM-BK).....                          | Drives the drum. (Black)  |
| 5. Middle transfer motor (MTRM).....                    | Drives the transfer belt.   |
| 6. Toner motor M (TM-M) .....                           | Replenishes toner. (Magenta)  |
| 7. Toner motor C (TM-C).....                            | Replenishes toner. (Cyan)   |
| 8. Toner motor Y (TM-Y) .....                           | Replenishes toner. (Yellow)   |
| 9. Toner motor BK (TM-BK) .....                         | Replenishes toner. (Black)  |
| 10. Waste toner motor (WTM).....                        | Drives the waste toner conveying system.  |
| 11. Paper feed/developing motor BK<br>(PF/DEVM-BK)..... | Drives the paper feed section and developing unit (Black).                          |
| 12. MP motor (MPM).....                                 | Drives the MP tray paper feed section.  |
| 13. Developing motor CMY (DEVM-CMY).....                | Drives the developing unit (Cyan, magenta and yellow).                              |
| 14. Lift motor 1 (LM1).....                             | Operates the cassette base in cassette 1 and detects the paper level in cassette 1. |
| 15. Lift motor 2 (LM2).....                             | Operates the cassette base in cassette 2 and detects the paper level in cassette 2. |
| 16. Fuser motor (FUM) .....                             | Drives the fuser section.   |
| 17. Eject motor (EM) .....                              | Drives the eject section.   |
| 18. Duplex motor (DUM) .....                            | Drives duplex section.  |
| 19. Scanner motor (SM).....                             | Drives the optical system.  |

- 20. Polygon motor (PM) ..... Drives the polygon mirror.
- 21. Transfer fan motor 1 (TRFM1) ..... Stabilizes the paper conveying in the transfer section.
- 22. Transfer fan motor 2 (TRFM2) ..... Stabilizes the paper conveying in the transfer section.
- 23. Developing cooling fan motor 1  
(DEVCFM1) ..... Cools the developing and LSU sections.
- 24. Developing cooling fan motor 2  
(DEVCFM2) ..... Cools the developing section.
- 25. Developing cooling fan motor 3  
(DEVCFM3) ..... Cools the developing section.
- 26. Rear cooling fan motor (RCFM)..... Cools the machine rear.
- 27. Fuser fan motor (FUFM) ..... Cools the fuser section.
- 28. Printer cooling fan motor (PRNFM)..... Cools the printer PWB.
- 29. Main fan motor (MFM) ..... Cools the main PWB.
- 30. Power source fan motor (PSFM) ..... Cools the power source PWB.
- 31. High voltage fan motor (HVFM) ..... Cools main high voltage PWB.
- 32. Paper conveying fan motor 1 (PCFM1) ..... Cools the paper conveying section.
- 33. Paper conveying fan motor 2 (PCFM2) ..... Cools the paper conveying section.
- 34. Paper conveying fan motor 3 (PCFM3) ..... Cools the paper conveying section.
- 35. Paper conveying fan motor 4 (PCFM4) ..... Cools the paper conveying section.

## (4) Others

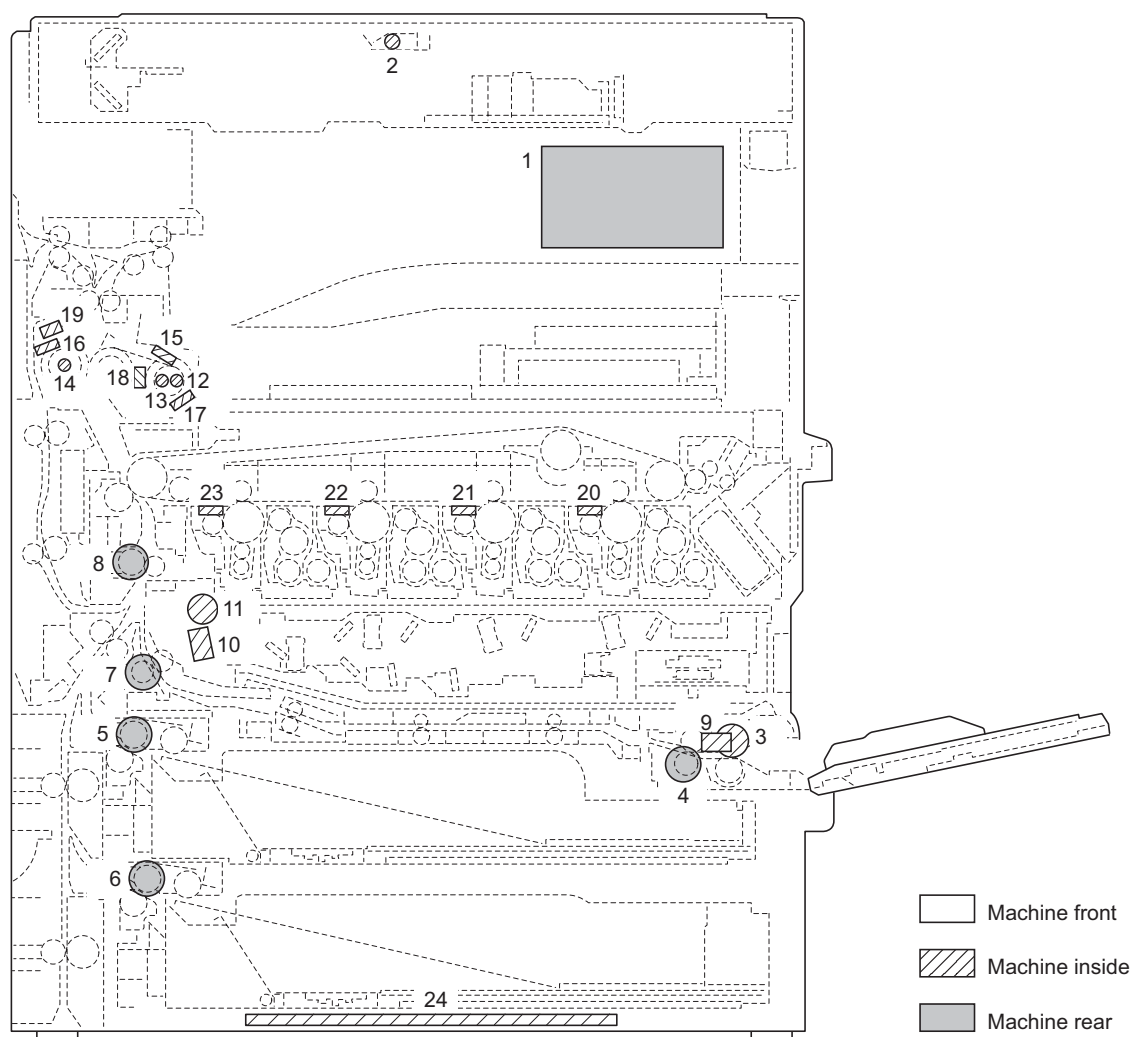


Figure 2-2-4 Others

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Hard disk (HDD)                    | Stores the image data and information of job accounting mode.        |
| 2. Exposure lamp (EL)                 | Exposes originals.   |
| 3. MP paper feed clutch (MPPFCL)      | Controls primary paper feed from the MP tray.                        |
| 4. MP paper conveying clutch (MPPCCL) | Controls paper conveying from the MP tray.                           |
| 5. Paper feed clutch 1 (PFCL1)        | Controls primary paper feed from cassette 1.                         |
| 6. Paper feed clutch 2 (PFCL2)        | Controls primary paper feed from cassette 2.                         |
| 7. Paper conveying clutch (PCCL)      | Controls paper conveying from the MP tray.                           |
| 8. Registration clutch (RCL)          | Controls secondary paper feed.                                       |
| 9. MP solenoid (MPSOL)                | Operates up/down of the MP forwarding pulley.                        |
| 10. LSU cleaning solenoid (LSUCLSOL)  | Operates the LSU blade for dust shield glass cleaning. (LSU section) |
| 11. LSU cleaning clutch (LSUCLCL)     | Drive the dust shield glass cleaning system. (LSU section)           |
| 12. Fuser heater 1 (FH1)              | Heats the melt belt (heat roller).                                   |
| 13. Fuser heater 2 (FH2)              | Heats the melt belt (heat roller).                                   |
| 14. Fuser heater 3 (FH3)              | Heats the press roller.  |
| 15. Fuser thermistor 1 (FTH1)         | Detects the melt belt (heat roller) temperature.                     |
| 16. Fuser thermistor 2 (FTH2)         | Detects the press roller temperature.                                |
| 17. Fuser thermistor 3 (FTH3)         | Detects the melt belt (heat roller) temperature.                     |
| 18. Fuser thermostat 1 (FTS1)         | Prevents overheating of the melt belt (heat roller).                 |
| 19. Fuser thermostat 2 (FTS2)         | Prevents overheating of the press roller.                            |
| 20. Cleaning lamp M (CL-M)            | Removes residual charge from the drum surface. (Magenta)             |
| 21. Cleaning lamp C (CL-C)            | Removes residual charge from the drum surface. (Cyan)                |
| 22. Cleaning lamp Y (CL-Y)            | Removes residual charge from the drum surface. (Yellow)              |

2FZ/2F0/2HC-3

- 23. Cleaning lamp BK (CL-BK) ..... Removes residual charge from the drum surface. (Black)
- 24. Cassette heater (CH) ..... Dehumidifies the cassette section.

2-3-1 Power source PWB

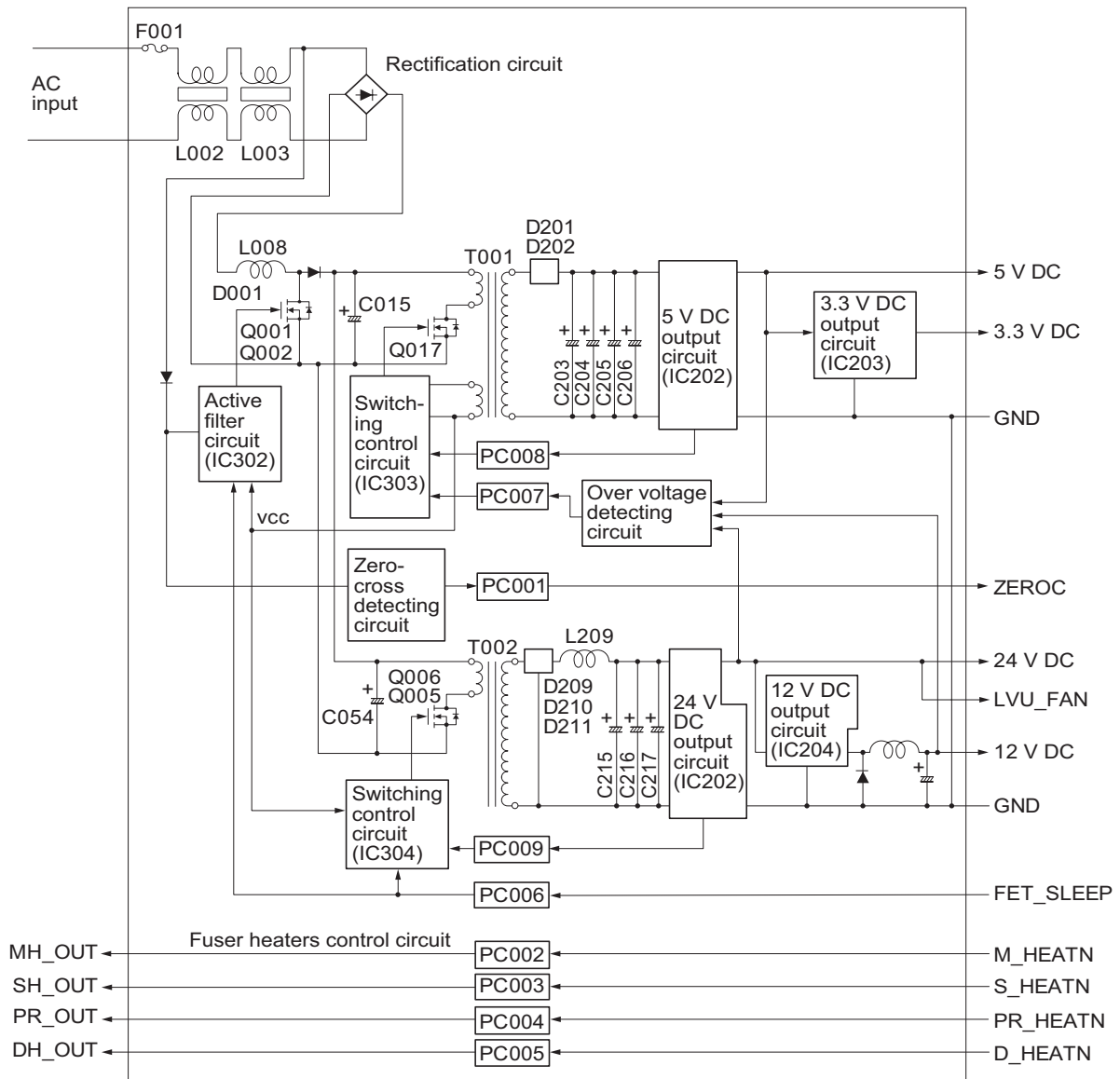


Figure 2-3-1 Power source PWB block diagram

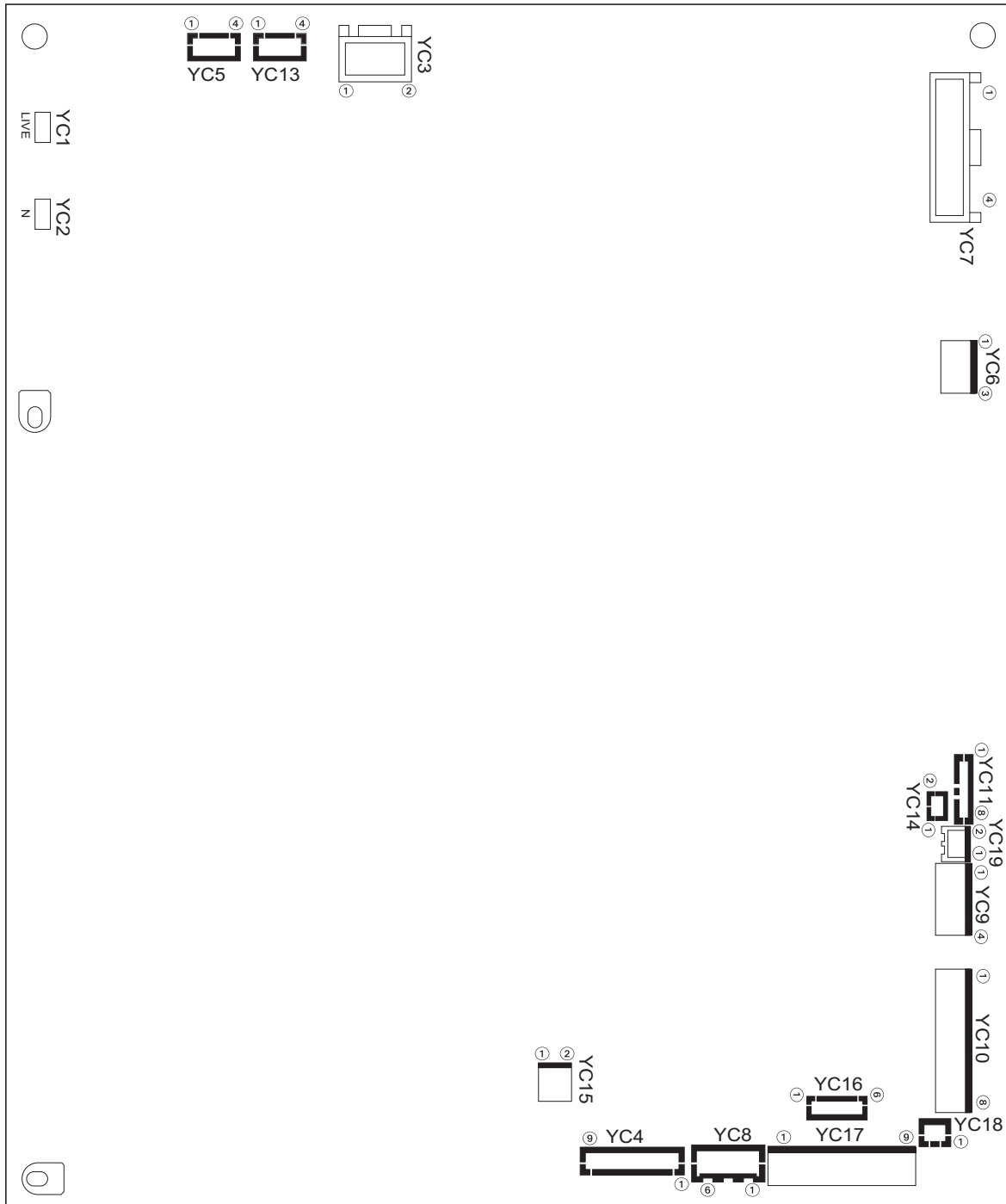


Figure 2-3-2 Power source PWB silk-screen diagram

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC1	1	AC_LIVE	I	120 V AC	120/220 - 240 V AC power input
Connected to the power cord connector				220 - 240 V AC	
YC2	1	AC_COM	I	120 V AC	120/220 - 240 V AC power input
Connected to the power cord connector				220 - 240 V AC	
YC3	1	MSW_IN	I	120 V AC	120/220 - 240 V AC power input
Connected to the main power switch	2	MSW_OUT	O	120 V AC	120/220 - 240 V AC power output
				220 - 240 V AC	
YC4	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the main PWB
Connected to the main PWB	2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the main PWB
	3	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the main PWB
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+12V	O	12 V DC	12 V DC power to the main PWB
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	N.C.	-	-	Not used
YC5	1	DH_LIVE	O	120 V AC	120/220 - 240 V AC power to the paper feeder (dehumidify heater)
Connected to the optional paper feeder (dehumidify heater)	2	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	3	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	4	DH_COM	O	120 V AC	120/220 - 240 V AC power to the paper feeder (dehumidify heater)
			220 - 240 V AC		
YC7	1	H_LIVE	O	120 V AC	120/220 - 240 V AC power to the fuser heater 1, 2 and 3
Connected to the fuser heater 1, 2 and 3	2	MH_OUT	O	120 V AC	Fuser heater 1: On/Off
	3	SH_OUT	O	120 V AC	Fuser heater 2: On/Off
	4	PR_OUT	O	120 V AC	Fuser heater 3: On/Off
			220 - 240 V AC		
YC8	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the engine PWB
Connected to the engine PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the engine PWB
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	+3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the engine PWB
YC9	1	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the engine PWB
Connected to the engine PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	+3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the engine PWB
YC10	1	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the main PWB
Connected to the main PWB	2	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the main PWB
	3	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the main PWB
	4	GND	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin No.	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC10	5	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the main PWB	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the main PWB
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
YC11	1	+24V3	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input (via left cover 1 switch)
Connected to the engine PWB	2	FET_SLEEP	I	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep mode signal: On/Off
	3	ZEROC	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	4	FSR_SUBHEAT_DRn	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser heater 2: On/Off
	5	FSR_MAINHEAT_DRn	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser heater 1: On/Off
	6	DRM_HEAT_DRn	-	-	Not used
	7	FSR_PRHEAT_DRn	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser heater 3: On/Off
	8	LVU_FAN	I	0/24 V DC	Power source fan motor: On/Off
YC13	1	DH_LIVE	O	120 V AC 220 - 240 V AC	120/220 - 240 V AC power to the cassette heater
Connected to the cassette heater	2	N.C.	-	-	-
	3	N.C.	-	-	-
	4	DH_COM	O	120 V AC 220 - 240 V AC	120/220 - 240 V AC power to the cassette heater
YC14	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the power source fan motor
Connected to the power source fan motor	2	FAN_REM	O	24/0 V DC	Power source fan motor: On/Off
YC15	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the engine PWB (via left cover switch 1)
Connected to the left cover 1 switch and engine PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
YC16	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the optional document finisher	2	SGND	-	-	Ground
	3	SGND	-	-	Ground
	4	SGND	-	-	Ground
	5	SGND	-	-	Ground
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground
YC17	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the paper feeder
Connected to the optional paper feeder and document finisher	2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the document finisher
	3	PGND	-	-	Ground (paper feeder)
	4	PGND	-	-	Ground (document finisher)
	5	SGND	-	-	Ground (paper feeder)
	6	SGND	-	-	Ground (document finisher)
	7	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the paper feeder
	8	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the document finisher
	9	N.C.	-	-	Not used
YC18	1	SGND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the motor relay PWB	2	+5V2	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power from the motor relay PWB
YC19	1	+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the FAX relay PWB
Connected to the FAX relay PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground



2-3-2 Engine PWB

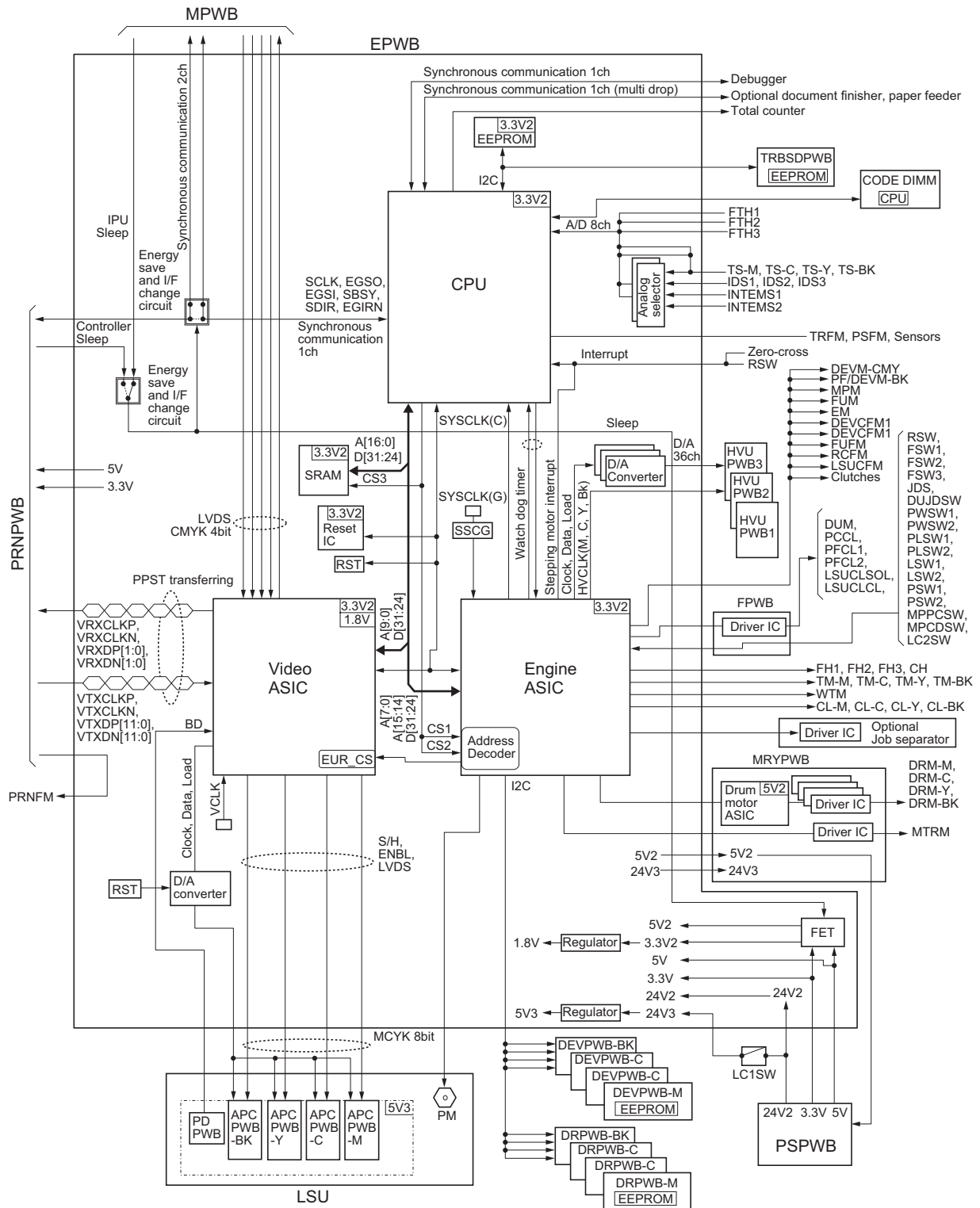


Figure 2-3-3 Engine PWB block diagram



Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC3 Connected to the left cover 1 switch and power source PWB	1	+24V3	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
YC4 Connected to the power source PWB	1	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	+3.3V	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power input
YC5 Connected to the motor relay PWB	1	+24V2	I	24 V DC	24 V DC power input
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	+5V	I	5 V DC	5 V DC power input
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	+3.3V	I	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power input
YC6 Connected to the motor relay PWB	1	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the motor relay PWB
	2	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the motor relay PWB
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the motor relay PWB
	5	GND	-	-	Ground
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the motor relay PWB
	10	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the motor relay PWB
YC8 Connected to the Inner temperature sensor 3, ID sensor 1/2/3, registration clutch and paper feed/developing motor BK	1	IN_TEMP3	I	Analog	Inner temperature sensor 3 detection signal
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the ID sensor 2
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	REG_1S	I	Analog	ID sensor 2 detection signal (S)
	6	REG_1P	I	Analog	ID sensor 2 detection signal (P)
	7	REG_LED1	O	Analog	ID sensor 2 drive signal
	8	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the ID sensor 1
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	ANIDS1	I	Analog	ID sensor 1 detection signal (S)
	11	ANIDP1	I	Analog	ID sensor 1 detection signal (P)
	12	ID_LED	O	Analog	ID sensor 1 drive signal
	13	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the ID sensor 3
	14	GND	-	-	Ground
	15	REG_2S	I	Analog	ID sensor 3 detection signal (S)
	16	REG_2P	I	Analog	ID sensor 3 detection signal (P)
	17	REG_LED2	O	Analog	ID sensor 3 drive signal
	18	NC(GND)	-	-	Not used
	19	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the registration clutch
	20	REG_CLT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	Registration clutch: On/Off
	21	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the paper feed/developing motor BK
	22	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the paper feed/developing motor BK
	23	GND	-	-	Ground
	24	GND	-	-	Ground
	25	GND	-	-	Ground
	26	+5V2		5 V DC	5 V DC power to the paper feed/developing motor BK

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC8 Connected to the Inner temperature sensor 3, ID sensor 1/2/3, registration clutch and paper feed/developing motor BK	27	DLP_K MOT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Paper feed/developing motor BK drive signal
	28	DLP_K MOT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Paper feed/developing motor BK ready signal
	29	DLP_K MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Paper feed/developing motor BK clock signal
	30	DLP_K MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Paper feed/developing motor BK change signal
YC9 Connected to the transfer high voltage PWB 1	1	FB_CONT	O	Analog	Primary transfer cleaning bias output control voltage
	2	T1_CONT4	O	Analog	Primary transfer bias control voltage (4)
	3	T1_CONT3	O	Analog	Primary transfer bias control voltage (3)
	4	T1_CONT2	O	Analog	Primary transfer bias control voltage (2)
	5	T1_CONT1	O	Analog	Primary transfer bias control voltage (1)
	6	FB_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Primary transfer cleaning bias: On/Off
	7	T1_INV_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Primary transfer bias: On/Off
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the transfer high voltage PWB 1
	10	(NC)	-	-	Not used
YC10 Connected to main high voltage PWB	A1	(NC)	-	-	Not used
	A2	GND	-	-	Ground
	A3	GND	-	-	Ground
	A4	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the main high voltage PWB
	A5	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the main high voltage PWB
	A6	DC_MAG_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Developing magnet bias: On/Off
	A7	AC_MAIN_CONT2	I	Analog	Main charger high voltage (AC) control voltage (2)
	A8	HV_CLK2	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing bias clock signal (2)
	A9	DC_MAG_CONT2	O	Analog	Developing magnet bias (DC) control voltage (2)
	A10	DC_SLV_CONT2	O	Analog	Developing sleeve bias (DC) control voltage (2)
	A11	AC_SLV_CONT2	O	Analog	Developing sleeve bias (AC) control voltage (2)
	A12	AC_MAIN_CONT1	O	Analog	Main charger high voltage (AC) control voltage (1)
	A13	HV_CLK1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing bias clock signal (1)
	A14	DC_MAG_CONT1	O	Analog	Developing magnet bias (DC) control voltage (1)
	A15	DC_SLV_CONT1	O	Analog	Developing sleeve bias (DC) control voltage (1)
	A16	AC_SLV_CONT1	O	Analog	Developing sleeve bias (AC) control voltage (1)
B1	AC_MAIN_CONT4	O	Analog	Main charger high voltage (AC) control voltage (4)	
B2	HV_CLK4	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing bias clock signal (4)	
B3	DC_MAG_CONT4	O	Analog	Developing magnet bias (DC) control voltage (4)	
B4	DC_SLV_CONT4	O	Analog	Developing sleeve bias (DC) control voltage (4)	
B5	AC_SLV_CONT4	O	Analog	Developing sleeve bias (AC) control voltage (4)	
B6	AC_MAIN_CONT3	O	Analog	Main charger high voltage (AC) control voltage (3)	
B7	HV_CLK3	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing bias clock signal (3)	
B8	DC_MAG_CONT3	O	Analog	Developing magnet bias (DC) control voltage (3)	
B9	DC_SLV_CONT3	O	Analog	Developing sleeve bias (DC) control voltage (3)	
B10	AC_SLV_CONT3	O	Analog	Developing sleeve bias (AC) control voltage (3)	
B11	DC_MAIN_CONT4	O	Analog	Main charger high voltage (DC) control voltage (4)	
B12	DC_MAIN_CONT3	O	Analog	Main charger high voltage (DC) control voltage (3)	
B13	DC_MAIN_CONT2	O	Analog	Main charger high voltage (DC) control voltage (2)	
B14	DC_MAIN_CONT1	O	Analog	Main charger high voltage (DC) control voltage (1)	
B15	MAIN_IDC	I	Analog	Main charger control signal	
B16	DC_MAIN_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Main charger high voltage (DC): On/Off	

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC12 Connected to transfer high voltage PWB 2	1	SP_CONT	O	Analog	Separation bias control voltage
	2	SEP_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Separation bias: On/Off
	3	T2_INV_CONT	O	Analog	Secondary transfer (reverse) bias control signal
	4	T2_CONT	O	Analog	Secondary transfer bias control signal
	5	T2_REM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Secondary transfer bias: On/Off
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the transfer high voltage PWB 2
	8	FRONT_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Front cover switch: On/Off
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
YC13 Connected to the outer tempera- ture sensor	1	AIR_TEMP	I	Analog	Outer temperature sensor detection signal (temperature)
	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	AIR_HUM	I	Analog	Outer temperature sensor detection signal (humidity)
	4	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the outer temperature sensor
	5	(NC)	-	-	Not used
	6	IN_TEMP4(NC)	-	-	Not used
	7	GND	-	-	Not used
YC14 Connected to the power source PWB and fuser thermistor 1/ 2/3	1	LVU_FAN_REM	O	0/24 V DC	Power source fan motor: On/Off
	2	FSR_PRHEAT_DRn	O	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser heater 3: On/Off
	3	DRM_HEAT_DRn	-	-	Not used
	4	FSR_MAINHEAT_DRn	O	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser heater 1: On/Off
	5	FSR_SUBHEAT_DRn	O	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser heater 2: On/Off
	6	ZEROC	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Zero-cross signal
	7	FET_SLEEP	O	0/3.3 V DC	Sleep mode control signal: On/Off
	8	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power output (via left cover 1 switch)
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	FSR_NCTH2	I	Analog	Fuser thermistor 3 detection signal (2)
	11	FSR_NCTH1	I	Analog	Fuser thermistor 3 detection signal (1)
	12	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the fuser thermistor 1
	13	FSR_TH1	I	Analog	Fuser thermistor 1 detection signal
	14	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the fuser thermistor 2
	15	FSR_TH2	I	Analog	Fuser thermistor 2 detection signal
YC16 Connected to the poly- gon motor, APC PWB Y/M/C/BK, PD PWB and Inner tempera- ture sensor 1	A1	SCCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Polygon motor clock signal
	A2	SCRDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Polygon motor ready signal
	A3	SCREM	O	0/3.3 V DC	Polygon motor: On/Off
	A4	GND	-	-	Ground
	A5	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the polygon motor
	A6	+5V3	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the APC PWB Y
	A7	APC3_CNT	O	Analog	APC PWB Y control signal
	A8	GND	-	-	Ground
	A9	ENBL3	O	0/3.3 V DC	APC PWB Y enable signal
	A10	S/H3	O	0/3.3 V DC	APC PWB Y sample & hold signal
	A11	VDO3_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	A12	VDO3_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	A13	+5V3	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the APC PWB M
	A14	APC1_CNT	O	Analog	APC PWB M control signal
	A15	GND	-	-	Ground
	A16	ENBL1	O	0/3.3 V DC	APC PWB M enable signal
	A17	S/H1	O	0/3.3 V DC	APC PWB M sample & hold signal
	A18	VDO1_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	A19	VDO1_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	B1	+5V3	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the PD PWB
	B2	BD	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	BD signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC16	B3	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the polygon motor, APC PWB Y/M/C/BK, PD PWB and Inner temperature sensor 1	B4	IN_TEMP1	I	Analog	Inner temperature sensor 1 detection signal
	B5	GND	-	-	Ground
	B6	+5V3	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the APC PWB C
	B7	APC2_CNT	O	Analog	APC PWB C control signal
	B8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B9	ENBL2	O	0/3.3 V DC	APC PWB C enable signal
	B10	S/H2	O	0/3.3 V DC	APC PWB C sample & hold signal
	B11	VDO2_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	B12	VDO2_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
	B13	+5V3	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the APC PWB BK
	B14	APC4_CNT	O	Analog	APC PWB BK control signal
	B15	GND	-	-	Ground
	B16	ENBL4	O	0/3.3 V DC	APC PWB BK enable signal
	B17	S/H4	O	0/3.3 V DC	APC PWB BK sample & hold signal
	B18	VDO4_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (P)
	B19	VDO4_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Video data signal (N)
YC17	A1	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the developing PWB M
Connected to the developing PWB M/C, toner sensor M/C, cleaning lamp M/C, drum PWB M/C	A2	EEP_SCL1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing PWB M EEPROM clock signal
	A3	EEP_SDA1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing PWB M EEPROM data signal
	A4	VCONT1	O	Analog	Toner sensor M control signal
	A5	GND	-	-	Ground
	A6	TPD1	I	Analog	Toner sensor M detection signal
	A7	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the developing PWB M
	A8	DRM1_ERSERR	I	Analog	Cleaning lamp M broken detection signal
	A9	ERS1_DR	O	24/0 V DC	Cleaning lamp M: On/Off
	A10	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the drum PWB M
	A11	EEP_SCL1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Drum PWB M EEPROM clock signal
	A12	EEP_SDA1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Drum PWB M EEPROM data signal
	A13	GND	-	-	Ground
	A14	A0(GND)	-	-	Ground
	A15	A1(GND)	-	-	Ground
	B1	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the developing PWB C
	B2	EEP_SCL1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing PWB C EEPROM clock signal
	B3	EEP_SDA1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing PWB C EEPROM data signal
	B4	VCONT2	O	Analog	Toner sensor C control signal
	B5	GND	-	-	Ground
	B6	TPD2	I	Analog	Toner sensor C detection signal
	B7	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the developing PWB C
	B8	DRM2_ERSERR	I	Analog	Cleaning lamp C broken detection signal
	B9	ERS2_DR	O	24/0 V DC	Cleaning lamp C: On/Off
	B10	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the drum PWB C
	B11	EEP_SCL1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Drum PWB C EEPROM clock signal
	B12	EEP_SDA1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Drum PWB C EEPROM data signal
	B13	GND	-	-	Ground
	B14	A0(OPEN)	-	-	Not used
	B15	A1(GND)	-	-	Ground

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC18	A1	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the developing PWB Y
Connected to the developing PWB Y/BK, toner sensor Y/BK, cleaning lamp Y/BK, drum PWB Y/BK	A2	EEP_SCL1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing PWB Y EEPROM clock signal
	A3	EEP_SDA1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing PWB Y EEPROM data signal
	A4	VCONT3	O	Analog	Toner sensor Y control signal
	A5	GND	-	-	Ground
	A6	TPD3	I	Analog	Toner sensor Y detection signal
	A7	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the developing PWB Y
	A8	DRM3_ERSERR	I	Analog	Cleaning lamp Y broken detection signal
	A9	ERS3_DR	O	24/0 V DC	Cleaning lamp Y: On/Off
	A10	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the drum PWB Y
	A11	EEP_SCL1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Drum PWB Y EEPROM clock signal
	A12	EEP_SDA1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Drum PWB Y EEPROM data signal
	A13	GND	-	-	Ground
	A14	A0(GND)	-	-	Ground
	Connected to the main PWB	B1	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC
B2		EEP_SCL1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing PWB BK EEPROM clock signal
B3		EEP_SDA1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing PWB BK EEPROM data signal
B4		VCONT4	O	Analog	Toner sensor BK control signal
B5		GND	-	-	Ground
B6		TPD4	I	Analog	Toner sensor BK detection signal
B7		+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the developing PWB BK
B8		DRM4_ERSERR	I	Analog	Cleaning lamp BK broken detection signal
B9		ERS4_DR	O	24/0 V DC	Cleaning lamp BK: On/Off
B10		+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the drum PWB BK
B11		EEP_SCL1	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Drum PWB BK EEPROM clock signal
B12		EEP_SDA1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Drum PWB BK EEPROM data signal
B13		GND	-	-	Ground
B14		AO,A1(OPEN)	-	-	Not used
YC19	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the main PWB	A2	VSYNCA_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A3	HSYNCAN_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A4	VSYNCB_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A5	HSYNCBN_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A6	VSYNCC_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A7	HSYNCCN_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A8	VSYNCD_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A9	HSYNCND_N	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	A11	VCLKOUT_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A12	GND	-	-	Ground
	A13	VMREA_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A14	VD_A3_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A15	VD_A2_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A16	VD_A1_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A17	VD_A0_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A18	VMREB_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A19	VD_B3_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A20	VD_B2_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A21	VD_B1_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A22	VD_B0_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A23	VMREC_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A24	VD_C3_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC19	A25	VD_C2_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
Connected to the main PWB	A26	VD_C1_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A27	VD_C0_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A28	VMRED_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A29	VD_D3_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A30	VD_D2_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A31	VD_D1_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A32	VD_D0_N	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A33	SLEEP	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	A34	EGN_SLEEP	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	A35	PI_INT	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	A36	PI_SO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A37	PI_SI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A38	PI_SCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	A39	PI_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	A40	PI_BSY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	B1	GND	-	-	Ground
	B2	VSYNCA_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B3	HSYNCAN_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B4	VSYNCB_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B5	HSYNCBN_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B6	VSYNCC_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B7	HSYNCCN_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B8	VSYNCD_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B9	HSYNCND_P	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B10	GND	-	-	Ground
	B11	VCLKOUT_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B12	GND	-	-	Ground
	B13	VMREA_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B14	VD_A3_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B15	VD_A2_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B16	VD_A1_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B17	VD_A0_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B18	VMREB_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B19	VD_B3_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B20	VD_B2_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B21	VD_B1_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
B22	VD_B0_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal	
B23	VMREC_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal	
B24	VD_C3_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal	
B25	VD_C2_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal	
B26	VD_C1_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal	
B27	VD_C0_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal	
B28	VMRED_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal	
B29	VD_D3_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal	
B30	VD_D2_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal	
B31	VD_D1_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal	
B32	VD_D0_P	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal	
B33	GND	-	-	Ground	
B34	SLEEP	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal	
B35	IE_INT	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal	
B36	IE_SI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal	



Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC19	B37	IE_SO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
Connected to the main PWB	B38	IE_SCLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	B39	IE_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	B40	IE_BSY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	YC21	1	GND	-	-
Connected to the printer PWB	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	VRXDP0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	4	VRXDP1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	5	VRXCLKP	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	6	GND	-	-	Ground
	7	VTXDP11	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	8	VTXDP10	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	9	VTXDP9	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	10	VTXDP8	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	11	VTXCLKP	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	12	GND	-	-	Ground
	13	VTXDP7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	14	VTXDP6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	15	VTXDP5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	16	VTXDP4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	17	VTXDP3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	18	VTXDP2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	19	VTXDP1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	20	VTXDP0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	21	GND	-	-	Ground
	22	FP_DIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	23	FP_CLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	24	FP_RSTN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	25	NC	-	-	Not used
	26	SBSY	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	27	SDIR	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	28	SLEEPC	I	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	29	P_FAN_OFF_N	I	0/3.3 V DC	Printer cooling fan motor: On/Off
	30	GND	-	-	Ground
	31	GND	-	-	Ground
	32	GND	-	-	Ground
	33	GND	-	-	Ground
	34	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the printer PWB
	35	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the printer PWB
	36	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the printer PWB
	37	5V	O	5 V DC	5V DC power to the printer PWB
	38	5V	O	5 V DC	5V DC power to the printer PWB
	39	5V	O	5 V DC	5V DC power to the printer PWB
	40	5V	O	5 V DC	5V DC power to the printer PWB
	41	GND	-	-	Ground
	42	GND	-	-	Ground
	43	VRXDN0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	44	VRXDN1	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	45	VRXCLKN	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	46	GND	-	-	Ground
	47	VTXDN11	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	48	VTXDN10	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC21 Connected to the printer PWB	49	VTXDN9	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	50	VTXDN8	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	51	VTXCLKN	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	52	GND	-	-	Ground
	53	VTXDN7	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	54	VTXDN6	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	55	VTXDN5	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	56	VTXDN4	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	57	VTXDN3	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	58	VTXDN2	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	59	VTXDN1	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	60	VTXDN0	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	61	GND	-	-	Ground
	62	FP_DATA	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial data signal
	63	EGIRN	O	0/3.3 V DC	Control signal
	64	SGND	-	-	Ground
	65	EGSI	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Serial data signal
	66	SCLK	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Clock signal
	67	EGSO	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Control signal
	68	GND	-	-	Ground
	69	NC	-	-	Not used
	70	VDOFFN	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the printer PWB
	71	GND	-	-	Ground
	72	GND	-	-	Ground
	73	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the printer PWB
	74	3.3V	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the printer PWB
	75	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the printer PWB
	76	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the printer PWB
	77	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the printer PWB
	78	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the printer PWB
79	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the printer PWB	
80	5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the printer PWB	
YC22 Connected to the feed PWB	A1	CAM_CLT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	LSU cleaning clutch: On/Off
	A2	FEED2_CLT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	Paper feed clutch 2: On/Off
	A3	FEED1_CLT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	Paper feed clutch 1: On/Off
	A4	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the feed PWB
	A5	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the feed PWB
	A6	LSU_SOL_DR	O	0/24 V DC	LSU cleaning solenoid: On/Off
	A7	ROL_CLT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	Paper conveying clutch: On/Off
	A8	FSR FAN	O	0/24 V DC	Paper conveying fan motor: On/Off
	A9	CAS1_EMPTY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Paper switch 1: On/Off
	A10	CAS2_EMPTY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Paper switch 2: On/Off
	A11	CAS2_LFT_UP	I	0/3.3 V DC	Lift switch 2: On/Off
	A12	CAS1_LFT_UP	I	0/3.3 V DC	Lift switch 1: On/Off
	A13	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the feed PWB
	A14	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the feed PWB
	A15	GND	-	-	Ground
	A16	GND	-	-	Ground
	A17	DU_MOT_PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	Duplex motor current control signal
	A18	DU_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Duplex motor clock signal
	A19	DU_MOT_MODE	O	0/3.3 V DC	Duplex motor mode signal
	A20	DU_MOT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Duplex motor: On/Off

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC22	B1	DU_JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Duplex jam detection switch: On/Off
Connected to the feed PWB	B2	PRE_FSR_JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Jam detection sensor: On/Off
	B3	REG_JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Registration switch: On/Off
	B4	DESK_JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Feed switch 3: On/Off
	B5	CAS2_JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Feed switch 2: On/Off
	B6	LEFT_OPEN	I	0/3.3 V DC	Left cover 2 switch: On/Off
	B7	MPF_JAM2	I	0/3.3 V DC	Not used
	B8	MPF_UNIT_SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	MP conveying unit detection switch: On/Off
	B9	CAS1_LENGTH	I	0/3.3 V DC	Paper length size switch 1: On/Off
	B10	CAS2_LENGTH	I	0/3.3 V DC	Paper length size switch 2: On/Off
	B11	CAS2_WIDTH3	I	0/3.3 V DC	Paper width size switch 2 (3): On/Off
	B12	CAS2_WIDTH2	I	0/3.3 V DC	Paper width size switch 2 (2): On/Off
	B13	CAS2_WIDTH1	I	0/3.3 V DC	Paper width size switch 2 (1): On/Off
	B14	CAS1_WIDTH3	I	0/3.3 V DC	Paper width size switch 1 (3): On/Off
	B15	CAS1_WIDTH2	I	0/3.3 V DC	Paper width size switch 1 (2): On/Off
	B16	CAS1_WIDTH1	I	0/3.3 V DC	Paper width size switch 1 (1): On/Off
	B17	CAS1_JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Feed switch 1: On/Off
	B18	MPF_JAM3	I	0/3.3 V DC	MP paper feed switch: On/Off
	B19	GND	-	-	Ground
	B20	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the feed PWB
	YC23	A1	NC	-	-
Connected to the Motor relay PWB	A2	DRM_COL_MOT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Drum motor M/C/Y: On/Off
	A3	DRM_K_MOT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Drum motor BK: On/Off
	A4	DRM_MOT_ON	O	-	Not used
	A5	DRM_MOT_CLKF	O	-	Not used
	A6	DRM_MOT1_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Drum motor M clock signal
	A7	DRM_MOT2_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Drum motor C clock signal
	A8	DRM_MOT3_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Drum motor Y clock signal
	A9	DRM_MOT4_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Drum motor BK clock signal
	A10	DRM_MOT_HL	O	0/3.3 V DC	Drum motor control signal
	B1	DRM_MOT1_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Drum motor M ready signal
	B2	DRM_MOT2_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Drum motor C ready signal
	B3	DRM_MOT3_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Drum motor Y ready signal
	B4	DRM_MOT4_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Drum motor BK ready signal
	B5	DRM_MOT_PD	O	-	Not used
	B6	DRM_MOT_DIR	O	-	Not used
	B7	BLT_MOT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Middle transfer motor: On/Off
	B8	BLT_MOT_MODE	O	0/3.3 V DC	Middle transfer motor mode signal
	B9	BLT_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Middle transfer motor clock signal
	B10	BLT_MOT_PD	O	0/3.3 V DC	Middle transfer motor current control signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC24	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the MP paper width size switch, MP tray switch, MP paper length size switch, MP paper set switch, MP paper feed switch, MP solenoid, MP paper feed clutch, MP paper conveying clutch and rear cooling fan motor	A2	MPF_WIDTH3	I	0/3.3 V DC	MP paper width size switch (3): On/Off
	A3	MPF_WIDTH2	I	0/3.3 V DC	MP paper width size switch (2): On/Off
	A4	MPF_WIDTH1	I	0/3.3 V DC	MP paper width size switch (1): On/Off
	A5	GND	-	-	Ground
	A6	MPF_TABLE	I	0/3.3 V DC	MP tray switch: On/Off
	A7	GND	-	-	Ground
	A8	MPF_LENGTH	I	0/3.3 V DC	MP paper length size switch: On/Off
	A9	5V_SENSOR_LED	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the MP paper length size switch (via resistor)
	A10	GND	-	-	Ground
	A11	MPF_PPR_SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	MP paper set switch: On/Off
	A12	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the MP paper set switch
	B1	GND	-	-	Ground
B2	MPF_JAM1	I	0/3.3 V DC	MP paper feed switch: On/Off	
B3	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the MP paper feed switch	
B4	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the MP solenoid	
B5	MPF_SOL1_DR	O	0/24 V DC	MP solenoid (ACT): On/Off	
B6	MPF_SOL2_DR	O	0/24 V DC	MP solenoid (RET): On/Off	
B7	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the MP paper feed clutch	
B8	MPF_CLT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	MP paper feed clutch: On/Off	
B9	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the MP paper conveying clutch	
B10	MPF_FED_CLT_REM	O	0/24 V DC	MP paper conveying clutch: On/Off	
B11	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the rear cooling fan motor	
B12	REAR1_FAN_REM	O	0/24 V DC	Rear cooling fan motor: On/Off	
YC25	1	LFT1_MOT_DR	O	0/24 V DC	Lift motor 1: On/Off
Connected to the lift motor1/2	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	LFT1_MOT_SIG1	I	0/3.3 V DC	Lift motor 1 paper gauge signal (1)
	4	GND	-	-	Ground
	5	LFT1_MOT_SIG2	I	0/3.3 V DC	Lift motor 1 paper gauge signal (2)
	6	LFT2_MOT_DR	O	0/24 V DC	Lift motor 2: On/Off
	7	GND	-	-	Ground
	8	LFT2_MOT_SIG1	I	0/3.3 V DC	Lift motor 2 paper gauge signal (1)
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	LFT2_MOT_SIG2	I	0/3.3 V DC	Lift motor 2 paper gauge signal (2)
YC26	1	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the MP motor
Connected to the MP motor and developing motor CMY	2	GND	-	-	Ground
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the MP motor
	5	MPF_MOT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	MP motor: On/Off
	6	MPF_MOT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	MP motor ready signal
	7	MPF_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	MP motor clock signal
	8	MPF_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	MP motor change signal
	9	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the developing motor CMY
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	GND	-	-	Ground
	12	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the developing motor CMY
	13	DLP_COL_MOT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	MP motor: On/Off
	14	DLP_COL_MOT_RDY	I	0/3.3 V DC	Developing motor CMY ready signal
	15	DLP_COL_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Developing motor CMY clock signal
	16	DLP_COL_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Developing motor CMY change signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC27	A1	NC	-	-	Not used
Connected to the fuser fan motor, paper full detection sensor, fuser motor, eject motor, eject switch, feedshift switch and high voltage fan motor	A2	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the fuser fan motor
	A3	FSR_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	Fuser fan motor: On/Off
	A4	GND	-	-	Ground
	A5	PPR_FULL	I	0/3.3 V DC	Paper full detection sensor: On/Off
	A6	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the paper full detection sensor
	A7	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the fuser motor
	A8	GND	-	-	Ground
	A9	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the fuser motor
	A10	FSR_MOT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser motor: On/Off
	A11	FSR_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Fuser motor clock signal
	A12	FSR_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser motor change signal
	A13	FSR_MOT_LOCK	I	0/3.3 V DC	Fuser motor lock signal
	A14	FSR_MOT_GAIN	-	-	Ground
	B1	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the eject motor
	B2	GND	-	-	Ground
	B3	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the eject motor
	B4	EXIT_MOT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Eject motor: On/Off
	B5	EXIT_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Eject motor clock signal
	B6	EXIT_MOT_DIR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Eject motor change signal
	B7	EXIT_MOT_LOCK	I	0/3.3 V DC	Eject motor lock signal
	B8	EXIT_MOT_GAIN	-	-	Ground
	B9	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the eject switch and feedshift switch
	B10	EXT1_JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Eject switch: On/Off
	B11	EXT2_JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Feedshift switch: On/Off
	B12	GND	-	-	Ground
	B13	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the high voltage fan motor
	B14	HVU_FAN	O	0/24 V DC	High voltage fan motor: On/Off
	YC28	A1	+5V2	O	5 V DC
Connected to the transfer belt speed detection PWB, inner temperature sensor 2, transfer detection sensor and transfer fan motor1/2	A2	BLT_SPEED	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transfer belt speed detection PWB (sensor) detection signal
	A3	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	3.3 V DC power to the transfer belt speed detection PWB
	A4	EEP_SDA0	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transfer belt speed detection PWB EEPROM data signal
	A5	EEP_SCL0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transfer belt speed detection PWB EEPROM clock signal
	A6	GND	-	-	Ground
	A7	IN_TEMP2	I	Analog	Inner temperature sensor 2 detection signal
	A8	GND	-	-	Ground
	B1	GND	-	-	Ground
	B2	BLT_SET	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Transfer detection sensor detection signal
	B3	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the transfer detection sensor
	B4	BLT_FAN1	I	0/24 V DC	Transfer fan motor 1: On/Off
	B5	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the transfer fan motor 1
	B6	BLT_FAN2	I	0/24 V DC	Transfer fan motor 2: On/Off
	B7	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the transfer fan motor 2
	B8	N.C.	-	-	Not used

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC30	A1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the toner motor M/C/Y/BK, waste toner motor, waste toner full detection PWB, developing cooling fan motor 1/2, printer cooling fan motor	A2	EEP_SDA0	I/O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	-
	A3	EEP_SCL0	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	-
	A4	+3.3V2	O	3.3 V DC	-
	A5	TMOT1_DR	O	0/24 V DC	Toner motor M: On/Off
	A6	TMOT1_RTN	I	Analog	Toner motor M return signal
	A7	TMOT2_DR	O	0/24 V DC	Toner motor C: On/Off
	A8	TMOT2_RTN	I	Analog	Toner motor C return signal
	A9	TMOT3_DR	O	0/24 V DC	Toner motor Y: On/Off
	A10	TMOT3_RTN	I	Analog	Toner motor Y return signal
	A11	TMOT4_DR	O	0/24 V DC	Toner motor BK: On/Off
	A12	TMOT4_RTN	I	Analog	Toner motor BK return signal
	A13	N.C.	-	-	Not used
	B1	B1	WT_MOT_DR	O	0/24 V DC
B2		WT_MOT_RTN	I	Analog	Waste toner motor return signal
B3		+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the waste toner full detection PWB
B4		WTNR_LED	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Waste toner full detection PWB (LED) drive signal
B5		WTNSENS	I	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Waste toner sensor detection signal
B6		GND	-	-	Ground
B7		DLP_FAN1	O	0/24 V DC	Developing cooling fan motor 1: On/Off
B8		+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the developing cooling fan motor 1
B9		DLP_FAN2	O	0/24 V DC	Developing cooling fan motor 2: On/Off
B10		+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the developing cooling fan motor 2
B11		+5V	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the printer cooling fan motor
B12		GND	-	-	Ground
B13		P_FAN	O	0/5 V DC	Printer cooling fan motor: On/Off
YC31	1	GND	-	-	Ground
Connected to the main high voltage PWB	2	HVU SET	O	0/5 V DC	Main high voltage PWB connection signal
	3	IDC1	O	0/5 V DC	IDC1 signal
	4	IDC2	O	0/5 V DC	IDC2 signal
	5	IDC3	O	0/5 V DC	IDC3 signal
	6	IDC4	O	0/5 V DC	IDC4 signal
	7	HVU VREF	O	0/5 V DC	HVU VREF signal

Connector	Pin	Signal	I/O	Voltage	Description
YC32	1	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the ejected paper detection switch
Connected to the optional job separator	2	SET_JOB	I	0/3.3 V DC	Ejected paper detection switch: On/Off
	3	GND	-	-	Ground
	4	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the LED PWB
	5	JOB_LED	O	0/5 V DC	LED PWB (LED indicator): On/Off
	6	+5V2	O	5 V DC	5 V DC power to the job separator eject switch
	7	JOB_EXIT_JAM	I	0/3.3 V DC	Job separator eject switch: On/Off
	8	GND	-	-	Ground
	9	GND	-	-	Ground
	10	GND	-	-	Ground
	11	JOB_EJECT	I	0/3.3 V DC	Job separator installing detection signal
	12	OP1_SOL2_DR	O	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid 1 (ACT): On/Off
	13	OP1_SOL1_DR	O	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid 1 (RET): On/Off
	14	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to feedshift solenoid 1
	15	OP2_SOL2_DR	O	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid 2 (ACT): On/Off
	16	OP2_SOL1_DR	O	0/24 V DC	Feedshift solenoid 2 (RET): On/Off
	17	+24V3	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to feedshift solenoid 2
	18	OP_MOT_DR	O	0/3.3 V DC	Job eject motor: On/Off
	19	OP_MOT_CLK	O	0/3.3 V DC (pulse)	Job eject motor clock signal
	20	OP_MOT_MODE	O	0/3.3 V DC	Job eject motor mode signal
	YC33	1	DF_DET	I	0/5 V DC
Connected to the optional document finisher and paper feeder	2	EH_SDO (DFSDO)	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher serial communication data signal
	3	EH_SDO (PFSDO)	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	4	EH_SDI (DFSDI)	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher serial communication data signal
	5	EH_SDI (PFSDI)	I	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication data signal
	6	EH_SCLK (DFSCLK)	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Document finisher serial communication clock signal
	7	EH_SCLK (PFSCLK)	O	0/5 V DC (pulse)	Paper feeder serial communication clock signal
	8	DF_SEL	O	0/5 V DC	Document finisher select signal
	9	PF_SEL	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder select signal
	10	SISEL(GND)	-	-	Ground
	11	PF_FEED	O	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder control signal
	12	EH_RDY(DF_RDY)	I	0/5 V DC	Document finisher ready signal
	13	EH_RDY(PF_RDY)	I	0/5 V DC	Paper feeder ready signal
	14	SIRDY(GND)	-	-	Ground
	YC36	1	GND	-	-
Connected to the optional key counter	2	DC1_SET	I	0/3.3 V DC	Key counter installing detecting signal
	3	+F24V	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the key counter
	4	DC1_COUNT	O	0/3.3 V DC	Key counter count signal
YC37	1	+24V2	O	24 V DC	24 V DC power to the developing cooling fan motor 3
Connected to the developing cooling fan motor 3	2	LSU_FAN	I	0/24 V DC	Developing cooling fan motor 3: On/Off

This page is intentionally left blank.



## Maintenance parts list

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Paper feed pulley	PULLEY,PAPER FEED	2AR07220	-	6	1
Separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-	6	2
Forwarding pulley	PULLEY FEED A	2BJ06010	-	6	5
MP paper feed pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-	20	1
MP separation pulley	PULLEY,SEPARATION	2AR07230	-	20	1
MP forwarding pulley	PULLEY LEADING FEED MPT	302FZ08130	2FZ08130	20	19
Registration left roller	PARTS,ROLLER REGIST L SP	302FZ94520	2FZ94520	8	6
Registration right roller	ROLLER REGIST R	302FZ22040	2FZ22040	7	40
Bypass A roller	PARTS,ROLLER BYPASS A SP	302FZ94470	2FZ94470	22	3
Bypass B roller	PARTS,ROLLER BYPASS B SP	302FZ94480	2FZ94480	22	5
MP middle roller	PARTS,ROLLER MID MPT SP	302FZ94490	2FZ94490	20	23
MP bypass pulley	PULLEY MPT BYPASS	302FZ07020	2FZ07020	22	4
Middle R roller	PARTS,ROLLER MIDDLE R SP	302FZ94540	2FZ94540	7	62
Feed low roller	ROLLER FEED LOW	302FZ22750	2FZ22750	7	5,16
Slit glass	PARTS CONTACT GLASS DP ASSY	302GR94380	2GR94380	12	2
Contact glass	PARTS CONTACT GLASS (M) ASSY	302GR93310	2GR93310	12	1
	PARTS CONTACT GLASS (I) ASSY	302GR93320	2GR93320	12	1
Mirror 1	MIRROR A	2FB12140	-	11	25
Mirror 2 and mirror 3	MIRROR B	302GR17280	2GR17280	11	17
Lens	-	-	-	-	-
Exposure lamp	PARTS,LAMP SCANNER SP	302GR17120	2GR17120	11	32
Optical rail F	-	-	-	-	-
Optical rail R	-	-	-	-	-
Original size detection sensor	SENSOR ORIGINAL	2C927090	-	11	44
Transfer belt unit	PARTS TRANSFER BELT ASS'Y	302FZ93090	2FZ93090	10	A02
Transfer roller	PARTS,ROLLER TRANSFER SP	302FZ94510	2FZ94510	8	5
Developing unit BK	PARTS DLP K ASS'Y	302FZ93111	2FZ93111	14	A01
Developing unit Y	PARTS DLP Y ASS'Y	302FZ93121	2FZ93121	14	A02
Developing unit C	PARTS DLP C ASS'Y	302FZ93131	2FZ93131	14	A03
Developing unit M	PARTS DLP M ASS'Y	302FZ93141	2FZ93141	14	A04
Drum unit	PARTS DRUM ASS'Y	302FZ93101	2FZ93101	13	A01
Fuser unit	PARTS FUSER 120 ASS'Y	302FZ93161	2FZ93161	15	1
	PARTS FUSER 200 ASS'Y	302FZ93171	2FZ93171	15	1
	PARTS FUSER 110 ASS'Y	302FZ93530	2FZ93530	15	1
Eject roller	PARTS,ROLLER EXIT SP	302FZ94610	2FZ94610	19	8
Duplex A roller	PARTS,ROLLER DUPLEX A SP	302FZ94620	2FZ94620	9	6
Duplex B roller	PARTS,ROLLER DUPLEX B SP	302FZ94630	2FZ94630	9	7
Right filter	COVER FILTER ASS'Y	302FZ00470	2FZ00470	1	A05
Filter	FILTER DUST	302FZ04500	2FZ04500	1	35

**Maintenance kits**

Maintenance part name		Part No.	Alternative part No.	Fig. No.	Ref. No.
Name used in service manual	Name used in parts list				
Maintenance kit A					
<For 120 V specifications>	MK-825/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702FZ7US0	072FZ7US	31	-
Developing unit BK	DLP K ASS'Y	-	-	-	-
Fuser unit	FUSER 120 ASS'Y	-	-	-	-
Transfer roller	ROLLER TRANSFER	-	-	-	-
Drum unit	DRUM ASS'Y	-	-	-	-
Transfer belt unit	PARTS TRANSFER BELT ASS'Y	-	-	-	-
<For 220 - 240 V specifications>	MK-825(NL)/MAINTENANCE KIT	1702FZ8NL0	072FZ8NL	31	-
Developing unit BK	DLP K ASS'Y	-	-	-	-
Fuser unit	FUSER 200 ASS'Y	-	-	-	-
Transfer roller	ROLLER TRANSFER	-	-	-	-
Drum unit	DRUM ASS'Y	-	-	-	-
Transfer belt unit	PARTS TRANSFER BELT ASS'Y	-	-	-	-
Maintenance kit B	MK-825B	1702FZ0UN0	072FZ0UN	31	-
Developing unit Y	DLP Y ASS'Y	-	-	-	-
Developing unit C	DLP C ASS'Y	-	-	-	-
Developing unit M	DLP M ASS'Y	-	-	-	-

## Periodic maintenance procedures

Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Test copy and test print	Perform at the maximum copy size	Test copy	Every service		



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Paper feed section	Paper feed pulley	Check or replace	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	P.1-5-3
	Separation pulley	Check or replace	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	P.1-5-3
	Forwarding pulley	Check or replace	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	P.1-5-3
	MP paper feed pulley	Check or replace	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	P.1-5-7
	MP separation pulley	Check or replace	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	P.1-5-7
	MP forwarding pulley	Check or replace	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	P.1-5-7
	Registration left roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Registration right roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Bypass A roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Bypass B roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	MP middle roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth. Replace after feeding 150,000 sheets.	
	MP bypass pulley	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Middle R roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Feed low roller	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Rollers and pulleys	Clean	Every service	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Clutches	Check	Every service	Check state of paper feed	
Guides	Clean	Every 300,000 counts	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.		



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Optical section	Slit glass	Clean	Every 300,000 counts	Clean with a dry cloth or alcohol (do not clean with a wet cloth).	P.1-5-9
	Contact glass	Clean	Every 300,000 counts	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth.	
	Contact glass	Clean	User call	Clean with alcohol and then a dry cloth only if vertical black lines appear on the print image.	
	Mirror 1	Clean	User call	Clean with a dry cloth and then air blow only if vertical black lines appear on the print image.	
	Mirror 2 and mirror 3	Clean	User call	Clean with a dry cloth and then air blow only if vertical black lines appear on the print image.	
	Lens	Clean	User call	Clean with a dry cloth and then air blow only if vertical black lines appear on the print image.	
	Exposure lamp	Check or replace	User call	Replace if an image problem occurs.	
	Optical rail	Grease	User call	Check noise and shifting and then apply scanner rail grease PG-671.	
Original size detection sensor	Check or clean	User call	Clean the sensor emitter and sensor receiver with alcohol or a dry cloth only if there is a problem.		



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Transfer section	Transfer belt unit	Replace	Every 300,000 counts		P.1-5-28
	Transfer roller	Replace	Every 300,000 counts		P.1-5-29



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Developing section	Developing unit BK	Replace	Every 300,000 counts		P.1-5-26
	Developing unit Y	Replace	Every 300,000 counts		P.1-5-26
	Developing unit C	Replace	Every 300,000 counts		P.1-5-26
	Developing unit M	Replace	Every 300,000 counts		P.1-5-26



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Drum section	Drum unit	Replace	Every 300,000 counts		P.1-5-27



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Fuser section	Fuser unit	Replace	Every 300,000 counts		P.1-5-31



Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Eject section	Eject roller	Clean	Every 300,000 counts	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Duplex A roller	Clean	Every 300,000 counts	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Duplex B roller	Clean	Every 300,000 counts	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Guides	Clean	Every 300,000 counts	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	



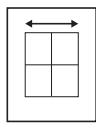
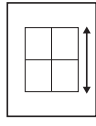
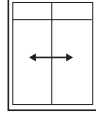
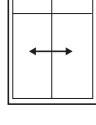
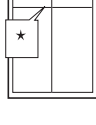
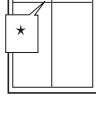
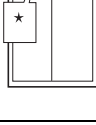
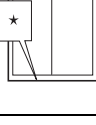
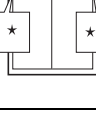
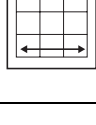
Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Covers	Covers	Clean	Every 300,000 counts	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	
	Original platen	Clean	Every 300,000 counts	Clean with alcohol or a dry cloth.	

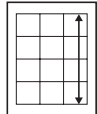
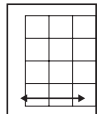

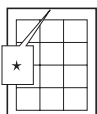
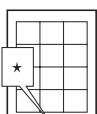
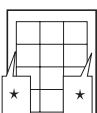


Section	Maintenance part/location	Method	Maintenance cycle	Points and cautions	Page
Other	Right filter	Clean	Every service	Vacuum.	
	Filter	Clean	Every service	Vacuum.	
	Clutches	Check	Every service	Check state of paper conveying	
	Sensors	Check	Every service	Clean the sensor receiver with a dry cloth or air blow.	
	Image quality	Check and adjust	Every service		

This page is intentionally left blank.

## Chart of image adjustment procedures

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
1	Adjusting the magnification in the main scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Polygon motor speed adjustment	U053	POLYGON	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-17	
2	Adjusting the magnification in the auxiliary scanning direction (printing adjustment)		Middle transfer motor speed adjustment	U053	TC Motor	U053 test pattern	P.1-3-17	
3	Adjusting the center line of the MP tray (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	Center (MPT)	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-14	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select Center (Duplex).
4	Adjusting the center line of the cassettes (printing adjustment)		Adjusting the LSU print start timing	U034	Center (Feed 1) Center (Feed 2) Center (Feed 3) Center (Feed 4)	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-14	Cassette 1: select Center (Feed 1) Cassette 2: select Center (Feed 2) Cassette 3: select Center (Feed 3) Cassette 4: select Center (Feed 4)
5	Adjusting the leading edge registration of the MP tray (printing adjustment)		Registration motor turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	MPT (Large)	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-13	To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select Duplex (Large).
6	Adjusting the leading edge registration of the cassette (printing adjustment)		Registration motor turning on timing (secondary paper feed start timing)	U034	Cassette (Large)	U034 test pattern	P.1-3-13	
7	Adjusting the leading edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start timing	U402	LESD	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-71	
8	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination end timing	U402	TRAIL	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-71	
9	Adjusting the left and right margins (printing adjustment)		LSU illumination start/end timing	U402	A/C	U402 test pattern	P.1-3-71	
10	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the main scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Data processing	U065	MAIN SCAN ADJ	Test chart	P.1-3-19	No adjustment for copying using the DP.

Adjusting order	Item	Image	Description	Maintenance mode		Original	Page	Remarks
				Item No.	Mode			
11	Adjusting magnification of the scanner in the auxiliary scanning direction (scanning adjustment)		Original scanning speed	U065 U070	SUB SCAN ADJ -	Test chart	P.1-3-19 P.1-3-23	U065: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U070: For copying originals from the DP.
12	Adjusting the center line (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U067 U072	ADJUST DATA ADJUST DATA2 DATA(simplex) DATA(duplex 1) DATA(duplex 2)	Test chart	P.1-3-21 P.1-3-25	U067: For copying an original placed on the contact glass To make an adjustment for rotate copying, select ADJUST DATA2. U072: For copying originals from the DP. To make an adjustment for duplex copying, select DATA(duplex 1) or DATA(duplex 2).
13	Adjusting the leading edge registration (scanning adjustment)		Original scan start timing	U066 U071	ADJUST DATA ADJUST DATA2 ADJUST DATA1	Test chart	P.1-3-20 P.1-3-24	U066: For copying an original placed on the contact glass To make an adjustment for rotate copying, select ADJUST DATA2. U071: For copying originals from the DP.
14	Adjusting the leading edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	B MARGIN B MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-72 P.1-3-73	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.
15	Adjusting the trailing edge margin (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	D MARGIN D MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-72 P.1-3-73	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.
16	Adjusting the left and right margins (scanning adjustment)		Adjusting the original scan data (image adjustment)	U403 U404	A MARGIN C MARGIN A MARGIN C MARGIN	Test chart	P.1-3-72 P.1-3-73	U403: For copying an original placed on the contact glass U404: For copying originals from the DP.

When maintenance item U076 (Adjusting the DP automatically) is run using the specified original (P/N 2AC68241),

the following adjustments are automatically made:

Adjusting the DP magnification (U070)

Adjusting the DP scanning timing (U071)

Adjusting the DP center line (U072)

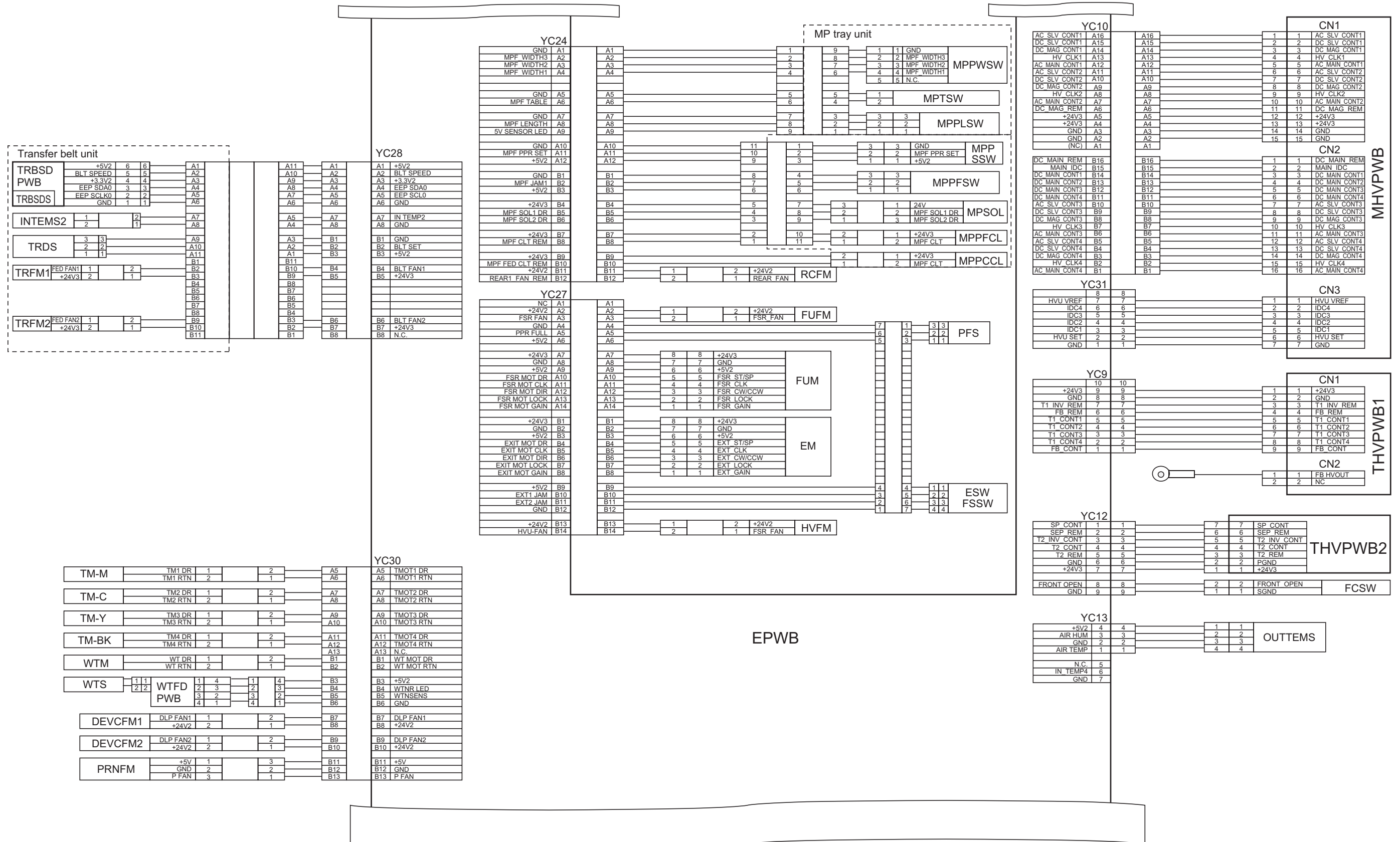
#### Image quality

Item	Specifications
100% magnification	Machine: $\pm 0.8\%$ Using DP: $\pm 1.5\%$
Enlargement/reduction	Machine: $\pm 1.0\%$ Using DP: $\pm 1.5\%$
Lateral squareness	Machine: $\pm 1.5$ mm/375 mm Using DP: $\pm 2.5$ mm/375 mm
Margins	A: 4.0 mm or less B: 4.0 mm or less C: 4.0 mm or less D: 4.0 mm or less
Leading edge registration	Cassette: $\pm 2.5$ mm MP tray: $\pm 2.5$ mm Duplex copying: $\pm 2.5$ mm
Skewed paper feed (left-right difference)	Cassette: 1.5 mm or less MP tray: 1.5 mm or less Duplex copying: 2.0 mm or less
Lateral image shifting	Cassette: $\pm 2.0$ mm MP tray: $\pm 2.0$ mm Duplex mode: $\pm 3.0$ mm

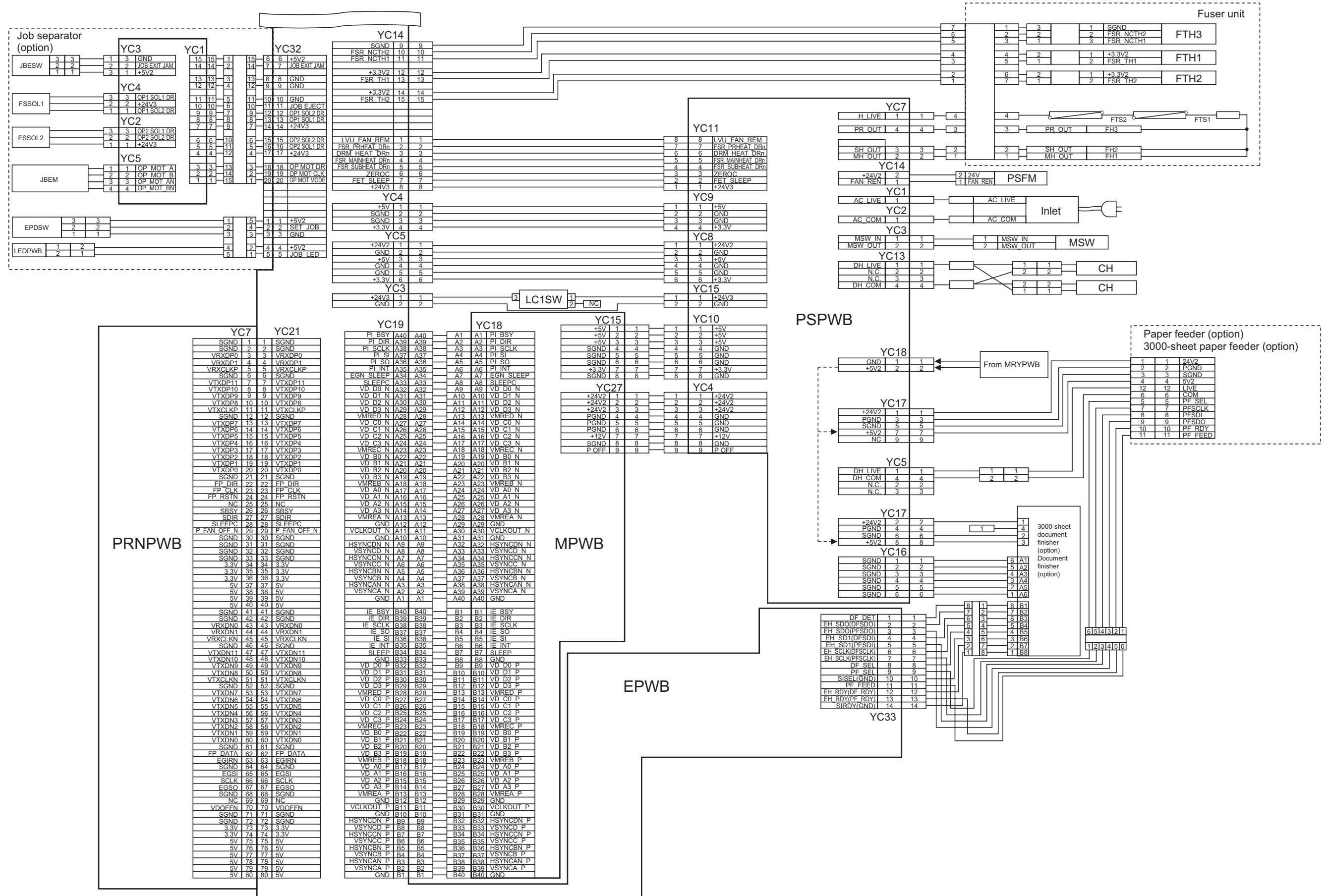




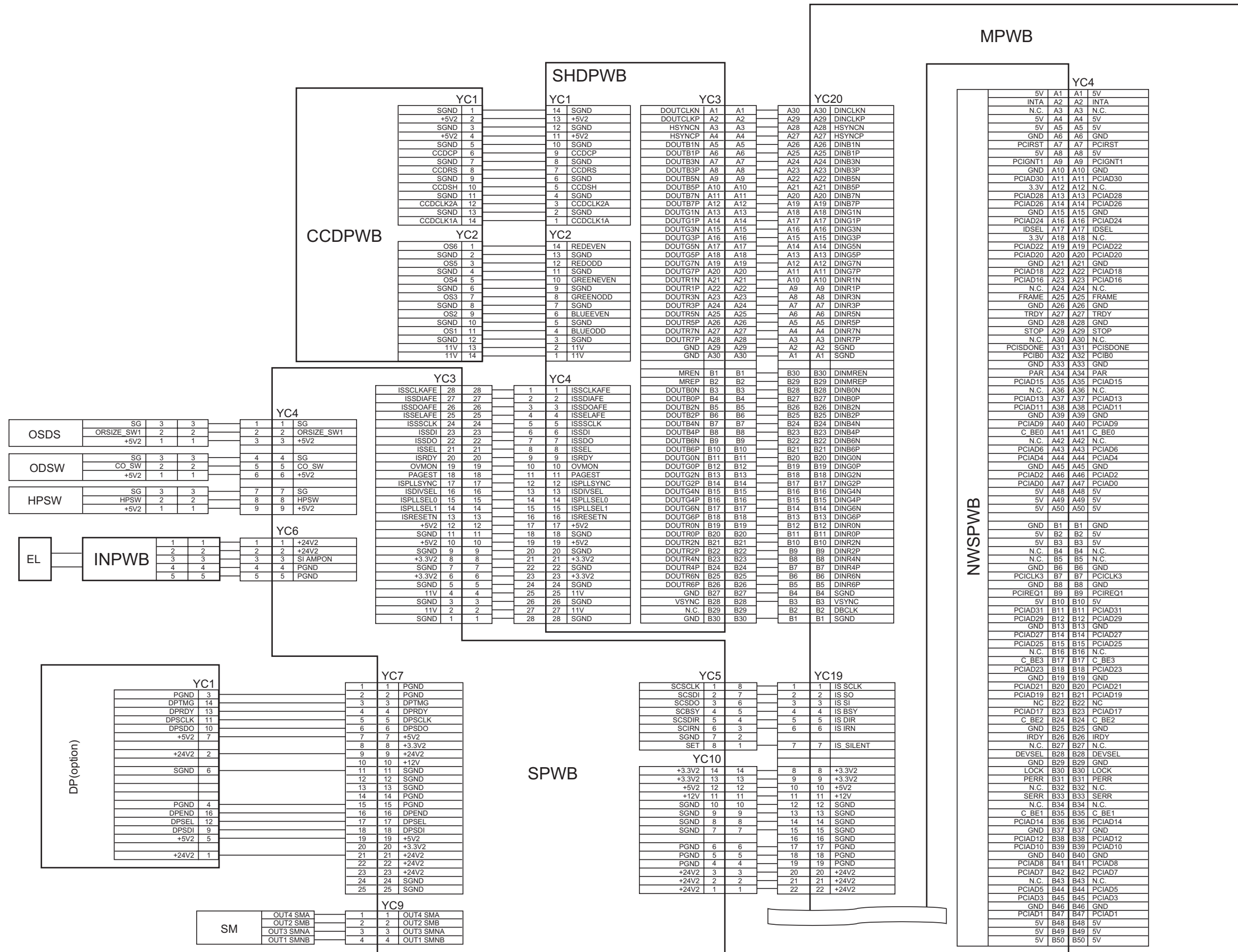
Wiring diagram No.2



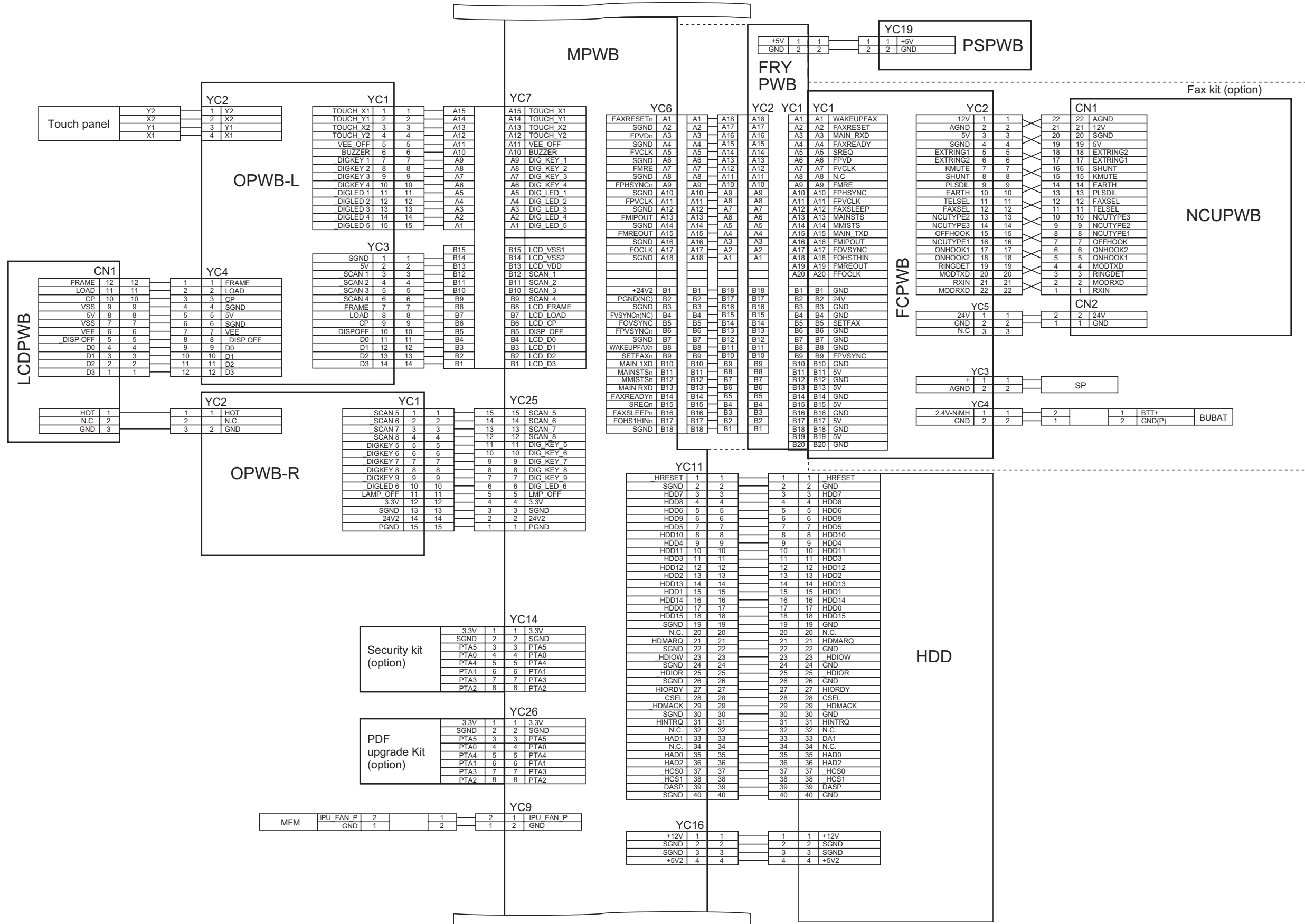
Wiring diagram No.3



Wiring diagram No.4



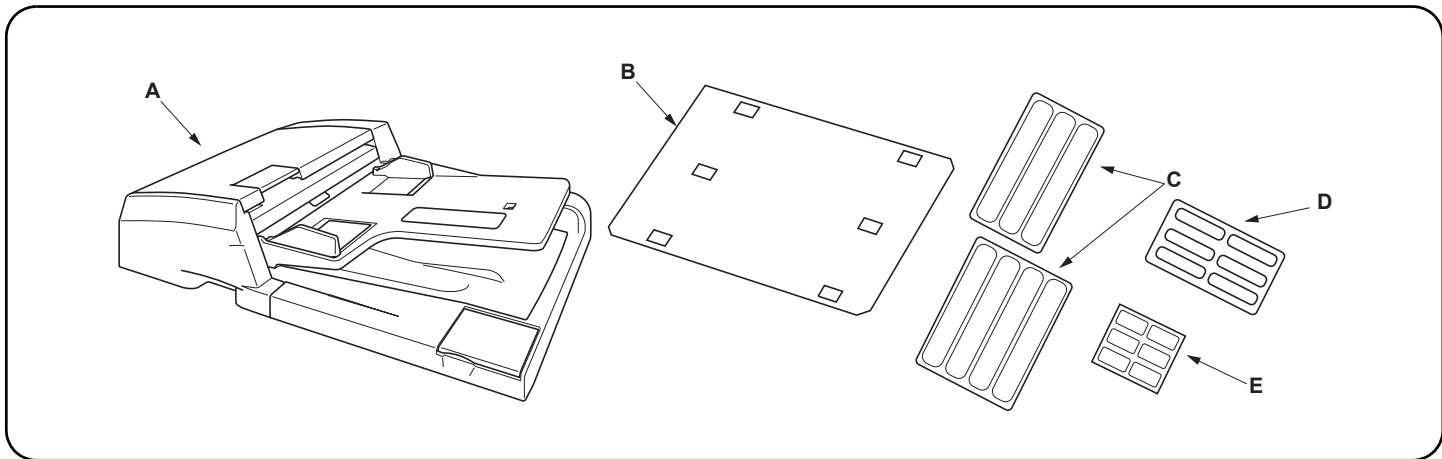
Wiring diagram No.5





# INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DOCUMENT PROCESSOR

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.  
Output: 24 V dc (426 VA max.)  
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cables.  
P/N: 303J946010



**English**

**Supplied parts**

A DP ..... 1

B Original mat ..... 1

C Label "Operation procedure" (except for 100 V models) ..... 2

D Caution label "Remove original!" (except for 100 V models) ..... 1

E Caution label "Original face up!" (except for 100 V models) ..... 1

**Installation Procedure**  
When installing the DP, be sure to turn the MFP power off and disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

**Français**

**Pièces fournies**

A DP ..... 1

B Plaque d'original ..... 1

C Étiquette relative à la procédure d'utilisation (sauf pour les modèles 100 V) ..... 2

D Étiquette d'avertissement relative au retrait de l'original (sauf pour les modèles 100 V).... 2

E Étiquette d'avertissement relative à l'orientation vers le haut de la face de l'original (sauf pour les modèles 100 V) .. 1

**Méthode d'installation**  
Lors de l'installation du DP, veiller à mettre l'interrupteur du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

**Español**

**Pièces suministradas**

A DP ..... 1

B Alfombrilla para originales ..... 1

C Etiqueta "Procedimiento operativo" (excepto para modelos de 100 V) ..... 2

D Etiqueta de precaución "Retire original" (excepto para los modelos de 100 V)..... 2

E Etiqueta de precaución "Original cara arriba" (excepto para los modelos de 100 V)..... 1

**Procedimiento de instalación**  
Cuando instale el DP, asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y desenchúfelo del tomacorriente de la pared.

**Deutsch**

**Gelieferte Teile**

A DP ..... 1

B Originalmatte ..... 1

C Schild "Funktionsanweisung" (außer 100 V-Modelle)..... 2

D Warnschild "Original entfernen" (außer 100 V-Modelle)..... 2

E Warnschild "Originalschriftseite nach oben" (außer 100 V-Modelle) ..... 1

**Installationsverfahren**  
Schalten Sie vor Installation des DP unbedingt den MFP-Hauptschalter aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Steckdose.

**Italiano**

**Parti fornite**

A DP ..... 1

B Tappetino originale ..... 1

C Etichetta "Procedura di funzionamento" (eccetto modelli 100 V)..... 2

D Etichetta di avvertimento "Rimuovere originale!" (eccetto modelli 100 V)..... 2

E Etichetta di avvertimento "Originale rivolto verso l'alto!" (eccetto modelli 100 V)..... 1

**Istruzioni per il montaggio**  
Spegner l'interruttore principale e sfilare la spina dell'MFP dalla presa prima di installare il DP.

**简体中文**

**附属部件**

A DP ..... 1

B 原稿垫 ..... 1

C 标签“操作步骤”(除 100V 型号)..... 2

D 注意标签“取出原稿!” (除 100V 型号)..... 1

E 注意标签“原稿正面朝上!” (除 100V 型号) ..... 1

**安装步骤**  
安装 DP 时, 请务必将 MFP 电源关闭, 并拔出电源插头再进行安装作业。

**日本語**

**付属品**

A DP 本体 ..... 1

B 原稿マット ..... 1

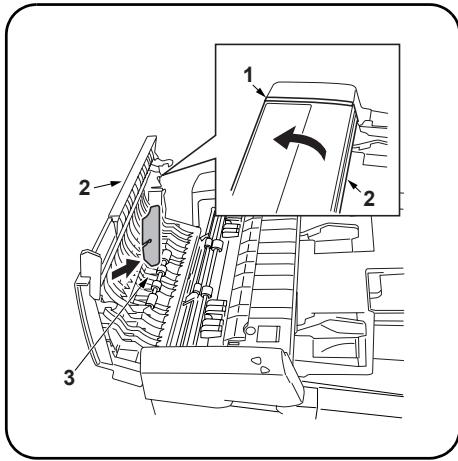
C 操作ラベル (100V 仕様以外) ..... 2

D 原稿忘れラベル (100V 仕様以外) ..... 1

E 原稿表向きラベル (100V 仕様以外) .... 1

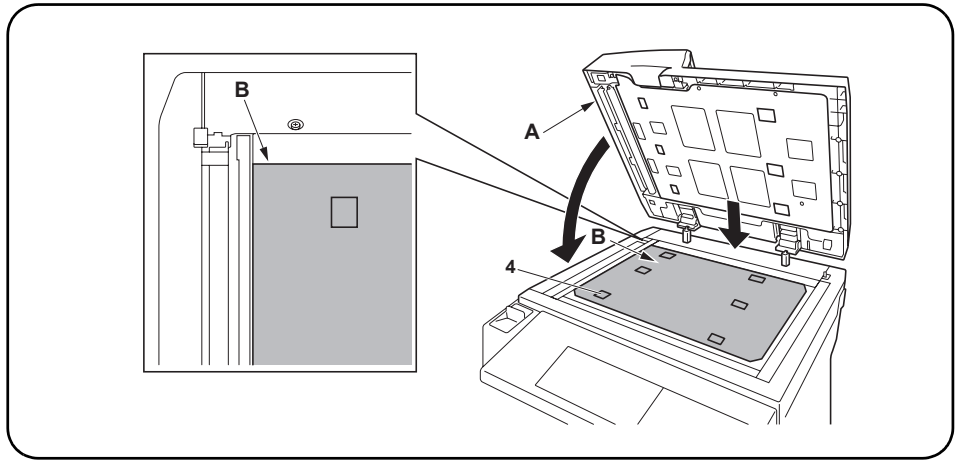
**取付手順**  
DP 本体を設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。





#### Remove fixing tape and spacer.

1. Remove the fixing tape (1) from the original feed unit cover of DP (A).
2. Open original feed unit cover (2).
3. Remove spacer (3).



#### Install the DP.

4. Insert DP (A) in the MFP.
5. Place original mat (B) with its Velcro (4) facing up over the contact glass.  
**Align non-chamfered corner of the original mat (B) with the inner left corner of the original instruction panel.**
6. Close DP (A) and attach original mat (B) onto it with Velcro.

#### Retirer la bande adhésive de fixation et l'entretoise.

1. Retirer la bande adhésive de fixation (1) du couvercle de l'unité d'alimentation d'original du DP (A).
2. Ouvrir le couvercle de l'unité d'alimentation d'original (2).
3. Retirer l'entretoise (3).

#### Installer le DP.

4. Insérer le DP (A) dans le MFP.
5. Placer la plaque d'original (B) sur la vitre d'exposition, en orientant les bandes Velcro (4) vers le haut.  
**Aligner le coin non chanfreiné de la plaque d'original (B) sur le coin intérieur gauche du panneau d'instructions de l'original.**
6. Abaisser le DP (A) et y fixer la plaque d'original (B) à l'aide des bandes Velcro.

#### Quite la cinta adhesiva y el espaciador.

1. Quite la cinta adhesiva (1) de la cubierta de la unidad de alimentación de originales del DP (A).
2. Abra la cubierta de la unidad de alimentación de originales (2).
3. Quite el espaciador (3).

#### Instale el DP.

4. Inserte el DP (A) en el MFP.
5. Coloque la alfombrilla para originales (B) con el velcro (4) mirando hacia arriba sobre el cristal de contacto.  
**Alinee la esquina no biselada de la alfombrilla para originales (B) con la esquina interior izquierda del panel de instrucciones del original.**
6. Cierre el DP (A) y fije la alfombrilla para originales (B) con el velcro.

#### Befestigungsband und Distanzstück entfernen.

1. Das Befestigungsband (1) von der Abdeckung der Originalzufuhreinheit des DP (A) abnehmen.
2. Die Abdeckung der Originalzufuhreinheit (2) öffnen.
3. Das Distanzstück (3) entfernen.

#### Installieren des DP.

4. DP (A) in den MFP einsetzen.
5. Die Originalmatte (B) mit dem Klettband (4) nach oben über das Kontaktglas legen.  
**Die nicht abgeschrägten Kanten der Originalmatte (B) mit der linken Innenkante des Originalbedienfelds ausrichten.**
6. Den DP (A) schließen und die Originalmatte (B) mit dem Klettband auf ihm befestigen.

#### Rimozione del nastro di fissaggio e del distanziatore.

1. Rimuovere il nastro di fissaggio (1) dal coperchio dell'unità di alimentazione originale del DP (A).
2. Aprire il coperchio dell'unità di alimentazione originale (2).
3. Rimuovere il distanziatore (3).

#### Montaggio del DP.

4. Inserire il DP (A) nell'MFP.
5. Posizionare il tappetino originale (B) con il velcro (4) rivolto verso l'alto sul vetro di appoggio.  
**Allineare l'angolo non smussato del tappetino originale (B) all'angolo interno sinistro del pannello di controllo originale.**
6. Chiudere il DP (A) e applicarvi il tappetino originale (B) con il velcro.

#### 拆下固定胶带和垫圈

1. 从 DP(A) 的原稿送稿组件盖板上拆下固定胶带 (1)。
2. 打开原稿送稿组件盖板 (2)。
3. 拆下垫圈 (3)。

#### 安装 DP。

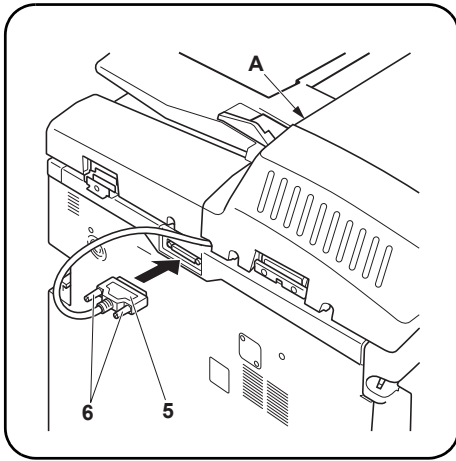
4. 将 DP(A) 插入 MFP。
5. 将原稿垫 (B) 放置在压片玻璃上, 使维可牢尼龙搭扣 (4) 向上。  
**将原稿垫 (B) 的非倒角对准原稿指示板的内部左角。**
6. 关闭 DP(A) 并用维可牢尼龙搭扣将原稿垫 (B) 安装在它上面。

#### 固定テープ/スペーサーの取り外し

1. DP 本体 (A) の原稿送り装置カバーの固定テープ (1) を剥がす。
2. 原稿送り装置カバー (2) を開く。
3. スペーサー (3) を取り除く。

#### DP 本体の取り付け

4. DP 本体 (A) を MFP 本体に差し込む。
5. 原稿マット (B) を、マジックテープ (4) を上に向けてコンタクトガラス上に置く。  
**原稿マット (B) は面カットされていない角を原稿指示板の左奥に合わせる。**
6. DP 本体 (A) を下ろし、原稿マット (B) を DP 本体 (A) に貼り付ける。

**Connect the signal lines.**

7. Connect signal line (5) of DP (A) to the MFP and turn fixing knobs (6) at the both sides of the connector clockwise to secure the line.

---

**Connecter les circuits de transmission.**

7. Connecter le circuit de transmission (5) du DP (A) au MFP et tourner les boutons de fixation (6) de chaque côté du connecteur dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre pour fixer le circuit.

---

**Conecte las líneas de señal.**

7. Conecte la línea de señal (5) del DP (A) al MFP y gire los pomos de fijación (6) de ambos lados del conector en sentido horario para asegurar la línea.

---

**Anschließen der Signalleitungen.**

7. Die Signalleitung (5) des DP (A) am MFP anschließen und die Befestigungshandräder (6) an beiden Seiten des Anschlusses nach rechts drehen, um die Leitung zu befestigen.

---

**Connessione delle linee dei segnali.**

7. Connettere la linea del segnale (5) del DP (A) all'MFP e ruotare le rotelle di fissaggio (6) su entrambi i lati del connettore in senso orario, fissando così la linea.

---

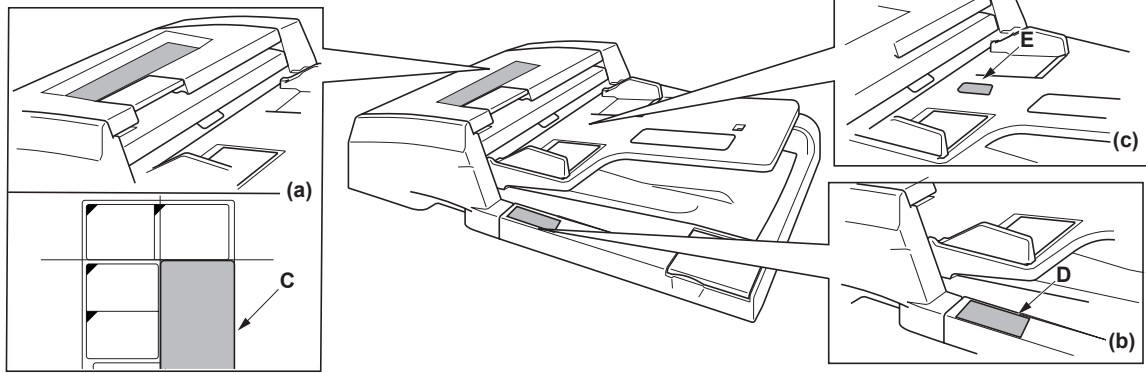
**连接信号线。**

7. 将 DP(A) 的信号线 (5) 连接到 MFP，同时顺时针旋转连接器两侧的固定旋钮 (6) 将信号线固定。

---

**信号線の接続**

7. DP 本体 (A) の信号線 (5) を MFP 本体に接続し、コネクタ両側の固定ツマミ (6) を右へ回し固定する。



**Adhere the label "Operation procedure" (except for 100 V models)**

8. Clean the label surface of the original feed unit cover with alcohol.
9. Adhere label "Operation procedure" (C) of which the language corresponding to the destination of the MFP on to the existing label of the original feed unit cover. Figure (a)

**Adhere the caution label "Remove original!" (except for 100 V models)**

10. Clean the label surface of the original delivery table with alcohol.
11. Adhere caution label "Remove original!" (D) of which the language corresponding to the destination of the MFP on to the label of the original delivery table. Figure (b)

**Adhere the caution label "Original face up!" (except for 100 V models)**

12. Clean the label on the original table with alcohol.
13. Adhere caution label "Original face up!" (E) of which the language corresponding to the destination of MFP on to the label of the original table. Figure (c)

**Coller l'étiquette relative à la procédure d'utilisation (sauf pour les modèles 100 V)**

8. Nettoyer la surface de l'étiquette du couvercle de l'unité d'alimentation d'original avec de l'alcool.
9. Coller l'étiquette relative à la procédure d'utilisation (C) dans la langue correspondant à la destination du MFP sur l'étiquette déjà apposée sur le couvercle de l'unité d'alimentation d'original. Figure (a)

**Coller l'étiquette d'avertissement relative au retrait de l'original (sauf pour les modèles 100 V)**

10. Nettoyer la surface de l'étiquette du plateau de sortie d'original avec de l'alcool.
11. Coller l'étiquette d'avertissement relative au retrait de l'original (D) dans la langue correspondant à la destination du MFP sur l'étiquette du plateau de sortie d'original. Figure (b)

**Coller l'étiquette d'avertissement relative à l'orientation vers le haut de la face de l'original (sauf pour les modèles 100 V)**

12. Nettoyer l'étiquette figurant sur le plateau d'original avec de l'alcool.
13. Coller l'étiquette d'avertissement relative à l'orientation vers le haut de la face de l'original (E) dans la langue correspondant à la destination du MFP sur l'étiquette du plateau d'original. Figure (c)

**Pegue la etiqueta "Procedimiento operativo" (excepto para los modelos de 100 V)**

8. Limpie con alcohol la superficie de etiquetas de la cubierta de la unidad de alimentación de originales.
9. Pegue la etiqueta "Procedimiento operativo" (C) del idioma correspondiente al destino del MFP sobre la etiqueta existente de la cubierta de la unidad de alimentación de originales. Figura (a)

**Pegue la etiqueta de precaución "Retirar original" (excepto para los modelos de 100 V)**

10. Limpie con alcohol la superficie de etiquetas de la cubierta de originales.
11. Pegue la etiqueta de precaución "Retirar original" (D) del idioma correspondiente al destino del MFP sobre la etiqueta de la cubierta de originales. Figura (b)

**Pegue la etiqueta de precaución "Original cara arriba" (excepto para los modelos de 100 V)**

12. Limpie con alcohol la etiqueta de la cubierta de originales.
13. Pegue la etiqueta de precaución "Original cara arriba" (E) del idioma correspondiente al destino del MFP sobre la etiqueta de la cubierta de originales. Figura (c)

**Anbringen des Schildes "Funktionsanweisung" (außer 100 V-Modelle)**

8. Die Schildoberfläche an der Abdeckung der Originalzufuhreinheit mit Alkohol reinigen.
9. Das Schild "Funktionsanweisung" (C) in der Sprache des Bestimmungsortes des MFP auf das bestehende Schild an der Abdeckung der Originalzufuhreinheit aufkleben. Abbildung (a)

**Anbringen des Warnschildes "Original entfernen" (außer 100 V-Modelle)**

10. Die Schildoberfläche am Originalzufuhrschacht mit Alkohol reinigen.
11. Das Warnschild "Original entfernen" (D) in der Sprache des Bestimmungsortes des MFP auf das bestehende Schild am Originalzufuhrschacht aufkleben. Abbildung (b)

**Anbringen des Warnschildes "Originalschrifftseite nach oben" (außer 100 V-Modelle)**

12. Die Schildoberfläche am Originalzufuhrschacht mit Alkohol reinigen.
13. Das Warnschild "Originalschrifftseite nach oben" (E) in der Sprache des Bestimmungsortes des MFP auf das bestehende Schild am Originalzufuhrschacht aufkleben. Abbildung (c)

**Applicazione dell'etichetta "Procedura di funzionamento" (eccetto modelli 100 V)**

8. Pulire con alcool la superficie dell'etichetta sul coperchio dell'unità di alimentazione originale.
9. Applicare l'etichetta "Procedura di funzionamento" (C) nella lingua corrispondente alla destinazione dell'MFP sopra l'etichetta del coperchio dell'unità di alimentazione originale. Figura (a)

**Applicazione dell'etichetta di avvertimento "Rimuovere originale!" (eccetto modelli 100 V)**

10. Pulire con alcool la superficie dell'etichetta sul piano di ricevimento originale.
11. Applicare l'etichetta di avvertimento "Rimuovere originale!" (D) nella lingua corrispondente alla destinazione dell'MFP sopra l'etichetta del piano di ricevimento originale. Figura (b)

**Applicazione dell'etichetta di avvertimento "Originale rivolto verso l'alto!" (eccetto modelli 100 V)**

12. Pulire con alcool l'etichetta sul piano originale.
13. Applicare l'etichetta di avvertimento "Originale rivolto verso l'alto!" (E) nella lingua corrispondente alla destinazione dell'MFP sopra l'etichetta del piano originale. Figura (c)

**粘貼标签“操作步骤”(除 100V 型号)**

8. 用酒精清洁原稿送稿组件盖板的标签表面。
9. 将语言与 MFP 目标对应的标签“操作步骤”(C) 粘贴到原稿送稿组件盖板的标签上。图 (a)

**粘貼注意标签“取出原稿!”(除 100V 型号)**

10. 用酒精清洁原稿发送台的标签表面。
11. 将语言与 MFP 目标对应的注意标签“取出原稿!”(D) 粘贴到原稿发送台的标签上。图 (b)

**粘貼注意标签“原稿正面朝上!”(除 100V 型号)**

12. 用酒精清洁原稿台的标签。
13. 将语言与 MFP 目标对应的注意标签“原稿正面朝上!”(E) 粘贴到原稿台的标签上。图 (c)

**操作ラベルの貼り付け (100V 仕様以外)**

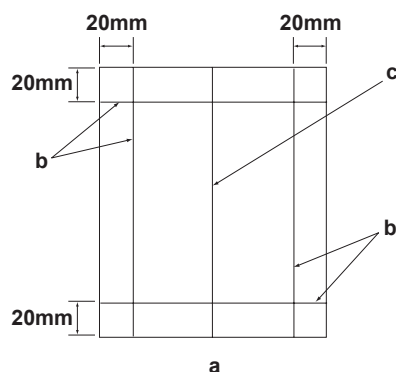
8. 原稿送り装置カバーのラベル上をアルコール清掃する。
9. MFP 本体を使用する国の言語に合った操作ラベル (C) をラベルの上から貼り付ける。図 (a)

**原稿忘れラベルの貼り付け (100V 仕様以外)**

10. 原稿排紙テーブルのラベル上をアルコール清掃する。
11. MFP 本体を使用する国の言語に合った原稿忘れラベル (D) をラベルの上に貼り付ける。図 (b)

**原稿表向きラベルの貼り付け (100V 仕様以外)**

12. 原稿テーブルのラベル上をアルコール清掃する。
13. MFP 本体を使用する国の言語に合った原稿忘れラベル (E) をラベルの上に貼り付ける。図 (c)



#### [Operation check]

1. To check the machine operation, prepare original (a) where 4 lines (b) are drawn 20 mm from the edges of the A3 sheet and 1 line (c) is drawn at its center.
2. Connect the power plug of the MFP into the wall outlet and turn the main power on.
3. Set the original (a) on the DP and perform a test copy to check the operation and the copy example.
4. Compare original (a) with the copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, perform the following adjustments according to the type of the gap.

**Check images of the DP after checking and adjusting images of the MFP. For details, see the service manual.**

#### [Vérification du fonctionnement]

1. Pour vérifier le bon fonctionnement de l'appareil, préparer un original (a) sur lequel sont tracées 4 lignes (b) à 20 mm des bords de la feuille A3 et 1 ligne (c) en son axe.
2. Brancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP sur la prise murale et mettre l'appareil sous tension.
3. Placer l'original (a) sur le DP et effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier le fonctionnement et l'exemple de copie.
4. Comparer l'original (a) avec l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, effectuer les réglages suivants en fonction du type d'écart.

**Vérifier les images du DP après avoir contrôlé et réglé les images du MFP. Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.**

#### [Verifique el funcionamiento]

1. Para comprobar el funcionamiento del aparato, prepare un original (a) que contenga 4 líneas (b) dibujadas a 20 mm de los bordes de la hoja A3 y 1 línea (c) dibujada en el centro.
2. Conecte el enchufe eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
3. Coloque el original (a) en el DP y haga una copia de prueba para verificar el funcionamiento y el ejemplo de copia.
4. Compare el original (a) con el ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, realice los siguientes ajustes según el tipo de separación.

**Compruebe las imágenes del DP después de comprobar y ajustar las imágenes del MFP. Para más detalles, lea el manual de servicio.**

#### [Funktionsprüfung]

1. Zum Prüfen der Gerätefunktion das Original (a) vorbereiten, auf das 4 Linien (b) 20 mm von den Kanten des A3-Blattes und 1 Linie (c) in der Mitte gezeichnet sind.
2. Den Netzstecker am MFP in die Steckdose stecken und den Strom einschalten.
3. Das Original (a) auf den DP legen und eine Testkopie erstellen, um die Funktion und das Kopierbeispiel zu prüfen.
4. Das Original (a) mit dem Kopierbeispiel vergleichen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, die folgenden Einstellungen gemäß dem Abstandstyp durchführen.

**Die Bilder des DP nach dem Prüfen und Einstellen der Bilder des MFP prüfen. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.**

#### [Verifica del funzionamento]

1. Per verificare il funzionamento della macchina, preparare l'originale (a) tirando 4 linee (b) a 20 mm dai bordi del foglio A3 e una linea (c) al centro.
2. Inserire la spina dell'alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa a muro, quindi posizionare l'interruttore principale su On.
3. Posizionare l'originale (a) sul DP ed eseguire una copia di prova per verificare il funzionamento e l'esempio di copia.
4. Confrontare l'originale (a) con l'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, eseguire le seguenti regolazioni in funzione del tipo di scostamento.

**Controllare le immagini del DP dopo avere effettuato i controlli e le regolazioni delle immagini sull'MFP. Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.**

#### [操作確認]

1. 若要检查机器操作，准备一张 A3 原稿 (a)，在距离纸张边缘 20mm 画出 4 条线 (b) 并在原稿中心画出 1 条线 (c)。
2. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入墙壁插座并打开主电源。
3. 在 DP 上设定原稿 (a) 并进行测试复印，检查操作和复印样本。
4. 用复印样本对比原稿 (a)。如果间隙超过标准值，根据间隙类型进行下列调整。

**检查和调整 MFP 图像后检查 DP 的图像。有关详细信息，请参见维修手册。**

#### [動作確認]

1. A3 サイズ用紙の端から 20mm の位置に線 (b)4 本と、用紙の中心に線 (c)1 本を引いた、動作確認用の原稿 (a) を用意する。
2. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
3. 原稿 (a) を DP 本体にセットし、テストコピーを行い、動作およびコピーサンプルを確認する。
4. 原稿 (a) とコピーサンプルを比較し、基準値以上のずれがある場合、ずれ方に応じて調整を行う。

**MFP 本体の画像確認及び調整を行ってから DP 本体の画像確認を行うこと。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。**

Be sure to adjust in the following order. If not, the adjustment cannot be performed correctly.

- For the adjustment of DP oblique position, see page 7. <Reference value> Single copying: within  $\pm 3$  mm; Duplex copying: within  $\pm 4$  mm
  - For the adjustment of DP original size, see page 9. <Reference value> within  $\pm 1.5$  %
  - For the adjustment of DP leading edge timing, see page 11. <Reference value> within  $\pm 2.5$  mm
  - For the adjustment of DP original center line, see page 13. <Reference value> Single copying:  $\pm 2$  mm; Duplex copying: within  $\pm 3$  mm
- When using the DP auto adjusting original, automatic adjustments excluding the DP oblique position adjustment can be performed.**
- For the adjustments using DP auto adjusting original, see page 15.

Veiller à effectuer les réglages dans l'ordre suivant. Si ce n'est pas le cas, ils ne seront pas effectués correctement.

- Pour le réglage de la position oblique du DP, voir la page 7. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto :  $\pm 3$  mm ; Copie recto-verso :  $\pm 4$  mm
  - Pour le réglage du format d'original du DP, voir la page 9. <Valeur de référence>  $\pm 1,5$  %
  - Pour le réglage de la synchronisation du bord avant du DP, voir la page 11. <Valeur de référence>  $\pm 2,5$  mm
  - Pour le réglage de l'axe de l'original du DP, voir la page 13. <Valeur de référence> Copie recto :  $\pm 2$  mm ; Copie recto-verso :  $\pm 3$  mm
- En cas d'utilisation de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP, les réglages automatiques, sauf le réglage de la position oblique du DP, peuvent être effectués.**
- Pour les réglages effectués à l'aide de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP, voir la page 15.

Haga el ajuste en el orden siguiente. De lo contrario, el ajuste no será correcto.

- Para el ajuste de la posición oblicua del DP, consulte la página 7. <Valor de referencia> Copiado por una cara: dentro de  $\pm 3$  mm; copiado dúplex: dentro de  $\pm 4$  mm
  - Para el ajuste del tamaño de original del DP, consulte la página 9. <Valor de referencia> dentro de  $\pm 1,5$  %
  - Para el ajuste de la sincronización de extremo guía del DP, consulte la página 11. <Valor de referencia> dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm
  - Para el ajuste de la línea de centro del original del DP, consulte la página 13. <Valor de referencia> Copiado por una cara:  $\pm 2$  mm; copiado dúplex: dentro de  $\pm 3$  mm
- Cuando se usa el original de ajuste automático del DP, se pueden realizar los ajustes automáticos, a excepción del ajuste de la posición oblicua del DP.**
- Para los ajustes que usan el original de ajuste automático del DP, consulte la página 15.

Die Einstellungen müssen in der folgenden Reihenfolge vorgenommen werden. Sonst kann die Einstellung nicht richtig ausgeführt werden.

- Einzelheiten zur Einstellung der Schräglage des DP siehe Seite 7. <Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 3$  mm; Duplexkopie: Innerhalb  $\pm 4$  mm
  - Einzelheiten zur Einstellung der Originalgröße des DP siehe Seite 9. <Bezugswert> innerhalb 1,5 %
  - Einzelheiten zur Einstellung des Vorderkantentaktes des DP siehe Seite 11. <Bezugswert> innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm
  - Einzelheiten zur Einstellung der Originalmittellinie des DP siehe Seite 13. <Bezugswert> Einzelkopie:  $\pm 2$  mm; Duplexkopie: innerhalb  $\pm 3$  mm
- Bei der Verwendung der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP können automatische Einstellungen, außer der Einstellung der Schräglage des DP, ausgeführt werden.**
- Einzelheiten zu den Einstellungen mit der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP siehe Seite 15.

Accertarsi di eseguire le regolazioni in questa sequenza: in caso contrario, la regolazione non può essere effettuata correttamente.

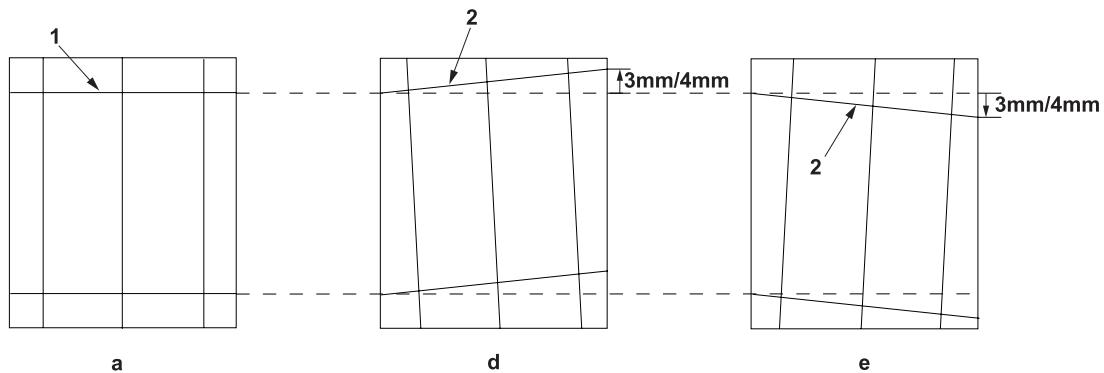
- Per la regolazione della posizione obliqua del DP, vedere pagina 7. <Valore di riferimento> Copia singola: tolleranza  $\pm 3$  mm; Copia duplex: tolleranza  $\pm 4$  mm
  - Per la regolazione delle dimensioni dell'originale DP, vedere pagina 9. <Valore di riferimento> tolleranza  $\pm 1,5$  %
  - Per la regolazione della fasatura del bordo di entrata del DP, vedere pagina 11. <Valore di riferimento> tolleranza  $\pm 2,5$  mm
  - Per la regolazione della linea centrale del DP, vedere pagina 13. <Valore di riferimento> Copia singola:  $\pm 2$  mm; Copia duplex: tolleranza  $\pm 3$  mm
- Se si utilizza l'autoregolazione originale DP, è possibile eseguire regolazioni automatiche, eccetto la regolazione della posizione obliqua del DP.**
- Per le regolazioni con l'autoregolazione originale DP, vedere pagina 15.

请务必按下列顺序调整。如果未按照下列顺序，则无法正确进行调整。

- 有关 DP 倾斜位置的调整，请参见第 7 页。 <标准值> 单面复印： $\pm 3$  mm 内，双面复印： $\pm 4$  mm 内
  - 有关 DP 原稿尺寸的调整，请参见第 9 页。 <标准值>  $\pm 1.5$  % 内
  - 有关 DP 前边定时的调整，请参见第 11 页。 <标准值>  $\pm 2.5$  mm 内
  - 有关 DP 原稿中心线的调整，请参见第 13 页。 <标准值> 单面复印： $\pm 2$  mm，双面复印： $\pm 3$  mm 内
- 使用文档处理器自动调整原稿时，可进行不包括文档处理器倾斜位置调整的自动调整。**
- 有关使用文档处理器自动调整原稿的调整，请参见第 14 页。

必ず下記の順序で調整を行うこと。順序通りに調整を行わない場合、正しい調整ができない。

- DP 斜め確認 7 ページ <基準値> 片面： $\pm 3$ mm 以内 両面： $\pm 4$ mm 以内
  - DP 等倍度確認 9 ページ <基準値>  $\pm 1.5$  % 以内
  - DP 先端タイミング確認 11 ページ <基準値>  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内
  - DP 原稿センター位置確認 13 ページ <基準値> 片面： $\pm 2$ mm 以内 両面： $\pm 3$ mm 以内
- DP 自動調整原稿を使用すると、DP 斜め調整以外の自動調整が行える。**
- DP 自動調整原稿による調整 15 ページ



#### [Checking DP oblique position]

1. Check the horizontal gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example positions. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.

- <Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 3$  mm.  
For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 4$  mm.

#### [Vérification de la position oblique du DP]

1. Vérifier l'écart horizontal entre la position de la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et celle de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.

- <Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 3$  mm.  
Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 4$  mm.

#### [Verificación de la posición oblicua del DP]

1. Compruebe la separación horizontal entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) de las posiciones del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.

- <Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 3$  mm.  
Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 4$  mm.

#### [Prüfen der Schräglage des DP]

1. Den horizontalen Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) der Kopierbeispielspositionen prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.

- <Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 3$  mm liegen.  
Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 4$  mm liegen.

#### [Verifica della posizione obliqua del DP]

1. Verificare lo scostamento orizzontale fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) delle posizioni dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.

- <Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 3$  mm.  
Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 4$  mm.

#### [ 检查 DP 倾斜位置 ]

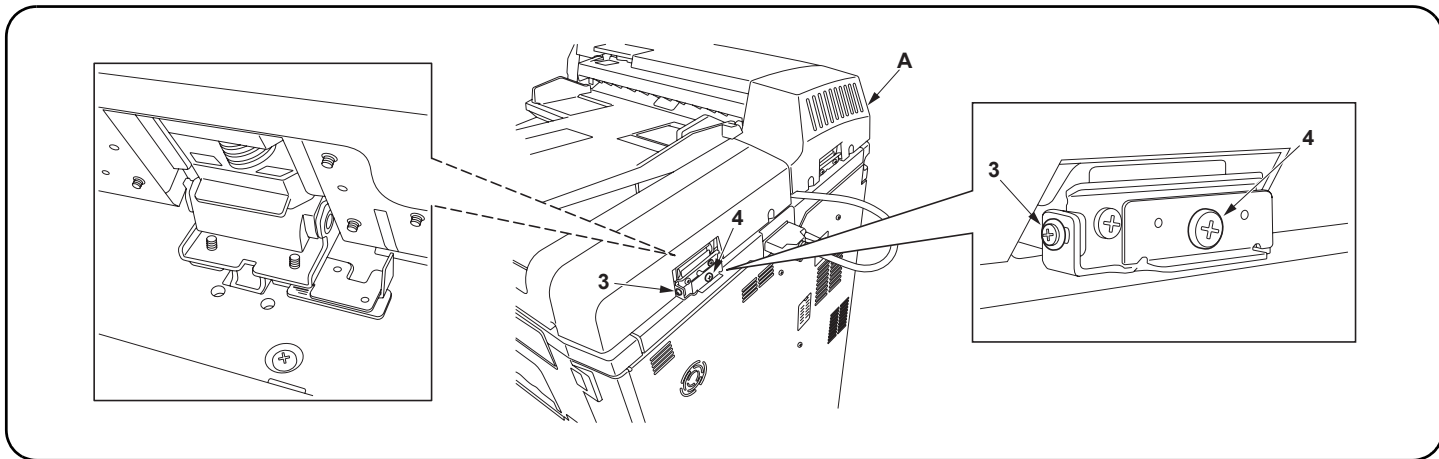
1. 检查原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本位置上的线 (2) 之间的水平间隙。如果间隙超过标准值，按照下列步骤调整间隙。

- < 标准值 > 对于单面复印：线 (2) 的水平间隙在  $\pm 3$  mm 内。  
对于双面复印：线 (2) 的水平间隙在  $\pm 4$  mm 内。

#### [DP 斜め確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) の左右のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。

- < 基準値 > 片面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ： $\pm 3$ mm 以内  
両面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ： $\pm 4$ mm 以内



### Adjusting the DP oblique position.

1. Turn screw (3) at the side of the right hinge and turn adjusting screw (4) at the rear side of the right hinge to adjust the DP position.  
For copy example (d): Turn the adjusting screw clockwise and move the DP to the inner side.  
For copy example (e): Turn the adjusting screw counterclockwise and move the DP to the front side.  
Change per scale: Approx. 1 mm

2. Perform a test copy.
3. Repeat the steps above until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the following reference values.  
<Reference value> For single copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 3$  mm.  
For duplex copying: The horizontal gap of line (2) should be within  $\pm 4$  mm.
4. After adjustment is completed, retighten screws (3) that have been loosened in step 1.

### Réglage de la position oblique du DP.

1. Tourner la vis (3) sur le côté de la charnière droite ainsi que la vis de réglage (4) à l'arrière de la charnière droite pour régler la position du DP.  
Pour l'exemple de copie (d) : Tourner la vis de réglage dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre et déplacer le DP vers l'intérieur.  
Pour l'exemple de copie (e) : Tourner la vis de réglage dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre et déplacer le DP vers l'avant.  
Changement par graduation d'échelle : environ 1 mm

2. Effectuer une copie de test.
3. Répéter les étapes ci-dessus jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique les valeurs de référence suivantes.  
<Valeur de référence> Pour la copie recto : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 3$  mm.  
Pour la copie recto-verso : l'écart horizontal de la ligne (2) doit être de  $\pm 4$  mm.
4. Une fois le réglage effectué, resserrer les vis (3) desserrées à l'étape 1.

### Ajuste de la posición oblicua del DP.

1. Gire el tornillo (3) en el lado de la bisagra derecha y el tornillo de ajuste (4) en el lado trasero de la bisagra derecha para ajustar la posición del DP.  
Para el ejemplo de copia (d): gire el tornillo de ajuste en sentido horario y mueva el DP al lado interno.  
Para el ejemplo de copia (e): gire el tornillo de ajuste en sentido antihorario y mueva el DP al lado frontal.  
Cambio por escala: aprox. 1 mm

2. Haga una copia de prueba.
3. Repita los pasos anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente los siguientes valores de referencia.  
<Valor de referencia> Para el copiado por una cara: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 3$  mm.  
Para el copiado dúplex: la separación horizontal de la línea (2) debe estar dentro de  $\pm 4$  mm.
4. Una vez hecho el ajuste, vuelva a apretar los tornillos (3) que ha aflojado en el paso 1.

### Einstellen der Schräglage des DP

1. Schraube (3) an der Seite des rechten Scharniers drehen und die Einstellschraube (4) hinten am rechten Scharnier drehen, um die DP-Position einzustellen.  
Kopierbeispiel (d): Die Einstellschraube nach rechts drehen und den DP nach innen bewegen.  
Kopierbeispiel (e): Die Einstellschraube nach links drehen und den DP nach vorne bewegen.  
Änderung pro Maßstab: Ungefähr 1 mm

2. Eine Testkopie erstellen.
3. Die obigen Schritte wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels die folgenden Bezugswerte aufweist.  
<Bezugswert> Einzelkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 3$  mm liegen.  
Duplexkopie: Der horizontale Abstand der Linie (2) sollte innerhalb von  $\pm 4$  mm liegen.
4. Nach der Einstellung die in Schritt 1 gelösten Schrauben (3) wieder anziehen.

### Regolazione della posizione obliqua del DP.

1. Ruotare la vite (3) a lato della cerniera destra e ruotare la vite di regolazione (4) sul lato posteriore della cerniera destra per regolare la posizione del DP.  
Per l'esempio di copia (d): ruotare la vite di regolazione in senso orario e spostare il DP verso l'interno.  
Per l'esempio di copia (e): ruotare la vite di regolazione in senso antiorario e spostare il DP in avanti.  
Modifica per scala: circa 1 mm

2. Eseguire una copia di prova.
3. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento seguenti.  
<Valore di riferimento> Per la copia singola: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 3$  mm.  
Per la copia duplex: lo scostamento orizzontale della linea (2) deve limitarsi a  $\pm 4$  mm.
4. Una volta conclusa la regolazione, serrare nuovamente le viti (3) che erano state allentate al Punto 1.

### 調整 DP 傾斜位置。

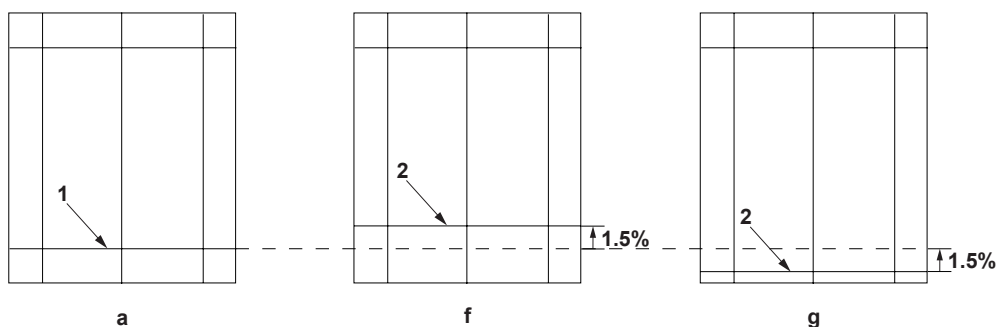
1. 旋转右部铰链侧部的螺钉 (3)，然后旋转右部铰链后部的调整螺钉 (4) 以调整 DP 位置。  
对于复印样本 (d)：顺时针旋转调整螺钉并将文档处理器移动到内侧。  
对于复印样本 (e)：逆时针旋转调整螺钉并将文档处理器移动到正面。  
按比例尺的更改量：约 1 mm

2. 进行测试复印。
3. 重复上述步骤直到复印样本的线 (2) 的间隙显示下列标准值。  
<标准值> 对于单面复印：线 (2) 的水平间隙在  $\pm 3$  mm 内。  
对于双面复印：线 (2) 的水平间隙在  $\pm 4$  mm 内。
4. 调整完成后，重新拧紧在步骤 1 中松开的螺钉 (3)。

### DP 斜め調整

1. 右ヒンジ横側のビス (3) を緩め、右ヒンジ後側の調整ビス (4) を回し、DP 本体の位置を調整する。  
コピーサンプル (d) の場合：調整ビスを右に回し、DP 本体を奥へ動かす  
コピーサンプル (e) の場合：調整ビスを左に回し、DP 本体を手前へ動かす  
1 目盛り当たりの変化量：約 1mm

2. テストコピーを行う。
3. コピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準値内になるまで、調整を繰り返す。  
<基準値> 片面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ： $\pm 3$ mm 以内  
両面の場合、線 (2) の左右ずれ： $\pm 4$ mm 以内
4. 調整終了後、手順 1 で緩めたビス (3) を締め付ける。



#### [Checking DP original size]

1. Check the gap between line (1) of original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.  
<Reference value> Vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 1.5\%$

#### Adjusting DP original size.

1. Set the maintenance mode U070, and adjust the CONVEY SPEED (sub-scan direction).

#### [Vérification du format d'original du DP]

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.  
<Valeur de référence> Écart vertical de la ligne (2) :  $\pm 1,5\%$

#### Réglage du format d'original du DP.

1. Exécuter le mode d'entretien U070 et régler CONVEY SPEED (vitesse d'acheminement) (direction du balayage secondaire).

#### [Verificación del tamaño de original del DP]

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.  
<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

#### Ajuste del tamaño de original del DP.

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento U070, y ajuste CONVEY SPEED (velocidad de transporte) (dirección de exploración secundaria).

#### [Prüfen der Originalgröße des DP]

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.  
<Bezugswert> Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

#### Einstellen der Originalgröße des DP

1. Den Wartungsmodus U070 einstellen, und die CONVEY SPEED (BEFÖRDERUNGSGESCHWINDIGKEIT) (Subscanrichtung) einstellen.

#### [Verifica delle dimensioni dell'originale DP]

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) dell'originale (a) e la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.  
<Valore di riferimento> Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra  $\pm 1,5\%$

#### Regolazione delle dimensioni dell'originale DP.

1. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U070 e regolare CONVEY SPEED (VELOCITÀ TRASFERIMENTO) (orientamento della scansione ausiliaria).

#### [ 检查 DP 原稿尺寸 ]

1. 检查原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 之间的间隙。如果间隙超过标准值, 按照下列步骤调整间隙。  
<标准值> 线 (2) 的垂直间隙:  $\pm 1.5\%$  内

#### 调整 DP 原稿尺寸。

1. 设定维修模式 U070, 然后调整 CONVEY SPEED (传送速度) (副扫描方向)。

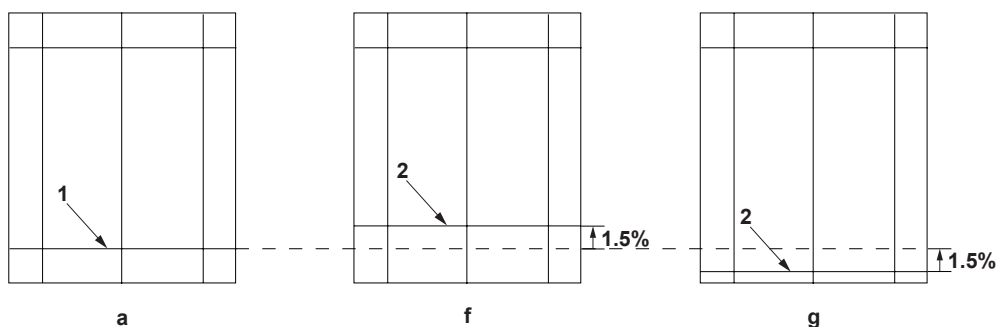
#### [DP 等倍度確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> 線 (2) の上下ずれ :  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内

#### DP 等倍度調整

1. メンテナンスモード U070 をセットし、CONVEY SPEED (副操作方向) の調整を行う。





**2. Adjust the values.**

For the shorter length copy example (f): Increases the value.  
For the longer length copy example (g): Decreases the value.  
Change per step: 0.15 mm

**3. Perform a test copy.**

**4. Repeat the steps 1 to 3 until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.**

<Reference value> Vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 1.5\%$

**2. Régler les valeurs.**

Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus courte (f) : augmenter la valeur.  
Pour l'exemple de copie dont la longueur est plus longue (g) : diminuer la valeur.  
Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,15 mm

**3. Effectuer une copie de test.**

**4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.**

<Valeur de référence> Écart vertical de la ligne (2) :  $\pm 1,5\%$

**2. Ajuste los valores.**

Para el ejemplo de copia más corto (f): aumenta el valor.  
Para el ejemplo de copia más largo (g): disminuye el valor.  
Cambio por incremento: 0,15 mm

**3. Haga una copia de prueba.**

**4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.**

<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 1,5\%$

**2. Die Werte einstellen.**

Für die kürzere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (f): Den Wert erhöhen.  
Für die längere Länge des Kopierbeispiels (g): Den Wert verringern.  
Änderung pro Schritt: 0,15 mm

**3. Eine Testkopie erstellen.**

**4. Die Schritte 1 bis 3 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.**

<Bezugswert> Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 1,5\%$

**2. Regolare i valori.**

Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza inferiore (f): aumenta il valore.  
Per l'esempio di copia di lunghezza superiore (g): riduce il valore.  
Modifica per passo: 0,15 mm

**3. Eseguire una copia di prova.**

**4. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 1 a 3 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.**

<Valore di riferimento> Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra  $\pm 1,5\%$

**2. 調整数値。**

对于更短长度的复印样本 (f): 增大数值。  
对于更长长度的复印样本 (g): 减小数值。  
按步骤的更改量: 0.15 mm

**3. 进行测试复印。**

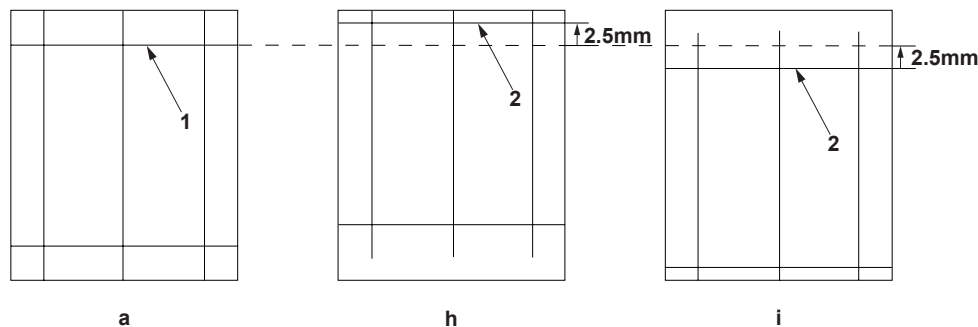
**4. 重复上述步骤 1 至 3 直到复印样本上线 (2) 的间隙显示标准值。**  
<标准值> 线 (2) 的垂直间隙:  $\pm 1.5\%$  内

**2. 設定値を調整する。**

長さが短い場合 コピーサンプル (f): 設定値を上げる  
長さが長い場合 コピーサンプル (g): 設定値を下げる  
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.15mm

**3. テストコピーを行う。**

**4. コピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。**  
<基準値> 線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 1.5\%$  以内



#### [Checking the DP leading edge timing]

1. Check the gap between line (1) on original (a) and line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.  
<Reference value> Vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 2.5$  mm

#### Adjusting the DP leading edge timing.

1. Set the maintenance mode U071, and adjust the ADJUST DATA1 (leading edge).

#### [Vérification de la synchronisation du bord avant du DP]

1. Vérifier l'écart entre la ligne (1) de l'original (a) et la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.  
<Valeur de référence> Écart vertical de la ligne (2) :  $\pm 2,5$  mm

#### Réglage de la synchronisation du bord avant du DP.

1. Exécuter le mode d'entretien U071 et régler ADJUST DATA1 (régler données1) (bord avant).

#### [Verificación de la sincronización de extremo guía del DP]

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea (1) del original (a) y la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.  
<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm

#### Ajuste de la sincronización de extremo guía del DP.

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento U071, y ajuste ADJUST DATA1 (ajustar datos 1) (extremo guía).

#### [Prüfen des Vorderkantentaktes des DP]

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Linie (1) des Originals (a) und der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.  
<Bezugswert> Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm

#### Einstellen des Vorderkantentaktes des DP.

1. Wartungsmodus U071 einstellen und die ADJUST DATA1 (EINSTELLDATEN1) (Vorderkante) einstellen.

#### [Verifica della fasatura del bordo di entrata del DP]

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.  
<Valore di riferimento> Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra  $\pm 2,5$  mm

#### Regolazione della fasatura del bordo di entrata del DP.

1. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U071, regolare ADJUST DATA1 (REGOLAZIONE DAT11) (bordo di entrata).

#### [ 检查 DP 前边定时 ]

1. 检查原稿 (a) 上的线 (1) 和复印样本上的线 (2) 之间的间隙。如果间隙超过标准值, 按照下列步骤调整间隙。  
<标准值> 线 (2) 的垂直间隙:  $\pm 2.5$  mm 内

#### 调整 DP 前边定时。

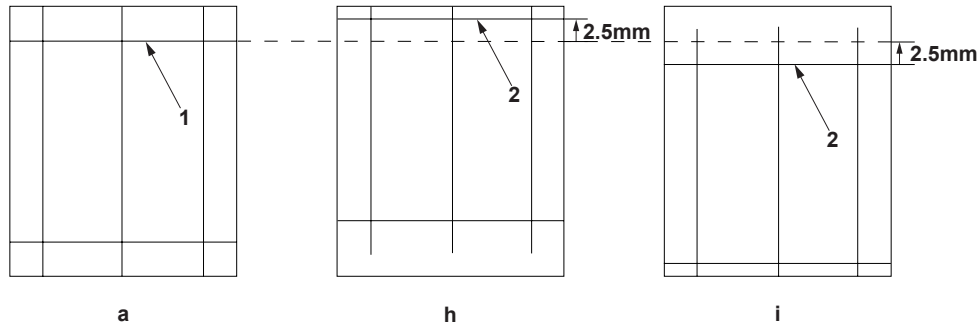
1. 设定维修模式 U071, 然后调整 ADJUST DATA1 (调整数据 1) (前边)。

#### [DP 先端タイミング確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の線 (1) とコピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> 線 (2) の上下ずれ :  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内

#### DP 先端タイミング調整

1. メンテナンスモード U071 をセットし、ADJUST DATA1 (先端) の調整を行う。



**2. Adjust the values.**

For the faster leading edge timing, copy examples (h): Decreases the value.

For the slower leading edge timing, copy examples (i): Increases the value.

Change per step: 0.19 mm

**3. Perform a test copy.**

**4. Repeat the steps 1 to 3 until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.**

<Reference value> Vertical gap of line (2): within  $\pm 2.5$  mm

**2. Régler les valeurs.**

Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus rapide (h) : diminuer la valeur.

Pour les exemples de copie dont la synchronisation du bord avant est plus lente (i) : augmenter la valeur.

Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,19 mm

**3. Effectuer une copie de test.**

**4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.**

<Valeur de référence> Écart vertical de la ligne (2) :  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**2. Ajuste los valores.**

Para una sincronización más rápida de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (h): disminuye el valor.

Para una sincronización más lenta de extremo guía, ejemplos de copia (i): aumenta el valor.

Cambio por incremento: 0,19 mm

**3. Haga una copia de prueba.**

**4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.**

<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de la línea (2): dentro de  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**2. Die Werte einstellen.**

Für den schnelleren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiele (h): Den Wert verringern.

Für den langsameren Vorderkantentakt, Kopierbeispiele (i): Den Wert erhöhen.

Änderung pro Schritt: 0,19 mm

**3. Eine Testkopie erstellen.**

**4. Die Schritte 1 bis 3 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.**

<Bezugswert> Vertikaler Abstand der Linie (2): Innerhalb  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**2. Regolare i valori.**

Per accelerare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (h): riduce il valore.

Per rallentare la fasatura del bordo di entrata, esempi di copia (i): aumenta il valore.

Modifica per passo: 0,19 mm

**3. Eseguire una copia di prova.**

**4. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 1 a 3 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.**

<Valore di riferimento> Scostamento verticale della linea (2) compreso fra  $\pm 2,5$  mm

**2. 調整数値。**

对于更快的前边定时, 复印样本 (h): 减小数值。

对于更慢的前边定时, 复印样本 (i): 增大数值。

按步骤的更改量: 0.19 mm

**3. 进行测试复印。**

**4. 重复上述步骤 1 至 3 直到复印样本上线 (2) 的间隙显示标准值。**

<标准值> 线 (2) 的垂直间隙:  $\pm 2.5$  mm 内

**2. 設定値を調整する**

先端タイミングが早い場合 コピーサンプル (h): 設定値を下げる

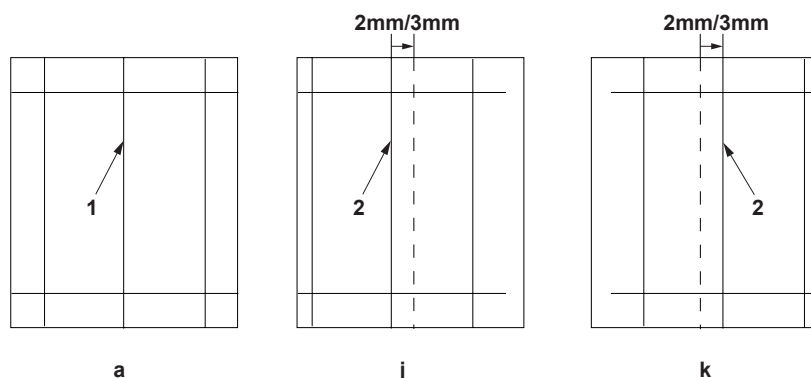
先端タイミングが遅い場合 コピーサンプル (i): 設定値を上げる

1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.19mm

**3. テストコピーを行う。**

**4. コピーサンプルの線 (2) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。**

<基準値> 線 (2) の上下ずれ:  $\pm 2.5$ mm 以内



### [Checking the DP original center line]

1. Check the gap between center line (1) on original (a) and center line (2) of copy example. If the gap exceeds the reference value, adjust the gap according to the following procedure.  
<Reference value> Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying:  $\pm 2$  mm  
Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying:  $\pm 3$  mm

### Adjusting the DP original center line.

1. Set the maintenance mode U072, and adjust the copy example for each of single and duplex copying respectively.  
For the single copying, adjust the DATA (simplex).  
For the duplex copying, adjust the DATA (duplex1) and DATA (duplex2).

### [Vérification de l'axe de l'original du DP]

1. Vérifier l'écart entre l'axe (1) de l'original (a) et l'axe (2) de l'exemple de copie. Si l'écart excède la valeur de référence, le régler selon la procédure suivante.  
<Valeur de référence> Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto :  $\pm 2$  mm  
Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso :  $\pm 3$  mm

### Réglage de l'axe de l'original du DP.

1. Exécuter le mode d'entretien U072 et régler l'exemple de copie pour la copie recto et la copie recto-verso respectivement. Pour la copie recto, régler DATA (simplex) (DONNÉES, recto).  
Pour la copie recto-verso, régler DATA (duplex1) (DONNÉES, recto-verso1) et DATA (duplex2) (DONNÉES, recto-verso2).

### Verificación de la línea de centro del original del DP]

1. Compruebe la separación entre la línea de centro (1) del original (a) y la línea de centro (2) del ejemplo de copia. Si la separación supera el valor de referencia, ajústela siguiendo este procedimiento.  
<Valor de referencia> Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara:  $\pm 2$  mm  
Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex:  $\pm 3$  mm

### Ajuste de la línea de centro del original del DP.

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento U072 y ajuste el ejemplo de copia para el copiado por una cara y para el copiado dúplex, respectivamente.  
Para el copiado por una cara, ajuste DATA (simplex) (DATOS (anverso)).  
Para el copiado dúplex, ajuste DATA (duplex1) (DATOS (dúplex 1)) y DATA (duplex2) (DATOS (dúplex 2)).

### [Prüfen der Originalmittellinie des DP]

1. Den Abstand zwischen der Mittellinie (1) des Originals (a) und der Mittellinie (2) des Kopierbeispiels prüfen. Wenn der Abstand größer als der Bezugswert ist, den Abstand mit dem folgenden Verfahren einstellen.  
<Bezugswert> Horizontaler Abstand der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie:  $\pm 2$  mm  
Horizontaler Abstand der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie:  $\pm 3$  mm

### Einstellen der Originalmittellinie des DP.

1. Den Wartungsmodus U072 einstellen und das Kopierbeispiel für jede Einzel- und Duplexkopie einstellen.  
Für Einzelkopie DATA (simplex) (EINSTELLDATEN (einseitig)) einstellen.  
Für Duplexkopie DATA (duplex1) (EINSETELLDATEN (zweiseitig1)) und DATA (duplex2) (EINSTELLDATEN (zweiseitig2)) einstellen.

### [Verifica della linea centrale del DP]

1. Verificare lo scostamento fra la linea centrale (1) sull'originale (a) e la linea centrale (2) dell'esempio di copia. Se lo scostamento supera il valore di riferimento, regolare lo scostamento stesso seguendo questa procedura.  
<Valore di riferimento> Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola:  $\pm 2$  mm  
Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex:  $\pm 3$  mm

### Regolazione della linea centrale del DP.

1. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U072 e regolare l'esempio di copia rispettivamente per ogni esecuzione di copia singola e duplex.  
Per la copia singola, regolare DATA (simplex) (DATI (simplex)).  
Per la copia duplex, regolare DATA (duplex1) (DATI (duplex1)) e DATA (duplex2) (DATI (duplex2)).

### [ 检查文档处理器原稿中心线 ]

1. 检查原稿 (a) 中心线 (1) 和复印样本中心线 (2) 之间的间隙。如果间隙超过标准值, 按照下列步骤调整间隙。  
<标准值> 单面复印时中心线 (2) 的水平差距:  $\pm 2$  mm  
双面复印时中心线 (2) 的水平差距:  $\pm 3$  mm

### 调整文档处理器原稿中心线。

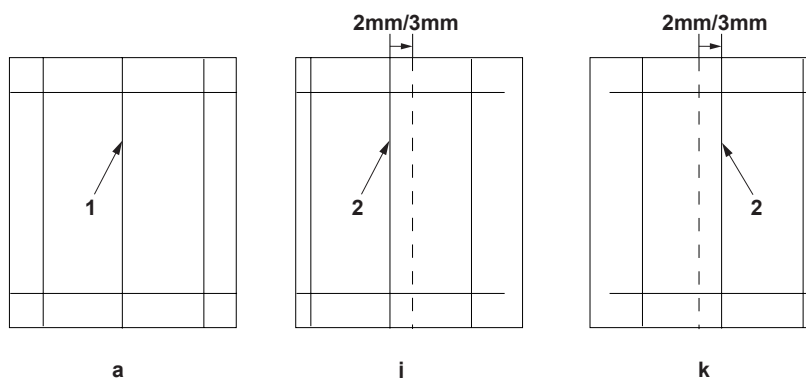
1. 设定维修模式 U072, 并分别调整每次单面和双面复印的复印样本。  
对于单面复印, 调整 DATA (simplex) (数据 (单面))。  
对于双面复印, 调整 DATA (duplex 1) (数据 (双面 1)) 和 DATA (duplex 2) (数据 (双面 2))。

### [DP 原稿センター位置確認]

1. 原稿 (a) の中心線 (1) とコピーサンプルの中心線 (2) のずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> 片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 2$  mm 以内  
両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3$  mm 以内

### DP 原稿センター位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U072 をセットし、コピーサンプルの片面、両面別に調整を行う。  
片面の場合、DATA (片面) を調整する。  
両面の場合、DATA (両面表) と DATA (両面裏) を調整する。



**2. Adjust the values.**

If the center moves more front, copy example (j): Increases the value.  
 If the center moves inner, copy sample (k): Decreases the value.  
 Change per step: 0.085 mm

**3. Perform a test copy.**

**4. Repeat the steps 1 to 3 until the gap of line (2) of copy example shows the reference value.**

<Reference value> Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the single copying:  $\pm 2$  mm  
 Horizontal difference of center line (2) for the duplex copying:  $\pm 3$  mm

**2. Régler les valeurs.**

Pour l'exemple de copie (j) dont l'axe se déplace davantage vers l'avant : augmenter la valeur.  
 Pour l'exemple de copie (k) dont l'axe se déplace vers l'intérieur : diminuer la valeur.  
 Changement par graduation d'échelle : 0,085 mm

**3. Effectuer une copie de test.**

**4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que l'écart de la ligne (2) de l'exemple de copie indique la valeur de référence.**

<Valeur de référence> Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto :  $\pm 2$  mm  
 Différence horizontale de l'axe (2) pour la copie recto-verso :  $\pm 3$  mm

**2. Ajuste los valores.**

Si el centro se desplaza más hacia el frente, ejemplo de copia (j): aumenta el valor.  
 Si el centro se desplaza hacia dentro, ejemplo de copia (k): disminuye el valor.  
 Cambio por incremento: 0,085 mm

**3. Haga una copia de prueba.**

**4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 anteriores hasta que la separación de la línea (2) del ejemplo de copia presente el valor de referencia.**

<Valor de referencia> Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado por una cara:  $\pm 2$  mm  
 Diferencia horizontal de la línea de centro (2) para el copiado dúplex:  $\pm 3$  mm

**2. Die Werte einstellen.**

Wenn die Mitte nach vorne verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (j): Den Wert erhöhen.  
 Wenn die Mitte nach innen verlagert ist, Kopierbeispiel (k): Den Wert verringern.  
 Änderung pro Schritt: 0,085 mm

**3. Eine Testkopie erstellen.**

**4. Die Schritte 1 bis 3 wiederholen, bis der Abstand der Linie (2) des Kopierbeispiels den Bezugswert aufweist.**

<Bezugswert> Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Einzelkopie:  $\pm 2$  mm  
 Horizontaler Unterschied der Mittellinie (2) für die Duplexkopie:  $\pm 3$ .

**2. Regolare i valori.**

Se il centro si sposta più avanti, esempio di copia (j): aumenta il valore.  
 Se il centro si sposta verso l'interno, esempio di copia (k): riduce il valore.  
 Modifica per passo: 0,085 mm

**3. Eseguire una copia di prova.**

**4. Ripetere le operazioni sopra descritte da 1 a 3 fino a quando lo scostamento della linea (2) dell'esempio di copia riporterà i valori di riferimento.**

<Valore di riferimento> Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia singola:  $\pm 2$  mm  
 Differenza orizzontale della linea centrale (2) per la copia duplex:  $\pm 3$  mm

**2. 調整数値。**

如果中心移动更靠前, 复印样本 (j): 增大数值。  
 如果中心移动更靠内, 复印样本 (k): 减小数值。  
 按步骤的更改量: 0.085 mm

**3. 进行测试复印。**

**4. 重复上述步骤 1 至 3 直到复印样本上线 (2) 的间隙显示标准值。**

<标准值> 单面复印时中心线 (2) 的水平差距:  $\pm 2$  mm  
 双面复印时中心线 (2) 的水平差距:  $\pm 3$  mm

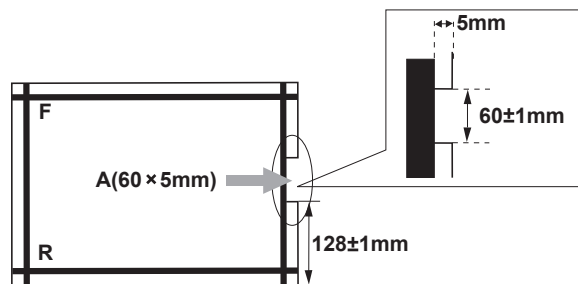
**2. 設定値を調整する。**

センターが手前にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (j): 設定値を上げる  
 センターが奥にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (k): 設定値を下げる  
 1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.085mm

**3. テストコピーを行う。**

**4. コピーサンプルの中心線 (2) のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。**

<基準値> 片面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 2$ mm 以内  
 両面の場合、中心線 (2) の左右ずれ:  $\pm 3$ mm 以内



#### [Adjustment using the DP auto adjustment original]

1. Set maintenance mode U76 and press the START key.
2. Face F and R of the DP auto adjustment original up, and place the original from the edge where F and R are marked. Press the START key.
3. When 4 adjustments value for CONVEY SPEED, LEAD EDGE ADJ, TRAIL EDGE ADJ and DP CENTER appear on the display, the adjustment is completed.  
If DATA 6X appears, the adjustment is failed. Check the original orientation and repeat the steps 1 to 2 until the 4 adjustments for CONVEY SPEED, LEAD EDGE ADJ, TRAIL EDGE ADJ and DP CENTER appear. **For details, see the service manual.**

#### [Réglage à l'aide de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP]

1. Exécuter le mode d'entretien U76 et appuyer sur la touche START (démarrer).
2. Diriger F (avant) et R (arrière) de la fonction de réglage automatique d'original du DP vers le haut, puis placer l'original à partir du bord des repères F et R. Appuyer sur la touche START (DÉMARRER).
3. Lorsque les 4 valeurs de réglage pour CONVEY SPEED (VITESSE D'ACHEMINEMENT), LEAD EDGE ADJ (RÉGLAGE DU BORD AVANT), TRAIL EDGE ADJ (RÉGLAGE DU BORD ARRIÈRE) et DP CENTER (CENTRE DP) s'affichent sur l'écran, le réglage est terminé.  
Si DATA 6X (DONNÉES 6x) apparaît, le réglage a échoué. Vérifier le sens d'orientation de l'original et répéter les étapes 1 et 2 jusqu'à ce que les 4 réglages pour CONVEY SPEED (VITESSE D'ACHEMINEMENT), LEAD EDGE ADJ (RÉGLAGE DU BORD AVANT), TRAIL EDGE ADJ (RÉGLAGE DU BORD ARRIÈRE) et DP CENTER (CENTRE DP) apparaissent. **Pour plus de détails, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.**

#### [Ajuste usando el original de ajuste automático del DP]

1. Active el modo de mantenimiento U76 y presione la tecla START (INICIO).
2. Oriente F y R del original de ajuste automático del DP hacia arriba, y coloque el original a partir del borde en que están marcados F y R. Pulse la tecla START (INICIO).
3. Cuando aparecen en la pantalla 4 valores de ajuste correspondientes a CONVEY SPEED (VELOCIDAD DE TRANSPORTE), LEAD EDGE ADJ (AJUSTE DE EXTREMO GUÍA), TRAIL EDGE ADJ (AJUSTE DE EXTREMO SECUNDARIO) y DP CENTER (CENTRO DP), el ajuste ha finalizado.  
Si aparece DATA 6X (datos 6x), el ajuste ha fallado. Compruebe la orientación original y repita los pasos 1 a 2 hasta que aparezcan los 4 ajustes de CONVEY SPEED (VELOCIDAD DE TRANSPORTE), LEAD EDGE ADJ (AJUSTE DE EXTREMO GUÍA), TRAIL EDGE ADJ (AJUSTE DE EXTREMO SECUNDARIO) y DP CENTER (CENTRO DP). **Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.**

#### [Einstellung mit der automatischen Einstellung des Originals des DP]

1. Wartungsmodus U76 einstellen und die START-Taste drücken.
2. F und R der automatischen Einstellung des DP mit der Originalschriftseite nach oben zeigen und das Original an die mit F und R markierte Stelle setzen. Die START-Taste drücken.
3. Wenn 4 Einstellungswerte für CONVEY SPEED (BEFÖRDERUNGSGESCHWINDIGKEIT), LEAD EDGE ADJ (EINSTELLUNG DER VORDERKANTE), TRAIL EDGE ADJ (EINSTELLUNG DER HINTERKANTE) und DP CENTER (DP MITTE) auf dem Display angezeigt werden, ist die Einstellung abgeschlossen.  
Wenn DATA 6X (EINSTELLDATEN 6X) angezeigt wird, ist die Einstellung fehlgeschlagen. Ausrichtung der Originale überprüfen und Schritte 1 bis 2 wiederholen, bis die 4 Einstellungswerte für CONVEY SPEED (BEFÖRDERUNGSGESCHWINDIGKEIT), LEAD EDGE ADJ (EINSTELLUNG DER VORDERKANTE), TRAIL EDGE ADJ (EINSTELLUNG DER HINTERKANTE) und DP CENTER (DP MITTE) angezeigt werden. **Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.**

#### [Regolazione con l'autoregolazione originale DP]

1. Impostare la modalità di manutenzione U76 e premere il tasto START (AVVIA).
2. Rivolgere F e R dell'autoregolazione originale DP verso l'alto e disporre l'originale rispetto al bordo in cui sono contrassegnati F e R. Premere il tasto START (AVVIA).
3. Quando il valore delle 4 impostazioni per CONVEY SPEED (VELOCITÀ TRASFERIMENTO), LEAD EDGE ADJ (REG. BORDO DI ENTRATA), TRAIL EDGE ADJ (REG. BORDO DI USCITA) e DP CENTER (CENTRO DP) appare sul display, la regolazione è completata.  
Se compare DATA 6X, la regolazione non è riuscita. Controllare l'orientamento originale e ripetere le fasi 1-2 finché non appaiono le 4 regolazioni per CONVEY SPEED (VELOCITÀ TRASFERIMENTO), LEAD EDGE ADJ (REG. BORDO DI ENTRATA), TRAIL EDGE ADJ (REG. BORDO DI USCITA) e DP CENTER (CENTRO DP). **Per ulteriori dettagli leggere il manuale d'istruzioni.**

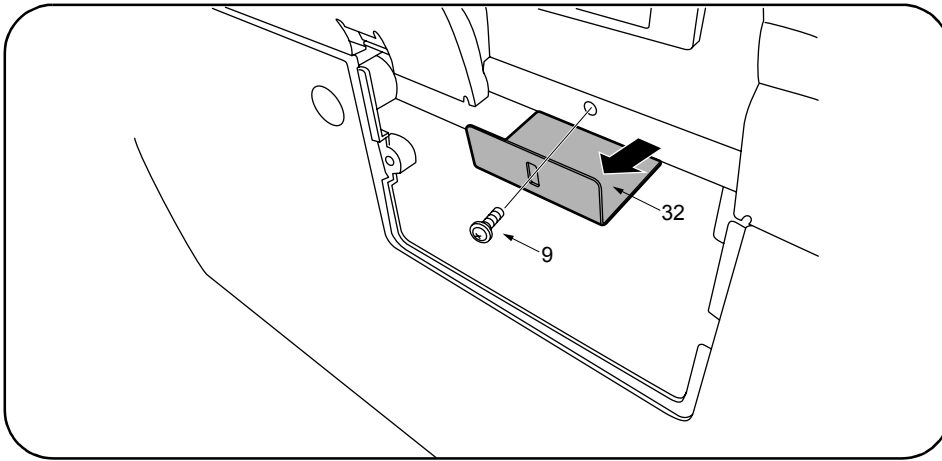
#### [使用 DP 自动调整原稿的调整]

1. 设定维修模式 U76 并按开始键。
2. 将 DP 自动调整原稿的 F 和 R 向上, 并在标有 F 和 R 的地方放置原稿。按 START (开始) 键。
3. 屏幕上出现 CONVEY SPEED (传送速度)、LEAD EDGE ADJ (前边调整)、TRAIL EDGE ADJ (后边调整) 和 DP CENTER (文档处理器中心) 4 个调整数值时, 调整完成。如果出现 DATA 6X (数据 6X), 则调整失败。检查原稿方向并重复步骤 1 到 2, 直到出现 CONVEY SPEED (传送速度)、LEAD EDGE ADJ (前边调整)、TRAIL EDGE ADJ (后边调整) 和 DP CENTER (文档处理器中心) 4 个调整数值。请参见维修手册。

#### [DP 自動調整原稿による調整]

1. メンテナンスモード U76 をセットし START 押す。
2. DP 自動調整原稿の F、R を上に向け、F、R が書かれている方から DP へセットし、START を押す。
3. ディスプレイに CONVEY SPEED、LEAD EDGE ADJ、TRAIL EDGE ADJ、DP CENTER の 4 つの調整値が表示されれば調整完了となる。  
DATA 6X が表示された場合は失敗である。原稿のセット位置を確認し、CONVEY SPEED、LEAD EDGE ADJ、TRAIL EDGE ADJ、DP CENTER の 4 つの調整値が表示されるまで手順 1 ~ 2 を繰り返す。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR PAPER FEEDER**



### English Changing installation procedure of the paper feeder

Step 6 of page 3 is changed as below:

6. Remove the screw (9) from the MFP to detach the connector cover (32).  
(Move to step 7.)

---

### Français Changement apporté à la procédure d'installation de l'alimenteur de papier

L'étape 6 de la page 3 est changée de la façon décrite ci-dessous:

6. Retirer la vis (9) du MFP pour détacher le couvercle du connecteur (32).  
(Passer à l'étape 7.)

---

### Español Cambio del procedimiento de instalación del alimentador de papel

El paso 6 de la página 3 se cambia de la siguiente forma:

6. Saque el tornillo (9) del MFP para desmontar la cubierta del conector (32).  
(Vaya al paso 7.)

---

### Deutsch Änderung des Installationsverfahrens für Papierzuführer

Schritt 6 auf Seite 3 wurde wie folgt geändert:

6. Die Schraube (9) vom MFP herausdrehen, um die Anschlussabdeckung (32) abzunehmen.  
(Zu Schritt 7 übergehen.)

---

### Italiano Modifica della procedura per l'installazione dell'unità di alimentazione carta

Il passo 6 a pagina 3 è stato modificato nel seguente modo:

6. Rimuovere la vite (9) dall'MFP per staccare il pannello del connettore (32).  
(Passare al passo 7.)

---

### 简体中文 供纸盒安装步骤的变更

第 3 页的步骤 6 内容变更如下。

6. 将 MFP 本体后部的 1 个螺丝 (9) 卸下, 然后取下连接器盖 (32)。  
(进行步骤 7 的操作。)

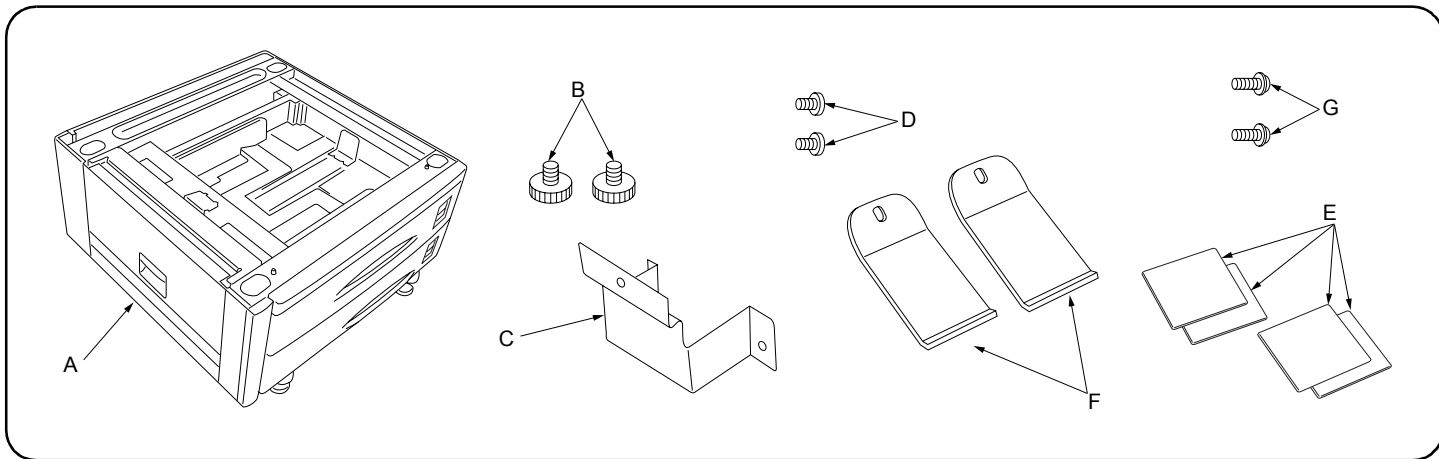
---

### 日本語 ペーパーフィーダ設置手順書の変更

3 ページ手順 6 を次のように変更します。

6. MFP 本体後部のビス (9) 1 本を外し、コネクターカバー (32) を取り外す。  
(手順 7 に進む)





**English**

**Supplied parts**

A Paper feeder..... 1  
 B Pin..... 2  
 C Retainer..... 1  
 D Taptite S binding screw, M4 × 08..... 2  
 E Paper size plate..... 4

F Stay..... 2  
 G TP screw, M4 × 10..... 2

**Procedure**

Be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the paper feeder.

**Français**

**Pièces fournies**

A Bureau papier..... 1  
 B Broche..... 2  
 C Élément de retenue..... 1  
 D Borne de raccordement Taptite S, M4 × 08..... 2

E Plaque de format de papier..... 4  
 F Support..... 2  
 G Vis TP, M4 × 10..... 2

**Procédure**

Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du bureau papier.

**Español**

**Partes suministradas**

A Alimentador de papel..... 1  
 B Clavija..... 2  
 C Retén..... 1  
 D Tornillo de sujeción Taptite S, M4 × 08..... 2  
 E Placa de tamaño de papel..... 4

F Base..... 2  
 G Tornillo TP, M4 × 10..... 2

**Procedimiento**

Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar el enchufe del MFP del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar el alimentador de papel.

**Deutsch**

**Gelieferte Teile**

A Papiereinzug..... 1  
 B Stift..... 2  
 C Halterung..... 1  
 D Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube, M4 × 08..... 2  
 E Papierformatplatte..... 4

F Stütze..... 2  
 G TP-Schraube, M4 × 10..... 2

**Vorgang**

Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Papiereinzugs beginnen.

**Italiano**

**Parti di fornitura**

A Unità di alimentazione della carta..... 1  
 B Perno..... 2  
 C Fermo..... 1  
 D Vite di serraggio Taptite S, M4 × 08..... 2  
 E Piastra formato carta..... 4

F Sospensione..... 2  
 G Vite TP, M4 × 10..... 2

**Procedura**

Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione dell'unità di alimentazione della carta, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e di disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

**简体中文**

**附属品**

A 供纸工作台..... 1  
 B 固定插销..... 2  
 C 安装板..... 1  
 D 连接用螺纹紧固 S 螺丝 M4 × 08..... 2

E 复印纸尺寸托板..... 4  
 F 防倒金属件..... 2  
 G TP 螺丝 M4 × 10..... 2

**[ 安装步骤 ]**

安装供纸工作台时, 必须先关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关, 并拔出电源插头后方可进行工作。

**日本語**

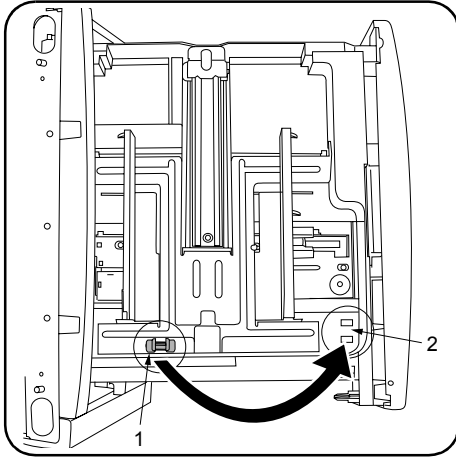
**付属部品**

A ペーパーフィーダ..... 1  
 B ピン..... 2  
 C 取付板..... 1  
 D ビス M4 × 08 バインドタップタイト S..... 2

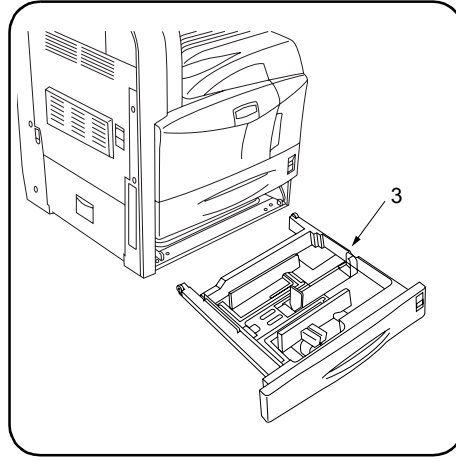
E ペーパーサイズプレート..... 4  
 F 転倒防止金具 (日本仕様では使用しない)..... 2  
 G ビス M4 × 10TP (日本仕様では使用しない)..... 2

**[ 取付手順 ]**

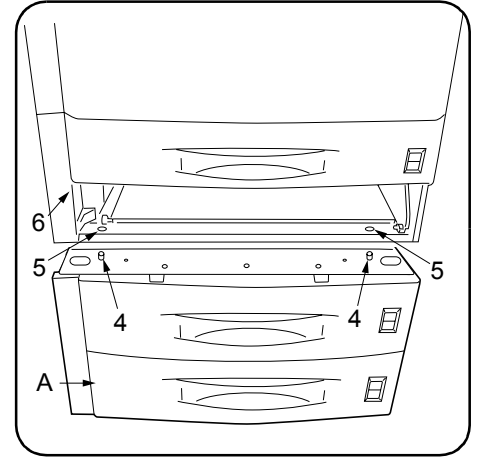
ペーパーフィーダを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなうこと。



**Note**  
Remove the lift plate stopper (1) from each paper cassette and attach it to the storage location (2).



1. Remove the lower paper cassette (3) from the MFP.



2. Place the MFP (6) on top of the paper feeder (A) with the positioning pins (4) at the front left and right of the paper feeder (A) aligned with the holes (5) in the base of the MFP.

**Remarque**

Retirer la butée de plaque d'élévation (1) de chaque tiroir et la fixer à l'emplacement de rangement (2).

1. Retirer le tiroir inférieur (3) du MFP.

2. Placer le MFP (6) sur le bureau papier (A) en alignant les broches de positionnement (4) situées aux côtés avant gauche et droit du bureau papier (A) sur les orifices (5) à la base du MFP.

**Nota**

Quite el tope de placa de elevación (1) de cada cajón de papel y fije en el lugar de almacenamiento (2).

1. Quite el cajón de papel inferior (3) del MFP.

2. Coloque el MFP (6) sobre el alimentador de papel (A) con las clavijas de posicionamiento (4) de la parte frontal izquierda y derecha del alimentador de papel (A) alineadas con los huecos (5) de la base del MFP.

**Hinweis**

Entfernen Sie den Hebeplattenanschlag (1) von jeder Papierlade, und bringen Sie ihn an der Speicherposition (2) an.

1. Nehmen Sie die untere Papierlade (3) vom MFP ab.

2. Setzen Sie den MFP (6) auf den Papiereinzug (A), wobei die Positionsstifte (4) vorne links und rechts am Papiereinzug (A) mit den Löchern (5) in der Basis des MFP ausgerichtet sein müssen.

**Nota**

Rimuovere il fermo della piastra di sollevamento (1) da ciascun cassetto della carta e fissarlo nella posizione di immagazzinaggio (2).

1. Rimuovere il cassetto inferiore della carta (3) dall'MFP.

2. Installare l'MFP (6) sopra l'unità di alimentazione della carta (A), mantenendo i perni di posizionamento (4) situati sul lato anteriore sinistro e destro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) stessa allineati con i fori (5) situati sulla base dell'MFP.

**注意**

拆下各供纸盒的升降板挡块 (1)，并安装在保管场所 (2) 上。

1. 取出 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (3)。

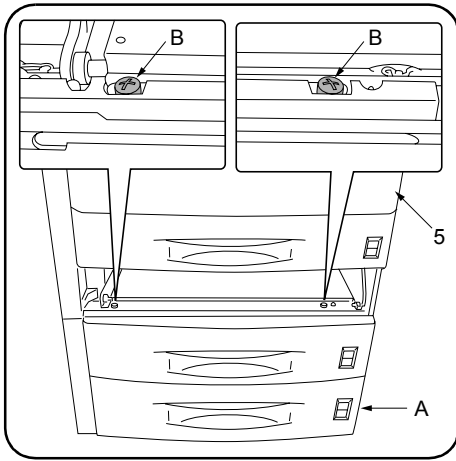
2. 供纸工作台 (A) 的左右前面的各插销 (4) 分别对准 MFP 主机底面的各相应销孔 (5) 后，将 MFP 主机 (6) 放在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

**注意**

各カセットのリフト板ストップ (1) を外し、保管場所 (2) に取り付ける。

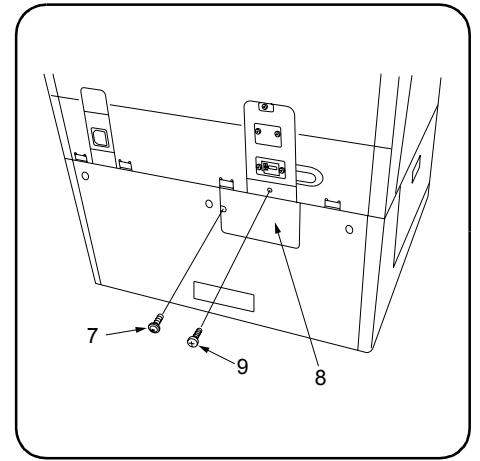
1. MFP 本体の下段カセット (3) を取り外す。

2. ペーパーフィーダ (A) の左右前方の各ピン (4) と MFP 本体のベースの穴 (5) が合うように、ペーパーフィーダ (A) に MFP 本体 (6) を載せる。



3. Secure the MFP to the paper feeder (A) using the two pins (B).

4. Refit the lower paper cassette (3) removed in step 1 to the MFP.



5. Remove the screw (7) and then the cover (8) from the rear of the paper feeder.

6. Remove the screw (9) from the MFP.

3. Fixer le MFP sur le bureau papier (A) à l'aide des deux broches (B).

4. Remettre en place sur le MFP le tiroir inférieur (3) qui a été retiré auparavant à l'étape 1.

5. Retirer la vis (7) puis le couvercle (8) de l'arrière du bureau papier.

6. Retirer la vis (9) du MFP.

3. Asegure el MFP al alimentador de papel (A) usando las dos clavijas (B).

4. Vuelva a colocar el cajón de papel inferior (3) desmontado en el paso 1 en el MFP.

5. Quite el tornillo (7) y luego la tapa (8) de la parte trasera del alimentador de papel.

6. Quite el tornillo (9) del MFP.

3. Befestigen Sie den MFP mit den zwei Stiften (B) am Papiereinzug (A).

4. Bringen Sie die untere Papierlade (3), die in Schritt 1 entfernt wurde, erneut am MFP an.

5. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (7) und dann die Abdeckung (8) von der Rückseite des Papiereinzugs.

6. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (9) vom MFP.

3. Assicurare l'MFP all'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) utilizzando i due perni (B).

4. Reinserrare nell'MFP il cassetto inferiore della carta (3) rimosso al punto 1.

5. Rimuovere la vite (7) e quindi il pannello (8) dal retro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.

6. Rimuovere la vite (9) dal retro dell'MFP.

3. 用 2 个固定插销 (B) 将 MFP 主机固定在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

4. 在步骤 1 取下的 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (3) 装回原来的位置。

5. 拆除 1 个螺丝 (7), 拆下供纸工作台的后部盖板 (8)。

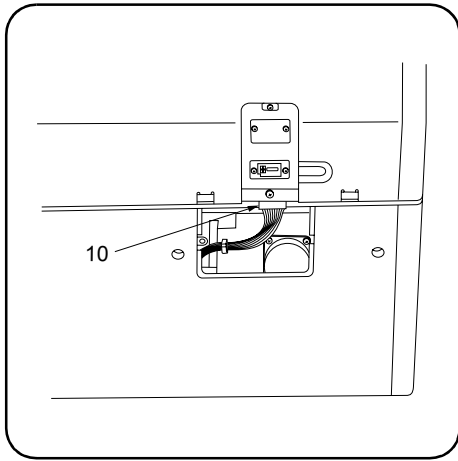
6. 拆除 MFP 主机后部的 1 个螺丝 (9)。

3. ピン (B) 2 本で MFP 本体をペーパーフィーダ (A) に固定する。

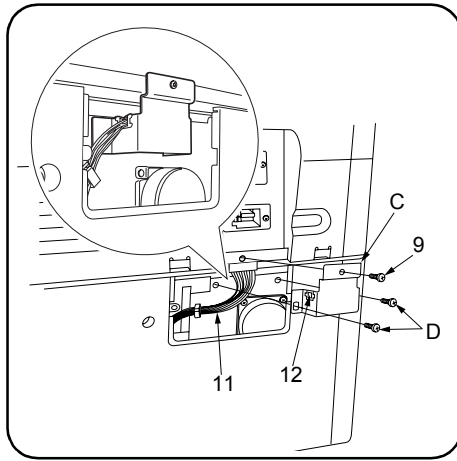
4. 手順 1 で取り外した MFP 本体の下段カセット (3) を元に戻す。

5. ビス (7) 1 本を外し、ペーパーフィーダ後部のカバー (8) を取り外す。

6. MFP 本体後部のビス (9) 1 本を外す。



7. Insert the 12-P connector (10) of the paper feeder into the connector on the MFP.



8. Route the harness (11) through the clamp (12) on the retainer (C).

**Note**

Since the harness (11) may touch the motor, be sure to pass the harness (11) through the clamp (12).

9. Fit the retainer (C) using the screw (9) removed in step 6 and the two M4 × 08 Taptite S binding screws (D).

10. Refit the cover (8) using the screw (7) removed in step 5.

7. Insérer le connecteur à douze broches (10) du bureau papier dans le connecteur du MFP.

8. Faire passer le faisceau de câbles (11) par le collier (12) de l'élément de retenue (C).

**Remarque**

Comme le faisceau de câbles (11) risque de toucher le moteur, veiller à faire passer le faisceau de câbles (11) par le collier (12).

9. Installer l'élément de retenue (C) à l'aide de la vis (9) retirée à l'étape 6 et les deux M4 × 08 bornes de raccordement Taptite S (D).

10. Remettre le couvercle (8) en place à l'aide de la vis (7) retirée auparavant à l'étape 5.

7. Inserte el conector de 12 clavijas (10) del alimentador de papel en el conector del MFP.

8. Inserte el soporte (11) a través del sujetador (12) del retén (C).

**Nota**

Como el soporte (11) puede tocar el motor, asegúrese de pasar el soporte (11) a través del sujetador (12).

9. Coloque el retén (C) utilizando el tornillo (9) removido en el paso 6 y los dos tornillos de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 08 (D).

10. Vuelva a colocar la tapa (8) usando el tornillo (7) quitado en el paso 5.

7. Stecken Sie den 12poligen Steckverbinder (10) des Papiereinzugs in die Buchse am MFP.

8. Führen Sie den Kabelbaum (11) durch die Klemme (12) auf der Halterung (C).

**Hinweis**

Da der Kabelbaum (11) den Motor berühren kann, führen Sie den Kabelbaum (11) unbedingt durch die Klemme (12).

9. Bringen Sie die Halterung (C) an, indem Sie die Schraube (9) benutzen, die Sie in Schritt 6 entfernt haben, sowie die zwei M4 × 08 Taptite S-Befestigungsschrauben (D).

10. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (8) wieder mit der in Schritt (7) entfernten Schraube 5 an.

7. Inserire il connettore a 12 piedini (10) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta nel connettore situato sull'MFP.

8. Far passare i cavi (11) attraverso il morsetto (12) sul fermo (C).

**Nota**

Poiché i cavi (11) potrebbero toccare il motore, assicurarsi di farli passare attraverso il morsetto (12).

9. Inserire il fermo (C) utilizzando la vite (9) rimossa al passo 6 e le due viti di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 08 (D).

10. Inserire il pannello posteriore (8) usando le viti (7) rimosse al punto 5.

7. 将供纸工作台的 12 脚接头 (10) 接于 MFP 主机上的接口。

8. 将电线 (11) 插入安装板 (C) 上的夹钳 (12) 中而进行电线处理。

**注意**

务必将电线 (11) 穿过夹钳 (12), 以免马达碰触电线 (11)。

9. 用步骤 6 中拆除的 1 个螺丝 (9) 和 2 个连接用螺纹紧固 S 螺丝 M4 × 08 (D) 来进行安装板 (C) 的安装工作。

10. 用步骤 5 拆除的 1 个螺丝 (7) 将盖板 (8) 装回原来的位置。

7. ペーパーフィーダの 12P コネクタ (10) を MFP 本体のコネクタに接続する。

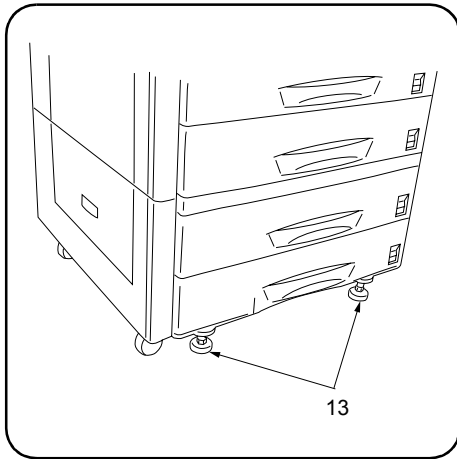
8. 電線 (11) を取付板に付いているクランプ (12) に挿入し、電線処理をおこなう。

**注意**

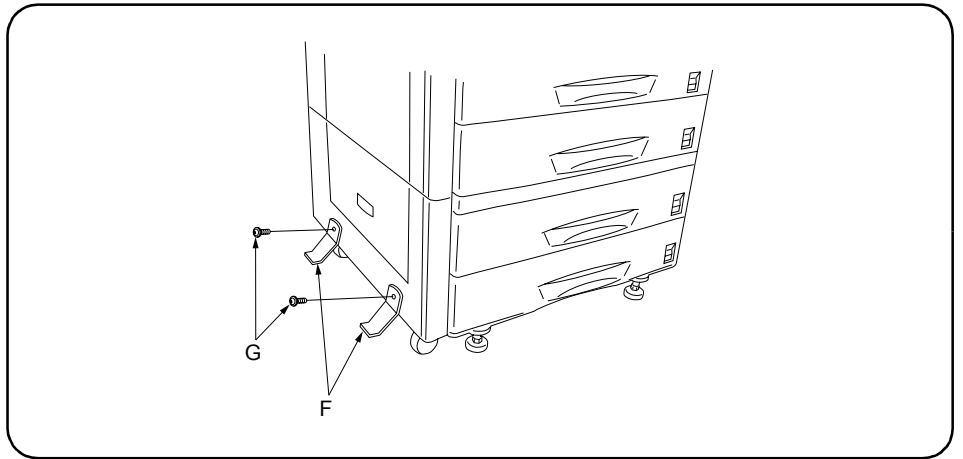
電線 (11) がモータに接触する恐れがあるので、必ずクランプ (12) に電線 (11) を通すこと。

9. 手順 6 で取り外したビス (9) 1 本と、ビス M4 × 08 バインドタップタイト S (D) 2 本で取付板 (C) を取り付ける。

10. 手順 5 で取り外したビス (7) 1 本でカバー (8) を元通りに取り付ける。



11. Turn the four adjusters (13) until they reach the floor and adjust them to level the machine.



**For 120 and 220 – 240 V specifications only**  
12. Fit the two stays (F) to the left of the paper feed desk (one toward the front and the other the rear) using the two M4 x 10 TP screws (G) such that they make contact with the floor.

**Note:** Do not fit the stays (F) if the document finisher is to be installed.

11. Tourner les quatre pieds réglables (13) jusqu'à ce qu'ils atteignent le sol, et les régler au niveau de la machine.

**Pour spécifications 120 et 220 – 240 V uniquement**

12. Installer les deux supports (F) sur la gauche du bureau d'alimentation de papier (l'un vers l'avant et l'autre vers l'arrière) à l'aide des deux vis TP M4 x 10 (G), de façon à ce qu'elles soient en contact avec le sol.

**Remarque:** Ne pas mettre en place les supports (F) si le retoucheur de document doit être installé.

11. Gire los cuatro ajustadores (13) hasta que lleguen al piso y ajústelos hasta que nivelen la máquina.

**Para especificaciones de 120 V y 220 – 240 V solamente**

12. Coloque las dos bases (F) en el lado izquierdo de la unidad de alimentación de papel (una hacia el frente y la otra hacia la parte de atrás) usando los dos tornillos TP M4 x 10 (G) de modo que hagan contacto con el piso.

**Nota:** No coloque las bases (F) si se va a instalar el finalizador de documentos.

11. Drehen Sie die vier Einstellfüße (13), bis sie den Boden erreichen und stellen Sie sie so ein, daß die Maschine nivelliert ist.

**Nur Für 120 und 220 – 240 V Spezifikationen**

12. Bringen Sie die zwei Stützen (F) links am Papiereinzugstisch (eine in Richtung Vorderseite und eine in Richtung Rückseite) an. Benutzen Sie dazu die zwei M4 x 10 TP-Schrauben (G) so, daß diese mit dem Boden in Berührung kommen.

**Hinweis:** Bringen Sie die Stützen (F) nicht an, wenn der Dokumentenfixierer installiert werden soll.

11. Ruotare i quattro piedini regolabili (13) sino a quando vengono a contatto con il pavimento; quindi regolarne l'altezza in modo da livellare la macchina.

**Specifiche solo per 120 V e 220 – 240 V**

12. Inserire le due sospensioni (F) alla sinistra dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (una verso la parte anteriore e l'altra verso la parte posteriore) utilizzando le due viti TP M4 x 10 (G) in modo tale che sia a contatto col pavimento.

**Nota:** Non inserire le sospensioni (F) se la finitrice di documenti deve essere installata.

11. 旋转 4 个角落的高度调节器 (13) 至地板高度, 以调节 MFP 主机的整体高度。

仅适用于 120V、220/240V 的产品

12. 在前后两处各用 1 个 TP 螺丝 M4 x 10 (G) 安装防倒金属件 (F), 防倒金属件 (F) 须贴紧地面。

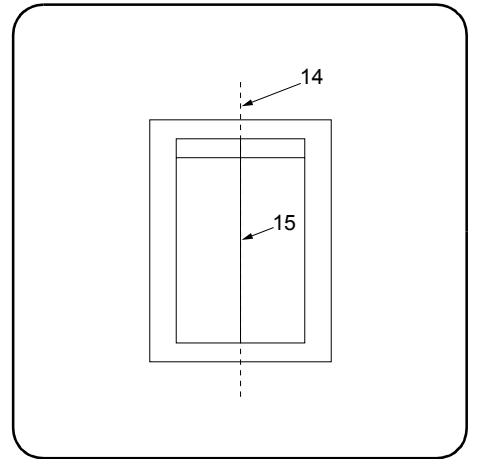
若欲安装装订器, 则不安装防倒金属件 (F)。

11. 4 隅のアジャスター(13) を床に接触するまで回しながら MFP 本体の全体の高さを調節する。

日本仕様ではこの作業はありません

12. 転倒防止取付金具 (F) を床に接触するように、ビス M4 x 10TP (G) 1 本で転倒防止取付金具 (F) を前後 2 箇所に取付付ける。

ドキュメントフィニッシャを取り付ける場合、転倒防止取付金具 (F) は取付けない。



### Checking the center line

1. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main switch on.
2. Load paper into the drawer and make a test copy to check the operation.

3. Run maintenance item 993. Select "VTC PG1" and output a test pattern.  
For full-color machines, run maintenance item 402 and output the test pattern.

4. If the center of the paper (14) and that of the test pattern output (15) do not meet the reference value, perform the following adjustment.  
<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

### Vérification de la ligne médiane

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.
2. Mettre du papier dans le tiroir et effectuer une copie d'essai pour vérifier le fonctionnement.

3. Exécuter le point de maintenance 993. Sélectionner "VTC PG1" et produire une mire.  
Sur les machines entièrement en couleurs, exécuter le point de maintenance 402 et produire la mire.

4. Si le centre du papier (14) et celui de la sortie de mire (15) ne correspondent à la valeur de référence, effectuer le réglage suivant.  
<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

### Verificación de la línea central

1. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.
2. Introduzca papel en el cajón y haga una copia de prueba para verificar la operación.

3. Ejecute el elemento de mantenimiento 993. Seleccione "VTC PG1" y saque un patrón de prueba.  
Para máquinas a todo color, ejecute el elemento de mantenimiento 402 y haga que salga un patrón de prueba.

4. Si el centro del papel (14) y aquél de la salida del patrón de prueba (15) no cumplen con el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.  
<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

### Überprüfen der Mittellinie

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.
2. Legen Sie Papier in die Papierlade ein und machen Sie eine Testkopie, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.

3. Lassen Sie Wartungspunkt 993 laufen. Wählen Sie "VTC PG1" und drucken Sie ein Testmuster.  
Nur für Vollfarbenmaschinen den Wartungspunkt 402 ausführen und das Testmuster ausgeben.

4. Falls die Mitte des Papiers (14) und des ausgegebenen Testmusters (15) nicht mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.  
<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

### Controllare la linea centrale

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
2. Caricare la carta nel cassetto ed eseguire una copia di prova per controllare il funzionamento.

3. Eseguire la voce manutenzione 993. Selezionare "VTC PG1" e stampare un modello di prova.  
Solo per le macchine a colore, eseguire la voce manutenzione 402 e stampare un modello di prova.

4. Se il centro della carta (14) e quello del modello di prova (15) non rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento, eseguire la seguente regolazione.  
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

### [ 中心线的确认 ]

1. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。
2. 在纸盘内装入复印纸。  
进行测试复印，以确定复印动作状态。

3. 执行维修模式“993”而选择“VTC PG1”以进行测试图案的输出。  
全彩色机执行维修模式“402”，以进行测试图案的输出。

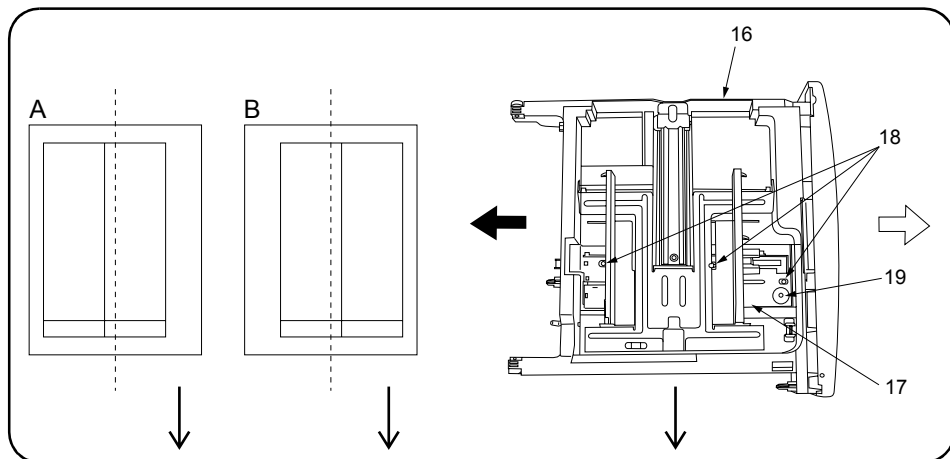
4. 如果复印纸的中心位置 (14) 与测试图案的中心位置 (15) 为标准值以外时，必须进行下列的调整项目。  
(标准值) 左右偏移：1.5mm 以下

### [ センターライン確認 ]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. カセットに用紙をセットする。  
テストコピーをおこない、動作を確認する。

3. メンテナンスモード“993”で“VTC PG1”を選び、テストパターンを出力する。  
フルカラー機は、メンテナンスモード“402”を選び、テストパターンを出力する。

4. 用紙のセンター(14) とテストパターンのセンター(15) が基準値外の時は、次の調整をおこなう。  
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下



### Adjusting the center line

1. Open the drawer (16) of the paper feeder and loosen the three screws (18) securing the adjuster (17).

A and B: test pattern output examples

2. If the test pattern output example looks like A, turn the adjusting screw (19) clockwise, move the adjuster (17) in the direction of the black arrow (←), and retighten the three screws (18).
3. If the test pattern output example looks like B, turn the adjusting screw (19) counterclockwise, move the adjuster (17) in the direction of the white arrow (→), and retighten the three screws (18).

4. Output the test pattern again.

5. Repeat steps 1 to 4 until the centers of the paper and the test pattern meet the reference value.

<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

### Réglage de la ligne médiane

1. Ouvrir le tiroir (16) du bureau papier et desserrer les trois vis (18) qui fixent le dispositif de réglage (17).

A et B: exemples de sortie de mieres

2. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à A, tourner la vis de réglage (19) dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (17) dans la direction de la flèche noire (←), et resserrer les trois vis (18).
3. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à B, tourner la vis de réglage (19) dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (17) dans la direction de la flèche blanche (→), et resserrer les trois vis (18).

4. Reproduire une nouvelle mire

5. Répéter les étapes 1 à 4 jusqu'à ce que le centre du papier et celui de la mire correspondent à la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

### Ajuste de la línea central

1. Abra el cajón de papel (16) del alimentador de papel y suelte los tres tornillos (18) que aseguran el regulador (17).

A y B: ejemplos de salidas de patrones de prueba

2. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a A, gire el tornillo de ajuste (19) en sentido horario, mueva el regulador (17) en la dirección que indica la flecha negra (←) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (18).
3. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a B, gire el tornillo de ajuste (19) en antihorario, mueva el regulador (17) en la dirección que indica la flecha blanca (→) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (18).

4. Saque un patrón de prueba nuevamente.

5. Repita los pasos 1 a 4 hasta que los centros de papel y el patrón de prueba cumplan con el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

### Einstellen der Mittelinie

1. Öffnen Sie den Auszug (16) der Papierlade und lösen Sie die drei Schrauben (18), die den Anpasser (17) halten.

A und B: Beispiele von Testmuster Ausgaben

2. Wenn die Testmuster Ausgabe aussieht wie A, drehen Sie die Einstellschraube (19) im Uhrzeigersinn, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (17) in Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils (←), und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (18) wieder fest.
3. Wenn die Testmuster Ausgabe aussieht wie B, drehen Sie die Einstellschraube (19) entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (17) in Richtung des weißen Pfeils (→), und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (18) wieder fest.

4. Drucken Sie erneut ein Testmuster aus.

5. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 4, bis die Mitte des Papiers und des Testmusters mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt.

<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

### Regolazione della linea centrale

1. Aprire il cassetto (16) dell'unità di alimentazione della carta e, allentando le tre viti (18), assicurare il regolatore (17).

A e B: esempi di stampa del modello di prova

2. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto A, girare la vite di regolazione (19) in senso orario, spostare il regolatore (17) nella direzione della freccia nera (←) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (18).
3. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto B, girare la vite di regolazione (19) in senso antiorario, spostare il regolatore (17) nella direzione della freccia bianca (→) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (18).

4. Stampare nuovamente il modello di prova.

5. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 4 fino a quando i centri della carta e del modello di prova rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

### [ 中心线的调整 ]

1. 拉出供纸工作台的纸盘 (16) 后, 松开调整板 (17) 上的 3 个螺丝 (18)。

A, B 测试图案

2. 测试图案为 A 画面时, 将调整螺丝 (19) 向右旋转, 按箭头 (←) 方向移动调整板 (17), 并紧固 3 个螺丝 (18)。
3. 测试图案为 B 画面时, 将调整螺丝 (19) 向左旋转, 按箭头 (→) 方向移动调整板 (17), 并紧固 3 个螺丝 (18)。

4. 再次进行测试图案的输出。

5. 反复操作步骤 1 至 4, 直到复印纸的中心与测试图案的中心为标准值内为止。  
(标准值) 左右偏移: 1.5mm 以下

### [ センターライン調整 ]

1. ペーパーフィーダのカセット (16) を引き出し、調整板 (17) のビス (18) 3 本を緩める。

A, B: テストパターン

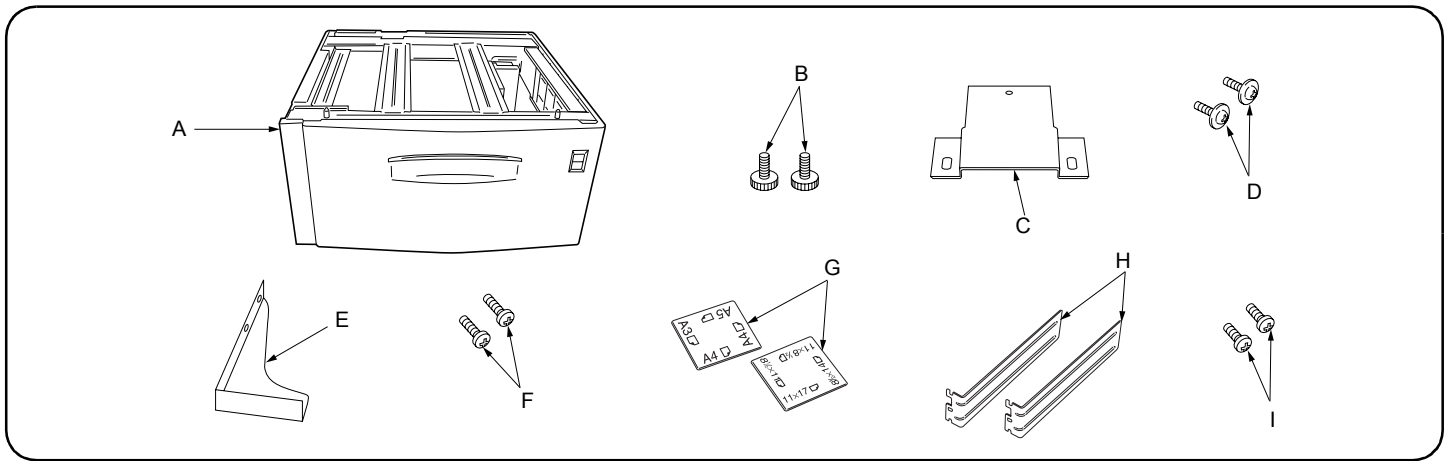
2. テストパターンが A 画像の場合、調整ネジ (19) を右に回し、矢印 (←) の向きに調整板 (17) を動かす、ビス (18) 3 本を締め付ける。
3. テストパターンが B 画像の場合、調整ネジ (19) を左に回し、矢印 (→) の向きに調整板 (17) を動かす、ビス (18) 3 本を締め付ける。

4. 再度、テストパターン出力をおこなう。

5. 用紙のセンターとテストパターンのセンターが基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 4 を繰り返す。  
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR 3000 SHEETS PAPER FEEDER**





<b>English</b>		F Binding screw, M4 × 16.....2
Supplied parts		G Paper size plate .....2
A Paper feeder.....1		H Longitudinal size adjuster (inch specifications only) .....2
B Pin .....2		I Round cross-head tapping screw, M3 × 8 (inch specifications only) .....2
C Retainer .....1		
D TP screw, M4 × 06.....2		
E Stay .....1		

<b>Français</b>		F Vis de raccordement, M4 × 16 .....2
Pièces fournies		G Plaque de format de papier.....2
A Bureau papier.....1		H Dispositif de réglage du format longitudinal (spécifications en pouces seulement) .....2
B Broche.....2		I Vis de connexion à tête cruciforme ronde, M3 × 8 (spécifications en pouces seulement) ....2
C Élément de retenue.....1		
D Vis TP, M4 × 06 .....2		
E Support.....1		

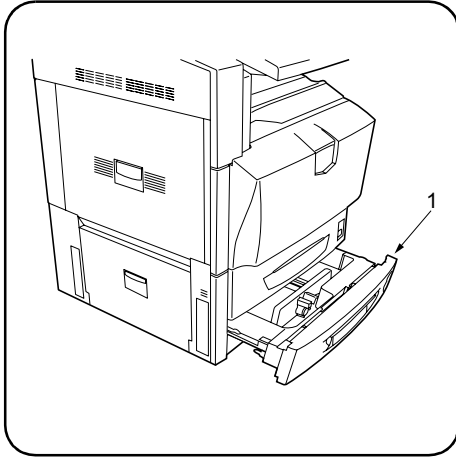
<b>Español</b>		F Tornillo de sujeción, M4 × 16 .....2
Partes suministradas		G Placa de tamaño de papel .....2
A Alimentador de papel.....1		H Regulador de tamaño longitudinal (sólo especificaciones de pulgadas).....2
B Clavija.....2		I Tornillo de roscado de cabeza en cruz redonda, M3 × 8 (sólo especificaciones de pulgadas).....2
C Retén.....1		
D Tornillo TP, M4 × 06.....2		
E Base .....1		

<b>Deutsch</b>		F Verbundschraube, M4 × 16.....2
Gelieferte Teile		G Papierformatplatte.....2
A Papiereinzug .....1		H Längsgrößen-Einsteller (nur Zollspezifikationen) .....2
B Stift .....2		I Kreuzschlitz-Rundkopf-Schneidschraube, M3 × 8 (nur Zollspezifikationen) .....2
C Halterung.....1		
D TP-Schraube, M4 × 06 .....2		
E Stütze .....1		

<b>Italiano</b>		F Vite di serraggio, M4 × 16.....2
Parti di forniture		G Piastra formato carta.....2
A Unità di alimentazione della carta .....1		H Regolatore della misura longitudinale (solo per le specifiche in pollici).....2
B Perno .....2		I Vite autofilettante circolare a croce, M3 × 8 (solo per le specifiche in pollici).....2
C Fermo .....1		
D Vite TP, M4 × 06 .....2		
E Sospensione .....1		

<b>简体中文</b>		E 防倒金属件 ..... 1
附属品		F 连接螺丝 M4 × 16 ..... 2
A 供纸工作台..... 1		G 复印纸尺寸托板 ..... 2
B 固定插销..... 2		H 纵向尺寸板 (仅适用于英寸尺寸的产品) ..... 2
C 安装板..... 1		I 十字槽盘头自攻螺丝 M3 × 8 (仅适用于英寸尺寸的产品) ..... 2
D TP 螺丝 M4 × 06..... 2		

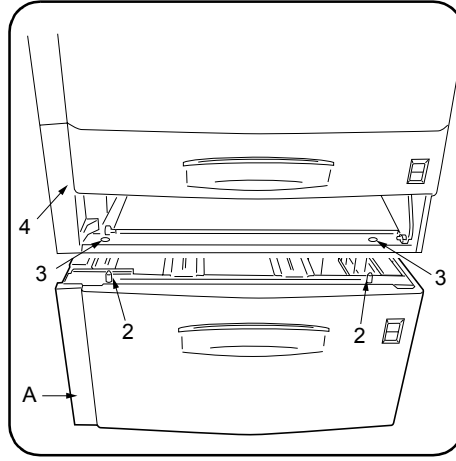
<b>日本語</b>		E 転倒防止金具 (日本仕様では使用しない) ..... 1
付属部品		F ビス バインド M4 × 16 (日本仕様では使用しない) ..... 2
A ペーパーフィーダ..... 1		G ペーパーサイズプレート..... 2
B ピン..... 2		H 縦幅サイズ板(インチ仕様のみ) ..... 2
C 取付板..... 1		I ビス + ナベ M3 × 8 タッピング (インチ仕様のみ) ..... 2
D ビス TP M4 × 06 ..... 2		



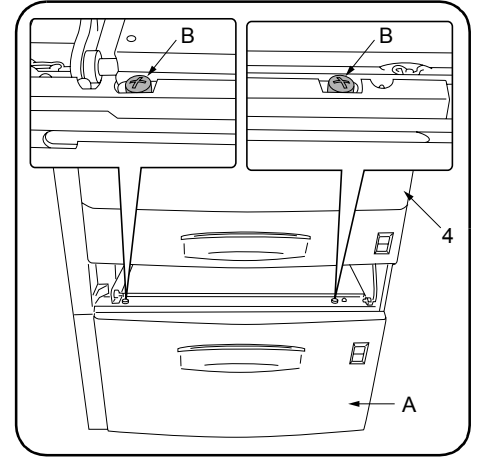
### Procedure

Be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the paper feeder.

1. Remove the lower paper cassette (1) from the MFP.



2. Place the MFP (4) on top of the paper feeder (A) with the positioning pins (2) at the front left and right of the paper feeder (A) aligned with the holes (3) in the base of the MFP.



3. Secure the MFP to the paper feeder (A) using the two pins (B).

### Procédure

Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du bureau papier.

1. Retirer le tiroir inférieur (1) du MFP.

2. Placer le MFP (4) sur le bureau papier (A) en alignant les broches de positionnement (2) situées aux côtés avant gauche et droit du bureau papier (A) sur les orifices (3) à la base du MFP.

3. Fixer le MFP sur le bureau papier (A) à l'aide des deux broches (B).

### Procedimiento

Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal del MFP y de desconectar el enchufe del MFP del receptáculo de pared antes de empezar a instalar el alimentador de papel.

1. Quite el cajón de papel inferior (1) del MFP.

2. Coloque el MFP (4) sobre el alimentador de papel (A) con las clavijas de posicionamiento (2) de la parte frontal izquierda y derecha del alimentador de papel (A) alineadas con los huecos (3) de la base del MFP.

3. Asegure el MFP al alimentador de papel (A) usando las dos clavijas (B).

### Vorgang

Schalten Sie unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker des MFP von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Papiereinzugs beginnen.

1. Nehmen Sie die untere Papierlade (1) vom MFP ab.

2. Setzen Sie den MFP (4) auf den Papiereinzug (A), wobei die Positionsstifte (2) vorne links und rechts am Papiereinzug (A) mit den Löchern (3) in der Basis des MFP ausgerichtet sein müssen.

3. Befestigen Sie den MFP mit den zwei Stiften (B) am Papiereinzug (A).

### Procedura

Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione dell'unità di alimentazione della carta, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e di disinserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

1. Rimuovere il cassetto inferiore della carta (1) dall'MFP.

2. Installare l'MFP (4) sopra l'unità di alimentazione della carta (A), mantenendo i perni di posizionamento (2) situati sul lato anteriore sinistro e destro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) stessa allineati con i fori (3) situati sulla base dell'MFP.

3. Assicurare l'MFP all'unità di alimentazione della carta (A) utilizzando i due perni (B).

### [ 安装步骤 ]

安装供纸工作台时, 必须先关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关, 并拔出电源插头后方可进行工作。

1. 取出 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (1)。

2. 供纸工作台 (A) 的左右前面的各插销 (2) 分别对准 MFP 主机底面的各相应销孔 (3) 后, 将 MFP 主机 (4) 放在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

3. 用 2 个固定插销 (B) 将 MFP 主机固定在供纸工作台 (A) 上。

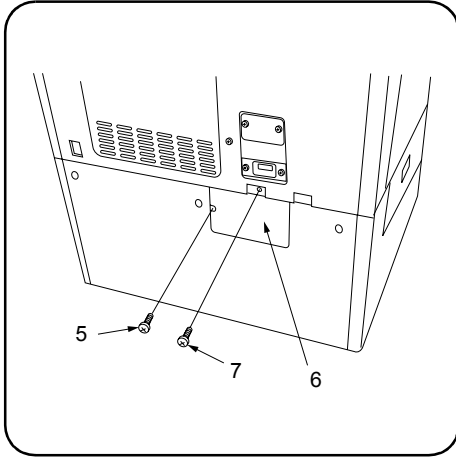
### [ 取付手順 ]

ペーパーフィーダを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、MFP 本体の電源プラグを抜いてから作業をおこなうこと。

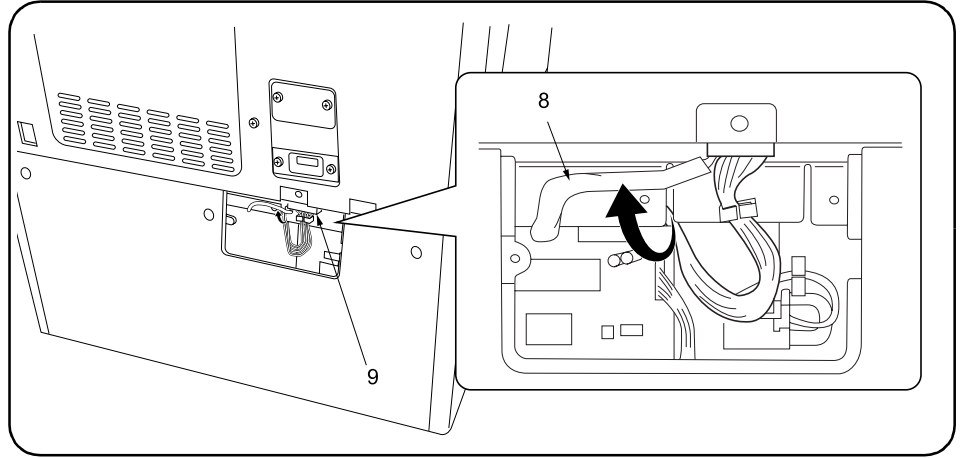
1. MFP 本体の下部カセット (1) を取り外す。

2. ペーパーフィーダ (A) の左右前方の各ピン (2) と MFP 本体のベースの穴 (3) が合うように、ペーパーフィーダ (A) に MFP 本体 (4) を載せる。

3. ピン (B) 2 本で MFP 本体をペーパーフィーダ (A) に固定する。



4. Refit the lower paper cassette (1) removed in step 1 to the MFP.
5. Remove the screw (5) and then the cover (6) from the rear of the paper feeder.
6. Remove the screw (7) from the MFP.



7. Pull out the wire (8) covered with the black tube in front of the frame. Connect the 12-P connector (9) to the connector on the MFP.

4. Remettre en place sur le MFP le tiroir inférieur (1) qui a été retiré auparavant à l'étape 1.
5. Retirer la vis (5) puis le couvercle (6) de l'arrière du bureau papier.
6. Retirer la vis (7) du MFP.

7. Tirer le câble (8) recouvert par le tube noir à l'avant du cadre. Connecter le connecteur à douze broches (9) au connecteur du MFP.

4. Vuelva a colocar el cajón de papel inferior (1) desmontado en el paso 1 en el MFP.
5. Quite el tornillo (5) y luego la tapa (6) de la parte trasera del alimentador de papel.
6. Quite el tornillo (7) del MFP.

7. Saque el cable (8) cubierto con el tubo negro en el frente del bastidor. Conecte el conector de 12 clavijas (9) en el conector del MFP.

4. Bringen Sie die untere Papierlade (1), die in Schritt 1 entfernt wurde, erneut am MFP an.
5. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (5) und dann die Abdeckung (6) von der Rückseite des Papiereinzugs.
6. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (7) vom MFP.

7. Ziehen Sie das mit dem schwarzen Mantel umhüllte Kabel (8) auf der Vorderseite des Rahmens heraus. Schließen Sie den 12-poligen Steckverbinder (9) an den Steckverbinder am MFP an.

4. Reinsere nell'MFP il cassetto inferiore della carta (1) rimosso al punto 1.
5. Rimuovere la vite (5) e quindi il pannello (6) dal retro dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.
6. Rimuovere la vite (7) dal retro dell'MFP.

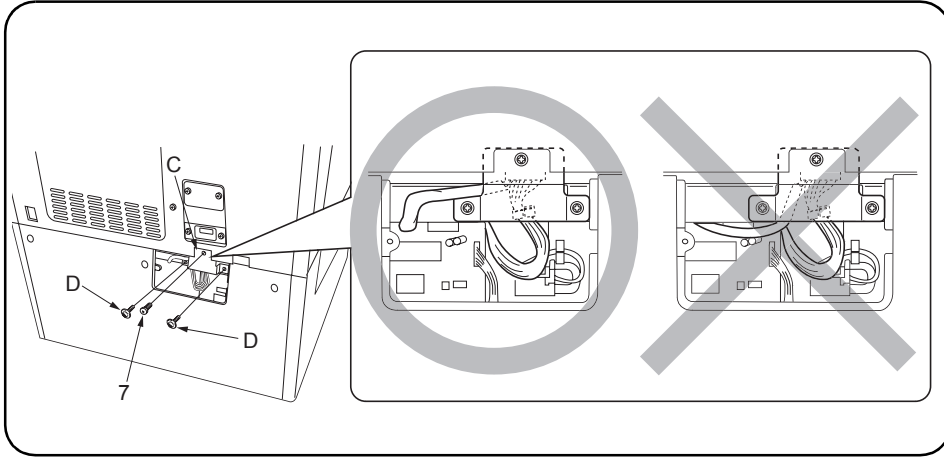
7. Tirare fuori, davanti al telaio, il cavo (8) coperto con il tubo nero. Collegare il connettore a 12 piedini (9) al connettore sull'MFP.

4. 在步骤 1 取下 MFP 主机的下部供纸盒 (1) 装回原来的位置。
5. 拆除 1 个螺丝 (5)，拆下供纸工作台的后部盖板 (6)。
6. 拆除 MFP 主机后部的 1 个螺丝 (7)。

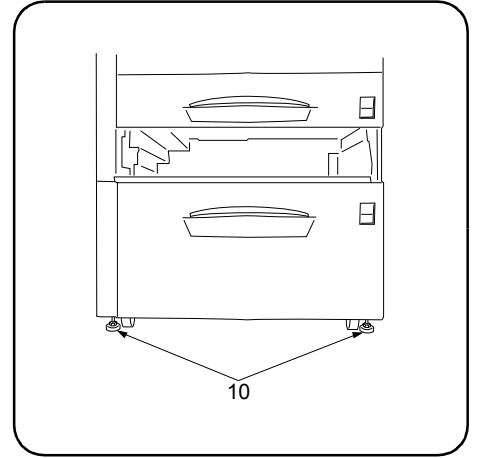
7. 将用黑套管包覆的电线 (8) 拉至机架前。将 12 脚接头 (9) 与 MFP 主机上的接口连接。

4. 手順 1 で取り外した MFP 本体の下段カセット (1) を元に戻す。
5. ビス (5) 1 本を外し、ペーパーフィーダ後部のカバー (6) を取り外す。
6. MFP 本体後部のビス (7) 1 本を外す。

7. 黒いチューブで覆われた電線 (8) を、フレームの手前に引き出す。12P コネクタ (9) を MFP 本体のコネクタに接続する。



8. Separate the wire (8) covered with the black tube and the signal wires as shown on the above drawing, and install the retainer (C) using the screw (7) removed in step 6 and the two M4 × 06 TP screws (D).
9. Refit the cover (6) using the screw (5) removed in step 5.



10. Turn the four adjusters (10) until they reach the floor and adjust them to level the machine.

8. Séparer le câble (8) recouvert par le tube noir et les câbles de signaux comme montré dans le dessin ci-dessus et installer l'élément de retenue (C) à l'aide de la vis (7) retirée à l'étape 6 et les deux vis TP M4 × 06 (D).
9. Remettre le couvercle (6) en place à l'aide de la vis (5) retirée auparavant à l'étape 5.

10. Tourner les quatre pieds réglables (10) jusqu'à ce qu'ils atteignent le sol, et les régler au niveau de la machine.

8. Separe el cable (8) cubierto con el tubo negro y los cables de señal tal como aparece en el dibujo de arriba e instale el retén (C) usando el tornillo (7) removido en el paso 6 y los dos tornillos TP M4 × 06 (D).
9. Vuelva a colocar la tapa (6) usando el tornillo (5) quitado en el paso 5.

10. Gire los cuatro ajustadores (10) hasta que lleguen al piso y ajústelos hasta que nivelen la máquina.

8. Trennen Sie das mit dem schwarzen Mantel umhüllte Kabel (8) und die Signalkabel, wie in der obigen Zeichnung gezeigt, und installieren Sie die Halterung (C), indem Sie die Schraube (7) benutzen, die Sie in Schritt 6 entfernt haben, sowie die zwei M4 × 06 TP-Schrauben (D).
9. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung (6) wieder mit der in Schritt (5) entfernten Schraube 5 an.

10. Drehen Sie die vier Einstellfüße (10), bis sie den Boden erreichen und stellen Sie sie so ein, daß die Maschine nivelliert ist.

8. Separare il cavo (8) coperto con il tubo nero e i cavi del segnale come indicato nel disegno qui sopra, e installare il fermo (C) utilizzando la vite (7) rimossa al passo 6 e le due viti TP M4 × 06(D).
9. Inserire il pannello posteriore (6) usando le viti (5) rimosse al punto 5.

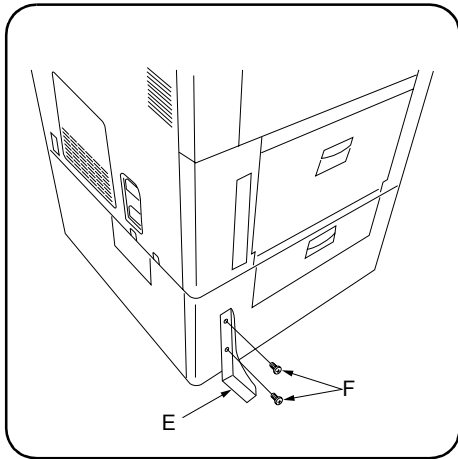
10. Ruotare i quattro piedini regolabili (10) sino a quando vengono a contatto con il pavimento; quindi regolarne l'altezza in modo da livellare la macchina.

8. 将用黑套管包覆的电线 (8) 如图示要求那样使电线分离, 用步骤 6 中拆除的 1 个螺丝 (7) 和两个 TP 螺丝 M4 × 06 (D) 来进行安装板 (C) 的安装工作。
9. 用步骤 5 拆除的 1 个螺丝 (5) 将盖板 (6) 装回原来的位置。

10. 旋转 4 个角落的高度调节器 (10) 至地板高度, 以调节 MFP 主机的整体高度。

8. 黒いチューブで覆われた電線 (8) と電線を図のように分離させ、手順 6 で外したビス (7) 1 本と、ビス TP M4 × 06 (D) 2 本で取付板 (C) を取り付ける。
9. 手順 5 で取り外したビス (5) 1 本でカバー (6) を元通りに取り付ける。

10. 4 隅のアジャスター (10) を床に接触するまで回しながら MFP 本体の全体の高さを調節する。



**For 120 V and 220 – 240 V specifications only**  
**11.** Fit the stay (E) to the lower left of the large paper deck toward the rear using the two M4 × 16 binding screws (F) such that it makes contact with the floor.  
**Note:** Do not fit the stay (E) if the document finisher is to be installed.

**Pour spécifications 120 V et 220 – 240 V uniquement**

**11.** Installer le support (E) sur la partie inférieure gauche du grand plateau à papier, vers l'arrière, à l'aide des deux vis de raccordement M4 × 16 (F) de façon à qu'il soit en contact avec le sol.  
**Remarque:** Ne pas installer le support (E) si le retoucheur de document doit être installé.

**Para especificaciones de 120 V y 220 – 240 V solamente**

**11.** Coloque la base (E) en el lado izquierdo inferior de la tabla grande de papel hacia la parte de atrás usando los dos tornillos de sujeción M4 × 16 (F) de modo que haga contacto con el piso.  
**Nota:** No coloque la base (E) si se va a instalar el finalizador de documentos.

**Nur für 120 V und 220 – 240 V Spezifikationen**

**11.** Bringen Sie die Stütze (E) unten links am großen Papierdeck, in Richtung Rückseite an. Benutzen Sie dazu die zwei M4 × 16 Verbundschrauben (F) so, daß diese mit dem Boden in Berührung kommen.  
**Hinweis:** Bringen Sie die Stütze (E) nicht an, wenn der Dokumentenfixierer installiert werden soll.

**Specifiche solo per 120 V e 220 – 240 V**

**11.** Inserire la sospensione (E) nella parte inferiore sinistra del cassettone verso il retro utilizzando le due viti di serraggio M4 × 16 (F) in modo tale che sia a contatto col pavimento.  
**Nota:** non inserire la sospensione (E) se la finitrice di documenti deve essere installata.

**仅适用于 120V、220/240V 的产品**

**11.** 用 2 个连接螺丝 M4 × 16(F) 安装防倒金属件 (E), 防倒金属件 (E) 须贴紧地面。若欲安装装订器, 则不安装防倒金属件 (E)。

**日本仕様ではこの作業はありません**

**11.** 転倒防止取付金具 (E) を床に接触するように、ビス バインド M4 × 16(F) 2 本で取り付ける。ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける場合、転倒防止取付金具 (E) は取り付けない。

**Setting the paper size**

At the time of shipping, the paper size is set to Letter for inch specifications and A4 for metric specifications. To change the size, follow the procedure below.

1. Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder.

**Réglage de la taille du papier**

Au moment de l'expédition, le format du papier est réglé à Lettre pour les spécifications en pouces, et à A4 pour les spécifications métriques. Pour changer le format, procéder comme suit.

1. Tirer le magasin du bureau papier vers soi.

**Configuración del tamaño de papel**

Al momento de la salida de fábrica, el tamaño de papel está ajustado a Carta para las especificaciones de pulgadas y A4 para las especificaciones métricas. Para cambiar el tamaño, siga el procedimiento de abajo.

1. Abra el casete del alimentador de papel.

**Einstellen der Papiergröße**

Das Papierformat wurde vor dem Versand auf Letter für Zollspezifikationen und A4 für metrische Spezifikationen eingestellt. Um das Format zu ändern, gehen Sie folgendermaßen vor.

1. Ziehen Sie die Papierlade aus dem Papiereinzug.

**Impostazione della dimensione della carta**

Al momento della spedizione, il formato della carta è impostato su Lettera per le specifiche in pollici e A4 per le specifiche metriche. Per cambiare formato, seguire la procedura qui in basso.

1. Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentatore della carta.

**[ 尺寸设定 ]**

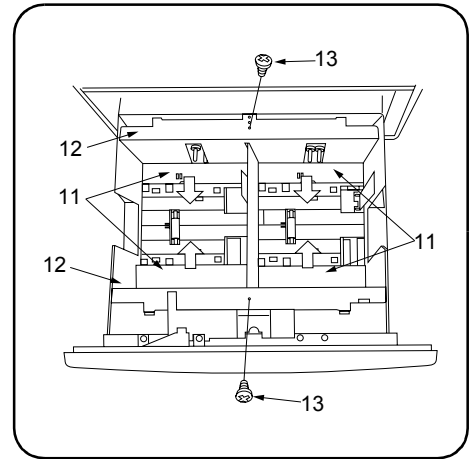
出厂时, 英寸尺寸的产品设定为 Letter, 厘米尺寸的产品设定为 A4。需要变更尺寸时, 按照以下顺序进行操作。

1. 拉出供纸工作台的供纸盒。

**[ サイズ設定 ]**

出荷時、インチ仕様は Letter、センチ仕様は A4 に設定されています。サイズを変更する場合は次の手順をおこなってください。

1. ペーパーフィーダのカセットを引き出す。



2. Move the sliders (11) at the machine front and rear inward (two at each point).
3. Remove the screw (13) from each of the front and rear lateral size adjusters (12).

2. Déplacer les curseurs (11), à l'avant et à l'arrière de la machine, vers l'intérieur (deux à chaque endroit).
3. Retirer la vis (13) de chaque dispositif de réglage du format latéral avant et arrière (12).

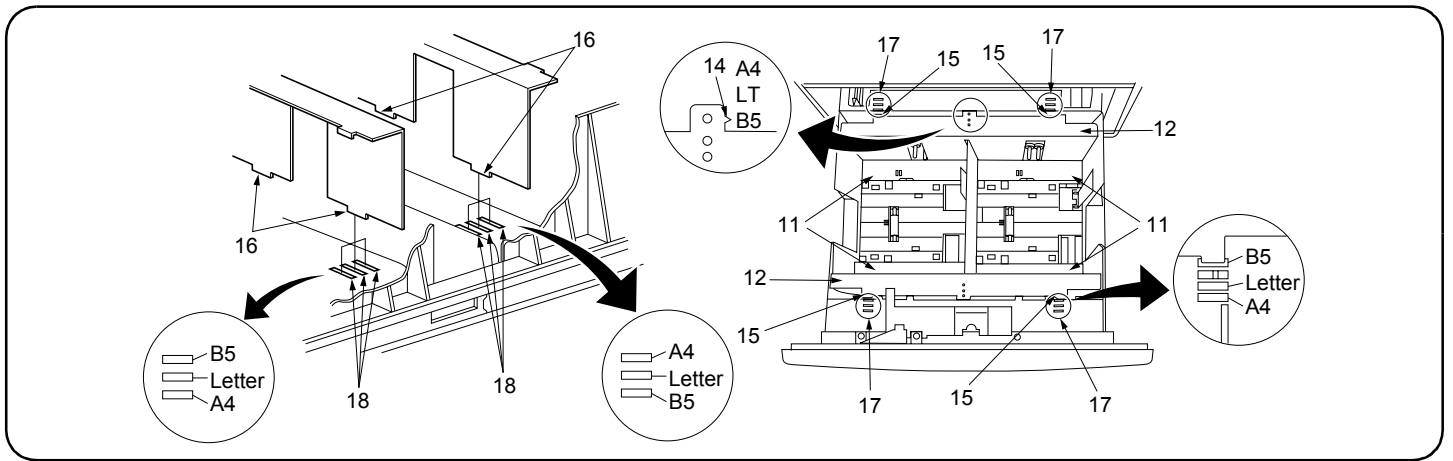
2. Mueva los graduadores (11) del frente y parte trasera de la máquina hacia adentro (dos en cada punto).
3. Quite el tornillo (13) de cada regulador de tamaño lateral frontal y trasero (12).

2. Bewegen Sie die Schieber (11) an der Vorder- und Rückseite des Gerätes nach innen (zwei an jedem Punkt).
3. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (13) von jedem der vorderen und hinteren Quergrößen-Einsteller (12).

2. Spostare verso l'interno gli scivoli (11) nella parte anteriore e posteriore della macchina (due in ciascun punto).
3. Rimuovere la vite (13) da ciascuno dei regolatori della misura laterale anteriori e posteriori (12).

2. 把前后各 2 张的滑板 (11) 往内侧移动。
3. 拆除横向尺寸板 (12) 上前后的各 1 个螺丝 (13)。

2. 前後各 2 枚のスライド板 (11) を内側にずらす。
3. 前後の横幅サイズ板 (12) より各ビス (13) 1 本を外す。



4. Insert the upper tabs (15) and lower tabs (16) of the front and rear lateral size adjusters (12) into the upper slots (17) and lower slots (18) respectively such that the size indicators (14) point to the size of paper to be used. Secure the lateral size adjusters using the screw (13) for each.  
For the front side, check the paper size referring to the positions where the upper tabs (15) are inserted into the upper slots (17).  
Upper slot (17) positions: Front (A4), middle (Letter), rear (B5)  
Upper slot (17) positions on the rear side: Front (B5), middle (Letter), rear (A4)
5. Move the front and rear sliders (11) (two at each point) outward until they make contact with the lateral size adjusters (12).

4. Insérer les pattes supérieures (15) et inférieures (16) des dispositifs de réglage du format latéral avant et arrière (12), dans les fentes supérieures (17) et inférieures (18) respectivement, de façon à ce que les indicateurs de format (14) pointent à la taille du papier à utiliser. Fixer les dispositifs de réglage du format latéral à l'aide de leur vis (13).  
Pour le côté avant, vérifier la taille du papier en se référant aux positions auxquelles les pattes supérieures (15) sont insérées dans les fentes supérieures (17).  
Positions des fentes supérieures (17): Avant (A4), milieu (Lettre), arrière (B5)  
Positions des fentes supérieures (17) sur le côté arrière: Avant (B5), milieu (Lettre), arrière (A4)
5. Déplacer les curseurs avant et arrière (11), (deux à chaque endroit), vers l'extérieur jusqu'à ce qu'ils entrent en contact avec les dispositifs de réglage du format latéral (12).

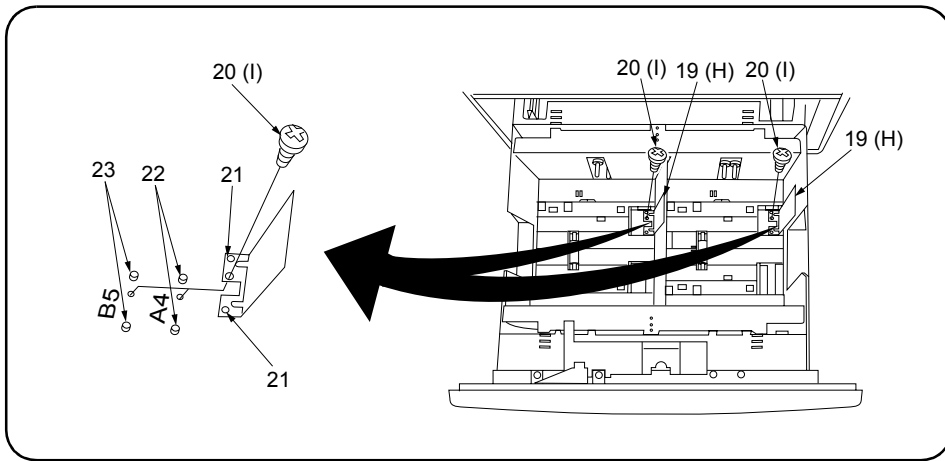
4. Inserte las lengüetas superiores (15) y las lengüetas inferiores (16) de los reguladores de tamaño laterales frontales y traseros (12) en las ranuras superiores (17) y las ranuras inferiores (18) respectivamente de modo que los indicadores de tamaño (14) apunten al tamaño de papel a ser usado. Asegure los reguladores de tamaño laterales usando el tornillo (13) para cada uno.  
Para el lado frontal, verifique el tamaño de papel consultando las posiciones donde las lengüetas superiores (15) están insertadas en las ranuras superiores (17)  
Posiciones de ranura superior (17): Adelante (A4), medio (Carta), atrás (B5)  
Posiciones de ranura superior (17) en el lado trasero: Adelante (B5), medio (Carta), atrás (A4)
5. Mueva los graduadores frontales y traseros (11) (dos en cada punto) hacia fuera hasta que hagan contacto con los reguladores de tamaño laterales (12).

4. Führen Sie die oberen Laschen (15) und die unteren Laschen (16) der vorderen und hinteren Quergrößen-Einsteller (12) jeweils in die oberen Schlitze (17) und unteren Schlitze (18), so daß die Größenanzeiger (14) auf die zu benutzende Papiergröße zeigen. Sichern Sie die Quergrößen-Einsteller mit jeweils einer Schraube (13).  
Für die Vorderseite das Papierformat anhand der Positionen prüfen, wo die oberen Laschen (15) in die oberen Schlitze (17) eingeführt sind.  
Positionen der oberen Schlitze (17): Vorne (A4), Mitte (Letter), Hinten (B5)  
Positionen der oberen Schlitze (17) auf der Rückseite: Vorne (B5), Mitte (Letter), Hinten (A4)
5. Bewegen Sie die vorderen und hinteren Schieber (11) (zwei an jedem Punkt) nach außen, bis sie mit den Quergrößen-Einstellern (12) in Kontakt kommen.

4. Inserire le linguette superiori (15) e le linguette inferiori (16) dei regolatori della misura laterale anteriori e posteriori (12) nelle scanalature superiori (17) e nelle scanalature inferiori (18) rispettivamente, in modo tale che gli indicatori della misura (14) puntino alla dimensione della carta da utilizzare. Fissare i regolatori della misura laterale utilizzando la vite (13) per ciascuno di essi.  
Per il lato anteriore, controllare il formato carta facendo riferimento alle posizioni dove le linguette superiori (15) sono inserite nelle scanalature superiori (17).  
Le posizioni delle scanalature superiori (17): Anteriore (A4), centrale (lettera), posteriore (B5)  
Posizioni delle scanalature superiori sul lato posteriore: Anteriore (B5), centrale (Lettera), posteriore (A4)
5. Spostare verso l'esterno gli scivoli anteriori e posteriori (11) (due in ciascun punto) fino a quando non vengano a contatto con i regolatori della misura laterale (12).

4. 将前后横向尺寸板 (14) 的上卡爪 (15)、下卡爪 (16) 分别插入上槽 (17) 和下槽 (18), 再用 1 个螺丝 (13) 固定, 让尺寸指示爪 (14) 表示所使用的复印纸尺寸。  
前侧是在上卡爪 (15) 插入上槽 (17) 的位置上确认纸张尺寸。  
上槽 (17) 的位置: 前面 (A4)、中央 (Letter)、里侧 (B5)  
后面的上槽 (17) 的位置: 前面 (B5)、中央 (Letter)、里侧 (A4)
5. 向外移动前后各 2 张滑板 (11), 直到碰到横向尺寸板 (12) 为止。

4. サイズ指示爪 (14) が使用する用紙サイズを示すように、前後の横幅サイズ板 (12) の上爪 (15)、下爪 (16) を上溝 (17)、下溝 (18) に差し込み、ビス (13) 1 本で固定する。  
前側は、上爪 (15) を上溝 (17) の差し込む位置で用紙サイズを確認する。  
上溝 (17) の位置: 手前 (A4)、中央 (Letter)、奥 (B5)  
後側の上溝 (17) の位置: 手前 (B5)、中央 (Letter)、奥 (A4)
5. 前後各 2 枚のスライド板 (11) を、横幅サイズ板 (12) に当たるまで外側にずらす。



6. Remove the screw (20) from each of the left and right longitudinal size adjusters (19). (metric specifications only)
7. Align the pin holes (21) in the left and right longitudinal size adjusters (19) with the A4 pins (22) or B5 pins (23) according to the size of paper to be used. Secure the adjusters using the screw (20) for each.  
For inch specifications, align the pin holes (21) in the left and right longitudinal size adjusters (H) with the A4 pins (22) or B5 pins (23) according to the size of paper to be used. Secure the adjusters using the round cross-head tapping screw M3 × 8 (I) for each.

8. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main switch on.
9. Run maintenance item 208 and set the paper size for the paper feeder (B5/A4/Letter).

6. Retirer la vis (20) de chaque dispositif de réglage du format longitudinal gauche et droit (19). (spécifications métriques seulement)
7. Aligner les trous de broches (21) des dispositifs de réglage du format longitudinal gauche et droit (19), avec les broches A4 (22) ou B5 (23), selon la taille du papier à utiliser. Fixer les dispositifs de réglage à l'aide de leur vis (20).  
Pour les spécifications en pouces, aligner les trous de broches (21) des dispositifs de réglage du format longitudinal gauche et droit (H) sur les broches A4 (22) ou B5 (23) selon la taille du papier à utiliser. Fixer les dispositifs de réglage à l'aide de leur vis de connexion à tête cruciforme ronde M3 × 8 (I).

8. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.
9. Exécuter l'élément d'entretien 208 et régler la taille du papier pour le bureau papier (B5/A4/Letter).

6. Quite el tornillo (20) de cada regulador de tamaño longitudinal de la izquierda y de la derecha (19). (sólo especificaciones métricas)
7. Alinee los huecos de las clavijas (21) de los reguladores de tamaño longitudinales de la izquierda y de la derecha (19) con las clavijas A4 (22) o clavijas B5 (23) de acuerdo al tamaño del papel a utilizarse. Asegure los reguladores usando el tornillo (20) para cada uno.  
Para las especificaciones de pulgadas, alinee los huecos de las clavijas (21) en los reguladores de tamaño longitudinal de la izquierda y de la derecha (H) con las clavijas A4 (22) o clavijas B5 (23) de acuerdo al tamaño de papel a utilizarse. Asegure los reguladores usando el tornillo de roscado de cabeza en cruz M3 × 8 (I) para cada uno.

8. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.
9. Haga el ítem de mantenimiento 208 y configure el tamaño de papel para el alimentador de papel (B5/A4/Letter).

6. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (20) von jedem der linken und rechten Längsgrößen-Einsteller (19). (nur metrische Spezifikationen)
7. Richten Sie die Stiftlöcher (21) in den linken und rechten Längsgrößen-Einstellern (19) mit den A4-Stiften (22) oder B5-Stiften (23) aus, abhängig von der benutzten Papiergröße. Sichern Sie die Einsteller mit jeweils einer Schraube (20).  
Richten Sie die Stiftlöcher (21) im linken und rechten Längsgrößen-Einsteller (H) für Zollspezifikationen auf die A4-Stifte (22) oder B5-Stifte (23) aus, abhängig von der zu verwendenden Papiergröße. Sichern Sie die Einsteller mit jeweils einer Kreuzschlitz-Rundkopf-Schneidschraube M3 × 8 (I).

8. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.
9. Führen Sie Wartungspunkt 208 aus und stellen Sie die Papiergröße für den Papiereinzug (B5/A4/Letter) ein.

6. Rimuovere la vite (20) da ciascuno dei regolatori della misura longitudinale sinistro e destro (19). (solo specifiche metriche)
7. Allineare i fori dei perni (21) nei regolatori della misura longitudinale sinistro e destro (19) con i perni A4 (22) o con i perni B5 (23) a seconda della misura della carta da utilizzare. Fissare i regolatori utilizzando la vite (20) per ciascuno di essi.  
Per le specifiche in pollici, allineare i fori dei perni (21) nei regolatori della misura longitudinale sinistro e destro (H) con i perni A4 (22) o B5 (23) a seconda del formato della carta che si deve usare. Fissare i regolatori usando una vite autofilettante circolare a croce M3 × 8 (I) per ciascuno.

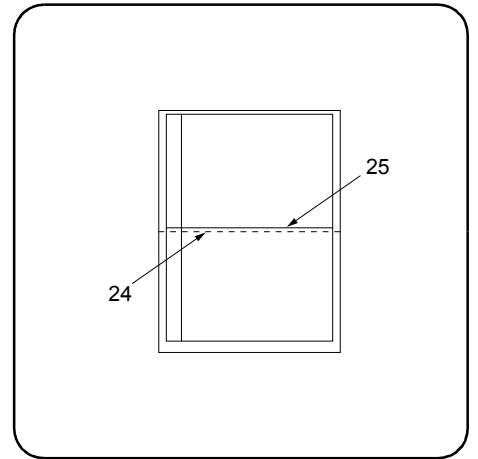
8. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.
9. Eseguire l'opzione di manutenzione 208 ed impostare la dimensione della carta della relativa unità di alimentazione (B5/A4/Letter).

6. 拆除各1个螺丝(20)后,再拆下左右两侧的纵向尺寸板(19)。(仅适用于厘米尺寸的产品)
7. 按复印纸的尺寸,将左右两侧的纵向尺寸板(19)的插销孔(21)对准A4插销(22)或B5插销(23)插好,再用1个螺丝(20)固定。  
英寸尺寸的产品按复印纸的尺寸,将左右两侧的纵向尺寸板(H)的插销孔(21)对准A4插销(22)或B5插销(23)插好,再用1个十字槽盘头自攻螺丝M3×8(I)固定。

8. 将MFP主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中,打开主电源开关。
9. 择维修模式“208”设定供纸工作台所使用的复印纸尺寸(B5/A4/Letter)。

6. 各ビス(20)1本を外し、左右の縦幅サイズ板(19)を取り外す。(センチ仕様のみ)
7. 用紙サイズに応じて、左右の縦幅サイズ板(19)のピン穴(21)をA4ピン(22)またはB5ピン(23)に合わせて取り付け、ビス(20)1本で固定する。  
インチ仕様では、用紙サイズに応じて、左右の縦幅サイズ板(H)のピン穴(21)をA4ピン(22)またはB5ピン(23)に合わせて取り付け、ビス+ナベM3×8タッピング(I)1本で固定する。

8. MFP本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチをONにする。
9. メンテナンスモード“208”でペーパーフィーダにセットする用紙のサイズ(B5/A4/Letter)を設定する。



### Checking the center line

1. Connect the MFP power plug to the wall outlet and turn the MFP main switch on.

2. Run maintenance item 993. Select "VTC PG1" and output a test pattern.  
For full-color machines, run maintenance item 402 and output the test pattern.

3. If the center of the paper (24) and that of the test pattern output (25) do not meet the reference value, perform the following adjustment.  
<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

### Vérification de la ligne médiane

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sous tension.

2. Exécuter le point de maintenance 993. Sélectionner "VTC PG1" et produire une mire.  
Sur les machines entièrement en couleurs, exécuter le point de maintenance 402 et produire la mire.

3. Si le centre du papier (24) et celui de la sortie de mire (25) ne correspondent à la valeur de référence, effectuer le réglage suivant.  
<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

### Verificación de la línea central

1. Conecte el enchufe del MFP en el receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP.

2. Ejecute el elemento de mantenimiento 993. Seleccione "VTC PG1" y saque un patrón de prueba.  
Para máquinas a todo color, ejecute el elemento de mantenimiento 402 y haga que salga un patrón de prueba.

3. Si el centro del papel (24) y aquél de la salida del patrón de prueba (25) no cumplen con el valor de referencia, haga el siguiente ajuste.  
<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

### Überprüfen der Mittellinie

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in die Wandsteckdose und schalten Sie den MFP am Hauptschalter ein.

2. Lassen Sie Wartungspunkt 993 laufen. Wählen Sie "VTC PG1" und drucken Sie ein Testmuster.  
Nur für Vollfarbmaschinen den Wartungspunkt 402 ausführen und das Testmuster ausgeben.

3. Falls die Mitte des Papiers (24) und des ausgegebenen Testmusters (25) nicht mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt, ist die folgende Einstellung durchzuführen.  
<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

### Controllare la linea centrale

1. Collegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP alla presa a muro della rete elettrica e accendere l'interruttore principale di alimentazione.

2. Eseguire la voce manutenzione 993. Selezionare "VTC PG1" e stampare un modello di prova.  
Solo per le macchine a colore, eseguire la voce manutenzione 402 e stampare un modello di prova.

3. Se il centro della carta (24) e quello del modello di prova (25) non rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento, eseguire la seguente regolazione.  
<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

### [ 中心线的确认 ]

1. 将 MFP 主机上的电源插头插入电源插座中，打开主电源开关。

2. 执行维修模式“993”而选择“VTC PG1”以进行测试图案的输出。  
全彩色机执行维修模式“402”，以进行测试图案的输出。

3. 如果复印纸的中心位置 (24) 与测试图案的中心位置 (25) 为标准值以外时，必须进行下列的调整项目。  
(标准值) 左右偏移：1.5mm 以下

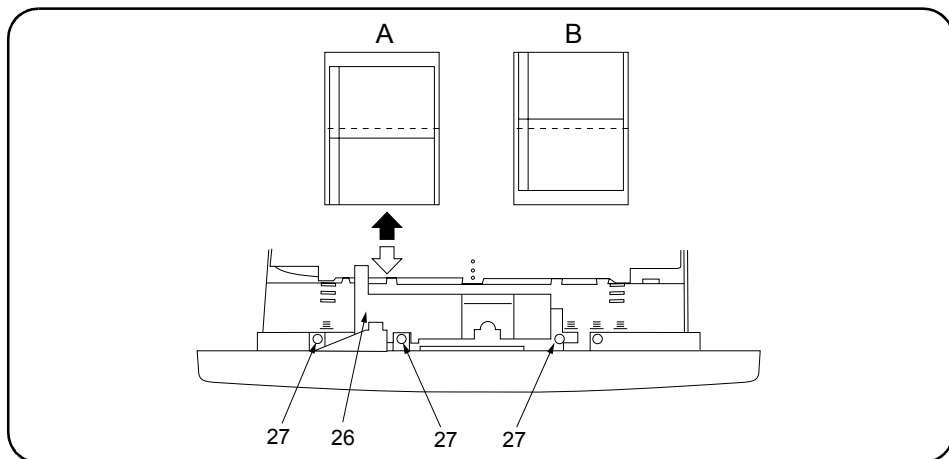
### [ センターライン確認 ]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。

2. メンテナンスモード“993”で“VTC PG1”を選び、テストパターンを出力する。  
フルカラー機は、メンテナンスモード“402”を選び、テストパターンを出力する。

3. 用紙のセンター(24) とテストパターンのセンター(25) が基準値外の時は、次の調整をおこなう。  
<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下





#### Adjusting the center line

4. Pull out the cassette of the paper feeder and loosen the three screws (27) securing the adjuster (26).

#### A and B: test pattern output examples

5. If the test pattern output looks like A, move the adjuster (26) in the direction of the black arrow (←) and retighten the three screws (27).

If the test pattern output looks like B, move the adjuster (26) in the direction of the white arrow (→) and retighten the three screws (27).

6. Output a test pattern again.

7. Repeat steps 4 to 6 until the centers of the paper and the test pattern meet the reference value.

<Reference value> Deviation to the left or right: 1.5 mm or less

#### Réglage de la ligne médiane

4. Tirer le magasin du bureau papier vers soi et desserrer les trois vis (27) fixant le dispositif de réglage (26).

#### A et B: exemples de sortie de mieres

5. Si la sortie de mire ressemble à A, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (26) dans la direction de la flèche noire (←) et resserrer les trois vis (27).

Si la sortie de mire ressemble à B, déplacer le dispositif de réglage (26) dans la direction de la flèche blanche (→) et resserrer les trois vis (27).

6. Reproduire une nouvelle mire.

7. Répéter les étapes 4 à 6 jusqu'à ce que le centre du papier et celui de la mire correspondent à la valeur de référence.

<Valeur de référence> Déviation vers la gauche ou la droite : 1,5 mm ou moins

#### Ajuste de la línea central

4. Abra el casete del alimentador de papel y suelte los tres tornillos (27) que aseguran el regulador (26).

#### A y B: ejemplos de salidas de patrones de prueba

5. Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecida a A, mueva el regulador (26) en la dirección que indica la flecha negra (←) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (27).

Si la salida del patrón de prueba es parecido a B, mueva el regulador (26) en la dirección que indica la flecha blanca (→) y vuelva a apretar los tres tornillos (27).

6. Saque un patrón de prueba nuevamente.

7. Repita los pasos 4 a 6 hasta que los centros de papel y el patrón de prueba cumplan con el valor de referencia.

<Valor de referencia> Desviación a la izquierda o derecha: 1,5 mm o menos

#### Einstellen der Mittellinie

4. Ziehen Sie die Papierlade des Papiereinzugs heraus und lösen Sie die drei Schrauben (27), die den Anpasser (26) halten.

#### A und B: Beispiele von Testmusterangaben

5. Wenn die Testmusterangabe wie A aussieht, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (26) in Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils (←) und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (27) wieder fest.

Wenn die Testmusterangabe wie B aussieht, bewegen Sie den Anpasser (26) in Richtung des weißen Pfeils (→) und ziehen Sie die drei Schrauben (27) wieder fest.

6. Drucken Sie erneut ein Testmuster aus.

7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 4 bis 6, bis die Mitte des Papiers und des Testmusters mit dem Bezugswert übereinstimmt.

<Bezugswert> Abweichung nach links oder rechts: maximal 1,5 mm

#### Regolazione della linea centrale

4. Estrarre il cassetto dell'unità di alimentazione della carta ed allentare le tre viti (27) assicurando il regolatore (26).

#### A e B: esempi di stampa del modello di prova

5. Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto A, spostare il regolatore (26) nella direzione della freccia nera (←) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (27).

Se la stampa del modello di prova ha l'aspetto B, spostare il regolatore (26) nella direzione della freccia bianca (→) e serrare nuovamente le tre viti (27).

6. Stampare nuovamente un modello di prova.

7. Ripetere i passi da 4 a 6 fino a quando i centri della carta e del modello di prova rientrano nei limiti del valore di riferimento.

<Valore di riferimento> Deviazione a sinistra o a destra: fino a 1,5 mm

#### 中心线的调整

4. 拉出供纸工作台的纸匣，再松开调整板 (26) 上的 3 个螺丝 (27)。

#### A, B 测试图案

5. 测试图案为 A 时，按箭头 (←) 方向移动调整板 (26)，并紧固 3 个螺丝 (27)。

测试图案为 B 时，按箭头 (→) 方向移动调整板 (26)，并紧固 3 个螺丝 (27)。

6. 再次进行测试图案的输出。

7. 反复操作步骤 4 至 6，直到复印纸的中心与测试图案的中心为标准值内为止。

(标准值) 左右偏移：1.5mm 以下

#### センターライン調整

4. ペーパーフィーダのカセットを引き出し、調整板 (26) のビス (27) 3 本を緩める。

#### A, B: テストパターン

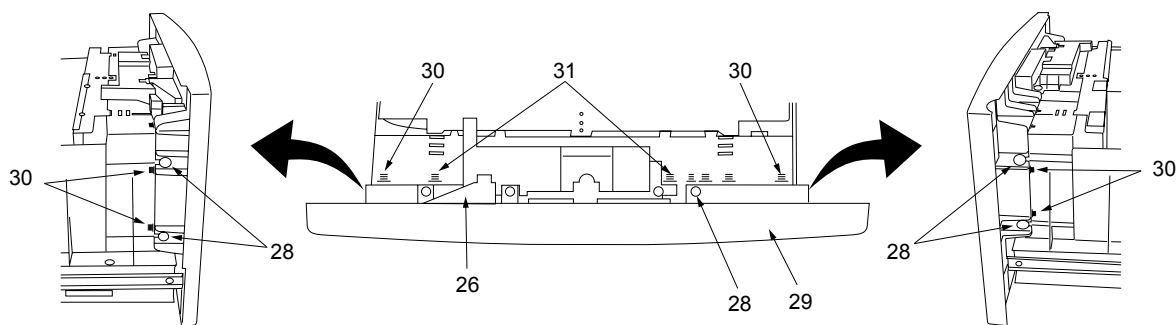
5. A 画像の場合、矢印 (←) の向きに調整板 (26) を動かし、ビス (27) 3 本を締め付ける。

B 画像の場合、矢印 (→) の向きに調整板 (26) を動かし、ビス (27) 3 本を締め付ける。

6. 再度、テストパターン出力をおこなう。

7. 用紙のセンターとテストパターンのセンターが基準値内になるまで、手順 4 ~ 6 を繰り返す。

<基準値> 左右ずれ: 1.5mm 以下



### Adjusting the front cover position

#### Note:

If the position of the adjuster is changed, adjust the front cover position.

If the front cover position is not proper, the cassette may not be fixed with the magnet or the gap between the front cover and the paper feeder body may be opened.

8. Loosen the five screws (28).
9. Move the position of the front cover (29) by the amount of divisions of the level that corresponds to the movement of the adjuster (26) (amount of movement of the level (31)) using the level (30).
10. Retighten the five screws (28).

### Réglage de la position du couvercle avant

#### Remarque:

Si la position du dispositif de réglage est changée, régler la position du couvercle avant.

Si la position du couvercle avant est incorrecte, le tiroir risquera de ne pas être fixé par l'aimant, ou un écart risquera de s'ouvrir entre le couvercle avant et le corps du bureau papier.

8. Desserrer les cinq vis (28).
9. Déplacer la position du couvercle avant (29) de la quantité de divisions du niveau correspondant au mouvement du dispositif de réglage (26) (quantité de mouvement du niveau (31)) en utilisant le niveau (30).
10. Resserrer les cinq vis (28).

### Ajuste de la posición de la tapa frontal

#### Nota:

Si cambia la posición del regulador, ajuste la posición de la tapa frontal.

Si la posición de la tapa frontal no es la adecuada, el casete puede no fijarse con la imagen o la separación entre la tapa frontal y el cuerpo del alimentador de papel puede abrirse.

8. Suelte los cinco tornillos (28).
9. Mueva la posición de la tapa frontal (29) en la cantidad de divisiones del nivel que corresponde al movimiento del regulador (26) (cantidad de movimiento del nivel (31)) utilizando el nivel (30).
10. Vuelva a apretar los cinco tornillos (28).

### Einstellen der Position der Frontabdeckung

#### Hinweis:

Falls die Position des Einstellers geändert wird, muss die Position der Frontabdeckung geändert werden.

Falls die Position der Frontabdeckung nicht stimmt, wird die Papierlade eventuell nicht mit dem Magneten gesichert, oder der Spalt zwischen der Frontabdeckung und dem Papiereinzug kann sich öffnen.

8. Lösen Sie die fünf Schrauben (28).
9. Die Position der Frontabdeckung (29) mithilfe der Ebene (30) um den Teilungsbetrag der Ebene verschieben, welcher der Bewegung des Anpassers (26) entspricht (Bewegungsbetrag der Ebene (31)).
10. Ziehen Sie die fünf Schrauben (28) wieder fest.

### Regolare la posizione del pannello anteriore

#### Nota

Se la posizione del regolatore viene cambiata, regolare la posizione del pannello anteriore.

Se la posizione del pannello anteriore non è corretta, non sarà possibile fissare il cassetto con il magnete o potrebbe aprirsi uno spazio tra il pannello anteriore e il corpo dell'unità di alimentazione della carta.

8. Allentare le cinque viti (28).
9. Muovere la posizione del pannello anteriore (29) di tante posizioni del livello quanto è necessario per farlo corrispondere al movimento del regolatore (26) (movimento del livello (31)) utilizzando il livello (30).
10. Serrare nuovamente le cinque viti (28).

### 前盖板位置的调整

#### 注意

如果调整板的位置变更时, 必须进行前盖板位置的调整。

如果前盖板的位置调整不一致时, 供纸盒就不能在磁铁处停住, 并会在前盖板和供纸工作台主机之间出现间隙。

8. 松开 5 个螺丝 (28)。
9. 用刻度 (30) 移动前面盖板 (29) 的位置。但是, 只限调整板 (26) 移动的刻度量 (刻度 (31) 的移动值)。
10. 紧固 5 个螺丝 (28)。

### 前カバーの位置調整

#### 注意

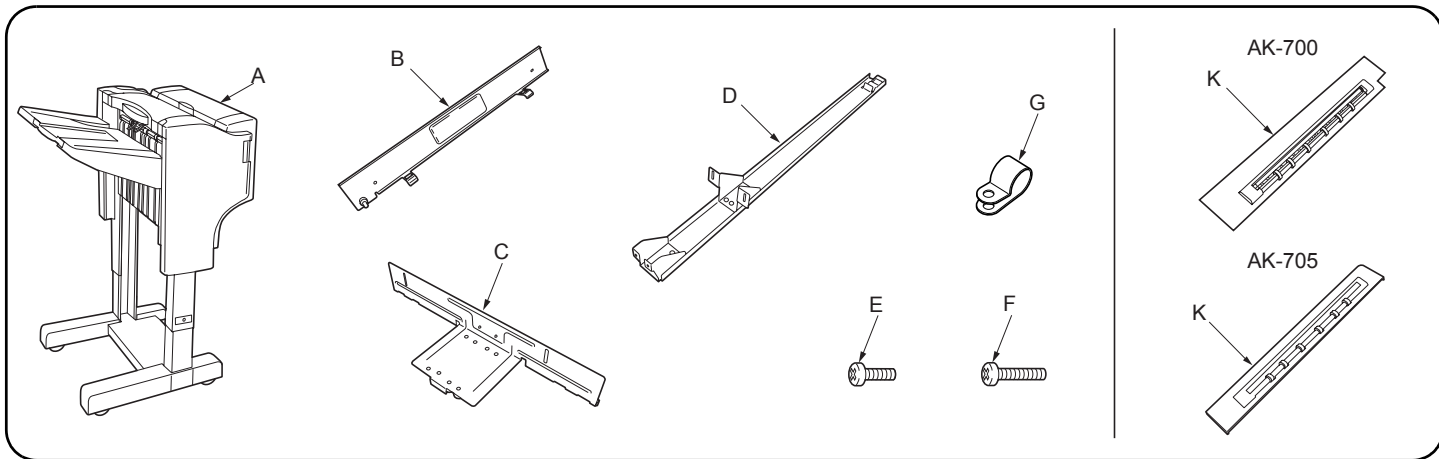
調整板の位置を変更した場合は、前カバーの位置調整をおこなう。

前カバーの位置が正しくないと、カセットがマグネットではまらなくなったり、前カバーとペーパーフィーダ本体との間に隙間が開いたりする。

8. ビス (28) 5 本を緩める。
9. 調整板 (26) を移動させた目盛り (目盛り (31) の移動値) だけ、前カバー (29) の位置を、目盛り (30) を使って移動させる。
10. ビス (28) 5 本を締め付ける。

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR DOCUMENT FINISHER**

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.  
Output: 24 V dc (426 VA max.)  
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cables.  
P/N: 305H180180



**English**

**Supplied parts**

A Document finisher .....	1
B Latch catch .....	1
C Rail retainer .....	1
D Guide rail .....	1

E Binding screw M4 × 6 .....	4
F Binding screw M4 × 10 .....	4
G Clamp (Not used for full-color machines).....	1
K Curl eliminator .....	1

For monochrome MFP's: AK-700  
For monochrome printers: AK-705

For full-color machines, two pieces of (F) are not used.  
For monochrome machines, part (K) is needed separately.  
For full-color machines, part (K) is not needed.

**Français**

**Pièces fournies**

A Retoucheur de document .....	1
B Pontet du loquet .....	1
C Élément de rétention du rail .....	1
D Glissière .....	1

E Vis de raccordement M4 × 6 .....	4
F Vis de raccordement M4 × 10 .....	4
G Bride (Non utilisé pour les machines entièrement en couleurs).....	1
K Élément d'élimination des boucles.....	1

Pour les MFP monochromes: AK-700  
Pour les imprimantes monochromes: AK-705

Sur les machines entièrement en couleurs, deux pièces de (F) ne sont pas utilisées.  
Sur les machines monochromes, il faut utiliser la pièce (K) séparément.  
Pour les machines entièrement en couleurs, la pièce (K) n'est pas nécessaire.

**Español**

**Partes suministradas**

A Finalizador de documentos .....	1
B Cerrojo .....	1
C Retén del carril .....	1
D Carril guía .....	1

E Tornillo de sujeción M4 × 6 .....	4
F Tornillo de sujeción M4 × 10 .....	4
G Abrazadera (No utilizado para máquinas a todo color)....	1
K Eliminador de enrollado .....	1

Para las MFP monocromáticas: AK-700  
Para las impresoras monocromáticas: AK-705

Para las máquinas a todo color, no se utilizan dos piezas de (F).  
Para las máquinas monocromáticas, es necesario por separado la pieza (K).  
Para las máquinas a todo color, la pieza (K) no es necesaria.

**Deutsch**

**Gelieferte Teile**

A Dokument Finishers .....	1
B Riegelschloßbausatz .....	1
C Schienenhalterungseinheit .....	1
D Führungsschieneneneinheit .....	1

E Verbundschraube M4 × 6 .....	4
F Verbundschraube M4 × 10 .....	4
G Klemme (Nicht für Vollfarbemaschinen verwendet) ..	1
K Glättungseinrichtung .....	1

Für monochrome MFP: AK-700  
Für Monochromedruker: AK-705

Für Vollfarbemaschinen werden zwei Teile von (F) nicht benutzt.  
Für Monochrommaschinen wird Teil (K) getrennt benötigt.  
Für Vollfarbemaschinen wird Teil (K) nicht benötigt.

**Italiano**

**Parti fornite**

A Finitrice di documenti .....	1
B Dispositivo di arresto .....	1
C Fermo della guida .....	1
D Guida della rotaia .....	1

E Vite di serraggio M4 × 6 .....	4
F Vite di serraggio M4 × 10 .....	4
G Morsetto (Non utilizzato per le macchine a colori).....	1
K Eliminatore di pieghe .....	1

Per gli MFP in bianco e nero: AK-700  
Per gli stampatori in bianco e nero: AK-705

Per le macchine a colori, due pezzi di (F) non sono utilizzati.  
Per le macchine in bianco e nero, separatamente è necessaria la parte (K).  
Per le macchine a colori, la parte (K) non è necessaria.

**简体中文**

**附属品**

(A)装订器 .....	1
(B)挂钩承支架 .....	1
(C)轨道座 .....	1
(D)导向轨道 .....	1

(E) M4 × 6 固结螺钉 .....	4
(F) M4 × 10 固结螺钉 .....	4
(G) 夹紧件 (全彩色机上不使用) .....	1
(K) 防卷曲部件 .....	1

黑白MFP: AK-700  
黑白打印机: AK-705

全彩色机时(F)剩下2个连接螺钉。  
黑白机时另外需要安装(K)部件。  
全彩色机时, 不需要安装(K)部件。

**日本語**

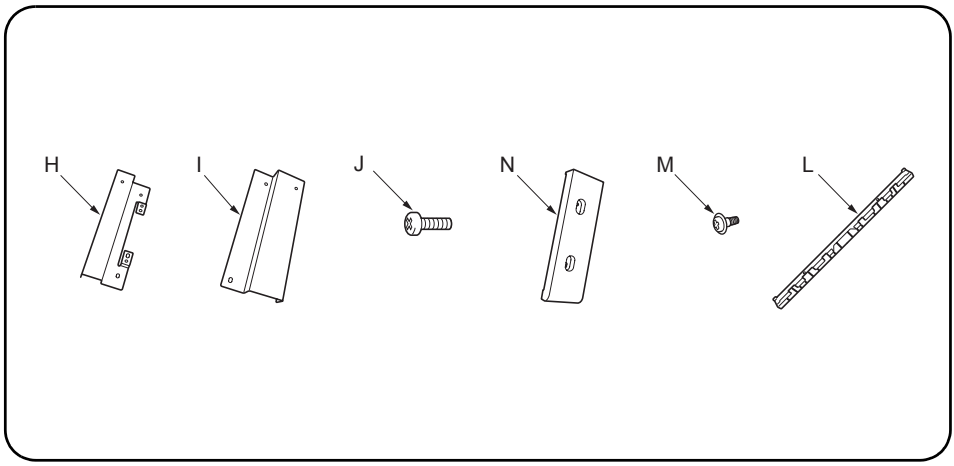
**付属品**

A ドキュメントフィニッシャー .....	1
B ラッチ受け板 .....	1
C レール取付板 .....	1
D ガイドレール .....	1

E ビス M4 × 6 バインド .....	4
F ビス M4 × 10 バインド .....	4
G クランプ (フルカラー機では使用しません) .....	1
K デカーラー .....	1

モノクロ MFP 用: AK-700  
モノクロプリンタ用: AK-705

フルカラー機では、(F) が 2 本余ります。  
モノクロ機では、(K) が別途必要です。  
フルカラー機では、(K) は不要です。



H Fixing plate F .....	1
I Fixing plate R .....	1
J S Tite screw M4 × 10 .....	9
N Cover AT .....	1
M Shoulder screw .....	1
L Guide plate .....	1

When installing the document finisher to a full-color MFP, use parts (H), (I), (J), (L), (M) and (N) supplied with the job separator.

H Plaque de fixation avant .....	1
I Plaque de fixation arrière .....	1
J Vis S Tite M4 × 10 .....	9
N Couvercle AT .....	1
M Vis d'épaule .....	1
L Plaque guide .....	1

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de documents sur une MFP polychrome, les pièces (H), (I), (J), (L), (M) et (N) avec le séparateur de travaux sont requises.

H Placa de fijación F .....	1
I Placa de fijación R .....	1
J Tornillo S Tite M4 × 10 .....	9
N Cubierta AT .....	1
M Tornillo de hombro .....	1
L Placa guía .....	1

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una MFP a todo color serán necesarias las partes (H), (I), (J), (L), (M), y (N) suministradas con el separador de tareas.

H Fixierplatte F .....	1
I Fixierplatte R .....	1
J S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 10 .....	9
N Abdeckung AT .....	1
M Bundschraube .....	1
L Führungsplatte .....	1

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Farbmultifunktionsgerät angebracht wird, sind die Teile (H), (I), (J), (L), (M) und (N), die mit dem Jobtrenner geliefert sind erforderlich.

H Piastra di fissaggio F .....	1
I Piastra di fissaggio R .....	1
J Vite S Tite M4 × 10 .....	9
N Coperchio AT .....	1
M Vite a colletto .....	1
L Piastra della guida .....	1

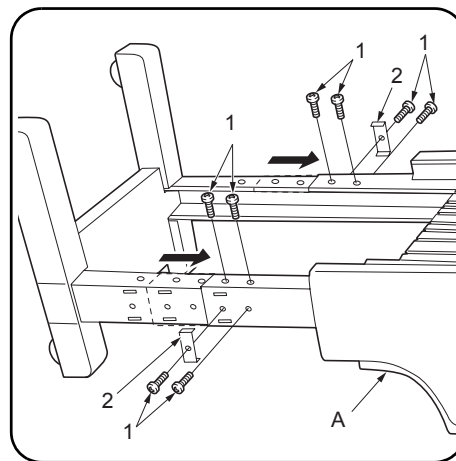
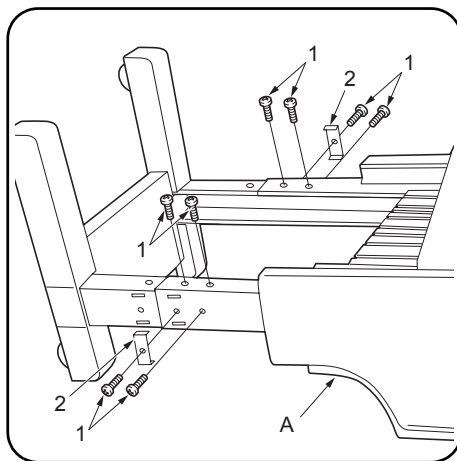
Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su un MFP a colori, sono necessarie le parti (H), (I), (J), (L), (M) e (N) fornite in dotazione con il separatore dei lavori.

(H) 固定板 F .....	1
(I) 固定板 R .....	1
(J) 紧固螺钉 M4 × 10S .....	9
(N) 盖板 AT .....	1
(M) 阶梯螺钉 .....	1
(L) 导向板 .....	1

全彩色 MFP 上安装装订器时, 请使用作业分离器上附属的部件 (H)、(I)、(J)、(L)、(M) 和 (N)。

H 固定板 F .....	1
I 固定板 R .....	1
J ビス M4 × 10S タイト .....	9
N カバー AT .....	1
M 段付きビス .....	1
L ガイド板 .....	1

フルカラーMFP機にドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置する場合、ジョブセパレータに付属する (H)、(I)、(J)、(L)、(M)、(N) が必要となる。



#### Installation Procedure

When installing the document finisher to a full-color MFP, install the job separator in advance. Be sure to turn the main switch of the MFP or the printer off and disconnect the power plug of the MFP or the printer from the wall outlet before installing the document finisher.

#### [Steps 1 to 5 below are only for full-color machines.]

1. Place the document finisher (A) sideways, remove the eight screws (1), and remove the two pieces of fittings (2).

2. To align the document finisher with the paper outlet of the MFP or the printer, slide the legs of the document finisher (A) to the uppermost positions indicated in the illustration, attach the two pieces of fittings (2) that have been removed in step 1, and secure them using the eight screws (1).

#### Procédure d'installation

Installer le séparateur de travaux, puis installer le retoucheur de documents sur la MFP polychrome. Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal de la MFP ou de l'imprimante hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la MFP ou de l'imprimante de la prise murale avant de commencer l'installation du retoucheur de documents.

#### [Les étapes 1 à 5 ci-dessous concernent les machines entièrement en couleurs seulement.]

1. Placer le retoucheur de document (A) sur le côté, retirer les huit vis (1), et retirer les deux pièces de fixation (2).

2. Pour aligner le retoucheur de document sur la sortie de papier du MFP ou imprimante, faire glisser les pieds du retoucheur de document (A) jusqu'aux positions les plus hautes indiquées sur l'illustration, fixer les deux pièces de fixation (2) qui avaient été retirées auparavant à l'étape 1, et les fixer à l'aide des huit vis (1).

#### Procedimiento de instalación

Instale el separador de tareas y luego instale el finalizador de documentos en la MFP a todo color. Asegúrese de apagar el interruptor principal de la MFP o de la impresora y de desconectar la clavija de alimentación de la MFP o de la impresora de la toma de corriente de la pared, antes de empezar a instalar el finalizador de documentos.

#### [Los pasos 1 a 5 a continuación son solo para máquinas a todo color.]

1. Apoye el finalizador de documentos (A) sobre un lado, saque los ocho tornillos (1) y saque dos piezas de herrajes (2).

2. Para alinear el finalizador de documentos con la salida de papel del MFP o impresora, deslice las patas del finalizador de documentos (A) a las posiciones superiores indicadas en la figura, instale las dos piezas de herrajes (2) desmontadas en el paso 1 y asegúrelos con los ocho tornillos (1).

#### Einbauverfahren

Bauen Sie zuerst den Jobtrenner und dann den Dokument-Finisher in den Farbmultifunktionsgerät ein. Schalten Sie den MFP-Hauptschalter oder den Drucker-Hauptschalter aus, und ziehen Sie den MFP-Netzstecker oder den Drucker-Netzstecker von der Netzsteckdose ab, bevor Sie mit der Installation des Dokument Finishers beginnen.

#### [Die folgenden Schritte 1 bis 5 gelten nur für Vollfarbmaschinen.]

1. Den Dokument Finisher (A) auf die Seite legen, die acht Schrauben (1) entfernen, und die zwei Befestigungsteile (2) abnehmen.

2. Um den Dokument Finisher auf den Papierausslass des MFP oder Drucker auszurichten, die Beine des Dokument Finishers (A) auf die in der Abbildung gezeigte obere Position schieben, dann die zwei in Schritt 1 entfernten Befestigungsteile (2) anbringen und mit den acht Schrauben (1) befestigen.

#### Procedura di installazione

Installare il separatore dei lavori e poi procedere all'installazione della finitrice di documenti sul MFP a colori. Prima di dare inizio alla procedura di installazione della finitrice di documenti, non mancare di spegnere l'MFP o lo stampatore usando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e disinserire la spina dell'MFP o dello stampatore dalla presa a muro della rete elettrica.

#### [I seguenti passi da 1 a 5 sono solo per le macchine a colori.]

1. Collocare la finitrice di documenti (A) lateralmente, rimuovere le otto viti (1) e rimuovere i due pezzi di raccordo (2).

2. Per allineare la finitrice di documenti con l'uscita della carta dell'MFP o stampatore, fare scivolare i piedini della finitrice di documenti (A) sulle posizioni più in alto indicate nel disegno, montare i due pezzi di raccordo (2) che sono stati rimossi nel passo 1 e fissarli utilizzando le otto viti (1).

#### 安装步骤

将装订器安装到全彩色MFP时，请提前安装作业分离器。请务必关闭MFP或打印机的电源并从墙壁插座拔下MFP或打印机的电源插头再安装装订器。

#### [步骤1~5仅限于全彩色机]

1. 将装订器(A)横向放置，卸下8个螺钉(1)，然后，取下2个固定件(2)。

2. 为了对准主机排纸口，先将装订器(A)的机脚滑动到最上面的位置(如图所示的位置)，然后，安装在步骤1取下的2个固定件(2)，并用8个螺钉(1)加以固定。

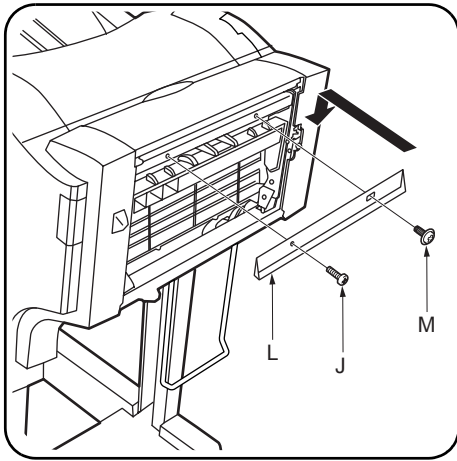
#### 設置手順

フルカラーMFP機にドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける際には、先にジョブセパレータを装着すること。ドキュメントフィニッシャーを取り付ける際は、必ずMFP本体またはプリンタ本体のメインスイッチをOFFにし、電源プラグを外して作業をおこなうこと。

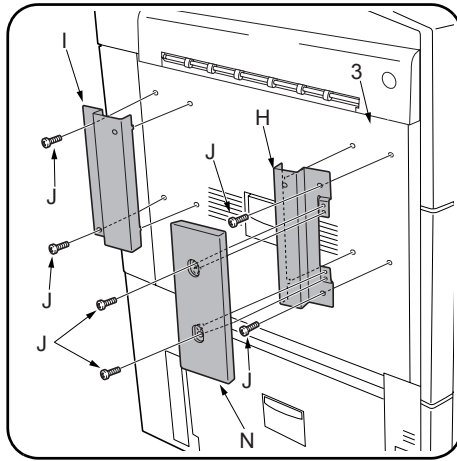
#### [手順1~5はフルカラー機のみ]

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)を横向きにおき、ビス(1)8本を外し、固定金具(2)2個を取り外す。

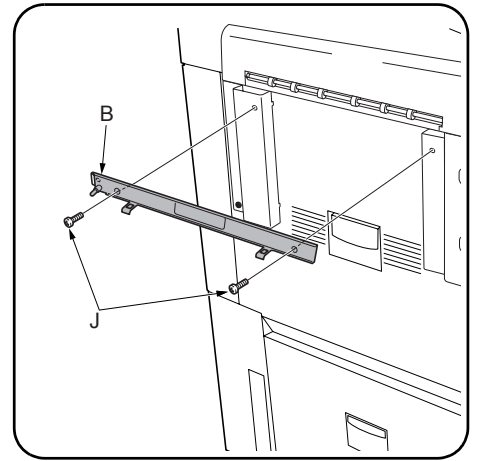
2. 本体用紙排出口に合わせる為、ドキュメントフィニッシャー(A)の脚を最上の位置(図の位置)までスライドさせ、手順1で取り外した固定金具(2)2個を取り付け、ビス(1)8本で固定する。



3. Secure the guide plate (L) using the shoulder screw (M) and an S Tite screw M4 × 10 (J).



4. Fit the fixing plate F (H) and the fixing plate R (I) to the left cover (3) using two S Tite screws M4 × 10 (J) for each and fit the cover AT (N) to the fixing plate F (H) using two S Tite screws M4 × 10 (J).



5. Fit the latch catch (B) to the fixing plate F (H) and the fixing plate R (I) using two S Tite screws M4 × 10 (J). (Proceed to step 7.)

3. Fixez la plaque guide (L) à l'aide de la vis d'épaule (M) et d'une vis S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

4. Fixer la plaque de fixation avant (H) et la plaque de fixation arrière (I) sur le couvercle de gauche (3) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 × 10 (J) chaque et fixer le couvercle AT (N) sur la plaque de fixation avant (H) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

5. Fixer le pontet du loquet (B) sur la plaque de fixation avant (H) et sur la plaque de fixation arrière (I) à l'aide de deux vis S Tite M4 × 10 (J). (Passer à l'étape 7.)

3. Asegure la placa guía (L) utilizando el tornillo de hombro (M) y un tornillo S Tite M4 × 10(J).

4. Encaje la placa de fijación F (H) y la placa de fijación R (I) en la cubierta izquierda (3) utilizando dos tornillos S Tite M4 × 10 (J) para cada una y encaje la cubierta AT (N) en la placa de fijación F (H) utilizando dos tornillos S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

5. Encaje el cerrojo (B) en la placa de fijación F (H) y la placa de fijación R (I) utilizando los dos tornillos S Tite M4 × 10 (J). (Vaya al paso 7.)

3. Die Führungsplatte (L) mit der Bundschraube (M) und einer S-Tite-Schraube M4 × 10 (J) befestigen.

4. Die Fixierplatte F (H) und die Fixierplatte R (I) mit je zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 10 (J) an der linken Abdeckung (3) anbringen, und die Abdeckung AT (N) mit zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 10 (J) an der Fixierplatte F (H) anbringen.

5. Die Riegelschloßbausatz (B) mit zwei S-Tite-Schrauben M4 × 10 (J) an der Fixierplatte F (H) und die Fixierplatte R (I) anbringen. (Zu Schritt 7 übergehen.)

3. Fissare la piastra della guida (L) utilizzando la vite a colletto (M) e la vite S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

4. Montare la piastra di fissaggio F (H) e la piastra di fissaggio R (I) sul coperchio sinistro (3) usando due vite S Tite M4 × 10 (J) per ciascuna di esse e montare il coperchio AT (N) sulla piastra di fissaggio F (H) usando due vite S Tite M4 × 10 (J).

5. Montare il dispositivo di arresto (B) sulla piastra di fissaggio F (H) e sulla piastra di fissaggio R (I) usando due vite S Tite M4 × 10 (J). (Procedere con il passo 7.)

3. 在用阶梯螺钉(M)和紧固螺钉M4×10S(J)各1个固定导板(L)。

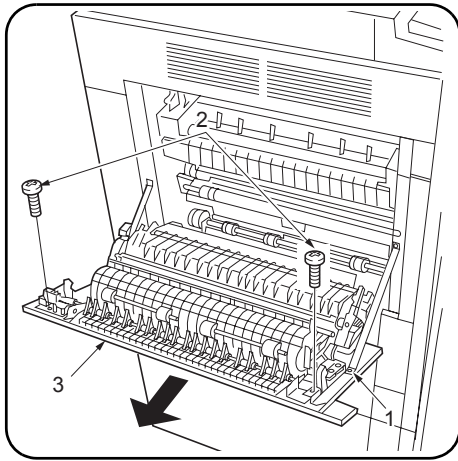
4. 将固定板F(H)和固定板R(I)分别用2个紧固螺丝M4×10S(J)固定在左盖板(3)上, 将盖板AT(N)用2个紧固螺丝M4×10S(J)固定在固定板F(H)上。

5. 挂钩承支架(B)用2个紧固螺丝M4×10S(J)固定在固定板F(H)和固定板R(I)上。(接着操作步骤7)

3. ガイド板(L)を段付きビス(M)とビスM4×10Sタイト(J)各1本で固定する。

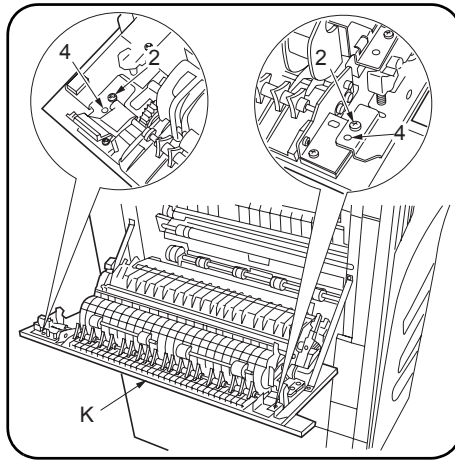
4. 固定板F(H)と固定板R(I)を左カバー(3)にビスM4×10Sタイト(J)各2本で固定し、カバーAT(N)をビスM4×10Sタイト(J)2本で固定板F(H)に固定する。

5. ラッチ受け板(B)をビスM4×10Sタイト(J)2本で固定板F(H)と固定板R(I)に固定する。(手順7に進む)

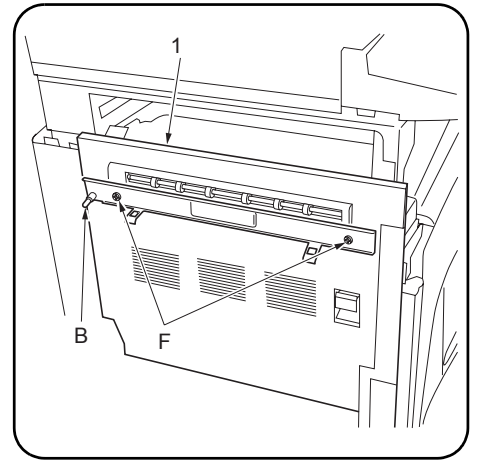


**[Steps 1 to 6 below are only for monochrome machines.]**

1. Open the eject cover (1) of the MFP or the printer.
2. Remove the two screws (2) securing the feedshift guide assembly (3) and then the assembly.



3. Fit the curl eliminator (K) to the eject cover (1) such that the projections (4) on the cover fit into the two ends of the curl eliminator (K).
4. Secure the curl eliminator (K) using the two screws (2) removed in step 2.



5. Close the eject cover (1).
6. Fit the latch catch (B) to the eject cover (1) using two M4 x 10 binding screws (F).

**[Les étapes 1 à 6 ci-dessous concernent les machines monochromes seulement.]**

1. Ouvrir le couvercle d'éjection (1) du MFP ou imprimante.
2. Retirer les deux vis (2) fixant l'assemblage de la glissière d'alimentation (3) puis retirer l'assemblage.

3. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (K) au couvercle d'éjection (1) de telle façon que les projections (4) du couvercle s'insèrent dans les deux extrémités de cet élément (K).
4. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (K) à l'aide des deux vis (2) retirées à l'étape 2.

5. Fermer le couvercle d'éjection (1).
6. Fixer le pontet du loquet (B) au couvercle d'éjection (1) à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 x 10 (F).

**[Los pasos 1 a 6 a continuación son sólo para máquinas monocromáticas.]**

1. Abra la cubierta de expulsión (1) del MFP o impresora.
2. Quite los dos tornillos (2) que aseguran el ensamble guía de la unidad de cambio de alimentación de papel (3) y luego el ensamble.

3. Coloque el eliminador de enrollamiento (K) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) de modo que las proyecciones (4) de la cubierta encajen en los dos extremos del eliminador de enrollamiento (K).
4. Asegure el eliminador de enrollamiento (K) usando los dos tornillos (2) que quitó en el paso 2.

5. Cierre la cubierta de expulsión (1).
6. Coloque el cerrojo (B) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) usando dos tornillos de sujeción M4 x 10 (F).

**[Die folgenden Schritte 1 bis 6 gelten nur für Monochrommaschinen.]**

1. Öffnen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1) des MFP oder Drucker.
2. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (2), die den Zuführungswechsel-Bausatz (3) befestigen und dann den Bausatz.

3. Bringen Sie den Wellenverhinderer (K) so an die Auswurfabdeckung (1) an, daß die Vorsprünge (4) auf der Abdeckung in die zwei Enden des Wellenverhinderers (K) passen.
4. Befestigen Sie den Wellenverhinderer (K) mittels der in Schritt 2 entfernten zwei Schrauben (2).

5. Schliessen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1).
6. Bringen Sie den Riegelschloßbausatz (B) mittels der zwei M4 x 10 Verbundschrauben (F) an die Auswurfabdeckung (1) an.

**[I seguenti passi da 1 a 6 sono solo per le macchine in bianco e nero.]**

1. Aprire la copertura dell'uscita carta (1) dell'MFP o stampatore.
2. Rimuovere le due viti (2) che fissano il gruppo di guida di cambio alimentazione (3) e quindi il gruppo.

3. Inserire l'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (K) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) in modo tale che le proiezioni (4) sulla copertura siano inserite nelle due estremità dell'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (K).
4. Fissare l'eliminatore degli accartocciamenti (K) utilizzando le due viti (2) rimosse al punto 2.

5. Chiudere la copertura dell'uscita carta (1).
6. Inserire il dispositivo di arresto (B) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) utilizzando due viti di serraggio M4 x 10 (F).

**[步骤1~6仅限于黑白机]**

1. 将MFP或打印机的出纸盖板(1)打开。
2. 将两个小螺钉(2)摘下,并将分支导向组件(3)卸下。

3. 将带凸肩压板的凸部(4)嵌入防卷曲部件(K)两端后,将防卷曲部件(K)安装于出纸盖板(1)上。
4. 用依步骤2摘下的两个小螺钉(2)来固定防卷曲部件(K)。

5. 将出纸盖板(1)关上。
6. 用两个M4 x 10固结螺钉(F)将挂钩承支架(B)安装于出纸盖板(1)上。

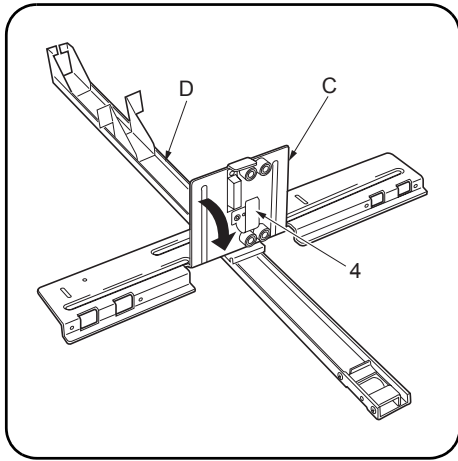
**[手順1~6はモノクロ機のみ]**

1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の排出カバー(1)を開く。
2. ビス(2)2本を外し、分岐ガイド組立(3)を取り外す。

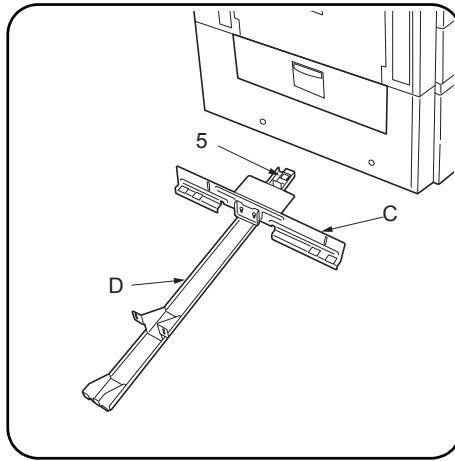
3. デカーラー(K)の両端に半押し(4)がはまる位置で、デカーラー(K)を排出カバー(1)に取り付ける。
4. 手順2で外したビス(2)2本でデカーラー(K)を固定する。

5. 排出カバー(1)を閉じる。
6. ラッチ受け板(B)をビス M4 x 10 バインド(F)2本で排出カバー(1)に取り付ける。

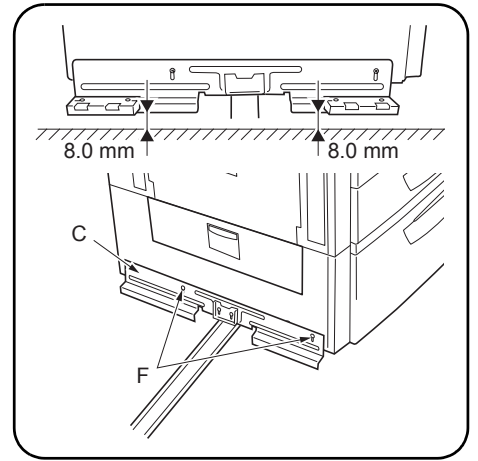




7. Align the rail retainer (C) with the groove of the guide rail (D) and attach the rail retainer (C) to the guide rail (D). Make sure that the plate spring (4) of the rail retainer (C) fits into the groove and the edge of the guide rail (D) fits between the pulleys on the reverse side of the rail retainer (C).



8. Orient the guide rail (D) such that its pulley (5) is positioned toward the MFP or the printer.



9. Secure the rail retainer (C) to the MFP or the printer using two M4 × 10 binding screws (F) such that the front and the rear gaps between the floor and the rail retainer (C) are approximately 8.0 mm.

7. Alligner l'élément de rétention du rail (C) sur le sillon de la glissière (D) et le fixer à l'élément de rétention du rail (C) à la glissière (D). Veiller à ce que le ressort de plaque (4) de l'élément de rétention du rail (C) s'adapte au sillon et que l'extrémité de la glissière (D) puisse passer entre les poulies sur le côté opposé de l'élément de rétention du rail (C).

8. Orienter la glissière (D) de manière que sa poulie (5) soit orientée vers le MFP ou imprimante.

9. Fixer l'élément de rétention du rail (C) au MFP ou imprimante à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 10 (F) de manière que les écarts avant et arrière entre le sol et l'élément de rétention du rail (C) soient d'environ 8.0 mm.

7. Alinee el retén del carril (C) con la acanaladura del carril guía (D) y anexe el retén del carril (C) al carril guía (D). Asegúrese de que el resorte de la placa (4) del retén del carril (C) encaje en la acanaladura y que el borde del carril guía (D) encaje entre las poleas del lado inverso del retén del carril (C).

8. Oriente el carril guía (D) de modo que su polea (5) se encuentre ubicada hacia el MFP o impresora.

9. Asegure el retén del carril (C) a el MFP o impresora usando dos tornillos de sujeción M4 × 10 (F) de modo que los espacios frontal y trasero entre el piso y el retén del carril (C) sean de aproximadamente 8.0 mm.

7. Richten Sie die Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) mit der Rille der Führungsschieneinheit (D) aus, und bringen Sie die Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) an die Führungsschieneinheit (D) an. Stellen Sie sicher, daß die Tellerfeder (4) der Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) in die Rille paßt und die Kante der Führungsschieneinheit (D) zwischen den Seilzügen auf der Rückseite der Schienenhalterungseinheit (C) sitzt.

8. Richten Sie die Führungsschiene (D) so aus, daß die Riemenscheibe (5) zum MFP oder Drucker ausgerichtet ist.

9. Bringen Sie die Schienenhalterung (C) am MFP oder Drucker mit zwei M4 × 10 Verbundschrauben (F) so an, daß die vorderen und hinteren Abstände zwischen Boden und Schienenhalterung (C) etwa 8.0 mm betragen.

7. Allineare il fermo della guida (C) con la scanalatura della guida della rotaia (D) e fissare il fermo della guida (C) alla guida della rotaia (D). Assicurarsi che la molla della piastra (4) del fermo della guida (C) sia collocata nella scanalatura e che il bordo della guida della rotaia (D) sia inserito tra le pulegge sul lato opposto del fermo della guida (C).

8. Orientare la guida della rotaia (D) in modo da posizionare la puleggia (5) in direzione dell'MFP o stampatore.

9. Assicurare il fermo della guida (C) all'MFP o stampatore utilizzando le due viti di serraggio M4 × 10 (F), in modo che la distanza anteriore e posteriore tra il pavimento ed il fermo della guida (C) sia di circa 8.0 mm.

7. 将轨道座 (C) 沿着导向轨道 (D) 的凹槽嵌入。此时, 应将片簧部 (4) 插入于凹槽中并将导向轨道 (D) 的一端插入于轨道座 (C) 背面的滚轮与滚轮之间。

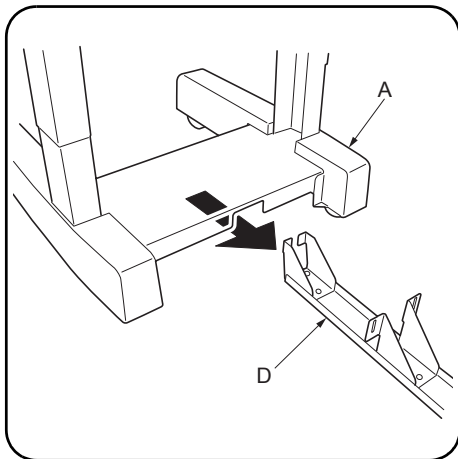
8. 使导向轨道 (D) 的滚轮部 (5) 朝向MFP或打印机。

9. 用两个M4 × 10固结螺钉(F)将轨道座(C)固定于MFP或打印机上。此时, 轨道座(C)与地板之间的距离应约为8.0毫米。

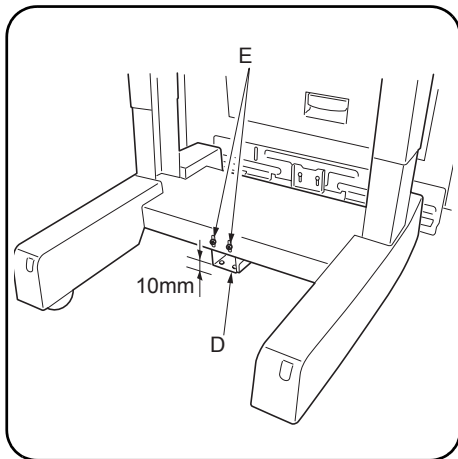
7. レール取付板 (C) をガイドレール (D) の溝に合わせてはめ込む。板バネ部 (4) が溝の中に入り、レール取付板 (C) 裏側のコロとコロの間にガイドレール (D) の端が入るようにする。

8. ガイドレール (D) のコロ部 (5) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体側に向ける。

9. レール取付板 (C) と床面の前後隙間が約 8.0mm になるように、レール取付板 (C) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体にビス M4 × 10 パインド (F) 2 本で固定する。



10. Insert the guide rail (D) into the bottom of the document finisher (A).

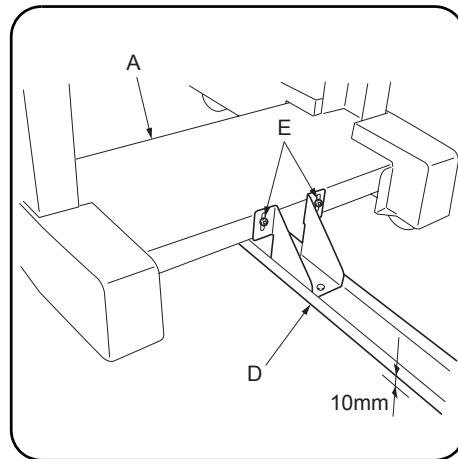


#### Fitting and adjusting the guide rail

11. While pressing the guide rail (D) to the document finisher (A) so that the gap between the guide rail (D) and the floor is approximately 10 mm, secure it using two M4 × 6 binding screws (E).

#### Note

If the guide rail is not properly adjusted, the guide rail may not move when the document finisher is separated.



12. Separate the document finisher (A) from the MFP or the printer and secure it using two M4 × 6 binding screws (E) so that the gap between the guide rail (D) and the floor is approximately 10 mm.

10. Insérer la glissière (D) en bas du retoucheur de document (A).

#### Fixation et réglage de la glissière

11. Tout en pressant la glissière (D) contre le retoucheur de document (A) de façon que l'écart entre la glissière (D) et le sol soit d'environ 10 mm, la fixer à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 6 (E).

#### Remarque

Si la glissière n'est pas réglée correctement, la glissière risquera de ne pas se déplacer lorsque le retoucheur de document sera séparé.

12. Séparer le retoucheur de document (A) du MFP ou imprimante, puis le fixer à l'aide de deux vis de raccordement M4 × 6 (E) de façon que l'écart entre la glissière (D) et le sol soit d'environ 10 mm.

10. Inserte el carril de guía (D) en la parte inferior del finalizador de documentos (A).

#### Fijación y ajuste del carril de guía

11. Mientras presiona el carril de guía (D) en el finalizador de documentos (A) para que la separación entre el carril de guía (D) y el piso sea de unos 10 mm, asegúrelo utilizando dos tornillos de fijación M4 × 6 (E).

#### Nota

Si el carril de guía no está bien ajustado, el carril de guía puede no moverse cuando se separa el finalizador de documentos.

12. Separe el finalizador de documentos (A) del MFP o impresora y asegúrelo utilizando dos tornillos de fijación M4 × 6 (E) para que la separación entre el carril de guía (D) y el piso sea de unos 10 mm.

10. Die Führungsschiene (D) in das Unterteil des Dokument Finishers (A) einschieben.

#### Anbringen und Einstellen der Führungsschieneinheit

11. Die Führungsschiene (D) gegen den Dokument Finisher (A) gedrückt halten, so dass der Abstand zwischen der Führungsschiene (D) und dem Boden ca. 10 mm beträgt, und mit zwei M4 × 6 Befestigungsschrauben (E) sichern.

#### Hinweis

Falls die Führungsschieneinheit nicht korrekt eingestellt ist, bewegt sie sich beim Trennen des Dokument Finishers eventuell nicht.

12. Den Dokument Finisher (A) vom MFP oder Drucker trennen und mit zwei M4 × 6 Befestigungsschrauben (E) sichern, so dass der Abstand zwischen der Führungsschiene (D) und dem Boden ca. 10 mm beträgt.

10. Inserire la guida della rotaia (D) nella parte inferiore della finitrice di documenti (A).

#### Montaggio e regolazione della guida della rotaia

11. Mentre si tiene premuta la guida della rotaia (D) alla finitrice di documenti (A) in modo che lo spazio tra la guida della rotaia (D) e il pavimento sia di circa 10 mm, fissarla a mezzo di due viti di serraggio M4 × 6 (E).

#### Nota

Se la guida della rotaia non è regolata correttamente, potrebbe non muoversi quando il separatore la finitrice di documenti verrà staccato.

12. Separare la finitrice di documenti (A) dall'MFP o stampatore per fissarla a mezzo di due viti di serraggio M4 × 6 (E) in modo che lo spazio tra la guida della rotaia (D) e il pavimento sia di circa 10 mm.

10. 将导向轨道(D)插入装订器(A)的底部。

#### 导向轨道的安装调整

11. 调整导向轨道(D)与地板之间的间距为10毫米左右, 将导向轨道(D)插入装订器(A)到底, 用两个M4×6固结螺钉(E)进行固定。

#### 注意

如果不能正确调整导向轨道的话, 在分离装订器时, 可能会发生导向轨道不能移动的情况。

12. 将装订器(A)分离MFP或打印机, 调整导向轨道(D)与地板之间的间距为10毫米左右后, 用两支M4×6固结螺钉(E)进行固定。

10. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の底部にガイドレール(D)を挿入する。

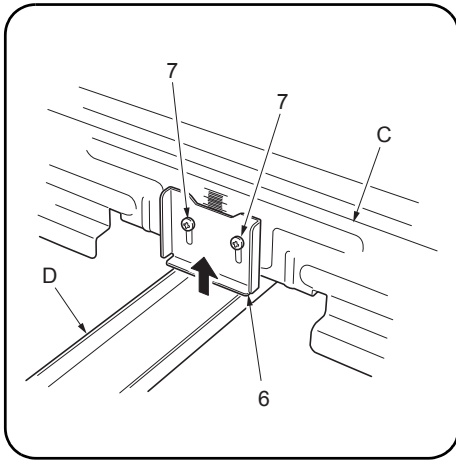
#### ガイドレールの取付調整

11. ガイドレール(D)と床面の隙間が約10mmになるように、ガイドレール(D)をドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)に突き当てながら、ビスM4×6 バインド(E)2本で固定する。

#### 注意

正しく調整しないと、ドキュメントフィニッシャの切り離し時、ガイドレールが動かない恐れがある。

12. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)をMFP本体またはプリンタ本体より切り離し、ガイドレール(D)と床面の隙間が約10mmになるように、ビスM4×6 バインド(E)2本で固定する。



13. Loosen temporarily the two screws (7) that secure the sheet metal (6) of the rail mounting plate (C) on the MFP or the printer, raise the sheet metal (6) by two divisions of the scale from the guide rail (D), and tighten the two screws (7).

**Note**

If the guide rail is not properly adjusted, the guide rail may not move smoothly or the document finisher may fall down.

Slide the document finisher to engage it with the latch catch of the MFP or the printer. If the document finisher and the MFP or the printer do not engage securely, perform the following document finisher height adjustment.

13. Desserrer provisoirement les deux vis (7) qui fixent la feuille métallique (6) de la plaque de montage du rail (C) sur le MFP ou imprimante, élever la feuille métallique (6) de deux crans sur l'échelle de la glissière (D), puis resserrer les deux vis (7).

**Remarque**

Si la glissière n'est pas réglée correctement, la glissière risquera de ne pas se déplacer doucement ou le retoucheur de document risquera de tomber.

Faire glisser le retoucheur de document pour l'engager dans le pontet du loquet du MFP ou imprimante. Si le retoucheur de document et le MFP ou imprimante ne s'engagent pas correctement, effectuer le réglage de hauteur suivant sur le retoucheur de document.

13. Afloje temporalmente los dos tornillos (7) que aseguran la hoja de metal (6) de la placa de montaje de carril (C) en el MFP o impresora, levante la hoja de metal (6) con dos divisiones de la escala del carril de guía (D) y apriete los dos tornillos (7).

**Nota**

Si no se ajusta correctamente el carril de guía, el carril de guía puede no moverse suavemente o el finalizador de documentos puede caer.

Deslice el finalizador de documentos hasta que enganche con el cerrojo del MFP o impresora. Si el finalizador de documentos y el MFP o impresora no se acoplan de manera segura, realice el siguiente ajuste de la altura del finalizador de documentos.

13. Die zwei Schrauben (7), die das Blech (6) der Schienenmontageplatte (C) am MFP oder Drucker sichern, vorübergehend lösen, das Blech (6) um zwei Teilstriche der Skala von der Führungsschiene (D) aus anheben, und die zwei Schrauben (7) wieder anziehen.

**Hinweis**

Falls die Führungsschieneinheit nicht korrekt eingestellt ist, bewegt sie sich eventuell nicht reibungslos, oder der Dokument Finisher kann herunterfallen.

Den Dokument Finisher verschieben, um ihn mit dem Riegelschloßbausatz des MFP oder Drucker in Eingriff zu bringen. Wenn der Dokument Finisher und der MFP oder Drucker nicht richtig ineinander eingreifen, führen Sie die folgende Höheneinstellung für den Dokument Finisher aus.

13. Allentare temporaneamente le due viti (7) che fissano il foglio metallico (6) della piastra di montaggio della rotaia (C) dell'MFP o stampatore, sollevare il foglio di metallo (6) di due posizioni sulla guida della rotaia (D) e serrare le due viti (7).

**Nota**

Se la guida della rotaia non è regolata correttamente, potrebbe non muoversi scorrevolmente oppure la finitrice di documenti potrebbe cadere.

Fare scivolare la finitrice di documenti per farla innestare con il dispositivo di arresto dell'MFP o stampatore. Qualora la finitrice di documenti e l'MFP o stampatore non si innestino saldamente, osservare la seguente procedura di regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

13. 松动固定在MFP或打印机侧轨道座(C)的金属板(6)上的两支固接螺钉(7), 在金属板(6)碰及导向轨道(D)的状态下, 抬升到第2个刻度的位置, 然后用两支螺钉(7)固定。

**注意**

如果不能正确调整的话, 导向轨道则不能顺利移动, 并会发生装订器倒置的情况。

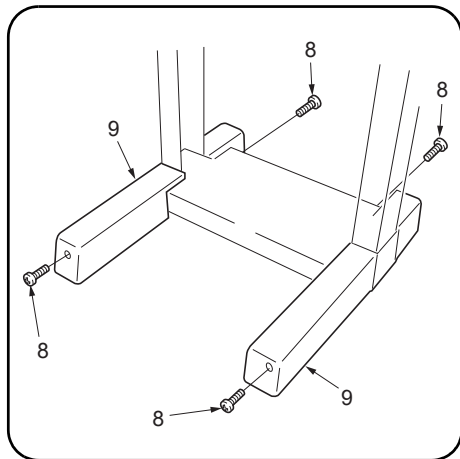
滑动装订器并连接于MFP或打印机的挂钩承支架上。  
如无法吻合, 请按下述步骤调整装订器的高度。

13. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体側のレール取付板 (C) の板金 (6) を固定しているビス (7) 2 本をいったん緩め、板金 (6) をガイドレール (D) に当てた状態から 2 目盛り上の位置にあげて、ビス (7) 2 本を固定する。

**注意**

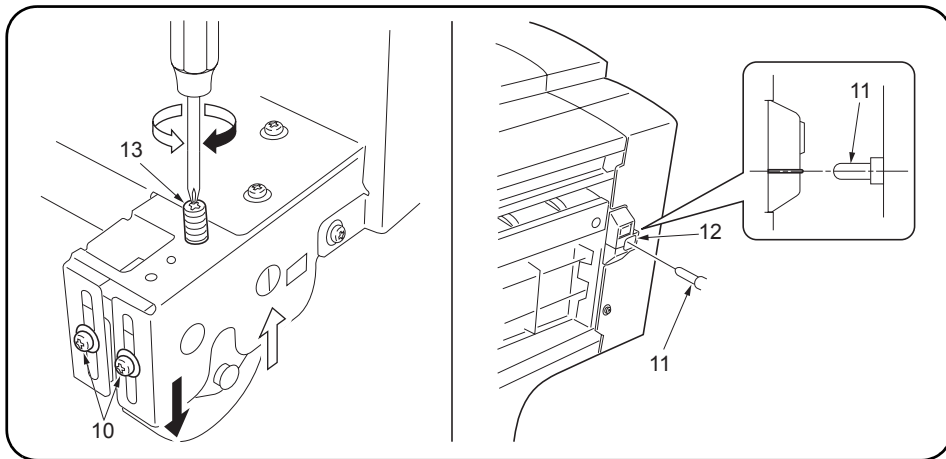
正しく調整しないと、ガイドレールがスムーズに動かない。又ドキュメントフィニッシャが倒れる恐れがある。

ドキュメントフィニッシャをスライドさせて MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体のラッチ受け板に連結させる。確実に連結しない場合は、次のドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整をおこなう。



### Adjusting the height of the document finisher

1. Remove the front and rear covers (9) from the document finisher (A) by removing two screws (8) each.



2. Loosen the two screws (10) on the rear right caster of the document finisher (A). Adjust the height of the rear right caster by turning its adjustment bolt (13) using a cross-headed screwdriver so that the axis of the pin (11) of the latch catch is aligned with the marking of the slot (12) of the document finisher (A) when the document finisher (A) is joined to the MFP or the printer (viewed from the machine front).

**Note:** Turning the adjustment bolt (13) clockwise lifts the document finisher (A), while turning it counterclockwise lowers the document finisher (A).

### Réglage de la hauteur du retoucheur de document

1. Retirer les couvercles avant et arrière (9) du retoucheur de document (A) en retirant deux vis (8) sur chacun des couvercles.

2. Desserrer les deux vis (10) de la roulette arrière droite du retoucheur de document (A). Régler la hauteur de la roulette arrière droite en tournant son boulon de réglage (13) à l'aide d'un tournevis cruciforme de manière que l'axe de la broche (11) du pontet du loquet soit aligné sur la marque de la fente (12) du retoucheur de document (A) lorsque le retoucheur de document (A) est fixé au MFP ou imprimante (vue à partir de l'avant de la machine).

**Remarque:** Si l'on tourne le boulon de réglage (13) dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre, le retoucheur de document (A) s'élève; si on le tourne dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre, le retoucheur de document (A) s'abaisse.

### Ajuste de altura del finalizador de documentos

1. Desmonte las tapas delantera y trasera (9) del finalizador de documentos (A) sacando los dos tornillos (8) cada uno.

2. Afloje los dos tornillos (10) en la rueda trasera del finalizador de documentos (A). Ajuste la altura de la rueda trasera derecha girando su perno de ajuste (13) utilizando un destornillador de punta en cruz para que el eje del pasador (11) en el pestillo esté alineado con la marca de la ranura (12) del finalizador de documentos (A) cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) esté unido a el MFP o impresora (vista del frente de la máquina).

**Nota:** Al girar el perno de ajuste (13) en la dirección de las manecillas del reloj se levanta el finalizador de documentos (A) y al girar contra las manecillas del reloj baja el finalizador de documentos (A).

### Einstellen der Dokument Finisherhöhe

1. Die Vorder- und Rückabdeckung (9) nach Entfernen von je zwei Schrauben (8) vom Dokument Finisher (A) abnehmen.

2. Die zwei Schrauben (10) an der hinteren rechten Laufrolle des Dokument Finishers (A) lösen. Die Höhe der hinteren rechten Laufrolle durch Drehen ihrer Einstellschraube (13) mit einem Kreuzschlitzschraubenzieher so einstellen, dass die Achse des Stifts (11) der Verriegelungsklaue auf die Markierung des Schlitzes (12) des Dokument Finishers (A) ausgerichtet ist, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) an den MFP oder Drucker angesetzt ist (von der Gerätevorderseite gesehen).

**Hinweis:** Durch Drehen der Einstellschraube (13) im Uhrzeigersinn wird der Dokument Finisher (A) angehoben, während er durch Drehen entgegen dem Uhrzeigersinn abgesenkt wird.

### Regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti

1. Rimuovere i pannelli anteriore e posteriore (9) dalla finitrice di documenti (A) togliendo 2 viti (8) per ciascuno.

2. Allentare le due viti (10) sulla ruota orientabile posteriore destra della finitrice di documenti (A). Regolare l'altezza della ruota orientabile posteriore destra ruotandone il suo bullone di regolazione (13) a mezzo di un cacciavite a croce, in modo che l'asse del perno (11) del dispositivo di arresto risulti allineato ai contrassegni del foro (12) della finitrice di documenti (A) una volta che la finitrice stessa (A) viene unita all'MFP o stampatore (vista dal lato frontale della macchina).

**Nota:** Ruotando il bullone di regolazione (13) in senso orario si solleva la finitrice di documenti (A), mentre ruotandolo in senso antiorario si abbassa la finitrice di documenti (A).

### [調整装订器的高度]

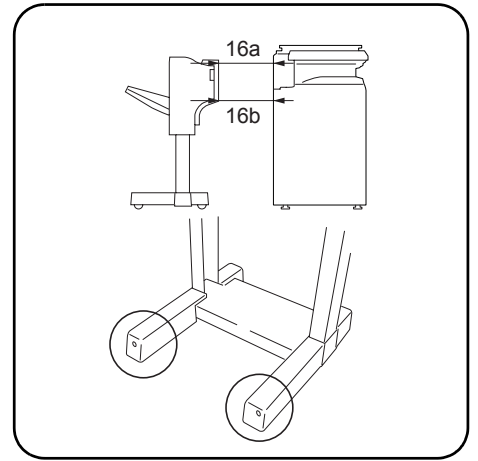
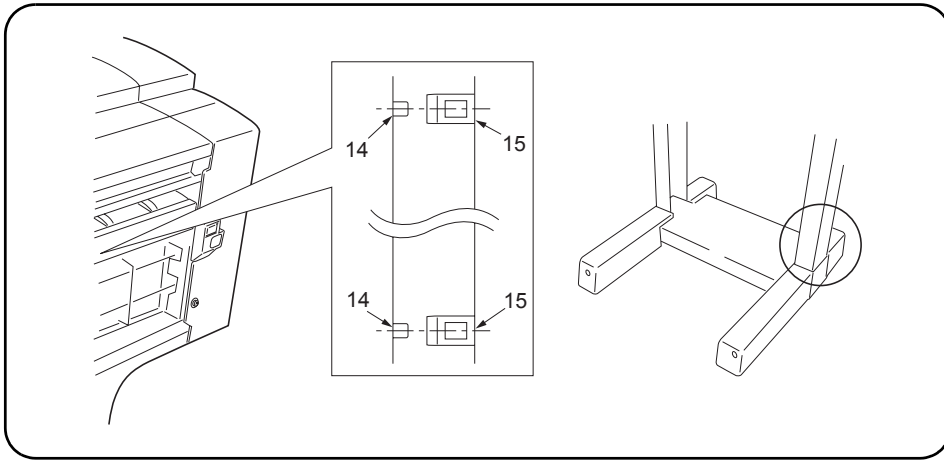
1. 卸下各两支小螺钉(8), 并取下装订器(A)的前后盖板(9)。

2. 将装订器(A)后右侧滚轮的两支固定螺钉(10)拧松。将装订器(A)与MFP或打印机连接, 为了使(从前面看时)挂钩承支架销(11)的中心与装订器(A)的长孔(12)的刻度相对准, 用十字螺丝刀旋转调节用螺钉(13), 对后右侧滚轮的高度进行调整。将调节用螺钉(13)往顺时针方向旋转时, 可调高装订器(A), 而往逆时针方向旋转螺钉时, 则可调低高度。

### [ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整]

1. ビス (8) 各 2 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前後カバー (9) を取り外す。

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) 右後のキャストの固定ビス (10) 2 本を緩める。ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体に連結し、前から見た時に、ラッチ受け板のピン (11) の中心が、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の長穴 (12) の刻印に合うように、プラスドライバーを用いて調整用ボルト (13) を回し、右後のキャストの高さ調整をおこなう。調整用ボルト (13) を時計方向に回すとドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) が上がり、反時計方向に回すと下がる。



3. Adjust the height of the front right caster in the same manner as in step 2 so that each center of the hooking portions (15) of the latch catch is aligned with the center of the two hooks (14) on the document finisher (A) when the document finisher (A) is joined to the MFP or the printer (viewed from above).

4. Adjust the height of the left two casters in the same manner as in step 2 so that the gaps (16a) and (16b) between the document finisher (A) and the MFP or the printer are the same when the document finisher (A) is detached from the MFP or the printer.

3. Régler la hauteur de la roulette avant droite en procédant comme à l'étape 2, de manière que chacun des centres des parties d'accrochage (15) du pontet du loquet soit aligné sur le centre des deux crochets (14) du retoucheur de document (A) lorsque le retoucheur de document (A) est fixé au MFP ou imprimante (vue à partir du haut).

4. Régler la hauteur des deux roulettes gauches en procédant comme à l'étape 2, de manière que les écarts (16a) et (16b) entre le retoucheur de documents (A) et la MFP ou l'imprimante soient identiques lorsque le retoucheur de documents (A) est détaché de la MFP ou de l'imprimante.

3. Ajuste la altura de la rueda delantera derecha de la misma forma que en el paso 2 para que cada centro de las partes de enganche (15) de cada pestillo esté alineado con el centro de los dos ganchos (14) en el finalizador de documentos (A) cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) está unido a el MFP o impresora (vista de arriba).

4. Ajuste la altura de las dos ruedas izquierdas de la misma forma que en el paso 2 para que las separaciones (16a) y (16b) entre el finalizador de documentos (A) y la MFP o la impresora sean las mismas cuando el finalizador de documentos (A) está soltado de la MFP o la impresora.

3. Die Höhe der vorderen rechten Laufrolle auf die in Schritt 2 beschriebene Weise einstellen, so dass die Mitte der Rasten (15) der Verriegelungsklaue auf die Mitte der zwei Haken (14) am Dokument Finisher (A) ausgerichtet ist, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) an den MFP oder Drucker angesetzt ist (von oben gesehen).

4. Die Höhe der beiden linken Laufrollen auf die in Schritt 2 beschriebene Weise einstellen, so dass die Abstände (16a) und (16b) zwischen dem Dokument Finisher (A) und dem MFP oder dem Drucker gleich groß sind, wenn der Dokument Finisher (A) vom MFP oder vom Drucker abgenommen wird.

3. Regolare l'altezza della ruota orientabile anteriore destra allo stesso modo descritto al passo 2, in modo che ciascun centro delle parti di aggancio (15) del dispositivo di arresto sia allineato al centro dei due ganci (14) della finitrice di documenti (A), una volta che la finitrice di documenti (A) viene unita all'MFP o stampatore (vista dall'alto).

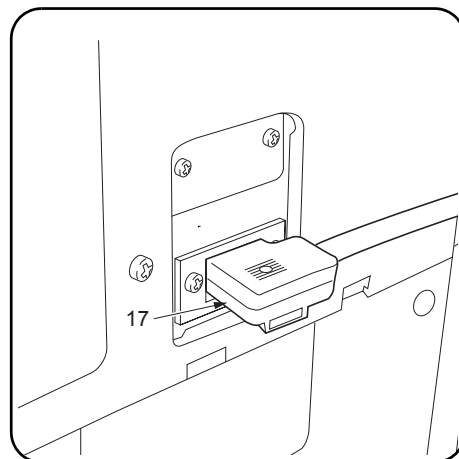
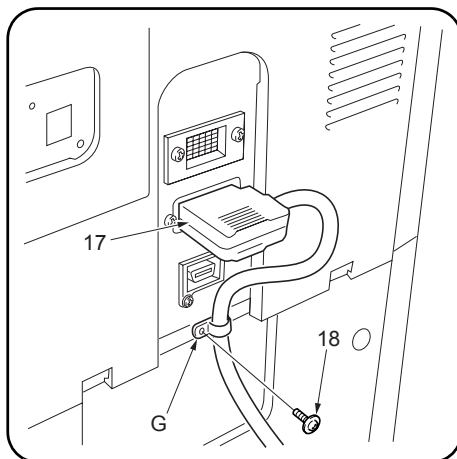
4. Regolare l'altezza delle due ruote orientabili sinistre allo stesso modo descritto al passo 2, in modo che le distanze (16a) e (16b) tra la finitrice di documenti (A) e l'MFP o lo stampatore siano le stesse una volta che la finitrice di documenti (A) viene separata dall'MFP o dallo stampatore.

3. 将装订器(A)与MFP或打印机连接,使(从上面看时)装订器(A)的两个挂钩(14)与挂钩承支架的孔(15)中心相对准,并按与步骤2相同的方法来调整前右侧滚轮的高度。

4. 按照步骤2中相同的方式调整左侧两个轮脚的高度,使得装订器(A)和MFP或打印机之间的间隙(16a)和(16b)在从MFP或打印机上拆下装订器(A)时为相同的。

3. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)をMFP本体またはプリンタ本体に連結し、上から見た時に、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)のフック(14)2ヶ所とラッチ受け板の引っ掛け部(15)の中心が合うように、手順2と同様にして右前のキャスターの高さ調整をおこなう。

4. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)をMFP本体またはプリンタ本体から切り離れた時に、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)とMFP本体またはプリンタ本体の間隔(16a)(16b)が等しくなるように、手順2と同様にして左側のキャスター2カ所の高さ調整をおこなう。



5. Reattach the removed parts to their original positions.

**Connecting the signal cable (monochrome machines only)**

1. Connect the signal cable (17) of the document finisher (A) to the MFP or the printer, pass the cable through the clamp (G), and secure the clamp by tightening the screw (18) of the MFP or the printer. The cable length to the clamp (G) must be approximately 100 mm.

**Connecting the signal cable (full-color machines only)**

1. Connect the signal cable (17) of the document finisher (A) to the MFP or the printer.

5. Remettez les pièces enlevées à leur position d'origine.

**Connexion du câble d'interconnexion (machines monochromes seulement)**

1. Connecter le câble d'interconnexion (17) du retoucheur de document (A) au MFP ou imprimante, passer le câble par la bride (G), puis fixer la bride en serrant la vis (18) du MFP ou imprimante. La longueur du câble jusqu'à la bride (G) doit être d'environ 100 mm.

**Connexion du câble d'interconnexion (machines entièrement en couleurs seulement)**

1. Connecter le câble d'interconnexion (17) du retoucheur de document (A) au MFP ou imprimante.

5. Vuelva a instalar las piezas desmontadas en sus posiciones originales.

**Conexión del cable de señal (sólo para máquinas monocromáticas)**

1. Conecte el cable de señal (17) del finalizador de documentos (A) en el MFP o impresora, pase el cable por la abrazadera (G) y asegure la abrazadera apretando el tornillo (18) del MFP o impresora. La longitud del cable a la abrazadera (G) debe ser de unos 100 mm.

**Conexión del cable de señal (sólo para máquinas a todo color)**

1. Conecte el cable de señal (17) del finalizador de documentos (A) en el MFP o impresora.

5. Die entfernten Teile wieder an ihren ursprünglichen Positionen anbringen.

**Anschließen des Signalkabels (nur Monochrommaschinen)**

1. Das Signalkabel (17) des Dokument Finishers (A) an den MFP oder Drucker anschließen, das Kabel durch die Klemme (G) führen, und die Klemme durch Anziehen der Schraube (18) des MFP oder Drucker befestigen. Die Kabellänge bis zur Klemme (G) muss ungefähr 100 mm betragen.

**Anschließen des Signalkabels (nur Vollfarbenmaschinen)**

1. Das Signalkabel (17) des Dokument Finishers (A) an den MFP oder Drucker anschließen.

5. Rimontare le parti rimosse nelle loro posizioni originali.

**Connessione del cavo del segnale (solo per macchine in bianco e nero)**

1. Collegare il cavo del segnale (17) della finitrice di documenti (A) all'MFP o stampatore, fare passare il cavo attraverso il morsetto (G) e fissare il morsetto stringendo la vite (18) dell'MFP o stampatore. La lunghezza del cavo al morsetto (G) deve essere di circa 100 mm.

**Connessione del cavo del segnale (solo per le macchine a colori)**

1. Collegare il cavo del segnale (17) della finitrice di documenti (A) all'MFP o stampatore.

5. 卸下的部品按原样装上。

[连接信号电线：仅限于黑白机]

1. 连接装订器(A)的信号电线(17)，将电线穿过夹零件(G)，然后，用螺钉(18)一起紧固。到夹零件(G)处的电线长度约需100mm。

[连接信号电线：仅限于全彩色机]

1. 装订器(A)的信号电线(17)连接在MFP或打印机上。

5. 取り外した部品を元通りに取り付け。

[信号線の接続:モノクロ機のみ]

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の信号線(17)を接続し、ケーブルをクランプ(G)を通して、ビス(18)で共締めする。クランプ(G)までのケーブルの長さは約100mmにすること。

[信号線の接続:フルカラー機のみ]

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A)の信号線(17)をMFP本体またはプリンタ本体に接続する。

### **Operation check**

1. Insert the MFP or the printer power plug to the wall outlet and turn the main switch on.
2. Check that the paper is fed and that the document finisher (A) operates correctly.

---

### **Vérification du fonctionnement**

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP ou imprimante dans la prise murale et mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Vérifier que le papier est fourni et que le retoucheur de document (A) fonctionne correctement.

---

### **Comprobación operacional**

1. Inserte el enchufe del MFP o impresora en el receptáculo de la pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Asegúrese de que avance el papel y verifique que el finalizador de documentos (A) funcione correctamente.

---

### **Betriebstest**

1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP oder Drucker in die Netzsteckdose ein und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter ein.
2. Vergewissern dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert und dass der Dokument Finisher (A) einwandfrei funktioniert.

---

### **Controllo del funzionamento**

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP o stampatore nella presa di rete e quindi premere il pulsante generale di accensione.
2. Verificare che la carta di prova sia alimentata e controllare che la finitrice di documenti (A) funzioni correttamente.

---

#### **[ 确认运作 ]**

1. 将MFP主机的电源插头插入插座后，开启总电源。
2. 确认已经送纸并且装订器(A)运行正常。

---

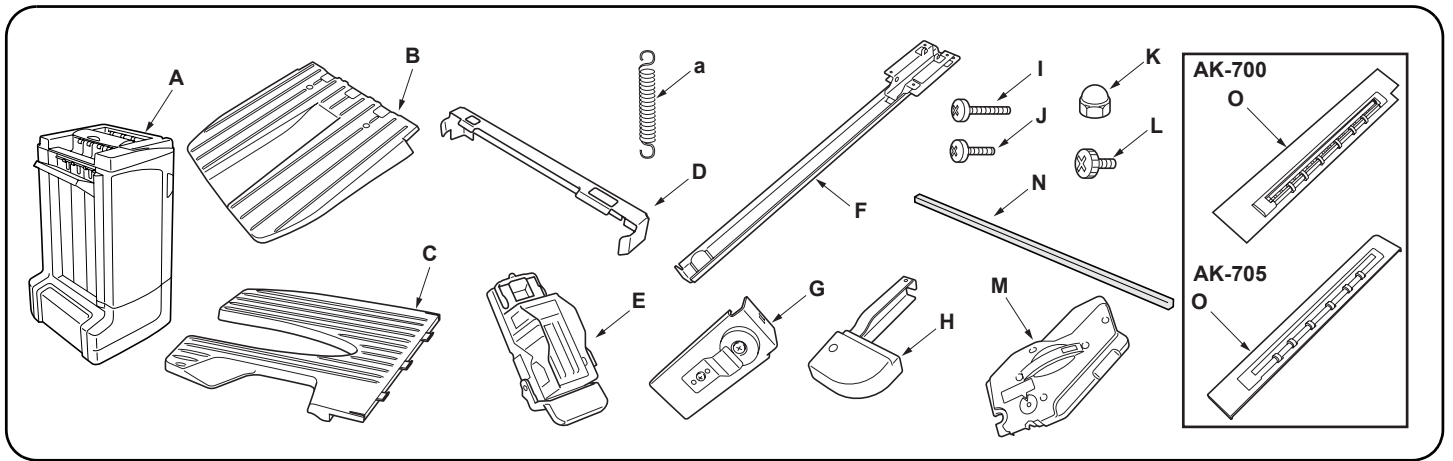
#### **[ 動作確認 ]**

1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. 通紙確認をおこない、ドキュメントフィニッシャ(A) が正常に動作することを確認する。

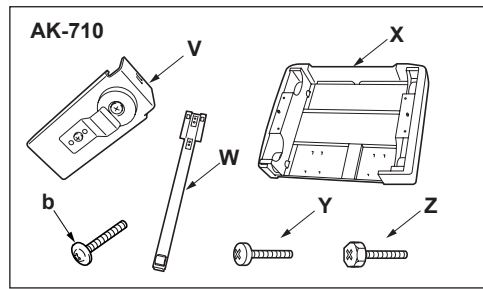
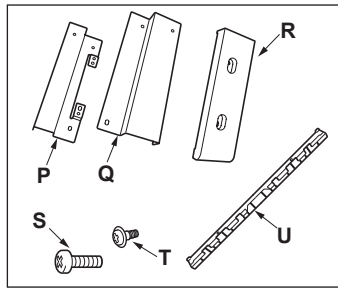
# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR 3000 SHEETS DOCUMENT FINISHER**

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.  
Output: 24 V dc (426 VA max.)  
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cables.  
P/N: 3H327220





English		
<b>Supplied parts</b>		
A Document finisher.....	1	
B Tray A.....	1	
C Tray B.....	1	
D Connecting plate.....	1	
E Staple cartridge.....	1	
F Base slider A.....	1	
G Base slider B.....	1	
H Plate foot R.....	1	
I M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw.....	9	
J M4 × 6 tap Tight S screw.....	4	
K Nut.....	2	
L Pin.....	2	
M Internal tray cover.....	1	
a Spring hook.....	1	
N Sponge.....	1	
For installing the document finisher to a monochrome machine, part (O) above is separately needed.		
O Curl eliminator.....	1	
For monochrome MFP's: AK-700		
For monochrome printers: AK-705		
Français		
<b>Pièces fournies</b>		
A Retoucheur de document.....	1	
B Bac A.....	1	
C Bac B.....	1	
D Plaque de connexion.....	1	
E Cartouche d'agrafes.....	1	
F Règle de base A.....	1	
G Règle de base B.....	1	
H Pied de plaque R.....	1	
I Vis S taraudée M4 × 10.....	9	
J Vis S taraudée M4 × 6.....	4	
K Ecrou.....	2	
L Broche.....	2	
M Capot de bac interne.....	1	
a Crochet de ressort.....	1	
N Eponge.....	1	
Pour installer le retoucheur de document sur une machine monochrome, la pièce (O) ci-dessous est requise séparément		
O Élément d'élimination des boucles.....	1	
Pour les MFP monochromes: AK-700		
Pour les imprimantes monochromes: AK-705		
Español		
<b>Partes suministradas</b>		
A Finalizador de documentos.....	1	
B Bandeja A.....	1	
C Bandeja B.....	1	
D Placa de conexión.....	1	
E Cartucho de grapas.....	1	
F Deslizador A.....	1	
G Deslizador B.....	1	
H Pedal R.....	1	
I Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10.....	9	
J Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 6.....	4	
K Tuerca.....	2	
L Pasador.....	2	
M Cubierta de bandeja interna.....	1	
a Gancho de resorte.....	1	
N Esponja.....	1	
Para instalar el finalizador de documentos en una máquina de blanco y negro será necesaria la parte (O) mostrada arriba.		
O Eliminador de curvatura del papel.....	1	
Para las MFP monocromáticas: AK-700		
Para las impresoras monocromáticas: AK-705		
Deutsch		
<b>Gelieferte Teile</b>		
A Dokument-Finisher.....	1	
B Fach A.....	1	
C Fach B.....	1	
D Verbindungsplatte.....	1	
E Heftklammerkassette.....	1	
F Basis-Schieber A.....	1	
G Basis-Schieber B.....	1	
H Plattenfuß R.....	1	
I M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube.....	9	
J M4 × 6 Passstift-Verbundschraube.....	4	
K Mutter.....	2	
L Stift.....	2	
M Innenfach.....	1	
a Federhaken.....	1	
N Schwamm.....	1	
Für den Einbau des Dokument-Finishers auf einer Monochrommaschine ist der obere Teil (O) zusätzlich erforderlich.		
O Glättungseinrichtung.....	1	
Für Monochrome MFP: AK-700		
Für Monochromdrucker: AK-705		
Italiano		
<b>Parti fornite</b>		
A Finitrice di documenti.....	1	
B Vassoio A.....	1	
C Vassoio B.....	1	
D Piastra di connessione.....	1	
E Cartuccia pinzatrice.....	1	
F Scivolo di base A.....	1	
G Scivolo di base B.....	1	
H Piedino di sostegno R.....	1	
I Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10.....	9	
J Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 6.....	4	
K Dad.....	2	
L Perno.....	2	
M Pannello del vassoio interno.....	1	
a Gancio a molla.....	1	
N Spugna.....	1	
Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su un macchinario in bianco e nero, è separatamente necessaria la parte (O) sopra.		
O Eliminatore di arricciature.....	1	
Per gli MFP in bianco e nero: AK-700		
Per gli stampatori in bianco e nero: AK-705		
简体中文		
<b>附属部件</b>		
A 装订器.....	1	
B 托盘 A.....	1	
C 托盘 B.....	1	
D 连接板.....	1	
E 订书钉盒.....	1	
F 底座滑板 A.....	1	
G 底座滑板 B.....	1	
H 板脚座 R.....	1	
I M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉.....	9	
J M4 × 6 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉.....	4	
K 螺母.....	2	
L 销.....	2	
M 内部托盘盖板.....	1	
a 弹簧挂钩.....	1	
N 海绵.....	1	
黑白机上安装装订器时, 另外需要安装上述的部件 (O)。		
O 防卷曲部件.....	1	
黑白 MFP: AK-700		
黑白打印机: AK-705		
日本語		
<b>付属品</b>		
A ドキュメントフィニッシャー.....	1	
B トレイ A.....	1	
C トレイ B.....	1	
D 連結板.....	1	
E ステープルカートリッジ.....	1	
F ベーススライダ A.....	1	
G ベーススライダ B.....	1	
H プレートフット R.....	1	
I ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S.....	9	
J ビス M4 × 6 タップタイト S.....	4	
K ナット.....	2	
L ピン.....	2	
M 内部トレイカバー.....	1	
a バネフック.....	1	
N スポンジ.....	1	
モノクロ機にドキュメントフィニッシャーを設置する場合、(O) が別途必要となる。		
O デカーラー.....	1	
モノクロ MFP 用: AK-700		
モノクロプリンタ用: AK-705		



When installing the document finisher to a full-color MFP, use parts (P), (Q), (R) and eight out of nine (S) supplied with the job separator. Remaining parts (S), (T), and (U) are required only when installing DF-730.

P Fixing plate F	1
Q Fixing plate R	1
R Cover AT	1
S M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw	9

T Shoulder screw  
U Guide plate  
When installing the document finisher to a full-color machine, parts (V), (W), (X), (Y) and (Z) are additionally needed.

V Base slider B	1
W Base slider V	1
X Assembly base	1

Y M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw ..... 9  
Z M4 × 10 hexagon head screw ..... 1  
b M4 × 14 TP tap Tight S screw ..... 1  
**When the paper feeder of 500 sheets x 2 is used**  
One M4 × 14 TP tap Tight S screw (b) is left.  
**When the paper feeder of 3000 sheets is used**  
One M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (Y) is left.  
Be sure to remove any fixing tapes or cushioning material attached to the supplied parts.

Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de documents sur une MFP polychrome, les pièces (P), (Q), (R) et 8 des 9 (S) fournies avec le séparateur de travaux sont requises. Les pièces restantes (S), (T) et (U) ne sont requises que pour l'installation de DF-730.

P Plaque de fixation avant	1
Q Plaque de fixation arrière	1
R Couverture AT	1
S Vis S taraudée M4 × 10	9

T Vis d'épaule  
U Plaque guide  
Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur une machine entièrement en couleurs, les pièces (V), (W), (X), (Y) et (Z) sont requises en plus.

V Règle de base B	1
W Règle de base V	1
X Base d'ensemble	1

Y Vis S taraudée M4 × 10 ..... 9  
Z Vis à tête hexagonale M4 × 10 ..... 1  
b Vis TP S taraudée M4 × 14 ..... 1  
Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 500 feuilles x 2  
Une vis TP S taraudée M4 x 14 (b) est superflue.  
Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles  
Une vis S taraudée M4 x 10 (Y) est superflue.  
Veiller à retirer toute bande de fixation ou matériau d'emballage entourant les pièces fournies.

Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una MFP a todo color serán necesarias las partes (P), (Q) y (R), y ocho de los nueve tornillos (S) suministrados con el separador de tareas. El resto de las partes (S), (T) y (U) sólo serán necesarias cuando se instale el DF-730.

P Placa de fijación F	1
Q Placa de fijación R	1
R Cubierta AT	1
S Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10	9

T Tornillo de hombro  
U Placa guía  
Cuando el finalizador de documentos se instala en una máquina a todo color serán necesarias también las partes (V), (W), (X), (Y) y (Z).

V Deslizador de base B	1
W Deslizador de base V	1
X Base del conjunto	1

Y Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 ..... 9  
Z Tornillo de cabeza hexagonal M4 × 10 ..... 1  
b Tornillo TP de ajuste M4 × 14 ..... 1  
Cuando se utiliza el alimentador de papel de 500 hojas x 2  
Sobra un tornillo TP de ajuste M4 x 14 (b).  
Cuando se utiliza el alimentador de papel de 3000 hojas  
Sobra un tornillo de ajuste M4 x 10 (Y).  
Asegúrese de quitar las cintas de fijación o el material amortiguador colocado en las partes suministradas.

Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Farbmultifunktionsgerät angebracht wird, sind die Teile (P), (Q), (R) und acht von neun (S) Schrauben die mit dem Jobtrenner geliefert erforderlich. Die verbleibenden Teile (S), (T), und (U) sind nur dann erforderlich, wenn der DF-730 aufgestellt wird.

P Fixierplatte F	1
Q Fixierplatte R	1
R Abdeckung AT	1
S M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube	9

T Bundschraube  
U Führungsplatte  
Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf einem Vollfarbkopierer angebracht wird, so sind zusätzlich die Teile (V), (W), (X), (Y) und (Z) erforderlich.

V Basis-Schieber B	1
W Basis-Schieber V	1
X Bauteile-Basis	1

Y M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben ..... 9  
Z M4 × 10 Sechskantschraube ..... 1  
b M4 × 14 TP Passstift-Verbundschraube .. 1  
**Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 500 Blätter x 2**  
Eine M4 × 14 TP Passstift-Verbundschraube (b) ist übrig.  
**Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter**  
Eine M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (Y) ist übrig.  
Sicherstellen, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und Dämpfungsmaterialien von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt werden.

Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti su un MFP a colori, sono necessarie le parti (P), (Q), (R) e otto su nove (S) fornite in dotazione con il separatore dei lavori. Le rimanenti parti (S), (T) e (U) sono necessarie solo nel caso di installazione del DF-730.

P Piastra di fissaggio F	1
Q Piastra di fissaggio R	1
R Coperchio AT	1
S Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10	9

T Vite a colletto  
U Piastra della guida  
Per l'installazione della finitrice di documenti in un macchinario a colori, sono necessarie in aggiunta le parti (V), (W), (X), (Y) e (Z).

V Scivolo di base B	1
W Scivolo di base V	1
X Base di assemblaggio	1

Y Vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 ..... 9  
Z Vite con testa esagonale M4 × 10 ..... 1  
b Vite TP con testa a croce S M4 × 14 ..... 1  
Quando si utilizza l'alimentatore di carta da 500 fogli x 2  
Viene lasciata una vite TP con testa a croce S M4 x 14 (b)  
Quando si utilizza l'alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli  
Viene lasciata una vite con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (Y)  
Assicurarsi di rimuovere qualsiasi nastro adesivo o imbottitura fissati alle parti fornite.

全彩色 MFP 上安装装订器时, 请使用作业分离器上附属的部件 (P)、(Q)、(R) 和 9 个部件 (S) 中的 8 个。只有安装 DF-730 时需要剩余的部件 (S)、(T) 和 (U)。

P 固定板 F	1
Q 固定板 R	1
R 盖板 AT	1
S M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉	9

T 阶梯螺钉  
U 导向板  
全彩色机上安装装订器时, 另外需要安装部件 (V)、(W)、(X)、(Y) 和 (Z)。

V 底座滑板 B	1
W 底座滑板 V	1
X 组装底座	1

Y M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 ..... 9  
Z M4 × 10 六角头螺钉 ..... 1  
b M4 × 14 TP 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 ..... 1  
使用 500 张 × 2 个供纸盒时  
剩下 1 个 M4 × 14 TP 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (b)。  
使用 3000 张供纸盒时  
剩下 1 个 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y)。  
请务必拆下附带有附属部件上的固定胶带或弹性垫料。

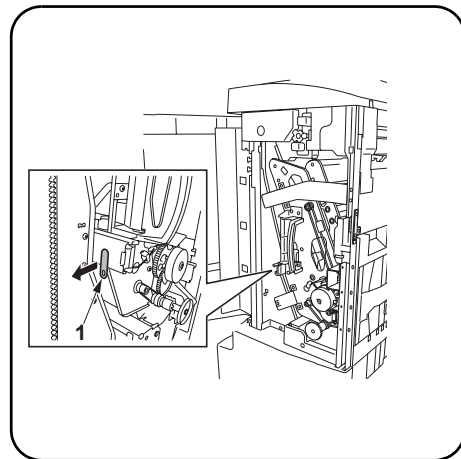
フルカラー MFP 機にドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合、ジョブセパレータに付属する (P)、(Q)、(R)、(S) 8 本が必要となる。DF-730 を設置する場合のみ、(S)、(T)、(U) が必要となる。

P 固定板 F	1
Q 固定板 R	1
R カバー AT	1
S ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S	9

T 段付きビス  
U ガイド板  
フルカラー機にドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合、(V)、(W)、(X)、(Y)、(Z) が別途必要となる。

V ベーススライダ B	1
W ベーススライダ V	1
X 組立ベース	1

Y ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S ..... 9  
Z M4 × 10 六角ビス ..... 1  
b ビス M4 × 14 TP タップタイト S ..... 1  
**500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダーの場合**  
ビス M4 × 14 TP タップタイト S (b) が 1 本余ります。  
**3000 枚ペーパーフィーダーの場合**  
ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) が 1 本余ります。  
付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



### Installation Procedure

When installing the document finisher to a full-color MFP, install the job separator in advance. Be sure to install the document finisher before installing the center-folding unit.

Before installing the document finisher, make sure that the MFP or the printer's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.

### Removing the slider fixing pin

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).  
Remove the fixing tape from the slider of the inner tray and remove the slider fixing pin A (1).

### Procédure d'installation

Installer le séparateur de travaux, puis installer le retoucheur de documents sur la MFP polychrome. Veiller à installer le retoucheur de document avant d'installer la plieuse.

Avant d'installer le retoucheur de document, s'assurer que l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP ou imprimante est hors tension et que le cordon d'alimentation est débranché de la prise secteur.

### Enlèvement de la broche de fixation de la règle

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de documents (A).  
Retirer la bande de fixation de la règle du plateau interne et retirer la broche de fixation A (1).

### Procedimiento de instalación

Instale el separador de tareas y luego instale el finalizador de documentos en la MFP a todo color. Asegúrese de instalar el finalizador de documentos antes de instalar la unidad de plegado central.

Antes de instalar el finalizador de documentos, asegúrese de que el interruptor principal de la alimentación de la MFP esté desconectado y que su cable de alimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corriente.

### Extracción del pasador de fijación del deslizador

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).  
Quite la cinta de fijación del deslizador de la bandeja interior y quite el pasador de fijación del deslizador A (1).

### Einbauverfahren

Bauen Sie zuerst den Jobtrenner und dann den Dokument-Finisher in den Farbmultifunktionsgerät ein. Stellen Sie sicher, dass der Dokument-Finisher vor der Mittenfalteinheit angebracht wird.

Vor dem Einbau des Dokument-Finishers muss der MFP-Hauptschalter aktiviert, und das Netzkabel von der Steckdose abgezogen sein.

### Entfernen des Schieber-Fixierstifts

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).  
Entfernen Sie das Klebeband vom Schieber des Innenfachs, und bauen Sie danach den Schieber-Fixierstift A (1) aus.

### Procedura di installazione

Installare il separatore dei lavori e poi procedere all'installazione della finitrice di documenti sul MFP a colori. Assicurarsi di installare la finitrice di documenti prima di installare l'unità di piegatura centrale.

Prima di installare la finitrice di documenti, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della MFP sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa.

### Rimozione del perno di fissaggio dello scivolo

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).  
Togliere il nastro adesivo dallo scivolo del vassoio interno e rimuovere il perno di fissaggio dello scivolo A (1).

### 安装步骤

将装订器安装到全彩色 MFP 时, 请提前安装作业分离器。  
请务必在安装中缝装订一折页单元前安装装订器。

安装装订器前, 请确定 MFP 的主电源开关已经关闭并且电源线已从电源插座上拔下。

### 拆下滑板固定销

1. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。  
从内部托盘的滑板上拆下固定胶带并拆下滑板固定销 A (1)。

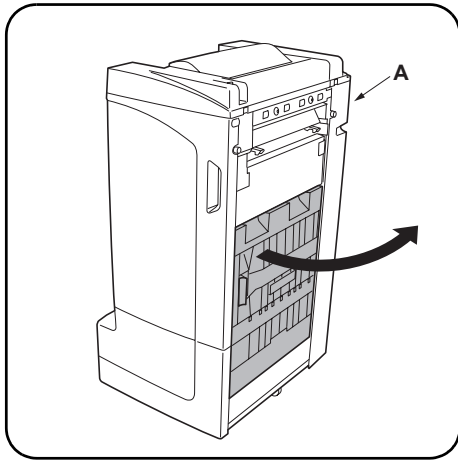
### 設置手順

フルカラーMFP機にドキュメントフィニッシャを設置するときは、先にジョブセパレータを設置しておくこと。  
ドキュメントフィニッシャの設置は、必ず中折りユニットの設置前に行うこと。

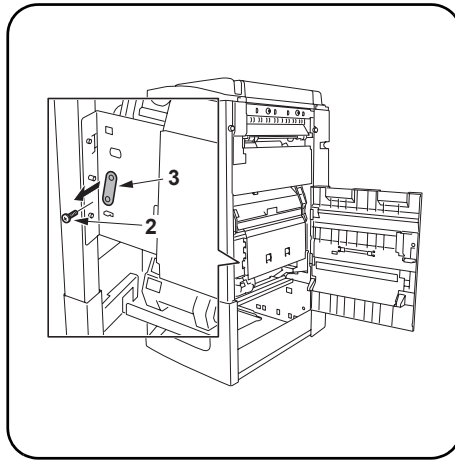
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

### スライダ固定ピンの取り外し

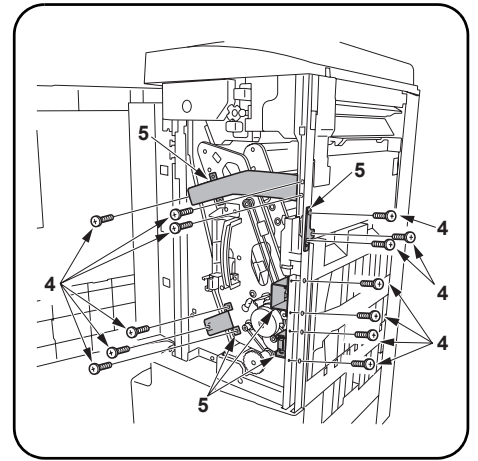
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。  
内部トレイのスライダの固定テープを剥がし、スライダ固定ピン A (1) を取り外す。



2. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).



3. Remove the screw (2) to remove the slider fixing pin B (3).



### Removing the fittings

4. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).  
5. Remove 13 screws (4) to remove five fittings (5).  
A yellow label is pasted on the fittings.

2. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).

3. Retirer la vis (2) pour retirer la broche de fixation de la règle B (3).

### Enlèvement des fixations

4. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).  
5. Retirer 13 vis (1) pour retirer cinq fixations (2).  
Une étiquette jaune et collée sur les fixations.

2. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).

3. Quite el tornillo (2) para quitar el pasador de fijación del deslizador B (3).

### Extracción de los accesorios

4. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).  
5. Quite los 13 tornillos (1) para quitar los cinco accesorios (2).  
Hay una etiqueta amarilla pegada en los accesorios.

2. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

3. Lösen Sie die Schraube (2), um den Fixierstift B (3) vom Schieber zu entfernen.

### Entfernen der Befestigungselemente

4. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).  
5. Entfernen Sie die 13 Schrauben (1) um die Befestigungselemente (2) zu entfernen.  
Ein gelber Aufkleber ist an den Befestigungselementen angebracht.

2. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).

3. Togliere la vite (2) per rimuovere il perno di fissaggio dello scivolo B (3).

### Rimozione dei pezzi di raccordo

4. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).  
5. Togliere 13 viti (1) per rimuovere i cinque pezzi di raccordo (2).  
Un'etichetta gialla è incollata sui pezzi di raccordo (2).

2. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。

3. 拆下螺钉 (2) 以便拆下滑板固定销 B (3)。

### 拆下固定件

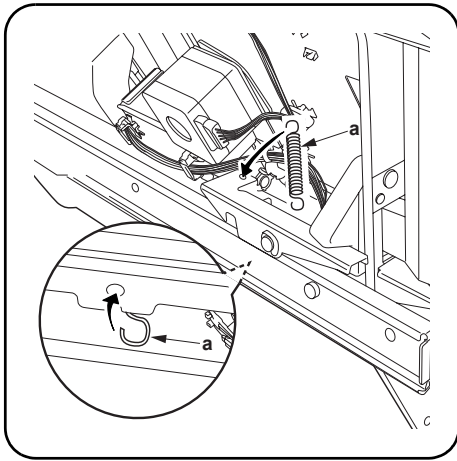
4. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。  
5. 拆下 13 颗螺钉 (1) 以便拆下 5 个固定件 (2)。  
在固定件上贴有黄色标签。

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを開く。

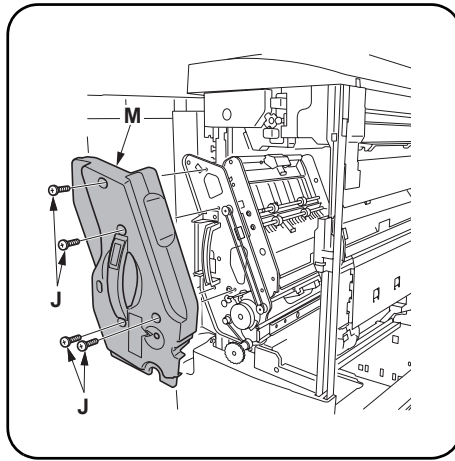
3. ビス (2) 1 本を外し、スライダ固定ピン B (3) を取り外す。

### 固定金具の取り外し

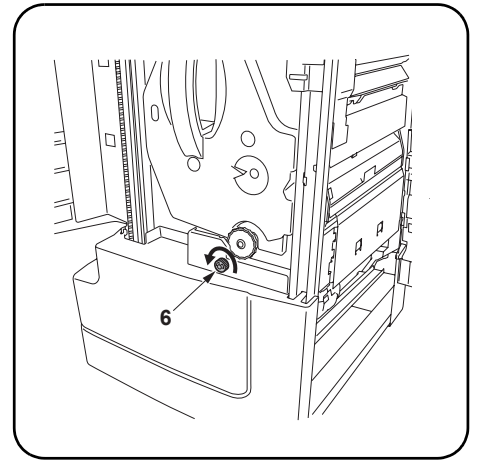
4. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。  
5. ビス (4) 13 本を外し、固定金具 (5) 5 個を取り外す。  
固定金具には、黄色のシールを貼っています。



6. Pull the internal tray out.
7. Remove the fixing tape from the handle of the internal tray and attach the spring hook (a).



- Installing the internal tray cover**
8. Install the internal tray cover (M) using the four M4 x 6 tap Tight S Screw (J).



- Removing the fixing pin**
9. Turn the fixing pin (6) counterclockwise to remove it.
  10. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).

6. Faire ressortir le bac interne.
7. Retirer la bande de fixation de la poignée du bac interne et fixer le crochet de ressort (a).

- Installation du capot du bac interne**
8. Installer le capot du bac interne (M) à l'aide des quatre vis S taraudées M4 x 6 (J).

- Enlèvement de la broche de fixation**
9. Faire tourner la broche de fixation (6) dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre pour la retirer.
  10. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).

6. Saque la bandeja interna.
7. Quite la cinta de fijación del mango de la bandeja interior y coloque el gancho de resorte (a).

- Instalación de la cubierta de bandeja interna**
8. Instale la cubierta de bandeja interna (M) utilizando los cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 x 6 (J).

- Extracción del pasador de fijación**
9. Gire el pasador de fijación (6) hacia la izquierda para quitarlo.
  10. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).

6. Ziehen Sie das Innenfach heraus.
7. Ziehen Sie das Klebeband vom Griff des Innenfachs, und den Federhaken (a) anbringen.

- Entfernen der Innenfachabdeckung**
8. Bringen Sie die Innenfachabdeckung (M) mit den vier M4 x 6 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (J) an.

- Entfernen des Fixierstifts**
9. Drehen Sie den Fixierstift (6) gegen den Uhrzeigersinn, um ihn zu entfernen.
  10. Schließen sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

6. Estrarre il vassoio interno.
7. Staccare il nastro adesivo dalla maniglia del vassoio interno e fissare il gancio a molla (a).

- Installazione del pannello del vassoio interno**
8. Installare il pannello del vassoio interno (M) utilizzando le quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 x 6 (J).

- Rimozione del perno di fissaggio**
9. Per rimuovere il perno di fissaggio (6) ruotarlo in senso antiorario.
  10. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

6. 拉出内部托盘。
7. 从内部托盘上拆下把手固定胶带，然后安装弹簧挂钩 (a)。

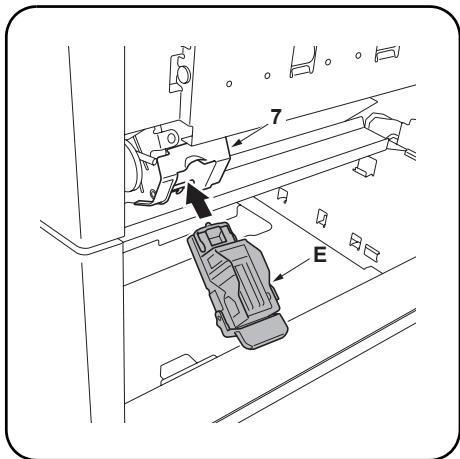
- 安装内部托盘盖板**
8. 用 4 颗 M4 x 6 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (J) 安装内部托盘盖板 (M)。

- 拆下固定销**
9. 逆时针旋转固定销 (6) 将其拆下。
  10. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。

6. 内部トレイを引き出す。
7. 内部トレイの取手の固定テープを剥がし、バネフック (a) を取り付け。

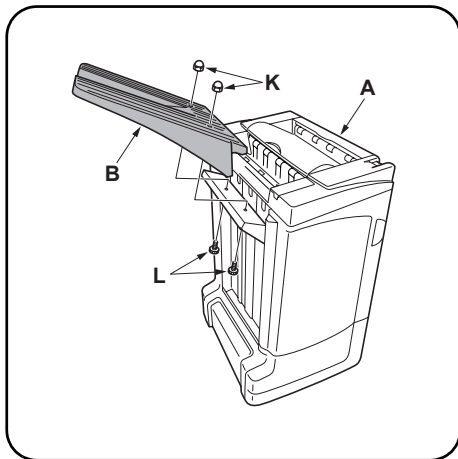
- 内部トレイカバーの取り付け**
8. ビス M4 x 6 タップタイト S (J) 4 本で、内部トレイカバー (M) を取り付け。

- 固定ピンの取り外し**
9. 固定ピン (6) を左に回して取り外す。
  10. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを閉じる。



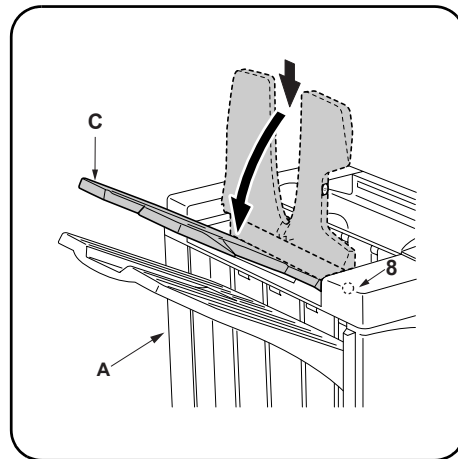
### Installing the staple cartridge

11. Remove the fixing tape from the staple cartridge holder (7).
12. Insert the staple cartridge (E) into the staple cartridge holder (7).
13. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).



### Installing the trays

- For full color machine only. Follow step 27 on page 19 for the installation procedure.**
14. Use two nuts (K) and two pins (L) to install the tray A (B) to the document finisher (A).



15. Fit the right and left projections (8) of the tray B (C) onto the document finisher (A) from its top.

### Installation de la cartouche d'agrafes

11. Retirer la bande de fixation du porte-cartouche d'agrafes (7).
12. Insérer la cartouche d'agrafes (E) dans le porte-cartouche d'agrafes (7).
13. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).

### Installation des bacs

- Pour la machine entièrement en couleurs seulement. Suivre l'étape 27 de la page 19 pour la procédure d'installation.**
14. Utiliser deux écrous (K) et deux broches (L) pour installer le bac A (B) sur le retoucheur de document (A).

15. Fixer les saillies droite et gauche (8) du bac B (C) sur le retoucheur de document (A) depuis le haut.

### Instalación del cartucho de grapas

11. Quite la cinta de fijación del portacartucho de grapas (7).
12. Inserte el cartucho de grapas (E) en el portacartucho de grapas (7).
13. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).

### Instalación de las bandejas

- Para la máquina a todo color solamente. Siga el paso 27 de la página 19 para realizar el procedimiento de instalación.**
14. Utilice dos tuercas (K) y dos pasadores (L) para instalar la bandeja A (B) en el finalizador de documentos (A).

15. Coloque los resaltes derecho e izquierdo (8) de la bandeja B (C) sobre el finalizador de documentos (A) desde su parte superior.

### Anbringen der Heftklammerkassette

11. Ziehen Sie das Klebeband von der Heftklammer-Kassettenhalterung (7) ab.
12. Setzen Sie die Heftklammerkassette (E) in die Kassettenhalterung (7) ein.
13. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

### Anbringen der Fächer

- Nur für Vollfarbenmaschine. Folgen Sie hinsichtlich des Einbauverfahrens dem Schritt 27 auf Seite 19.**
14. Verwenden Sie die beiden Muttern (K) und die beiden Stifte (L), um das Fach A (B) in den Dokument-Finisher (A) einzubauen.

15. Setzen Sie die rechten und linken Vorsprünge (8) des Fachs B (C) von oben auf den Dokument-Finisher (A).

### Installazione della cartuccia pinzatrice

11. Staccare il nastro adesivo dal contenitore della cartuccia pinzatrice (7).
12. Inserire la cartuccia pinzatrice (E) nel contenitore (7).
13. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).

### Installazione dei vassoi

- Solamente per macchinari a colori. Per la procedura di installazione, seguire il punto 27 a pagina 19.**
14. Utilizzare due dadi (K) e due perni (L) per installare il vassoio A (B) alla finitrice di documenti (A).

15. Inserire dall'alto della finitrice di documenti (A) le parti sporgenti destra e sinistra (8) del vassoio B (C) nella finitrice stessa.

### 安装订书钉盒

11. 从订书钉盒支架 (7) 上拆下固定胶带。
12. 将订书钉盒 (E) 插入订书钉盒支架 (7)。
13. 关闭装订器 (A) 的右盖板。

### 安装托盘

- 仅供全彩色机。有关安装步骤，请执行第 19 页上的步骤 27。**
14. 用 2 颗螺母 (K) 和 2 颗销 (L) 将托盘 A (B) 安装到装订器 (A) 上。

15. 将托盘 B (C) 的右部和左部突出部 (8) 从顶部固定在装订器 (A) 上。

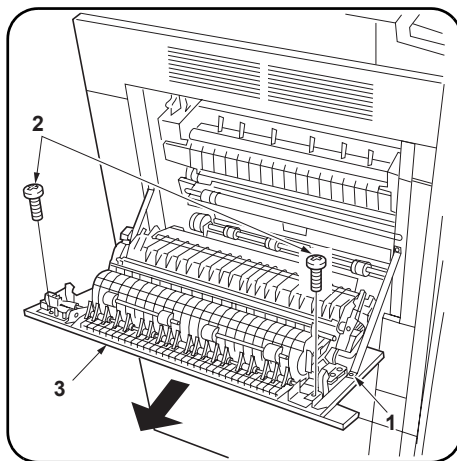
### ステーブルカートリッジの取り付け

11. ステーブルカートリッジホルダー (7) の固定テープを剥がす。
12. ステーブルカートリッジホルダー (7) にステーブルカートリッジ (E) を挿入する。
13. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) の右カバーを閉じる。

### トレイの取り付け

- フルカラー機の場合、19 ページ手順 27 で取り付けのこと。**
14. ナット (K) 2 個とピン (L) 2 個でドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) にトレイ A (B) を取り付ける。

15. トレイ B (C) の左右の突起 (8) をドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) へ上からはめ込む。



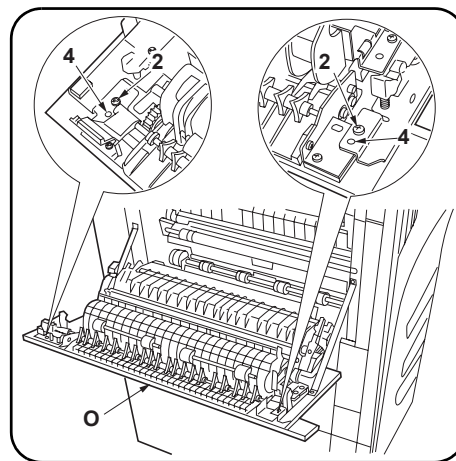
16. Follow each procedure below depending on monochrome or full-color machine.

**When using a monochrome machine: Proceed to step 1 on page 7**

**When using a full-color machine: Proceed to step 1 on page 11**

**[When installing the document finisher to the monochrome machine]  
Installing the curl eliminator**

1. Open the eject cover (1) of the MFP or the printer.
2. Remove two screws (2) securing the feed-shift guide assembly (3) to remove the assembly.



3. Fit the curl eliminator (O) to the eject cover (1) such that the projections (4) on the cover fit into the two ends of the curl eliminator (O).
4. Secure the curl eliminator (O) using two screws (2) removed in step 2.

16. Suivre chaque procédure ci-dessous en fonction de la machine monochrome ou de la machine entièrement en couleurs.

**Lors de l'utilisation de la machine monochrome: passer à l'étape 1 de la page 7**

**Lors de l'utilisation de la machine entièrement en couleurs: passer à l'étape 1 de la page 11**

**[Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur la machine monochrome]  
Installation de l'élément d'élimination des boucles**

1. Ouvrir le couvercle d'éjection (1) de la MFP ou de l'imprimante.
2. Retirer deux vis (2) fixant l'assemblage de la glissière d'alimentation (3) pour retirer l'assemblage.

3. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (O) sur le couvercle d'éjection (1) de façon à ce que les saillies (4) du couvercle s'insèrent dans les deux extrémités de l'élément d'élimination des boucles (O).

4. Fixer l'élément d'élimination des boucles (O) à l'aide de deux vis (2) retirées à l'étape 2.

16. Siga cada procedimiento de abajo dependiendo de si la máquina es de blanco y negro o de a todo color.

**Cuando utilice una máquina de blanco y negro: Vaya al paso 1 de la página 7**

**Cuando utilice una máquina a todo color: Vaya al paso 1 de la página 11**

**[Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en una máquina de blanco y negro]  
Instalación del eliminador de curvatura del papel**

1. Abra la cubierta de expulsión (1) de la MFP o de la impresora.
2. Quite dos tornillos (2) que aseguran el conjunto de la guía de cambio de alimentación (3) para quitar el conjunto.

3. Coloque el eliminador de curvatura del papel (O) en la cubierta de expulsión (1) de forma que los resaltos (4) de la cubierta se coloquen en los dos extremos del eliminador de curvatura del papel (O).

4. Asegure el eliminador de curvatura del papel (O) utilizando dos tornillos (2) quitados en el paso 2.

16. Folgen Sie jedem nachfolgenden Verfahren, je nachdem, ob es sich um eine Monochrommaschine bzw. einen Vollfarbepkopierer handelt.

**Bei Verwendung einer Monochrommaschine: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 1 auf Seite 7 weiter**

**Bei Verwendung eines Vollfarbepkopierers: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 1 auf Seite 11 weiter**

**[Wenn der Dokument-Finisher auf der Monochrommaschine angebracht wird]  
Anbringen der Glättungseinrichtung**

1. Öffnen Sie die Auswurfabdeckung (1) des MFP oder des Druckers.
2. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (2), welche die Papiervorschub-Umschalt-Führungseinheit (3) befestigt, um diese auszubauen.

3. Setzen Sie die Glättungseinrichtung (O) so auf die Auswurfabdeckung (1) auf, dass die Vorsprünge (4) der Abdeckung in die beiden Enden der Glättungseinrichtung (O) eingreifen.

4. Befestigen Sie die Glättungseinrichtung (O) mit den im Schritt 2 entfernten Schrauben (2).

16. Seguire ciascuna delle procedure indicate sotto a seconda che si tratti di un macchinario in bianco e nero oppure di uno a colori.

**In caso si utilizzi un macchinario in bianco e nero: Procedere con il punto 1 a pagina 7**

**IN caso si utilizzi un macchinario a colori: Procedere con il punto 1 a pagina 11**

**[In caso di installazione della finitrice di documenti in un apparecchio in bianco e nero]  
Installazione dell'eliminatore di arricciature**

1. Aprire la copertura dell'uscita carta (1) della MFP o dello stampatore.
2. Togliere le due viti (2) che fissano il gruppo di guida di alimentazione (3) e rimuovere il gruppo.

3. Montare l'eliminatore di arricciature (O) nella copertura dell'uscita carta (1) in modo tale che le parti sporgenti (4) sulla copertura siano inserite nelle due estremità dell'eliminatore di arricciature (O).

4. Fissare l'eliminatore di arricciature (O) utilizzando le due viti (2) rimosse al punto 2.

16. 请根据黑白机或全彩色机执行下列步骤。

使用黑白机时: 进行第 7 页上的第 1 步

使用全彩色机时: 进行第 11 页上的第 1 步

[将装订器安装到黑白机上时]

安装防卷曲部件

1. 打开 MFP 或打印机的出纸盖板 (1)。
2. 拆下固定分支导向组件 (3) 的 2 颗螺钉 (2) 以便拆下组件。

3. 将防卷曲部件 (O) 固定在出纸盖板 (1) 上, 让盖板上的突出部 (4) 嵌入防卷曲部件 (O) 的两端。

4. 用在步骤 2 中拆下的 2 颗螺钉 (2) 固定防卷曲部件 (O)。

16. モノクロ機、フルカラー機別に、下記の手順へ進む。

モノクロ機の場合 7 ページ手順 1 へ進む

フルカラー機の場合 11 ページ手順 1 へ進む

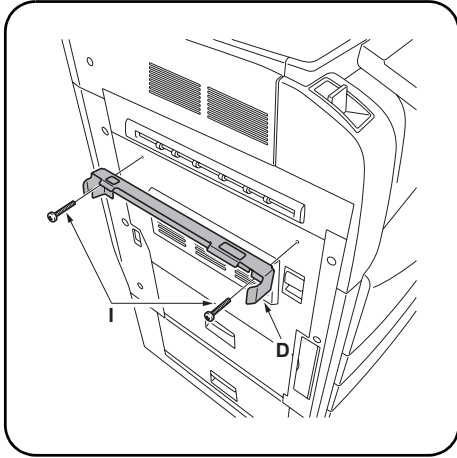
[モノクロ機ヘッドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合]

デカーラーの取り付け

1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の排出カバー (1) を開く。
2. ビス (2) 2 本を外し、分岐ガイド組立 (3) を取り外す。

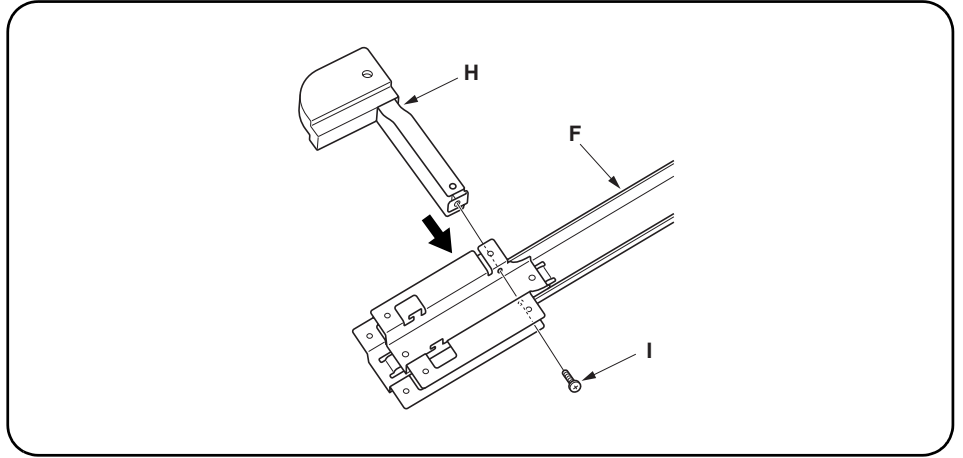
3. デカーラー (O) の両端に半押し (4) がはまる位置で、デカーラー (O) を排出カバー (1) に取り付ける。

4. 手順 2 で外したビス (2) 2 本でデカーラー (O) を固定する。



#### Installing the connecting plate

5. Install the connecting plate (D) to the left side of the MFP or the printer using two M4 x 10 tap Tight S Screws (I).



#### Assembling the base slider

6. Install plate foot R (H) to base slider A (F) using M4 x 10 tap Tight S Screw (I).

#### Installation de la plaque de connexion

5. Installer la plaque de connexion (D) sur le côté gauche du MFP ou imprimante à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 10 (I).

#### Assemblage de la règle de base

6. Installer le pied de plaque R (H) sur la règle de base A (F) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 x 10 (I).

#### Instalación de la placa de conexión

5. Instale la placa de conexión (D) en el lado izquierdo de la MFP o impresora utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 (I).

#### Ensamblaje del deslizador de base

6. Instale el pedal R (H) en el deslizador A (F) utilizando el tornillo de ajuste M4 x 10 (I).

#### Anbringen der Verbindungsplatte

5. Bringen Sie die Verbindungsplatte (D) auf der linken Seite des MFP oder Drucker mit den beiden M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I) an.

#### Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

6. Bringen Sie den Plattenfuß R (H) am Basis-Schieber A (F) mit der M4 x 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) an.

#### Installazione della piastra di connessione

5. Installare la piastra di connessione (D) sul lato destro della MFP o stampatore utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (I).

#### Assemblaggio dello scivolo di base

6. Installare il piedino di sostegno R (H) allo scivolo di base A (F) utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 x 10 (I).

#### 安装连接板

5. 用 2 颗 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 将连接板 (D) 安装到 MFP 或打印机的左侧。

#### 组装底座滑板

6. 用 M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 将板脚座 R (H) 安装到底座滑板 A (F)。

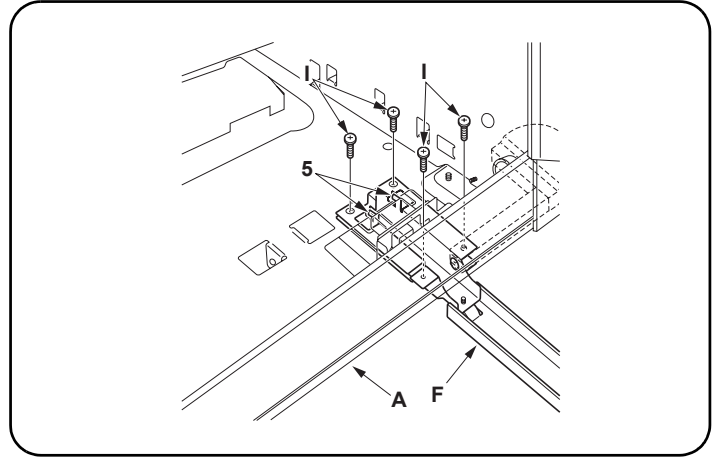
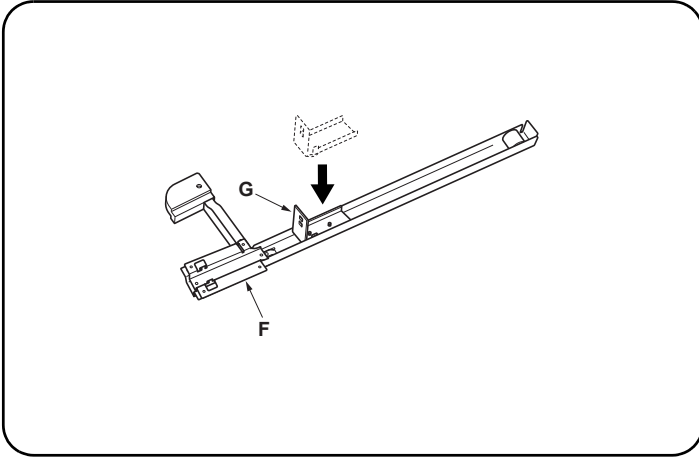
#### 連結板の取り付け

5. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左側にビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (I) 2 本で連結板 (D) を取り付けます。

#### ベーススライダの組立

6. ベーススライダ A (F) にプレートフット R (H) をビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で取り付けます。





7. Place base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F).
8. Follow each procedure below suitable for the paper feeder type attached to your MFP or printer.

**When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets: Move to step 9**  
**When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets: Move to step 16**

7. Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F).
  8. Suivre chaque procédure ci-dessous convenant au type d'alimenteur de papier fixé sur le MFP ou imprimante.
- Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles: passer à l'étape 9**  
**Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles: passer à l'étape 16**

7. Ponga el deslizador B (G) sobre el deslizador A (F).
  8. Siga el procedimiento indicado abajo que sea más adecuado al tipo de alimentador de papel colocado en su MFP o impresora.
- Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas: Vaya al paso 9**  
**Cuando utilice el alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas: Vaya al paso 16**

7. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) am Basis-Schieber A (F) an.
  8. Folgen Sie jedem nachfolgenden Verfahren, das für den am MFP oder Drucker angebrachten Papiervorschubtyp zutreffend ist.
- Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 9 weiter**  
**Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 16 weiter**

7. Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sopra lo scivolo di base A (F).
  8. Seguire ciascuna delle procedure indicate sotto a seconda del tipo di alimentatore di carta in dotazione alla vostra MFP o stampatore.
- In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli: Andare al punto 9**  
**In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli: Andare al punto 16**

7. 将底座滑板 B (G) 放在底座滑板 A (F) 上。
  8. 请执行适合附属在 MFP 或打印机上供纸盒类型的下列步骤。
- 使用 2 个 500 张的供纸盒时: 转到第 9 步  
 使用 3000 张的供纸盒时: 转到第 16 步

7. ベーススライダ A (F) にベーススライダ B (G) を置く。
  8. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体に取り付けられているペーパーフィーダ別に、下記の手順へ進む。
- 500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 9 へ  
 3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 16 へ

**When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets**  
**Installing the base slider**

9. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).
10. Insert base slider A (F) into the lower right of the document finisher (A) and hook the tabs (5).
11. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I).

**Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles**  
**Installation de la règle de base**

9. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
10. Insérer la règle de base A (F) dans la partie inférieure droite du retoucheur de document (A) et accrocher les onglets (5).
11. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I).

**Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas**  
**Instalación del deslizador de base**

9. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
10. Inserte el deslizador A (F) en la parte inferior derecha del finalizador de documentos (A) y enganche las lengüetas (5).
11. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).

**Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter**  
**Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers**

9. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
10. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) auf der unteren rechten Seite des Dokument-Finishers (A) ein und rasten Sie die Laschen (5) ein.
11. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I).

**In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli**  
**Installare lo scivolo di base**

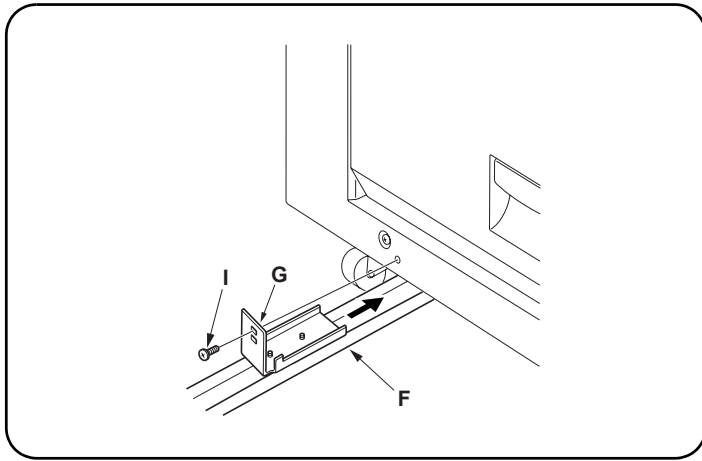
9. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
10. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) nella parte inferiore destra della finitrice di documenti (A) e agganciare le linguette (5).
11. Fissare lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).

**使用 2 个 500 张的供纸盒时**  
**安装底座滑板**

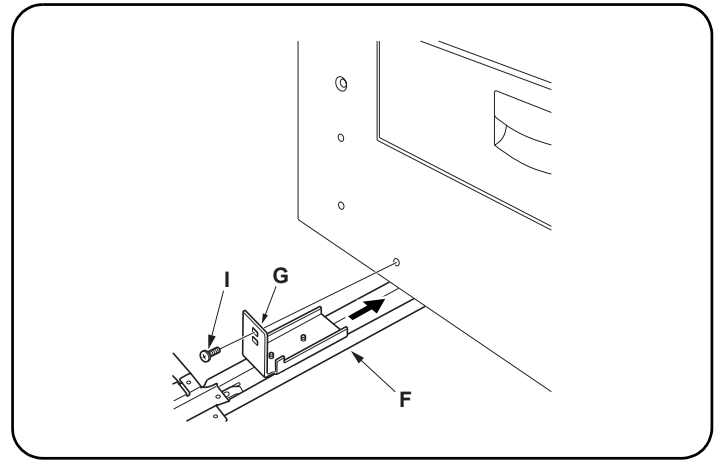
9. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
10. 将底座滑板 A (F) 插到装订器 (A) 的右下侧, 并挂上簧片 (5)。
11. 用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F)。

**500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合**  
**ベーススライダの取り付け**

9. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを開く。
10. ベーススライダ A (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右下へ差し込み、ツメ (5) を引っ掛ける。
11. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で固定する。



12. Insert the base slider A (F), and then the base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP or the printer.
13. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I).  
**Put M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I) through the upper hole of base slider B (G).**
14. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).
15. Move to step 1 on page 20.



- When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets  
Installing the base slider**
16. Insert the base slider A (F), and then the base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP or the printer.
  17. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I).  
**Put M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I) through the lower hole of the base slider B (G).**

12. Insérer la règle de base A (F), puis la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP ou imprimante.
13. Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I).  
**Faire passer la vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) par l'orifice supérieur de la règle de base B (G).**
14. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
15. Passer à l'étape 1 de la page 20.

- Lors de l'utilisation d'un alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles  
Installation de la règle de base**
16. Insérer la règle de base A (F), puis la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP ou imprimante.
  17. Fixer la règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I).  
**Faire passer la vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) par l'orifice inférieur de la règle de base B (G).**

12. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y luego el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP o impresora.
13. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).  
**Ponga un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) a través del agujero superior del deslizador B (G).**
14. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
15. Vaya al paso 1 de la página 20.

- Quando utilizo un alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas  
Instalación del deslizador de base**
16. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y luego el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP o impresora.
  17. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).  
**Ponga un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) a través del agujero inferior del deslizador B (G).**

12. Setzen Sie zuerst den Basis-Schieber A (F) und dann den Basis-Schieber B (G) unten links am MFP oder Drucker ein.
13. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I).  
**Stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Passstift-Bundschraube (I) durch das obere Loch des Basis-Schiebers B (G).**
14. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
15. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 1 auf Seite 20 weiter.

- Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter  
Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers**
16. Setzen Sie zuerst den Basis-Schieber A (F) und dann den Basis-Schieber B (G) auf der unteren linken Seite des MFP oder Drucker ein.
  17. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I).  
**Stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Passstift-Bundschraube (I) durch das untere Loch des Basis-Schiebers B (G).**

12. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP o stampatore.
13. Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).  
**Far passare la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) attraverso il foro superiore dello scivolo di base B (G).**
14. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
15. Andare a pagina 20, punto 1.

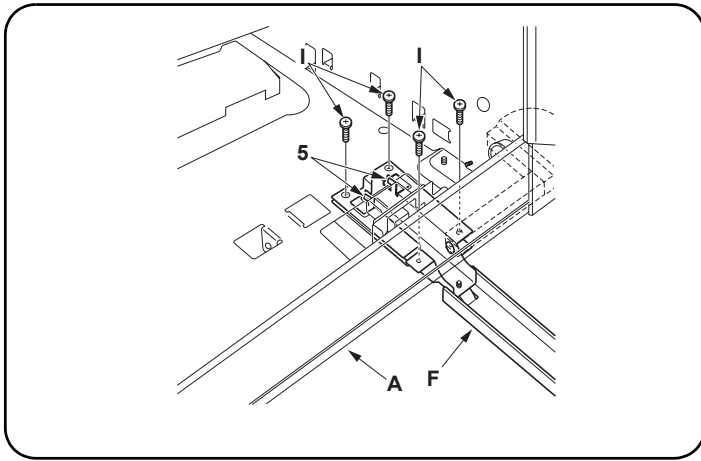
- In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli  
Installare lo scivolo di base**
16. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP o stampatore.
  17. Fissare lo scivolo di base B (G) con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).  
**Far passare la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) attraverso il foro inferiore dello scivolo di base B (G).**

12. 插入底座滑板 A (F)，然后将底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 或打印机的左下侧。
13. 用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 B (G)。  
**将 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 穿过底座滑板 B (G) 的上部孔。**
14. 关闭装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
15. 转到第 20 页上的第 1 步。

- 使用 3000 张的供纸盒时  
安装底座滑板**
16. 插入底座滑板 A (F)，然后将底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 或打印机的左下侧。
  17. 用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 B (G)。  
**将 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 穿过底座滑板 B (G) 的下部孔。**

12. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左下にベーススライダ A (F) を差し込み、次にベーススライダ B (G) を差し込む。
13. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で固定する。  
**ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) は、ベーススライダ B (G) の上の穴に通すこと。**
14. 下キュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを閉じる。
15. 20 ページ手順 1 へ進む。

- 3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合  
ベーススライダの取り付け**
16. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左下にベーススライダ A (F) を差し込み、次にベーススライダ B (G) を差し込む。
  17. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で固定する。  
**ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) は、ベーススライダ B (G) の下の穴に通すこと。**



18. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).
19. Insert base slider A (F) under the document finisher (A) and hook the tabs (5).
20. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I).
21. Close the right cover of the document finisher (A).
22. Move to step 1 on page 20.

18. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
19. Insérer la règle de base A (F) sous le retoucheur de document (A) et accrocher les onglets (5).
20. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I).
21. Refermer le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
22. Passer à l'étape 1 de la page 20.

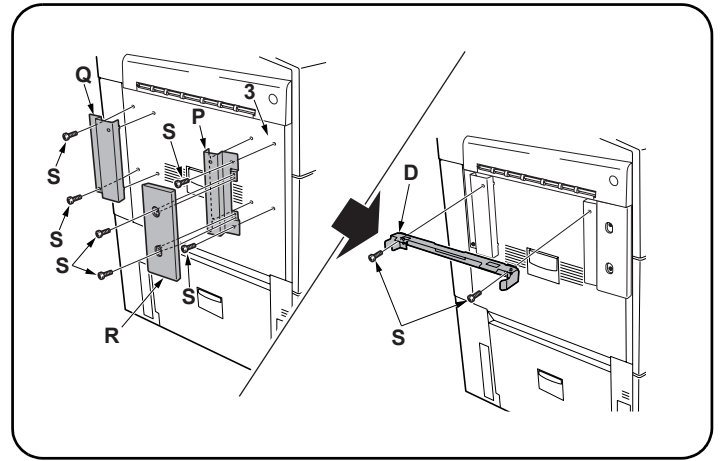
18. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
19. Inserte el deslizador A (F) debajo del finalizador de documentos (A) y enganche las lengüetas (5).
20. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).
21. Cierre la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
22. Vaya al paso 1 de la página 20.

18. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
19. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) unter dem Dokument-Finisher (A) ein und rasten Sie die Laschen (5) ein.
20. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I).
21. Schließen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
22. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 1 auf Seite 20 weiter.

18. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
19. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) sotto la finitrice di documenti (A) e agganciare le linguette (5).
20. Fissare lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).
21. Chiudere il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
22. Andare a pagina 20, punto 1.

18. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
19. 将底座滑板 A (F) 插到装订器 (A) 下，并挂上簧片 (5)。
20. 用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F)。
21. 关闭装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
22. 转到第 20 页上的第 1 步。

18. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを開く。
19. ベーススライダ A (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の下へ差し込み、ツメ (5) を引っ掛ける。
20. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で固定する。
21. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを閉じる。
22. 20 ページ手順 1 へ進む。



**[When installing the document finisher to the full-color machine]  
Installing the fixing and connecting plates**

1. Install fixing plates F (P) and R (Q) to the MFP or the printer using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (S) for each plate.
2. Install cover AT (R) to fixing plate F (P) using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (S).
3. Install the connecting plate (D) to fixing plates F (P) and R (Q) using two M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screws (S).

**[Lors de l'installation du retoucheur de document sur la machine entièrement en couleurs]  
Installation des plaques de fixation et de connexion**

1. Installer les plaques de fixation avant (P) et arrière (Q) sur le MFP ou imprimante à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (S) par plaque.
2. Installer le couvercle AT (R) sur la plaque de fixation avant (P) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (S).
3. Installer la plaque de connexion (D) sur les plaques de fixation avant (P) et arrière (Q) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (S).

**[Cuando instale el finalizador de documentos en la máquina a todo color]  
Instalación de las placas de fijación y conexión**

1. Instale las placas de fijación F (P) y R (Q) en la MFP o impresora utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (S) para cada placa.
2. Instale la cubierta AT (R) en la placa de fijación F (P) utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (S).
3. Instale la placa de conexión (D) en las placas de fijación F (P) y R (Q) utilizando dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (S).

**[Wenn der Dokument-Finisher am Vollfarbengerät angebracht wird]  
Anbringen der Fixier- und Verbindungsplatten**

1. Bringen Sie die Fixierplatten F (P) und R (Q) am MFP oder Drucker mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (S) für jede Platte an.
2. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung AT (R) auf der Fixierplatte F (P) mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (S) an.
3. Bringen Sie die Verbindungsplatte (D) auf den Fixierplatten F (P) und R (Q) mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (S) an.

**[In caso di installazione della finitrice di documenti in un apparecchio a colori]  
Installazione delle piastre di fissaggio e di connessione**

1. Installare le piastre di fissaggio F (P) e R (Q) alla MFP o stampatore utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (S) per ciascuna piastra.
2. Installare il coperchio AT (R) alla piastra di fissaggio F (P) utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (S).
3. Installare la piastra di connessione (D) alle piastre di fissaggio F (P) e R (Q) utilizzando due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (S).

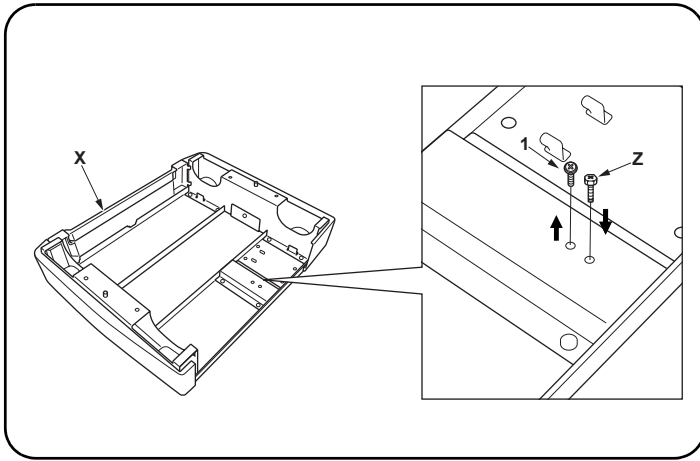
**[ 将装订器安装到全彩色机上时 ]**

**安装固定板和连接板**

1. 用每张板的 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (S) 将固定板 F (P) 和 R (Q) 安装到 MFP 或打印机。
2. 用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (S) 将盖板 AT (R) 安装到固定板 F (P)。
3. 用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (S) 将连接板 (D) 安装到固定板 F (P) 和 R (Q) 上。

**[ フルカラー機へドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合 ]  
固定板と連結板の取り付け**

1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体に固定板 F (P) と固定板 R (Q) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (S) 各 2 本で取り付け。
2. 固定板 F (P) にカバー AT (R) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (S) 2 本で取り付け。
3. 固定板 F (P) と固定板 R (Q) に連結板 (D) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (S) 2 本で取り付け。



---

**Before adjusting the document finisher height**

4. Remove the screw (1) from the left side of the assembly base (X), insert M4 × 10 hexagon head screw (Z) into the right side hole to tighten it temporarily.

---

**Avant d'ajuster la hauteur du retoucheur de document**

4. Retirer la vis (1) du côté gauche de la base d'ensemble (X), insérer la vis à tête hexagonale M4 × 10 (Z) dans l'orifice de droite pour la resserrer temporairement.

---

**Antes de ajustar la altura del finalizador de documentos**

4. Quite el tornillo (1) del lado izquierdo de la base del conjunto (X) e inserte el tornillo de cabeza hexagonal M4 × 10 (Z) en el agujero del lado derecho para apretarlo temporalmente.

---

**Vor dem Einstellen der Höhe des Dokument-Finishers**

4. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (1) von der linken Seite der Bauteile-Basis (X), stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Sechskantschraube (Z) in das rechte Loch ein, und ziehen Sie diese danach vorübergehend an.

---

**Prima di regolare l'altezza della finitrice di documenti**

4. Togliere la vite (1) dal lato sinistro della base di assemblaggio (X) e inserire la vite con testa esagonale M4 × 10 (Z) nel foro sul lato destro per fissarla temporaneamente.

---

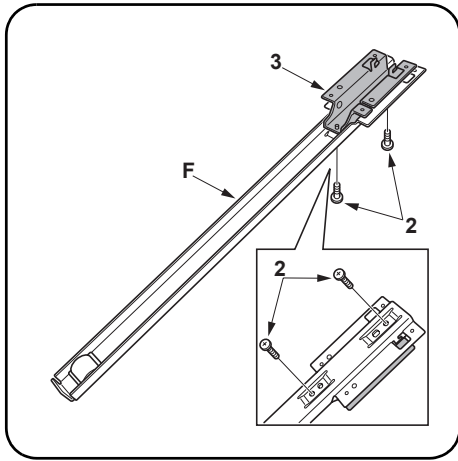
**調整装订器高度前**

4. 从组件底座 (X) 的左侧拆下螺钉 (1), 将 M4 × 10 六角头螺钉 (Z) 插入右侧孔将其暂时拧紧。

---

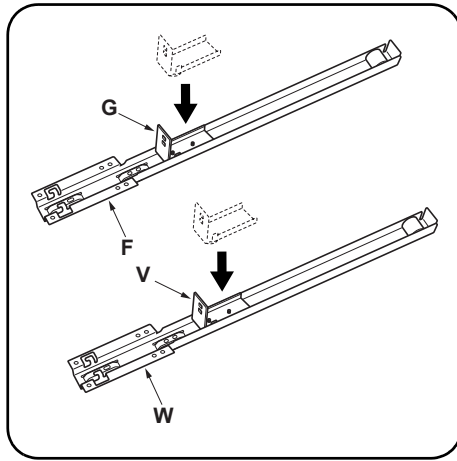
**高さ調整の準備**

4. 組立ベース (X) の左側のビス (1) 1 本を外し、M4 × 10 六角ビス (Z) を右側の穴に外れない程度に仮締めする。



#### Disassembling the base slider

5. Remove the two screws (2) from the base slider A (F) to remove the stay foot (3).



#### Reassembling the base slider

6. Put base slider B (G) onto base slider A (F). In the same way, put base slider B (V) onto base slider V (W).

7. Follow each procedure below suitable for the paper feeder type attached to your MFP or printer.

**When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets: Move to step 8**

**When using paper feeder of 3000 sheets: Move to step 14**

#### Démontage de la règle de base

5. Retirer les deux vis (2) de la règle de base A (F) pour retirer le pied de la retenue (3).

#### Remontage de la règle de base

6. Mettre la règle de base B (G) en place sur la règle de base A (F). De la même façon, mettre la règle de base V (W) en place sur la règle de base V (W).

7. Suivre chaque procédure ci-dessous convenant au type d'alimenteur de papier fixé sur le MFP ou imprimante.

**Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles: passer à l'étape 8**

**Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles: passer à l'étape 14**

#### Desmontaje del deslizador de base

5. Quite los dos tornillos (2) del deslizador A (F) para quitar la pata de apoyo (3).

#### Montaje del deslizador de base

6. Ponga el deslizador B (G) sobre el deslizador A (F). De la misma forma, ponga el deslizador de base B (V) sobre el deslizador de base V (W).

7. Siga cada procedimiento de abajo dependiendo del tipo de alimentador de papel colocado en su MFP o impresora.

**Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas: Vaya al paso 8**

**Cuando utilice un alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas: Vaya al paso 14**

#### Zerlegen des Basis-Schiebers

5. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (2) vom Basis-Schieber A (F), um den Strebenfuß (3) auszubauen.

#### Zusammenbauen des Basis-Schiebers

6. Setzen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) auf den Basis-Schieber A (F). Verfahren Sie in gleicher Weise, indem Sie den Basis-Schieber B (V) auf den Basis-Schieber V (W) setzen.

7. Folgen Sie jedem nachfolgenden Verfahren, das für den am MFP oder Drucker angebrachten Papiervorschubtyp zutreffend ist.

**Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 8 weiter.**

**Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter: Gehen Sie zum Schritt 14 weiter.**

#### Smontaggio dello scivolo di base

5. Togliere le due viti (2) dallo scivolo di base A (F) per rimuovere il piedino di bloccaggio (3).

#### Riassemblaggio dello scivolo di base

6. Collocare lo scivolo di base B (G) sullo scivolo di base A (F). Allo stesso modo, collocare lo scivolo di base B (V) sullo scivolo di base V (W).

7. Seguire ciascuna delle procedure indicate sotto a seconda del tipo di alimentatore di carta in dotazione alla vostra MFP o stampatore.

**In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli: Andare al punto 8**

**In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli: Andare al punto 14**

#### 拆卸底座滑板

5. 从底座滑板 A (F) 上拆下 2 颗螺钉 (2) 以便拆下固定脚座 (3)。

#### 重新组装底座滑板

6. 将底座滑板 B (G) 放在底座滑板 A (F) 上。同样，将底座滑板 B (V) 放在底座滑板 V (W) 上。

7. 请执行适合附属在 MFP 或打印机上供纸盒类型的下列步骤。

使用 2 个 500 张的供纸盒时: 转到第 8 步

使用 3000 张的供纸盒时: 转到第 14 步

#### ベーススライダの分解

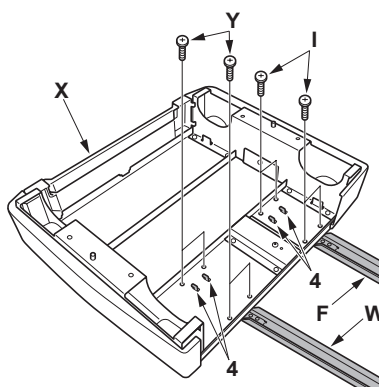
5. ベーススライダ A (F) のビス 2 本 (2) を外し、ステイフット (3) を取り外す。

#### ベーススライダの組み立て

6. ベーススライダ A (F) にベーススライダ B (G) を置く。同様にベーススライダ V (W) にベーススライダ B (V) を置く。

7. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体に取り付けられているペーパーフィーダ別に、下記の手順へ進む。

500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 8 へ  
3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合 手順 14 へ



### Installing the base slider

#### When using two paper feeders of 500 sheets

8. Insert base slider V (W) and base slider A (F) that was disassembled in step 5 under the assembly base (X) and hook the tabs (4).

9. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I) and fix base slider V (W) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (Y) respectively.

### Installation de la règle de base

#### Lors de l'utilisation de deux alimenteurs de papier de 500 feuilles

8. Insérer la règle de base V (W) et la règle de base A (F) démontées à l'étape 5 sous la base d'ensemble (X) et accrocher les onglets (4).

9. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base V (W) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (Y) respectivement.

### Instalación del deslizador de base

#### Cuando utilice dos alimentadores de papel de 500 hojas

8. Inserte el deslizador de base V (W) y el deslizador A (F) que fueron desmontados en el paso 5 debajo de la base del conjunto (X) y enganche las lengüetas (4).

9. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y fije el deslizador de base V (W) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (Y) respectivamente.

### Anbringen des Basis-Schiebers

#### Bei Verwendung von zwei Papiervorschüben für 500 Blätter

8. Führen Sie den im Schritt 5 zerlegten Basis-Schieber V (W) sowie den Basis-Schieber A (F) unter den Bauteile-Basis (X) und rasten Sie die Laschen (4) ein.

9. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I) sowie den Basis-Schieber V (W) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (Y).

### Installazione dello scivolo di base

#### In caso di utilizzo di due alimentatori di carta da 500 fogli

8. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (W) e lo scivolo di base A (F) smontato al punto 5 sotto la base di assemblaggio (X) e agganciare le linguette (4).

9. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base V (W) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (Y).

### 安装底座滑板

#### 使用 2 个 500 张的供纸盒时

8. 将在步骤 5 中拆下的底座滑板 V (W) 和底座滑板 A (F) 插到组装底座 (X) 下, 并挂上簧片 (4)。

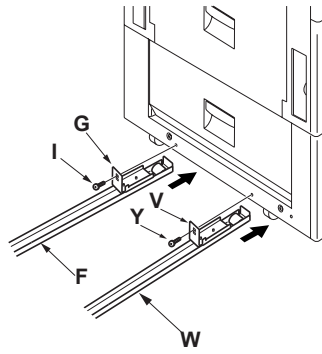
9. 分别用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F), 用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y) 固定底座滑板 V (W)。

### ベーススライダの取り付け

#### 500 枚 × 2 ペーパーフィーダの場合

8. 組立ベース (X) の下にベーススライダ V (W) と、手順 5 で分解したベーススライダ A (F) を差し込み、ツメ (4) を引っ掛ける。

9. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で、ベーススライダ V (W) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) 4 本でそれぞれ固定する。



10. Insert base slider A (F) and base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP or the printer.  
 11. Insert base slider V (W) and base slider B (V) into the lower right of the MFP or the printer.

12. Fix base slider B (G) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (I) and fix base slider B (V) with M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (Y) respectively.  
**Put M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I)(Y) through the upper holes of base sliders B (G) (V).**  
 13. Move to step 19 on page 17.

10. Insérer la règle de base A (F) et la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP ou imprimante.  
 11. Insérer la règle de base V (W) et la règle de base B (V) dans la partie inférieure droite du MFP ou imprimante.

12. Fixer le règle de base B (G) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base B (V) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (Y) respectivement.  
**Faire passer les vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) (Y) par les orifices supérieurs des règles de base B (G) (V).**  
 13. Passer à l'étape 19 de la page 17.

10. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP o impresora.  
 11. Inserte el deslizador de base V (W) y el deslizador de base B (V) en la parte inferior derecha de la MFP o impresora.

12. Fije el deslizador B (G) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y fije el deslizador de base B (V) con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (Y) respectivamente.  
**Ponga los tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) e (Y) a través de los agujeros superiores de los deslizadores B (G) (V).**  
 13. Vaya al paso 19 de la página 17.

10. Führen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) und den Basis-Schieber B (G) unten links in den MFP oder Drucker ein.  
 11. Führen Sie den Basis-Schieber V (W) und den Basis-Schieber B (V) unten rechts in den MFP oder Drucker ein.

12. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I) bzw. den Basis-Schieber B (V) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (Y).  
**Stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I) (Y) durch die oberen Löcher des Basis-Schieber B (G) (V).**  
 13. Gehen Sie zum Schritt 19 auf Seite 17 weiter.

10. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP.  
 11. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (W) e lo scivolo di base B (V) nella parte inferiore destra della MFP.

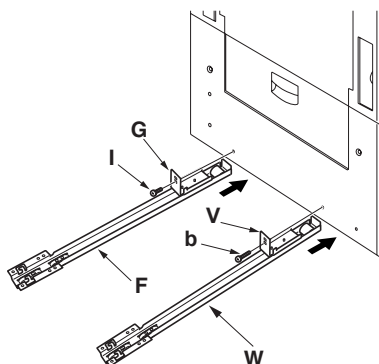
12. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base B (G) una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base B (V) con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (Y).  
**Far passare le viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) (Y) attraverso i fori superiori degli scivoli di base B (G) (V).**  
 13. Andare a pagina 17, punto 19.

10. 将底座滑板 A (F) 和底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 或打印机的左下侧。  
 11. 将底座滑板 V (W) 和底座滑板 B (V) 插入 MFP 或打印机的右下侧。

12. 分别用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 B (G), 用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y) 固定底座滑板 B (V)。  
**将 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) (Y) 穿过底座滑板 B (G) (V) 的上部孔。**  
 13. 转到第 17 页上的第 19 步。

10. ベーススライダ A (F) とベーススライダ B (G) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左下へ差し込む。  
 11. ベーススライダ V (W) とベーススライダ B (V) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の右下に差し込む。

12. ベーススライダ B (G) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 1 本で、ベーススライダ B (V) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) 1 本でそれぞれ固定する。  
**ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) (Y) は、ベーススライダ B (G) (V) の上の穴に通すこと。**  
 13. 17 ページ手順 19 へ進む。



#### When the paper feeder of 3000 sheets is used

14. Insert base slider A (F) and base slider B (G) into the lower left of the MFP or the printer.
15. Insert base slider V (W) and base slider B (V) into the lower right of the MFP or the printer.

16. Fix the base slider B (G) with the M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screw (I) and the base slider B (V) with the M4 × 14 TP tap Tight S screw (b) respectively.

**Put the M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screw (I) and M4 × 14 TP tap Tight S screw (b) through the lower holes of the base sliders B (G) and (V).**

#### Lors de l'utilisation de l'alimenteur de papier de 3000 feuilles

14. Insérer la règle de base A (F) et la règle de base B (G) dans la partie inférieure gauche du MFP ou imprimante.
15. Insérer la règle de base V (W) et la règle de base B (V) dans la partie inférieure droite du MFP ou imprimante.

16. Fixer respectivement la règle de base B (G) avec la vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) et la règle de base B (V) avec la vis TP S taraudée M4 × 14 (b).

**Faire passer la vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) et la vis TP S taraudée M4 × 14 (b) par les orifices inférieurs des règles de base B (G) et (V).**

#### Cuando utilice el alimentador de papel de 3.000 hojas

14. Inserte el deslizador A (F) y el deslizador B (G) en la parte inferior izquierda de la MFP o impresora.
15. Inserte el deslizador de base V (W) y el deslizador de base B (V) en la parte inferior derecha de la MFP o impresora.

16. Fije el deslizador de base B (G) con el tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y el deslizador de base B (V) con el tornillo TP de ajuste M4 × 14 (b) respectivamente.

**Ponga el tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y el tornillo TP de ajuste M4 × 14 (b) a través de los agujeros inferiores de los deslizadores de base B (G) y (V).**

#### Bei Verwendung des Papiervorschubs für 3000 Blätter

14. Führen Sie den Basis-Schieber A (F) und den Basis-Schieber B (G) unten links in den MFP oder Drucker ein.
15. Führen Sie den Basis-Schieber V (W) und den Basis-Schieber B (V) unten rechts in den MFP oder Drucker ein.

16. Befestigen Sie den Basis-Schieber B (G) mit der M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I) bzw. den Basis-Schieber B (V) mit der M4 × 14 TP Passstift-Verbandschraube (b).

**Stecken Sie die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbandschraube (I) und die M4 × 14 TP Passstift-Verbandschraube (b) durch die unteren Löcher der Basis-Schieber B (G) und (V).**

#### In caso di utilizzo di alimentatore di carta da 3000 fogli

14. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) e lo scivolo di base B (G) nella parte inferiore sinistra della MFP o stampatore.
15. Inserire lo scivolo di base V (W) e lo scivolo di base B (V) nella parte inferiore destra della MFP o stampatore.

16. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base B (G) con la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base B (V) con la vite TP con testa a croce S M4 × 14 (b).

**Fare passare la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e quella vite TP con testa a croce S M4 × 14 (b) attraverso i fori inferiori degli scivoli di base B (G) e (V).**

#### 使用 3000 张的供纸盒时

14. 将底座滑板 A (F) 和底座滑板 B (G) 插入 MFP 或打印机的左下侧。
15. 将底座滑板 V (W) 和底座滑板 B (V) 插入 MFP 或打印机的右下侧。

16. 用 1 个 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 紧固底座滑板 B(G), 用 1 个 M4 × 14TP 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (b) 紧固底座滑板 B(V)。

**将 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 和 M4 × 14TP 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (b) 穿过底座滑板 B(G)(V) 的下孔。**

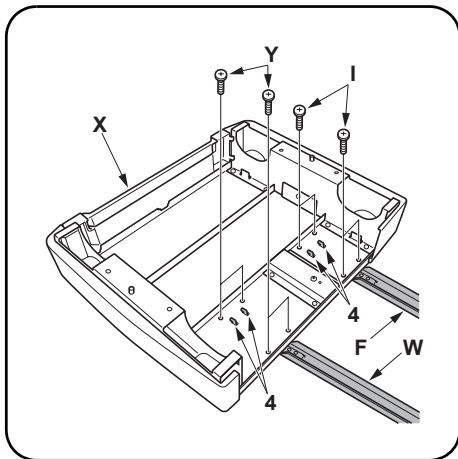
#### 3000 枚ペーパーフィーダの場合

14. ベーススライダ A(F) とベーススライダ B(G) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の左下へ差し込む。
15. ベーススライダ V(W) とベーススライダ B(V) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の右下に差し込む。

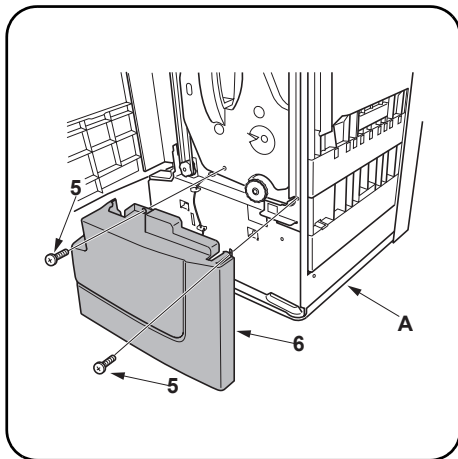
16. ベーススライダ B(G) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(I) 1 本で、ベーススライダ B(V) をビス M4 × 14TP タップタイト S(b) 1 本でそれぞれ固定する。

**ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S(I) ビスおよび M4x14TP タップタイト S(b) は、ベーススライダ B(G) (V) の下の穴に通すこと。**



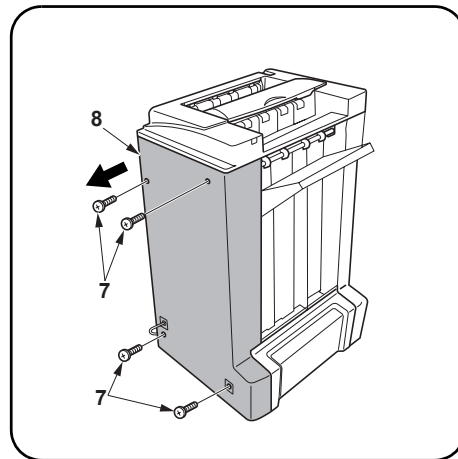


17. Insert base slider A (F) that was disassembled in step 5 and base slider V (W) under the assembly base (X) and hook the tabs (4).
18. Fix base slider A (F) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (I) and fix base slider V (W) with four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (Y) respectively.



### Removing the cover

19. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
20. Remove two screws (5) to remove the lower front cover (6).
21. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).



22. Remove four screws (7) to remove the back cover (8) from the document finisher (A).

17. Insérer la règle de base A (F) démontée à l'étape 5 et la règle de base V (W) sous la base d'ensemble (X) et accrocher les onglets (4).
18. Fixer la règle de base A (F) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (I) et fixer la règle de base V (W) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (Y) respectivement.

### Enlèvement du capot

19. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
20. Retirer les deux vis (5) pour retirer le capot inférieur avant (6).
21. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).

22. Retirer quatre vis (7) pour retirer le capot arrière (8) du retoucheur de document (A).

17. Inserte el deslizador A (F) que fue desmontado en el paso 5 y el deslizador de base V (W) debajo de la base del conjunto (X) y enganche las lengüetas (4).
18. Fije el deslizador A (F) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) y el deslizador de base V (W) con cuatro tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (Y) respectivamente.

### Extracción de la cubierta

19. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
20. Quite los dos tornillos (5) para quitar la cubierta delantera inferior (6).
21. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).

22. Quite los cuatro tornillos (7) para quitar la cubierta trasera (8) del finalizador de documentos (A).

17. Führen Sie den im Schritt zerlegten Basis-Schieber A (F) und den Basis-Schieber V (W) unter die Bauteile-Basis (X), und rasten Sie die Laschen (4) danach ein.
18. Befestigen den Basis-Schieber A (F) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (I), und befestigen Sie danach den Basis-Schieber V (W) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (Y).

### Entfernen der Abdeckung

19. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung am Dokument-Finisher (A).
20. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (5), um die untere vordere Abdeckung (6) zu entfernen.
21. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

22. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (7), um die hintere Abdeckung (8) vom Dokument-Finisher (A) abzunehmen.

17. Inserire lo scivolo di base A (F) smontato al punto 5 e lo scivolo di base V (W) sotto la base di assemblaggio (X) e agganciare le linguette (4).
18. Fissare rispettivamente lo scivolo di base A (F) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I) e lo scivolo di base V (W) con quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (Y).

### Rimozione del pannello

19. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
20. Togliere due viti (5) per rimuovere il pannello anteriore inferiore (6).
21. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

22. Togliere quattro viti (7) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (8) dalla finitrice di documenti (A).

17. 将在步骤 5 中拆下的底座滑板 A (F) 和底座滑板 V (W) 插到组装底座 (X) 下, 并挂上簧片 (4)。
18. 分别用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 固定底座滑板 A (F), 用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y) 固定底座滑板 V (W)。

### 拆下盖板

19. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
20. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (5) 以便拆下前下盖板 (6)。
21. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。

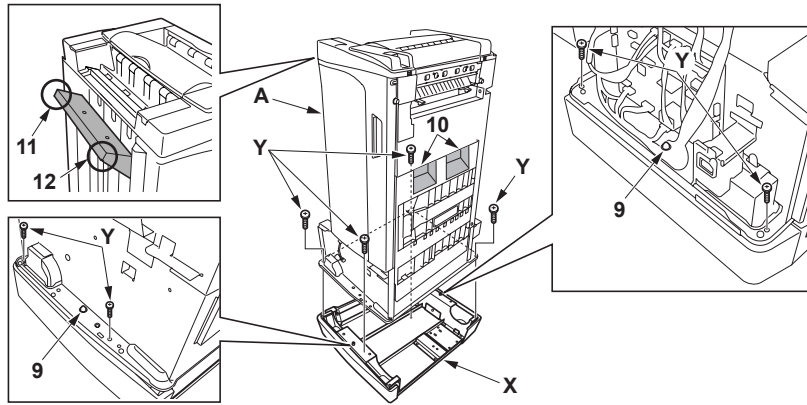
22. 从装订器 (A) 上拆下 4 颗螺钉 (7) 以便拆下后盖板 (8)。

17. 組立ベース (X) の下に手順 5 で分解したベーススライダ A (F) とベーススライダ V (W) を差込み、ツメ (4) を引っ掛ける。
18. ベーススライダ A (F) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) 4 本で、ベーススライダ V (W) をビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) 4 本でそれぞれ固定する。

### カバーの取り外し

19. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。
20. ビス (5) 2 本を外し、前下カバー (6) を取り外す。
21. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを閉じる。

22. ビス (7) 4 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の後カバー (8) を取り外す。



### Installing the assembly base (Be sure to perform step 23 by two service personnel)

23. Align the projection (9) on the assembly base (X) with the hole of the document finisher (A) and place the document finisher (A) on the assembly base (X).  
**Lift up the document finisher (A) by two service personnel simultaneously by one to hold (10) and the other to hold (11) and (12). Be sure to perform this step by two service personnel, not by one personnel.**
24. Fix the document finisher (A) to the assembly base (X) using four M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (Y).

### Installation de la base d'ensemble (Veiller à faire effectuer l'étape 23 par deux employés de service)

23. Aligner la saillie (9) de la base d'ensemble (X) sur l'orifice du retoucheur de document (A) et mettre le retoucheur de document (A) en place sur la base d'ensemble (X).  
**Faire soulever le retoucheur de document (A) par deux employés de service ensemble, l'un tenant (10) et l'autre Tenant (11) et (12). Veiller à ce que cette étape soit effectuée par deux employés de service et non par un seul.**
24. Fixer le retoucheur de document (A) sur la base d'ensemble (X) à l'aide de quatre vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (Y).

### Instalación de la base del conjunto (Asegúrese de que el paso 23 lo ejecuten dos personas del servicio de instalación)

23. Alinee el resalto (9) de la base del conjunto (X) con el agujero del finalizador de documentos (A) y ponga el finalizador de documentos (A) en la base del conjunto (X).  
**El finalizador de documentos (A) deberá ser levantado simultáneamente por dos personas del personal de servicio, una de ellas sujetando la parte (10) y la otra las partes (11) y (12). Asegúrese de que este paso lo lleven a cabo dos personas del personal de servicio, no una sola.**
24. Fije el finalizador de documentos (A) en la base del conjunto (X) utilizando cuatro tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (Y).

### Anbringen der Bauteil-Basis (Führen Sie den Schritt 23 mit zwei Personen aus)

23. Richten Sie den Vorsprung (9) auf der Bauteile-Basis (X) mit dem Loch im Dokument-Finisher (A) aus, und setzen Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) danach auf die Bauteile-Basis (X).  
**Heben Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) zusammen mit einer zweiten Person gleichzeitig an. Eine Person hält die Stelle (10) fest, während die andere Person die Stellen (11) und (12) festhält. Führen Sie diesen Schritt unbedingt mit zwei Personen durch.**
24. Befestigen Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) an die Bauteile-Basis (X) mit den vier M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (Y).

### Installazione della base di assemblaggio (Assicurarsi che il punto 23 venga eseguito da due membri del personale)

23. Allineare la parte sporgente (9) della base di assemblaggio (X) al foro della finitrice di documenti (A) e collocare la finitrice di documenti (A) sopra la base di assemblaggio (X).  
**Due membri del personale sollevino la finitrice di documenti (A) simultaneamente, uno reggendo (10) e l'altro reggendo (11) e (12). Assicurarsi che ad eseguire questo punto siano due membri del personale e non una persona sola.**
24. Fissare la finitrice di documenti (A) alla base di assemblaggio (X) utilizzando quattro viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (Y).

### 安装组装底座 (请务必由两名维修人员执行第 23 步)

23. 将组装底座 (X) 上的突出部 (9) 对准装订器 (A) 的孔, 并将装订器 (A) 放在组装底座 (X) 上。  
 由两名维修人员同时抬起装订器 (A), 一名按住 (10), 另一名按住 (11) 和 (12)。请务必由两名维修人员执行此步骤, 而不是一个人。
24. 用 4 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (Y) 将装订器 (A) 固定到组装底座 (X)。

### 組立ベースの取り付け (手順 23 は必ず 2 人で行うこと)

23. 組立ベース (X) の突起 (9) とドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の穴を合わせ、組立ベース (X) にドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を乗せる。  
 1 人が (10) の部分を、もう 1 人が (11)、(12) の部分を持ち、2 人で同時にドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を持ち上げる。必ず 2 人で作業を行い、1 人では行わないこと。
24. ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (Y) 4 本で組立ベース (X) にドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を固定する。

### Installing the cover

25. Use four screws (7) removed from the document finisher in step 22 to reinstall the back cover (8).
26. Use two screws (5) removed from the document finisher in step 20 to reinstall the lower front cover (6).

### Installing the tray

27. Install tray A (B) and tray B (C) to the document finisher (A). Refer to steps 14 and 15 on page 6 for the installation.

---

### Installation du capot

25. Utiliser cinq vis (7) retirées du retoucheur de document à l'étape 22 pour réinstaller le capot arrière (8).
26. Utiliser deux vis (5) retirées du retoucheur de document à l'étape 20 pour réinstaller le capot inférieure avant (6).

### Installation des bacs

27. Installer le bac A (B) et le bac B (C) sur le retoucheur de document (A). Se référer aux étapes 14 et 15 de la page 6 pour l'installation.

---

### Instalación de la cubierta

25. Utilice cuatro tornillos (7) quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 22 para volver a instalar la cubierta trasera (8).
26. Utilice dos tornillos (5) quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 20 para volver a instalar la cubierta delantera inferior (6).

### Instalación de la bandeja

27. Instale la bandeja A (B) y la bandeja B (C) en el finalizador de documentos (A). Consulte los pasos 14 y 15 para hacer la instalación.

---

### Anbringen der Abdeckung

25. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (7), welche Sie im Schritt 22 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt haben, um die hintere Abdeckung (8) wieder anzubringen.
26. Verwenden Sie die beiden Schrauben (5), welche Sie im Schritt 20 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt haben, um die vordere Abdeckung (6) wieder anzubringen.

### Anbringen des Fachs

27. Bringen Sie das Fach A (B) und das Fach B (C) am Dokument-Finisher (A) an. Beziehen Sie sich hinsichtlich des Einbaus auf die Schritte 14 und 15 auf Seite 6.

---

### Installazione del pannello

25. Utilizzare le quattro viti (7) rimosse dalla finitrice di documenti al punto 22 per reinstallare il pannello posteriore (8).
26. Utilizzare le due viti (5) rimosse dalla finitrice di documenti al punto 20 per reinstallare il pannello inferiore anteriore (6).

### Installazione del vassoio

27. Installare il vassoio A (B) e il vassoio B (C) sulla finitrice di documenti (A). Per l'installazione, fare riferimento ai punti 14 e 15 a pagina 6.

---

### 安装盖板

25. 用在步骤 22 中从装订器上拆下的 4 颗螺钉 (7) 重新安装后盖板 (8)。
26. 用在步骤 20 中从装订器上拆下的 2 颗螺钉 (5) 重新安装前下盖板 (6)。

### 安装托盘

27. 将托盘 A (B) 和托盘 B (C) 安装到装订器 (A) 上。有关安装, 请参考第 6 页上的步骤 14 和 15。

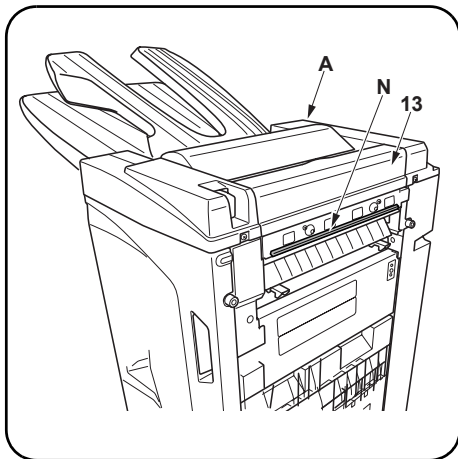
---

### カバーの取り付け

25. 手順 22 で外した後カバー (8) をビス (7) 4 本で元通り取り付け。
26. 手順 20 で外した前下カバー (6) をビス (5) 2 本で元通り取り付け。

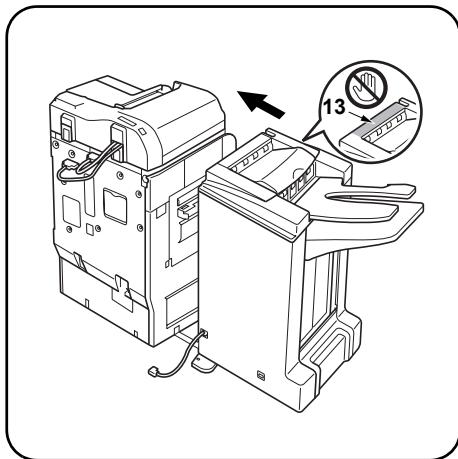
### トレイの取り付け

27. ドキュメントフィニッシャー (A) にトレイ A (B) とトレイ B (C) を取り付け。詳細は 6 ページ手順 14、15 を参照のこと。



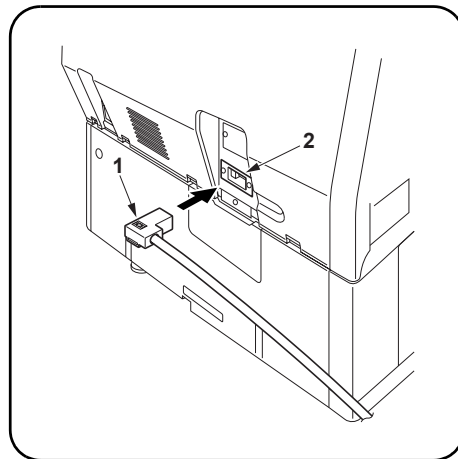
### Installing the sponge

1. Clean the sheet metal section under the upper cover (13) of the document finisher (A) with alcohol.
2. Peel the release paper off the sponge (N) and adhere the sponge to the sheet metal section.



### [Installing the document finisher and the MFP or the printer]

3. Bring the document finisher (A) near the MFP or the printer and connect them. For connecting the document finisher (A) and the MFP or the printer, do not hold the upper cover (13) of the document finisher.



### Connecting the signal line

4. Connect the signal line (1) of the document finisher (A) to the connector (2) at the back of the MFP or the printer.

### Installation de l'éponge

1. Nettoyer la partie en feuille de métal du capot supérieur (13) du retoucheur de document (A) avec l'alcool.
2. Peler le papier de libération de l'éponge (N) et coller l'éponge sur la partie en feuille de métal.

### [Installation du retoucheur de document et du MFP ou imprimante]

3. Approcher le retoucheur de document (A) du MFP ou imprimante et les connecter. Pour connecter le retoucheur de document (A) et le MFP ou imprimante, ne pas tenir le capot supérieur (13) du retoucheur de document.

### Connexion de la ligne d'interconnexion

4. Connecter la ligne d'interconnexion (1) du retoucheur de document (A) au connecteur (2) à l'arrière du MFP ou imprimante.

### Instalación de la esponja

1. Limpie con alcohol la sección de la hoja metálica situada debajo de la cubierta superior (13) del finalizador de documentos (A).
2. Despegue el papel de la esponja (N) y pegue la esponja en la sección de la hoja metálica.

### [Instalación del finalizador de documentos y la MFP o impresora]

3. Acerque el finalizador de documentos (A) a la MFP o impresora y conéctelos. Para conectar el finalizador de documentos (A) y la MFP o impresora, no sujete la cubierta superior (13) del finalizador de documentos.

### Conexión de la línea de señales

4. Conecte la línea de señales (1) del finalizador de documentos (A) al conector (2) de la parte trasera de la MFP o impresora.

### Anbringen des Schwamms

1. Reinigen Sie den Metallbereich unter der oberen Abdeckung (13) des Dokument-Finishers (A) mit Alkohol.
2. Ziehen Sie die Klebeschutzfolie vom Schwamm (N) ab, und kleben Sie den Schwamm dann an der Metallfläche an.

### [Anbringen des Dokument-Finishers und des MFP oder Drucker]

3. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher (A) nahe am MFP oder Drucker an, und verbinden Sie beide Komponenten miteinander. Wenn der Dokument-Finisher (A) und der MFP oder Drucker verbunden werden, darf die obere Abdeckung (13) des Dokument-Finishers nicht festgehalten werden.

### Anschließen der Signalleitung

4. Schließen Sie die Signalleitung (1) des Dokument-Finishers (A) am Stecker (2) auf der Rückseite des MFP oder Drucker an.

### Installazione della spugna

1. Pulire con alcool la sezione in lamiera sotto il pannello superiore (13) della finitrice di documenti (A).
2. Staccare la carta protettiva dalla spugna (N) e far aderire la spugna alla sezione in lamiera.

### [Installazione della finitrice di documenti e della MFP o stampatore]

3. Avvicinare la finitrice di documenti (A) alla MFP o stampatore e collegarle. Nel connettere la finitrice di documenti (A) e la MFP o stampatore, non reggere il pannello superiore (13) della finitrice.

### Connessione del cavo del segnale

4. Collegare il cavo del segnale (1) della finitrice di documenti (A) al connettore (2) sul retro della MFP o stampatore.

### 安装海绵

1. 用酒精清洁装订器 (A) 的上盖板 (13) 下的金属板部位。
2. 剥离海绵 (N) 上的隔离纸, 将海绵粘到金属板部位。

### [ 安装装订器和 MFP 或打印机 ]

3. 将装订器 (A) 放在 MFP 或打印机附近, 并将其连接。连接装订器 (A) 和 MFP 或打印机时, 不要按住装订器的上盖板 (13)。

### 连接信号线

4. 将装订器 (A) 的信号线 (1) 连接到 MFP 或打印机后部的插头 (2)。

### スポンジの貼り付け

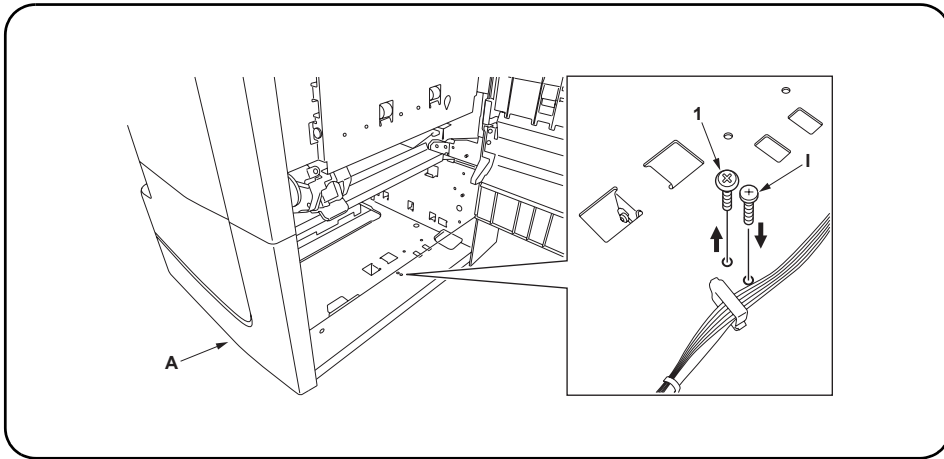
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の上カバー (13) の下の板金部をアルコール清掃する。
2. スポンジ (N) の剥離紙を剥ぎ取り、貼り付ける。

### [ ドキュメントフィニッシャと MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の取り付け ]

3. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体へ寄せ、MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体と接続する。接続する際、ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の上カバー (13) を絶対に持たないこと。

### 信号線の接続

4. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の信号線 (1) を MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体後側のコネクタ (2) に接続する。



### [Adjusting the document finisher height]

#### When using a monochrome machine

1. Open the right cover of the document finisher (A).
2. Remove the screw (1) from the left bottom of the document finisher (A) and install the document finisher to the right hole using M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screw (I).  
The more tightening M4 × 10 tap Tight S Screw (I), the more document finisher height increases.

### [Ajustement de la hauteur du retoucheur de document]

#### Lors de l'utilisation d'une machine monochrome

1. Ouvrir le capot de droite du retoucheur de document (A).
2. Retirer la vis (1) de la partie inférieure gauche du retoucheur de document (A) et installer le retoucheur de document sur l'orifice de droite à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I).  
Plus la vis S taraudée M4 × 10 (I) est serrée, plus la hauteur du retoucheur de document augmente.

### [Ajuste de la altura del finalizador de documentos]

#### Cuando utilice una máquina de blanco y negro

1. Abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos (A).
2. Quite el tornillo (1) de la parte inferior izquierda del finalizador de documentos (A) e instale el finalizador de documentos en el agujero derecho utilizando los tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I).  
Cuanto más se aprieten los tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (I) más aumentará la altura del finalizador de documentos.

### [Einstellen der Höhe des Dokument-Finishers]

#### Bei Verwendung einer Monochrommaschine

1. Öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
2. Entfernen Sie die Schraube (1) links unten am Dokument-Finisher (A), und befestigen Sie den Dokument-Finisher danach mit einer M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) am rechten Loch.  
Je stärker die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (I) festgezogen wird, desto größer ist der Höhenzuwachs für den Dokument-Finisher.

### [Regolazione dell'altezza della finitrice di documenti]

#### In caso di utilizzo di un macchinario in bianco e nero

1. Aprire il pannello destro della finitrice di documenti (A).
2. Togliere la vite (1) dalla parte inferiore sinistra della finitrice di documenti (A) e installare la finitrice nel foro destro utilizzando una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I).  
Più si stringe la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (I), più aumenta l'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

### [ 調整装订器高度 ]

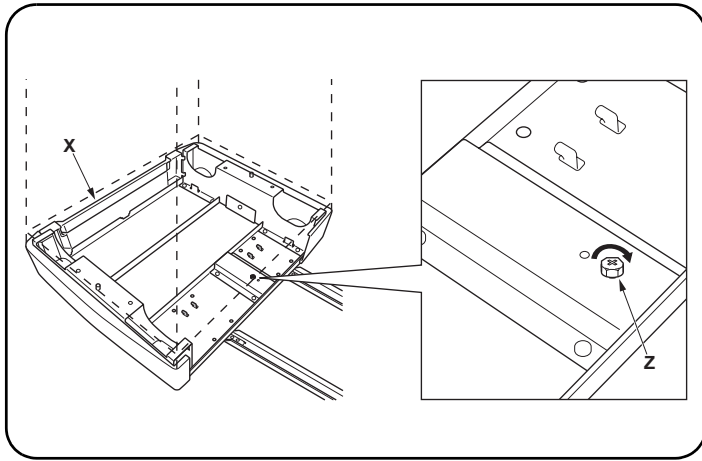
#### 使用黑白机时

1. 打开装订器 (A) 的右盖板。
2. 从装订器 (A) 的左下部拆下螺钉 (1) 并用 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 将装订器安装到右孔。  
M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (I) 拧得越紧，装订器的高度就越高。

### [ ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さ調整 ]

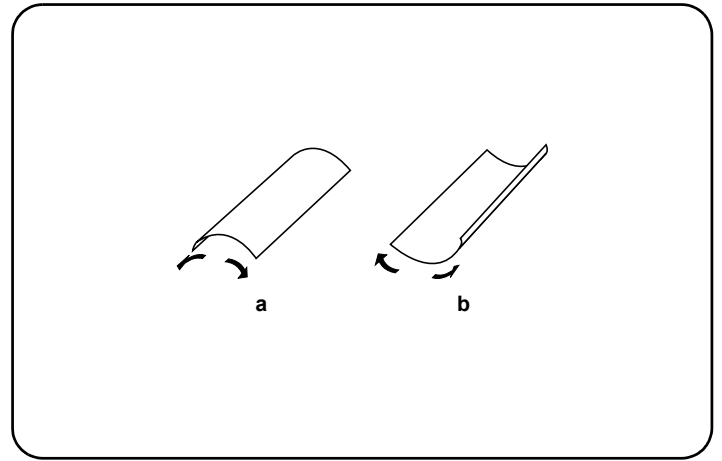
#### モノクロ機の場合

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の右カバーを開く。
  2. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) 底部左側のビス (1) 1 本を外し、ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) を右側の穴へ取り付け。
- ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (I) を締めつけるほど、ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さが高くなる。



#### [When using the full-color machine]

1. Tighten M4 × 10 hexagon head screw (Z), which was temporarily tightened in step 4 on page 12, using a spanner.  
The more tightening M4 × 10 hexagon head screw (Z), the more document finisher height increases.



#### [Checking the curl]

1. Plug the MFP or the printer into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. Check the paper is fed.
3. Check the curl of the copy sample, and if the curl is tight, follow the next step to adjust it.

#### [Lors de l'utilisation de la machine entièrement en couleurs]

1. Serrer la vis à tête hexagonale M4 × 10 (Z) temporairement serrée à l'étape 4 de la page 11 à l'aide d'une clé de serrage.  
Plus la vis à tête hexagonale M4 × 10 (Z) est serrée, plus la hauteur du retoucheur de document augmente.

#### [Vérification de la boucle]

1. Brancher le MFP ou imprimante dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur d'alimentation principal sous tension.
2. S'assurer que le papier est fourni.
3. Vérifier la boucle sur l'échantillon de copie et si la boucle est serrée, suivre l'étape suivante pour l'ajuster.

#### [Cuando utilice la máquina a todo color]

1. Apriete el tornillo de cabeza hexagonal M4 × 10 (Z), que fue apretado temporalmente en el paso 4 de la página 11, utilizando una llave inglesa.  
Cuanto más se apriete el tornillo de cabeza hexagonal M4 × 10 (Z), más aumentará la altura del finalizador de documentos.

#### [Comprobación de la curvatura del papel]

1. Enchufe la MFP o impresora a una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. Asegúrese de que avance el papel.
3. Compruebe la curvatura del papel de la muestra de la copia y si ésta es mucha, siga el paso siguiente para ajustarla.

#### [Bei Verwendung eines Vollfarbenedlers]

1. Ziehen Sie die im Schritt 4 auf Seite 11 vorübergehend angezogene M4 × 10 Sechskantschraube (Z) mit einem Schraubenschlüssel fest.  
Je stärker die M4 × 10 Sechskantschraube (Z) festgezogen wird, desto größer ist der Höhenzuwachs für den Dokument-Finisher.

#### [Überprüfen der Papierwellung]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP oder Drucker an das Netz an, und aktivieren Sie den Geräteschalter.
2. Vergewissern dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert.
3. Überprüfen Sie die Testkopie auf Wellung. Falls das Papier zu stark aufgerollt ist, folgen Sie dem nächsten Schritt zur Einstellung.

#### [In caso di utilizzo di un macchinario a colori]

1. Fissare la vite con testa esagonale M4 × 10 (Z), stretta temporaneamente al punto 4 di pagina 11, utilizzando una chiave.  
Più si stringe la vite con testa esagonale M4 × 10 (Z), più aumenta l'altezza della finitrice di documenti.

#### [Controllo dell'arricciatura]

1. Collegare la MFP o stampatore alla presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. Verificare che la carta sia alimentata.
3. Controllare l'arricciatura della copia di prova e, se è notevole, procedere come indicato nel punto successivo per regolarla.

#### [使用全彩色机时]

1. 用扳子拧紧在第 11 页上第 4 步中暂时拧紧的 M4 × 10 六角头螺钉 (Z)。  
M4 × 10 六角头螺钉 (Z) 拧得越紧, 装订器的高度就越高。

#### [检查卷曲状态]

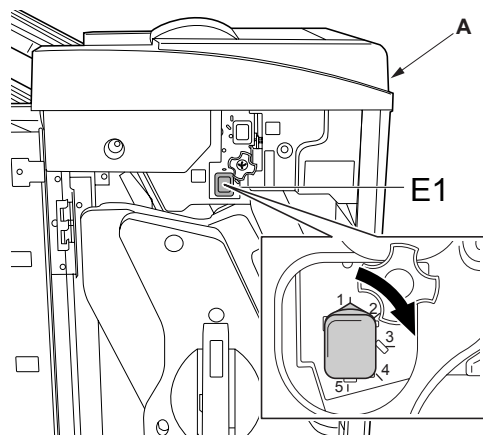
1. 将 MFP 或打印机插入电源插座, 打开主电源开关。
2. 检查送纸。
3. 检查复印样本的卷曲状态, 如果卷曲严重, 按照下一步进行调整。

#### [フルカラー機の場合]

1. 12 ページ、手順 4 で仮締めした M4 × 10 六角ビス (Z) を、スパナ等を使い締め付ける。  
M4 × 10 六角ビス (Z) を締め付けるほど、ドキュメントフィニッシャの高さが高くなる。

#### [カール状態の確認]

1. MFP 本体またはプリンタ本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. 通紙を確認する。
3. コピーサンプルのカール状態を確認し、カールが大きい場合、次の手順で調整を行う。



### Checking the curl

#### If the ejected paper is tightly curled face-down (a)

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
2. Pull the pressure roller bottom adjusting knob E1 to your side and turn the knob by 1 scale in increasing order.

3. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).
4. Check the paper is fed.
5. Repeat steps 2 to 4 until the paper becomes straight.

### Vérification de la boucle

#### Si on enroule vers le bas les papiers sur la sortie (a)

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
2. Tirer la molette de réglage inférieure du rouleau de pression E1 vers soi et faire tourner la molette pour l'augmenter d'un cran.

3. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
4. S'assurer que le papier est fourni.
5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que le papier soit plat.

### Comprobación de la curvatura

#### Si el papel de la salida está curvado hacia abajo (a)

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
2. Tire del control de ajuste inferior del rodillo de presión E1 hacia donde está usted y gire el control 1 posición en el orden de aumento.

3. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
4. Asegúrese de que avance el papel.
5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 hasta que el papel quede derecho.

### Überprüfen der Papierwellung

#### Wenn der Papier auf dem Auslass nach unten aufgerollt wird (a)

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
2. Ziehen Sie den unteren Andruckwalzenreglerknopf E1 gegen sich, und drehen Sie den Knopf um eine Stufe in aufsteigender Richtung.

3. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
4. Vergewissern dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert.
5. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 2 bis 4, bis das Papier sich glättet.

### Controllo dell'arricciatura

#### Se la carta all'uscita è rivolta verso il basso arricciata (a)

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
2. Tirare la manopola di regolazione inferiore del rullo di pressione E1 verso di voi e ruotarla di una tacca in ordine crescente.

3. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
4. Verificare che la carta sia alimentata.
5. Ripetere i passaggi dal punto 2 al punto 4 finché l'arricciatura non viene eliminata completamente.

### 检查卷曲状态

#### 如果输出的纸张正面朝下严重卷曲 (a)

1. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
2. 将压力辊底部调整旋钮 E1 朝向自身方向拉, 并按照升序旋转旋钮 1 个刻度。

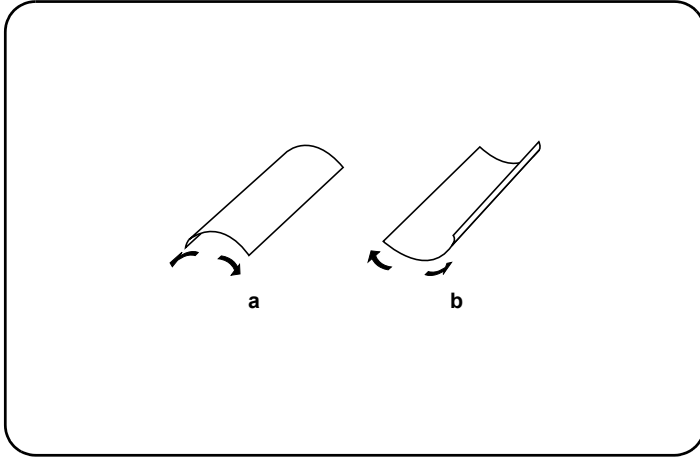
3. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
4. 检查送纸。
5. 重复第 2 步到第 4 步直到纸张变直。

### カール状態の調整

#### 排出された用紙のカールが下向きに大きい場合 (a)

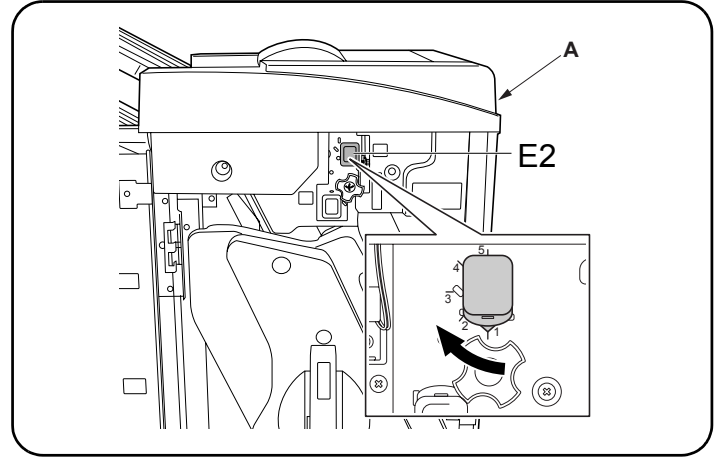
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。
2. 加圧ローラ下調整つまみ E1 を手前に引き、数字の大きい方向に 1 目盛り回す。

3. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを閉じる。
4. 通紙を確認する。
5. 用紙のカールがなくなるまで、手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。



**If the ejected paper is tightly curled face-up (b)**

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher (A).
2. Pull the pressure roller top adjusting knob E2 to your side and turn the knob by 1 scale in increasing order.
3. Close the front cover of the document finisher (A).



4. Check the paper is fed.
5. Repeat steps 2 to 4 until the paper becomes straight.

**Si on enroule de façon serrée vers le haut les papiers sur la sortie (b)**

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).
2. Tirer la molette de réglage supérieure du rouleau de pression E2 vers soi et faire tourner la molette pour l'augmenter d'un cran.
3. Refermer le capot avant du retoucheur de document (A).

4. S'assurer que le papier est fourni.
5. Répéter les étapes 2 à 4 jusqu'à ce que le papier soit plat.

**Si se el papel de la salida está apretado hacia arriba (b)**

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).
2. Tire del control de ajuste superior del rodillo de presión E2 hacia donde está usted y gire el control 1 posición en el orden de aumento.
3. Cierre la cubierta delantera del finalizador de documentos (A).

4. Asegúrese de que avance el papel.
5. Repita los pasos 2 a 4 hasta que el papel quede derecho.

**Wenn der Papier auf dem Auslass straff nach oben aufgerollt wird (b)**

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).
2. Ziehen Sie den oberen Andruckwalzenreglerknopf E2 gegen sich, und drehen Sie den Knopf um eine Stufe in aufsteigender Richtung.
3. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers (A).

4. Vergewissern dass der Papiervorschub funktioniert.
5. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 2 bis 4, bis das Papier sich glättet.

**Se la carta all'uscita è rivolta verso l'alto notevolmente arricciata (b)**

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).
2. Tirare la manopola di regolazione superiore del rullo di pressione E2 verso di voi e ruotarla di una tacca in ordine crescente.
3. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice di documenti (A).

4. Verificare che la carta sia alimentata.
5. Ripetere i passaggi dal punto 2 al punto 4 finché l'arricciatura non viene eliminata completamente.

**如果输出的纸张正面朝上严重卷曲 (b)**

1. 打开装订器 (A) 的前盖板。
2. 将压力辊顶部调整旋钮 E2 朝向自身方向拉，并按照升序旋转旋钮 1 个刻度。
3. 关闭装订器 (A) 的前盖板。

4. 检查送纸。
5. 重复第 2 步到第 4 步直到纸张变直。

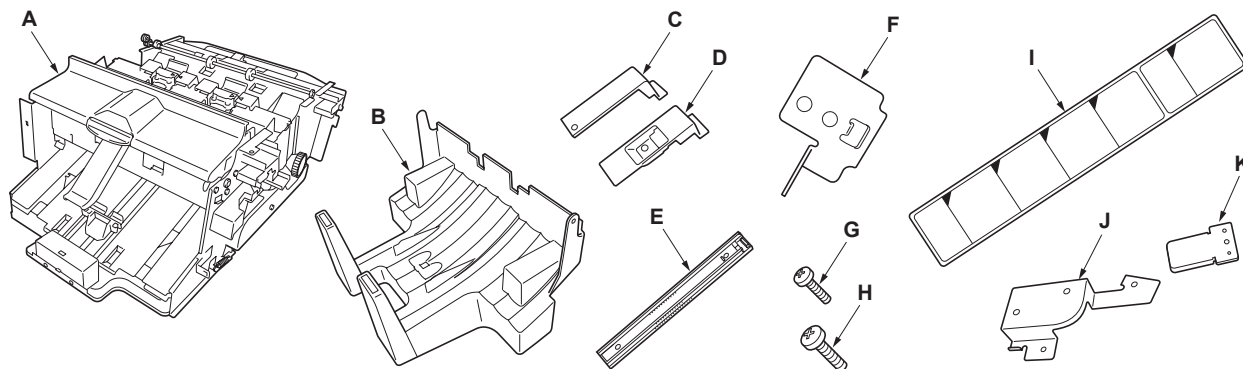
**排出された用紙のカールが上向きに大きい場合 (b)**

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを開く。
2. 加圧ローラ上調整つまみ E2 を手前に引き、数字の大きい方向に 1 目盛り回す。
3. ドキュメントフィニッシャ (A) の前カバーを閉じる。

4. 通紙を確認する。
5. 用紙のカールがなくなるまで、手順 2 ~ 4 を繰り返す。



# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR CENTER-FOLDING UNIT**



**English**

**Supplied parts**

A Center-Folding unit .....	1
B Folding tray .....	1
C Rear cover .....	1
D Front cover .....	1
E Slider .....	2

F Douser .....	1
G M3 x 8 tap-tight P screw .....	2
H M4 x 8 tap-tight S screw .....	11
I Label .....	1
J Cover handle saddle .....	1

(K) will be used when the center-folding unit is installed on the full-color machine.  
(K) will not be used in monochrome machine.  
K Cover V .....

Be sure to remove any fixing tapes or cushioning material attached to the supplied parts.

**Français**

**Pièces fournies**

A Plieuse .....	1
B Bac de pliage .....	1
C Capot arrière .....	1
D Capot avant .....	1
E Règle .....	2

F Ombreur .....	1
G Vis P taraudées M3 x 8 .....	2
H Vis S taraudées M4 x 8 .....	11
I Etiquette .....	1
J Poignée de capot à cheval .....	1

(K) utilisé lorsque la plieuse est installée sur la machine pleine couleurs.

(K) n'est pas utilisé sur une machine monochrome  
K Capot V .....

Veiller à retirer toute bande de fixation ou matériau d'emballage entourant les pièces fournies.

**Español**

**Partes suministradas**

A Unidad de plegado .....	1
B Bandeja de plegado .....	1
C Cubierta posterior .....	1
D Cubierta frontal .....	1
E Deslizador .....	2

F Pantalla paraluz .....	1
G Tornillo de ajuste M3 x 8 .....	2
H Tornillo de ajuste M4 x 8 .....	11
I Etiqueta .....	1
J Placa de manilla de cubierta .....	1

(K) se utilizará cuando la unidad de plegado esté instalada en la máquina a todo color.

(K) no se utilizará en la máquina de blanco y negro.  
K Cubierta V .....

Asegúrese de quitar cualquier cinta de fijación o material de amortiguación colocado en las partes suministradas.

**Deutsch**

**Gelieferte Teile**

A Mittenfalteinheit .....	1
B Faltfach .....	1
C Hintere Abdeckung .....	1
D Vordere Abdeckung .....	1
E Schieber .....	2

F Abschirmung .....	1
G M3 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	2
H M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	11
I Aufkleber .....	1
J Abdeckungsalter .....	1

(K) Ist erforderlich, wenn die Mittenfalteinheit am Vollfarbencopierer installiert wird.

(K) Ist bei Schwarzweiß-Kopierern nicht erforderlich.  
K Abdeckung V .....

Sicherstellen, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und Dämpfungsmaterialien von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt werden.

**Italiano**

**Parti fornite**

A Unità di piegatura centrale .....	1
B Vassoio di piegatura .....	1
C Pannello posteriore .....	1
D Pannello anteriore .....	1
E Scivolo .....	2

F Dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) .....	1
G Viti con testa a croce P M3 x 8 .....	2
H Viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 .....	11
I Etichetta .....	1
J Slitta coprimanopola .....	1

(K) da utilizzarsi quando l'unità di piegatura centrale è installata su un macchinario a colori.

(K) da non utilizzarsi su macchinari monocromi.  
K Pannello V .....

Assicurarsi di rimuovere qualsiasi nastro adesivo o imbottitura fissati alle parti fornite.

**简体中文**

**附属部件**

A 中缝装订一折页单元 .....	1
B 折叠托盘 .....	1
C 后盖板 .....	1
D 前盖板 .....	1
E 滑板 .....	2

F 探测器 .....	1
G M3 x 8 攻丝紧固型 P 螺钉 .....	2
H M4 x 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 .....	11
I 标签 .....	1
J 盖板手柄鞍座 .....	1

全彩色机上安装中缝装订一折页单元时将使用 (K)。

黑白机上不使用 (K)。

K 盖板 V .....

请务必拆下附带在附属部件上的固定胶带或弹性垫料。

**日本語**

**付属品**

A 中折りユニット .....	1
B 中折りトレイ .....	1
C カバー後 .....	1
D カバー前 .....	1
E スライダー .....	2

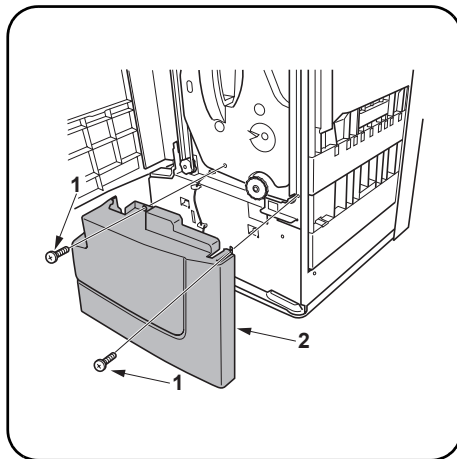
F 遮光板 .....	1
G ビス M3 x 8 タップタイト P .....	2
H ビス M4 x 8 タップタイト S .....	11
I ラベル .....	1
J カバーハンドルサドル .....	1

フルカラー機に中折りユニットを設置する場合、(K)を使用する。

モノクロ機では (K) は使用しない。

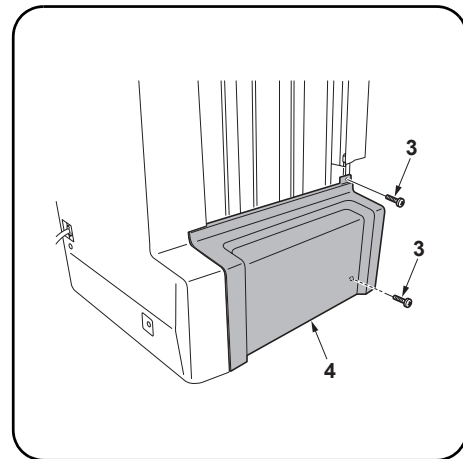
K カバーV .....

付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



#### Removing the cover.

1. Open the front cover of the document finisher.
2. Remove two screws (1) and remove lower front cover (2).



3. Remove two screws (3) and remove lower left cover (4).

#### Procedure

Before installing the center-folding unit, turn the MFP's main power switch off and unplug the power cable from the power supply. Install the document finisher, and then install the center-folding unit.

#### Procédure

Avant d'installer la plieuse mettre l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP hors tension et débrancher le câble d'alimentation de la prise de courant. Installer le finisseur de document, puis installer la plieuse.

#### Enlèvement du capot.

1. Ouvrir le capot avant du finisseur de document.
2. Retirer deux vis (1) et retirer le capot avant inférieur (2).

3. Retirer deux vis (3) et retirer le capot gauche inférieur (4).

#### Procedimiento

Antes de instalar la unidad de plegado, desconecte el interruptor de alimentación principal de la MFP y desenchufe el cable de alimentación de la toma de corriente. Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la unidad de plegado.

#### Extracción de la cubierta.

1. Abra la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.
2. Quite los dos tornillos (1) y la cubierta frontal inferior (2).

3. Quite dos tornillos (3) y la cubierta inferior izquierda (4).

#### Einbauverfahren

Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Mittenfalteinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Mittenfalteinheit an.

#### Entfernen der Abdeckung.

1. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.
2. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (1) und danach die vordere untere Abdeckung (2).

3. Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (3) und danach die vordere untere Abdeckung (4).

#### Procedura

Prima di installare l'unità di piegatura centrale, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa. Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di piegatura centrale.

#### Rimuovere il pannello.

1. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice.
2. Togliere due viti (1) e rimuovere il pannello anteriore inferiore (2).

3. Togliere due viti (3) e rimuovere il pannello inferiore sinistro (4).

#### 步骤

安装中缝装订一折页单元前, 请关闭 MFP 的主电源开关并从电源拔下电源线。安装文档整理器, 然后安装中缝装订一折页单元。

#### 拆下盖板。

1. 打开文档整理器的前盖板。
2. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (1), 然后拆下前下盖板 (2)。

3. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (3), 然后拆下左下盖板 (4)。

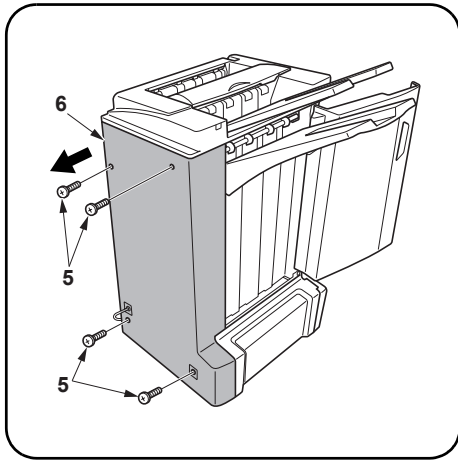
#### 設置手順

中折りユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置後、中折りユニットを設置すること。

#### カバーの取り外し

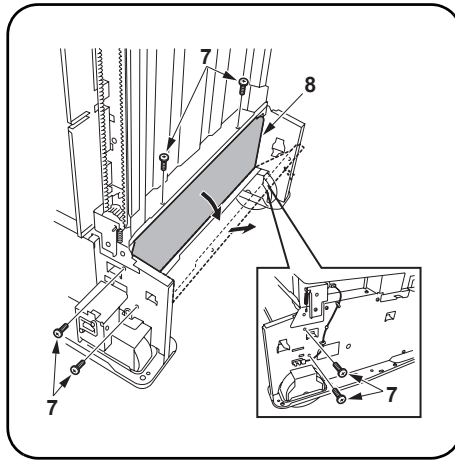
1. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを開く。
2. ビス (1) 2 本を外し、前下カバー (2) を取り外す。

3. ビス (3) 2 本を外し、左下カバー (4) を取り外す。



#### Removing the back cover.

4. Remove the four screws (5) to remove the back cover (6) from the document finisher.



#### Removing the reinforcing plate.

5. Remove six screws (7) to remove the left reinforcing plate (8). Tilt the left reinforcing plate (8) to pull out upwards.

#### Installing the back cover.

6. Use the four screws (5) which was removed from the document finisher in step 4 and reinstall the back cover (6).

#### Enlèvement du capot arrière.

4. Retirer les quatre vis (5) pour retirer le capot arrière (6) du finisseur de document.

#### Enlèvement de la plaque de renfort.

5. Retirer six vis (7) pour retirer la plaque de renfort de gauche (8). Incliner la plaque de renfort de gauche (8) pour la faire ressortir vers le haut.

#### Installation du capot arrière.

6. Utiliser les quatre vis (5) retirées du finisseur de document à l'étape 4 et réinstaller le capot arrière (6).

#### Extracción de la cubierta posterior.

4. Quite los cuatro tornillos (5) para quitar la cubierta posterior (6) del finalizador de documentos.

#### Extracción de la placa de refuerzo.

5. Quite seis tornillos (7) para quitar la placa de refuerzo izquierda (8). Incline la placa de refuerzo izquierda (8) para sacarla hacia arriba.

#### Instalación de la cubierta posterior.

6. Utilice los cuatro tornillos (5) que fueron quitados del finalizador de documentos en el paso 4 y vuelva a instalar la cubierta posterior (6).

#### Entfernen der hinteren Abdeckung.

4. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (5) vom Dokument-Finisher, um die hintere Abdeckung (6) zu entfernen.

#### Entfernen der Verstärkungsplatte.

5. Entfernen Sie die sechs Schrauben (7), um die linke Verstärkungsplatte (8) auszubauen. Neigen Sie die Verstärkungsplatte (8), um sie nach außen herauszuziehen.

#### Anbringen der hinteren Abdeckung.

6. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (5), welche im Schritt 4 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt wurden, und bringen Sie danach die hintere Abdeckung (6) wieder an.

#### Rimuovere il pannello posteriore.

4. Togliere le quattro viti (5) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (6) dalla finitrice.

#### Rimuovere la lastra di rinforzo.

5. Togliere sei viti (7) per rimuovere la lastra di rinforzo sinistra (8). Inclinare la lastra di rinforzo sinistra (8) ed estrarla verso l'alto.

#### Installare il pannello posteriore.

6. Utilizzare le quattro viti (5) rimosse dalla finitrice nel passo 4 e reinstallare il pannello posteriore (6).

#### 拆下后盖板。

4. 从文档整理器上拆下 4 颗螺钉 (5) 以便拆下后盖板 (6)。

#### 拆下加强板。

5. 拆下 6 颗螺钉 (7) 以便拆下左加强板 (8)。将左加强板 (8) 倾斜向上拉出。

#### 安装后盖板。

6. 用在步骤 4 中从文档整理器上拆下的 4 颗螺钉 (5) 重新安装后盖板 (6)。

#### 後カバーの取り外し

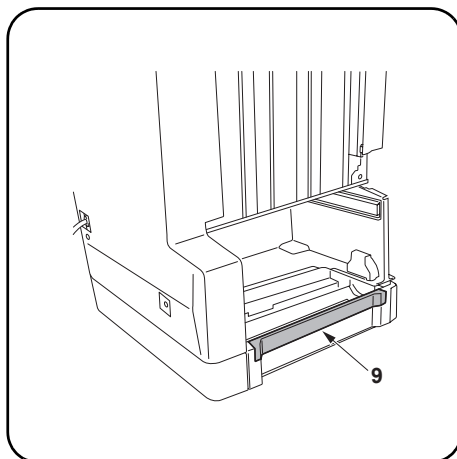
4. ビス (5) 4 本を外し、後カバー (6) を取り外す。

#### 補強板の取り外し

5. ビス (7) 6 本を外し、補強板左 (8) を取り外す。補強板左 (8) は斜めに傾け、上方向へ取り外すこと。

#### 後カバーの取り付け

6. 手順 4 で外した後カバー (6) をビス (5) 4 本で元通り取り付ける。

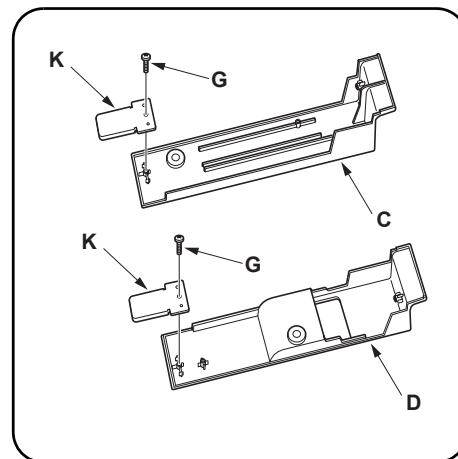


**[To install the center-folding unit on the full-color machine]**

7. Steps 8 and 9 below will be required when the center-folding unit (A) is installed on the full-color machine.

**Removing the divided part.**

8. Remove divided part (9) from the base where the document finisher is located.



**Reassembling the covers.**

9. Install cover V (K) onto each of rear cover (C) and front cover (D) respectively with a M3 × 8 tap-tight P screw (G).

**[Installation de la plieuse sur la machine pleine couleurs]**

7. Les étapes 8 et 9 ci-dessous sont nécessaires lorsque la plieuse (A) est installée sur la machine pleine couleurs.

**Enlèvement de la pièce divisée.**

8. Retirer la pièce divisée (9) de la base sur laquelle le finisseur de document est situé.

**Remontage des capots.**

9. Installer le capot V (K) sur le capot arrière (C) et sur le capot avant (D) à l'aide d'une vis P taraudée M3 × 8 chaque (G).

**[Para instalar la unidad de plegado en la máquina a todo color]**

7. Los pasos 8 y 9 de abajo serán necesarios cuando la unidad de plegado (A) se instale en la máquina a todo color.

**Extracción de la parte dividida.**

8. Quite la parte dividida (9) de la base donde se encuentre situado el finalizador de documentos.

**Reinstalación de las cubiertas.**

9. Instale la cubierta V (K) en cada cubierta posterior (C) y cubierta frontal (D) respectivamente con un tornillo de ajuste M3 × 8 (G).

**[Anbringen der Mittenfalteinheit am Vollfarbkopierer]**

7. Die nachfolgenden Schritte 8 und 9 sind erforderlich, wenn die Mittenfalteinheit (A) am Vollfarbkopierer installiert wird.

**Entfernen der Abtrennung.**

8. Entfernen Sie die Abtrennung (9) von der Grundplatte des Dokument-Finishers.

**Anbringen der Abdeckungen.**

9. Bringen Sie die Abdeckung V (K) auf jede hintere Abdeckung (C) bzw. vordere Abdeckung (D) mit einer M3 × 8 Passstift-Verbandschraube (G) an.

**[Installare l'unità di piegatura centrale su un macchinario a colori]**

7. I successivi passi 8 e 9 sono necessari quando l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) viene installata su macchinari a colori.

**Rimuovere la parte divisa.**

8. Rimuovere la parte divisa (9) dalla base dove la finitrice è situata.

**Riassemblare i pannelli.**

9. Installare il pannello V (K) su ognuno dei pannelli posteriore (C) e anteriore (D) rispettivamente con viti con testa a croce P M4 × 8 (G).

**[ 若要在全彩色机上安装中缝装订一折页单元 ]**

7. 在全彩色机上安装中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 时, 需要执行下面的步骤 8 和步骤 9。

**拆下分离部分。**

8. 从文档整理器的底座上拆下分离部分 (9)。

**重新组装盖板。**

9. 分别用 1 颗 M3 × 8 攻丝紧固型 P 螺钉 (G) 将盖板 V (K) 安装到每个后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D) 上。

**[ フルカラー機に設置する場合 ]**

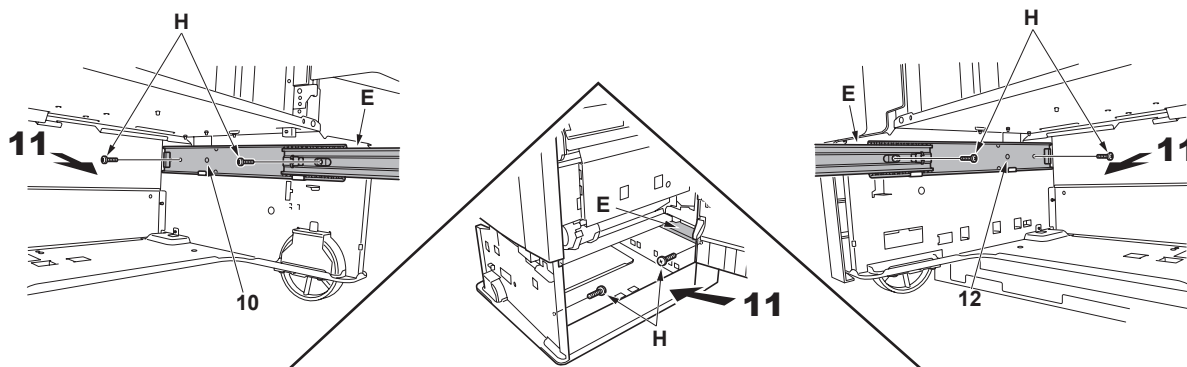
7. フルカラー機に中折りユニット (A) を設置する場合、次の手順 8、9 の作業が必要となる。

**割部を取り除く**

8. ドキュメントフィニッシャを乗せている組立ベースの割部 (9) を取り除く。

**カバーの組み立て**

9. カバー後 (C) とカバー前 (D) に、カバー V (K) をビス M3 × 8 タップタイト P (G) 1 本でそれぞれ取り付ける。



### Installing the slider.

10. Align slider (E) with projection (10) on the front-side plate of the document finisher and install the slider.
11. Pull out slider (E) and secure it with two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H). To tighten the screw at the rear side of slider (E) easily, open the right cover of the document finisher and secure the screw from the right side (11) of the document finisher.

12. Align slider (E) with projection (12) on the back-side plate of the document finisher and install the slider.
13. Pull out slider (E) and secure it with two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H).

### Installation de la règle.

10. Aligner la règle (E) sur la saillie (10) de la plaque avant du finisseur de document et installer la règle.
11. Faire ressortir la règle (E) et la fixer à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H). Pour pouvoir serrer facilement la vis à l'arrière de la règle (E), ouvrir le capot de droite du finisseur de document et fixer a vis depuis le côté droit (11) du finisseur de document.

12. Aligner la règle (E) sur la saillie (12) à l'arrière de la plaque latérale du finisseur de document et installer la règle.
13. Faire ressortir la règle (E) et la fixer à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H).

### Instalación del deslizador.

10. Alinee el deslizador (E) con el resalto (10) de la placa del lado frontal del finalizador de documentos e instale el deslizador.
11. Saque el deslizador (E) y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H). Para apretar fácilmente el tornillo del lado posterior del deslizador (E), abra la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos y asegure el tornillo desde el lado derecho (11) del finalizador de documentos.

12. Alinee el deslizador (E) con el resalto (12) de la placa del lado posterior del finalizador de documentos e instale el deslizador.
13. Saque el deslizador (E) y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H).

### Anbringen des Schiebers.

10. Richten Sie den Schieber (E) mit dem Vorsprung (10) auf der vorderen Seitenplatte des Dokument-Finishers aus und bringen Sie dann den Schieber an.
11. Ziehen Sie den Schieber (E) heraus und befestigen Sie ihn mit den beiden M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbandschrauben (H). Um die Schraube auf der Rückseite des Schiebers (E) ohne Problems festzuziehen, öffnen Sie die rechte Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers und ziehen Sie die Schraube von der rechten Seite (11) des Dokument-Finishers her an.

12. Richten Sie den Schieber (E) mit dem Vorsprung (12) auf der hinteren Seitenplatte des Dokument-Finishers aus und bringen Sie dann den Schieber an.
13. Ziehen Sie den Schieber (E) heraus und befestigen Sie ihn mit zwei M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbandschrauben (H).

### Installare lo scivolo.

10. Installare lo scivolo (E) allineandolo alla parte sporgente (10) sulla lastra anteriore della finitrice.
11. Fare uscire lo scivolo (E) e fissarlo con due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H). Per fissare con facilità la vite alla parte posteriore dello scivolo (E), aprire il pannello destro della finitrice e serrare la vite dal lato destro (11) della finitrice.

12. Allineare lo scivolo (E) alla parte sporgente (12) sulla lastra posteriore della finitrice e installarlo.
13. Far fuoriuscire lo scivolo (E) e fissarlo con due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H).

### 安装滑板。

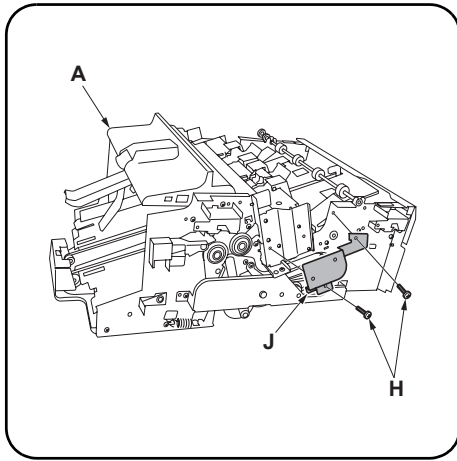
10. 将滑板 (E) 与文档整理器前侧板上的突出部 (10) 对齐并重新安装滑板。
11. 拉出滑板 (E) 并用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定。若要轻松拧紧滑板 (E) 后部的螺钉, 打开文档整理器的右盖板并从文档整理器右侧 (11) 固定螺钉。

12. 将滑板 (E) 与文档整理器后侧板上的突出部 (12) 对齐并重新安装滑板。
13. 拉出滑板 (E) 并用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定。

### スライダの取り付け

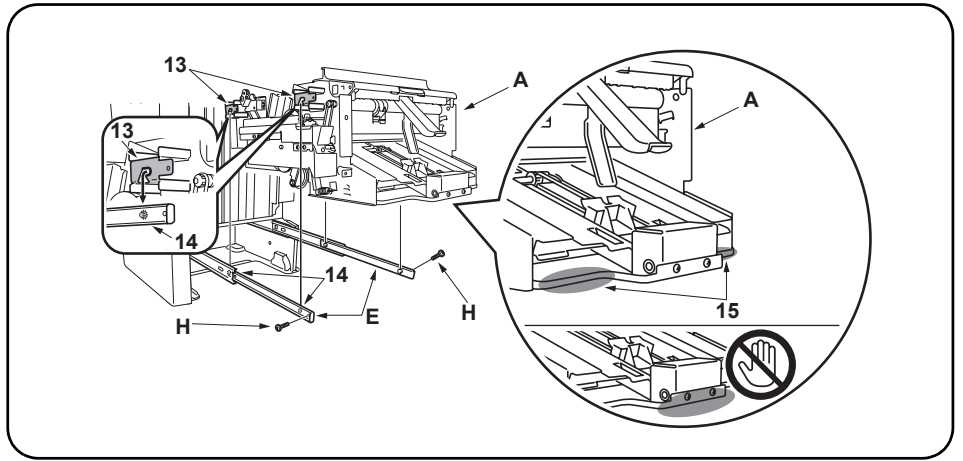
10. スライダ (E) をドキュメントフィニッシャ前側板の突起 (10) に合わせて取り付け。
11. スライダ (E) を引き出し、M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で固定する。スライダ (E) 後側のビスは、ドキュメントフィニッシャの右カバーを開き、ドキュメントフィニッシャの右方向 (11) から作業すると締めやすい。

12. スライダ (E) をドキュメントフィニッシャ後側板の突起 (12) に合わせて取り付け。
13. スライダ (E) を引き出し、M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で固定する。



#### Installing the cover handle saddle.

14. Install cover handle saddle (J) on the front side of center-folding unit (A) with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H).



#### Installing the center-folding unit.

15. Pull out sliders (E) till they stop.  
 16. Align pawl (13) of center-folding unit (A) with projection (14) of slider (E) and place the center-folding unit onto the slider.  
**Be sure to hold both the rear bottom and front side (15) of center-folding unit (A) and place the unit onto slider (E).**  
 17. Secure center-folding unit (A) with two M4 x 8 tap-tight S screws (H).

#### Installation de la poignée de capot à cheval.

14. Installer la poignée de capot à cheval (J) sur l'avant de la plieuse (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H).

#### Installation de la plieuse.

15. Faire ressortir les règles (E) jusqu'à ce qu'elles s'arrêtent.  
 16. Aligner le cliquet (13) de la plieuse (A) sur la saillie (14) de la règle (E) et mettre la plieuse en place sur la règle.  
**Veiller à tenir le fond arrière et l'avant (15) de la plieuse (A) et à mettre la plieuse en place sur la règle (E).**  
 17. Fixer la plieuse (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 x 8 (H).

#### Instalación de la placa de manilla de cubierta.

14. Instale la placa de manilla de cubierta (J) en el lado frontal de la unidad de plegado (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H).

#### Instalación de la unidad de plegado.

15. Saque los deslizadores (E) hasta que se paren.  
 16. Alinee el trinquete (13) de la unidad de plegado (A) con el resalto (14) del deslizador (E) y coloque la unidad de plegado en el deslizador.  
**Asegúrese de sujetar el lado inferior posterior y el central (15) de la unidad de plegado (A) y colocar la unidad en el deslizador (E).**  
 17. Asegure la unidad de plegado (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 x 8 (H).

#### Anbringen des Abdeckungshalter.

14. Bringen Sie den Abdeckungshalter (J) auf der Vorderseite der Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H) an.

#### Anbringen der Mittenfalteinheit.

15. Ziehen Sie die Schieber (E) soweit heraus, bis Sie anschlagen.  
 16. Richten Sie die Sperrklinke (13) der Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit dem Vorsprung (14) des Schiebers (E) aus, und setzen Sie danach die Mittenfalteinheit auf den Schieber.  
**Halten Sie die untere Hinter- und Vorderseite (15) der Mittenfalteinheit (A) fest und setzen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit danach auf den Schieber (E).**  
 17. Ziehen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 x 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H) fest.

#### Installare la slitta coprimanopola.

14. Installare la slitta coprimanopola (J) sul lato anteriore dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A) per mezzo di due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H).

#### Installare l'unità di piegatura centrale.

15. Tirare in fuori gli scivolo (E) finché si bloccano.  
 16. Allineare il dentello (13) dell'unità centrale di piegatura (A) alla parte sporgente (14) dello scivolo (E) e posarvi sopra l'unità stessa.  
**Assicurarsi di reggere bene sia la parte posteriore bassa che quella anteriore (15) dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A) e posare l'unità sullo scivolo (E).**  
 17. Fissare l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) con due viti con testa a croce S M4 x 8 (H).

#### 安装盖板手柄鞍座。

14. 用 2 颗 M4 x 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 将盖板手柄鞍座 (J) 安装到中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的前部。

#### 安装中缝装订一折页单元。

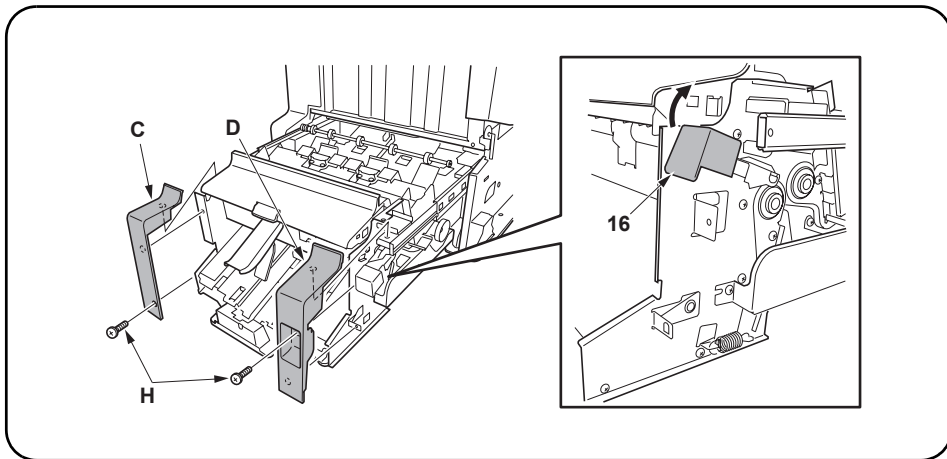
15. 拉出滑板 (E) 直到其停止下来。  
 16. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的卡爪 (13) 对准滑板 (E) 的突出部 (14), 并将中缝装订一折页单元放在滑板上。  
**请务必握住中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的后部和前部 (15), 并将中缝装订一折页单元放在滑板 (E) 上。**  
 17. 用 2 颗 M4 x 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定中缝装订一折页单元 (A)。

#### カバーハンドルサドルの取り付け

14. カバーハンドルサドル (J) を中折りユニット (A) 前側にビス M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で取り付ける。

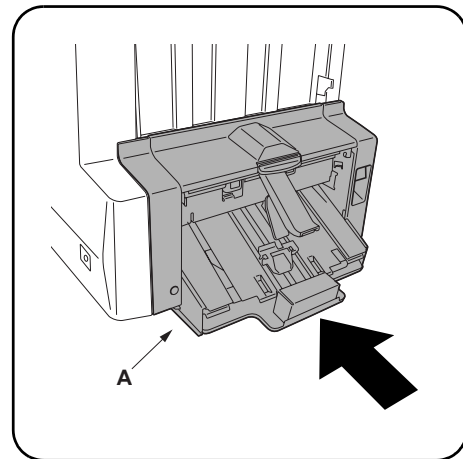
#### 中折りユニットの取り付け

15. スライダ (E) を最後まで引き出す。  
 16. 中折りユニット (A) のツメ (13) をスライダ (E) の突起 (14) に合わせて乗せる。  
**中折りユニット (A) は、必ず後側の底部と前側の (15) の部分を持ってスライダ (E) に乗せること。**  
 17. M4 x 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本で中折りユニット (A) を固定する。



### Installing covers.

18. Fit the projections at the rear side of rear cover (C) and front cover (D) into the center-folding unit's holes and install the covers.  
It is easy to install front cover (D) by lifting center-folding unit releasing lever (16).  
Install the cover assembled in step 6 when the center-folding unit is installed into the full-color machine.
19. Use two M4 × 8 tap-tight S screws (H) to secure rear cover (C) and front cover (D).



20. Store center-folding unit (A) into the document finisher.

If center-folding unit (A) is not stored completely inside the document finisher, the unit cannot be fixed in the document finisher and center-folding unit (A) won't operate properly.

### Installation des capots.

18. Ajuster les saillies à l'arrière du capot arrière (C) et du capot avant (D) dans les orifices de la plieuse et installer les capots.  
Il est facile d'installer le capot avant (D) en soulevant le levier de relâchement de la plieuse (16).  
Installer le capot assemblé à l'étape 6 lorsque la plieuse est installée dans la machine pleine couleurs.
19. Utiliser deux vis S taraudées M4 × 8 (H) pour fixer le capot arrière (C) et le capot avant (D).

20. Ranger la plieuse (A) dans le finisseur de document.

Si la plieuse (A) n'est pas complètement rangée à l'intérieur du finisseur de document, la plieuse ne peut pas être fixée dans le finisseur de document et la plieuse (A) ne fonctionne pas correctement.

### Instalación de cubiertas.

18. Coloque los resaltes del lado posterior de la cubierta posterior (C) y de la cubierta frontal (D) dentro de los agujeros de la unidad de plegado e instale las cubiertas.  
Es más fácil instalar la cubierta frontal (D) levantando la palanca de liberación de la unidad de plegado (16).  
Instale la cubierta ensamblada en el paso 6 cuando la unidad de plegado esté instalada en la máquina a todo color.
19. Utilice dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 8 (H) para asegurar la cubierta posterior (C) y la cubierta frontal (D).

20. Meta la unidad de plegado (A) en el finalizador de documentos.

Si la unidad de plegado (A) no se mete completamente en el finalizador de documentos, ésta no podrá fijarse en el finalizador de documentos y no funcionará correctamente.

### Anbringen der Abdeckungen.

18. Führen Sie die Vorsprünge an der Rückseite der hinteren Abdeckung (C) sowie der vorderen Abdeckung (D) in die Löcher der Mittenfalteinheit ein, und bringen Sie danach die Abdeckungen an.  
Um den Einbau der vorderen Abdeckung (D) zu erleichtern, ist der Entriegelungshebel (16) der Mittenfalteinheit anzuheben.  
Bringen Sie nun die in Schritt 6 zusammengesetzte Abdeckung an, nachdem die Mittenfalteinheit in den Vollfarbkopierer eingebaut wurde.
19. Verwenden Sie die beiden M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (H), um die hintere Abdeckung (C) und die vordere Abdeckung (D) zu befestigen.

20. Setzen Sie die Mittenfalteinheit (A) in den Dokument-Finisher ein.

Wenn die Mittenfalteinheit (A) nicht vollständig in den Dokument-Finisher eingesetzt wurde, kann die Mittenfalteinheit nicht im Dokument-Finisher befestigt werden, und die Mittenfalteinheit (A) funktioniert dann nicht richtig.

### Installare i pannelli.

18. Inserire le parti sporgenti sul retro dei pannelli posteriore (C) e anteriore (D) nei fori dell'unità di piegatura centrale e installare i pannelli. È semplice installare il pannello anteriore (D) sollevando la leva di rilascio unità (16). Installare il pannello assemblato nel passo 6 nel momento in cui l'unità di piegatura centrale è installata nel macchinario a colori.
19. Utilizzare due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H) per fissare i pannelli posteriore (C) ed anteriore (D).

20. Inserire perfettamente l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) nella finitrice.

Se l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) non è del tutto inserita all'interno della finitrice, è impossibile fissarla alla finitrice stessa e l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) non funzionerà correttamente.

### 安装盖板。

18. 将后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D) 后部的突出部固定在中缝装订一折页单元孔中并安装盖板。  
将中缝装订一折页单元释放杆 (16) 抬起以便更容易安装前盖板 (D)。  
在全彩色机上安装中缝装订一折页单元时, 安装在步骤 6 中组装的盖板。
19. 使用 2 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定后盖板 (C) 和前盖板 (D)。

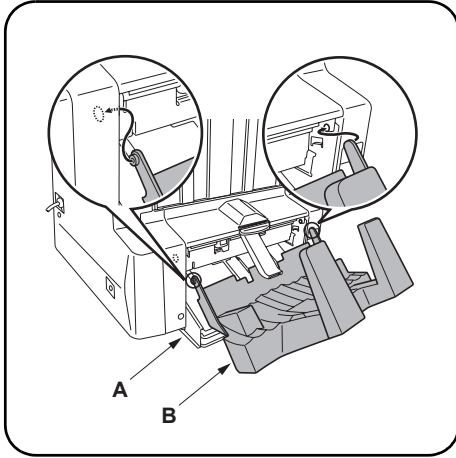
20. 将中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 保存到文档整理器中。  
如果中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 未完全保存到文档整理器中, 则无法在文档整理器中固定装置并且中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 无法正常工作。

### カバーの取り付け

18. カバー後 (C)、カバー前 (D) を、裏側の突起を中折りユニット (A) の穴にはめ込み、取り付ける。  
カバー前 (D) は、中折りユニット解除レバー (16) を上げると取り付けやすい。  
フルカラー機に取り付ける場合、手順 9 で組み立てたカバーを取り付けること。
19. ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 2 本でカバー後 (C)、カバー前 (D) を固定する。

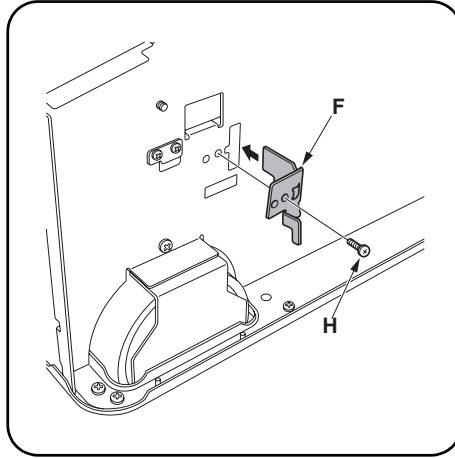
20. 中折りユニット (A) をドキュメントフィニッシャーに収納する。  
確実に収納されていない場合、中折りユニット (A) がドキュメントフィニッシャーに固定されず、中折りユニット (A) が正常に動作しない。





#### Installing the folding tray.

21. Fit the projection of folding tray (B) into the inside hole of center-folding unit (A).



#### Installing the douser.

- Before installing the douser (F), make sure that center-folding unit (A) is securely stored.  
22. Insert douser (F) into the lower front left of the document finisher and secure the douser with a M4 × 8 tap-tight S screw (H).

#### Reinstalling the cover.

23. Reinstall the lower front cover that was removed in step 2 in place with two screws (1).  
24. Close the front cover of the document finisher.

#### Installation du bac de pliage.

21. Ajuster la saillie du bac de pliage (B) dans l'orifice intérieur de la plieuse (A).

#### Installation de l'ombreur.

- Avant d'installer l'ombreur (F), s'assurer que la plieuse (A) est bien rangée.  
22. Insérer l'ombreur (F) dans l'avant gauche inférieur du finisseur de document et fixer l'ombreur à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 8 (H).

#### Remontage du capot.

23. Remonter le capot avant inférieur retiré à l'étape 2 à l'aide de deux vis (1).  
24. Refermer le capot avant du finisseur de document.

#### Instalación de la bandeja plegable.

21. Coloque el resalto de la bandeja plegable (B) dentro del agujero de la unidad de plegado (A).

#### Instalación de la pantalla paraluz.

- Antes de instalar la pantalla paraluz (F), asegúrese de que la unidad de plegado (A) esté firmemente metida.  
22. Introduzca la pantalla paraluz (F) en la parte frontal inferior izquierda del finalizador de documentos y asegure la pantalla paraluz con un tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 (H).

#### Reinstalación de la cubierta.

23. Reinstale en su lugar con dos tornillos (1) la cubierta frontal inferior que fue quitada en el paso 2.  
24. Cierre la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.

#### Anbringen des Faltfachs.

21. Führen Sie den Vorsprung des Faltfachs (B) in das innere Loch der Mittenfalteinheit (A) ein.

#### Anbringen der Abschirmung.

- Vor dem Anbringen der Abschirmung (F) ist sicherzustellen, dass die Mittenfalteinheit (A) sicher eingesetzt ist.  
22. Stecken Sie die Abschirmung (F) in die untere linke Vorderseite des Dokument-Finishers ein, und ziehen Sie die Abschirmung danach mit einer M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (H) fest.

#### Anbringen der Abdeckung.

23. Bringen Sie die in Schritt 2 entfernte untere Frontabdeckung wieder an und verwenden Sie hierfür die beiden Schrauben (1).  
24. Schließen Sie die Frontabdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.

#### Installare il vassoio di piegatura.

21. Inserire la parte sporgente del vassoio di piegatura (B) nel foro interno dell'unità di piegatura centrale (A).

#### Installare il dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser).

- Prima di procedere all'installazione del dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) (F), assicurarsi che l'unità di piegatura centrale (A) sia perfettamente inserita.  
22. Installare il dispositivo di attenuazione della luce (douser) (F) nella facciata inferiore a sinistra della finitrice e fissarlo con una vite con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (H).

#### Reinstallare il pannello.

23. Reinstallare nella sua posizione originale il pannello anteriore inferiore rimosso nel passo 2 con due viti (1).  
24. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice.

#### 安装折叠托盘。

21. 将折叠托盘 (B) 的突出部固定在中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 的内部孔。

#### 安装探测器。

- 安装探测器 (F) 前, 请确定中缝装订一折页单元 (A) 已牢固地保存。  
22. 将探测器 (F) 插入文档整理器的左前下侧, 并用 1 颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (H) 固定探测器。

#### 重新安装盖板。

23. 用 2 颗螺钉 (1) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的前下盖板。  
24. 关闭文档整理器的前盖板。

#### 中折りトレイの取り付け

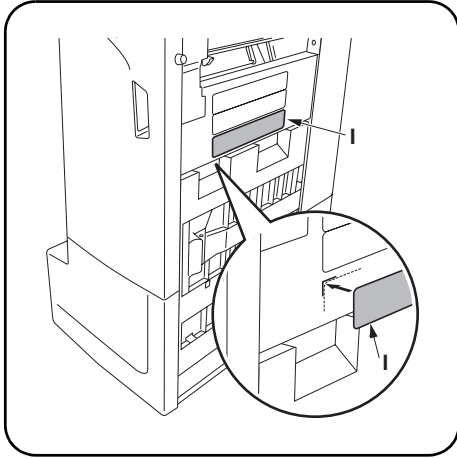
21. 中折りトレイ (B) の突起を中折りユニット (A) の内側の穴にはめ、取り付ける。

#### 遮光板の取り付け

- 遮光板 (F) を取り付ける前に、中折りユニット (A) が確実に収納されていることを確認すること。  
22. 遮光板 (F) をドキュメントフィニッシャー正面の左下へ差し込み、M4 × 8 タップタイト S (H) 1 本で固定する。

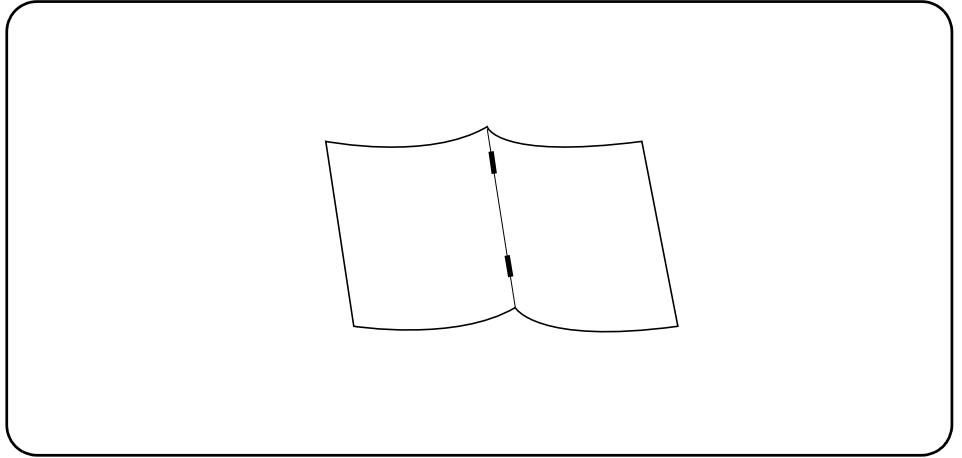
#### カバーの取り付け

23. 手順 2 で外した前下カバー (2) をビス (1) 2 本で元通り取り付ける。  
24. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの前カバーを閉じる。



#### Adhering the label.

25. Clean the area where the label is adhered on the right cover of the document finisher with alcohol and adhere label (I) aligning with making-off line.



#### [Checking staple position]

1. In the center-stapling mode, perform a test copy with the paper fed from the main tray. A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes: A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Check the distance from the center of the paper to the staple position. If the distance is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the position.  
<Reference value> Distance from the center: within ±2 mm

#### Collage de l'étiquette.

25. Nettoyer la zone où l'étiquette doit être collée sur le capot de droite du finisseur de document avec de l'alcool et coller l'étiquette (I) en l'alignant, sur la ligne indiquée.

#### [Vérification de la position des agrafes]

1. Dans le mode d'agrafage central, effectuer une copie de test avec la papier alimenté depuis le plateau principal. Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants: A4R, LTR (8,5po. × 11po.), B4, LGL (8,5po. × 14po.), A3, LGR (11po. × 17po.)
2. Vérifier la distance entre le centre du papier et l'emplacement de l'agrafe. Si la distance se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la position.  
<Valeur de référence> Distance au centre: ±2 mm

#### Para pegar la etiqueta.

25. Limpie con alcohol el área donde va a pegar la etiqueta (I) en la cubierta derecha del finalizador de documentos y péguela alineándola con la línea de referencia.

#### [Comprobación de la posición de grapado]

1. En el modo de grapado central, realice una copia de prueba con el papel alimentado desde la bandeja principal. Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes: A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Compruebe la distancia desde el centro del papel a la posición de grapado. Si la distancia no está dentro del margen de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la posición.  
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde el centro: ±2 mm

#### Anbringen des Aufklebers.

25. Reinigen Sie den Bereich auf der rechten Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers mit Alkohol, richten Sie den Aufkleber (I) aus und kleben Sie ihn dann fest.

#### [Überprüfen der Heftklammerposition]

1. Machen Sie im Mitten-Heftklammermodus eine Testkopie durch, wobei das Papier vom Hauptfach aus zugeführt wird. Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden: A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Prüfen Sie den Abstand von der Mitte des Papiers zur Heftklammerposition. Wenn der Abstand außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, ist gemäß den folgenden Schritten vorzugehen, um die Position zu korrigieren.  
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mitte: innerhalb von ±2 mm

#### Incollare l'etichetta.

25. Pulire con alcool la zona dove si applica l'etichetta sul pannello destro della finitrice. Attaccare l'etichetta (I) allineandola alla linea di taglio.

#### [Controllare la posizione della pinzatrice]

1. In modalità "pinzatura centrale", eseguire una copia di prova con carta alimentata dal vassoio principale. È necessario eseguire una copia di prova per ciascuno dei seguenti formati di carta: A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. Controllare la distanza tra il centro del foglio e la posizione della pinzatrice. Se la distanza non rientra nell'intervallo di riferimento, eseguire i seguenti passaggi per regolarne la posizione.  
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza dal centro: entro ±2 mm

#### 粘貼标签。

25. 用酒精清洁在文档整理器右盖板上粘貼标签的区域并与脱离线对齐粘貼标签 (I)。

#### [检查装订位置]

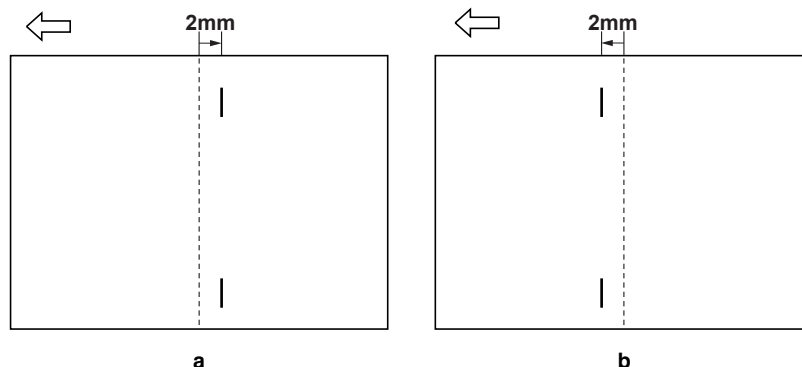
1. 在中央装订模式中，从主托盘进纸进行测试复印。下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印：A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. 检查纸张中央到装订位置的距离。如果距离超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整位置。  
<标准值> 距离中央的距离：±2mm 内

#### ラベルの貼り付け

25. ドキュメントフィニッシャの右カバーに貼られているラベルの下をアルコール清掃し、罫書き線に合わせてラベル (I) を貼り付ける。

#### [中とじステイブル位置確認]

1. 以下の用紙を使用し、中とじステイブルモード、メイントレイ排紙でテストコピーを行う。  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")
2. ステイブル位置の中心からのずれを確認する。ずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> 中心からのずれ：± 2mm 以内



### Adjusting staple position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select BOOKLET FOLDER and perform adjustment for each copy sample size.  
When A4R or LTR (8.5" × 11") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ1.  
When B4 or LGL (8.5" × 14") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ2.  
When A3 or LGR (11" × 17") is used, follow STAPLE POS ADJ3.

### 2. Adjust setting value.

When staples are placed too far right copy example (a): Decrease the setting value.  
When staples are placed too far left copy example (b): Increase the setting value.  
Changing the value by 1 moves the stapling position by approximately 0.55 mm.

### 3. Perform a test copy.

4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the center to the staple position indicates the value within the reference range.  
<Reference value> Distance from the center: within ±2 mm

### Ajustement de la position des agrafes

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner BOOKLET FOLDER (Dossier brochure) et effectuer l'ajustement pour chaque format d'échantillon de copie.  
Lorsque A4R ou LTR (8,5po. × 11po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ1.  
Lorsque B4 ou LGL (8,5po. × 14po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ2.  
Lorsque A3 ou LGR (11po. × 17po.) est utilisé, suivre STAPLE POS ADJ3.

### 2. Ajustement de la valeur de réglage.

Lorsque les agrafes sont placées trop à droite dans l'exemple de copie (a): diminuer la valeur de réglage.  
Lorsque les agrafes sont placées trop à gauche dans l'exemple de copie (b): augmenter la valeur de réglage.  
Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position d'agrafage d'environ 0,55 mm.

### 3. Effectuer une copie de test.

4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la valeur de la distance entre le centre et la position d'agrafage se trouve dans la gamme de référence.  
<Valeur de référence> Distance au centre: ±2 mm

### Ajuste de la posición de grabado

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione BOOKLET FOLDER y realice el ajuste para cada tamaño de muestra de copia.  
Cuando se utilice A4R o LTR (8,5" × 11"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ1.  
Cuando se utilice B4 o LGL (8,5" × 14"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ2.  
Cuando se utilice A3 o LGR (11" × 17"), siga STAPLE POS ADJ3.

### 2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.

Cuando las grapas se coloquen demasiado a la derecha en el ejemplo de copia (a): Disminuya el valor de configuración.  
Cuando las grapas se coloquen demasiado a la izquierda en el ejemplo de copia (b): Aumente el valor de configuración.  
El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de grabado 0,55 mm aproximadamente.

### 3. Haga una copia de prueba.

4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia del centro a la posición de grabado indique que el valor se encuentra dentro del margen de referencia.  
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde el centro: ±2 mm

### Einstellen der Heftklammerposition

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein, wählen Sie BOOKLET FOLDER, und führen Sie die Einstellung für jede Musterkopiergröße durch.  
Wenn A4R oder LTR (8,5" × 11") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ1.  
Wenn B4 oder LGL (8,5" × 14") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ2.  
Wenn A3 oder LGR (11" × 17") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt STAPLE POS ADJ3.

### 2. Anpassen des Einstellwertes.

Wenn Heftklammern auf der Kopie zu weit rechts erscheinen (a): Reduzieren Sie den Einstellwert.  
Wenn Heftklammern auf der Kopie zu weit links erscheinen (b): Erhöhen Sie den Einstellwert.  
Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1, verschiebt die Heftklammerposition um 0,55 mm.

### 3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.

4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Heftklammerposition innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.  
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mitte: innerhalb von ±2 mm

### Regolare la posizione della pinzatrice

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare BOOKLET FOLDER ed eseguire la regolazione per ciascun formato della copia di prova.  
Per i formati A4R e LTR (8,5" × 11") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ1  
Per i formati B4 e LGL (8,5" × 14") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ2  
Per i formati A3 e LGR (11" × 17") seguire STAPLE POS ADJ3

### 2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.

Nel caso in cui le pinzatrici si trovino troppo a destra (esempio a): Ridurre il valore di impostazione.  
Nel caso in cui le pinzatrici si trovino troppo a sinistra (esempio b): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.  
La modifica del valore di 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di pinzatura di circa 0,55 mm.

### 3. Eseguire una copia di prova.

4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal centro alla posizione delle pinzatrici non rientra nell'intervallo di riferimento.  
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza dal centro: entro ±2 mm

### 調整装订位置

1. 进入维修模式 U246, 选择 BOOKLET FOLDER (小册子折叠) 并为每种复印样本尺寸进行调整。  
使用 A4R 或 LTR (8.5" × 11") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ1 (装订位置调整 1)。  
使用 B4 或 LGL (8.5" × 14") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ2 (装订位置调整 2)。  
使用 A3 或 LGR (11" × 17") 时, 请执行 STAPLE POS ADJ3 (装订位置调整 3)。

### 2. 调整设定值。

订书钉远离右侧复印样本 (a) 时: 减小设定值  
订书钉远离左侧复印样本 (b) 时: 增大设定值  
以 1 更改数值将装订位置移动大约 0.55mm

### 3. 进行测试复印。

4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到中央到装订位置的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。  
<标准值> 距离中央的距离: ±2mm 内

### 中とヒステイブル位置調整

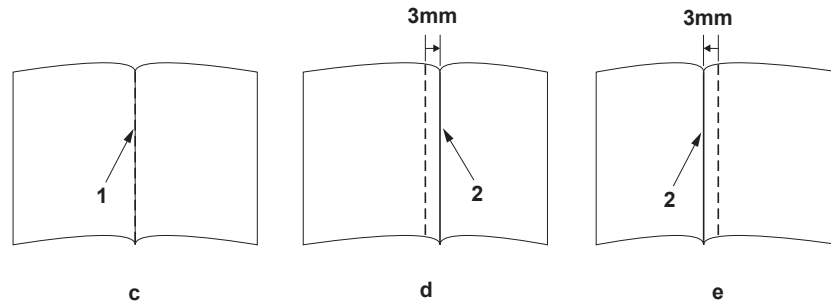
1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、BOOKLET FOLDER を選択し、コピーサンプルのサイズ別に調整を行う。  
A4R、LTR (8.5" × 11") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ1 の調整を行う。  
B4、LGL (8.5" × 14") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ2 の調整を行う。  
A3、LGR (11" × 17") の場合、STAPLE POS ADJ3 の調整を行う。

### 2. 設定値を調整する。

ステイブル位置が右にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (a): 設定値を下げる  
ステイブル位置が左にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (b): 設定値を上げる  
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 0.55mm

### 3. テストコピーを行う。

4. コピーサンプルのステイブル位置のずれが基準値内になるまで、手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。  
<基準値> 中心からのずれ: ±2mm 以内



### [Checking centerfold position]

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. Perform a test copy in centerfold mode. A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes. Draw a straight line (1) at the center of each paper (a).  
A test copy must be made for each of the following paper sizes:  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. If the distance from center line (1) on paper (c) to centerfold position (2) on the copy sample is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the distance.  
<Reference value>  
Distance from centerfold position (2): within ±3 mm

### [Vérification de la page centrale dépliée]

1. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Effectuer une copie de test dans le mode page centrale dépliée. Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants. Tirer une ligne droite (1) au centre de chaque feuille de papier (a). Une copie de test doit être effectuée pour chacun des formats de papier suivants:  
A4R, LTR (8,5po. × 11po.), B4, LGL (8,5po. × 14po.), A3, LGR (11po. × 17po.)

3. Si la distance entre la ligne centrale (1) sur la feuille de papier (c) et la position de la page centrale dépliée (2) de l'exemple de copie se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la distance.  
<Valeur de référence>  
Distance à la position de la page centrale dépliée (2): ±3 mm

### [Comprobación de la posición de plegado]

1. Enchufe la MFP en una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. Haga una copia de prueba en el modo de plegado. Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes. Trace una línea recta (1) en el centro de cada papel (a). Deberá hacerse una copia de prueba para cada uno de los tamaños de papel siguientes:  
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Si la distancia de la línea central (1) del papel (c) a la posición de plegado (2) de la muestra de copia está fuera del margen de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la distancia.  
<Valor de referencia >  
Distancia desde la posición de plegado (2): ±3 mm

### [Überprüfen der Mittenfaltposition]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an und schalten Sie das Gerät ein.
2. Führen Sie im Mittenfaltmodus eine Testkopie durch. Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:  
Ziehen Sie eine gerade Linie (1) in der Mitte jedes einzelnen Papiers (a). Für jede der nachfolgenden Papiergrößen muss eine Testkopie gemacht werden:  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Wenn der Abstand von der Mittellinie (1) am Papier (c) zur Mittenfaltposition (2) auf der Musterkopie außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, folgen Sie den nachfolgenden Schritten, um den Abstand einzustellen.  
<Bezugswert>  
Abstand von der Mittenfaltposition (2): innerhalb von ±3 mm

### [Controllare la posizione della piegatura centrale]

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione della fotocopiatrice nella presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. Eseguire una copia di prova in modalità piegatura centrale. È necessario eseguire una copia di prova per ciascuno dei formati di carta indicati in seguito. Disegnare una linea retta (1) al centro di ogni foglio (a).  
Formati di carta su cui eseguire la copia di prova:  
A4R, LTR (8,5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8,5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. Se la distanza tra la linea centrale (1) del foglio (c) e la posizione della piegatura centrale (2) nella copia campione è al di fuori dell'intervallo di riferimento, eseguire la seguente procedura per regolarla.  
<Valore di riferimento>  
Distanza dalla posizione della piegatura centrale (2): entro ±3 mm

### [ 检查折叠位置 ]

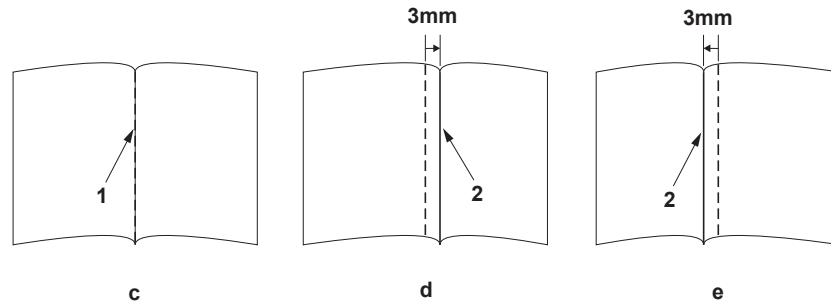
1. 将 MFP 插入电源插座，打开主电源开关。
2. 在折叠模式中进行测试复印。下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印。在每张纸 (a) 的中央划一条直线 (1)。  
下列每种纸张尺寸必须进行测试复印：  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11"), B4, LGL (8.5" × 14"), A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. 如果纸 (c) 上中线 (1) 距离复印样本上的折叠位置 (2) 超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整距离。  
<标准值 >  
距离折叠位置 (2) 的距离：±3mm 内

### [ 中折り位置確認 ]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. 以下の用紙を使用し、中折りモードの2枚折りでテストコピーを行う。  
用紙は、中心に線 (1) を引いておくこと。(a)  
A4R, LTR (8.5" × 11")、B4, LGL (8.5" × 14")、A3, LGR (11" × 17")

3. 用紙 (c) の中心線 (1) と、コピーサンプルの中折り位置 (2) のずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> 中折り位置 (2) のずれ：±3mm 以内



### Adjusting centerfold position

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select BOOKLET FOLDER and perform adjustment for each copy sample size.  
When A4R or LTR (8.5" × 11") is used, follow BOOKLET POS ADJ1.  
When B4 or LGL (8.5" × 14") is used, follow BOOKLET POS ADJ2.  
When A3 or LGR (11" × 17") is used, follow BOOKLET POS ADJ3.
2. Adjust the setting value.  
When the centerfold position too far right copy example (d): Increase the setting value.

When the centerfold position too far left copy example (e): Decrease the setting value.

3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the center to the centerfold position indicates the value within the reference range.  
<Reference value>  
Distance from centerfold position (2): within ±3 mm

### Ajustement de la position de la page centrale dépliant

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner BOOKLET FOLDER (Dossier brochure) et effectuer l'ajustement pour chaque format d'échantillon de copie.  
Lorsque A4R ou LTR (8,5po. × 11po.) est utilisé, suivre BOOKLET POS ADJ1.  
Lorsque B4 ou LGL (8,5po. × 14po.) est utilisé, suivre BOOKLET POS ADJ2.  
Lorsque A3 ou LGR (11po. × 17po.) est utilisé, suivre BOOKLET POS ADJ3.
2. Ajustement de la valeur de réglage.  
Lorsque la position de la page centrale dépliant est placée trop à droite dans l'exemple de copie (d): augmenter la valeur de réglage.

Lorsque la position de la page centrale dépliant est placée trop à gauche dans l'exemple de copie (e): diminuer la valeur de réglage.

3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la valeur de la distance entre le centre et la position de la page centrale dépliant se trouve dans la gamme de référence.  
<Valeur de référence> Distance à la position de la page centrale dépliant (2): ±3 mm

### Ajuste de la posición de plegado

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione BOOKLET FOLDER y haga el ajuste para cada tamaño de muestra de copia.  
Cuando se utilice A4R o LTR (8,5" × 11"), siga BOOKLET POS ADJ1.  
Cuando se utilice B4 o LGL (8,5" × 14"), siga BOOKLET POS ADJ2.  
Cuando se utilice A3 o LGR (11" × 17"), siga BOOKLET POS ADJ3.
2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.  
Cuando la posición de plegado esté demasiado a la derecha en el ejemplo de copia (d): Aumente el valor de configuración.

Cuando la posición de plegado esté demasiado a la izquierda en el ejemplo de copia (e): Disminuya el valor de configuración.

3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia de centro a la posición de plegado indique que el valor se encuentra dentro del margen de referencia.  
<Valor de referencia> Distancia desde la posición (2): ±3 mm

### Einstellen der Mittenfaltposition

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein, wählen Sie BOOKLET FOLDER, und führen Sie die Einstellung für jede Musterkopiengröße durch.  
Wenn A4R oder LTR (8,5" × 11") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt BOOKLET POS ADJ1.  
Wenn B4 oder LGL (8,5" × 14") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt BOOKLET POS ADJ2.  
Wenn A3 oder LGR (11" × 17") verwendet wird, folgen Sie dem Schritt BOOKLET POS ADJ3.
2. Anpassen des Einstellwertes  
Wenn die Mittenfaltposition auf der Kopie zu weit rechts erscheint (d): Erhöhen Sie den Einstellwert.

Wenn die Mittenfaltposition auf der Kopie zu weit links erscheint (e): Reduzieren Sie den Einstellwert.

3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Mitte der Mittenfaltposition innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.  
<Bezugswert> Abstand von der Mittenfaltposition (2): innerhalb von ±3 mm

### Regolare la posizione della piegatura centrale

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare BOOKLET FOLDER ed eseguire la regolazione per ciascun formato della copia campione.  
Per i formati A4R e LTR (8,5" × 11") seguire BOOKLET POS ADJ1  
Per i formati B4 e LGL (8,5" × 14") seguire BOOKLET POS ADJ2  
Per i formati A3 e LGR (11" × 17") seguire BOOKLET POS ADJ3
2. Regolare il valore di impostazione  
Nel caso in cui la posizione della piegatura centrale sia troppo a destra (esempio d): Aumentare il valore di impostazione.

Nel caso in cui la posizione della piegatura centrale sia troppo a sinistra (esempio e): Ridurre il valore di impostazione.

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal centro alla posizione della piegatura non rientra nel valore di riferimento.  
<Valore di riferimento>  
Distanza dalla posizione della piegatura centrale (2): entro ±3 mm

### 調整折疊位置

1. 进入维修模式 U246, 选择 BOOKLET FOLDER (小册子折疊) 并为每种复印样本尺寸进行调整。  
使用 A4R 或 LTR (8.5" × 11") 时, 请执行 BOOKLET POS ADJ1 (小册子位置调整 1)。  
使用 B4 或 LGL (8.5" × 14") 时, 请执行 BOOKLET POS ADJ2 (小册子位置调整 2)。  
使用 A3 或 LGR (11" × 17") 时, 请执行 BOOKLET POS ADJ3 (小册子位置调整 3)。

2. 调整设定值。  
折疊位置远离右侧复印样本 (d) 时: 增大设定值  
折疊位置远离左侧复印样本 (e) 时: 减小设定值  
以 1 更改数值将折疊位置移动大约 0.55mm
3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到中央到折疊位置的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。  
<标准值>  
距离折疊位置 (2) 的距离: ±3mm 内

### 中折り位置調整

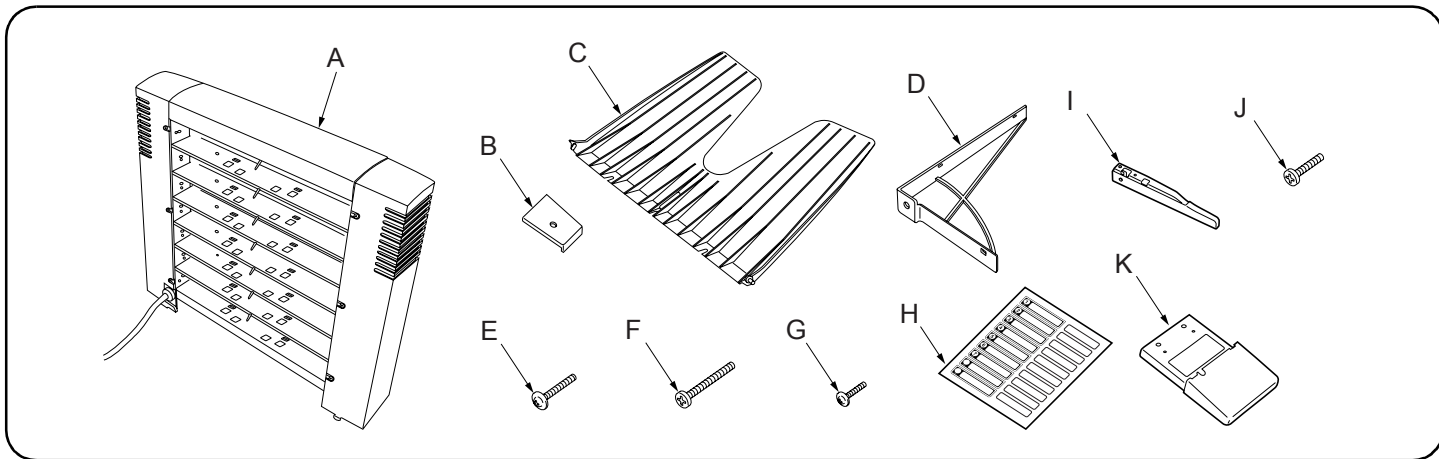
1. メンテナンスモード U246 をセットし、BOOKLET FOLDER を選択し、コピーサンプルのサイズ別に調整を行う。  
A4R、LTR (8.5" × 11") の場合、BOOKLET POS ADJ1 の調整を行う。  
B4、LGL (8.5" × 14") の場合、BOOKLET POS ADJ2 の調整を行う。  
A3、LGR (11" × 17") の場合、BOOKLET POS ADJ3 の調整を行う。
2. 設定値を調整する。  
中折り位置が右にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (d): 設定値を上げる

中折り位置が左にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (e): 設定値を下げる  
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 約 0.55mm

3. テストコピーを行う。
4. 中折り位置のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ~ 3 を繰り返す。  
<基準値> 中折り位置のずれ: ±3mm 以内

# INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR MAILBOX

Output Connector for Interconnecting Cable is non-LPS.  
Output: 24 V dc (426 VA max.)  
Please use the item below Interconnecting Cables.  
P/N: 303J246010



**English**

**Supplied parts**

A Mailbox ..... 1  
 B Mounting plate cover ..... 1  
 C Copy eject bins ..... 7  
 D Reinforcing plate ..... 1  
 E TP Taptite S screw M4 × 14 ..... 2

F Taptite S binding screw M4 × 25 ..... 1  
 G TP screw M3 × 10 ..... 6  
 H Tray name label ..... 1  
 I Plate foot F (for monochrome machines) ..... 1  
 J Taptite S binding screw M4 × 10 (for monochrome machines) ..... 1  
 K Plate foot V (for full-color machines) ..... 2

When installing the mailbox to a monochrome machine, four pieces of (G) are not used.

**Français**

**Pièces fournies**

A Boîte à lettres ..... 1  
 B Couverture de la plaque de montage ..... 1  
 C Case d'éjection de copies ..... 7  
 D Plaque de renfort ..... 1  
 E Vis TP Taptite S M4 × 14 ..... 2

F Borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 × 25 ... 1  
 G Vis TP M3 × 10 ..... 6  
 H Étiquette de nom de plateau ..... 1  
 I Pied de plateau F (pour les machines monochromes) ..... 1  
 J Borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 × 10 (pour les machines monochromes) ..... 1  
 K Pied de plateau V (pour les machines entièrement en couleurs) ..... 2

Lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine monochrome, quatre pièces de (G) ne sont pas utilisées.

**Español**

**Partes provistas**

A Buzón de correo ..... 1  
 B Cubierta de la placa de montaje ..... 1  
 C Bandejas de expulsión de copias ..... 7  
 D Placa de refuerzo ..... 1  
 E Tornillo TP Taptite S M4 × 14 ..... 2

F Tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 25 ..... 1  
 G Tornillo TP M3 × 10 ..... 6  
 H Etiqueta de nombre de la bandeja ..... 1  
 I Pata de placa F (para máquinas monocromáticas) ..... 1  
 J Tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 10 (para máquinas monocromáticas) ..... 1  
 K Pata de placa V (para máquinas a todo color) ..... 2

Cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina monocromática, no se utilizan las cuatro piezas de (G).

**Deutsch**

**Mitgelieferte Teile**

A Mailbox ..... 1  
 B Abdeckung der Montageplatte ..... 1  
 C Kopienausgabefächer ..... 7  
 D Verstärkungsplatte ..... 1  
 E TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14 ..... 2

F Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 × 25 ..... 1  
 G TP Schraube M3 × 10 ..... 6  
 H Fachnamenaufkleber ..... 1  
 I Plattenfuß F (für Monochrommaschinen) ..... 1  
 J Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 × 10 (für Monochrommaschinen) ..... 1  
 K Plattenfuß V (für Vollfarbenmaschinen) ..... 2

Wenn die Mailbox an einer Monochrommaschine angebracht wird, werden die vier Teile von (G) nicht benutzt.

**Italiano**

**Parti comprese**

A Casella postale ..... 1  
 B Coperchio della piastra di montaggio ..... 1  
 C Comparti di espulsione delle copie ..... 7  
 D Piastra di sostegno ..... 1  
 E Vite TP Taptite S M4 × 14 ..... 2

F Vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 25 ..... 1  
 G Vite TP M3 × 10 ..... 6  
 H Etichetta di nome del vassoio ..... 1  
 I Piedino della piastra F (per macchine in bianco e nero) ..... 1  
 J Vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 10 (per macchine in bianco e nero) ..... 1  
 K Piedino della piastra V (per le macchine a colori) ..... 2

Quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina in bianco e nero, quattro pezzi di (G) non sono utilizzati.

**简体中文**

**附属部件**

A 邮箱 ..... 1  
 B 固定板 ..... 1  
 C 接纸盘 ..... 7  
 D 加固板 ..... 1

E 螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 14TP ..... 2  
 F 连接用螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 25 ..... 1  
 G 螺丝M3 × 10TP ..... 6  
 H 托盘名称标贴 ..... 1  
 I 底板F(黑白机用) ..... 1  
 J 连接用螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 10(黑白机用) ..... 1  
 K 底板V(全彩色机用) ..... 2

在黑白机上安装时，会剩下4个螺丝M3 × 10TP (G)。

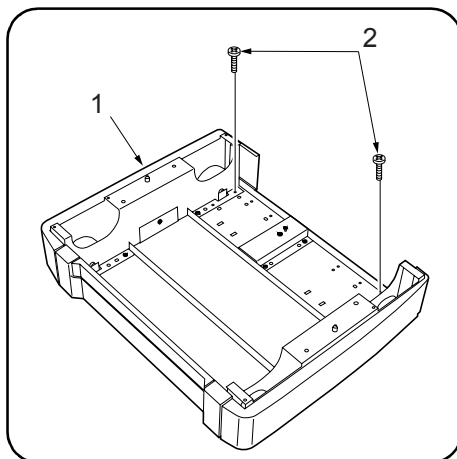
**日本語**

**付属品**

A メールボックス ..... 1  
 B 取付板カバー ..... 1  
 C 排出ビン ..... 7  
 D 補強板 ..... 1

E ビス M4 × 14TP タップタイト S ..... 2  
 F ビス M4 × 25 バインドタップタイト S ..... 1  
 G ビス M3 × 10TP ..... 6  
 H トレイ名称シール ..... 1  
 I プレートフット F (モノクロ機用) ..... 1  
 J ビス M4 × 10 バインドタップタイト S (モノクロ機用) ..... 1  
 K プレートフット V (フルカラー機用) ..... 2

モノクロ機に取り付ける場合は、(G) が 4 本余ります。



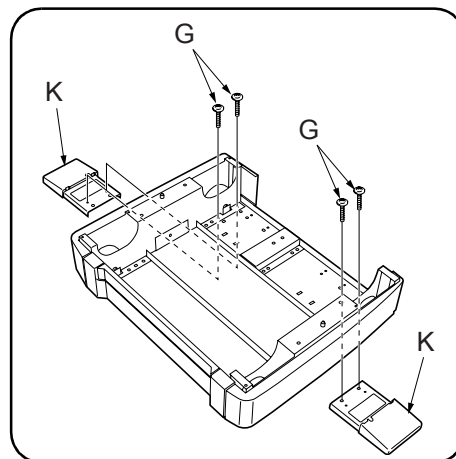
#### [Installation procedure]

Be sure to turn the MFP main switch off and disconnect the MFP power plug from the wall outlet before starting to install the mailbox.

#### [Carry out steps 1 to 3 when installing the mailbox to a full-color machine.]

Before installing the finisher, carry out the following procedure.

1. Remove the two screws (2) from the height adjusting base (1) that will be attached under the finisher.



2. Fit the two plate feet V (K) and secure them using two TP screws M3 x 10 (G) for each.

3. Install the finisher referring to the installation guide for finisher. (Proceed to step 4.)

#### [Procédure d'installation]

Veiller à bien mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sur la position d'arrêt et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation du MFP de la prise murale avant d'entreprendre l'installation de la boîte à lettres.

#### [Effectuer les étapes 1 à 3 lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine entièrement en couleurs.]

Avant d'installer le retoucheur, effectuer la procédure suivante.

1. Retirer les deux vis (2) de la base de réglage de hauteur (1) qui sera fixée au-dessous du retoucheur.

2. Mettre en place les deux pieds de plaque V (K) et les fixer à l'aide de deux vis TP M3 x 10 (G) pour chaque pied.

3. Installer le retoucheur en se reportant au guide d'installation du retoucheur. (Passer à l'étape 4.)

#### [Procedimiento de instalación]

Asegúrese de apagar el MFP con el interruptor principal y de desconectar la clavija de alimentación del MFP de la toma de corriente de la pared antes de empezar a instalar el buzón de correo.

#### [Realice los pasos 1 a 3 cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina a todo color.]

Antes de instalar el finalizador, realice el siguiente procedimiento.

1. Remueva los dos tornillos (2) de la base de ajuste de altura (1) que se colocan debajo del finalizador.

2. Coloque las dos patas de placa V (K) y asegúrelas utilizando dos tornillos TP M3 x 10 (G) para cada una.

3. Instale el finalizador consultando la guía de instalación para el finalizador. (Vaya al paso 4.)

#### [Installationsverfahren]

Schalten Sie vor der Installation der Mailbox unbedingt den Hauptschalter des MFP aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Netzsteckdose.

#### [Führen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3 aus, wenn Sie die Mailbox an einer Vollfarbenmaschine anbringen.]

Bevor Sie den Finisher installieren, führen Sie das folgende Verfahren aus.

1. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (2) von der Höheneinstellbasis (1), die unter dem Finisher angebracht wird.

2. Bringen Sie die zwei Plattenfüße V (K) an, und befestigen Sie sie mit je zwei TP-Schrauben M3 x 10 (G).

3. Installieren Sie den Finisher gemäß der Installationsanleitung des Finishers. (Zu Schritt 4 übergehen.)

#### [Modalità di installazione]

Non mancare di spegnere l'MFP utilizzando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione e scollegare la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP dalla presa della rete elettrica, prima di cominciare a installare la casella postale.

#### [Eseguire il procedimento dei passi da 1 a 3 quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina a colori.]

Prima di installare il finitore, eseguire le seguenti procedure.

1. Rimuovere le due viti (2) dalla base di regolazione dell'altezza (1) che sarà fissata sotto il finitore.

2. Inserire i due piedini della piastra V (K) e fissare ciascuno di essi utilizzando due viti TP M3 x 10 (G).

3. Installare il finitore seguendo le istruzioni della guida all'installazione del finitore. (Procedere al passo 4.)

#### [ 安装步骤 ]

安装邮箱时，必须关闭 MFP 主机上的主电源开关，并拔下主装置的电源插头后进行安装。

#### [ 在全彩色机上安装时的步骤 1~3 ]

安装装订器之前，先按以下步骤进行操作。

1. 拆下安装在装订器下面的高度调整台 (1) 上的 2 个螺丝 (2)。

2. 将底板 V (K) 安装在 2 处后，分别用 2 个螺丝 M3 x 10 TP (G) 进行固定。

3. 参照装订器安装手册，进行安装装订器。(继续操作步骤 4)

#### [ 取付手順 ]

メールボックスを取り付ける際は、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを外して作業をおこなう。

#### [ 手順 1 ~ 3 はフルカラー機に取り付ける場合 ]

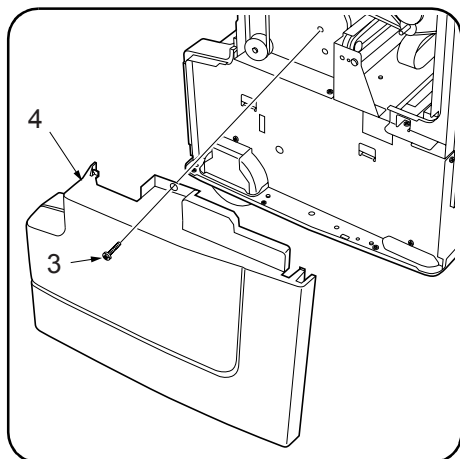
フィニッシャの設置を行う前に、次の手順を行う。

1. フィニッシャの下に取り付ける高さ調整台 (1) のビス (2) 2 本を外す。

2. プレートフット V (K) を 2 箇所取り付け、ビス M3 x 10 TP (G) 各 2 本で固定する。

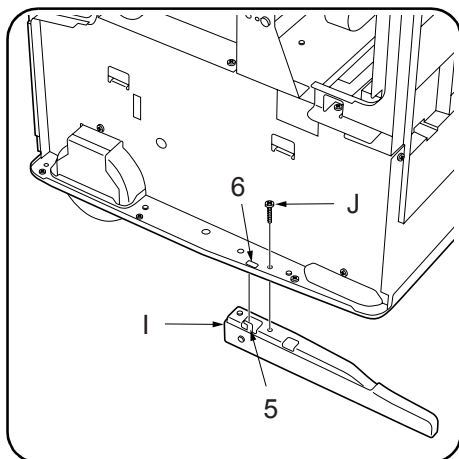
3. フィニッシャの設置手順書を参照して、フィニッシャの設置を行う。(手順 4 に進む)





**[Carry out steps 1 to 3 when installing the mailbox to a monochrome machine.]**

1. Open the front cover of the finisher, remove the screw (3), and remove the lower front cover (4).



2. Engage the hook portion (5) of the plate foot F (I) in the notch (6) in the finisher frame and secure the plate foot using the Taptite S binding screw M4 x 10 (J).

3. Refit the lower front cover (4) to its original position, secure it using the screw (3), and close the front cover.

**[Effectuer les étapes 1 à 3 lorsqu'on installe la boîte à lettres sur une machine monochrome.]**

1. Ouvrir le couvercle avant du retoucheur, retirer la vis (3), puis retirer le couvercle inférieur avant (4).

2. Engager la partie du crochet (5) du pied de plaque F (I) dans l'encoche (6) du cadre du retoucheur, puis fixer le pied de plaque à l'aide de la borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 x 10 (J).

3. Remettre le couvercle inférieur avant (4) à sa position d'origine, le fixer à l'aide de la vis (3), puis refermer le couvercle avant.

**[Realice los pasos 1 a 3 cuando instale el buzón de correo en una máquina monocromática.]**

1. Abra la cubierta delantera del finalizador, quite el tornillo (3) y remueva la cubierta delantera inferior (4).

2. Enganche la parte de gancho (5) de la pata de placa F (I) en la muesca (6) en el marco del finalizador y asegure la pata de placa utilizando el tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 x 10 (J).

3. Vuelva a colocar la cubierta delantera inferior (4) a su posición original, asegúrela utilizando el tornillo (3) y cierre la cubierta delantera.

**[Führen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3 aus, wenn Sie die Mailbox an einer Monochrommaschine anbringen.]**

1. Öffnen Sie die Frontabdeckung des Finishers, entfernen Sie die Schraube (3), und nehmen Sie die untere Frontabdeckung (4) ab.

2. Hängen Sie den Hakenteil (5) des Plattenfußes F (I) in die Kerbe (6) im Finisherrahmen ein, und sichern Sie den Plattenfuß mit der Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 x 10 (J).

3. Bringen Sie die untere Frontabdeckung (4) wieder an ihrer ursprünglichen Position an, sichern Sie sie mit der Schraube (3), und schließen Sie die Frontabdeckung.

**[Eseguire il procedimento dei passi da 1 a 3 quando si installa la casella postale su una macchina in bianco e nero.]**

1. Aprire il coperchio anteriore del finitore, rimuovere la vite (3) e poi il coperchio anteriore inferiore (4).

2. Inserire la parte del gancio (5) del piedino della piastra F (I) nella cavità (6) del telaio del finitore e fissare il piedino della piastra utilizzando la vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 x 10 (J).

3. Reinserrare il coperchio anteriore inferiore (4) nella sua posizione iniziale, fissarlo utilizzando la vite (3) e chiuderlo.

[在黑白机上安装时的步骤1~3]

1. 打开装订器的前盖板, 拆下1个螺丝(3), 然后取下前下盖板(4)。

2. 将底板F(I)的挂钩部(5)钩在装订器框架部的凹口(6)处, 并用1个连接用螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 x 10(J)进行固定。

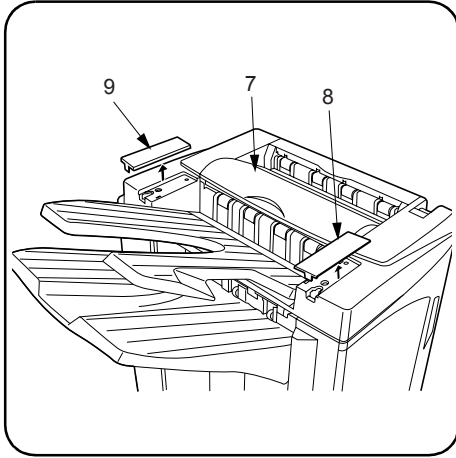
3. 按原样装好前下盖板(4), 并用1个螺丝(3)进行固定, 关闭前盖板。

**[手順1 ~ 3 はモノクロ機に取り付ける場合]**

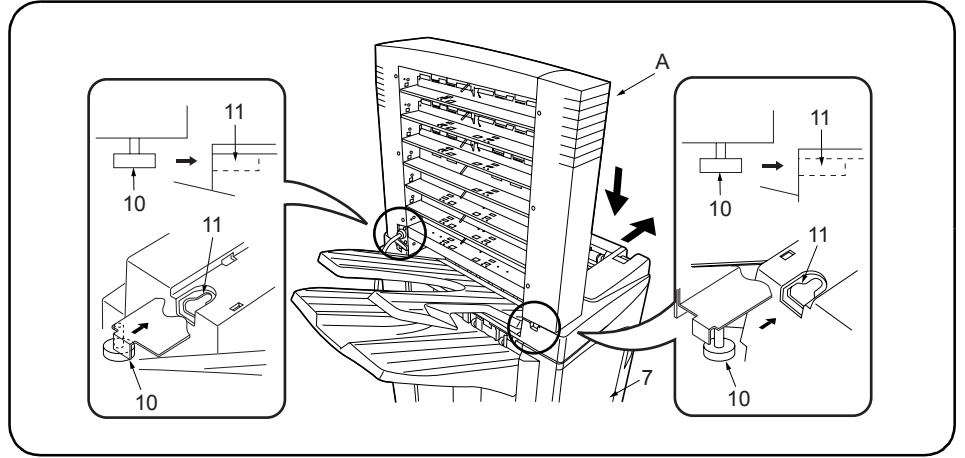
1. フィニッシャの前カバーを開け、ビス(3)1本を外し、前下カバー(4)を取り外す。

2. プレートフットF(I)のフック部(5)をフィニッシャフレーム部の切り欠き(6)に引っ掛け、ビスM4 x 10 パインドタップタイトS(J)1本で固定する。

3. 前下カバー(4)を元通り取り付けビス(3)1本で固定し、前カバーを閉じる。



4. Remove the front top cover (8) and rear top cover (9) at the top of the finisher (7) using a flat-blade screwdriver or the like.



5. Fit the pins (10) located at the front and rear of the bottom of the mailbox (A) into the notches (11) located at the front and rear of the top of the finisher (7) as shown in the illustration and attach the mailbox (A) to the finisher (7).

4. Retirer le couvercle supérieur avant (8) et le couvercle supérieur arrière (9) situés en haut du retoucheur (7) à l'aide d'un tournevis à tête plate ou d'un outil équivalent.

5. Fixer les broches (10) situées à l'avant et à l'arrière du bas de la boîte à lettres (A) dans les encoches (11) situées à l'avant et à l'arrière du haut du retoucheur (7), comme indiqué sur l'illustration, puis fixer la boîte à lettres (A) au retoucheur (7).

4. Remueva la cubierta superior delantera (8) y la cubierta superior trasera (9) en la parte superior del finalizador (7) utilizando un destornillador de punta plana o similar.

5. Coloque los pasadores (10) ubicados en la parte delantera y trasera del fondo del buzón de correo (A) las muescas (11) ubicadas en la parte superior del finalizador (7) tal como en la figura e instale el buzón de correo (A) en el finalizador (7).

4. Entfernen Sie die vordere obere Abdeckung (8) und die hintere obere Abdeckung (9) an der Oberseite des Finishers (7) mit einem Klingenschraubendreher oder dergleichen.

5. Stecken Sie die Stifte (10), die sich vorne und hinten an der Unterseite der Mailbox (A) befinden, in die Aussparungen (11) vorne und hinten an der Oberseite des Finishers (7), wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, und bringen Sie die Mailbox (A) an den Finisher (7) an.

4. Rimuovere il coperchio superiore anteriore (8) e il coperchio superiore posteriore (9) dalla parte superiore del finitore (7) utilizzando un cacciavite a punta piatta, o un attrezzo simile.

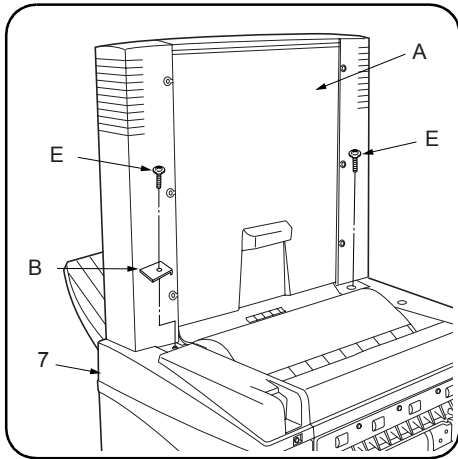
5. Inserire i perni (10) che si trovano sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della casella postale (A) nelle cavità (11) che si trovano sul davanti e sul dietro della parte superiore del finitore (7) come mostrato in illustrazione e installare la casella postale (A) sul finitore (7).

4. 用一字形螺丝刀拆下装订器(7)上部的顶罩前盖板(8)和顶罩后盖板(9)。

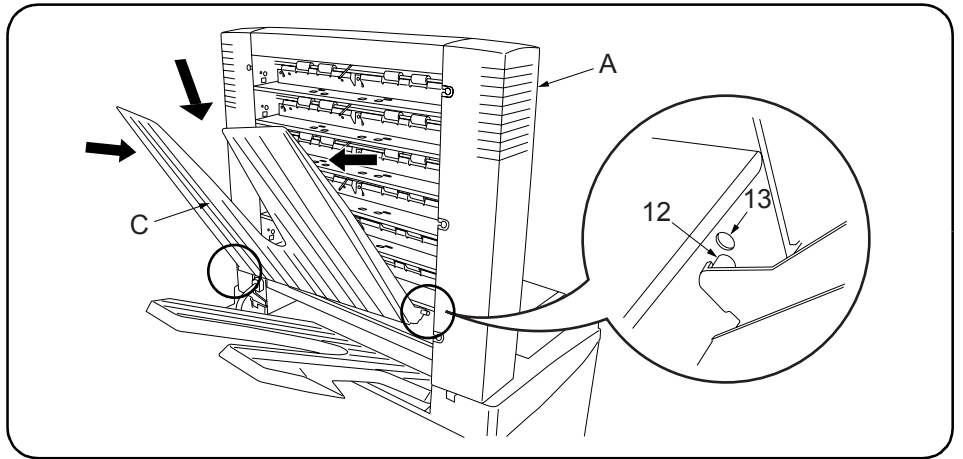
5. 按图所示将邮箱(A)下部的前后销(10)插入装订器(7)上部的前后凹部(11)内,使邮箱(A)装在装订器(7)上。

4. フィニッシャー(7)上部の天カバー前フタ(8)、天カバー後フタ(9)をマイナスドライバーなどで取り外す。

5. メールボックス(A)下部の前後にあるピン(10)をフィニッシャー(7)上部の前後にある切り欠き部(11)にイラストのように挿入し、メールボックス(A)をフィニッシャー(7)に取り付ける。



6. Secure the front connection portion of the mailbox (A) and the finisher (7) with the mounting plate cover (B) using a TP Taptite S screw M4 × 14 (E), and secure the rear connection portion using a TP Taptite S screw M4 × 14 (E).



7. Fit the seven copy eject bins (C) to the ejection section of the mailbox (A) from the lowest bin to the highest.  
While pressing both ends of each copy eject bin (C) to bend it a little, fit the bin at a nearly upright angle as shown in the illustration by inserting the front and rear pins (12) into the round holes (13) at the front and rear of the mailbox (A).

6. Fixer la partie de connexion avant de la boîte à lettres (A) et du retoucheur (7) avec le couvercle de plaque de montage (B) à l'aide d'une vis TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E), et fixer la partie de connexion arrière à l'aide d'une Vis TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E).

7. Fixer les sept cases d'éjection de copies (C) sur la section d'éjection de la boîte à lettres (A), en procédant de la case située tout en bas à celle située tout en haut.  
Tout en appuyant sur les deux extrémités de chaque case d'éjection de copies (C) de manière à la plier légèrement, fixer la case à un angle presque droit, comme indiqué sur l'illustration, en insérant les broches avant et arrière (12) dans les trous ronds (13) situés à l'avant et à l'arrière de la boîte à lettres (A).

6. Asegure la parte de conexión delantera del buzón de correo (A) y finalizador (7) con la cubierta de la placa de montaje (B) utilizando un tornillo de TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E) y asegure la parte de conexión trasera utilizando un tornillo de TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E).

7. Fije las siete bandejas de expulsión de copias (C) en la sección de expulsión del buzón de correo (A) de la bandeja más baja a la más alta.  
Mientras presiona ambos extremos de cada bandeja de expulsión de copias (C) para doblarlo un poco, fije la bandeja en un ángulo casi vertical tal como en la figura, insertando los pasadores delantero y trasero (12) en los orificios redondos (13) en los lados delantero y trasero del buzón de correo (A).

6. Befestigen Sie den vorderen Verbindungsabschnitt der Mailbox (A) und des Finishers (7) mit der Abdeckung der Montageplatte (B) und einer TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14 (E), und befestigen Sie den hinteren Verbindungsabschnitt mit einer TP Taptite S-Schraube M4 × 14 (E).

7. Setzen Sie die sieben Kopienausgabefächer (C) in den Ausgabeabschnitt der Mailbox (A) ein, beginnend vom untersten Fach zum höchsten.  
Drücken Sie bei jedem Kopienausgabefach (C) beide Enden zusammen, um es ein wenig zu biegen, und setzen Sie dabei das Fach in einem fast aufrechten Winkel ein, wie in der Abbildung dargestellt, indem Sie den vorderen und hinteren Stift (12) in die Rundlöcher (13) an der Vorder- und Rückseite der Mailbox (A) einsetzen.

6. Fissare la parte di collegamento anteriore della casella postale (A) e del finitore (7) con il coperchio della piastra di montaggio (B) utilizzando una vite TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E) e fissare la parte di collegamento posteriore utilizzando una vite TP Taptite S M4 × 14 (E).

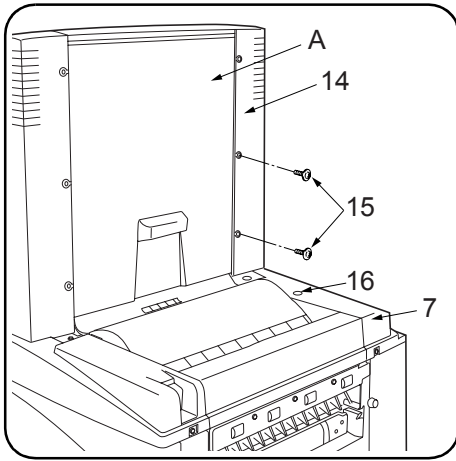
7. Installare i sette scomparti di espulsione delle copie (C) nella parte di espulsione della casella postale (A), cominciando dallo scomparto più in basso fino a quello più in alto.  
Premendo alle due estremità di uno scomparto di emissione delle copie (C) in modo da piegarle un poco, installare lo scomparto come mostrato in illustrazione mantenendolo quasi ad angolo retto inserendo i perni anteriore e posteriore (12) nei fori rotondi (13) che si trovano sul davanti e sul dietro della parte di fondo della casella postale (A).

6. 将固定板(B)和1个螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 14TP(E), 固定在邮箱(A)和装订器(7)的前侧连接部上, 并将1个螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 14TP(E)固定在后侧的连接部上。

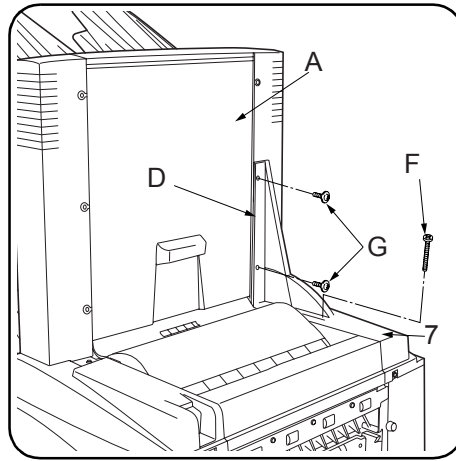
7. 从邮箱(A)的排出部下面起按顺序安装7个接纸盘(C)。轻轻按下接纸盘(C)的左右使之前倾(如图所示呈竖起状态的角度), 将前后销(12)插入邮箱(A)的前后圆孔(13)内。

6. メールボックス(A)とフィニッシャー(7)の前側の接続部を取付板カバー(B)と共にビスM4 × 14TP タップタイトS(E)1本で、後側の接続部をビスM4 × 14TP タップタイトS(E)1本で固定する。

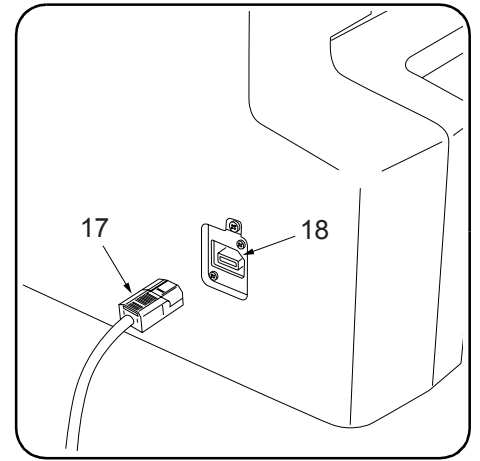
7. 排出ピン(C)7枚をメールボックス(A)の排出部に下から順番に取り付ける。排出ピン(C)の左右を押し少したわませながら、イラストのように立てた状態の角度で、前後のピン(12)をメールボックス(A)の前後の丸穴(13)に挿入する。



8. Remove the two screws (15) located as shown in the illustration that secure the side cover (14) of the mailbox (A), and remove the blanking seal (16) from the finisher (7).



9. Attach the reinforcing plate (D) to the mailbox (A) and the finisher (7) using the two TP screws M3 × 10 (G) and the Taptite S binding screw M4 × 25 (F).



10. Connect the signal lines (17) of the mailbox (A) to the connector (18) at the rear part of the finisher.

8. Retirer les deux vis (15) situées aux endroits indiqués sur l'illustration qui fixent le couvercle latéral (14) de la boîte à lettres (A), puis retirer le joint d'obturation (16) du retoucheur (7).

9. Fixer la plaque de renfort (D) sur la boîte à lettres (A) et le retoucheur (7) à l'aide des deux vis TP M3 × 10 (G) et de la borne de raccordement Taptite S M4 × 25 (F).

10. Brancher les lignes de signal (17) de la boîte à lettres (A) au connecteur (18) situé sur le côté arrière du retoucheur.

8. Remueva los dos tornillos (15) ubicados tal como en la figura, que aseguran la cubierta lateral (14) del buzón de correo (A) y remueva el sello de blanqueo (16) del finalizador (7).

9. Instale la placa de refuerzo (D) en el buzón de correo (A) y el finalizador (7) utilizando los dos tornillos TP M3 × 10 (G) y el tornillo de sujeción Taptite S M4 × 25 (F).

10. Conecte las líneas de señal (17) del buzón de correo (A) en el conector (18) de la parte trasera del finalizador.

8. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (15), die wie in der Abbildung gezeigt angeordnet sind und mit denen die Seitenabdeckung (14) der Mailbox (A) befestigt ist, und entfernen Sie die Blindabdichtung (16) vom Finisher (7).

9. Bringen Sie die Verstärkungsplatte (D) mit den zwei TP-Schrauben M3 × 10 (G) und der Taptite S-Befestigungsschraube M4 × 25 (F) an der Mailbox (A) und dem Finisher (7) an.

10. Schließen Sie die Signalleitungen (17) der Mailbox (A) an den Anschluss (18) am hinteren Teil des Finishers an.

8. Rimuovere le due viti (15) posizionate come indicato in illustrazione e che fissano il coperchio laterale (14) della casella postale (A), quindi rimuovere la gomma di tappaggio (16) dal finitore (7).

9. Fissare la piastra di sostegno (D) sulla casella postale (A) e sul finitore (7) utilizzando le due viti TP M3 × 10 (G) e la vite di serraggio Taptite S M4 × 25 (F).

10. Collegare le linee di segnale (17) della casella postale (A) al connettore (18) sulla parte posteriore del finitore.

8. 拆下固定在邮箱(A)上横盖板(14)的(如图所示的位置)2个螺丝(15),并揭下装订器(7)上遮挡的贴纸(16)。

9. 将加固板(D)用2个螺丝M3 × 10TP(G)和1个连接用螺纹紧固S螺丝M4 × 25(F)安装在邮箱(A)和装订器(7)上。

10. 将邮箱(A)的信号线(17)连接在装订器后侧的连接插座(18)上。

8. メールボックス(A)の横カバー(14)を固定しているイラストの位置のビス(15)2本を外し、フィニッシャー(7)の目隠しシール(16)をはがす。

9. 補強板(D)をビスM3 × 10TP(G)2本とビスM4 × 25バインドタップタイトS(F)1本でメールボックス(A)およびフィニッシャー(7)に取り付ける。

10. メールボックス(A)の信号線(17)をフィニッシャー後側のコネクター(18)に接続する。

11. Insert the MFP power plug to the outlet and turn the MFP main switch on to check the operation.

---

11. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans la prise et mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP sur la position de marche pour vérifier le fonctionnement.

---

11. Enchufe el cable eléctrico del MFP en el tomacorriente y encienda el interruptor principal del MFP para verificar el funcionamiento.

---

11. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in eine Netzsteckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter des MFP ein, um den Betrieb zu prüfen.

---

11. Inserire la spina del cavo di alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa della rete elettrica e accenderla utilizzando l'interruttore principale di alimentazione in modo da controllare il funzionamento.

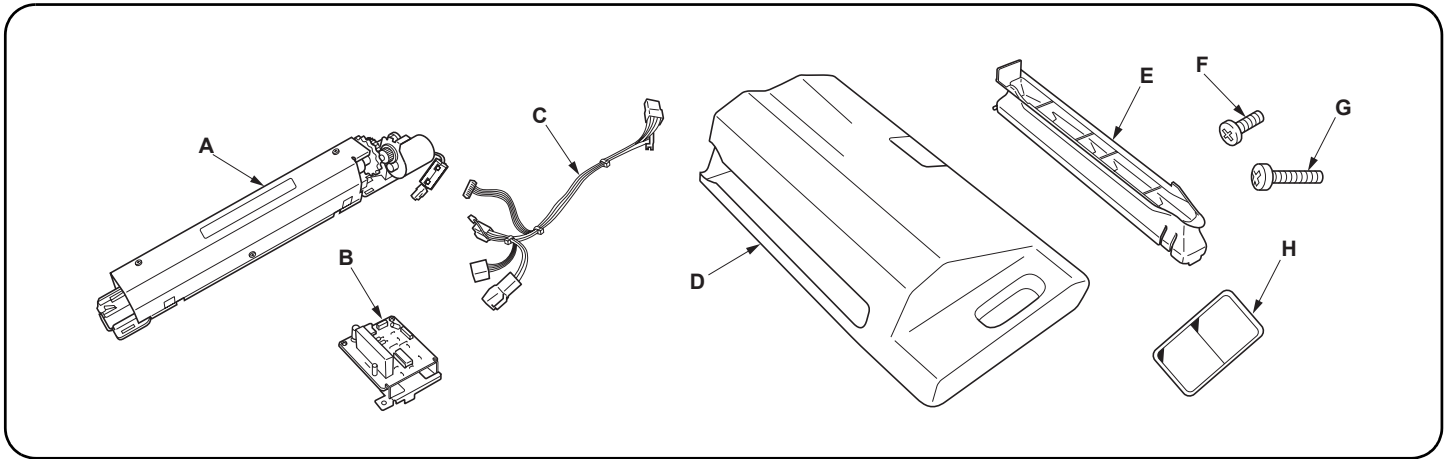
---

11. 将MFP主机的电源插头插入插座，然后按下主开关并确认是否接通。

---

11. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にして動作を確認する。

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR HOLE PUNCH UNIT**



**English**

**Supplied parts**

A Hole punch unit.....	1
B Punch PCB .....	1
C Power cord .....	1
D Waste hole punch box .....	1
E Guide .....	1

F M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw .....	1
G M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw .....	2
H Label .....	1

Be sure to remove any fixing tapes or cushioning material attached to the supplied parts.

**Français**

**Pièces fournies**

A Perforatrice .....	1
B Carte de perforation .....	1
C Cordon d'alimentation .....	1
D Bac de récupération de la perforatrice .....	1
E Guide .....	1

F Vis S taraudée M4 × 8 .....	1
G Vis S taraudée M4 × 10 .....	2
H Etiquette .....	1

Veiller à retirer toute bande de fixation ou matériau d'emballage entourant les pièces fournies.

**Español**

**Partes suministradas**

A Perforadora .....	1
B PCB de perforación .....	1
C Cable de alimentación .....	1
D Caja para desechos de la perforación .....	1
E Guía .....	1

F Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 .....	1
G Tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 .....	2
H Etiqueta .....	1

Asegúrese de quitar cualquier cinta de fijación o material de amortiguación colocado en las partes suministradas.

**Deutsch**

**Gelieferte Teile**

A Lochereinheit .....	1
B Locherplatte .....	1
C Netzkabel .....	1
D Lochungsabfallbehälter .....	1
E Führung .....	1

F M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	1
G M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben .....	2
H Aufkleber .....	1

Sicherstellen, dass sämtliche Klebebänder und Dämpfungsmaterialien von den gelieferten Teilen entfernt werden.

**Italiano**

**Parti fornite**

A Unità di perforazione .....	1
B Scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione ..	1
C Cavo di alimentazione .....	1
D Scarto perforazione .....	1
E Guida .....	1

F Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 .....	1
G Viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 .....	2
H Etichetta .....	1

Assicurarsi di rimuovere qualsiasi nastro adesivo o imbottitura fissati alle parti fornite.

**简体中文**

**附属部件**

A 打孔单元.....	1
B 打孔单元电路板.....	1
C 电源线.....	1
D 打孔纸屑盒.....	1
E 导向板.....	1

F M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉.....	1
G M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉.....	2
H 标签 .....	1

请务必拆下附带在附属部件上的固定胶带或弹性垫料。

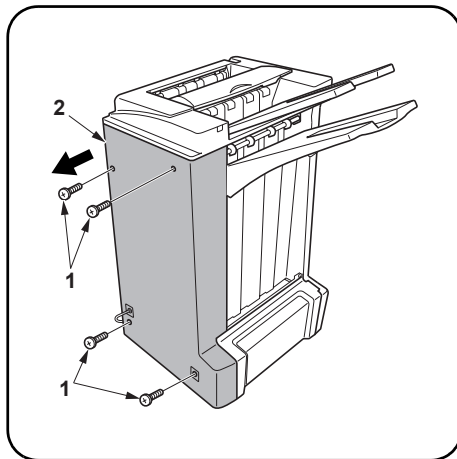
**日本語**

**付属品**

Aパンチユニット.....	1
Bパンチ基板.....	1
C電線.....	1
Dパンチくずボックス.....	1
Eガイド.....	1

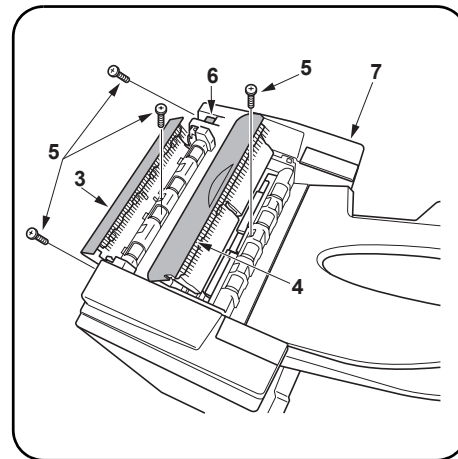
Fビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S .....	1
Gビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S .....	2
Hラベル .....	1

付属品に固定テープ、緩衝材が付いている場合は必ず取り外すこと。



### Removing the cover

1. Remove the four screws (1) to remove the back cover (2) from the document finisher.



2. Open the upper cover (3) and tray C (4) on the document finisher.
3. Remove four screws (5) and hold pressing the finisher releasing lever (6) to remove the top cover (7).

### Installation Procedure

Before installing the hole punch unit, make sure the MFP's main power switch is turned off and that its power cord is unplugged from the power outlet.

Install the document finisher first and then install the hole punch unit.

### Procédure d'installation

Avant d'installer la perforuse s'assurer que l'interrupteur d'alimentation principal du MFP est hors tension et que le câble d'alimentation est débranché de la prise secteur.

Installer d'abord le finisseur de document, puis installer la perforatrice.

### Enlèvement du capot.

1. Retirer les quatre vis (1) pour retirer le capot arrière (2) du finisseur de document.

2. Ouvrir le capot supérieur (3) et le bac C (4) du finisseur de document.

3. Retirer quatre vis (5) et maintenir le levier de relâchement du finisseur de document (6) enfoncé pour retirer le capot supérieur (7).

### Procedimiento de instalación

Antes de instalar la perforadora, asegúrese de que el interruptor principal de la alimentación de la MFP esté desconectado y que el cable de alimentación esté desenchufado de la toma de corriente de la pared.

Instale primero el finalizador de documentos y luego instale la perforadora.

### Extracción de la cubierta

1. Quite los cuatro tornillos (1) para quitar la cubierta posterior (2) del finalizador de documentos.

2. Abra la cubierta superior (3) y la bandeja C (4) del finalizador de documentos.

3. Quite los cuatro tornillos (5) y presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (6) para quitar la cubierta superior (7).

### Einbauverfahren

Bevor Sie mit dem Einbau der Lochereinheit beginnen, stellen Sie sicher, dass der Hauptschalter des Kopierers ausgeschaltet und das Netzkabel aus der Steckdose gezogen ist. Bringen Sie den Dokument-Finisher zuerst und dann erst die Lochereinheit an.

### Entfernen der Abdeckung

1. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (1) und entfernen Sie die hintere Abdeckung (2) vom Dokument-Finisher.

2. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung (3) und das Fach C (4) am Dokument-Finisher.

3. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (5) und drücken Sie den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (6), und die obere Abdeckung (7) zu entfernen.

### Procedura di installazione

Prima di installare l'unità di perforazione, assicurarsi che l'interruttore principale della fotocopiatrice sia spento e che il cavo di alimentazione non sia inserito nella presa. Installare prima la finitrice e poi procedere all'installazione dell'unità di perforazione.

### Rimuovere il coperchio

1. Togliere le quattro viti (1) per rimuovere il pannello posteriore (2) dalla finitrice.

2. Aprire il pannello superiore (3) e il vassoio C (4) della finitrice.

3. Togliere quattro viti (5) e tenere premuta la leva di rilascio della finitrice (6) per rimuovere il coperchio (7).

### 安裝步驟

安裝打孔單元前，請確定 MFP 的主電源開關已經關閉並且電源線已從電源插座上拔下。首先安裝裝訂器，然後安裝打孔單元。

### 拆下盖板

1. 從裝訂器上拆下 4 顆螺釘 (1) 以便拆下後盖板 (2)。

2. 打開裝訂器的上盖板 (3) 和托盤 C (4)。

3. 拆下 4 顆螺釘 (5) 并按住整理器釋放杆 (6) 以便拆下上盖板 (7)。

### 設置手順

パンチユニットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。  
ドキュメントフィニッシャを設置後、パンチユニットを設置すること。

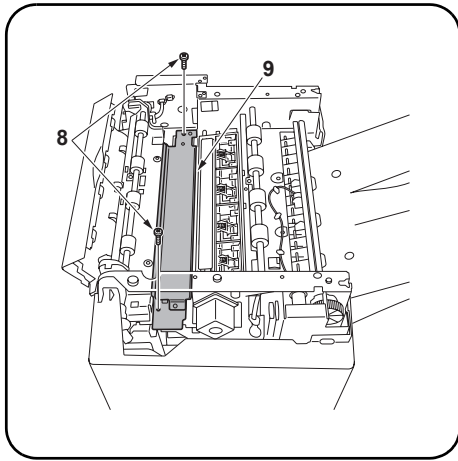
### カバーの取り外し

1. ビス (1) 4 本を外し、ドキュメントフィニッシャの後カバー (2) を取り外す。

2. ドキュメントフィニッシャの上カバー (3) とトレイ C (4) を開く。

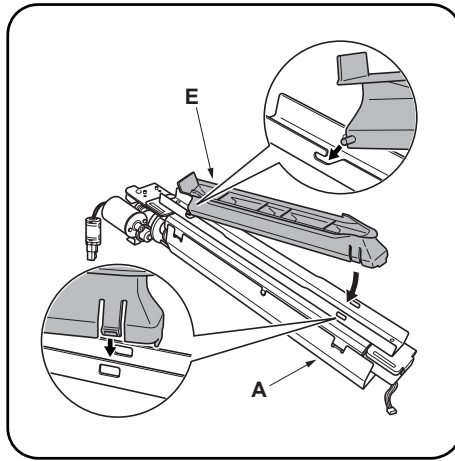
3. ビス (5) 4 本を外し、フィニッシャ解除レバー (6) を押しながら天カバー (7) を取り外す。





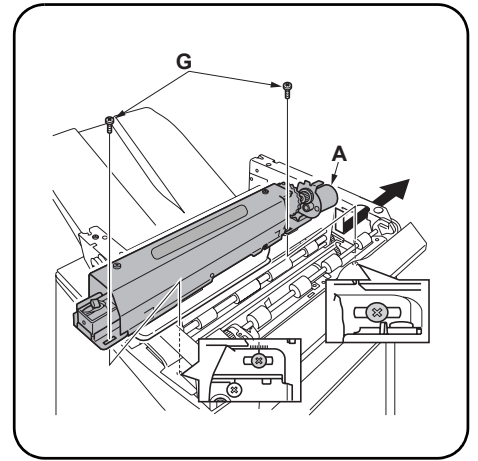
#### Removing the guide plate

- Remove two screws (8) to remove the guide plate (9).



#### Installing the guide

- Engage the projection and the pawl of the guide (E) with the hole punch unit (A) to install the guide.



#### Installing the hole punch unit

- Tilt the hole punch unit (A) to place it through the hole in the upper side of the document finisher.
- Fix the hole punch unit (A) with two M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (G). Install the hole punch unit so that M4 × 10 tap Tight S screw (G) is placed at the center of each screw hole.

#### Enlèvement de la plaque de guidage.

- Rétirer deux vis (8) pour retirer la plaque de guidage (9).

#### Installation du guide

- Engager la projection et le cliquet du guide (E) dans la perforatrice (A) pour installer le guide.

#### Installation de la perforatrice

- Incliner la perforatrice (A) pour la faire passer par l'orifice de la partie supérieure du finisseur de document.
- Fixer la perforatrice (A) à l'aide de deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G). Installer la perforatrice pour que les vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) soit placées au centre de chaque orifice de vis.

#### Extracción de la placa guía

- Quite los dos tornillos (8) para quitar la placa guía (9).

#### Instalación de la guía

- Acople el resalto y el trinquete de la guía (E) con la perforadora (A) para instalar la guía.

#### Instalación de la perforadora

- Incline la perforadora (A) para colocarla a través del agujero del lado superior del finalizador de documentos.
- Fije la perforadora (A) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (G). Instale la perforadora de forma que los tornillo de ajuste M4 × 10 (G) queden en el centro de cada agujero de tornillo.

#### Entfernen der Führungsplatte

- Entfernen Sie die beiden Schrauben (8), um die Führungsplatte abzunehmen (9).

#### Anbringen der Führung

- Bringen Sie den Vorsprung und die Sperrklinke der Führung (E) mit der Lochereinheit (A) in Eingriff, um die Führung einzubauen.

#### Anbringen der Lochereinheit

- Kippen Sie die Lochereinheit (A), um sie durch das Loch an der oberen Seite des Dokument-Finishers einzuführen.
- Nun die Lochereinheit (A) mit den beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) befestigen. Stellen Sie sicher, dass die Lochereinheit so angebracht wird, dass sich die M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschraube (G) in der Mitte jedes einzelnen Schraublochs befindet.

#### Rimuovere la piastra guida

- Togliere due viti (8) per rimuovere la piastra guida (9).

#### Installare la guida

- Agganciare la parte sporgente e il dentello della guida (E) all'unità di perforazione (A) per installare la guida.

#### Installare l'unità di perforazione

- Inclinare l'unità di perforazione (A) in modo da inserirla dentro la cavità nella parte superiore della finitrice.
- Fissare l'unità di perforazione (A) con due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G). Installare l'unità di perforazione in modo che la vite con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) sia piazzata al centro di ogni apposito foro.

#### 拆下导向板

- 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (8) 以便拆下导向板 (9)。

#### 安装导向板

- 将导向板 (E) 的突起部和卡爪与打孔单元 (A) 啮合, 安装导向板。

#### 安装打孔单元

- 将打孔单元 (A) 倾斜, 从装订器上部的孔中穿过。
- 用 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G) 固定打孔单元 (A)。安装打孔单元, 让 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G) 放在每个螺钉孔的中央。

#### ガイド板の取り外し

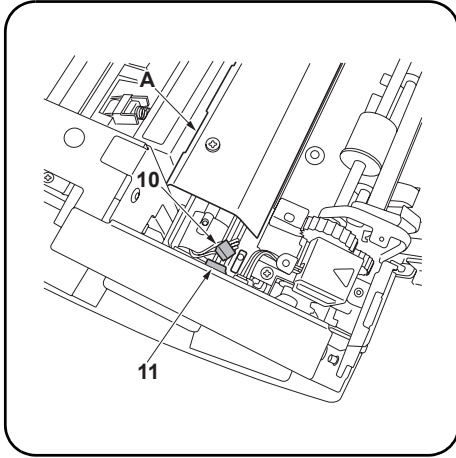
- ビス (8) 2 本を外し、ガイド板 (9) を取り外す。

#### ガイドの取り付け

- ガイド (E) の突起とツメをパンチユニット (A) に引っ掛け、取り付ける。

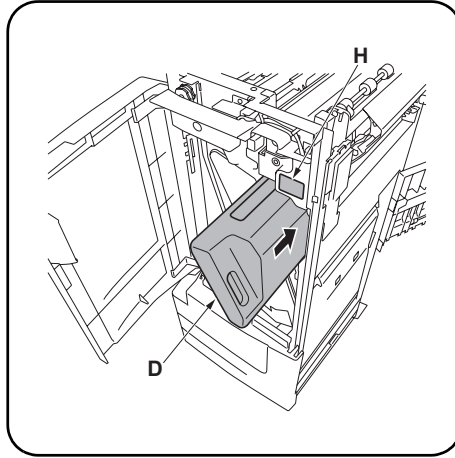
#### パンチユニットの取り付け

- パンチユニット (A) を傾け、ドキュメントフィニッシャー上部の穴に通す。
- ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本でパンチユニット (A) を固定する。ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) がビス穴の中心の位置になるように取り付けること。



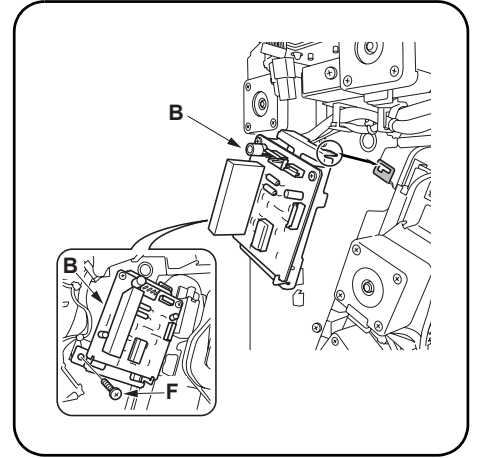
**Connecting the connector  
(120V/220V/230V/240V models only.  
Except for Swedish specification)**

8. Connect the 3P-connector (10) on the hole punch unit (A) to the 3P-connector (11) inside the document finisher.



**Installing the waste hole punch box**

9. Open the front cover of the document finisher and insert the waste hole punch box (D) along the guide (E) which was installed in step 5.  
10. Clean the upper right cover of the waste hole punch box (D) with alcohol and adhere the label (H) on the concave section of the box.  
11. Close the front cover of the document finisher.



**Installing the punch PCB**

12. Engage the pawl on the upper side of the punch PCB (B) with the groove at the back of the document finisher.  
13. Secure the punch PCB (B) with M4 × 8 tap Tight S screw (F).

**Connexion du connecteur  
(Modèles 120V/220V/230V/240V seulement. Sauf pour les spécifications suédoises)**

8. Connecter le connecteur 3P (10) de la perforatrice (A) au connecteur 3P (11) à l'intérieur du finisseur de document.

**Installation du bac de récupération de la perforatrice**

9. Ouvrir le capot avant du finisseur de document et insérer le bac de récupération de la perforatrice (D) le long du guide (E) installé à l'étape 5.  
10. Nettoyer le capot supérieur droit du bac de récupération de la perforatrice (D) avec de l'alcool et coller l'étiquette (H) sur la partie concave du bac.  
11. Refermer le capot avant du finisseur de document.

**Installation de la carte de perforation**

12. Engager le cliquet de la partie supérieure de la carte de perforation (B) dans la rainure à l'arrière du finisseur de document.  
13. Fixer la carte de perforation (B) à l'aide d'une vis S taraudée M4 × 8 (F).

**Conexión del conector  
(Modelos de 120 V/220 V/230 V/240 V solamente. Excepto para las especificaciones suecas)**

8. Conecte el conector de 3 contactos (10) de la perforadora (A) en el conector de 3 contactos (11) del interior del finalizador de documentos.

**Instalación la caja para desechos de la perforación**

9. Abra la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos e introduzca la caja para desechos de la perforación (D) a lo largo de la guía (E) que fue instalada en el paso 5.  
10. Limpie la cubierta superior derecha de la caja para desechos de la perforación (D) con alcohol y pegue la etiqueta (H) en la sección cóncava de la caja.  
11. Cierre la cubierta frontal del finalizador de documentos.

**Instalación del PCB de perforación**

12. Acople el trinquete del lado superior del PCB de perforación (B) con las ranuras de la parte posterior del finalizador de documentos.  
13. Asegure el PCB de perforación (B) con el tornillo de ajuste M4 × 8 (F).

**Anschließen des Steckers  
(nur bei 120 V-, 220 V-, 230 V- und 240 V-Modellen)**

8. Stecken Sie den 3-poligen Stecker (10) der Lochereinheit (A) in die 3-polige Buchse (11) innerhalb des Dokument-Finishers ein.

**Anbringen des Lochungsabfallbehälters**

9. Öffnen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers und bauen Sie dann den Lochabfallbehälter (D) entlang der in Schritt 5 installierten Führung (E) ein.  
10. Reinigen Sie die rechte obere Abdeckung des Lochabfallbehälters (D) mit Alkohol und bringen Sie danach den Aufkleber (H) am konkaven Teil des Behälters an.  
11. Schließen Sie die vordere Abdeckung des Dokument-Finishers.

**Anbringen der Locherplatte**

12. Lassen Sie die Sperrklinke auf der oberen Seite der Locherplatte (B) in die Nut auf der Rückseite des Dokument-Finishers eingreifen.  
13. Befestigen Sie die Locherplatte (B) mit der M4 × 8 Passstift-Verbundschraube (F).

**Collegare il connettore  
(solo per i modelli 120V/220V/230V/240V. Eccetto per la specificazione svedese)**

8. Collegare il connettore a 3 piedini (10) dell'unità di perforazione (A) al connettore a 3 piedini (11) all'interno della finitrice.

**Installare lo scarto perforazione (Contenitore degli scarti per la perforazione)**

9. Aprire il pannello anteriore della finitrice e inserire lo scarto perforazione (D) lungo la guida (E) installata nel passo 5.  
10. Pulire il pannello superiore destro dello scarto perforazione (D) con alcool e incollare l'etichetta (H) nella sezione concava del contenitore.  
11. Chiudere il pannello anteriore della finitrice.

**Installare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione**

12. Agganciare il dentello che si trova nella parte superiore della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B) nel foro sulla parte posteriore della finitrice.  
13. Fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B) con una viti con testa a croce S M4 × 8 (F).

- 连接插头  
(仅适用于 120V/220V/230V/240V 型号。除瑞典规格)  
8. 将打孔单元 (A) 上的 3P 插头 (10) 连接到装订器内的 3P 插头 (11)。

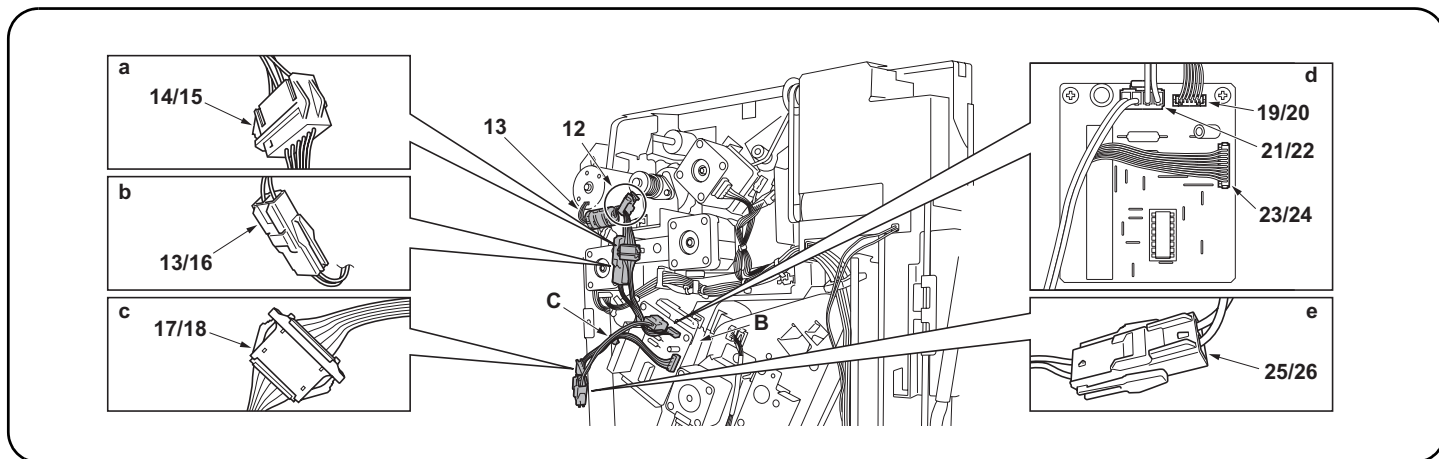
- 安装打孔纸屑盒  
9. 打开装订器的前盖板并沿着在步骤 5 中安装导向板 (E) 插入打孔纸屑盒 (D)。  
10. 用酒精清洁打孔纸屑盒 (D) 的右上盖板, 并将标签 (H) 粘到盒的凹面。  
11. 关闭装订器的前盖板。

- 安装打孔单元电路板  
12. 将打孔单元电路板 (B) 的上部卡爪与装订器后部的沟槽啮合。  
13. 用 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (F) 固定打孔单元电路板 (B)。

- コネクタの接続  
(120V/220V/230V/240V 仕様のみ。ただしスウェーデン仕様は除く)  
8. パンチユニット (A) の 3P コネクタ (10) をドキュメントフィニッシャの 3P コネクタ (11) に接続する。

- パンチくずボックスの取り付け  
9. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを開き、手順 5 で取り付けしたガイド (E) に沿ってパンチくずボックス (D) を挿入する。  
10. パンチくずボックス (D) 右上のカバーをアルコール清掃し、凹部に合わせてラベル (H) を貼り付ける。  
11. ドキュメントフィニッシャの前カバーを閉じる。

- パンチ基板の取り付け  
12. パンチ基板 (B) の上部のツメをドキュメントフィニッシャ後側の溝に引っ掛ける。  
13. ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S (F) 1 本でパンチ基板 (B) を固定する。



14. Open the wire saddle (12) and put the 2P-connector (13) on the motor through the wire saddle to fix the punch PCB (B).
15. Connect the power cord (C) to the punch PCB (B).
- Figure (a): 6P-connector (14) of power cord (C) and 6P-connector (15) of sensor
- Figure (b): 2P-connector (13) of power cord (C) and 2P-connector (16) of motor
- Figure (c): 9P-connector (17) of power cord (C) and 9P-connector (18) of document finisher power cord

- Figure (d): 6P-connector (19) of power cord (C) and YC3 connector (20) of punch PCB (B)
- Figure (d): 4P-connector (21) of power cord (C) and YC1 connector (22) of punch PCB (B)
- Figure (d): 9P-connector (23) of power cord (C) and YC2 connector (24) of punch PCB (B)
- Figure (e): 9P-connector (25) of power cord (C) and 9P-connector (26) of document finisher power cord

14. Ouvrir la selle de câble (12) et faire passer le connecteur 2P (13) dans le moteur par la selle de câble pour fixer la carte de perforation (B).
15. Connecter le cordon d'alimentation (C) et la carte de perforation (B).
- Figure (a): connecteur 6P (14) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 6P (15) du capteur
- Figure (b): connecteur 2P (13) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 2P (16) du moteur
- Figure (c): connecteur 9P (17) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 9P (18) du cordon d'alimentation du finisseur de document

- Figure (d): connecteur 6P (19) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC3 (20) de la carte de perforation (B)
- Figure (d): connecteur 4P (21) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC1 (22) de la carte de perforation (B)
- Figure (d): connecteur 9P (23) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur YC2 (24) de la carte de perforation (B)
- Figure (e): connecteur 9P (25) du cordon d'alimentation (C) et connecteur 9P (26) du cordon d'alimentation du finisseur de document

14. Abra la placa de cable (12) y ponga el conector de 2 contactos (13) en el motor a través de la placa de cable para fijar el PCB de perforación (B).
15. Conecte el cable de alimentación (C) en el PCB de perforación (B).
- Figura (a): Conector de 6 contactos (14) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 6 contactos (15) del sensor
- Figura (b): Conector de 2 contactos (13) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 2 contactos (16) del motor
- Figura (c): Conector de 9 contactos (17) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 9 contactos (18) del cable de alimentación del finalizador de documentos

- Figura (d): Conector de 6 contactos (19) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC3 (20) del PCB de perforación (B)
- Figura (d): Conector de 4 contactos (21) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC1 (22) del PCB de perforación (B)
- Figura (d): Conector de 9 contactos (23) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector YC2 (24) del PCB de perforación (B)
- Figura (e): Conector de 9 contactos (25) del cable de alimentación (C) y conector de 9 contactos (26) del cable de alimentación del finalizador de documentos

14. Öffnen Sie den Kabelhalter (12) und führen Sie den 2-poligen Stecker (13) durch den Kabelhalter am Motor, um die Locherplatte (B) zu befestigen.
15. Schließen Sie das Netzkabel (C) an der Locherplatte (B) an.
- Abbildung (a): 6-poliger Stecker (14) des Netzkabels (C) und 6-poliger Stecker (15) des Sensors
- Abbildung (b): 2-poliger Stecker (13) des Netzkabels (C) und 2-poliger Stecker (16) des Motors
- Abbildung (c): 9-poliger Stecker (17) des Netzkabels (C) und 9-poliger Stecker (18) des Dokument-Finishers-Netzkabels

- Abbildung (d): 6-poliger Stecker (19) des Netzkabels (C) und YC3-Stecker (20) der Locherplatte (B)
- Abbildung (d): 4-poliger Stecker (21) des Netzkabels (C) und YC1-Stecker (22) der Locherplatte (B)
- Abbildung (d): 9-poliger Stecker (23) des Netzkabels (C) und YC2-Stecker (24) der Locherplatte (B)
- Abbildung (e): 9-poliger Stecker (25) des Netzkabels (C) und 9-poliger Stecker (26) des Dokument-Finisher-Netzkabels

14. Aprire la slitta del filo (12) e inserire il connettore a 2 piedini (13) sul motore attraverso la slitta in modo da fissare la scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B).
15. Collegare il cavo di alimentazione (C) alla scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B).
- Figura (a): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 6 piedini (14) e connettore sensore a 6 piedini (15)
- Figura (b): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 2 piedini (13) e connettore motore a 2 piedini (16)
- Figura (c): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (17) e connettore elettrico a 9 piedini della finitrice (18)

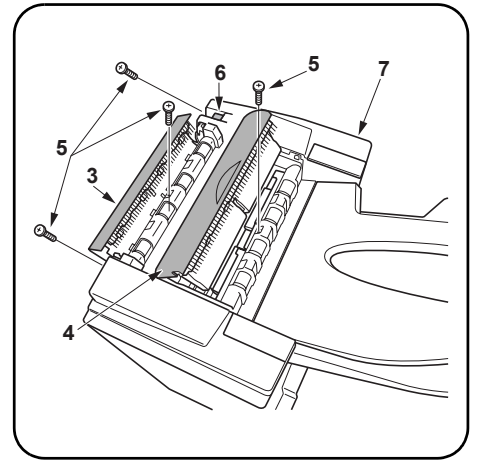
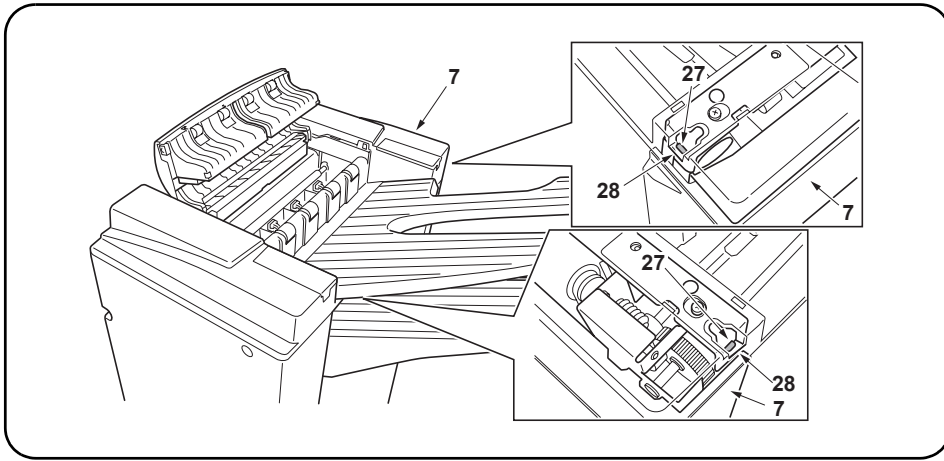
- Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 6 piedini (19) e connettore YC3 (20) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)
- Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 4 piedini (21) e connettore YC1 (22) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)
- Figura (d): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (23) e connettore YC2 (24) della scheda a circuiti stampati di perforazione (B)
- Figura (e): cavo di alimentazione (C) a 9 piedini (25) e connettore elettrico a 9 piedini della finitrice (26)

14. 打开电线束线夹 (12) 并将电机上的 2P 插头 (13) 穿过电线束线夹, 固定打孔单元电路板 (B)。
15. 将电源线 (C) 连接到打孔单元电路板 (B)。
- 图 (a): 电源线 (C) 的 6P 插头 (14) 和传感器的 6P 插头 (15)
- 图 (b): 电源线 (C) 的 2P 插头 (13) 和电机的 2P 插头 (16)
- 图 (c): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (17) 和装订器电源线的 9P 插头 (18)

- 图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 6P 插头 (19) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC3 插头 (20)
- 图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 4P 插头 (21) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC1 插头 (22)
- 图 (d): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (23) 和打孔单元电路板 (B) 的 YC2 插头 (24)
- 图 (e): 电源线 (C) 的 9P 插头 (25) 和装订器电源线的 9P 插头 (26)

14. ワイヤースドル (12) を開き、モータの 2P コネクタ (13) をワイヤースドル (12) へ通して固定する。
15. 電線 (C) をパンチ基板 (B) と接続する。
- 図 (a): 電線 (C) の 6P コネクタ (14) とセンサの 6P コネクタ (15)
- 図 (b): 電線 (C) の 2P コネクタ (13) とモータの 2P コネクタ (16)
- 図 (c): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (17) とドキュメントフィニッシャの電線の 9P コネクタ (18)

- 図 (d): 電線 (C) の 6P コネクタ (19) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC3 コネクタ (20)
- 図 (d): 電線 (C) の 4P コネクタ (21) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC1 コネクタ (22)
- 図 (d): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (23) とパンチ基板 (B) の YC2 コネクタ (24)
- 図 (e): 電線 (C) の 9P コネクタ (25) とドキュメントフィニッシャの電線の 9P コネクタ (26)



### Installing the cover

16. Engage the pawl (27) of the document finisher with the concave section (28) at the back of the top cover (7) which was removed in step 3. After that, reinstall the top cover (7) by pressing the finisher releasing lever (6) with four screws (5).  
If the pawl (27) is not securely engaged with the concave section, the top cover (7) is loose, which may cause incorrect operation of the document finisher.
17. Close the upper cover (3) and the tray C (4) which were opened in step 2.

### Installation du capot

16. Engager le cliquet (27) du finisseur de document dans la partie concave (28) de l'arrière du capot supérieur (7) retiré à l'étape 3. Ensuite, réinstaller le capot supérieur (7) en serrant le levier de relâchement du finisseur de document (6) à l'aide de quatre vis (5).  
Si le cliquet (27) n'est pas bien engagé dans la partie concave, le capot supérieur (7) est lâche, ce qui peut entraîner un fonctionnement incorrect du finisseur de document.
17. Refermer le capot supérieur (3) et le bac C (4) ouverts à l'étape 2.

### Instalación de la cubierta

16. Acople el trinquete (27) del finalizador de documentos con la sección cóncava (28) de la parte posterior de la cubierta superior (7) que fue quitada en el paso 3. Después, presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (6) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (7) con cuatro tornillos (5).  
Si el trinquete (27) no está firmemente acoplado con la sección cóncava, la cubierta superior (7) quedará floja, lo que podrá causar un funcionamiento incorrecto del finalizador de documentos.
17. Cierre la cubierta superior (3) y la bandeja C (4) que fueron abiertas en el paso 2.

### Anbringen der Abdeckung

16. Lassen Sie die Sperrklinke (27) des Dokument-Finishers in den konkaven Teil (28) auf der Rückseite der oberen Abdeckung (7) eingreifen, die zuvor in Schritt 3 entfernt wurde. Drücken Sie danach den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (6), um die obere Abdeckung (7) mit den vier Schrauben (5) zu befestigen.  
Wenn die Sperrklinke (27) nicht gut in den konkaven Teil eingreift, ist die obere Abdeckung (7) locker. Dabei kann es zu einer Funktionsstörung im Dokument-Finisher kommen.
17. Schließen Sie die in Schritt 2 geöffnete obere Abdeckung (3) und das Fach C (4) wieder.

### Installare il pannello

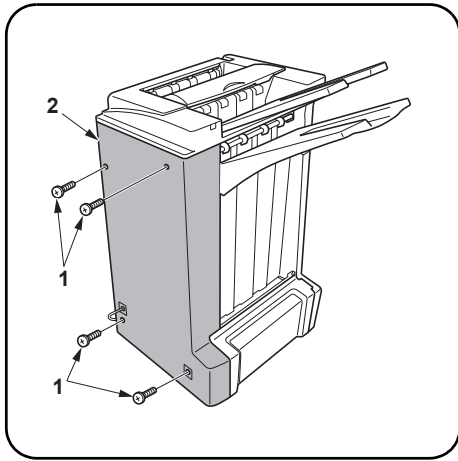
16. Agganciare il dentello (27) della finitrice alla sezione concava (28) sul retro del coperchio (7) rimosso al passo 3. In seguito, premi la leva di rilascio della finitrice (6) per reinstallare il coperchio (7) con quattro viti (5).  
Se il dentello (27) non è fermamente agganciato alla sezione concava, il coperchio (7) risulta allentato e ciò può causare il malfunzionamento della finitrice.
17. Chiudere il pannello superiore (3) e il vassoio C (4) aperti nel passo 2.

### 安装盖板

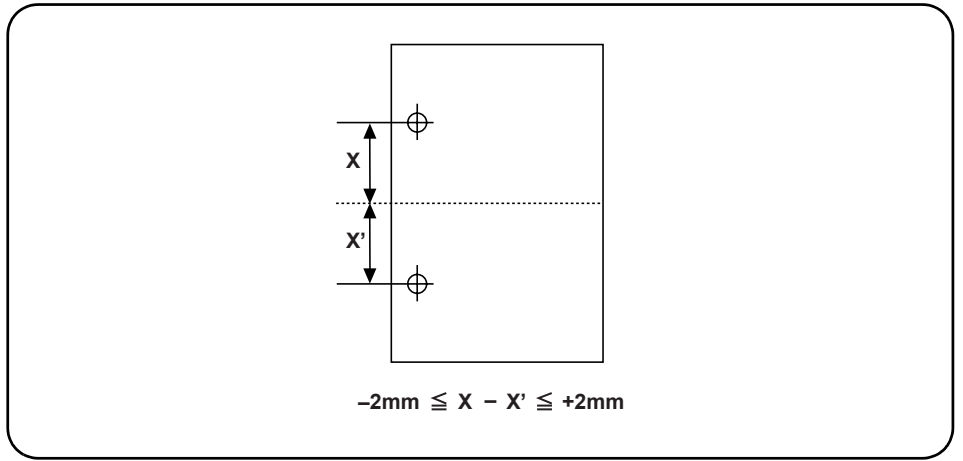
16. 将装订器的卡爪 (27) 与在步骤 3 中拆下的上盖板 (7) 后凹面 (28) 啮合。之后, 按下装订器释放杆 (6), 用 4 颗螺钉重新安装上部盖板 (7)。  
如果卡爪 (27) 未与凹面牢固地啮合, 上盖板 (7) 会松动, 可能会造成装订器的异常操作。
17. 关闭在步骤 2 中打开的上盖板 (3) 和托盘 C (4)。

### カバーの取り付け

16. ドキュメントフィニッシャのツメ (27) を、手順 3 で外した天カバー (7) 裏側の凹部 (28) に引っ掛け、フィニッシャ解除レバー (6) を押しながら天カバー (7) をはめ込み、ビス (5) 4 本で元通り取り付け。  
ツメ (27) が確実に引っ掛けられていない場合、天カバー (7) が浮いた状態になり、ドキュメントフィニッシャが正常に動作しない恐れがある。
17. 手順 2 で開いた上カバー (3) とトレイ C (4) を閉じる。



18. Use four screws (1) to reinstall the back cover (2) which was removed from the document finisher in step 1.



#### [Checking the center of the punch hole]

1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main power switch.
2. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.
3. Check for any off-centering in the punch holes. If any off-centering is observed, follow the procedure below to adjust the hole position.  
<Reference value> Vertical gap of the punch holes:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. Utiliser quatre vis (1) pour réinstaller le capot arrière (2) retiré du finisseur de document à l'étape 1.

#### [Vérification du centre des perforations]

1. Brancher le MFP dans une prise secteur et mettre son interrupteur d'alimentation principal sous tension.
2. Dans le mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test avec du papier alimenté depuis le plateau multifonction.
3. Vérifier tout décentrage des perforations. Si des décentrages se produisent, suivre la procédure ci-dessous pour ajuster la position de perforation.  
<Valeur de référence> Espace vertical des perforations:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. Utilice cuatro tornillos (1) para volver a instalar la cubierta posterior (2) que fue quitada del finalizador de documentos en el paso 1.

#### [Comprobación del centro del agujero perforado]

1. Enchufe la MFP en una toma de corriente y conecte su interruptor de alimentación principal.
2. En el modo de perforación, haga una copia de prueba con papel alimentado desde la bandeja MP.
3. Compruebe que no haya ningún agujero perforado descentrado. Si lo hay, siga el procedimiento de abajo para ajustar la posición del agujero.  
<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de los agujeros perforados:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. Verwenden Sie die vier Schrauben (1), um die hintere Abdeckung (2) zu befestigen, welche in Schritt 1 vom Dokument-Finisher entfernt wurde.

#### [Überprüfen der Stanzlöcherzentrierung]

1. Schließen Sie den MFP an das Netz an und schalten Sie das Gerät ein.
2. Führen Sie im Lochungsmodus einen Test aus, wobei das Papier vom MP-Fach aus zugeführt wird.
3. Prüfen Sie auf nicht zentrierte Löcher. Sollte dies der Fall sein, folgen Sie dem nachfolgendem Verfahren, um die Lochposition zu korrigieren.  
<Bezugswert> Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. Utilizzare quattro viti (1) per reinstallare il pannello posteriore (2) rimosso dalla finitrice nel passo 1.

#### [Verificare la centratura dei fori di perforazione]

1. Inserire il cavo di alimentazione della fotocopiatrice nella presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.
3. Verificare che i fori di perforazione siano correttamente centrati. Nel caso in cui non lo siano, eseguire la procedura indicata qui di seguito per regolarne la posizione.  
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione:  $\pm 2$  mm

18. 用 4 顆螺釘 (1) 重新安裝在步驟 1 中從裝訂器上拆下的後蓋板 (2)。

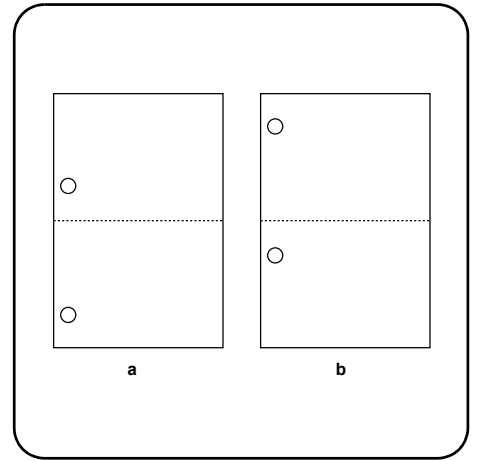
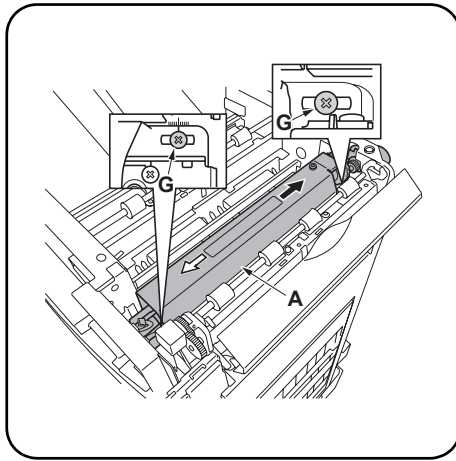
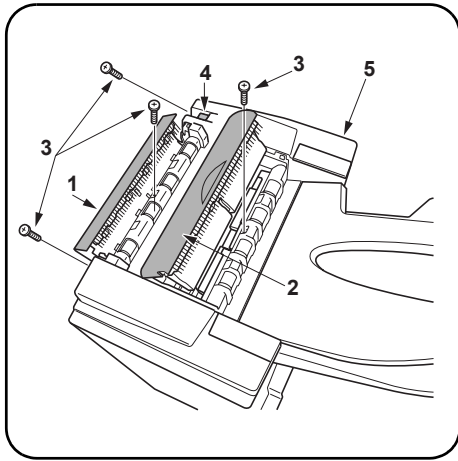
#### [检查打孔的中央]

1. 將 MFP 插入電源插座，打開主電源開關。
2. 在打孔模式中，從 MP 托盤進紙進行測試複印。
3. 檢查打孔是否偏離中央。如果觀察到有偏離中央的情況，按照下列步驟調整打孔位置。  
<標準值> 打孔的垂直間隙:  $\pm 2$ mm

18. 手順 1 で外したドキュメントフィニッシャの後カバー (2) をビス (1) 4 本で元通り取り付け。

#### [パンチ穴のセンター位置確認]

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。
3. パンチ穴のセンター位置のずれを確認する。パンチ穴が中心からずれていた場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> パンチ穴のずれ:  $\pm 2$ mm



### Centering punch-holes

1. Open the upper cover (1) and the tray C (2) of the document finisher.
2. Remove four screws (3) and hold pressing the finisher releasing lever (4) to remove the top cover (5).

3. Loosen two M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (G) of the hole punch unit (A).
4. Adjust the position of the hole punch unit (A).  
When holes are punched too far lower copy example (a): Slide the hole punch unit (A) to the direction indicated by the black arrow.  
When holes are punched too far upper copy example (b): Slide the hole punch unit (A) to the direction indicated by the white arrow.
5. Use four screws (3) to reinstall the top cover (5) which was removed in step 2. For details, see steps 16 and 17 on page 6.
6. Perform a test copy.

### Centrage des perforations

1. Ouvrir le capot supérieur (1) et le bac C (2) du finisseur de document.
2. Retirer quatre vis (3) et maintenir le levier de relâchement du finisseur (4) enfoncé pour retirer le capot supérieur (5).

3. Desserrer deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) de la perforatrice (A).
4. Ajuster la position de la perforatrice (A).  
Lorsque les trous sont perforés trop bas dans l'exemple de copie (a): faire glisser la perforatrice (A) dans la direction indiquée par la flèche noire.  
Lorsque les trous sont perforés trop haut dans l'exemple de copie (b): faire glisser la perforatrice (A) dans la direction indiquée par la flèche blanche.
5. Utiliser quatre vis (3) pour réinstaller le capot supérieur (5) retiré à l'étape 2. Pour plus de détails, se reporter aux étapes 16 et 17 de la page 6.
6. Effectuer une copie de test.

### Centrado de los agujeros de perforación

1. Abra la cubierta superior (1) y la bandeja C (2) del finalizador de documentos.
2. Quite los cuatro tornillos (3) y presione la palanca de liberación del finalizador (4) para quitar la cubierta superior (5).

3. Afloje dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (G) de la perforadora (A).
4. Ajuste la posición de la perforadora (A).  
Cuando los agujeros hayan sido perforados demasiado hacia abajo en el ejemplo de copia (a): Deslice la perforadora (A) en el sentido indicado por la flecha negra.  
Cuando los agujeros hayan sido perforados demasiado hacia arriba en el ejemplo de copia (b): Deslice la perforadora (A) en el sentido indicado por la flecha blanca.
5. Utilice cuatro tornillos (3) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (5) que fue quitada en el paso 2. Para conocer detalles, consulte los pasos 16 y 17 de la página 6.
6. Haga una copia de prueba.

### Zentrieren der Stanzlöcher

1. Öffnen Sie die obere Abdeckung (1) sowie das Fach C (2) des Dokument-Finishers.
2. Entfernen Sie die vier Schrauben (3) und drücken Sie den Finisher-Entriegelungshebel (4), um die obere Abdeckung (5) zu entfernen.

3. Lösen Sie die beiden M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) der Lochereinheit (A).
4. Stellen Sie die Position der Lochereinheit (A) ein.  
Wenn die Löcher zu weit unten durchgestanzt werden: Beispiel (a): Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit (A) in die Richtung des schwarzen Pfeils.  
Wenn die Löcher zu weit oben durchgestanzt werden: Beispiel (b): Schieben Sie die Lochereinheit (A) in die Richtung des weißen Pfeils.
5. Benutzen Sie die vier Schrauben (3), um die obere Abdeckung (5) anzubringen, die in Schritt 2 entfernt wurde. Nähere Einzelheiten erfahren Sie in den Schritten 16 und 17 auf Seite 6.
6. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.

### Centratura dei fori di perforazione

1. Aprire il pannello superiore (1) e il vassoio C (2) della finitrice.
2. Togliere quattro viti (3) e tenere premuta la leva di rilascio della finitrice (4) per rimuovere il coperchio (5).

3. Allentare due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) dell'unità di perforazione (A).
4. Regolare la posizione dell'unità di perforazione (A).  
Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo in basso (esempio a): Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione (A) nella direzione indicata dalla freccia nera.  
Nel caso in cui i fori siano perforati troppo in alto (esempio b): Far scivolare l'unità di perforazione (A) nella direzione indicata dalla freccia bianca.
5. Utilizzare quattro viti (3) per reinstallare il coperchio (5) rimosso nel passo 2. Per dettagli, vedere passi 16 e 17 a pagina 6.
6. Eseguire una copia di prova.

### 将打孔调整居中

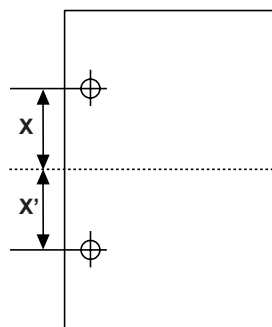
1. 打开装订器的上盖板 (1) 和托盘 C (2)。
2. 拆下 4 颗螺钉 (3) 并按住整理器释放杆 (4) 以便拆下上盖板 (5)。

3. 松开打孔单元 (A) 的 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G)。
4. 调整打孔单元 (A) 的位置。  
打孔远离下部复印样本 (a) 时: 将打孔单元 (A) 滑向黑色箭头指示的方向。  
打孔远离上部复印样本 (b) 时: 将打孔单元 (A) 滑向白色箭头指示的方向。
5. 用 4 颗螺钉 (3) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的上盖板 (5)。有关详细信息, 请参见第 6 页上的步骤 16 和步骤 17。
6. 进行测试复印。

### パンチ穴のセンター位置調整

1. ドキュメントフィニッシャーの上カバー (1) とトレイ C (2) を開く。
2. ビス (3) 4 本を外し、フィニッシャー解除レバー (4) 押しながら天カバー (5) を取り外す。

3. パンチユニット (A) のビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本を緩める。
4. パンチユニット (A) の位置調整を行う。  
パンチ穴が下にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (a): パンチユニット (A) を黒矢印の方向へずらす。  
パンチ穴が上にずれている場合 コピーサンプル (b): パンチユニット (A) を白矢印の方向へずらす。
5. 手順 2 で外した天カバー (5) をビス (3) 4 本で元通り取り付け。詳細は 6 ページ手順 16、17 を参照のこと。
6. テストコピーを行う。



$$-2\text{mm} \leq X - X' \leq +2\text{mm}$$

7. Repeat steps 1 to 6 until the vertical gap of the punch holes on the copy sample are within the reference value.
8. After adjustment, tighten two M4 × 10 tap Tight S screws (G) loosened in step 3.
9. Use four screws (3) to reinstall the top cover (5) which was removed in step 2. For details, see steps 16 and 17 on page 6.  
<Reference value> Vertical gap of the punch holes: ±2 mm

7. Répéter les étapes 1 à 6 jusqu'à ce que l'espace vertical des perforations de l'échantillon de copie se trouve à l'intérieur de la valeur de référence.
8. Après l'ajustement, resserrer deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (G) desserrées à l'étape 3.
9. Utiliser quatre vis (3) pour réinstaller le capot supérieur (5) retiré à l'étape 2. Pour plus de détails, se reporter aux étapes 16 et 17 de la page 6.  
<Valeur de référence> Espace vertical des perforations: ±2 mm

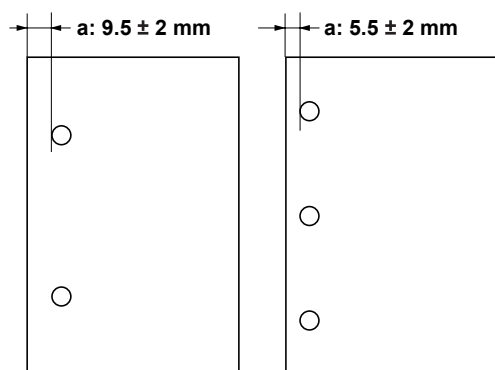
7. Repita los pasos 1 a 6 hasta que la separación vertical de los agujeros perforados en la muestra de la copia cumplan con el valor de referencia.
8. Después de hacer el ajuste, apriete dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 (G) aflojados en el paso 3.
9. Utilice cuatro tornillos (3) para volver a instalar la cubierta superior (5) que fue quitada en el paso 2. Para conocer detalles, consulte los pasos 16 y 17 de la página 6.  
<Valor de referencia> Separación vertical de los agujeros perforados: ±2 mm

7. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 6, bis der Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher auf der Testkopie innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.
8. Nach der Einstellung sind die beiden in Schritt 3 gelösten M4 × 10 Passstift-Verbundschrauben (G) wieder festzuziehen.
9. Benutzen Sie die vier Schrauben (3), um die obere Abdeckung (5) anzubringen, die in Schritt 2 entfernt wurde. Nähere Einzelheiten erfahren Sie in den Schritten 16 und 17 auf Seite 6.  
<Bezugswert> Vertikalabstand der Stanzlöcher: ±2 mm

7. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 6 finché la distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione nella copia campione non rientra nel valore di riferimento.
8. Dopo la regolazione, serrare le due viti con testa a croce S M4 × 10 (G) allentate nel passo 3.
9. Utilizzare quattro viti (3) per reinstallare il coperchio (5) rimosso nel passo 2. Per dettagli, vedere passi 16 e 17 a pagina 6.  
<Valore di riferimento> Distanza verticale dei fori di perforazione: ±2 mm

7. 重复步骤 1 至 6 直到复印样本上打孔垂直间隙在标准值范围之内。
8. 调整后，拧紧在步骤 3 中松开的 2 颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (G)。
9. 用 4 颗螺钉 (3) 重新安装在步骤 2 中拆下的上盖板 (5)。有关详细信息，请参见第 6 页上的步骤 16 和步骤 17。  
<标准值> 打孔的垂直间隙: ±2mm

7. コピーサンプルのパンチ穴のずれが基準値内になるまで手順 1 ～ 6 を繰り返す。
8. 調整終了後、手順 3 で緩めたビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (G) 2 本を締め付ける。
9. 手順 2 で外した天カバー (5) をビス (3) 4 本で元通り取り付ける。詳細は 6 ページ手順 16、17 を参照のこと。  
<基準値> パンチ穴のずれ: ± 2mm



#### [Checking distance from leading edge to the punch holes]

1. In the punch mode, perform a test copy with paper fed from the MP tray.
2. Check the distance from the paper leading edge to the punch holes (a). If the distance is out of the reference range, follow the steps below to adjust the position.  
<Reference value> Distance (a) in metric specification: 9.5 ± 2 mm  
Distance (a) in inch specification: 5.5 ± 2 mm

#### Adjusting distance from leading edge to the punch holes

1. Enter the maintenance mode U246, select FINISHER 3000 and PUNCH POS ADJ mode.
2. Adjust the setting value.  
If (a) is shorter than the reference value, increase the setting value.  
If (a) is larger than the reference value, decrease the setting value.  
Changing the value by 1 moves the punching position by approximately 0.49 mm

#### [Vérification de la distance du bord d'entrée aux perforations]

1. Dans le mode perforation, effectuer une copie de test avec du papier alimenté depuis le plateau multifonction.
2. Vérifier la distance entre le bord d'entrée du papier et les perforations (a). Si la distance se trouve hors de la gamme de référence, suivre les étapes ci-dessous pour ajuster la position.  
<Valeur de référence> Distance (a) en spécifications métriques: 9,5 ± 2 mm  
Distance (a) en spécifications en pouces: 5,5 ± 2 mm

#### Ajustement de la distance entre le bord d'entrée et les perforations

1. Entrer le mode d'entretien U246, sélectionner FINISHER 3000 et le mode PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Ajuster la valeur de réglage.  
Si (a) est inférieur à la valeur de référence, augmenter la valeur de réglage.  
Si (a) est supérieur à la valeur de référence, diminuer la valeur de réglage.  
Changer la valeur de 1 pour déplacer la position de perforation d'environ 0,49 mm.

#### [Comprobación de la distancia del borde delantero a los agujeros perforados]

1. En el modo de perforación, haga una copia de prueba con el papel alimentado desde la bandeja MP.
2. Compruebe la distancia del borde delantero del papel a los agujeros perforados (a). Si la distancia no se encuentra dentro del valor de referencia, siga los pasos de abajo para ajustar la posición.  
<Valor de referencia> Distancia (a) en el sistema métrico: 9,5 ± 2 mm  
Distancia (a) en pulgadas: 5,5 ± 2 mm

#### Ajuste de la distancia del borde delantero a los agujeros perforados

1. Entre en el modo de mantenimiento U246, seleccione FINISHER 3000 y el modo PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Ajuste el valor de configuración.  
Si (a) es inferior al valor de referencia, aumente el valor de configuración.  
Si (a) es superior al valor de referencia, disminuya el valor de configuración.  
El cambio del valor en 1 desplaza la posición de perforación 0,49 mm aproximadamente.

#### [Überprüfen des Abstands von der Vorderkante des Papiers zu den Stanzlöchern]

1. Führen Sie im Lochermodus eine Testkopie durch, wobei das Papier vom MP-Fach aus zugeführt wird.
2. Überprüfen Sie den Abstand von der Vorderkante des Papiers zu den Stanzlöchern (a). Wenn der Abstand außerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt, ist die Einstellung gemäß den nachfolgenden Schritte durchzuführen.  
<Bezugswert> Metrischer Abstand (a): 9,5 ± 2 mm  
Abstand in Zoll (a): 5,5 ± 2 mm

#### Einstellen des Abstands von der Vorderkante zu den Stanzlöchern

1. Geben Sie den Wartungsmodus U246 ein und wählen Sie dann FINISHER 3000 und PUNCH POS ADJ.
2. Regeln Sie den Einstellungswert.  
Wenn (a) kleiner als der Bezugswert ist, ist der Einstellungswert zu erhöhen.  
Wenn (a) größer als der Bezugswert ist, ist der Einstellungswert zu reduzieren.  
Eine Veränderung des Wertes um 1 verschiebt die Lochstanzposition um 0,49 mm.

#### [Verificare la distanza distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione]

1. In modalità di perforazione, eseguire una copia di prova con la carta alimentata dal vassoio MP.
2. Controllare la distanza tra i fori di perforazione e il bordo anteriore del foglio (a). Se la distanza non è compresa tra gli intervalli di riferimento, eseguire i passaggi successivi per regolarne la posizione.  
<Valori di riferimento> Distanza (a) Specificazione in unità metrica: 9,5 ± 2 mm  
Distanza (a) Specificazione in pollici: 5,5 ± 2 mm

#### Impostazione della distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione

1. Entrare in modalità di manutenzione U246, selezionare le modalità FINISHER 3000 e PUNCH POS ADJ (regola posizione di cucitura).
2. Regolare il valore di impostazione.  
Nel caso in cui (a) sia minore del valore di riferimento, aumentare il valore di impostazione.  
Se (a) è maggiore del valore previsto, ridurre il valore di impostazione.  
La modifica del valore 1 determina lo spostamento della posizione di cucitura di circa 0,49 mm

#### [ 检查前边到打孔的距离 ]

1. 在打孔模式中，从 MP 托盘进纸进行测试复印。
2. 检查纸张前边到打孔 (a) 的距离。如果距离超出标准值范围，按照下列步骤调整位置。  
<标准值> 公制规格的距离 (a): 9.5 ± 2mm  
英制规格的距离 (a): 5.5 ± 2mm

#### 调整前边到打孔的距离

1. 进入维修模式 U246，选择 FINISHER 3000（整理器 3000）和 PUNCH POS ADJ（打孔位置调整）模式。
2. 调整设定值。  
如果 (a) 短于标准值，请增大设定值。  
如果 (a) 长于标准值，请减小设定值。  
以 1 更改数值将打孔位置移动大约 0.49mm

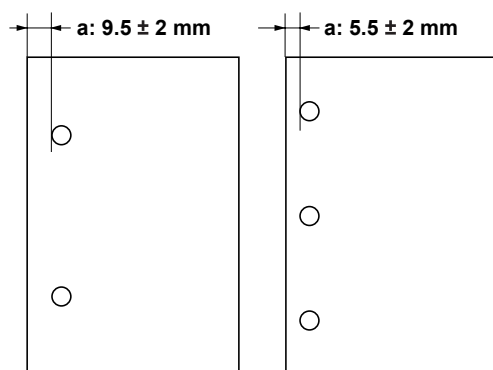
#### [パンチ穴の先端位置確認]

1. パンチモード、手差し給紙でテストコピーを行う。
2. パンチ穴の用紙先端からの位置 (a) を確認する。位置のずれが基準値外の場合、次の手順で調整を行う。  
<基準値> センチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 9.5 ± 2mm  
インチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 5.5 ± 2mm

#### パンチ穴の先端位置調整

1. メンテナンスモード U246 にセットし、FINISHER 3000、PUNCH POS ADJ を選択する。
2. 設定値を調整する。  
(a) が基準値より短い場合: 設定値を上げる。  
(a) が基準値より長い場合: 設定値を下げる。  
1 ステップ当たりの変化量: 約 0.49mm





3. Perform a test copy.
4. Repeat steps 1 to 3 until the distance from the leading edge to the punch hole indicates the value within the reference range.  
 <Reference value> Distance (a) in metric specification: 9.5 ±2 mm  
 Distance (a) in inch specification: 5.5 ±2 mm

3. Effectuer une copie de test.
4. Répéter les étapes 1 à 3 jusqu'à ce que la distance entre le bord d'entrée et la perforation indique une valeur se trouvant à l'intérieur de la gamme de référence.  
 <Valeur de référence> Distance (a) en spécifications métriques: 9,5 ±2 mm  
 Distance (a) en spécifications en pouces: 5,5 ±2 mm

3. Haga una copia de prueba.
4. Repita los pasos 1 a 3 hasta que la distancia del borde de entrada al agujero perforado indique una distancia comprendida dentro del valor de referencia.  
 <Valor de referencia> Distancia (a) en el sistema métrico: 9,5 ±2 mm  
 Distancia (a) en pulgadas: 5,5 ±2 mm

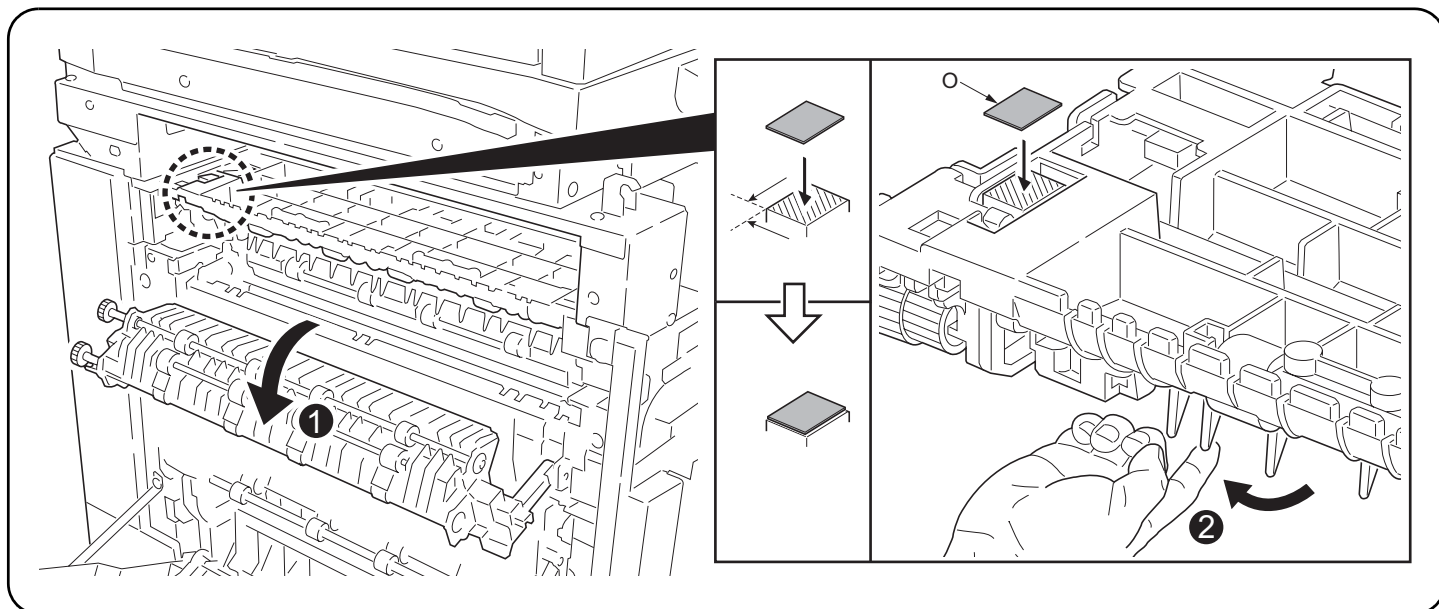
3. Führen Sie eine Testkopie durch.
4. Wiederholen Sie die Schritte 1 bis 3, bis der Abstand von der Vorderkante zur Lochung innerhalb des Bezugswertes liegt.  
 <Bezugswert> Metrischer Abstand (a): 9,5 ±2 mm  
 Abstand in Zoll (a): 5,5 ±2 mm

3. Eseguire una copia di prova.
4. Ripetere i passi da 1 a 3 finché la distanza dal bordo anteriore ai fori di perforazione non rientra negli intervalli di riferimento.  
 <Valori di riferimento> Distanza (a) Specificazione in unità metrica: 9,5 ±2 mm  
 Distanza (a) Specificazione in pollici: 5,5 ±2 mm

3. 进行测试复印。
4. 重复步骤 1 至 3 直到前边到打孔的距离表示数值在标准值范围之内。  
 <标准值> 公制规格的距离 (a): 9.5 ±2mm  
 英制规格的距离 (a): 5.5 ±2mm

3. テストコピーを行う
4. パンチ穴の用紙先端までの位置が基準値内になるまで、手順 1～3 を繰り返す。  
 <基準値> センチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 9.5 ± 2mm  
 インチ仕様 (a) のずれ: 5.5 ± 2mm

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR JOB SEPARATOR**



### English **Note**

Clean the shaded area of the machine main body before installing the Job Separator and attach the spacer (O) which is included in the Job Separator carton.

### Français **Remarque**

Avant d'installer le séparateur de travaux, nettoyer la partie sombre du système et coller l'autocollant (O) inclus dans le carton.

### Español **Nota**

Limpiar el área sombreada de la unidad principal antes de instalar el Separador de Trabajos y apretar el calzo (O) que viene incluido en el Separador de Trabajos.

### Deutsch **Hinweis**

Vor der Installation vom Job-Separator reinigen Sie den schattierten Bereich und kleben Sie den Abstandstück (O) an, der in der Kartonverpackung eingepackt ist.

### Italiano **Nota**

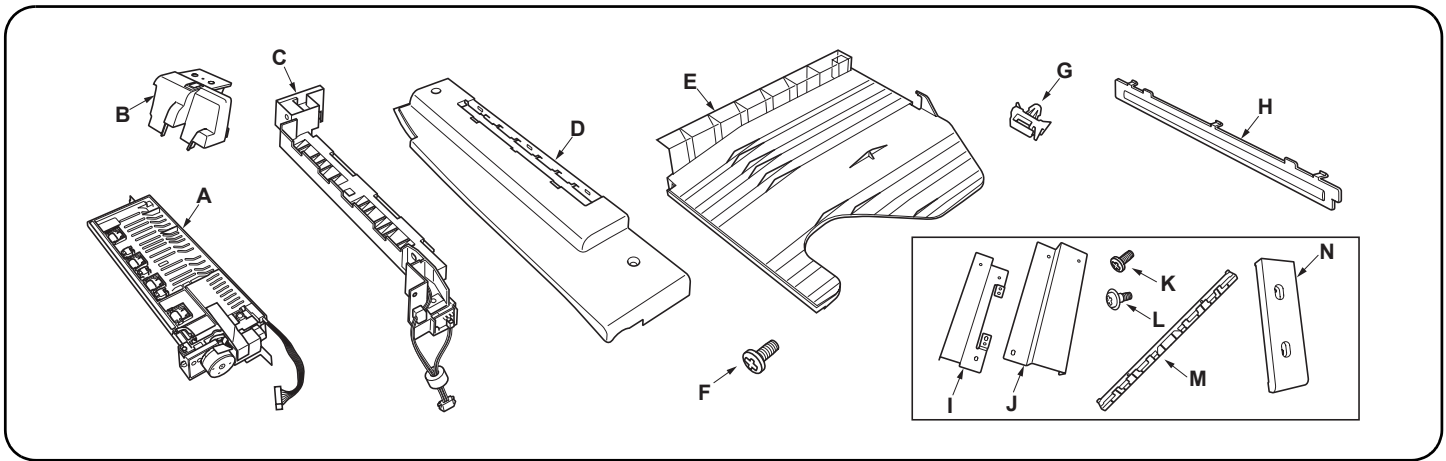
Prima di installare il Job Separator, pulire la zona in grigio come rappresentato in figura e attaccare lo Spacer (O) che si trova all'interno dell'imballo.

### 简体中文 **注意**

在安装作业分离器之前请清洁机器主机上的阴影区域，并安装作业分离器包装盒内附带的垫片(O)。

### 日本語 **注意**

ジョブセパレータ装着前に機械本体の斜線部を清掃し、同梱のスペーサ(O)を貼り付けてください。



<b>English</b>		E Copy tray ..... 1	I Stationary plate F ..... 1
<b>Supplied Parts</b>		F M4 x 10-tap-tight S screws ..... 6	J Stationary plate R ..... 1
A Job separator ..... 1	G Wire saddle ..... 1	H Cover left OP ..... 1	K M4 x 10 tap-tight screws ..... 9
B Left front cover JS ..... 1			L Shoulder screw ..... 1
C Retainer ..... 1			M Guide plate ..... 1
D Upper left cover JS ..... 1			N Cover AT ..... 1
	<b>Supplied Parts not to be Used</b>		
	The following parts are not used for installing the job separator. They are the parts for installing the document finisher.		

<b>Français</b>		E Plateau à copies ..... 1	I Plaque fixe F ..... 1
<b>Pièces fournies</b>		F Vis S taraudées M4 x 10 ..... 6	J Plaque fixe R ..... 1
A Séparateur de travaux ..... 1	G Serre-câble ..... 1	H Couvercle de gauche OP ..... 1	K Vis taraudées M4 x 10 ..... 9
B Couverture avant gauche JS ..... 1			L Vis d'épaule ..... 1
C Arrêtoir ..... 1			M Plaque de guidage ..... 1
D Couvercle supérieur gauche JS ..... 1			N Couvercle de AT ..... 1
	<b>Pièces fournies à ne pas utiliser</b>		
	Les pièces suivantes ne sont pas utilisées pour installer le séparateur de travaux. Elles permettent d'installer le finisseur de document.		

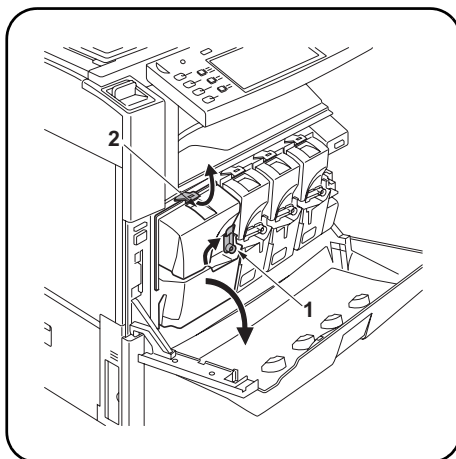
<b>Español</b>		E Bandeja de copias ..... 1	I Placa estacionaria F ..... 1
<b>Piezas suministradas</b>		F Tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 S ..... 6	J Placa estacionaria R ..... 1
A Separador de trabajos ..... 1	G Pinza de cable ..... 1	H Cubierta izquierda OP ..... 1	K Tornillos de ajuste M4 x 10 ..... 9
B Cubierta delantera izquierda JS ..... 1			L Tornillo de hombro ..... 1
C Retenedor ..... 1			M Placa guía ..... 1
D Cubierta superior izquierda JS ..... 1			N Cubierta AT ..... 1
	<b>Piezas suministradas que no debe utilizar</b>		
	Las piezas siguientes no se usan para instalar el separador de trabajos. Son piezas para la instalación del finalizador de documentos.		

<b>Deutsch</b>		E Kopienablage ..... 1	I Halterung F ..... 1
<b>Gelieferte Teile</b>		F M4 x 10 Blechschrauben S ..... 6	J Halterung R ..... 1
A Jobtrenner ..... 1	G Kabelschelle ..... 1	H Linke Abdeckung OP ..... 1	K M4 x 10 Blechschrauben ..... 9
B Linke Frontabdeckung JS ..... 1			L Bundschraube ..... 1
C Halter ..... 1			M Führungsplatte ..... 1
D Obere linke Abdeckung JS ..... 1			N Abdeckung AT ..... 1
	<b>Nicht benötigte, gelieferte Teile</b>		
	Folgende Teile werden nicht für die Installation des Jobtrenners benötigt. Diese Teile dienen zur Installation des Dokument-Finishers.		

<b>Italiano</b>		E Vassoio copie ..... 1	I Piastra fissa F ..... 1
<b>Parti fornite</b>		F Bulloni di fissaggio senza dado S M4 x 10 ..... 6	J Piastra fissa R ..... 1
A Separatore ..... 1	G Fermacavo ..... 1	H Coperchio sinistro OP ..... 1	K Bulloni di fissaggio senza dado M4 x 10 ..... 9
B Coperchio frontale sinistro JS ..... 1			L Vite a colletto ..... 1
C Fermo ..... 1			M Piastra di guida ..... 1
D Coperchio superiore sinistro JS ..... 1			N Coperchio AT ..... 1
	<b>Parti fornite da non utilizzare</b>		
	Le parti indicate di seguito non devono essere utilizzate per l'installazione del separatore. Si tratta delle parti da utilizzare per l'installazione del rifinitore di documenti.		

<b>简体中文</b>		E 排纸托盘 ..... 1	I 固定板 F ..... 1
<b>附属部件</b>		F M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 ..... 6	J 固定板 R ..... 1
A 作业分离器 ..... 1	G 电线束线夹 ..... 1	H 左盖板 OP ..... 1	K M4 x 10 攻丝紧固型螺钉 ..... 9
B 左前盖板 JS ..... 1			L 阶梯螺钉 ..... 1
C 挡圈 ..... 1			M 导向板 ..... 1
D 左上盖板 JS ..... 1			N 盖板 AT ..... 1
	<b>不需要使用的附属部件</b>		
	不需要使用下列零件安装作业分离器。这些部件供安装文档整理器。		

<b>日本語</b>		E 排出トレイ ..... 1	I 固定板 F ..... 1
<b>付属品</b>		F ビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S ..... 6	J 固定板 R ..... 1
A ジョブセパレータ ..... 1	G ワイヤースドル ..... 1	H 左カバー OP ..... 1	K ビス M4 x 10 タップタイト S ..... 9
B 左前カバー JS ..... 1			L 段付きビス ..... 1
C リテーナー ..... 1			M ガイド板 ..... 1
D 左上カバー JS ..... 1			N カバー AT ..... 1
	<b>使用しない付属品</b>		
	以下はジョブセパレータの設置では使用しない。ドキュメントフィニッシャー用の設置部品である。		

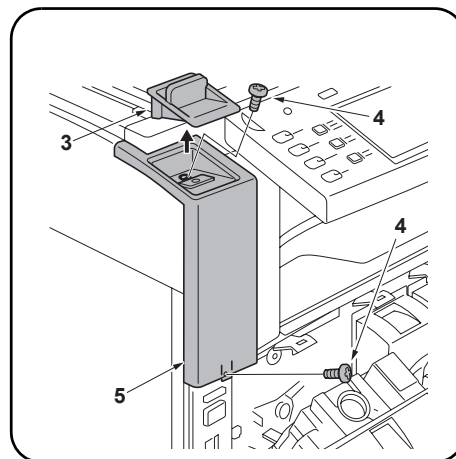


### Installation procedure

When installing a job separator, be sure to turn the MFP power off and disconnect the power plug from the wall outlet.

### Remove the left front cover.

1. Open the front cover.
2. Turn toner container lock lever (1) for the toner container [black] clockwise to release the lock.
3. Lift clip (2) to open the toner container [black].



4. Remove clip support (3).
5. Remove two screws (4) and then remove left front cover (5).

### Méthode d'installation

Lors de l'installation du séparateur de travaux, veiller à mettre l'interrupteur du MFP hors tension et à débrancher la fiche d'alimentation de la prise murale.

### Retirer le couvercle avant gauche.

1. Ouvrir le couvercle avant.
2. Tourner le levier de verrouillage de la cartouche de toner (1) [noir] dans le sens des aiguilles d'une montre pour le déverrouiller.
3. Soulever l'attache (2) pour ouvrir la cartouche de toner [noir].

4. Retirer le support d'attache (3).
5. Retirer les deux vis (4), puis le couvercle avant gauche (5).

### Procedimiento de instalación

Cuando instale un separador de trabajos, asegúrese de apagar el MFP colocando el interruptor principal a OFF y desenchúfelo del tomacorriente en la pared.

### Desmóntele la cubierta delantera izquierda.

1. Abra la cubierta delantera.
2. Gire la palanca de bloqueo del recipiente de tóner (1) [negro] en sentido horario para desbloquearlo.
3. Levante el clip (2) para abrir el recipiente de tóner [negro].

4. Desmóntele el soporte del clip (3).
5. Extraiga los dos tornillos (4) y desmóntele la cubierta delantera izquierda (5).

### Installationsverfahren

Schalten Sie vor Installation des Jobtrenners unbedingt den MFP-Hauptschalter aus, und ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Steckdose.

### Entfernen der linken Frontabdeckung.

1. Linke Frontabdeckung öffnen.
2. Verriegelungshebel für den Tonerbehälter (1) [schwarz] im Uhrzeigersinn drehen, um die Verriegelung zu lösen.
3. Clip (2) anheben, um den Tonerbehälter [schwarz] zu öffnen.

4. Clip-Halterung abnehmen (3).
5. Zwei Schrauben (4) herausdrehen und linke Frontabdeckung abnehmen (5).

### Istruzioni per il montaggio

Spegnete l'interruttore principale e sfilate la spina dell'MFP dalla presa prima di installare il separatore.

### Rimuovete il coperchio frontale sinistro.

1. Aprite il coperchio frontale.
2. Ruotate la leva di bloccaggio del contenitore del toner (1) [nero] in senso orario per rilasciare il blocco.
3. Sollevare la clip (2) per aprire il contenitore del toner [nero].

4. Rimuovete il supporto della clip (3).
5. Rimuovete le due viti (4), quindi rimuovete il coperchio frontale sinistro (5).

### 安装步骤。

安装作业分离器时，请务必将 MFP 电源关闭，并拔下电源插头再进行安装作业。

### 拆下左前盖板。

1. 打开前盖板。
2. 将碳粉盒 [黑色] 的碳粉盒锁定杆 (1) 顺时针旋转松开锁定。
3. 抬起环形针 (2) 打开碳粉盒 [黑色]。

### 4. 拆下环形针支架 (3)。

5. 拆下 2 个螺钉 (4)，然后拆下左前盖板 (5)。

### 取付手順

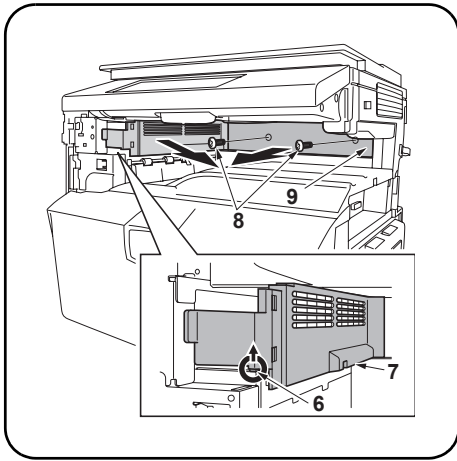
ジョブセパレータを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

### 左前カバーの取り外し

1. 前カバーを開く。
2. トナーコンテナ [黒] のトナーコンテナロックレバー (1) を右へ回し、ロックを解除する。
3. クリップ (2) を上げ、トナーコンテナ [黒] を開く。

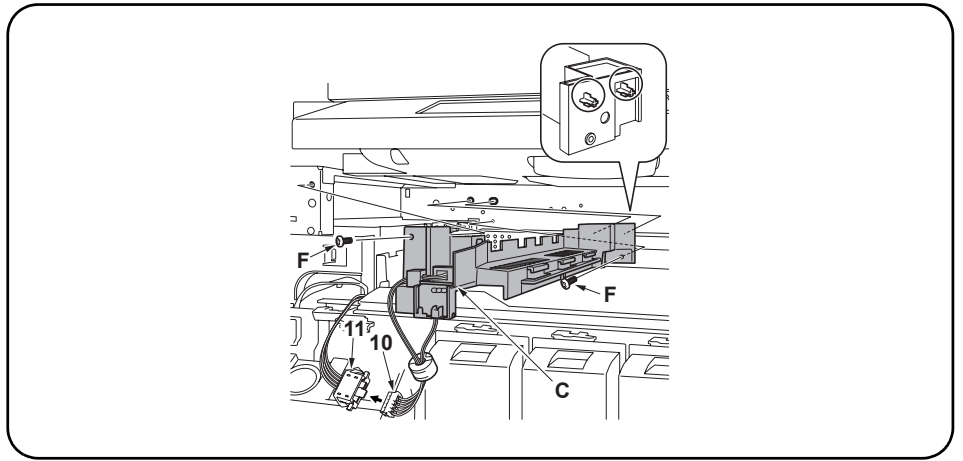
### 4. クリップ受け (3) を取り外す。

5. ビス (4) 2 本を外し、左前カバー (5) を取り外す。



#### Remove the copy cover.

6. Unlock copy cover pawl (6) and then remove ejection cover (7).
7. Remove two screws (8) and then remove inner ejection cover (9).



#### Attach the retainer.

8. Remove the fixing tape of retainer (C) and pull out the connector (10).
9. Install retainer (C) and secure it with two M4 × 10-tap-tight S (F) screws.
10. Connect the connector (10) of the retainer (C) to the connector (11) of the MFP.

#### Retirer le couvercle à copies.

6. Déverrouiller le cliquet du couvercle à copies (6), puis retirer le couvercle d'éjection (7).
7. Retirer les deux vis (8), puis le couvercle d'éjection interne (9).

#### Fixer l'arrêt.

8. Retirer la bande adhésive de fixation de l'arrêt (C) et extraire le connecteur (10).
9. Installer l'arrêt (C) et le fixer à l'aide des deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (F).
10. Brancher le connecteur (10) de l'arrêt (C) au connecteur (11) du MFP.

#### Desmote la cubierta de copias.

6. Desbloquee el trinquete de la cubierta de copias (6) y desmote la cubierta de expulsión (7).
7. Extraiga dos tornillos (8) y desmote la cubierta de expulsión interior (9).

#### Instale el retenedor.

8. Quite la cinta adhesiva del retenedor (C) y saque el conector (10).
9. Instale el retenedor (C) y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 S (F).
10. Conecte el conector (10) del retenedor (C) al conector (11) del MFP.

#### Entfernen der Kopienabdeckung.

6. Klinke der Kopienabdeckung (6) entriegeln und Auswurfabdeckung (7) abnehmen.
7. Zwei Schrauben (8) herausdrehen und innere Auswurfabdeckung abnehmen (9).

#### Anbringen des Halters.

8. Fixierband vom Halter (C) entfernen und Steckverbinder abziehen (10).
9. Halter (C) einsetzen und mit zwei M4 × 10 Blechschrauben S (F) befestigen.
10. Steckverbinder (10) des Halters (C) mit dem Steckverbinder (11) des MFP verbinden.

#### Rimuovete il coperchio copie.

6. Sbloccate il nottolino del coperchio copie (6), quindi rimuovete il coperchio di espulsione carta (7).
7. Rimuovete le due viti (8), quindi rimuovete il coperchio interno di espulsione carta (9).

#### Montate il fermo.

8. Rimuovete il nastro di fissaggio del fermo (C) ed estraete il connettore (10).
9. Installate il fermo (C) e fissatelo con due bulloni di fissaggio senza dado S M4 × 10 (F).
10. Collegate il connettore (10) del fermo (C) al connettore (11) dell' MFP.

#### 拆下复印盖板。

6. 解除复印盖板卡爪部 (6) 的锁定, 然后拆下排纸盖板 (7)。
7. 拆下 2 个螺钉 (8), 然后拆下内部排纸盖板 (9)。

#### 安装挡圈。

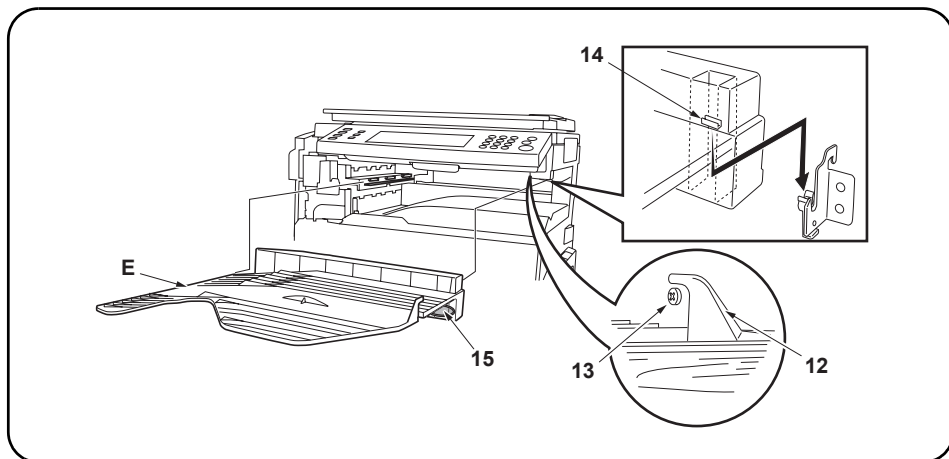
8. 拆下挡圈 (C) 的固定胶带并拉出插头 (10)。
9. 安装挡圈 (C) 并用两颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (F) 固定。
10. 将挡圈 (C) 的插头 (10) 连接至 MFP 的插头 (11)。

#### 排出カバーの取り外し

6. 排出カバーのツメ (6) を外し、排出カバー (7) を取り外す。
7. ビス (8) 2 本を外し、排出内カバー (9) を取り外す。

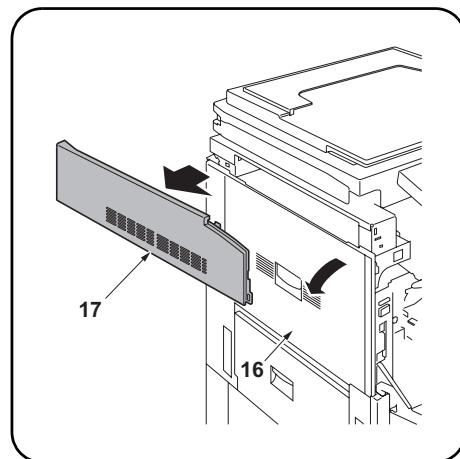
#### リテイナーの取り付け

8. リテイナー (C) のテープを剥がし、コネクタ (10) を引き出す。
9. リテイナー (C) を取り付け、ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (F) 2 本で固定する。
10. リテイナー (C) のコネクタ (10) と MFP 本体のコネクタ (11) を接続する。



#### Attach the copy tray.

11. Insert copy tray (E) into the right-side groove of the MFP. Push copy tray (E) until its hook (12) is engaged with the MFP projection (13).
12. Engage fitting support (14) of copy tray (E) with the hook attached to the MFP. To engage the support with the hook easily, push down the area (15).  
**If the copy tray is not engaged with the hook, the upper right area of the copy tray is floating. Be sure to engage the tray with the hook.**



#### Attach the job separator.

13. Open left cover (16).
14. Remove upper left cover (17).

#### Fixer le plateau à copies.

11. Insérer le plateau à copies (E) dans la rainure droite du MFP. Pousser le plateau à copies (E) jusqu'à ce que le crochet (12) soit en prise avec la saillie du MFP (13).
12. Mettre le support de fixation (14) du plateau à copies (E) en prise avec le crochet fixé au MFP. Afin de faciliter l'opération, abaisser la zone (15).  
**Si le plateau à copies n'est pas en prise avec le crochet, la partie supérieure droite du plateau à copies n'est pas stable. Veiller à ce que le plateau et le crochet soient bien en prise.**

#### Fixer le séparateur de travaux.

13. Ouvrir le couvercle gauche (16).
14. Retirer le couvercle supérieur gauche (17).

#### Instale la bandeja de copias.

11. Inserte la bandeja de copias (E) en la ranura derecha del MFP. Empuje la bandeja de copias (E) hasta que su gancho (12) se acople a la proyección del MFP (13).
12. Acople el soporte de encaje (14) de la bandeja de copias (E) al gancho instalado en el MFP. Para acoplar fácilmente el soporte al gancho, empuje hacia abajo en el área (15).  
**Si la bandeja de copias no se acopla al gancho, el área superior derecha de la misma queda flotante. Asegúrese de acoplar la bandeja al gancho.**

#### Instale el separador de trabajos.

13. Abra la cubierta izquierda (16).
14. Desmonte la cubierta superior izquierda (17).

#### Anbringen der Kopienablage.

11. Kopienablage (E) in die rechte Seitennut des MFP einsetzen. So gegen die Kopienablage (E) drücken, dass deren Haken (12) in den Vorsprung (13) am MFP eingreift.
12. Träger (14) der Kopienablage (E) einsetzen, während sich der Haken mit dem MFP im Eingriff befindet. Um den Träger problemlos mit dem Haken einsetzen zu können, den Bereich (15) nach unten drücken.  
**Wenn die Kopienablage nicht in den Haken eingreift, ist der obere rechte Bereich der Kopienablage nicht fixiert. Auf einwandfreien Eingriff des Hakens achten.**

#### Anbringen des Jobtrenners.

13. Linke Abdeckung (16) öffnen.
14. Obere linke Abdeckung (17) abnehmen.

#### Montate il vassoio copie.

11. Inserite il vassoio copie (E) nell'incavo del lato destro dell'MFP. Spingete il vassoio copie (E) fino ad inserire il gancio (12) nella sporgenza dell'MFP (13).
12. Inserite il supporto a incastro (14) del vassoio copie (E) nel gancio dell'MFP. Per inserire facilmente il supporto nel gancio, spingete verso il basso l'area (15).  
**Se il vassoio copie non è inserito nel gancio, l'area superiore destra del vassoio copie si muove. Abbiate cura di inserire il vassoio nel gancio.**

#### Montate il separatore.

13. Aprite il coperchio sinistro (16).
14. Rimuovete il coperchio superiore sinistro (17).

#### 安装排纸托盘。

11. 将排纸托盘 (E) 插入到 MFP 右侧的沟槽。将排纸托盘 (E) 向里按, 直到其挂钩部 (12) 与 MFP 突出部 (13) 啮合。
12. 将排纸托盘 (E) 的附件支架 (14) 与 MFP 自带的挂钩部啮合。若要轻松地将支架与挂钩部啮合, 按下区域 (15)。  
**如果排纸托盘与挂钩部未啮合, 则表明排纸托盘的右上部浮起。请务必将排纸托盘与挂钩部啮合。**

#### 安装作业分离器。

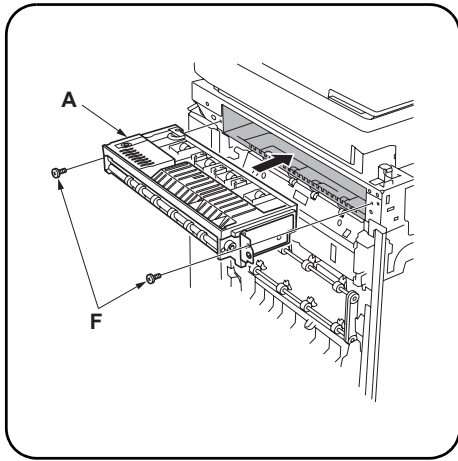
13. 打开左盖板 (16)。
14. 拆下左上盖板 (17)。

#### 排出トレイの取り付け

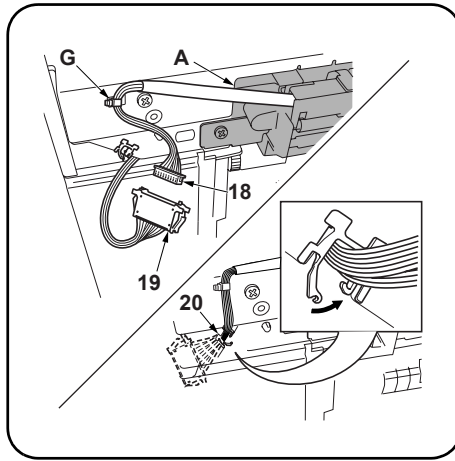
11. 排出トレイ (E) を MFP 本体の右側の溝に沿って挿入する。排出トレイ (E) の引っ掛け部 (12) が MFP 本体の突起 (13) に引っ掛かるまで押し込むこと。
12. 排出トレイ (E) の取り付け部 (14) を MFP 本体のフックに引っ掛ける。フックには (15) の部分を押しながら下げると引っ掛けやすい。  
**排出トレイがフックに引っ掛かっていない場合、排出トレイが右上に浮いた状態になる。確実にフックに引っ掛けること。**

#### ジョブセパレータの取り付け

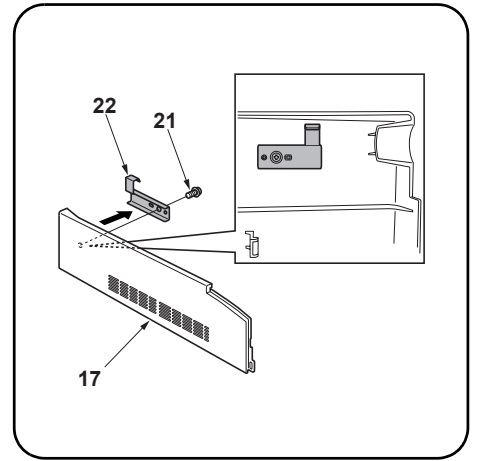
13. 左カバー (16) を開く。
14. 左上カバー (17) を取り外す。



15. Insert job separator (A) in the direction of the arrow and secure it with two M4 × 10-tap-tight S (F) screws.



16. Attach wire saddle (G) to the left side of the MFP.  
17. Anchor the wires at the left side of job separator (A) with wire saddle (G) and connect connector (18) with connector (19).  
18. Place the cables and connectors in the rear side of the MFP and secure the cable with a wire saddle (20).



**Attaching the upper left cover JS.**

19. Remove the screw (21) from the rear side of upper left cover (17) that has been removed in Procedure 14 to remove engaging fitting (22).

15. Insérer le séparateur de travaux (A) dans la direction de la flèche et le fixer à l'aide des deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (F).

16. Fixer le serre-cable (G) sur le cote gauche du MFP.  
17. Fixer les cables sur le cote gauche du séparateur de travaux (A) à l'aide du serre-cable (G) et brancher le connecteur (18) au connecteur (19).  
18. Placer les câbles et les connecteurs à l'arrière du MFP et fixer le câble à l'aide d'un serre-câble (20).

**Fixer le couvercle supérieur gauche JS.**

19. Oter la vis (21) à l'arrière du couvercle supérieur gauche (17), qui a été retirée lors de la procédure 14, pour enlever le support de fixation (22).

15. Inserte el separador de trabajos (A) en la dirección de la flecha y asegúrelo con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 S (F).

16. Monte la pinza del cable (G) en el lado izquierdo del MFP.  
17. Sujete los cables en el lado izquierdo del separador de trabajos (A) con la pinza del cable (G) y conecte el conector (18) con el conector (19).  
18. Coloque los cables y conectores en el lado trasero del MFP y asegure el cable con una pinza de cable (20).

**Instalación de la cubierta superior izquierda JS.**

19. Extraiga el tornillo (21) del lado trasero de la cubierta superior izquierda (17) que se ha desmontado en el Procedimiento 14 para retirar el herraje de acoplamiento (22).

15. Jobtrenner (A) in Pfeilrichtung einsetzen und mit zwei M4 × 10 Blechschrauben S (F) befestigen.

16. Kabelschelle (G) an der linken Seite des MFP befestigen.  
17. Kabel an der linken Seite des Jobtrenners (A) mit Kabelschelle (G) fixieren und Steckverbinder (18) mit Steckverbinder (19) verbinden.  
18. Kabel und Steckverbinder an der Rückseite des MFP verlegen und Kabel mit Kabelschelle fixieren (20).

**Anbringen der oberen linken Abdeckung JS.**

19. Schraube (21) von der Rückseite der in Schritt 14 ausgebauten oberen linken Abdeckung (17) herausdrehen, um den Einsatz (22) herauszunehmen.

15. Inserite il separatore (A) nella direzione della freccia e fissatelo con due bulloni di fissaggio senza dado S M4 × 10 (F).

16. Montate un fermacavo (G) sul lato sinistro dell'MFP.  
17. Ancorate i fili sul lato sinistro del separatore (A) con il fermacavo (G) e collegate il connettore (18) con il connettore (19).  
18. Posizionate i cavi e i connettori nel lato posteriore dell'MFP e fissate il cavo con un fermacavo (20).

**Montaggio del coperchio superiore sinistro JS.**

19. Rimuovete la vite (21) dal lato posteriore del coperchio superiore sinistro (17) che è stato rimosso nella Procedura 14 per rimuovere l'accessorio di innesto (22).

15. 将作业分离器 (A) 按箭头的方向插入并用两颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (F) 固定。

16. 将电线束线夹 (G) 安装到 MFP 的左侧。  
17. 用电线束线夹 (G) 将导线固定在作业分隔装置 (A) 左侧, 并用插头 (19) 连接插头 (18)。  
18. 将电缆和插头放在 MFP 的后部并用鞍式线 (20) 固定电缆。

**安装左上盖板 JS。**

19. 从第 14 步中拆下的左上盖板 (17) 的后部拆下螺钉 (21), 将啮合附件 (22) 拆下。

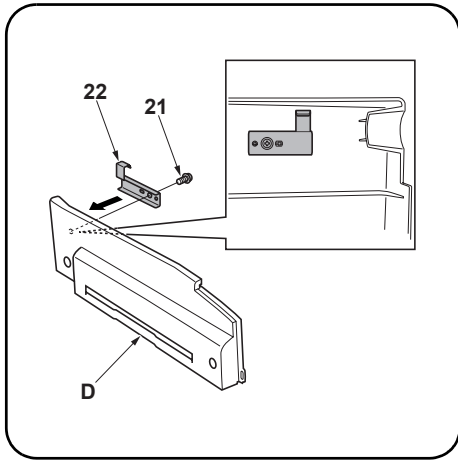
15. ジョブセパレータ (A) を矢印の方向へ挿入し、ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (F) 2 本で固定する。

16. ワイヤースドル (G) を MFP 本体左側へ取り付け。  
17. ジョブセパレータ左側のコネクタ (18) をワイヤースドル (G) へ通して固定し、MFP 本体左側のコネクタ (19) と接続する。  
18. ケーブルとコネクタを MFP 本体の奥へ入れ、ケーブルをワイヤースドル (20) で固定する。

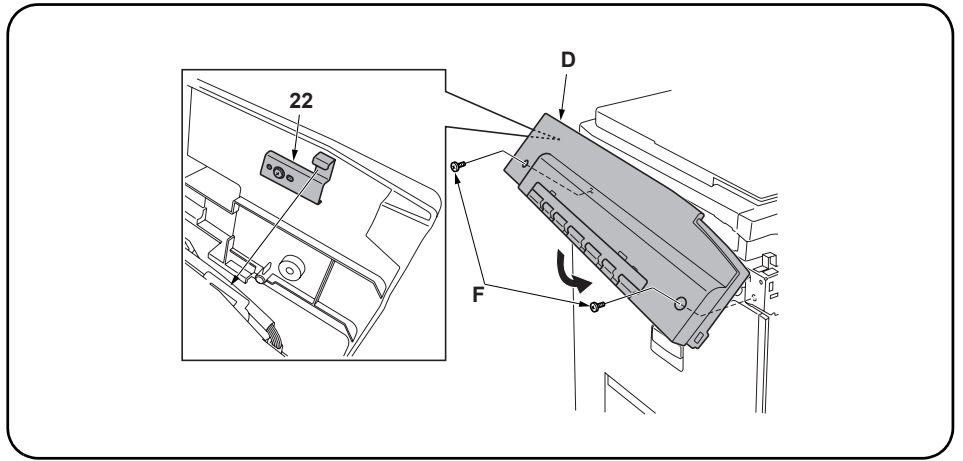
**左上カバー JS の取り付け**

19. 手順 14 で外した左上カバー (17) 裏側のビス (21) 1 本を外し、引っ掛け金具 (22) を取り外す。





**20.** Use the screw (21) that has been removed by Procedure 19 to attach engaging fitting (22) to the rear side of the supplied upper left cover JS (D).



**21.** Engage the pawl of attached engaging fitting (22) with the MFP and secure upper left cover JS (D) with two M4 × 10-tap-tight S (F) screws.

**20.** Utiliser la vis (21), qui a été retirée lors de la procédure 19, pour attacher le support de fixation (22) à l'arrière du couvercle supérieur gauche JS fourni (D).

**21.** Mettre le cliquet du support de fixation attaché (22) en prise avec le MFP et fixer le couvercle supérieur gauche JS (D) à l'aide des deux vis S taraudées M4 × 10 (F).

**20.** Use el tornillo (21) que ha extraído durante el Procedimiento 19 para instalar el herraje de acoplamiento (22) en el lado trasero de la cubierta superior izquierda JS (D) suministrada.

**21.** Acople el trinquete del herraje de acoplamiento instalado (22) al MFP y asegure la cubierta superior izquierda JS (D) con dos tornillos de ajuste M4 × 10 S (F).

**20.** Die in Schritt 19 ausgebaute Schraube (21) benutzen, um den Einsatz (22) an der Rückseite der mitgelieferten oberen linken Abdeckung JS (D) zu befestigen.

**21.** Die Klinke des montierten Einsatzes (22) in den MFP eingreifen lassen und obere linke Abdeckung JS (D) mit zwei M4 × 10 Blechschrauben (F) befestigen.

**20.** Utilizzate la vite (21) che è stata rimossa nella Procedura 19 per montare l'accessorio di innesto (22) sul lato posteriore del coperchio superiore sinistro JS (D) fornito.

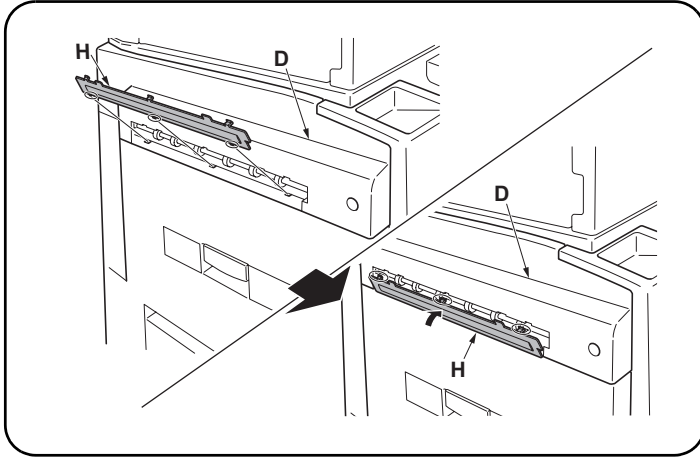
**21.** Innestate il nottolino dell'accessorio di innesto (22) montato con l'MFP e fissate il coperchio superiore sinistro JS (D) con due bulloni di fissaggio senza dado S M4 × 10 S (F).

**20.** 使用在第 19 步中拆下的螺钉 (21) 将啮合附件 (22) 安装在附带的左上盖板 JS (D) 的后部。

**21.** 将安装的啮合附件 (22) 的卡爪啮合在 MFP，并用两颗 M4 × 10 攻丝紧固型 S (F) 螺钉固定左上盖板 JS (D)。

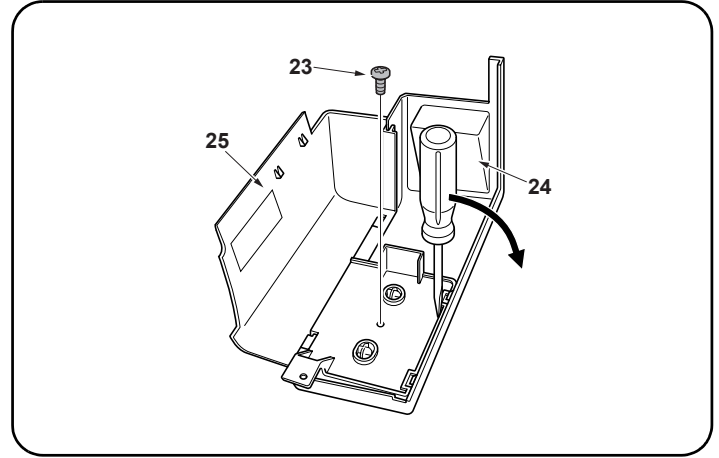
**20.** 手順 19 で外したビス (21) 1 本で、引っ掛け金具 (22) を左上カバー JS (D) 裏側へ取り付け。

**21.** 左上カバー JS (D) を、裏側のツメ (22) を MFP 本体へ引っ掛け、ビス M4 × 10 タップタイト S (F) 2 本で固定する。



**When installing the document finisher to the MFP, no need to perform step 22.**

22. Attach cover left OP (H) to upper left cover JS (D) by engaging the pawl on the back side of cover left OP (H).  
**Be sure to engage the lower pawl of cover left OP (H) first.**



**Assemble the left front cover JS.**

23. Remove the screw (23) from the left cover that has been removed in Procedure 5.  
 24. Insert the flat screwdriver between left front cover 1 (24) and left front cover 2 (25) to remove left front cover 2 (25) from left front cover 1 (24).

**Lors de l'installation du finisseur de document sur le MFP, il n'est pas nécessaire d'exécuter l'étape 22.**

22. Rattacher le couvercle de gauche OP (H) au couvercle supérieur gauche JS (D) en enclenchant le cliquet dans l'arrière du couvercle de gauche OP (H).  
**Veiller à enclencher d'abord le cliquet inférieur du couvercle de gauche OP (H).**

**Assembler le couvercle avant gauche JS.**

23. Retirer la vis (23) du couvercle gauche, enlevé lors de la procédure 5.  
 24. Insérer le tournevis plat entre le couvercle avant gauche 1 (24) et le couvercle avant gauche 2 (25) afin de retirer le couvercle avant gauche 2 (25) du couvercle avant gauche 1 (24).

**Quando instale el finalizador de documentos en el MFP no necesitará realizar el paso 22.**

22. Fije la cubierta izquierda OP (H) a la cubierta izquierda JS (D) encajando el trinquete en la parte trasera de la cubierta izquierda OP (H).  
**Asegúrese de encajar primero el trinquete inferior de la cubierta izquierda OP (H).**

**Ensamble la cubierta delantera izquierda JS.**

23. Extraiga el tornillo (23) de la cubierta izquierda que se ha desmontado en el Procedimiento 5.  
 24. Inserte el destornillador plano entre la cubierta delantera izquierda 1 (24) y la cubierta delantera izquierda 2 (25) para desmontar esta de aquella.

**Bei der Installation des Dokument-Finisher am MFP ist die Ausführung von Schritt 22 nicht erforderlich.**

22. Die linke Abdeckung OP (H) an der oberen linken Abdeckung JS (D) durch Einsetzen der Klinke auf der Rückseite der linken Abdeckung OP (H) befestigen.  
**Darauf achten, die untere Klinke der linken Abdeckung OP (H) zuerst einzusetzen.**

**Montage der linken Frontabdeckung JS.**

23. Die Schrauben (23) aus der in Schritt 5 ausgebauten linken Abdeckung herausdrehen.  
 24. Schlitzschraubendreher zwischen der linken Frontabdeckung 1 (24) und der linken Frontabdeckung 2 (25) einsetzen, um die linke Frontabdeckung 2 (25) aus der linken Frontabdeckung 1 (24) herauszuheben.

**Prima di installare il rifinitore di documenti a MFP, non è necessario eseguire il passo 22.**

22. Montate il coperchio sinistro OP (H) sul coperchio superiore sinistro JS (D) inserendo il nottolino sul retro del coperchio sinistro OP (H).  
**Prestate attenzione a inserire prima il nottolino inferiore del coperchio sinistro OP (H).**

**Montate il coperchio frontale sinistro JS.**

23. Rimuovete il bullone (23) che è stato rimosso nella Procedura 5 dal coperchio sinistro.  
 24. Inserite il cacciavite a taglio tra il coperchio frontale sinistro 1 (24) e il coperchio frontale sinistro 2 (25) per rimuovere il coperchio frontale sinistro 2 (25) dal coperchio frontale sinistro 1 (24).

当将文档整理器安装到 MFP 时，无需执行步骤 22。

22. 将卡爪啮合到左盖板 OP(H) 的背面，把左盖板 OP(H) 安装到左上盖板 JS(D)。  
 请务必首先将左盖板 OP(H) 的下部卡爪啮合。

组装左前盖板 JS。

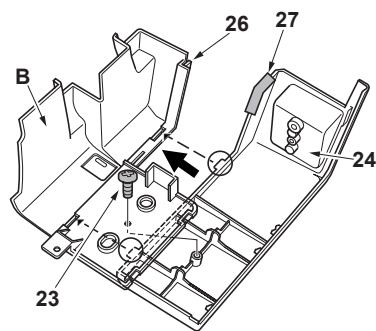
23. 从在第 5 步中拆下的左盖板中拆下螺钉 (23)。  
 24. 在左前盖板 1 (24) 和左前盖板 2 (25) 之间插入一字螺丝刀，从左前盖板 1 (24) 上拆下左前盖板 2 (25)。

MFP 本体にドキュメントフィニッシャを設置する場合、次の手順 22 は不要です。

22. 手順 21 で取り付けした左上カバー JS (D) に、左カバー OP (H) 裏側のツメを引っ掛け取り付ける。  
 左カバー OP (H) のツメは、下側のツメから取り付けること。

左前カバー JS の組立

23. 手順 5 で外した左前カバーのビス (23) 1 本を外す。  
 24. 左前カバー 1 (24) と左前カバー 2 (25) の間にマイナスドライバーを差し込み、左前カバー 1 (24) から左前カバー 2 (25) を取り外す。



25. Fit the pawl of left front cover 1 (24) into the hole of left front cover JS (B) and assemble them.  
 26. Fit the part (27) into the groove (26) of left front cover JS (B).  
 27. Use the screw (23) that has been removed by Procedure 23 to secure left front cover 1 (24) and left front cover JS (B).

25. Placer le cliquet du couvercle avant gauche 1 (24) dans le trou du couvercle avant gauche JS (B) et les assembler.  
 26. Placer la pièce (27) dans la rainure (26) du couvercle avant gauche JS (B).  
 27. Utiliser la vis (23) qui a été retirée lors de la procédure 23 pour fixer le couvercle avant gauche 1 (24) et le couvercle avant gauche JS (B).

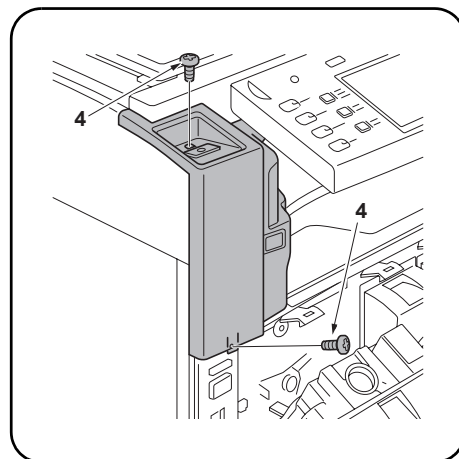
25. Encaje el trinquete de la cubierta delantera izquierda 1 (24) en el orificio de la cubierta delantera izquierda JS (B) y ensámblalos.  
 26. Encaje la pieza (27) en la ranura (26) de la cubierta delantera izquierda JS (B).  
 27. Use el tornillo (23) que ha extraído durante el procedimiento 23 para asegurar la cubierta delantera izquierda 1 (24) y la cubierta delantera izquierda JS (B).

25. Klinke der linken Frontabdeckung 1 (24) in die Öffnung der linken Frontabdeckung JS (B) einsetzen und beide Abdeckungen zusammenfügen.  
 26. Teil (27) in die Nut (26) der linken Frontabdeckung JS (B) einsetzen.  
 27. Die in Schritt 23 ausgebaute Schraube (23) benutzen, um die linke Frontabdeckung 1 (24) und die linke Frontabdeckung JS (B) zu befestigen.

25. Inserite il nottolino del coperchio frontale sinistro 1 (24) nel foro del coperchio frontale sinistro JS (B) e montateli.  
 26. Inserite la parte (27) nell'incavo (26) del coperchio frontale sinistro JS (B).  
 27. Utilizzate il bullone (23) che è stato rimosso con la Procedura 23 per fissare il coperchio frontale sinistro 1 (24) e il coperchio frontale sinistro JS (B).

25. 将左前盖板 1 (24) 的卡爪部嵌入左前盖板 JS (B) 的孔中, 并进行组装。  
 26. 将部件 (27) 嵌入左前盖板 JS (B) 的沟槽 (26) 中。  
 27. 使用在第 23 步中拆下的螺钉 (23) 固定左前盖板 1 (24) 和左前盖板 JS (B)。

25. 左前カバー1 (24) のツメを左前カバーJS (B) の穴にはめ、組み立てる。  
 26. 左前カバーJS (B) の溝 (26) に (27) の部分をはめる。  
 27. 手順 23 で外したビス (23) 1 本で左前カバー1 (24) と左前カバーJS (B) を固定する。



#### Attach the left front cover JS.

28. Attach left front cover JS that has been assembled in Procedure 27 to the MFP and use the two screws (4) that have been removed in Procedure 5.

#### Fixer le couvercle avant gauche JS.

28. Fixer le couvercle avant gauche JS, qui a été assemblé lors de la procédure 27, au MFP et utilisez les deux vis (4) qui ont été retirées enlevées du procédé 5.

#### Instale la cubierta delantera izquierda JS.

28. Instale en el MFP la cubierta delantera izquierda JS que se ha ensamblado en el procedimiento 27 y use los dos tornillos (4) que se han extraído durante el procedimiento 5.

#### Anbringen der linken Frontabdeckung JS.

28. Die in Schritt 27 zusammengesetzte linke Frontabdeckung am MFP anbringen und die in Schritt 5 die zwei ausgebauten Schrauben (4) benutzen.

#### Montate il coperchio frontale sinistro JS.

28. Montate il coperchio frontale sinistro JS che è stato montato nella Procedura 27 sulla MFP e utilizzate le due viti (4) che sono state rimosse nella Procedura 5.

#### 安装左前盖板 JS。

28. 将第 27 步中组装的左前盖板 JS 安装到 MFP 中并使用第 5 步中拆下的两颗螺钉 (4)。

#### 左前カバーJSの取り付け

28. 手順 27 で組み立てた左前カバーJS を MFP 本体に取り付け、手順 5 で外したビス (4) 2 本で固定する。

29. Attach clip support (3) that has been removed in Procedure 4.
30. Set the toner container [black] and turn toner container lock lever (1) counterclockwise.
31. Close the front cover.

#### **[Operation check]**

1. Insert the power plug of the MFP into an outlet and then turn the main power switch on.
2. Set the copy ejection location to the job separator.
3. Perform a test copy to check that a copy is ejected to the job separator.

- 
29. Fixer le support d'attache (3) qui a été retiré lors de la procédure 4.
  30. Placer la cartouche de toner [noir] et tourner le levier de verrouillage de la cartouche de toner (1) dans le sens inverse des aiguilles d'une montre.
  31. Refermer le couvercle avant.

#### **[Vérification du fonctionnement]**

1. Insérer la fiche d'alimentation du MFP dans une prise de courant, puis mettre l'interrupteur principal sous tension.
2. Régler "Emplacement d'éjection des copies" sur le séparateur des travaux.
3. Effectuer une copie de test pour vérifier que la copie est éjectée dans le plateau du séparateur de travaux.

- 
29. Instale el soporte del clip (3) que ha desmontado en el procedimiento 4.
  30. Coloque el recipiente de tóner [negro] y gire la palanca de bloqueo del recipiente (1) en sentido antihorario.
  31. Cierre la cubierta delantera.

#### **[Verifique el funcionamiento]**

1. Inserte el enchufe eléctrico del MFP en un tomacorriente y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Coloque el lugar de expulsión de copias en el separador de trabajos.
3. Haga una copia de prueba para verificar que la copia sale al separador de trabajos.

- 
29. Die in Schritt 4 ausgebaute Clip-Halterung (3) einsetzen.
  30. Tonerbehälter [schwarz] einsetzen und Tonerbehälter-Verriegelungshebel (1) gegen den Uhrzeigersinn drehen.
  31. Frontabdeckung schließen.

#### **[Betriebsprüfung]**

1. Netzstecker des MFP in eine Steckdose stecken und Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. Kopienausgabe auf Jobtrenner einstellen.
3. Testkopie durchführen, um zu prüfen, ob eine Kopie in den Jobtrenner ausgegeben wird.

- 
29. Montate il supporto della clip (3) che è stato rimosso nella Procedura 4.
  30. Posizionate il contenitore del toner [nero] e ruotate la leva di bloccaggio del contenitore del toner (1) in senso antiorario.
  31. Chiudete il coperchio frontale.

#### **[Verifica del funzionamento]**

1. Inserite la spina dell'alimentazione dell'MFP nella presa, quindi posizionate l'interruttore principale su On.
2. Impostate la posizione di espulsione copie sul separatore.
3. Effettuate una copia di prova per verificare che venga espulsa sul separatore.

- 
29. 安装在第4步中拆下的环形针支架(3)。
  30. 固定碳粉盒 [ 黑色 ] 并逆时针旋转碳粉盒锁定制(1)。
  31. 关闭前盖板。

#### **[ 操作确认 ]**

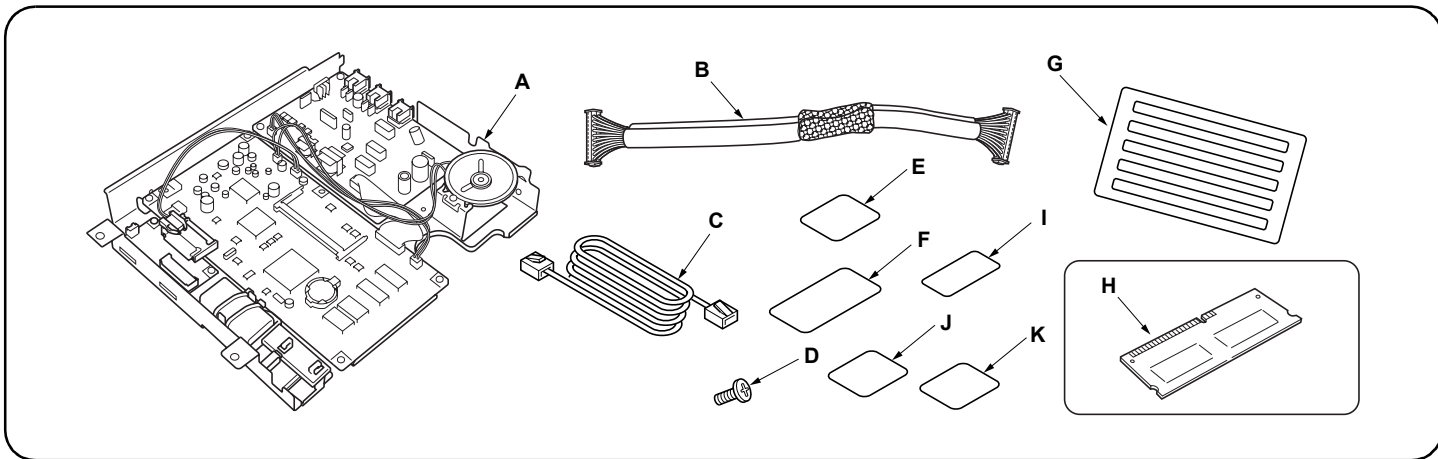
1. 将 MFP 的电源插头插入插座中, 然后打开主电源开关。
2. 在指定排纸处设定作业分离器。
3. 进行试输出, 确认纸张是否输出到作业分离器。

- 
29. 手順4で外したクリップ受け(3)を取り付ける。
  30. トナーコンテナ [ 黒 ] をセットし、トナーコンテナロックレバー(1)を左へ回す。
  31. 前カバーを閉じる。

#### **[ 動作確認 ]**

1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. 用紙の排出先をジョブセパレータに設定する。
3. テストコピーを行い、用紙がジョブセパレータの排出トレイに排出されることを確認する。

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR FACSIMILE SYSTEM**



<b>English</b>		E JATE label (100V specification only) ..... 1	<b>Option</b>
<b>Supplied parts</b>		F FCC68 label (120V specification only)..... 1	H Memory module DIMM (32MB)..... 1
A Fax control assembly..... 1	B Harness ..... 1	G Alphabet label (except 100 V specification) ..... 1	
C Modular cord (For 100 V/ 120 V/ Australian model) ..... 1	D M4 × 8-tap-tight S screws ..... 2	I PTT label (110V specification only)..... 1	
		J A-TICK label (Australian model only)..... 1	
		K TELEPERMIT label (New Zealand model only)..... 1	

<b>Français</b>		E Etiquette JATE (specifications 100 V)..... 1	<b>Option</b>
<b>Pieces fournies</b>		F Etiquette FCC68 (specifications 120 V)... 1	H Module de memoire DIMM (32 Mo)..... 1
A Ensemble de commande de fax ..... 1	B Câble plat ..... 1	G Etiquette de l'alphabet (sauf specifications 100 V) ..... 1	
C Cordon modulaire (Pour le modèle australien /100 V / 120 V)..... 1	D Vis S taraudees M4 × 8 ..... 2	I Etiquette PTT (spécifications 110 V)..... 1	
		J Etiquette A-TICK (modèle australien)..... 1	
		K Etiquette TELEPERMIT (modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande) ..... 1	

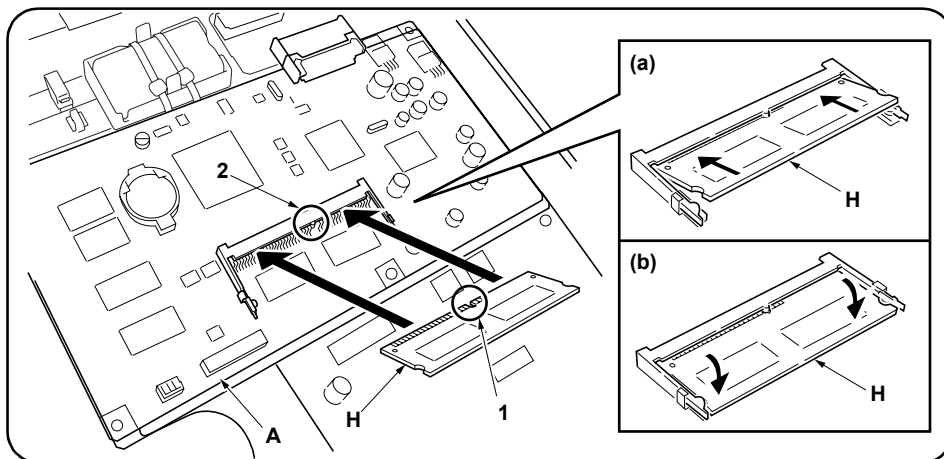
<b>Español</b>		E Etiqueta JATE (solo para especificaciones de 100 V)..... 1	J Etiqueta A-TICK (sólo para el modelo australiano) ..... 1
<b>Piezas suministradas</b>		F Etiqueta FCC68 (solo para especificaciones de 120 V)..... 1	K Etiqueta TELEPERMIT (solo para el modelo de Nueva Zelanda) ..... 1
A Conjunto de control de facsimil ..... 1	B Mazo de cables ..... 1	G Etiqueta de alfabeto (excepto especificaciones para 100 V).... 1	<b>Opcion</b>
C Cordon modular (Para el modelo australiano /100 V/120 V)..... 1	D Tornillos de apriete de rosca M4 × 8 S .... 2	I Etiqueta PTT (sólo para especificaciones de 110V)..... 1	H Modulo de memoria DIMM (32MB)..... 1

<b>Deutsch</b>		E JATE-Aufkleber (nur für 100-V-Spezifikation) ..... 1	K TELEPERMIT-Aufkleber (nur Neuseeland-Modell) ..... 1
<b>Gelieferte Teile</b>		F FCC68-Aufkleber (nur für 120-V-Spezifikation) ..... 1	<b>Option</b>
A Faxsteuerbaugruppe ..... 1	B Kabelbaum ..... 1	G Alphabetaufkleber (ausser 100-V-Spezifikation) ..... 1	H Speichermodul DIMM (32 MB)..... 1
C Modulkabel (Für 100-V/120-V/Australien-Modell)..... 1	D M4 × 8 Tapfite-Schrauben S ..... 2	I PTT-Aufkleber (nur 110-V-Spezifikation).. 1	
		J A-TICK-Aufkleber (nur Australien-Modell) ..... 1	

<b>Italiano</b>		E Etichetta JATE (solo per modelli con specifica 100V)..... 1	J Etichetta A-TICK (solo per il modello Australiano) ..... 1
<b>Parti fornite</b>		F Etichetta FCC68 (solo per modelli con specifica 120V)..... 1	K Etichetta TELEPERMIT (solo per il modello Nuova Zelanda)..... 1
A Gruppo di controllo fax ..... 1	B Cablaggio ..... 1	G Etichetta alfabetica (eccetto per i modelli con specifica 100V) ..... 1	<b>Opzione</b>
C Cavo modulare (Per il modello da 100 V/ 120 V Australiano) ..... 1	D Bulloni di fissaggio senza dado S M4 × 8 ..... 2	I Etichetta PTT (solo per modelli con specifica 110 V)..... 1	H Modulo di memoria DIMM (32MB)..... 1

<b>简体中文</b>		E JATE 标签 (仅适用于 100V 规格) ..... 1	<b>选购配件</b>
<b>附属部件</b>		F FCC68 标签 (仅适用于 120V 规格) ..... 1	H 内存模组 DIMM (32MB) ..... 1
A 传真控制组件..... 1	B 导线..... 1	G 英文字母标签 (不适用于 100V 规格) ..... 1	
C 电话线 (100V、120V 澳大利亚规格)..... 1	D M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 ..... 2	I PTT 标签 (仅适用于 110V 规格) ..... 1	
		J A-TICK 标签 (仅适用于澳大利亚规格) ..... 1	
		K TELEPERMIT 标签 (仅适用于新西兰规格) ... 1	

<b>日本語</b>		E JATE ラベル (100V 仕様のみ) ..... 1	<b>オプション</b>
<b>付属品</b>		F FCC68 ラベル (120V 仕様のみ) ..... 1	H メモリ DIMM (32MB) ..... 1
A 組立 FAX 制御..... 1	B ハーネス..... 1	G アルファベットラベル (100V 仕様以外) . 1	
C モジュラーコード (100V、120V、オーストラリア仕様) ..... 1	D ビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S ..... 2	I PTT ラベル (110V 仕様のみ) ..... 1	
		J A-TICK ラベル (オーストラリア仕様のみ) ..... 1	
		K TELEPERMIT ラベル (ニュージーランド仕様のみ) ..... 1	



### Installation Procedure

Turn the MFP's power switch to OFF and unplug the MFP from the power supply before installing the fax system.

When carrying out installation, take care not to get the cable caught.

### Install the optional Memory module DIMM (32MB).

1. Install memory module DIMM (H) in the memory slot at the center of the fax control assembly (A). Insert memory module DIMM (H) at an angle into the memory slot so that the notch (1) of memory module DIMM (H) is positioned to the projection (2) of the memory slot. Figure (a)
2. Push memory module DIMM (H) down until it snaps. Figure (b)

### Methode d'installation

Mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et débrancher le MFP de la prise secteur avant d'installer le système fax.

Lors de l'installation, veillez à ce que le câble ne soit pas pris.

### Installer le module de mémoire DIMM en option (32 Mo).

1. Installer le module de mémoire DIMM (H) dans la fente de mémoire située au centre de l'ensemble de commande de fax (A). Insérer le module de mémoire DIMM (H) en l'inclinant dans la fente de mémoire de sorte que l'encoche (1) du module de mémoire DIMM (H) soit placée sur la saillie (2) de la fente de mémoire. Figure (a)
2. Pousser le module de mémoire DIMM (H) vers le bas jusqu'à ce qu'elle se mette en place. Figure (b)

### Procedimiento de instalacion

Apague el MFP colocando el interruptor principal a OFF y desenchufe el MFP del suministro de red eléctrica antes de instalar el sistema de facsimil.

Cuando haga la instalación, hágalo con cuidado para no atrapar el cable.

### Instale el modulo de memoria DIMM opcional (32MB).

1. Instale el modulo de memoria DIMM (H) en la ranura de memoria situada en el centro del conjunto de control de facsimil (A). Inserte el modulo de memoria DIMM (H) en un angulo en la ranura de memoria, para que la muesca (1) del modulo de memoria DIMM (H) este ubicada en la saliente (2) de la ranura de memoria. Figura (a)
2. Empuje el modulo de memoria DIMM (H) hacia abajo hasta que se oiga un chasquido. Figura (b)

### Installationsablauf

Schalten Sie den Netzschalter des MFP aus und trennen Sie den MFP vom Netz, bevor Sie das Faxsystem installieren.

Achten Sie bei der Installation darauf, dass das Kabel nicht eingeklemmt wird.

### Installieren des Speichermoduls DIMM (32 MB).

1. Das DIMM-Speichermodul (H) in den Speichersteckplatz in der Mitte der Faxsteuerbaugruppe (A) einsetzen. Das DIMM-Speichermodul (H) schrag in den Speichersteckplatz einsetzen, so dass die Kerbe (1) des DIMM-Speichermoduls (H) auf die Nase (2) im Speichersteckplatz ausgerichtet ist. Figur (a)
2. Das DIMM-Speichermodul (H) nach unten drücken, bis es einrastet. Figur (b)

### Procedura di installazione

Spegnere l'interruttore principale e sfilare la spina dell'MFP dalla presa prima di installare il sistema fax.

Quando si esegue l'installazione fare attenzione a non serrare il cablaggio.

### Installazione del modulo di memoria opzionale DIMM (32MB).

1. Installare il modulo di memoria DIMM (H) nello slot di memoria al centro del gruppo di controllo fax (A). Inserire il modulo di memoria DIMM (H) inclinato nello slot di memoria in modo che la tacca (1) del modulo di memoria DIMM (H) sia posizionata sulla sporgenza (2) dello slot di memoria. Figura (a)
2. Premere verso il basso il modulo di memoria DIMM (H) fino a farlo scattare in posizione. Figura (b)

### 安装步骤

请关闭 MFP 的电源开关并拔下电源插头，再安装传真组件。

安装作业时，注意不要夹住电线。

### 安装选购的内存模组 DIMM (32MB)。

1. 在传真控制组件 (A) 中心部分的内存模组插入口中安装内存模组 DIMM (H)。把内存模组 DIMM (H) 倾斜插入内存模组插入口，直至内存模组 DIMM (H) 的缺口 (1) 和内存模组插入口的突出部 (2) 一致为止。图 (a)
2. 将内存模组 DIMM (H) 向下推至啮合处。图 (b)

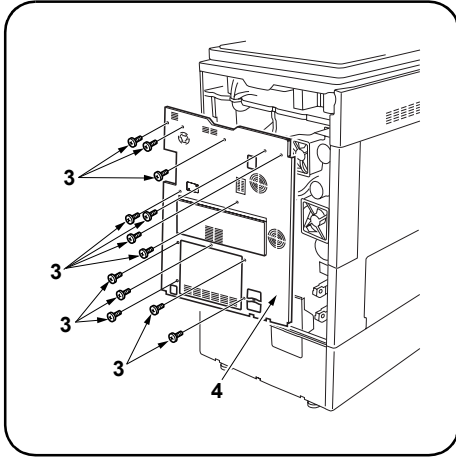
### 取付手順

ファクスシステムを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

設置作業時に、電線を挟み込まないように注意すること。

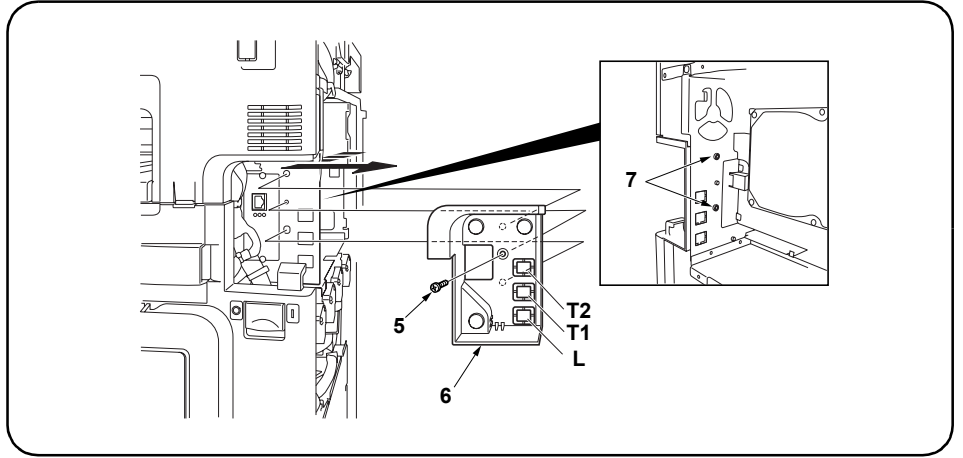
### オプションメモリの取り付け

1. メモリ DIMM (H) を組立 FAX 制御 (A) 中央のメモリ挿入口に取り付ける。メモリ DIMM (H) の切り欠き部 (1) がメモリ挿入口の突出部 (2) と一致する様に、メモリ DIMM (H) を斜めに挿入すること。図 (a)
2. メモリ DIMM (H) をパチンと音がするまで下へ押し込む。図 (b)



### Remove the cover.

- Remove thirteen screws (3) and then remove the rear cover (4).



### Cut out the segments.

- Remove the screw (5) and then remove the modular cover (6). Push the projection (7) at the rear side of the modular cover (6) to remove the cover easily.
- Cut out the segments L, T1 and T2 out from the modular cover (6) with a nipper.  
**100V specification: Cut out L, T1 and T2.**  
**Models with the specification other than 100V one: Cut out L and T1.**  
**New Zealand model: Cut out L.**
- Reinstall the modular cover (6) that has been removed in Procedure 4 with the screw (5) in place.

### Retirer le couvercle.

- Retirer les treize vis (3), puis le couvercle arrière (4).

### Extraire les segments.

- Retirer la vis (5), puis le couvercle modulaire (6). Pousser la saillie (7) à l'arrière du couvercle modulaire (6) pour faciliter son retrait.
- Extraire les segments L, T1 et T2 du couvercle modulaire (6) à l'aide d'une pince.  
**Specifications 100 V : extraire L, T1 et T2.**  
**Modèles disposant de spécifications autres que 100 V : extraire L et T1.**  
**Modèle pour la Nouvelle-Zélande : extraire L.**
- Remettre en place le couvercle modulaire (6) retire lors de la procédure 4 à l'aide de la vis (5).

### Desmote la cubierta.

- Saque trece tornillos (3) y desmote la cubierta trasera (4).

### Recorte los segmentos.

- Saque el tornillo (5) y desmote la cubierta modular (6). Empuje la saliente (7) de la parte trasera de la cubierta modular (6) para desmontar la cubierta con facilidad.
- Recorte los segmentos L, T1 y T2 out de la cubierta modular (6) con unas tenazas.  
**Especificaciones de 100 V: recorte L, T1 y T2.**  
**Modelos con especificaciones diferentes de 100 V: recorte L y T1.**  
**Modelo de Nueva Zelanda: recorte L.**
- Reinstale en su sitio la cubierta modular (6) que se ha desmontado en el Procedimiento 4 con el tornillo (5).

### Entfernen der Abdeckung.

- Dreizehn Schrauben (3) herausdrehen und hintere Abdeckung (4) abnehmen.

### Ausschneiden der Segmente.

- Die Schraube (5) herausdrehen und die Modulabdeckung (6) abnehmen. Auf den Vorsprung (7) an der Rückseite der Modulabdeckung (6) drücken, um die Abdeckung problemlos abnehmen zu können.
- Die Segmente L, T1 und T2 mit einem Seitenschneider aus der Modulabdeckung (6) heraustrennen.  
**100-V-Spezifikation: L, T1 und T2 heraustrennen.**  
**Andere Modelle als 100 V: L und T1 heraustrennen.**  
**Neuseeland-Modell: L ausschneiden.**
- Die in Schritt 4 ausgebaute Modulabdeckung (6) wieder einsetzen und mit der Schraube (5) sichern.

### Rimozione del coperchio.

- Rimuovere le tredici viti (3), quindi rimuovere il coperchio posteriore (4).

### Staccare i segmenti.

- Rimuovere la vite (5), quindi rimuovere il pannello modulare (6). Premere la sporgenza (7) sul lato posteriore del pannello modulare (6) per rimuovere facilmente il pannello.
- Con delle pinzette, staccare i segmenti L, T1 e T2 dal pannello modulare (6).  
**Specifica 100V: staccare L, T1 e T2.**  
**Modelli con specifica diversa da 100V: staccare L e T1.**  
**Modello Nuova Zelanda: staccare L.**
- Reinstallare il pannello modulare (6) rimosso nella Procedura 4 reinserendo l'apposita vite (5).

### 拆下盖板。

- 拆下 13 顆螺釘 (3)，然後拆下后盖板 (4)。

### 將其切除。

- 拆下螺釘 (5)，然後拆下電話線盖板 (6)。推動電話線盖板 (6) 後部的突出部 (7)，將盖板輕鬆拆下。
- 用鉗子從電話線盖板 (6) 上切除 L、T1 和 T2。  
**100V 規格：切除 L、T1 和 T2。**  
**除 100V 以外規格的型號：切除 L 和 T1。**  
**新西蘭規格：切除 L。**
- 將螺釘 (5) 放到位置，重新安裝步驟 4 中拆下的電話線盖板 (6)。

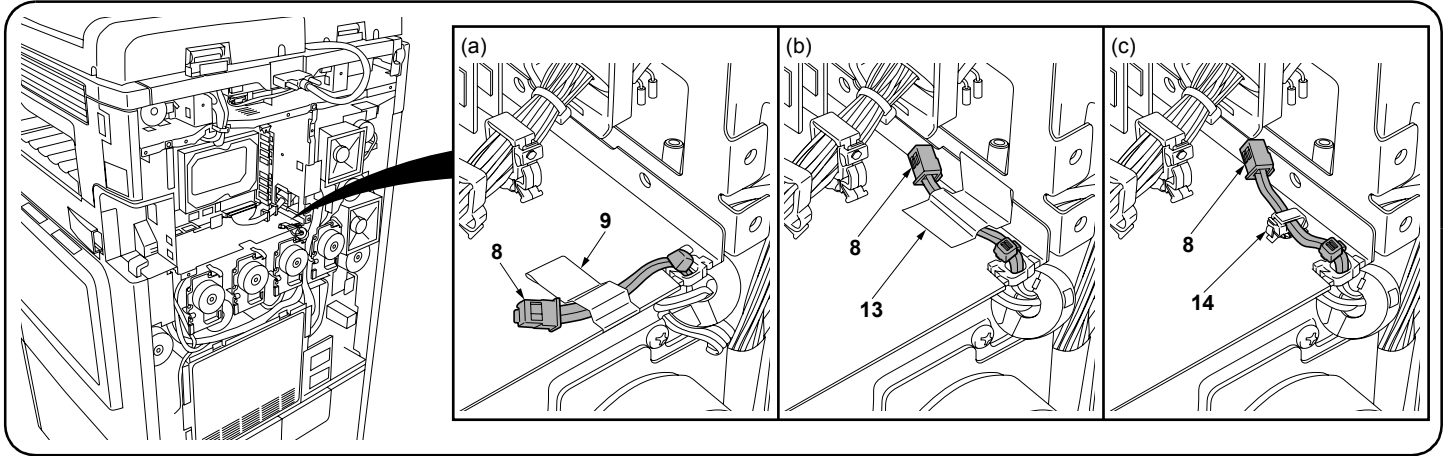
### カバーの取り外し

- ビス (3) 13 本を外し、後カバー (4) を取り外す。

### 割部の切り取り

- ビス (5) 1 本を外し、モジュラーカバー (6) を取り外す。モジュラーカバー (6) は裏側の突起 (7) を押すと取り外し易い。
- モジュラーカバー (6) の割部 L、T1、T2 をニッパー等で切り取る。  
**100V 仕様：L、T1、T2 を切り取る**  
**100V 仕様以外：L、T1 を切り取る**  
**ニュージーランド仕様：L を切り取る**
- 手順 4 で外したモジュラーカバー (6) をビス (5) 1 本で元通り取り付け。





### Attach the Fax control assembly.

There are three methods of securing the mains connector (8) as shown below, and the required method depends on the main body. Note that the working procedure varies.

#### [If the mains connector (8) is secured as shown in Figure (a)]

7. Peel the fixing tape (9) and pull out the mains connector (8).  
Perform Procedures 8 to 10 and Procedure 12 and after.  
(Procedure 11 is not required.)

#### [If the mains connector (8) is secured as shown in Figure (b) or Figure (c)]

- Perform Procedure 8 and after. (Procedure 7 is not required.)

### Fixer l'ensemble de commande de fax.

Les trois méthodes indiquées ci-après peuvent être utilisées pour fixer le connecteur d'alimentation (8), et la méthode requise dépend du corps principal. Bien noter que la méthode de travail varie.

#### [Si le connecteur d'alimentation (8) est fixé comme indiqué dans la figure (a)]

7. Détacher le ruban de fixation (9) et tirer le connecteur d'alimentation (8) vers l'extérieur.  
Effectuer les procédures 8 à 10, la procédure 12 et les procédures suivantes.  
(Il n'est pas nécessaire d'effectuer la procédure 11.)

#### [Si le connecteur d'alimentation (8) est fixé comme indiqué dans la figure (b) ou dans la figure (c)]

- Effectuer la procédure 8 et les procédures suivantes.  
(Il n'est pas nécessaire d'effectuer la procédure 7.)

### Instale el conjunto de control de facsimil.

Hay tres métodos para asegurar el conector de suministro eléctrico (8) tal como se indica abajo y el método necesario depende del cuerpo principal. Recuerde que el procedimiento de trabajo será diferente.

#### [Si el conector de suministro eléctrico (8) está asegurado tal como aparece en la Figura (a)]

7. Despegue la cinta de fijación (9) y saque el conector de suministro eléctrico (8).  
Haga los procedimientos 8 a 10 y los procedimientos 12 y siguientes.  
(El procedimiento 11 no es necesario.)

#### [Si el conector de suministro eléctrico (8) está asegurado tal como aparece en la Figura (b) o la Figura (c)]

- Haga los procedimientos 8 y siguientes.  
(El procedimiento 7 no es necesario.)

### Anschließen der Faxsteuerbaugruppe.

Der Netzstecker (8) kann auf drei verschiedene Weisen gesichert werden, wie unten angegeben, und die erforderliche Methode hängt von der Haupteinheit ab. Beachten Sie, dass das Arbeitsverfahren unterschiedlich ist.

#### [Bei Sicherung des Netzsteckers (8) gemäß Figur (a)]

7. Das Klebeband (9) lösen, und den Netzstecker (8) herausziehen.  
Die Schritte 8 bis 10 sowie Schritt 12 und folgende durchführen.  
(Schritt 11 ist nicht erforderlich.)

#### [Bei Sicherung des Netzsteckers (8) gemäß Figur (b) oder Figur (c)]

- Schritt 8 und folgende durchführen.  
(Schritt 7 ist nicht erforderlich.)

### Montaggio del gruppo di controllo fax.

Ci sono tre metodi di fissaggio del connettore cavi (8) come si vede qui in basso e il metodo da utilizzare dipende dal corpo principale. Notare che la Procedura per l'esecuzione varia.

#### [Se il connettore cavi (8) è fissato come si vede nella Figura (a)]

7. Rimuovere il nastro di fissaggio (9) ed estrarre il connettore cavi (8).  
Eseguire le Procedure da 8 a 10 e la Procedura 12 e quelle successive. (La Procedura 11 non è necessaria.)

#### [Se il connettore cavi (8) è fissato come si vede nella Figura (b) o nella Figura (c)]

- Eseguire la Procedura 8 e quelle successive.  
(La Procedura 7 non è necessaria.)

### 安装传真控制组件。

根据复印机型号的不同，主电源插头(8)有以下3种固定方法，操作步骤亦有不同，请注意。

#### [主电源插头(8)如图示(a)固定时]

7. 揭下固定胶带(9)，拉出主电源插头(8)。  
操作8~10及12以后的步骤。(步骤11不要)

#### [主电源插头(8)如图示(b)或图示(c)固定时]

- 操作8以后的步骤。(没有步骤7)

### 組立 FAX 制御の取り付け

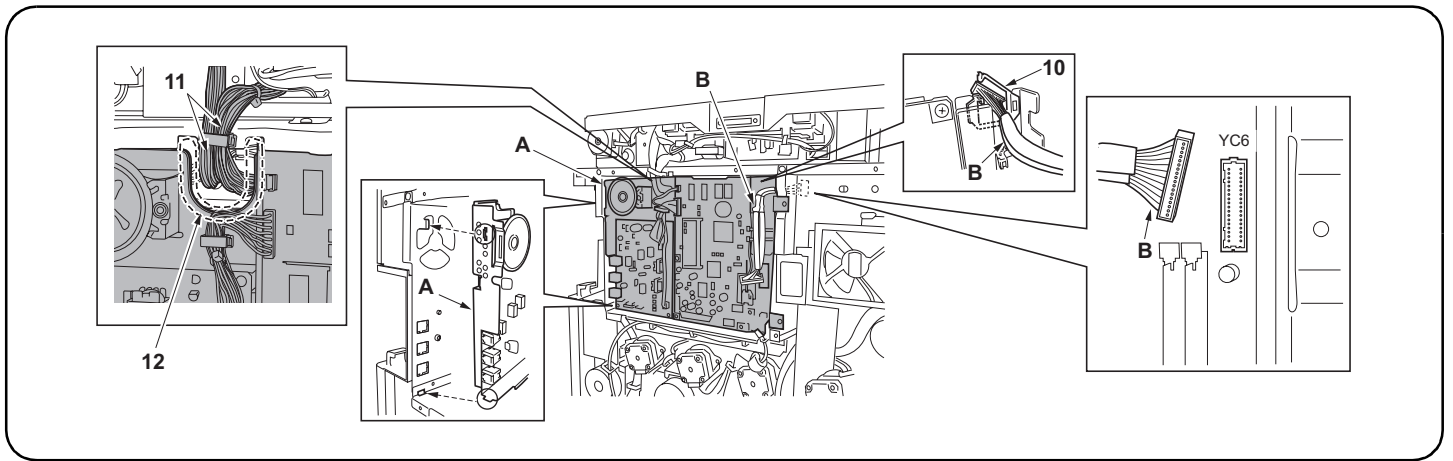
機械本体によって、電源線コネクタ(8)の固定方法が次の3パターンあります。作業手順が異なりますので注意すること。

#### [電源線コネクタ(8)が図(a)のように固定されている場合]

7. 固定テープ(9)をはがして、電源線コネクタ(8)を引き出す。  
手順8~10および12以降の手順を行う。(手順11は不要)

#### [電源線コネクタ(8)が図(b)または図(c)のように固定されている場合]

- 手順8以降の手順を行う。(手順7はありません)



8. Connect the end of harness (B) that is covered by a white tube to the YC6 connector on the MFP's main circuit board.
9. Open the edge saddle (10) of Fax control assembly (A) to pass the harness (B) through it, and fit the pawl and groove at the left side of the fax control assembly (A) into the MFP's groove and pawl respectively.

**NOTE: Attach the Fax control assembly (A) so that the cable (11) of the MFP passes securely through the U-shaped cutout (12), and take care not to get the cable (11) caught.**

8. Relier l'extrémité du câble plat (B) recouverte d'un tube blanc au connecteur YC6 situé sur la carte à circuits principale du MFP.
9. Ouvrir le serre-câble (10) au bord de l'ensemble de commande de fax (A) pour y faire passer le câble plat (B), puis enclencher le cliquet et la rainure situés à gauche de l'ensemble de commande de fax (A) dans la rainure et le cliquet du MFP respectivement.

**REMARQUE: Fixer l'ensemble de commande de fax (A) pour que le câble (11) du MFP passe bien par la découpe en U (12) et veillez à ce que le câble (11) ne soit pas pris.**

8. Conecte el extremo del mazo de cables (B) cubierto por un tubo blanco al conector YC6 de la tarjeta de circuitos principal del MFP.
9. Abra la pinza del borde (10) del conjunto de control de facsimil (A) para pasar el mazo de cables (B) a través de ella y encaje el trinquete y la ranura del lado izquierdo del conjunto de control de facsimil (A) en la ranura y el trinquete del MFP respectivamente.

**NOTA: Instale el conjunto de control de facsimil (A) para que el cable (11) del MFP pase firmemente por la parte cortada con forma de U (12), y hágalo con cuidado para no atrapar el cable (11).**

8. Das mit einem weißen Schlauch bedeckte Ende des Kabelbaums (B) am Steckverbinder YC6 auf der Hauptleiterplatte anschließen des MFP.
9. Die Sattelklemme (10) der Faxsteuerbaugruppe (A) öffnen, um den Kabelbaum (B) durchzuführen, und die Klinke und Nut an der linken Seite der Faxsteuerbaugruppe (A) in die Nut bzw. Klinke des MFP einsetzen.

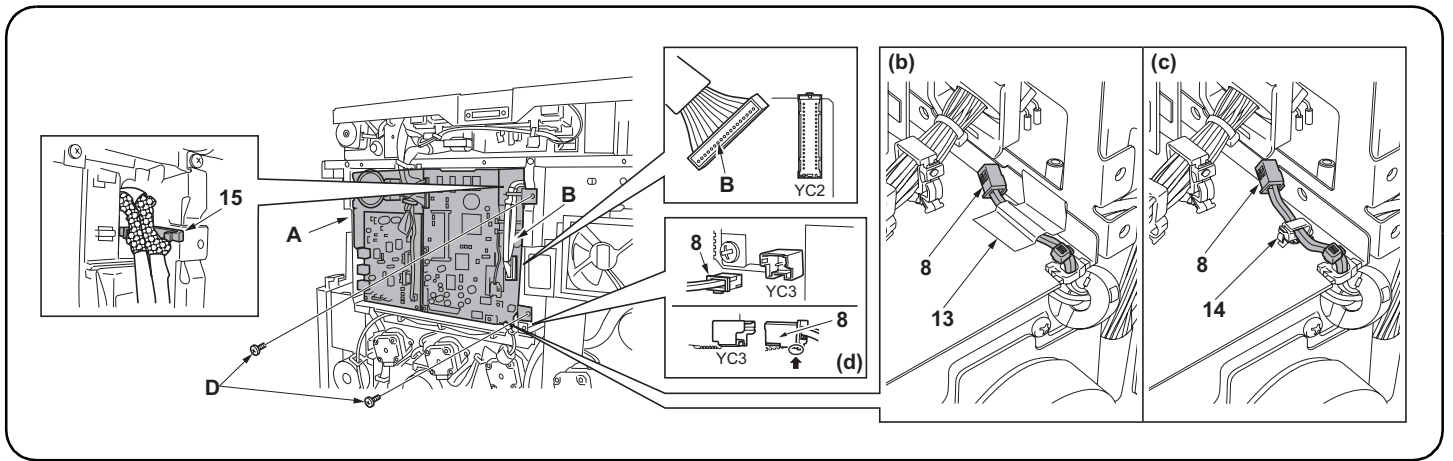
**HINWEIS: Bringen Sie die Faxsteuerbaugruppe (A) so an, dass das Kabel (11) des MFP einwandfrei durch den U-förmigen Ausschnitt (12) verläuft, ohne eingeklemmt zu werden.**

8. Collegare l'estremità del cablaggio (B) coperta da un tubo bianco al connettore YC6 sulla scheda a circuiti principale dell'MFP.
9. Far passare il cablaggio (B) attraverso l'estremità del fermacavo (10) del gruppo di controllo fax (A) e fissare il nottolino e l'incavo sul lato sinistro del gruppo di controllo fax (A) rispettivamente nell'incavo e nel nottolino dell'MFP.

**NOTA: Fissare il gruppo di controllo fax (A) in modo che il cablaggio (11) dell'MFP possa passare stabilmente attraverso il foro a forma di U (12) e assicurarsi che il cablaggio (11) non venga serrato.**

8. 将由白色管覆盖的导线 (B) 末端连接到 MFP 主电路板上的 YC6 插头。
9. 打开传真控制组件 (A) 的边缘鞍型架 (10), 把导线 (B) 穿出, 将传真控制组件 (A) 左侧的卡爪和沟槽分别装入 MFP 的沟槽和卡爪。  
注意: 安装传真控制组件 (A) 时, 应将 MFP 的电线 (11) 确实地穿出 U 切口部 (12) 后安装。注意不要夹住电线 (11)。

8. MFP 本体のメイン基板の YC6 コネクタに、ハーネス (B) の白いチューブで覆われている方を接続する。
9. 組立 FAX 制御 (A) のエッジサドル (10) を開きハーネス (B) を通し、組立 FAX 制御 (A) の左側のツメと溝を、MFP 本体と溝とツメにそれぞれはめ込む。  
注意: 組立 FAX 制御 (A) は、MFP 本体の電線 (11) が、U 字カット部 (12) を確実に通るように取り付け、電線 (11) を挟み込まないよう注意すること。



10. Secure the fax control assembly (A) with two M4 × 8-tap-tight S (D) screws.
11. Peel the fixing tape (13) or the wire saddle (14) and pull out the mains connector (8).  
If the mains connector (8) has been pulled out in Procedure 7 [in case of Figure (a)], this Procedure is not required.
12. Open the wire saddle (15). Connect the harness (B) to YC2 connector on the fax control assembly (A) and secure the harness by closing the wire saddle (15). Be sure to secure braided part of the harness (B) with the wire saddle.
13. Connect the mains connector (8) that has been pulled out in Procedure 7 or Procedure 11 to the YC3 connector of the fax control assembly (A).  
**To remove the mains connector (8), be sure to hold its upper and lower parts with your fingers and press the connector's lower part (arrow). Figure (d)**

10. Fixer l'ensemble de commande fax (A) à l'aide des deux vis S taraudees M4 × 8 (D).
11. Détacher le ruban de fixation (13) ou le serre-câbles (14) et tirer le connecteur d'alimentation (8) vers l'extérieur.  
Si le connecteur d'alimentation (8) a été écarté lors de la procédure 7 [dans le cas de la figure (a)], il n'est pas nécessaire d'effectuer cette procédure.
12. Ouvrir le serre-câble (15). Brancher le câble plat (B) au connecteur YC2 situé sur l'ensemble de commande de fax (A) et fixer le câble plat en refermant le serre-câble (15). Attention de bien fixer la partie tressée du câble plat (B) à l'aide du serre-câble.
13. Brancher le connecteur d'alimentation (8) écarté lors de la procédure 7 ou de la procédure 11 au connecteur YC3 de l'ensemble de commande de fax (A).  
**Pour retirer le connecteur d'alimentation (8), veiller à maintenir les pièces supérieure et inférieure et à appuyer sur la partie inférieure du connecteur (fleche). Figure (d)**

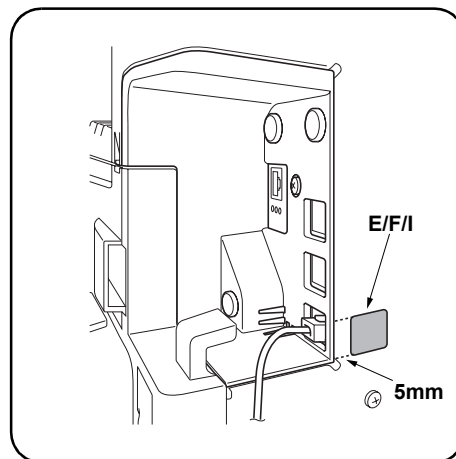
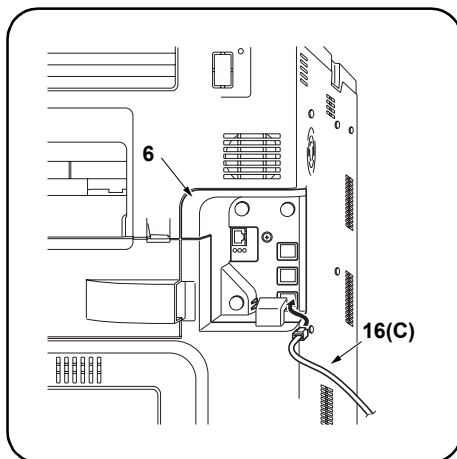
10. Asegure el conjunto de control de facsimil (A) con dos tornillos de apriete de rosca M4 × 8 S (D).
11. Despegue la cinta de fijación (13) o la pinza de cable (14) y saque el conector de suministro eléctrico (8).  
Si se sacó el conector de suministro eléctrico (8) en el procedimiento 7 [en el caso de la Figura (a)], este procedimiento no es necesario.
12. Abra la pinza de cable (15). Conecte el mazo de cables (B) al conector YC2 del conjunto de control de facsimil (A) y asegure el mazo cerrando la pinza de cable (15). Asegúrese de fijar la parte trenzada del mazo (B) con la pinza de cable.
13. Conecte el conector de suministro eléctrico (8) sacado en el procedimiento 7 o el procedimiento 11 en el conector YC3 del conjunto de control de facsimil (A).  
**Para sacar el conector de suministro eléctrico (8), asegúrese de sujetar las partes superior e inferior con los dedos y presionar sobre la parte inferior del conector (flecha). Figura (d)**

10. Faxsteuerbaugruppe (A) mit zwei M4 × 8 Taptite-Schrauben S (D) befestigen.
11. Das Klebeband (13) bzw. die Kabelschelle (14) lösen, und den Netzstecker (8) herausziehen.  
Falls der Netzstecker (8) in Schritt 7 herausgezogen worden ist [im Falle der Figur (a)], erübrigt sich dieser Schritt.
12. Kabelschelle (15) öffnen. Kabelbaum (B) am Steckverbinder YC2 auf der Faxsteuerbaugruppe (A) anschließen und den Kabelbaum durch Schließen der Kabelschelle (15) fixieren. Darauf achten, den umflochtenen Teil des Kabelbaums (B) mit der Kabelschelle zu fixieren.
13. Den in Schritt 7 oder Schritt 11 herausgezogenen Netzstecker (8) an den Steckverbinder YC3 der Faxsteuerbaugruppe (A) anschließen.  
**Um den Netzstecker (8) abzuziehen, den Stecker am oberen und unteren Teil festhalten und auf den unteren Teil (Pfeil) drücken. Figur (d)**

10. Fissare il gruppo di controllo fax (A) con due bulloni di fissaggio senza dado S M4 × 8 (D).
11. Rimuovere il nastro di fissaggio (13) o il fermacavo (14) ed estrarre il connettore cavi (8).  
Se il connettore cavi (8) è stato estratto durante la Procedura 7 [nel caso della Figura (a)], questa Procedura non è necessaria.
12. Aprire il fermacavo (15). Collegare il cablaggio (B) al connettore YC2 sul gruppo di controllo fax (A) e fissare il cablaggio con il fermacavo (15).  
Accertarsi di fissare la parte intrecciata del cablaggio (B) con il fermacavo.
13. Collegare il connettore cavi (8) che è stato estratto durante la Procedura 7 o la Procedura 11 al connettore YC3 del gruppo di controllo fax (A).  
**Per rimuovere il connettore cavi (8), avere cura di tenere la parte superiore e inferiore con le dita e di premere la parte inferiore del connettore (freccia). Figura (d)**

10. 用两颗 M4 × 8 攻丝紧固型 S 螺钉 (D) 固定传真控制组件 (A)。
11. 揭下固定胶带 (13) 或鞍式线 (14)，拉出主电源插头 (8)。按步骤 7 拉出主电源插头 (8) 时 [如图示 (a) 时]，该步骤不要。
12. 打开鞍式线 (15)。将导线 (B) 连接到传真控制组件 (A) 的 YC2 插头并闭合鞍式线 (15) 将导线固定。请务必用鞍式线将导线 (B) 的包缠部分固定。
13. 将按步骤 7 或步骤 11 拉出的主电源插头 (8) 插入传真控制组件 (a) YC3 插口。  
**若要拆下主电源插头 (8)，请务必用手指按住其上部 and 下部并按住插头的下部 (箭头)。图 (d)**

10. 組立 FAX 制御 (A) をビス M4 × 8 タップタイト S (D) 2 本で固定する。
11. 固定テープ (13) またはワイヤーサドル (14) をはがして、電源線コネクタ (8) を引き出す。  
手順 7 で電源線コネクタ (8) を引き出している場合 [図 (a) の場合] は、この手順は不要です。
12. ワイヤーサドル (15) を開き、組立 FAX 制御 (A) の YC2 コネクタにハーネス (B) を接続し、ワイヤーサドル (15) を閉じて固定する。  
ワイヤーサドルは、ハーネス (B) のチューブで覆われていない銀色の網部を固定すること。
13. 手順 7 または手順 11 で引き出した電源線コネクタ (8) を組立 FAX 制御 (A) の YC3 コネクタに接続する。  
**電源線コネクタ (8) を外す場合、必ず上下を指で挟み、下部 (矢印) を押しながら外すこと。図 (d)**



#### Install the cover.

14. Reinstall the rear cover (4) that has been removed in Procedure 3 with thirteen screws (3) in place.

#### Connect the system to the telephone line.

15. Insert the modular connector cable (16) into the line terminal at the lower right side of the modular cover (6) to connect it to the telephone line.  
For 100 V/ 120 V/ Australian model, use the supplied modular cord (C).

#### Attach the labels. (100V, 110V, and 120V specifications only)

16. Wipe the area 5 mm away from the line terminal side with alcohol and adhere the JATE label (E)/ FCC68 label (F)/ PTT label (I) here.  
For Australia and New Zealand, attach the label referring to page 9.

#### Installer le couvercle.

14. Remettre en place le couvercle arriere (4) retire lors de la procedure 3 a l'aide des treize vis (3).

#### Connecter le systeme a la ligne de telephone.

15. Insérer le cable du connecteur modulaire (16) dans la borne de la ligne en bas a droite du couvercle modulaire (6) pour le connecter a la ligne de telephone.  
Pour le modèle australien / 100 V / 120 V, utiliser le cordon modulaire (C) fourni.

#### Fixer les étiquettes. (Spécifications 100 V, 110 V et 120 V)

16. Nettoyer 5 mm de surface du côté de la borne de la ligne avec de l'alcool et y coller l'étiquette JATE (E)/ l'étiquette FCC68 (F)/ l'étiquette PTT (I).  
Pour l'Australie et la Nouvelle-Zélande, apposer l'étiquette en se référant à la page 9.

#### Instale la cubierta.

14. Reinstale en su sitio la cubierta trasera (4) que se ha desmontado en el Procedimiento 3 con trece tornillos (3).

#### Conecte el sistema a la linea telefonica.

15. Inserte el cable de conector modular (16) en el terminal de linea, en la parte inferior derecha de la cubierta modular (6), para conectarlo a la linea telefonica.  
Para el modelo australiano/100 V/ 120 V, utilice el cordon modular (C) suministrado.

#### Fije las etiquetas (sólo para especificaciones de 100V, 110V y 120V)

16. Limpie el área 5 mm lejos del lado del terminal de línea con alcohol y pegue la etiqueta JATE (E)/ etiqueta FCC68 (F)/ etiqueta PTT (I) aquí.  
Para Australia y Nueva Zelanda, instale la etiqueta consultando la página 9.

#### Einbauen der Abdeckung.

14. Die in Schritt 3 ausgebautete hintere Abdeckung (4) wieder einsetzen und mit dreizehn Schrauben (3) sichern.

#### Anschließen des Systems an die Telefonleitung.

15. Das Modulsteckerkabel (16) in die Leitungsbuchse unten rechts an der Modulabdeckung (6) einstecken, um den Anschluss mit der Telefonleitung herzustellen.  
Das mitgelieferte Modulkabel (C) für das 100 V/120 V/Australien-Modell verwenden.

#### Anbringen der Aufkleber. (nur 100 V, 110 V und 120 V-Spezifikationen)

16. Die Fläche in 5 mm Abstand von der Leitungsbuchsenseite mit Alkohol abwischen, und den JATE-Aufkleber (E)/FCC68-Aufkleber (F)/PTT-Aufkleber (I) hier anbringen.  
Beim Australien- und Neuseeland-Modell den Aufkleber gemäß Seite 9 anbringen.

#### Installazione del coperchio.

14. Reinstallare il coperchio posteriore (4) rimosso nella Procedura 3 reinserendo le tredici viti (3).

#### Collegamento del sistema alla linea del telefono.

15. Inserire il cavo modulare del connettore (16) nel terminale della linea sul lato inferiore destro del pannello modulare (6) per collegarlo alla linea del telefono.  
Per il modello da 100 V/ 120 V Australiano, utilizzare il cavo modulare in (C) dotazione.

#### Applicazione delle etichette. (Solo per modelli con specifica 100 V, 110 V e 120 V)

16. Pulire l'area fino a 5 mm dal lato del terminale della linea con dell'alcol e applicarvi l'etichetta JATE (E)/ l'etichetta FCC68 (F)/ l'etichetta PTT (I).  
Per i modelli di Australia e Nuova Zelanda, applicare l'etichetta dopo aver letto a pagina 9.

#### 安装盖板。

14. 将13颗螺钉(3)放到位置, 重新安装步骤3中拆下的后盖板(4)。

#### 将传真组件连接到电话线。

15. 将电话线(16)插入电话线盖板(6)右下部的线端子, 连接电话线。  
100V, 120V澳大利亚规格是使用附属品的电话线(C)。

#### 安装标签。(仅适用于100V, 110V, 120V规格)

16. 用酒精擦拭从电话线端子附近5mm远的地方, 并粘上JATE标签(E)/FCC68标签(F)/PTT标签(I)。  
澳大利亚/新西兰规格请参照第9页, 并粘上标签。

#### カバーの取り付け

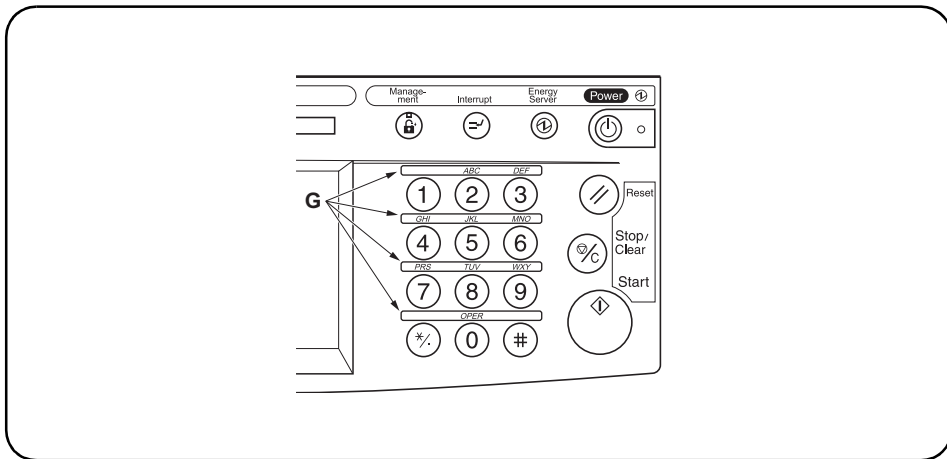
14. 手順3で取り外した後カバー(4)をビス(3)13本で元通り取り付けます。

#### 電話回線との接続

15. モジュラーカバー(6)右下のライン端子に電話回線からのモジュラーコード(16)を差し込み、電話回線に接続する。  
100V、120V、オーストラリア仕様は、付属品のモジュラーコード(C)を使用する。

#### ラベルの貼り付け (100V、110V、120V仕様のみ)

16. ライン端子の側面から5mmの位置をアルコール清掃し、JATEラベル(E)/FCC68ラベル(F)/PTTラベル(I)を貼り付ける。  
オーストラリア/ニュージーランドはP9を参照してラベルを貼り付けること。



**Attach the alphabet labels. (except for 100V specifications)**

17. Wipe the area above the numeric keys at the right side of the operation panel and adhere the alphabet labels (G) here.  
In Asia and Oceania, use PQRS TUV WXYZ label, and do not use PRS TUV WXY and OPER labels.

**[Operation check]**

1. Plug the MFP body into a power outlet, and turn on its main switch.
2. Execute the maintenance mode U601/U602 to initialize the fax control assembly. For details, see the service manual.

**Fixer les etiquettes de l'alphabet. (sauf pour les specifications 100 V)**

17. Nettoyer la surface au-dessus des touches numeriques a droite du panneau de commande et y coller les etiquettes de l'alphabet (G).  
En Asie et Oceanie, utiliser l'etiquette PQRS TUV WXYZ et pas les etiquettes PRS TUV WXY et OPER.

**[Verification du fonctionnement]**

1. Brancher le MFP sur une prise d'alimentation et le mettre sous tension.
2. Executer le mode de maintenance U601/ U602 pour initialiser l'ensemble de commande de fax. Pour plus de details, se reporter au manuel d'entretien.

**Fije las etiquetas de alfabeto (excepto para especificaciones de 100 V)**

17. Limpie la zona situada encima de las teclas numericas, en el lado derecho del panel de trabajo, y pegue aqui las etiquetas de alfabeto (G).  
En Asia y Oceania, utilice la etiqueta PQRS TUV WXYZ y no use las PRS TUV WXY ni las OPER.

**[Verifique el funcionamiento]**

1. Conecte el cuerpo del MFP a un receptaculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
2. Ejecute el modo de mantenimiento U601/ U602 para inicializar el conjunto de control de facsimil. Para mas detalles, lea el manual de servicio.

**Anbringen der Alphabetaufkleber. (außer 100-V-Spezifikationen)**

17. Den Bereich über den Zifferntasten auf der rechten Seite des Bedienfeldes abwischen und die Alphabetaufkleber (G) hier anbringen.  
In Asien und Ozeanien den Aufkleber PQRS TUV WXYZ verwenden; nicht die Aufkleber PRS TUV WXY und OPER verwenden.

**[Betriebsprüfung]**

1. Netzstecker des MFP-Gehäuses in eine Steckdose stecken und Hauptschalter einschalten.
2. Wartungsmodus U601/U602 ausführen, um die Faxsteuerbaugruppe zu initialisieren. Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Wartungsanleitung.

**Applicazione delle etichette alfabetiche. (Eccetto i modelli con specifica 100V)**

17. Pulire l'area sopra i tasti numerici sul lato destro del pannello operativo e applicarvi le etichette alfabetiche (G).  
In Asia ed Oceania, utilizzare l'etichetta PQRS TUV WXYZ e non le etichette PRS TUV WXY e OPER.

**[Verifica del funzionamento]**

1. Collegare la fotocopiatrice MFP a una presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
2. Eseguire il modo di manutenzione U601/U602 per inizializzare il gruppo di controllo fax. Per ulteriori dettagli, leggere il manuale di manutenzione.

**安装英文字母标签。(除 100V 规格)**

17. 擦拭操作面板右侧数字键上的区域,然后将英文字母标签(G)粘在此处。  
在亚洲和大洋州,请使用 PQRS TUV WXYZ 标签,而不要使用 PRS TUV WXY 和 OPER 标签。

**[操作确认]**

1. 将 MFP 机身插入电源插座,打开主开关。
2. 执行维修保养模式 U601/U602,初始化传真控制组件。有关详细信息,请参见维修手册。

**アルファベットのラベルの貼り付け (100V 仕様以外)**

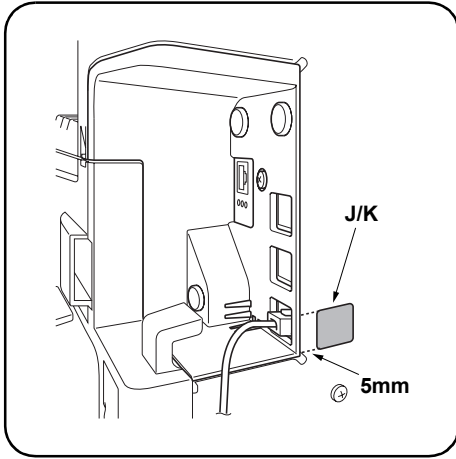
17. 操作パネル右側のテンキー上側をアルコール清掃し、アルファベットのラベル (G) を貼り付ける。  
アジア、オセアニアでは「PRS TUV WXY」および「OPER」のラベルを使用せず、「PQRS TUV WXYZ」のラベルを使用すること。

**[動作確認]**

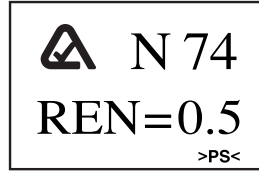
1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
2. メンテナンスモード U601、U602 を実行し、組立 FAX 制御を初期化する。詳細はサービスマニュアルを参照のこと。

# For Australia and New Zealand

## Attach the approval label



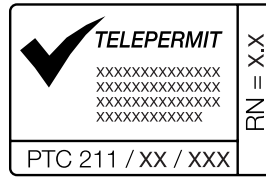
### • Only Australia specification



A-TICK label

Wipe the area 5 mm away from the line terminal side with alcohol and adhere the A-TICK label(J) here.

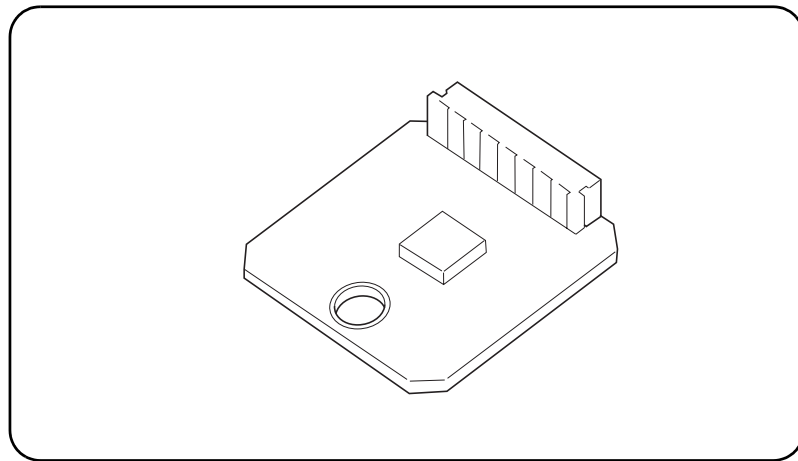
### • Only New Zealand specification



TELEPERMIT label

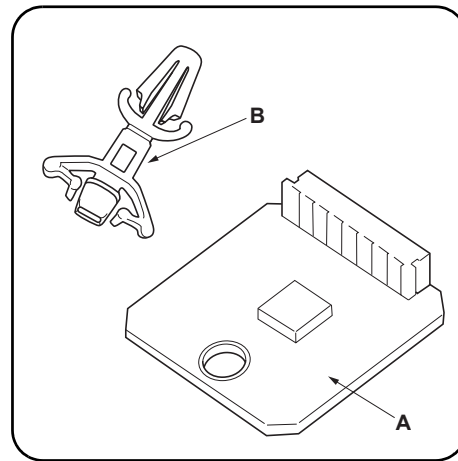
Wipe the area 5 mm away from the line terminal side with alcohol and adhere the TELEPERMIT label(K) here.

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR Data Security Kit (D)**



English

## INSTALLATION GUIDE for Data Security Kit (D)



**Supplied parts**

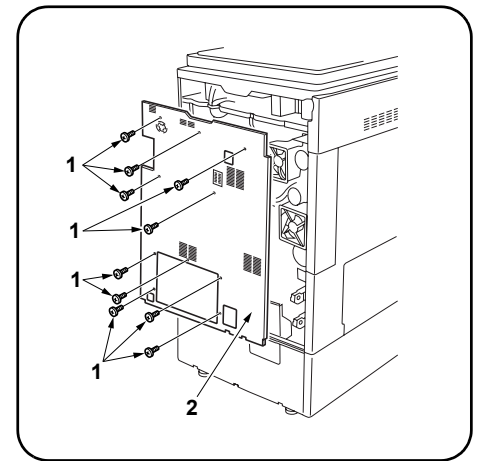
A Security PCB .....	1
B Board support .....	1

**Installation Procedure**

Be sure to turn the MFP's main power OFF and unplug the MFP from the power supply before starting this procedure.

**Formatting Hard Disk**

1. If a hard disk (including an option) has been installed, the data in the hard disk before installing the data security kit will not be automatically deleted.  
To delete the data, refer to the operation guide to format the hard disk after consulting your customer.



**Removing Cover**

2. Remove thirteen screws (1) to remove rear cover (2).

Français

## GUIDE D'INSTALLATION du Data Security Kit (D)

**Éléments fournis**

A PCB de sécurité .....	1
B Support de carte .....	1

**Méthode d'installation**

Veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher le MFP de la prise secteur avant de démarrer la procédure.

**Formatage du disque dur**

1. Si un disque dur (comprenant une option) a été installé, les données contenues sur celui-ci, avant l'installation du Data Security kit, ne seront pas automatiquement effacées.  
Pour les effacer, consulter le mode d'emploi pour le formatage du disque dur après avoir consulté le client.

**Retrait du couvercle**

2. Retirer les treize vis (1) bloquant le couvercle arrière (2), puis retirer ce dernier.

Español

## GUÍA DE INSTALACIÓN para el Data Security Kit (D)

**Piezas suministradas**

A PCB de seguridad .....	1
B Soporte de la placa .....	1

**Procedimiento de instalación**

Coloque el interruptor principal de suministro eléctrico de la MFP a su posición de apagado OFF y desenchúfela de dicho suministro antes de iniciar este procedimiento.

**Formateado del disco duro**

1. Si tiene instalado un disco duro (incluido uno opcional), los datos almacenados en él antes de instalar el data security kit no se borrarán automáticamente.  
Para borrar los datos, consulte el manual de funcionamiento para formatear el disco duro después de consultar con su cliente.

**Desmontaje de la cubierta**

2. Quite trece tornillos (1) para desmontar la cubierta trasera (2).

Deutsch

## INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG für Data Security Kit (D)

**Lieferumfang**

A Sicherheitsplatine .....	1
B Kartenträger .....	1

**Installationsverfahren**

Schalten Sie den Netzschalter des MFP aus und trennen Sie den MFP vom Netz, bevor Sie die folgenden Schritte durchführen.

**Formatierung der Festplatte**

1. Sofern eine (als Option lieferbare) Festplatte eingebaut ist, werden die Daten auf der Festplatte vor Einbau des Security Kits nicht automatisch gelöscht.  
Um die Daten zu löschen, formatieren Sie die Festplatte nach Rücksprache mit Ihrem Kunden gemäß der Beschreibung in der Bedienungsanleitung.

**Entfernen der Abdeckung**

2. Entfernen Sie die dreizehn Schrauben (1), um die hintere Abdeckung (2) abzunehmen.

Italiano

## GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE del Data Security Kit (D)

**Parti appartenenti alla dotazione**

A Scheda a circuiti stampati PCB di sicurezza .....	1
B Supporto della scheda .....	1

**Istruzioni per il montaggio**

Assicurarsi di aver spento l'interruttore principale dell'MFP e di aver sfilato la spina della copiatrice MFP dalla presa prima di procedere con le istruzioni di montaggio.

**Formattazione dell' hard disk**

1. Se è stato installato un hard disk (comprendente un'opzione), i dati presenti nell'hard disk prima dell'installazione del data security kit non verranno cancellati automaticamente.  
Per cancellare i dati, fare riferimento alla guida operativa per formattare l'hard disk previa consultazione del cliente.

**Rimozione del pannello**

2. Rimuovere le tredici viti (1), quindi rimuovere il pannello posteriore (2).

简体中文

## Data Security Kit (D) 安装手册

**附属部件**

A 安全电路板 .....	1
B 电路板支撑件 .....	1

**安装步骤**

请务必关闭 MFP 的主电源并拔下电源插头再开始此步骤。

**格式化硬部件**

1. 如果已经安装了硬盘 (包括选购件), 在安装数据安全组件前硬盘中的数据不会自动删除。若要删除数据, 请咨询客户后参考格式化硬盘的操作指南。

**拆下盖板**

2. 拆下 13 颗螺钉 (1) 以便拆下后盖板 (2)。

日本語

## Data Security Kit (D) 設置手順書

**付属部品**

A セキュリティ基板 .....	1
B スペーサー .....	1

**設置手順**

データセキュリティキットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

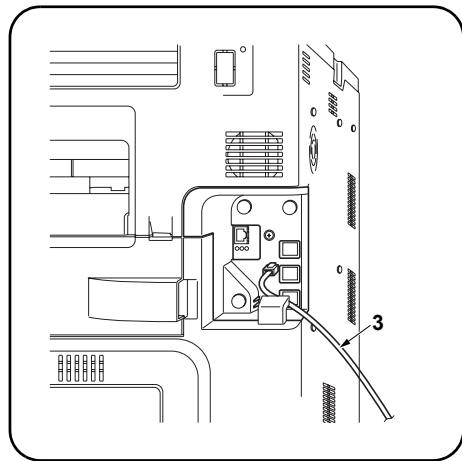
**ハードディスクのフォーマット**

1. データセキュリティキットを取り付ける以前に使用しているハードディスク (オプションも含む) のデータは自動的に消去されない。  
お客様に確認後、使用説明書を参照し、ハードディスクのフォーマットを行うこと。

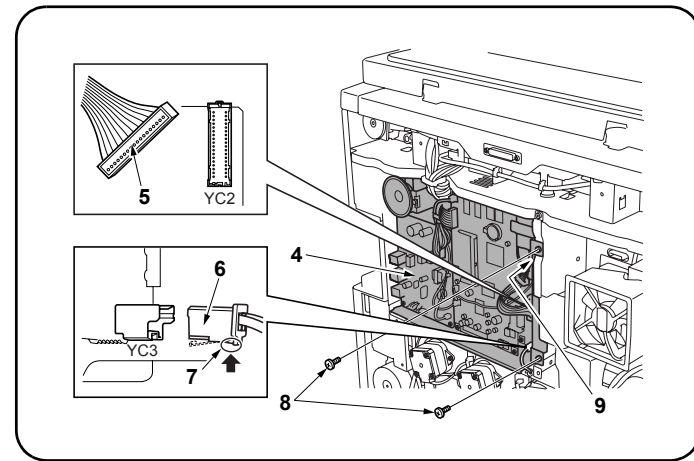
**カバーの取り外し**

2. ビス (1)13 本を外し、後カバー (2) を取り外す。

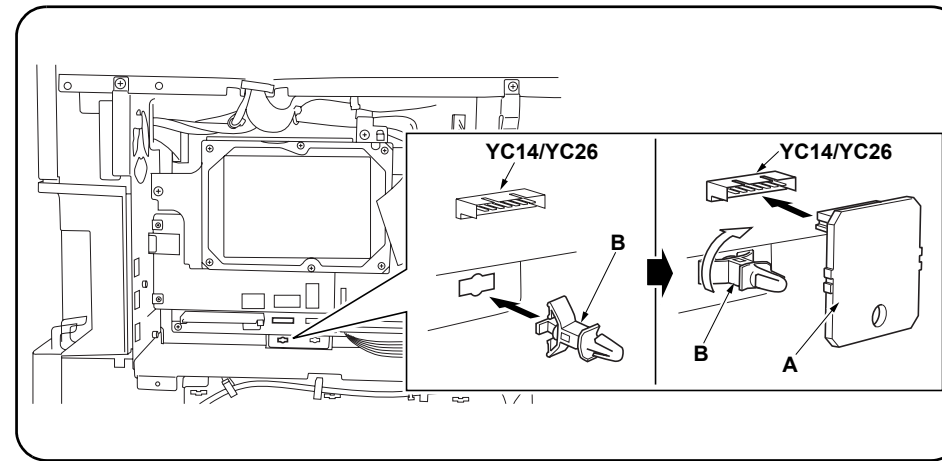




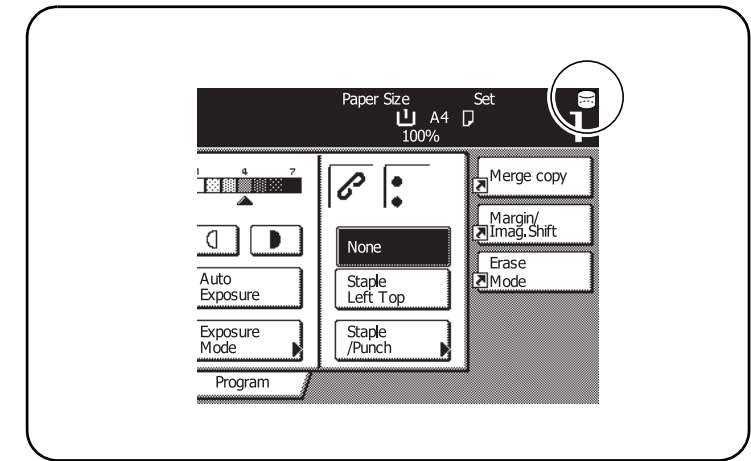
**[When the FAX PCB is installed]**  
3. Remove modular cord (3).



4. Remove YC2 connector (5) and the mains connector (6) cable from FAX PCB (4).  
**To remove the mains connector (6), be sure to hold its upper and lower parts with your fingers and press the connector's lower part (7).**  
5. Remove two screws (8) to remove FAX PCB (4).  
6. Remove the cable from YC6 connector (9) of the main PCB.



**Installing Security PCB**  
7. Insert the board support (B) into the elongate hole under the main PCB and secure the board support by rotating either clockwise/counterclockwise by 90 degrees.  
8. Connect security PCB (A) to YC 14 or YC 26 connector of the main PCB and secure it with board support (B).  
9. Use ten screws (1) to reinstall rear cover (2) removed in step 1.  
**When the FAX PCB was installed, follow the procedure in the order of steps 5, 4 and 3, and then resinstall the cable, FAX PCB, cord and rear cover (2) in the original positions.**



**[Operation Check]**  
1. Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main switch.  
2. Confirm that the hard disk icon is displayed on the operation panel.  
**Be sure to instruct the customer how to enter the hard disk encryption key.**  
**For more details, refer to the operation guide.**

**Une fois le PCB du télécopieur installé**  
3. Retirer le cordon modulaire (3).

4. Retirer le connecteur YC2 (5) et le câble du connecteur d'alimentation (6) du PCB du télécopieur (4).  
**Pour retirer le connecteur d'alimentation (6), veiller à maintenir les pièces supérieure et inférieure et à appuyer sur la partie inférieure du connecteur (7).**  
5. Retirer les deux vis (8), bloquant le PCB du télécopieur (4), puis retirer ce dernier.  
6. Retirer le câble du connecteur YC6 (9) du PCB principal.

**Installation du PCB de sécurité**  
7. Insérer le support de carte (B) dans la fente allongée sous le PCB principal et le fixer en le faisant pivoter de 90° dans un sens ou dans l'autre.  
8. Connecter le PCB de sécurité (A) au connecteur YC14 ou YC26 du PCB principal et le fixer à l'aide du support de carte (B).  
9. Refixer le couvercle arrière (2) retiré à l'étape 1 à l'aide des dix vis (1).  
**Une fois le PCB du télécopieur installé, suivre la procédure dans l'ordre suivant : étapes 5, 4 et 3, puis réinstaller le câble, le PCB du télécopieur, le cordon et le couvercle arrière (2) dans leur position d'origine.**

**[Vérification du fonctionnement]**  
1. Brancher le MFP sur une prise d'alimentation et le mettre sous tension.  
2. S'assurer que l'icône du disque dur est affichée sur le panneau de commande.  
**Veiller à expliquer au client comment entrer la clé de cryptage du disque dur.**  
**Pour plus de détails, consulter le mode d'emploi.**

**[Cuando está instalado el PCB de FAX]**  
3. Quite el cable modular (3).

4. Quite el conector YC2 (5) y el cable del conector de suministro eléctrico (6) del PCB de FAX (4).  
**Para quitar el conector de suministro eléctrico (6), asegúrese de sujetar las partes superior e inferior con los dedos y presionar sobre la parte inferior del conector (7).**  
5. Quite dos tornillos (8) y desmonte el PCB de FAX (4).  
6. Quite el cable del conector YC6 (9) del PCB principal.

**Instalación del PCB de seguridad**  
7. Inserte el soporte de la placa (B) por el orificio alargado, por debajo del PCB principal, y asegure el soporte de la placa girándolo 90 grados hacia la derecha o hacia la izquierda.  
8. Conecte el PCB de seguridad (A) al conector YC 14 o YC 26 del PCB principal y asegúrelo con el soporte de la placa (B).  
9. Use diez tornillos (1) para reinstalar la cubierta trasera (2) que ha desmontado en el paso 1.  
**Quando el PCB de FAX está instalado, siga los pasos del procedimiento en el orden 5, 4 y 3, y reinstale el cable, el PCB de FAX, el cable y la cubierta trasera (2) en sus posiciones originales.**

**[Verifique el funcionamiento]**  
1. Enchufe la MFP a un receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal.  
2. Compruebe que el icono de disco duro aparece en el panel de control.  
**Explique al cliente cómo debe introducir el código de cifrado del disco duro.**  
**Consulte la guía de funcionamiento para ampliar la información.**

**[Bei installierter FAX-Platine]**  
3. Modulleitung (3) abziehen.

4. Ziehen Sie das Kabel der Steckverbinder YC2 (5) und Netzstecker (6) von der FAX-Platine (4) ab.  
**Um den Netzstecker (6) abzuziehen, den Steckverbinder am oberen und unteren Teil festhalten und auf den unteren Teil (7) drücken.**  
5. Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (8), um die FAX-Platine (4) herauszunehmen.  
6. Ziehen Sie das Kabel vom Steckverbinder YC6 (9) der Hauptkarte ab.

**Einbau der Sicherheitsplatine**  
7. Setzen Sie den Kartenträger (B) in das Langloch unter der Hauptkarte ein und sichern Sie den Kartenträger, indem sie ihn um 90 Grad nach links oder nach rechts drehen.  
8. Schließen Sie die Sicherheitsplatine (A) mit dem Steckverbinder YC14 oder YC26 an der Hauptkarte an und befestigen Sie sie mit dem Kartenträger (B).  
9. Bauen Sie die in Schritt 1 ausgebaute hintere Abdeckung (2) mit zehn Schrauben (1) wieder ein.  
**Nach Einbau der FAX-Platine die Schritte 5, 4 und 3 nacheinander durchführen und das Kabel, die FAX-Platine, die Leitung und die hintere Abdeckung (2) wieder in der ursprünglichen Lage einbauen.**

**[Betriebsprüfung]**  
1. Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in eine Steckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter ein.  
2. Achten Sie darauf, dass das Festplattensymbol am Bedienfeld angezeigt wird.  
**Vergessen Sie nicht, den Kunden darauf hinzuweisen, wie man den Festplattenschlüssel eingibt.**  
**Weitere Einzelheiten siehe Bedienungsanleitung.**

**[Quando è installata la scheda a circuiti stampati PCB del FAX]**  
3. Rimuovere il filo modulare (3).

4. Rimuovere il cavo del connettore YC2 (5) e del connettore cavi (6) dalla scheda a circuiti stampati PCB del FAX (4).  
**Per rimuovere il connettore cavi (6), assicurarsi di tenere con le dita le parti superiori e inferiori e premere la parte inferiore del connettore (7).**  
5. Rimuovere le due viti (8), quindi la scheda PCB del FAX (4).  
6. Rimuovere il cavo dal connettore YC6 (9) della scheda PCB principale.

**Installazione della scheda a circuiti stampati PCB di sicurezza**  
7. Inserire il supporto della scheda (B) nel foro oblungo sotto alla scheda PCB principale e fissare il supporto della scheda ruotandolo di 90 gradi in senso orario o antiorario.  
8. Collegare la scheda a circuiti stampati PCB di sicurezza (A) al connettore YC 14 o YC 26 della scheda PCB principale e fissarla con il supporto della scheda (B).  
9. Utilizzare le dieci viti (1) per rimontare il pannello posteriore (2) rimosso nell'operazione 1.  
**Una volta installata la scheda PCB del FAX, seguire la procedura nell'ordine delle operazioni 5, 4 e 3, quindi reinstallare il cavo, la scheda PCB del FAX, il filo e il pannello posteriore (2) nelle loro posizioni originarie.**

**[Verifica del funzionamento]**  
1. Collegare l'MFP ad una presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.  
2. Confermare che l'icona dell'hard disk sia visualizzata sul pannello di funzionamento.  
**Avere cura di istruire il cliente sulle modalità di inserimento della chiave di cifratura dell'hard disk.**  
**Per maggiori dettagli, fare riferimento alla guida operativa.**

**[FAX PCB 已安装时]**  
3. 拆下电话线 (3)。

4. 拆下 FAX PCB(4) 上的 YC2 插头 (5) 和主电源插头 (6)。  
**若要拆下主电源插头 (6), 请务必用手指按住其上部 and 下部并按住插头的下部 (7)。**  
5. 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (8) 以便拆下 FAX PCB(4)。  
6. 从主 PCB 的 YC6 插头 (9) 拆下电缆。

**安装安全电路板**  
7. 将电路板支撑件 (B) 插入主 PCB 下的延长孔, 并顺时针 / 逆时针旋转 90 度以固定电路板支撑件。  
8. 将安全电路板 (A) 连接到主 PCB 上的 YC 14 或 YC 26 插头, 并用电路板支撑件 (B) 固定。  
9. 使用 10 颗螺钉 (1) 重新安装在第 1 步中拆下的后盖板 (2)。  
**安装 FAX PCB 时, 请按照第 5、4、3 步的顺序执行操作步骤, 然后将电缆、FAX PCB、电话线和后盖板 (2) 重新安装在原位置。**

**[操作确认]**  
1. 将 MFP 插入电源插座, 打开主开关。  
2. 请确认在操作面板上硬盘图标是否已显示。  
**请务必指导客户如何输入硬盘加密的密码。**  
**有关详细信息, 请参考操作指南。**

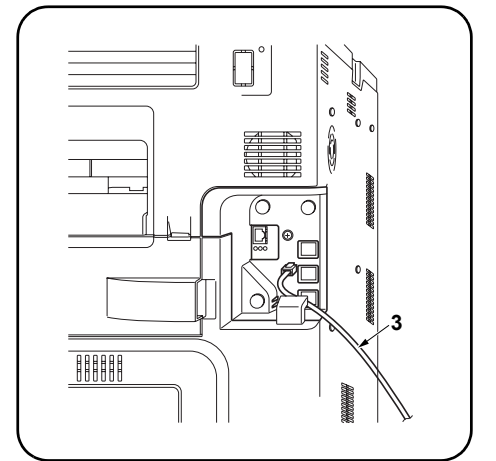
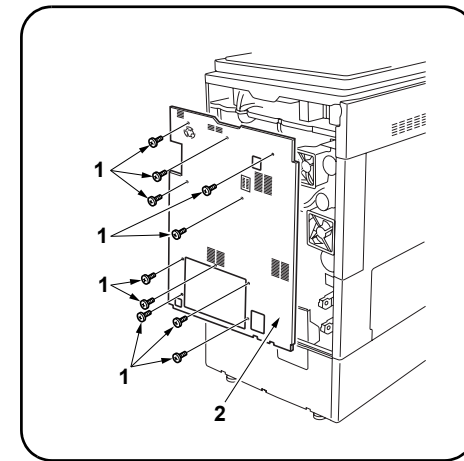
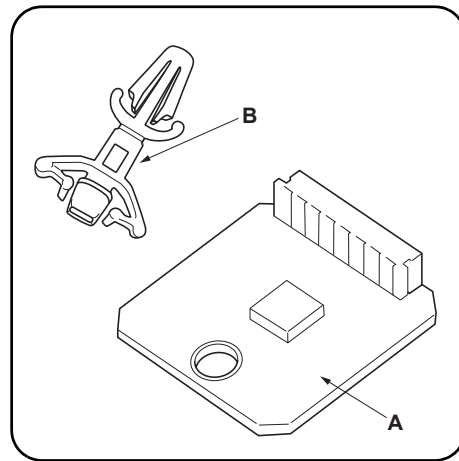
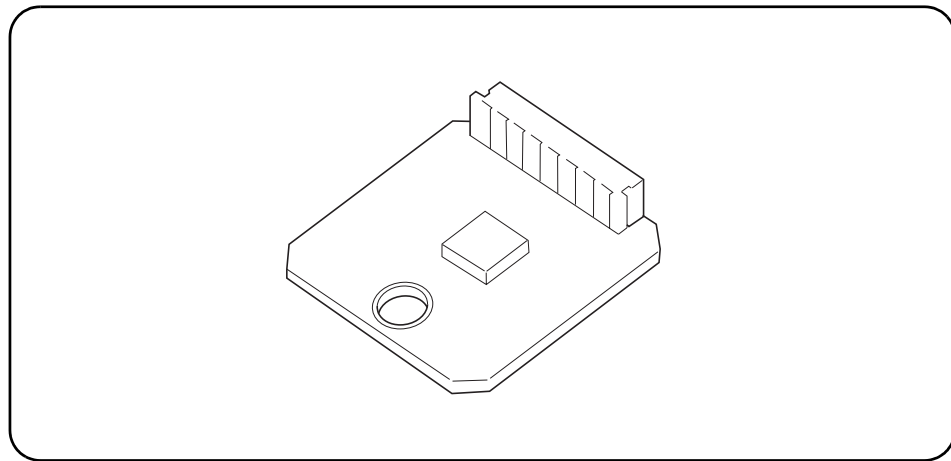
**[FAX 基板が取り付けられている場合]**  
3. モジュラーコード (3) を取り外す。

4. FAX 基板 (4) の YC2 コネクタ (5) と、電源線コネクタ (6) のケーブルを取り外す。  
**電源線コネクタ (6) は必ず上下を指で挟み、下部 (7) を押しながらかずこと。**  
5. ビス (8) 2 本を外し、FAX 基板 (4) を取り外す。  
6. メイン基板の YC6 コネクタ (9) からケーブルを取り外す。

**セキュリティ基板の取り付け**  
7. スペーサー (B) をメイン基板下の長穴に挿入し、左右どちらかに 90° 回し固定する。  
8. セキュリティ基板 (A) をメイン基板の YC14、YC26 コネクタどちらかに接続し、スペーサー (B) で固定する。  
9. 手順 1 で外した後カバー (2) をビス (1) 10 本で元通り取り付け。  
**FAX 基板が取り付けられていた場合は、手順を 5、4、3 の順に進め、ケーブル、FAX 基板、コード、後カバー (2) を元通り取り付け。**

**[動作確認]**  
1. MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。  
2. 操作パネルにハードディスクアイコンが表示されていることを確認する。  
**ハードディスク暗号化キーの入力方法をお客様に指導すること。**  
**詳細は使用説明書を参照すること。**

# **INSTALLATION GUIDE FOR UG-31**



English

## INSTALLATION GUIDE for UG-31

### Supplied parts

- A PDF PCB.....1
- B Board support.....1

### Installation Procedure

Be sure to turn the MFP'S main power OFF and unplug the MFP from the power supply before installing the PDF upgrading kit.

### Removing Cover

1. Remove thirteen screws (1) to remove rear cover (2).

### When the FAX PCB is installed

2. Remove modular cord (3).

Français

## GUIDE D'INSTALLATION de l'UG-31

### Éléments fournis

- A PCB PDF.....1
- B Support de carte.....1

### Méthode d'installation

Veiller à mettre l'interrupteur principal du MFP hors tension et à débrancher le MFP de la prise secteur avant d'installer le kit de mise à niveau au format PDF.

### Retrait du couvercle

1. Retirer les treize vis (1) bloquant le couvercle arrière (2), puis retirer ce dernier.

### Une fois le PCB du télécopieur installé

2. Retirer le cordon modulaire (3).

Español

## GUÍA DE INSTALACIÓN para UG-31

### Piezas suministradas

- A PCB de PDF.....1
- B Soporte de la placa.....1

### Procedimiento de instalación

Coloque el interruptor principal de suministro eléctrico de la MFP a su posición de apagado OFF y desenchúfela de dicho suministro antes de instalar el kit de actualización de PDF.

### Desmontaje de la cubierta

1. Quite trece tornillos (1) para desmontar la cubierta trasera (2).

### Cuando está instalado el PCB de FAX

2. Quite el cable modular (3).

Deutsch

## INSTALLATIONSANLEITUNG für UG-31

### Lieferumfang

- A PDF-Platine.....1
- B Kartenträger.....1

### Installationsverfahren

Schalten Sie den Netzschalter des MFP aus und trennen Sie den MFP vom Netz, bevor Sie das PDF-Upgrade-Kit installieren.

### Entfernen der Abdeckung

1. Entfernen Sie die dreizehn Schrauben (1), um die hintere Abdeckung (2) abzunehmen.

### Bei installierter FAX-Platine

2. Modulleitung (3) abziehen.

Italiano

## GUIDA ALL'INSTALLAZIONE dell'UG-31

### Parti appartenenti alla dotazione

- A Scheda a circuiti stampati PCB per PDF..1
- B Supporto della scheda.....1

### Istruzioni per il montaggio

Assicurarsi di aver spento l'interruttore principale dell'MFP e di aver sfilato la spina dell'MFP dalla presa prima di procedere all'installazione del kit per l'upgrade di PDF.

### Rimozione del pannello

1. Rimuovere le tredici viti (1), quindi il pannello posteriore (2).

### Una volta installata la scheda a circuiti stampati PCB del FAX

2. Rimuovere il filo modulare (3).

简体中文

## UG-31 安装手册

### 附属部件

- A PDF PCB.....1
- B 电路板支撑件.....1

### 安装步骤

请务必关闭 MFP 的主电源并拔下电源插头再安装 PDF 升级组件。

### 拆下盖板

1. 拆下 13 颗螺钉 (1) 以便拆下后盖板 (2)。

### FAX PCB 已安装时

2. 拆下电话线 (3)。

日本語

## UG-31 設置手順書

### 付属部品

- A PDF 基板..... 1
- B スペーサー..... 1

### 設置手順

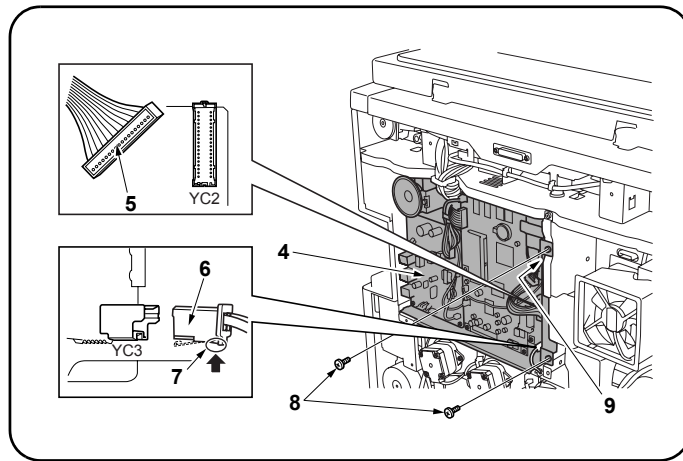
PDF アップグレードキットを設置するときは、必ず MFP 本体のメインスイッチを OFF にし、電源プラグを抜いてから作業すること。

### カバーの取り外し

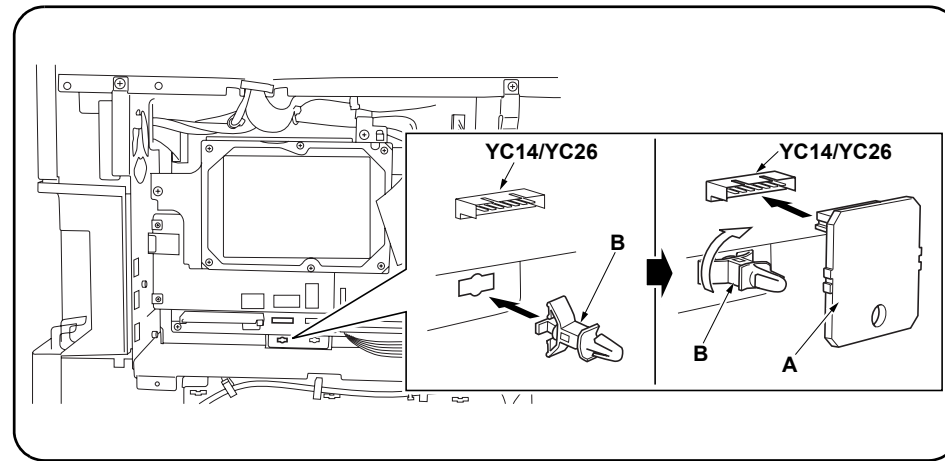
1. ビス (1) 13 本を外し、後カバー (2) を取り外す。

### FAX 基板が取り付けられている場合

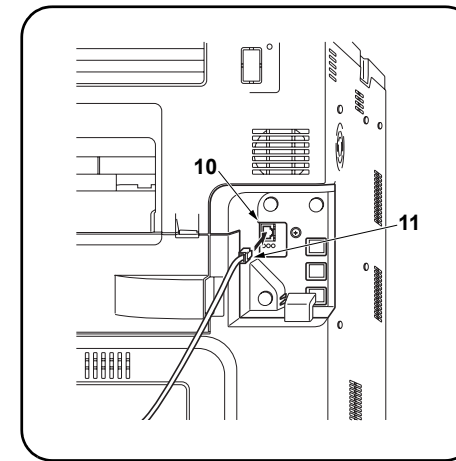
2. モジュラーコード (3) を取り外す。



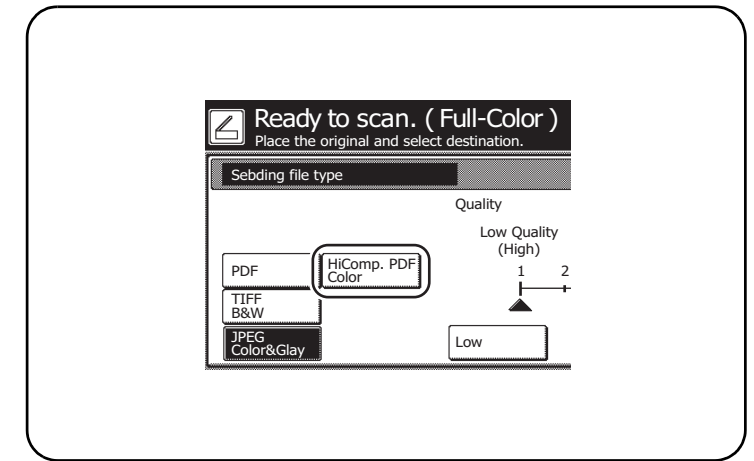
- Remove YC2 connector (5) and the mains connector (6) cable from FAX PCB (4).
- To remove the mains connector (6), be sure to hold its upper and lower parts with your fingers and press the connector's lower part (7).**
- Remove two screws (8) to remove FAX PCB (4).
- Remove the cable from YC6 connector (9) of the main PCB.



- Installing PDF PCB**
- Insert board support (B) into the elongate hole under the main PCB and secure the board support by rotating either clockwise/counterclockwise by 90 degrees.
  - Connect PDF PCB (A) to YC14 or YC26 connector of the main PCB and secure it with board support (B).
  - Use ten screws (1) to reinstall rear cover (2) removed in step 1.
- When the FAX PCB was installed, follow the procedure in the order of steps 5, 4 and 3, and then reinstall the cable, FAX PCB, cord and rear cover (2) in the original positions.**



- Connect network cable (11) to network terminal (10) of the MFP.



- [Operation Check]**
- Plug the MFP into a power outlet, and turn on its main switch.
  - Press [scanner] on the operation panel.
  - Select [Scan to PC], [Dest.:] and [File Format] on the operation panel, and then confirm that [HiComp.PDF] is displayed.

- Retirer le connecteur YC2 (5) et le câble du connecteur d'alimentation (6) du PCB du télécopieur (4).
- Pour retirer le connecteur d'alimentation (6), veiller à maintenir les pièces supérieure et inférieure et à appuyer sur la partie inférieure du connecteur (7).**
- Retirer les deux vis (8), bloquant le PCB du télécopieur (4), puis retirer ce dernier.
- Retirer le câble du connecteur YC6 (9) du PCB principal.

- Installation du PCB PDF**
- Insérer le support de carte (B) dans la fente allongée sous le PCB principal et le fixer en le faisant pivoter de 90° dans un sens ou dans l'autre.
  - Connecter le PCB PDF (A) au connecteur YC14 ou YC26 du PCB principal et le fixer à l'aide du support de carte (B).
  - Refixer le couvercle arrière (2) retiré à l'étape 1 à l'aide des dix vis (1).
- Une fois le PCB du télécopieur installé, suivre la procédure dans l'ordre suivant : étapes 5, 4 et 3, puis réinstaller le câble, le PCB du télécopieur, le cordon et le couvercle arrière (2) dans leur position d'origine.**

- Connecter le câble réseau (11) au terminal réseau (10) du MFP.

- [Vérification du fonctionnement]**
- Brancher le MFP sur une prise d'alimentation et le mettre sous tension.
  - Appuyer sur la touche [Scanner] du panneau de commande.
  - Sélectionner [Envoyer PC] (Soumission PC), [Destinat.:] et [Type\_fichier] sur le panneau de commande, puis s'assurer que [HiComp.PDF] est affiché.

- Quite el conector YC2 (5) y el cable del conector de suministro eléctrico (6) del PCB de FAX (4).
- Para quitar el conector de suministro eléctrico (6), asegúrese de sujetar las partes superior e inferior con los dedos y presionar sobre la parte inferior del conector (7).**
- Quite dos tornillos (8) y desmonte el PCB de FAX (4).
- Quite el cable del conector YC6 (9) del PCB principal.

- Instalación del PCB de PDF**
- Inserte el soporte de la placa (B) por el orificio alargado, por debajo del PCB principal, y asegure el soporte de la placa girándolo 90 grados hacia la derecha o hacia la izquierda.
  - Conecte el PCB de PDF (A) al conector YC14 o YC26 del PCB principal y asegúrelo con el soporte de la placa (B).
  - Use diez tornillos (1) para reinstalar la cubierta trasera (2) que ha desmontado en el paso 1.
- Cuando el PCB de FAX está instalado, siga los pasos del procedimiento en el orden 5, 4 y 3, y reinstale el cable, el PCB de FAX, el cable y la cubierta trasera (2) en sus posiciones originales.**

- Conecte el cable de red (11) al terminal de red (10) de la MFP.

- [Verifique el funcionamiento]**
- Enchufe la MFP a un receptáculo de pared y encienda el interruptor principal.
  - Pulse [Escáner] en el panel de control.
  - Seleccione [Envío a PC], [Dest.:] y [Tipo de archivo] en el panel de control, y seguidamente compruebe que aparece [HiComp.PDF].

- Ziehen Sie das Kabel der Steckverbinder YC2 (5) und Netzstecker (6) von der FAX-Platine (4) ab.
- Um den Netzstecker (6) abzuziehen, den Steckverbinder am oberen und unteren Teil festhalten und auf den unteren Teil (7) drücken.**
- Entfernen Sie die zwei Schrauben (8), um die FAX-Platine (4) herauszunehmen.
- Ziehen Sie das Kabel vom Steckverbinder YC6 (9) der Hauptleiterplatte ab.

- Einbau der PDF-Platine**
- Setzen Sie den Kartenträger (B) in das Langloch unter der Hauptkarte ein und sichern Sie den Kartenträger, indem sie ihn um 90 Grad nach links oder nach rechts drehen.
  - Schließen Sie die PDF-Platine (A) mit dem Steckverbinder YC14 oder YC26 an der Hauptkarte an und befestigen Sie sie mit dem Kartenträger (B).
  - Bauen Sie die in Schritt 1 ausgebaute hintere Abdeckung (2) mit zehn Schrauben (1) wieder ein.
- Nach Einbau der FAX-Platine die Schritte 5, 4 und 3 nacheinander durchführen und das Kabel, die FAX-Platine, die Leitung und die hintere Abdeckung (2) wieder in der ursprünglichen Lage einbauen.**

- Schließen Sie den Netzkabel (11) an der Netzklemme (10) des MFP an.

- [Betriebsprüfung]**
- Stecken Sie den Netzstecker des MFP in eine Steckdose und schalten Sie den Hauptschalter ein.
  - Drücken Sie die Schaltfläche [Scanner] am Bedienfeld.
  - Drücken Sie die Schaltflächen [Scan zu PC], [Empfänger] und [Dateityp] am Bedienfeld und achten Sie darauf, dass [HiComp.PDF] angezeigt wird.

- Rimuovere il cavo del connettore YC2 (5) e del connettore cavi (6) dalla scheda a circuiti stampati PCB del FAX (4).
- Per rimuovere il connettore cavi (6), assicurarsi di tenere con le dita le parti superiori e inferiori e premere la parte inferiore del connettore (7).**
- Rimuovere le due viti (8), quindi la scheda PCB del FAX (4).
- Rimuovere il cavo dal connettore YC6 (9) della scheda PCB principale.

- Installazione della scheda a circuiti stampati PCB per PDF**
- Inserire il supporto della scheda (B) nel foro oblungo sotto alla scheda PCB principale e fissare il supporto della scheda ruotandolo di 90 gradi in senso orario o antiorario.
  - Collegare la scheda a circuiti stampati PCB per PDF (A) al connettore YC14 o YC26 della scheda PCB principale e fissarla con il supporto della scheda (B).
  - Utilizzare le dieci viti (1) per rimontare il pannello posteriore (2) rimosso nell'operazione 1.
- Una volta installata la scheda PCB del FAX, seguire la procedura nell'ordine delle operazioni 5, 4 e 3, quindi reinstallare il cavo, la scheda PCB del FAX, il filo e il pannello posteriore (2) nelle loro posizioni originarie.**

- Collegare il cavo di rete (11) al terminale di rete (10) dell'MFP.

- [Verifica del funzionamento]**
- Collegare l'MFP ad una presa di corrente e accendere l'interruttore principale.
  - Premere [Scanner] sul pannello di funzionamento.
  - Selezionare [Invio a PC], [Destin.:] e [Tipo\_file] sul pannello di funzionamento, quindi confermare che sia visualizzato [PDF\_compr.].

- 拆下 FAX PCB(4) 上的 YC2 插头 (5) 和主电源插头 (6)。
- 若要拆下主电源插头 (6), 请务必用手指按住其上部 and 下部并按住插头的下部 (7)。**
- 拆下 2 颗螺钉 (8) 以便拆下 FAX PCB(4)。
- 从主 PCB 的 YC6 插头 (9) 拆下电缆。

- 安装 PDF PCB**
- 将电路板支撑件 (B) 插入主 PCB 下的延长孔, 并顺时针 / 逆时针旋转 90 度以固定电路板支撑件。
  - 将 PDF PCB(A) 连接到主 PCB 上的 YC14 或 YC26 插头, 并用电路板支撑件 (B) 固定。
  - 使用 10 颗螺钉 (1) 重新安装在第 1 步中拆下的后盖板 (2)。
- 安装 FAX PCB 时, 请按照第 5、4、3 步的顺序执行操作步骤, 然后将电缆、FAX PCB、电话线和后盖板 (2) 重新安装在原位置。**

- 将网线 (11) 连接到 MFP 的网络端口 (10)。

- [操作确认]**
- 将 MFP 插入电源插座, 打开主开关。
  - 按操作面板上的 [ 扫描器 ]。
  - 选择操作面板上的 [PC 传输]、[目的地] 和 [文件类型], 然后确认 [ 超级压缩 PDF ] 是否已显示。

- FAX 基板 (4) の YC2 コネクタ (5) と、電源線コネクタ (6) のケーブルを取り外す。
- 電源線コネクタ (6) は必ず上下を指で挟み、下部 (7) を押しながら外すこと。**
- ビス (8) 2 本を外し、FAX 基板 (4) を取り外す。
- メイン基板的 YC6 コネクタ (9) からケーブルを取り外す。

- PDF 基板の取り付け**
- スペーサー (B) をメイン基板下の長穴に挿入し、左右どちらかに回し 90° 固定する。
  - PDF 基板 (A) をメイン基板的 YC14、YC26 コネクタどちらかに接続し、スペーサー (B) で固定する。
  - 手順 1 で外した後カバー (2) をビス (1) 10 本で元通り取り付け。
- FAX 基板が取り付けられていた場合は、手順を 5、4、3 の順に進め、ケーブル、FAX 基板、コード、後カバー (2) を元通り取り付け。**

- MFP 本体のネットワーク端子 (10) にネットワークケーブル (11) を接続する。

- [動作確認]**
- MFP 本体の電源プラグをコンセントに差し込み、メインスイッチを ON にする。
  - 操作パネルの「スキャナ」を押す。
  - ディスプレイの「PC 送信」「送信先」「ファイル形式」を選択し、「高圧縮 PDF」が表示されることを確認する。

## **KYOCERA MITA EUROPE B.V.**

Hoeksteen 40, 2132 MS Hoofddorp,  
The Netherlands  
Phone: +31.20.654.0000  
Home page: <http://www.kyoceramita-europe.com>  
Email: [info@kyoceramita-europe.com](mailto:info@kyoceramita-europe.com)

**KYOCERA MITA NEDERLAND B.V.**  
Beechavenue 25, 1119RA Schiphol-Rijk  
The Netherlands  
Phone: +31.20.58.77.200

**KYOCERA MITA (UK) LTD**  
8 Beacontree Plaza  
Gillette Way Reading Berks RG2 OBS,  
U.K.  
Phone: +44.1189.311.500

**KYOCERA MITA ITALIA S.p.A.**  
Via G. Verdi, 89 / 91, 20063 Cernusco s/N  
Milano, Italy  
Phone: +39.02.92179.1

**S.A. KYOCERA MITA BELGIUM N.V.**  
Hermesstraat 8A, 1930 Zaventem,  
Belgium  
Phone: +32.2.720.9270

**KYOCERA MITA FRANCE S.A.**  
Parc Les Algorithmes Saint Aubin  
91194 GIF-SUR-YVETTE,  
France  
Phone: +33.1.6985.2600

**KYOCERA MITA ESPAÑA S.A.**  
Edificio Kyocera, Avda de Manacor No. 2,  
28290 Las Matas (Madrid),  
Spain  
Phone: +34.91.631.8392

**KYOCERA MITA FINLAND OY**  
Kirvesmiehenkatu 4, 00880 Helsinki,  
Finland  
Phone: +358.9.4780.5200

**KYOCERA MITA (SCHWEIZ)**  
Hohlstrasse 614, 8048 Zürich  
Switzerland  
Phone: +41.1.908.4949

**KYOCERA MITA DEUTSCHLAND GMBH**  
Otto-Hahn-Str. 12 D-40670 Meerbusch,  
Germany  
Phone: +49.2159.918.0

**KYOCERA MITA GMBH AUSTRIA**  
Eduard-Kittenberger-Gasse 95,  
1230 Wien,  
Austria  
Phone: +43.1.86338.210

**KYOCERA MITA SVENSKA AB**  
Esbogatan 16B 164 75 Kista,  
Sweden  
Phone: +46.8.546.55000

**KYOCERA MITA NORGE**  
Postboks 150 Oppsal, NO 0619 Oslo  
Olaf Helsetsvvei 6, NO 0694 Oslo,  
Norway  
Phone: +47.22.62.73.00

**KYOCERA MITA DANMARK A/S**  
Ejby Industrivej 1, DK-2600 Glostrup,  
Denmark  
Phone: +45.5687.1100

**KYOCERA MITA PORTUGAL LDA.**  
Rua do Centro Cultural, 41 (Alvalade) 1700-106 Lisbon,  
Portugal  
Phone: +351.21.842.9100

**KYOCERA MITA SOUTH AFRICA (PTY) LTD.**  
527 Kyalami Boulevard,  
Kyalami Business Park Midrand,  
South Africa  
Phone: +27.(0)11.540.2600

## **KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.**

Headquarters:  
225 Sand Road,  
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008,  
U.S.A.  
Phone: (973) 808-8444

**KYOCERA MITA AUSTRALIA PTY. LTD.**  
Level 3, 6-10 Talavera Road, North Ryde,  
N.S.W. 2113 Australia  
Phone: (02) 9888-9999

**KYOCERA MITA NEW ZEALAND LTD.**  
1-3 Parkhead Place, Albany  
P.O. Box 302 125 NHPC, Auckland,  
New Zealand  
Phone: (09) 415-4517

**KYOCERA MITA (THAILAND) CORP., LTD.**  
9/209 Ratchada-Prachachem Road,  
Bang Sue, Bangkok 10800, Thailand  
Phone: (02) 586-0320

**KYOCERA MITA SINGAPORE PTE LTD.**  
121 Genting Lane, 3rd Level,  
Singapore 349572  
Phone: 67418733

**KYOCERA MITA HONG KONG LIMITED**  
11/F., Mita Centre,  
552-566, Castle Peak Road,  
Tsuen Wan, New Territories,  
Hong Kong  
Phone: 24297422

**KYOCERA MITA TAIWAN Corporation.**  
7F-1~2, No.41, Lane 221, Gangchi Rd.  
Neihu District, Taipei, Taiwan, 114. R.O.C.  
Phone: (02) 87511560

## **KYOCERA MITA Corporation**

2-28, 1-chome, Tamatsukuri, Chuo-ku  
Osaka 540-8585, Japan  
Phone: (06) 6764-3555  
<http://www.kyoceramita.com>

## KYOCERA MITA AMERICA, INC.

### **Headquarters:**

225 Sand Road,  
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008  
TEL : (973) 808-8444  
FAX : (973) 882-6000

### **New York Branch:**

1410 Broadway 23rd floor  
New York, NY 10018  
TEL : (917) 286-5400  
FAX : (917) 286-5402

### **Northeastern Region:**

225 Sand Road,  
Fairfield, New Jersey 07004-0008  
TEL : (973) 808-8444  
FAX : (973) 882-4401

### **Midwestern Region:**

201 Hansen Court Suite 119  
Wood Dale, Illinois 60191  
TEL : (630) 238-9982  
FAX : (630) 238-9487

### **Western Region:**

14101 Alton Parkway,  
Irvine, California 92618-7006  
TEL : (949) 457-9000  
FAX : (949) 457-9119

### **Southeastern Region:**

1500 Oakbrook Drive,  
Norcross, Georgia 30093  
TEL : (770) 729-9786  
FAX : (770) 729-9873

### **Southwestern Region:**

2825 West Story Road,  
Irving, Texas 75038-5299  
TEL : (972) 550-8987  
FAX : (972) 252-9786

### **National Operation Center & National Training Center:**

2825 West Story Road,  
Irving, Texas 75038-5299  
TEL : (972) 659-0055  
FAX : (972) 570-5816

### **Latin America Division:**

8240 N.W. 52nd. Terrace Dawson Building,  
Suite 108 Miami, Florida 33166  
TEL : (305) 421-6640  
FAX : (305) 421-6666

## KYOCERA MITA CANADA, LTD.

6120 Kestrel Road, Mississauga,  
Ontario L5T 1S8, Canada  
TEL : (905) 670-4425  
FAX : (905) 670-8116

## KYOCERA MITA MEXICO, S.A. DE C.V.

Av. 16 de Septiembre #407  
Col. Santa Inés,  
Azcapotzalco México,  
D.F. 02130, México  
TEL : (55) 5383-2741  
FAX : (55) 5383-7804

©2008 KYOCERA MITA Corporation

<http://www.kyoceramita.com>

 **KYOCERA** is a trademark of Kyocera Corporation

Printed in U.S.A.